



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

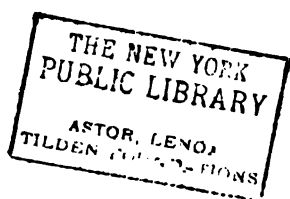
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



Library of World History

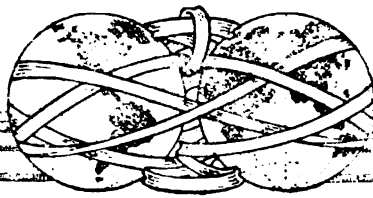




Copyright by Harris & Ewing

THE PRESIDENT OF THE UNITED STATES AND HIS CABINET

Reading from left to right around the table are—President Woodrow Wilson; Secretaries McAdoo, McReynolds, Daniels, Houston, Wilson, Redfield, Lane, Burleson, Garrison and Bryan



LIBRARY OF WORLD HISTORY

CONTAINING

A RECORD OF THE HUMAN RACE FROM THE
EARLIEST HISTORICAL PERIOD TO THE PRE-
SENT TIME; EMBRACING A GENERAL SURVEY
OF THE PROGRESS OF MANKIND IN NATIONAL
AND SOCIAL LIFE, CIVIL GOVERNMENT, RE-
LIGION, LITERATURE, SCIENCE AND ART

by

John H. Clifford
John Trowbridge
Johannes Ranke
Sir John Lubbock
Ferdinand A. Bebel

Israel Smith Clare
Archibald H. Sayce
Edward B. Tylor
Hans F. Helmolt
Justin McCarthy

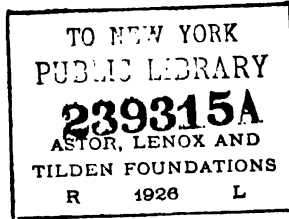
and Others

EDITION DE LUXE

Complete in Ten Volumes

WESTERN PRESS ASSOCIATION
CHICAGO

M C M X V I



*Made Expressly for
Western Press Association*

NEW YORK
PUBLIC
LIBRARY

COPYRIGHT MCMXIV BY
GILBERT PUBLISHING COMPANY

CONTENTS OF VOLUME X.

MODERN HISTORY—CONTINUED.

CHAPTER XLV.—BRITISH AND DUTCH IN SOUTH AFRICA.

Section	I.—Cape Colony under Holland and Great Britain.....	4433
Section	II.—The First Transvaal Republic.....	4441
Section	III.—The Transvaal under British Rule.....	4448
Section	IV.—The Second Transvaal Republic.....	4450
Section	V.—The Great British-Boer War.....	4470

CHAPTER XLVI.—MODERN CHINA AND JAPAN.

Section	I.—China under the Ming and Manchu Dynasties.....	4625
Section	II.—Ancient, Mediæval and Modern Japan.....	4637
Section	III.—The Chino-Japanese War.....	4646
Section	IV.—Foreign Aggressions and Boxer Outbreak in China....	4672
Section	V.—Russo-Japanese War.....	4694
Section	VI.—Recent European Events.....	4734

SUPPLEMENT.

	The British Constitution.....	4737
	Magna Charta.....	4743
	Petition of Right.....	4752
1926	Habeas Corpus Act.....	4755
	Bill of Rights.....	4762
	Act of Settlement.....	4768
	Union between England and Scotland.....	4772
MAH	Union between Great Britain and Ireland.....	4781
	The Constitution of the United States.....	4785
	The Declaration of Independence.....	4801
Q. A.	The Proclamation of Emancipation.....	4805

CONTENTS.

Washington's Farewell Address.....	4806
General Chronology.....	4818
Sovereigns and Rulers of Modern Nations.....	4874
Presidents and Vice Presidents of the United States.....	4891
States of the American Union.....	4892
The British Empire.....	4893
Seven Wonders of the Ancient World.....	4894
Historic Legends.....	4895

INDEX.

General References, Maps and Illustrations.....	4905
---	------

CHAPTER XLV.

BRITISH AND DUTCH IN SOUTH AFRICA.

SECTION I.—CAPE COLONY UNDER HOLLAND AND GREAT BRITAIN (SINCE A. D. 1652).

IN 1486—six years before Columbus discovered America—Bartholomew Dias, a Portuguese navigator, while on a voyage in search of a new sea-passage to India, discovered the southern point of Africa and named it the Cape of Storms, but the name of this headland was soon changed to that of Good Hope, because there was now good hope that a new ocean route to India would soon be found. In 1497—eleven years after this discovery and five years after the discovery of America—Vasco da Gama, another Portuguese navigator, doubled the Cape of Good Hope and sailed along the south-eastern coast of Africa and passed the beautiful land which he named Natal, because he first saw it on Christmas day, the natal day of the Founder of Christianity. Vasco da Gama and his crews landed at Delagoa Bay and traded with the natives, after which they sailed on and touched the coast at Quilimane, and then continued their voyage to India. After landing in India, Vasco da Gama founded Calicut, the first European settlement in the East Indies, and from which the word calico was derived. The Portuguese were then the greatest maritime and commercial people in the world, and they established colonies and trading posts along the western and eastern coasts of Africa and the southern coasts of Asia, their most prominent colonies being Goa, in India, and Ormuz, in Persia.

Portu-
guese
Discovery
of South
Africa.

For sixty years—from 1580 to 1640—Portugal was a province of Spain; and during that period the Dutch in the Netherlands were engaged in their Eighty Years' War of Independence against Spain, caused by the tyranny and cruelty of Philip II., whose reign of forty-two years (1556–1598) was the grave of Spain's greatness. The Dutch finally achieved their independence and in the meantime conquered from Spain many of the Portuguese colonies which had come under the Spanish dominion when Portugal was annexed to Spain in 1580. The Dutch Republic, as Holland was then called, succeeded

The
Dutch
Republic
and Its
Colonies.

Portugal as the leading maritime and commercial power of the world, and the Dutch became the great carriers of Europe in the trade with the East Indies, and their navy ruled the seas, Dutch colonies being established in the East and West Indies and in Guiana in South America, New Netherlands in North America and the Cape of Good Hope in South Africa. The capital of their possessions in the East Indies was Batavia, in the island of Java, which was founded in 1619. The Dutch still retain Guiana in South America and their possessions in the East Indies, though they have lost many of their other possessions by British conquest. The Dutch East India Company had immense fleets of war and merchant ships.

The
Dutch
in South
Africa.

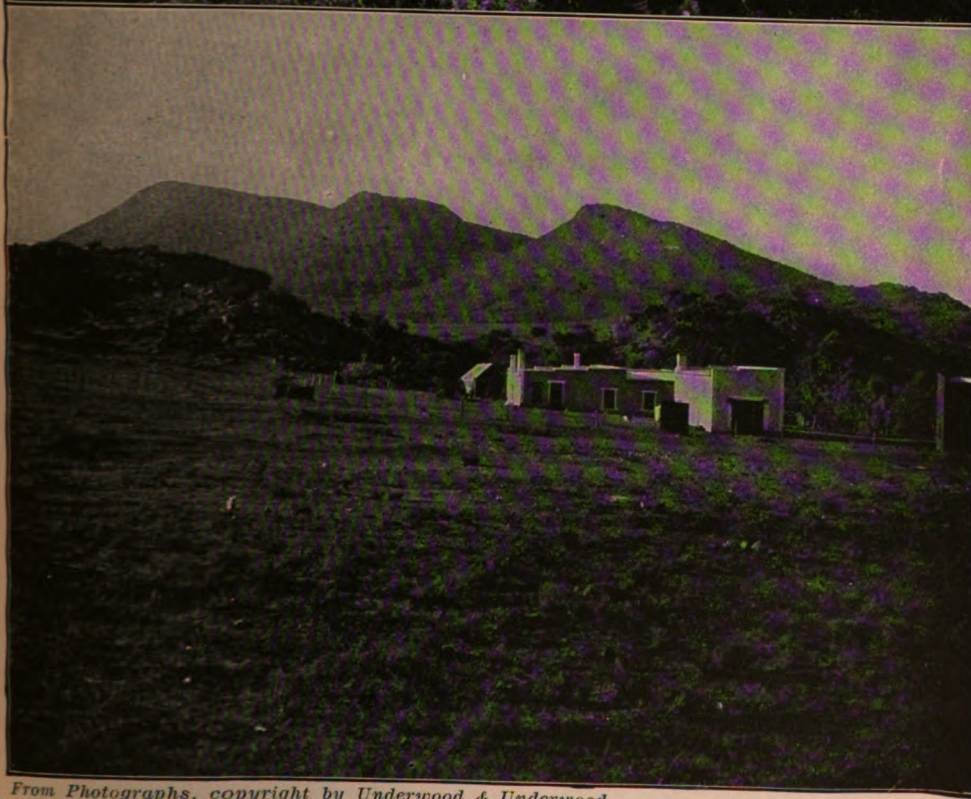
The Dutch colony at the Cape of Good Hope was founded in 1652 by one hundred and fifty settlers from Holland, under Jan Van Riebeeck. In 1658 negro slavery was introduced into this colony, and the introduction of this great wrong was the first and main cause of all the trouble which has since occurred between the Dutch and English in South Africa, just as the introduction of the same great wrong into the English colonies in North America by this same Dutch race in 1620—in which year a Dutch trading vessel sold the first slaves in what is now the United States to the English planters at Jamestown, Virginia—was the great cause of sectional animosity and bloody civil war in the United States.

Dutch
and
French
Colonists.

A few years later many prominent colonists from Holland joined the Dutch colony already planted at the Cape of Good Hope, and Dutch East India Company sent many young women to the colony from the orphan asylums at Amsterdam and Rotterdam to become wives of the Dutch planters already there. The Revocation of the Edict of Nantes by France's great king, Louis XIV., in 1685, and the great persecutions of the Huguenots, or French Protestants, which immediately followed and which caused half a million Huguenots to flee from their native land and to seek homes in England, Holland and Germany, introduced a new foreign element into the Dutch colony at the Cape of Good Hope, several hundred of the Huguenot refugees from France settling among the Dutch colonists there. Among the descendants of these French Protestant settlers in South Africa was General Joubert, the late Vice President of the Transvaal Republic and the commander-in-chief of its military forces. The Dutch colonists of South Africa were not a free community, and they frequently rebelled against the arbitrary rule of Holland.

British
Conquest
of the
Dutch
Republic.

The great French Revolution, which broke out in 1789 and which in 1798 had caused Great Britain, Holland, Spain, Portugal, Austria, Prussia, the German Empire and the Italian states to form a coalition against the new French Republic, was the cause of the loss of many of



From Photographs, copyright by Underwood & Underwood

THE COUNTRY OF THE BOERS

Upper: Looking into the Orange Free State

Lower: Boer Farmhouse and New Zealand Hill

Holland's colonies. In 1795 the French armies conquered Holland and erected that country into the Batavian Republic, in alliance with France, the result of which was war between Great Britain and Holland and the conquest of many of the Dutch colonies in various parts of the world by the British.

In 1795 a British fleet and army under Admiral Elphinstone and General Craig conquered the Dutch colony at the Cape of Good Hope. By the Peace of Amiens between Great Britain and France in 1802, Great Britain agreed to restore the Cape Colony to the Batavian Republic, as Holland was then called; but Great Britain refused to evacuate the Cape of Good Hope, on the ground that Napoleon Bonaparte, then First Consul of the French Republic, did not comply with the terms of his part of the treaty. Although the Cape Colony was afterward recovered by Holland, the British finally conquered it in 1806, being confirmed in its possession by a treaty between Great Britain and Holland in 1814, Great Britain paying Holland six million pounds sterling (about thirty million dollars) for Cape Colony and all the Dutch claims in South Africa, which extended as far north as twenty-five degrees of south latitude, and also the Dutch colonies of Demerara, Berbice and Essequibo, which now constitute the colony of British Guiana. The African domain thus acquired by Great Britain from Holland by purchase and conquest embraced the territory of the two Boer republics which recently made war on the British Empire. Since that time Great Britain has been the paramount power in South Africa.

British
Conquest
of the
Dutch
Colony
in South
Africa.

As we have before remarked, the Dutch population of Cape Colony had not enjoyed political rights under Holland's government, and after they came under British rule the civil and political institutions under which they lived were far more liberal than those under which they had lived before, and the Dutch colonists of South Africa always have had the same civil, political and religious rights as the British colonists. In accordance with the democratic spirit of the nineteenth century, the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland and the British colonies of Canada, Australia, New Zealand, South Africa and other parts of the world where the British population rule have become democratic and self-governing, the suffrage being universal, and all classes and nationalities of white men and civilized men having equal civil, political and religious rights, while the natives have equal civil and religious rights. In fact, the British colonies of Canada, Australia, New Zealand, South Africa and other parts of the world are practically republics, or self-governing democracies, having their own Parliaments and Ministries for their own legislation and government, the Imperial Parliament at Westminster only legislating to establish the colonial

Political
Rights.

governments, and the Imperial Government only appointing the Viceroy and Governors of the various British colonies, while the Imperial Parliament does not tax them or make any laws for them. Only in British dependencies like India and other quarters of the globe where there are few Englishmen or where the mass of the natives are not educated in democracy is there no self-rule, but the natives have the same civil rights as Englishmen.

**British
Abolition
of
Slavery.**

The first serious trouble between the British and the Boers, or Dutch farmers, of Cape Colony, arose in consequence of the abolition of slavery in the British colonies by act of the British Parliament in 1833—the act for which the immortal William Wilberforce had labored for a lifetime and which he saw accomplished but a few months before his death, the same year; and which made Great Britain the first nation in the world to abolish that detestable institution, which she did thirty years before Holland, Russia and the United States abolished slavery within their respective jurisdictions.

**Dutch
Opposition
to
Abolition.**

The British colonial authorities in every portion of the British Empire at once proceeded to put the abolition act in force. The English in Cape Colony said it was their duty as Christians to free every slave they had. The Cape Colony Dutch protested, and sullenly acquiesced after being paid for their slaves. The slaveholders in Cape Colony were these Boers, or Dutch farmers. They complained that the payment they received for the emancipation of their slaves was made in depreciated paper at a large discount, and that they were financially cheated in the transaction. Their dissatisfaction was heightened by the dislocation of industry caused by the compulsory sale of their slave property at a price below the market value, and also by the philanthropic principle of equality involved in the abolition of slavery. They looked upon the blacks as an inferior race, and some of them even argued that negroes are not human beings and have no souls.

**Great
Trek of
1836-37.**

In consequence of their dissatisfaction with the abolition of slavery, about eight thousand Dutch farmers, or Boers, from Cape Colony, went on what is called the "Great Trek of 1836-'37," migrating from the settled portions of Cape Colony northward into the back country of South Africa, then an interior wilderness but little known to the outside world. There the migrating Boers thought they would be free from British rule and that they could hold slaves and do as they pleased generally. But they were warned by the British authorities that, though they could settle where they pleased, if they settled anywhere south of twenty-five degrees south latitude and outside of the Portuguese possessions they would still be British subjects, as Great Britain claimed that, according to international law, her sphere of influence extended over all South Africa as far north as twenty-five degrees south latitude, ex-

cept the Portuguese territories. Great Britain claimed the interior of South Africa hers in consideration of the large money payment which she had made to Holland therefor at the time when she acquired Cape Colony by conquest, cession and purchase.

The emigrant Dutch farmers first proceeded north beyond the Orange river, and some of them explored the country as far as Delagoa Bay with incredible difficulty. The greater portion of them settled themselves in the uplands of the Orange and Vaal rivers, being involved in bloody conflicts with the Matabele. Others crossed the Drakensberg mountains into the present Natal, where the Zulus under Dingaan exercised a savage tyranny of force. After bloody massacres of Boers by Zulus and of Zulus by Boers, among which were the famous "Day of Weeping" and the Dutch reprisal known as "Dingaan's Day," this portion of the emigrant Boers settled in Natal, where they founded the short-lived little Dutch Republic of Natalia, on the site of the present city of Pietermaritzburg, now the capital of Natal. Great Britain refused to recognize the Republic of Natalia, and the Boer leaders there were informed that they would not be allowed to set up an independent government on what was British territory.

"Day of Weeping" and "Dingaan's Day."

Republic of Natalia.

There was already a British settlement upon the Natal coast. The native blacks of Natal were under British protection, and the aggressions of the Boers upon the natives led to conflicts between the Boers and British troops. The Boers were at first successful over the British, but finally were defeated, and direct British sovereignty was extended over Natal in 1843, which then was declared a British colony "for the peace, protection and salutary control of all classes of men settled at and surrounding this important portion of South Africa." The frontiers of Natal were established afterward, and in proclaiming them the British authorities stated that Her Majesty Queen Victoria maintained "her rightful and sovereign authority over any of her subjects residing or being beyond the limits of that district." The Boers relinquished the Republic of Natalia, and most of these Natal Boers retired across the mountains to join their fellow Boers on the plains of the recent Orange Free State. The few Boers who remained in Natal were the ancestors of the present Dutch inhabitants of that British colony.

British Colony of Natal.

In the same year, 1843, a series of treaties, known as the "Napier Treaties," established a chain of negro states under British protection, extending from what is now Pondoland, on the frontiers of Natal, across the mountains and along the course of the Orange river to the region around the present city of Kimberley. The only one of these protected native states still existing in its original form is Basutoland. Thus the Boers, who all the time were within the sphere of British in-

Napier Treaties.

fluence, were isolated from the British colonies on the coast by a barrier in the form of a chain of negro states under British protection.

Orange
River
Sovereignty.

In consequence of Kaffir wars upon the frontier of Cape Colony, Sir Harry Smith, the next Governor of that colony, adopted a policy of controlling the natives and extending direct British sovereignty over the new Boer settlements. The treaties between the British and the blacks were modified in 1847; and on February 3, 1848, a proclamation was issued annexing to Cape Colony the region between the Orange and Vaal rivers under the name of the Orange River Sovereignty.

Harrismith and
Ladysmith.

The present town of Harrismith, in the Orange River Free State, was named in honor of Governor Sir Harry Smith; and Ladysmith, in Natal, which bore such a conspicuous part in the war of 1899, was named in honor of his wife.

Boer
Revolt
and
Battle of
Boomplatz.

By the time just alluded to, 1848, the friction between the emigrant Dutch farmers and the British authorities had become well-nigh irreconcilable. A party of the emigrant Dutch farmers had elected Andries Pretorius to be their commandant, and took up arms to establish an independent republic for themselves. The British defeated the Boers in the battle of Boomplatz, August 29, 1848. That portion of the Boer population which was opposed to British rule then migrated northward across the Vaal river, under the leadership of Pretorius, after whom the present city of Pretoria, the capital of the Transvaal, was named. These Boers, in their new homes beyond the Vaal, were warned that they still were within the sphere of British influence, and that, though they were free to settle there, if they did settle there they were still British subjects.

Boer
Trek
to the
Transvaal.

Orange
River
Settlement.

Those emigrant Dutch farmers who remained in the region between the Orange and Vaal rivers, with the addition of other Dutch emigrants from Cape Colony, were the ancestors of the present Dutch population of the Orange River Free State. These Dutch inhabitants, like those of Natal, were disposed to live quietly under British rule, all the irreconcilable Boers having migrated to the region north of the Vaal river.

Hostility
and
Isolation
of the
Transvaal
Boers.

The Boers beyond the Vaal were as bitterly hostile to their fellow-countrymen who remained in Cape Colony, in Natal and in the Orange river district as they were to the British authorities. As a result of that state of feeling, there was very little intercourse between the Boers north and those south of the Vaal. The Dutch north of the Vaal, or the Transvaal Boers, have been to a great degree differentiated from the remaining Dutch population of South Africa from the beginning; and the history of the Transvaal forms a separate chapter as it were. The turbulent and lawless nature of the Transvaal population characterized the new settlement for a long time, and

the Transvaal Boers were continually at war with the native blacks, with their fellow-countrymen in the Orange river district or among themselves.

The constant wars which the British were obliged to wage to subdue the native black tribes, such as the Hottentots, the Tembus, the Kosas, the Basutos, the Kaffirs, the Zulus, the Bechuanas, the Swazis, the Matabele and others, had been very expensive and had made the whole policy of enlarging the British dominion unpopular in Great Britain, where the "Little Englanders" were making their power and influence felt at that time. This state of public feeling in Great Britain caused Sir Harry Smith, the Governor of Cape Colony, to grant the request of the Transvaal Boers, who asked for independence and for a treaty of friendship with Great Britain, so that their old differences and animosities might be forgotten. Accordingly, in January, 1852, the British and Transvaal commissioners met on the banks of the Sand River, within the northern limits of the Orange river district; and the negotiations ended with the signing of the famous Sand River Convention, January 17, 1852. The principal terms of this treaty were that Great Britain agreed to acknowledge the independence of the Boers north of the Vaal, although they were within the sphere of British influence, on condition that they would prohibit slavery within their borders, while traders and missionaries were to be allowed to prosecute their business on both sides of the Vaal river.

**Sand
River
Conven-
tion and
Trans-
vaal
Republic.**

This was the founding of the first Transvaal Republic, and was a free gift on the part of Great Britain, as she generously gave the Transvaal Boers their independence without charging them any money for the territory which she thus gave them and for which she had paid millions of dollars to Holland. The Filipinos lately offered to pay to the United States the twenty million dollars which the United States paid to Spain for the islands if the United States would grant their independence; but the Transvaal Boers offered and gave nothing, and were not asked to give anything, for territory to which Great Britain had the same right under international law by conquest and purchase as the United States now have to the Philippines. With the exception of the generous and unselfish action of France in aiding the United States to gain her independence without asking or receiving any money or other compensation therefor, the conduct of Great Britain in voluntarily and without compulsion granting the Transvaal its independence in 1852 was one of the most generous and kind acts ever done by a great nation to a small one.

**British
Gener-
osity.**

The same cause which led to the recognition of the Transvaal Republic—the opposition of public sentiment in Great Britain to any

Bloem-
fontein
Conven-
tion and
Orange
Free
State.

further extension of the British Empire—also led to the relinquishment of British sovereignty over the territory between the Vaal and Orange rivers, although within the sphere of British influence. This was done on the initiative of the British government, and in the face of strong opposition from the Dutch inhabitants of that region, as expressed through an assembly of delegates at Bloemfontein. The objections of the Dutch population to independence were finally overcome, but only after a widely-supported protest of a most vigorous character. Many of the Dutch inhabitants declared their intention of nailing the British flag half-mast and of appealing to arms against independence and in favor of the continuance of British rule until the British Parliament reconsidered the question. But in spite of this strong expression of Dutch sentiment in favor of remaining under British rule, a royal proclamation renounced British dominion and sovereignty over the Boers occupying the territory between the Orange and Vaal rivers, January 30, 1854.

Strange
Spec-
tacle.

Thus was founded the Orange Free State, and thus was presented the strange spectacle of a people subject to a great power bitterly opposing and resisting the grant of independence, and the great power which had held sway over those resisting people compelling them to accept independence against their own will. This was a spectacle without a parallel in history.

Condi-
tions of
Independ-
ence.

Thus, by the Sand River Convention of 1852 and by the Bloemfontein Convention of 1854, the Transvaal Republic and the Orange Free State were brought into existence by the free action of Great Britain, which voluntarily granted the independence of these two little Dutch republics within the recognized sphere of British influence in South Africa. These two little communities did not win their independence by force of arms, but as an act of grace by the free gift of Great Britain, and that was their only charter of existence. But their independence was granted to them upon the conditions that they should prohibit negro slavery and give equal rights to all white men throughout their respective territories. The Orange Free State faithfully observed the conditions upon which its independence was established, and has lived upon terms of peace and friendship with Great Britain up to the recent war, while many Englishmen held important offices in the republic, and many of the towns within the republic's limits were thoroughly English, such as Harrismith and others. The late President Sir John Brand exerted himself to his utmost to preserve this amicable feeling between Great Britain and the Orange Free State; but the recent President Steyn had been a mere cat's paw for President Krüger, of the Transvaal, and had labored to undo the pro-British policy of the late President Brand by uniting with the Trans-

vaal President and the Afrikaner Bond to drive the British out of South Africa.

SECTION II.—THE FIRST TRANSVAAL REPUBLIC (A. D. 1852–1877).

As has been remarked, the Orange Free State observed the terms of the treaty establishing its independence. The Transvaal Republic, however, evaded the provision for the prohibition of slavery by practically reëstablishing the system of slaveholding under the name “apprentices” from the very first. These “apprentices” were negroes whom the Boers took prisoners in their constant wars with the various negro tribes around them. These “apprentices” were legally bound to work without pay and were prohibited from changing their masters without permission. This system became law by the Apprentices’ Act of 1856.

**Negro
Slavery
in the
Trans-
vaal.**

Twenty years later, 1876, in asking for British protection against the Boers, Khama, the native Christian chieftain of Bechuanaland, thus spoke concerning the workings of this Apprentices’ Act: “The Boers are coming into my country, and I do not like them. Their actions are cruel amongst us black people. We are like money. They sell us and our children. The custom of the Boers has always been to cause people to be sold, and to-day they are still selling people. Last year I saw them pass with two wagons full of people whom they had bought at the river at Tanane.”

**Khama’s
State-
ment.**

There is other testimony concerning slavery among the Boers. A clergyman of the Dutch Reformed Church, in a book published at Utrecht, in Holland, in 1869, described the Transvaal “apprentice” system as being “slavery in the fullest sense of the word.” A German missionary who had been invited by President Burgers, of the Transvaal, to report in 1875, thus spoke of the “apprentice” system: “And if I am now asked to say conscientiously whether such slavery has existed since 1852 and been recognized and permitted by the government, I must answer in the affirmative.”

**Dutch
and
German
Testi-
mony.**

The testimony of Dr. David Livingstone, the celebrated Scotch missionary and African explorer, on this point is well known and often alluded to, and is as follows: “The Boers steal domestic servants from the more hostile tribes in the most cowardly, cold-blooded way imaginable. * * * When the tribe to be attacked is reached, the natives on foot are forced in front of the horsemen to form, as they say, a ‘shield.’ The Boers then coolly fire over their heads till the devoted people flee, and leave cattle, wives and children to the captors. * * *

**Dr.
Living-
stone’s
Testi-
mony.**

This was done in nine cases during my residence, and on no occasion was a drop of Boer's blood shed. * * * It is difficult for a person to conceive that any body of men possessing the common attributes of humanity should, with one accord, set out on such an expedition. * * * It was long before I could give credit to the tales of bloodshed told by native witnesses; * * * but when I found the Boers themselves * * * glorying in the bloody scenes in which they had been themselves the actors I was compelled to admit the validity of the testimony and try to account for the cruel anomaly."

**Boer
Boasts.**

The Boers themselves often boasted of their massacres of negroes during their slave raids, often claiming to have killed a thousand negroes while they themselves did not lose a man.

**Action of
Pretorius.**

Pretorius, the son of the Boer leader who had led his people into the Transvaal, issued a proclamation in 1859, seven years after the negotiation of the Sand River Convention, in which he called the attention of the local magistrates to the provision of the convention for the prohibition of slavery, and asked them to take measures to enforce its observance.

**Boer
Hostility
to
Mission-
aries.**

The Sand River Convention guaranteed the rights of missionaries and traders in the Transvaal. But the Boers attacked and plundered Dr. Livingstone's mission station, and he escaped with his life only by a fortunate accident. They broke up five other mission stations in the same way. They hated the missionaries for preaching the doctrine of human equality and denouncing the wrong of slavery. The missionaries were constant witnesses of the capture of negro children by Boer raiders, and they angered the Boers by their protests against these detestable outrages.

**Boer
Hostility
to For-
eigners.**

The Boers fined traders for publishing descriptions of trade routes. They passed a law to prevent Englishmen and Germans from owning land in the Transvaal. For twelve years after the signing of the Sand River Convention the Boer leaders declared it to be their policy to shut themselves out from all relations with the outside world and to isolate themselves from all intercourse with the civilized nations. For a long time they opposed the introduction of railways because railways are not mentioned in the Bible.

**Boer
Charac-
teristics.**

The Boers lived in very primitive, simple style, as their fathers, grandfathers and great-grandfathers had lived before them, and opposed such amusements as balls and theaters as very sinful. They had great contempt for wealth as represented by gold, silver, diamonds, etc., but great fondness for wealth as represented by their immense farms of thousands of acres each and by their herds of horses, cattle, swine and sheep. Their sparse population and their extensive country often made a Boer's nearest neighbor ten miles distant

from his home. They were very proud of their ancestry and of the history of their race in its European home. They were very religious and had great reverence for the warlike portions of the Old Testament, and in justification of their treatment of the heathen blacks around them they cited as precedents the treatment of the ancient heathen nations of Palestine by Jehovah's chosen race, the Hebrews. Having no schools, few Boers could read or write.

At the time of the conclusion of the Sand River Convention the Transvaal Boers were unable to agree upon a leader, and rival factions disputed with each other about political ascendancy. As a result of these dissensions, in the very first year of Transvaal independence, 1852, the Republic was split up into four separate miniature republics—Potchefstroom, Zoutpansberg, Lydenburg and Utrecht—which were independent of each other, but sought to establish common laws by the election of one Volksraad, as their legislative assembly is called.

Civil
Wars
and
Anarchy.

This result failed, and anarchy distracted the Transvaal for the first eight years of its independence, 1852–1860. During this period the Transvaal Boers carried on wars against the Orange Free State, as well as engaging in civil wars among themselves and in slave-raiding wars with the negro tribes around them; and Paul Krüger commanded a Transvaal force sent against the Orange Free State.

The
Trans-
vaal's
Civil and
Foreign
Wars.

In 1860 the four Boer republics of the Transvaal agreed to unite under one President; but civil war soon again broke out, which lasted until 1864, when the Transvaal was finally reunited under Marthinus Wessels Pretorius as President, Paul Krüger becoming the Commandant-General. Thus closed the first twelve years of Transvaal independence, 1852–1864—a period of anarchy, civil wars and wars with the Orange Free State. The *Vierkleur*, or four-colored Transvaal flag, is a reminiscence of the period during which the four petty republics of the dismembered Transvaal existed.

Renewed
Civil War
and
Anarchy.

When the Boers entered the Transvaal they drove the Matabele northward and seized their country, and the smaller negro tribes ventured from their hiding places in the hills and caves, apparently submitting to the emigrant Dutch farmers. But during the twelve years of anarchy, civil wars and wars with the Orange Free State, from 1852 to 1864, the black tribes, encouraged by these quarrels of the Boers among themselves and aroused to desperation by the cruel treatment which the Boers had inflicted upon them, gave the Boers very much trouble and took a bloody revenge for the enslavement and massacre of their people by the slave-raiding Boers.

Wars
with
Negro
Tribes.

A powerful negro tribe inhabiting the mountains to the north of the Transvaal was the first to take the field against the Boers, and for

Renewed Wars with Negro Tribes. four years this tribe withstood all the Boer forces which Commandant-General Paul Krüger led against it. The Boers were obliged to abandon the district of Zoutpansberg, and an unsatisfactory peace was concluded in 1868. The Boers then became involved in hostilities with the Baralongs, on the western frontier of the Transvaal.

Troubles of President Pretorius. The last years of the administration of President Marthinus Wesels Pretorius were full of trouble for the Transvaal Republic, which was then well-nigh destitute of funds. The continual wars with the native negro tribes, the wars with the Orange Free State and the civil wars among themselves prevented the Transvaal Boers from establishing any practical system of taxation. The Boer population was exhausted by chronic war.

The Transvaal's Difficulties. Thus far in the history of the Transvaal there was no development of civilization in the Republic. Lack of revenue had prevented the creation of the ordinary machinery of life. The salaries of officials were usually not paid. There were few roads, no bridges, no telegraphs, no public buildings, no schools in the country. Commerce was conducted by means of barter; and taxes were not collected, as the Boers would not pay taxes while their leaders quarreled among themselves, and the authorities were unable to enforce payment.

British Arbitration. In 1871 President Pretorius, unable to overcome his troubles, agreed to submit the western Transvaal frontier question to British arbitration, and accepted the award made by Governor Keate, of Natal, giving the native negro tribes independence of Transvaal rule and also possession of the disputed territory, and deciding against the Transvaal's claim to an important district in the vicinity of the diamond fields. The Transvaalers were so dissatisfied with this award that President Pretorius resigned, and thus ended his troublous administration.

Enlightened Administration of President Burgers. President Burgers, the successor of President Pretorius, was a far more intellectual and cultured man. He sought to remedy the existing misfortunes of his country by the introduction of a new order of things. He visited Europe and succeeded in raising part of a loan authorized by the Volksraad for the construction of a railway. He also engaged European instructors for the purpose of introducing a system of public education into the Transvaal.

Transvaal Demoralisation. President Burgers appears to have entertained the conceptions of an enlightened and progressive statesman and to have desired to carry them into execution. But his unprogressive countrymen, rude and primitive in their origin, had become so demoralized that they were reduced to a condition verging on barbarism, in consequence of twenty years of savage isolation from all civilized and civilizing influences. Having associated freely with Kaffirs, the habits of the Transvaal

Boers had approximated to those of the native negro tribes; and the projects of President Burgers were entirely foiled by the conditions then prevailing in the Transvaal.

The Transvaal Republic now became involved in another war with the powerful Kaffirs, under the leadership of Sikukuni, a warlike chief. The local system of commandos—men commandeered to fight in the public interest—now proved to be ineffectual. President Burgers himself led an expedition against Sikukuni. As nothing could make the President's troops keep the field, it was resolved to substitute a system of paid military forces. To defray the expenses of this new military system, heavy war taxes were imposed upon the Transvaal population; but the people refused to pay these taxes, and the Republic broke down under the strain. The Transvaal government was unable to pay the interest on the public debt and could not defray the government expenses. The one-pound notes (almost equal in value to five dollars of United States money) depreciated to the value of one shilling of British money (about twenty-five cents of United States money).

**Desperate
Straits
of the
Trans-
vaal.**

With an empty treasury, with no army, with victorious neighboring negro tribes invading its territory and threatening to overwhelm and exterminate its people, the Transvaal Republic was now in its dying throes, on the verge of total extinction, its black foes preparing to crush it from all sides. Sikukuni and other negro chiefs had crossed the frontiers on the north-east, north and west. The Matabele, who had been driven from their former homes by the Boers, were ready to take revenge for being robbed of their lands. The Zulus, under Cetywayo, were ready to invade the Transvaal from the south.

**Threat-
ened
Extinction
of the
Trans-
vaal.**

The only two alternatives before the Republic were total annihilation by the native negro tribes, whose people the Boers had wronged and carried into slavery, or annexation to British South Africa for the sake of obtaining British protection to save the Transvaal Boers from extirpation by the triumphant negroes. In this desperate extremity an influential portion of the Transvaal people, under the leadership of the principal officials, sought the powerful protection of Great Britain.

**The
Boers
Seek
British
Protection.**

On the invitation of the ruling factions in the Transvaal and on a petition of a third of the male population of the Republic, negotiations were opened with the British authorities for the annexation of the Transvaal to British South Africa, in return for British protection against the conquering arms of the black invaders of the Boer territory. In his speeches President Burgers himself favored annexation. In a speech to the Volksraad, a few days before annexation was accomplished, he said:

**British
Annexa-
tion of the
Trans-
vaal.**

Speech of
President
Burgers.

"I would rather be a policeman under a strong government than the President of such a state. It is you—you members of the Raad and the Boers—who have lost the country, who have sold your independence for a drink. You have ill-treated the natives, you have shot them down, you have sold them into slavery, and now you have to pay the penalty."

* * * * *

"If you ask what the English have to do with it, I tell you that as little as we can allow barbarities among the Kaffirs on our borders as little can they allow that in a state on their borders anarchy and rebellion should prevail."

* * * * *

"We should not delude ourselves by entertaining the hope that matters would mend by and by. It would only be self-deceit. I tell you openly, matters are as bad as they ever can be; they cannot be worse. These are bitter truths, and people may perhaps turn their backs on me; but then I shall have the consolation of having done my duty."

* * * * *

"To-day a bill for eleven hundred pounds was laid before me for signature; but I would sooner have cut off my right hand than sign that paper, for I have not the slightest ground to expect that when that bill becomes due there will be a penny to pay it with."

Thus spoke the last President of the first Transvaal Republic to his own countrymen concerning their shortcomings and their responsibility for the loss of their country's independence.

Three
Trans-
vaal
Factions.

In a statement made by President Burgers just before his death he accused the pro-English party in the Transvaal of urging forward annexation, and the Dopper party, under the leadership of Paul Krüger, of siding with the pro-English party to overthrow the ruling party. Thus it would appear that three factions in the Transvaal favored annexation—the official faction, the pro-English faction and the Dopper faction. There was a fourth faction, called the "Irreconcilables," composed of the back-country Boers, who opposed annexation.

Burgers's
Official
Protest.

Although accepting the inevitable and acting in full accord with Sir Theophilus Shepstone, the Governor of Cape Colony, President Burgers regretted at heart the loss of his country's independence, which he blamed on the three ruling factions. To appease the Irreconcilables, whose opposition he feared, he published an "official protest" against annexation, to which Sir Theophilus Shepstone consented for appearance sake and to prevent armed opposition on the part of the Irreconcilables, though the British would have been ready to put down such minority opposition by force had it been attempted.

The Act of Annexation was officially proclaimed on April 12, 1877, and immediately was put in operation peacefully; Sir Theophilus Shepstone being supported at Pretoria, the Transvaal capital, by the presence of twenty-five policemen. Soon afterward the principal Transvaal officials, Paul Krüger among them, accepted office under the British government; the only Boer official refusing British favors being Petrus Jacobus Joubert, the late Vice President of the Transvaal Republic and Commandant-General of its military forces. President Burgers retired to Cape Colony.

**Act of
Annexa-
tion.**

Thus, after an independent existence of twenty-five years (1852-1877), the first Transvaal Republic was extinguished by annexation to British South Africa. Its unfortunate end was the fault of its own people, being the result of its helpless situation in consequence of its defenseless condition against powerful native negro tribes whom its people had wronged, and in consequence of its bankrupt treasury, caused by years of civil war and anarchy and by wars with its kindred neighbor, the Orange Free State, and with the powerful neighboring native black tribes.

**Boer
Responsi-
bility for
Annexa-
tion.**

This action of Great Britain in coming to the rescue of the Transvaal Boers to save them from extermination by the negro tribes whose people they had enslaved and massacred was the greatest and most unfortunate of all the mistakes which she ever had made in South Africa, as it involved her in bloody wars with the Zulus, the Kaffirs and other negro tribes under the leadership of Cetywayo and Sikukuni, which cost her ten million pounds sterling (about fifty million dollars) and many precious British lives, besides the two wars which she since has waged against the Boers themselves, which also cost her heavily in blood and treasure, for all of which she received no thanks, as we shall soon see. Thus, politically and in a military point of view, Great Britain's rescue of the Boers was a great blunder, of which she since has sadly reaped the fruits. Her correct policy in 1877 would have been not to interfere in favor of the Boers, but to allow the negro tribes whom they had outraged to wipe them entirely out of existence, as that would have been just retribution for their outrageous and inhuman treatment of the negroes, and as it would have saved Great Britain the thousands of precious lives and the millions of money which she sacrificed in the wars with the Zulus and the Kaffirs in 1879, the war with the Boers in 1881 and the last great war with the Boers. Had she allowed the negro tribes to wipe the Boers entirely off the face of the earth in 1877 there would have been no Transvaal Boers left to fight her in 1880-'81 and 1899-1902. It was very foolish and suicidal for Great Britain to save Boers in 1877-'79 so that they would be left to fight her in 1880-'81 and 1899-1902.

**Unfortu-
nate
Result for
Great
Britain.**

SECTION III.—THE TRANSVAAL UNDER BRITISH RULE (A. D. 1877-1881).

Transvaal Prosperity under British Rule.

THE difficulties of the Transvaal immediately ended upon its annexation to British South Africa. The interest on the public debt was paid, and the civil service was reorganized. An influx of traders and others willing to invest capital and energy under the guarantee of the British flag brought an era of industrial prosperity to the Transvaal. The British troops who occupied the country protected it against negro risings.

War with the Zulus.

In consequence of protecting the Transvaal Boers against extermination by the Zulus under Cetywayo, the British became involved in a bloody war with that warlike and powerful negro nation which lasted several years, ending in 1879, in the conquest of the Zulus and the capture of Cetywayo, the war costing the British eight million pounds sterling (about forty million dollars in United States money)—a war altogether brought about in the first place by Boer aggressions on the Zulus.

Boers Saved from Extermination by British Annexation.

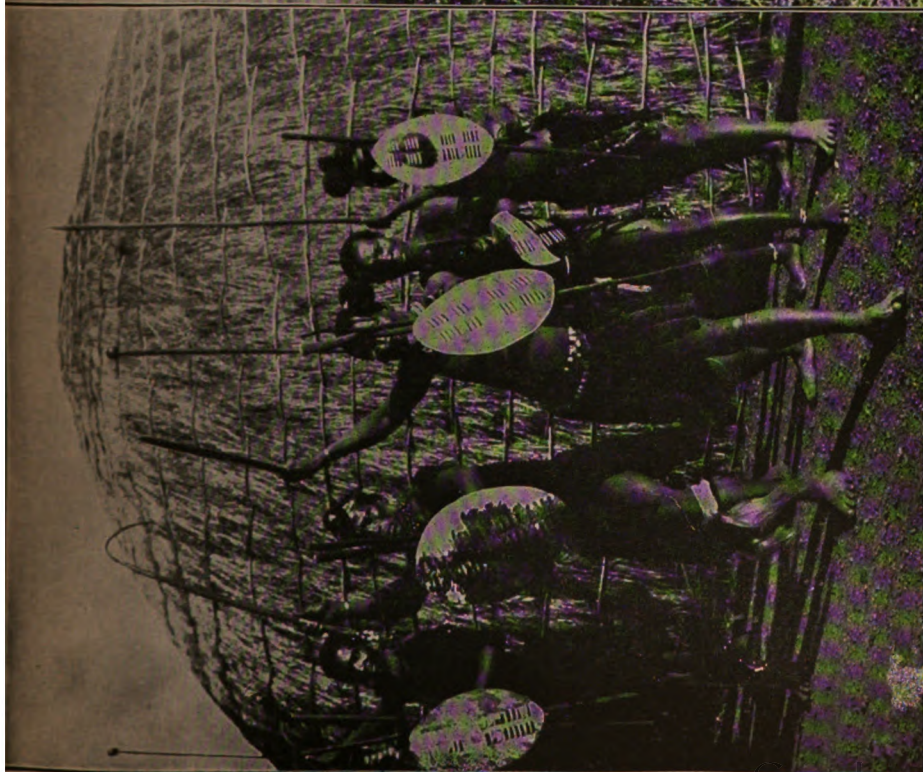
The British also broke the power of the Kaffirs under Sikukuni, thus saving the Boers from annihilation by another powerful negro tribe, whom they likewise had wronged; and by the close of 1879 all the dangers which had menaced the existence of the Transvaal Boers had been removed in consequence of the annexation of the Transvaal to British South Africa, thus restoring order, peace, prosperity and abundant revenue to the country.

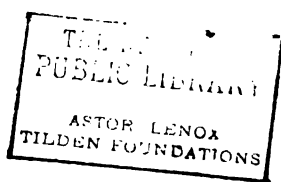
Boers Tired of British Rule.

The happy turn in the affairs of the Transvaal caused a great change in the sentiment of the Transvaal Boers. They now had reaped all the benefits and profited by all the advantages of annexation. Great Britain had crushed their black foes at her own expense and had paid all the Transvaal's debts out of her own pocket, so they had no further need for Great Britain. They gladly had accepted all these favors in the time of their distress; and, having been put on their feet again through British aid and protection, they coolly resolved to throw Great Britain overboard. Great Britain was good enough for them to save them from destruction and pay for it out of her own pocket and at the cost of the lives of her own people, and that was all they wanted.

Boer Petition for Independence.

Having willingly sacrificed their independence to obtain all the benefits and advantages of annexation, and having now obtained these benefits and advantages, the Boers again longed for the independence which they had given up so readily a few years before. The very annexationists among the Boers in 1877 became the independents in 1880. They accordingly prepared a monster petition with six thou-





sand five hundred signatures, asking for the restoration of their independence, and sent it to England.

In the meantime affairs in Great Britain were taking a favorable turn for the Boers. In his Midlothian campaign, in November, 1879, Mr. Gladstone had condemned the annexation of the Transvaal in the strongest terms and had announced his intention to restore Transvaal independence if he came into power. The Boers got hold of his speech and circulated copies of it among their people, who accepted it as an invitation to revolt.

Mr.
Glad-
stone's
Speech.

After the dissolution of the British Parliament, in March, 1880, and the elections in Great Britain, which returned the Liberal party, under Mr. Gladstone, to power, the Boers were chagrined to find that Mr. Gladstone had changed front on the Transvaal question and that he now announced that the Transvaal must remain British territory. They accordingly resolved to appeal to arms to recover their independence at once and made preparations for the struggle. Boer hopes had been raised too high thus to be doomed to disappointment.

Boer Dis-
appoint-
ment.

The rupture began when the Boers resorted to their old expedient toward their own governments when their public servants were unpopular—the refusal to pay taxes. The determination of the British Administrator of the Transvaal, Sir Owen Lanyon, to enforce payment of taxes by the seizure of the goods of a recalcitrant farmer led to open defiance and brought matters to a crisis. The Boers held a great public meeting at Paardekraal, in which Paul Krüger, Marthinus Wessels Pretorius and Petrus Jacobus Joubert were elected a triumvirate to conduct public affairs; and the independence of the Transvaal was declared on December 16, 1880. The Boers offered to indemnify Great Britain for her expenditure in behalf of the Transvaal if their independence was restored.

Trans-
vaal
Revolt.

War ensued. The Boers attacked two hundred and fifty British troops at Middelburg, December 23, 1880, killing one hundred and twenty and taking the remainder prisoners. The Boers were repulsed at Potchefstroom, January 7, 1881. Sir Owen Lanyon, the British Administrator in the Transvaal, was summoned to surrender Pretoria; and the Boers closely besieged Potchefstroom. Early in January, 1881, the Boers invaded Natal. On January 26, 1881, a British force of one thousand men, under General Sir George Pomeroy Colley, was repulsed in an attack upon the strong position of five thousand Boers, under General Joubert, at Laing's Nek; the British losing one hundred and eighty-five killed, wounded and missing. On February 8, 1881, the British under General Colley again were defeated by the Boers under Joubert behind rock cover, on the Ingogo River; the British losing one hundred and fifty killed and wounded. On Sunday, February

British-
Boer War
of
1880-81.

Battles of
Laing's
Nek,
Ingogo
River and
Majuba
Hill.

27, 1881, General Colley's force of about six hundred and fifty men was defeated by a superior force of Boers in the battle of Majuba Hill, six thousand feet above sea-level and three thousand feet above camp-level. General Colley was killed, and he lost about two hundred and fifty officers and men in killed, wounded, and prisoners, the survivors fleeing headlong from the scene of action. The Boers, who fought under cover behind rocks and crags, lost about one hundred and thirty in killed and wounded.

Trans-
vaal
Independ-
ence
under
British
Suzer-
ainty.

The Boer victory at Majuba Hill was followed by an armistice and a treaty of peace, in March, 1881, by which Great Britain, in accordance with Mr. Gladstone's first announced Transvaal policy, acknowledged the independence of the Transvaal, under the suzerainty of the British crown. The Transvaal Boers were to have local self-government; but the British government was to control the foreign relations of the restored Republic, and was granted the right to march troops across the Transvaal at any time, while a British Resident Agent was to be established at Pretoria. All munitions of war captured on either side during the war were to be restored. White men of all nationalities were to have equal rights with the Boers in the Transvaal to reside, travel and carry on business in the country and were not to be subject to any special taxation. Slavery of the blacks was to be prohibited, and their interests were safeguarded by other clauses. The treaty also provided that Great Britain should receive compensation for her heavy expenditure on account of the Boers in the wars with the Zulus, the Kaffirs and other native African tribes—a sum equal to about ten million pounds sterling (about fifty million dollars in United States money). The acceptance of these terms by the Boers ended the war. In August, 1881, a Royal Commission on the part of Great Britain concluded a definitive treaty with the Transvaal Republic, on the basis of the preliminary treaty.

SECTION IV.—THE SECOND TRANSVAAL REPUBLIC (A. D. 1881–1899).

Founding
of the
Second
Trans-
vaal
Republic.

THUS was founded the second Transvaal Republic, officially called the South African Republic. The reason why Great Britain retained control of the foreign relations of the Republic was to prevent the Transvaal from making treaties or alliances with foreign powers to the prejudice or disadvantage of Great Britain, and to guard against the danger to the whole white population of South Africa involved in wars between the Boers and the native blacks. The provisions of the treaty of 1881 providing for equal rights for whites and freedom for blacks were the same as those of the Sand River Convention of 1852, when

the first Transvaal Republic was acknowledged as an independent state by Great Britain. During the four years that the Transvaal was under British rule (1877-1881) equality of political rights existed in the Transvaal. While the negotiations for the definitive treaty of peace, in August, 1881, were in progress, Paul Krüger, on behalf of the Transvaal triumvirate, assured the British commissioners that the same political equality for all white men should be maintained under the restored Republic as had existed under the British régime.

In 1882, the second year of the second Transvaal Republic, Stephanus Johannes Paulus Krüger was elected President of the Transvaal, or South African Republic. In 1883 he was confirmed in the office for the term of five years, and he was reelected in 1888, 1893, and 1898. So thoroughly was he master in all the affairs of his little state that it is scarcely too much to say that the history of the second Transvaal Republic was the history of President Paul Krüger. Through this remarkable man, whose fame became world-wide, the Transvaal, before known outside of South Africa only by name, even among the enlightened, also became famous throughout the civilized world. His wonderful personality and force of character stamped themselves upon his country, whose constitution and laws really reflected his personal wishes and religious prejudices. During all those years he presided almost as an absolute ruler over the people whom he governed in that isolated little state.

President
Paul
Kruger.

President Krüger had been a prominent man in the history of his country for half a century. He took a prominent part in the civil wars of the Transvaal and the wars against the Orange Free State, from 1852 to 1864, and was the head of the Dopper faction; the Doppers being the strictest section of the Dutch Reformed Church. He was among the annexationists of 1877 and was a leader of the independents of 1880-1881. By his masterful powers he made everything bend to his will. He often preached in the great church at Pretoria, and in his sermons he told his people that God was and always had been on their side and would enable them to overcome their enemies in battle. His intense piety would not permit him to accept an invitation to the Queen's ball during his visit to London in 1884, such things being too sinful in his estimation. In Paris he was shocked at the ladies' modes of dress. He read few newspapers. Once he was reported to have said: "The Bible is one of the few books I have time to read." It must be acknowledged, however, that the small selection of other books that he read was good—such as *Pilgrim's Progress*, Motley's *Rise of the Dutch Republic*, and histories of the Prince of Orange and of the Thirty Years' War. His manners were those of a simple farmer. He was said to have frequently received visitors in his shirt-

His
Charac-
teristics.

sleeves; to have appeared in public without collar or necktie, and not to have been wasteful of water at his toilet. To his people he was reverently and affectionately known as "Oom Paul"; that is, "Uncle Paul," implying that he was "everybody's uncle." During his visit to London in 1884 he was so poor that he could not pay his hotel bill, but after the discovery of the Rand gold mines he was said to have become worth twenty-five million dollars.

**President
Krüger's
Auto-
cratic
Rule.**

We have alluded to President Krüger's absolute and despotic rule. All political power was in his hands and that of a council of seven. These men practically exercised the legislative and judicial power of the state as well as the executive power. They ignored the laws and orders of the Volksraad, or legislative body, and the decisions of the Supreme Court of the land. In short, the Transvaal was a republic only in name, and was in reality a seventeenth century Dutch and French settlement—a theocratic or religious oligarchy masquerading as a republic—with only the descendants of Protestant Dutchmen and Frenchmen having any political rights. Jews and Catholics were disfranchised, and only members of the Dutch Reformed Church could hold office. The naturalization laws were so illiberal that it required long residence and ten years' military service in the Transvaal armies before an alien or foreigner could become a citizen of the Republic, although he was drafted into the army and subject to a poll tax. The black man was denied all civil as well as political rights and was practically in a state of slavery, the Boers looking upon the negro as being no human being and having no soul. Negroes were not allowed to walk on the sidewalks of streets or to enter a Boer church.

**General
Traits
of the
Boers.**

The Boers are pious and bigoted and very attentive to their church duties. They resemble the English Puritans and the Scotch Covenanters of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries in their aversion to frivolous amusements, which they consider sinful. They are primitive and mediaeval in their habits and beliefs and unprogressive in their character. They are averse to hard physical labor, and have their work done by their black servants, or slaves.

**Their
Jealousy
of For-
eigners.**

They regard foreigners with jealousy and suspicion and the English with intense animosity, ingrained into them by the history and traditions of a century. They like to be left alone with their country and to live a pastoral life on their immense farms of thousands of acres and tend their cattle and sheep, and have contempt for the wealth represented by gold and diamonds. They love their national independence and are so intensely patriotic that they are ready to shed their last drop of blood to maintain their separate national existence. They are averse to paying taxes, and the desperate straits of their country in the past were attributable largely to this fact.

They were a great military power and are among the best soldiers in the world. In fact, under President Krüger their little republic became a military camp, like the great monarchies of Continental Europe. They have great reverence for the Old Testament, especially the war-like portions which tell how God's chosen people showed no mercy to the heathen people around them; and they justify their harsh treatment of the native blacks by precedents from the Hebrew sacred texts. Until lately they had no schools; and formerly they opposed the introduction of railroads because railroads are not mentioned in the Bible, though they had no religious scruples against the introduction of fire-arms or heavy artillery, even if these instruments of warfare are not mentioned in the Bible.

**Their
Military
Char-
acter.**

Their dwellings and other buildings are very simple and primitive, as are also their farm machinery and implements. In short, they have great veneration for the methods and ideas of their fathers, grandfathers and great-grandfathers, and do not readily take to new-fangled, modern notions. Their fondness for hunting has made them good marksmen from childhood, and the Boer women can shoot as well as the men.

**Their
Unpro-
gressive-
ness.**

The Dutch language of South Africa is not the pure Dutch of Holland, but a corrupt Dutch produced by the mingling of the Huguenot French element with the Dutch population of South Africa. This corrupt Dutch is the only language allowed to be taught in the Boer schools.

**Corrupt
Dutch
Lan-
guage.**

The Boers of the Orange Free State and of the British colonies of South Africa, who have not been isolated from the outside world, have progressed with the British colonists of South Africa and have adopted modern ideas and methods, for which reason they have not been looked upon with favor by their unprogressive and primitively-disposed kinsmen of the Transvaal Republic.

**Orange
River
and
Other
Boers.**

The conditions of the convention of 1881, by which the Transvaal became an independent but not a sovereign state, were irksome and distasteful to President Krüger from the beginning; and his efforts were directed to getting rid of British suzerainty and control of the foreign relations of his country, which he desired to have wholly independent in its foreign as well as in its domestic affairs. As President Krüger now desired to cultivate foreign relations, the suzerainty and foreign-relations provisions of the treaty of 1881 became particularly inconvenient.

**Boer
Dissatis-
faction
with
British
Suzer-
ainty.**

The previous isolation of the Transvaal Boers from all intercourse with the outside world was the reason why they and their country were comparatively unknown to the civilized world and was the main cause of the popular sympathy for the Boers throughout the world. Only as a

**Results
of Boer
Isolation.**

result of its short union with British South Africa from 1877 to 1881 and the settlement of a large foreign population within its limits in 1886 did the Transvaal become an important country in the eyes of the civilized world. The first Transvaal Republic was a semi-barbarous community. The second became an organized state with a well-equipped and disciplined military establishment under the instruction of European military experts.

Great
Britain's
Refusal to
Release
Her
Suzer-
ainty.

In 1883 the Transvaal asked permission to send a deputation to London to revise the convention of 1881 and secure release from such conditions of the treaty as it considered irksome. The British authorities granted the request; and in November, 1883, President Krüger and two other Transvaal delegates arrived in England. They first expressed a desire that the Transvaal be recognized as a wholly independent sovereign state, to have the right to negotiate treaties with foreign powers of its own accord and to be free of British interference in relation to the native blacks. Lord Derby informed them that this could not be done; and Great Britain retained her right to veto the Transvaal's foreign treaties, but granted the Boers modifications in some minor details of the treaty of 1881.

London
Convention of
1884.

These negotiations ended in the signing of the London Convention of 1884, on February 27th of that year, exactly three years after the Boer victory of Majuba Hill. This treaty reaffirmed the conditions of the convention of 1881 regarding the rights of aliens in the Transvaal, the rights of blacks, the prohibition of slavery or "apprenticeship," freedom of religion and the most-favored-nation treatment for British goods. Several articles of the convention distinctly gave Great Britain the right to interfere in Transvaal affairs if the terms of the treaty were violated by the Boers.

Misunder-
standing
on Both
Sides.

There since has seemed to be a misunderstanding on both sides concerning the suzerainty question in the London Convention of 1884, the Boers claiming that as the word suzerainty was not mentioned in the treaty it practically was renounced there, but the British claim that as it was not renounced formally it still existed.

President
Krüger's
Satisfac-
tion.

The London Convention of 1884 did not give the Boers all that they desired, but it gave them more than they had expected; and President Krüger and his associates expressed themselves as satisfied with the result of the negotiations. The President was so poor that he could not pay his hotel bill, and it was paid for him by a generous Englishman.

His
Invitation
to For-
eigners.

Mr. Krüger himself published in the English newspapers a cordial invitation and promise of welcome and protection to all Englishmen who might wish to settle in the Transvaal. After leaving England he visited Holland and Germany and also invited Hollanders and Ger-

mans to settle in his country. Thus opened up a new era in Transvaal history.

After President Krüger returned from his European visit, near the close of 1884, he was in very serious straits for money, and troubles with the native blacks were rife, thus making the old difficulties of the Transvaal as acute as ever. Vice President Joubert, who had acted as President during President Krüger's absence, resigned all his offices upon the President's return and placed himself at the head of a faction which held President Krüger's anti-English retrogressive policy responsible for the "bad condition of the country"; and he was thereafter a thorn in the President's side. As usual, when the authorities of the Republic quarrelled among themselves, the country Boers refused to pay taxes; and by the close of 1885 the Transvaal was again on the verge of bankruptcy.

In its desperate straits the Transvaal Republic was again in danger of being obliged to sacrifice its independence through its internal troubles and the faults of its own people, as it was believed that the Transvaalers again would be obliged to ask for annexation to British South Africa in consequence of the Republic's helpless condition.

The threatened death of the second Transvaal Republic was averted by an unexpected circumstance—the discovery of the Witwatersrand gold mines in 1886. This event was both fortunate and unfortunate for the Republic—fortunate because it furnished the resources to put the Republic on its feet and save it from immediate extinction; but unfortunate because it introduced new elements and new issues into the Transvaal which brought on a collision for which generations of race hatred had prepared the way.

The future of the Transvaal was changed entirely by the discovery of the Rand gold mines; and, in accordance with President Krüger's published invitations in England, Holland and Germany in 1884, foreigners began pouring into the Transvaal by thousands, mostly Englishmen, but also Irishmen, Scotchmen, Welshmen, Frenchmen, Dutchmen, Belgians, Germans, Danes, Swedes, Norwegians, Americans and others. This was wholly a mining population. British and other foreign capital and enterprise at once produced a complete transformation in the material condition of the Transvaal and put an end to its financial straits. These foreign capitalists bought mining concessions from the Transvaal government, which gave them the right to the mines and furnished the Transvaal with vast financial resources.

So rapid had been the increase in the foreign population of the Transvaal in ten years (1886–1896) that the mining city of Johannesburg sprang up as if by magic, having grown in six years (1890–1896) from nothing to a city of over a hundred thousand inhabitants,

The Transvaal's Desperate Straits.

Its Dilemma.

Discovery of the Rand Gold Mines.

The Uitlanders.

Johannesburg.

one-half of whom were whites and the other half blacks. The white population of the city consisted almost exclusively of foreigners, called Uitlanders, or Outlanders; there being only about a thousand Boers in the city. With the continual expansion of the gold-mining industry the city's population was increasing rapidly all the time, so that by the close of 1895 foreigners were flocking into the Transvaal at the rate of a thousand per week.

British
and
Boers
in the
Trans-
vaal.

By 1899 the entire Uitlander population of the Transvaal had grown to more than a hundred thousand, the majority of whom were British, the Germans being said to number about twenty thousand and the Americans about ten thousand. The Transvaal Boers numbered less than eighty thousand; and the native blacks, Kaffirs and other tribes, were almost eight hundred thousand. Thus two distinct white populations had existed in the Transvaal since 1886. The entire population of the Transvaal, white and black, numbered less than a million, or less than a thirteenth of the population of New York and Pennsylvania, while its area was greater than the combined areas of those two great States of the American Union.

American
Consul-
General's
Report.

The United States Consul-General at Cape Town, in a report issued from Washington upon a tour of South Africa which he made in 1898, spoke of Johannesburg thus: "Johannesburg has been built up by the gold-mining industry, developed by foreign capital; and American ability has had a hand in the development, for Americans occupy very necessary and responsible positions. * * * For twenty miles on each side of the city extend the headgears and smokestacks of mines—over one hundred of them—which have made the city and state what it is and enabled President Krüger to sell a farm for eighty thousand pounds the day I was there. * * * Over fifteen tons of gold per month is the product of the mines, and the ground is only beginning to be worked."

Sudden
Wealth
of the
Trans-
vaal.

The Rand gold mines converted the Transvaal from a very poor to a very rich country, gave its government an immense revenue and made President Krüger's individual wealth about twenty-five million dollars. He afterwards sold one of his farms for one hundred thousand pounds (half a million dollars) in gold. His friends and neighbors sold farms at even greater prices, receiving many millions of dollars from foreign settlers. The taxes wrung from the Uitlanders were spent in arming the Transvaal and in paying exorbitant salaries to the Transvaal officials.

Wealth
of the
Krüger
Family.

President Krüger himself received a salary equal to thirty-five thousand dollars a year; while on repeated occasions he had received sums equal to fifteen thousand and twenty-five thousand dollars paid out in taxes for his direct and exclusive benefit, as seen in the Transvaal

public records. It is believed that he received much more than was recorded. His son-in-law and private secretary possessed a single house costing a sum equal to two hundred and fifty-nine thousand dollars and rolled in wealth besides. The authority for this last statement is Mr. Howard C. Hillegas, the author of *Oom Paul's People* and other books on the Boers.

The official records in a Transvaal law suit, arising from a quarrel between two sets of Boer plunderers, showed that many Boer officials, President Krüger's son-in-law among them, received bribes from a Boer railroad company, the amount of each bribe being specified in a bill of particulars filed in open court. Not one of the accused officials ever denied receiving these bribes. The whole Transvaal government was corrupt from top to bottom, and no business could be done with the Republic's officials without bribing the President's son-in-law and hangers-on.

**Boer
Corruption
and
Venality.**

In order to compel the foreign miners to hire his private ox-teams at enormous prices, President Krüger for a long time resisted the introduction of railroads. When finally he did permit railways to be built he granted the privilege exclusively to persons who would agree to give his relatives a big share of the profits. He granted monopolies on several indispensable articles of mining supplies, the result of which was to double the price at which the same articles could be obtained otherwise.

**President
Krüger's
Opposition
to
Rail-
roads.**

Thus the unprecedented development of wealth in the Transvaal wrought a complete change in the conditions of the country. This result was produced entirely by the Uitlanders, or foreigners, most of them British subjects. The Boers themselves never have taken any part in the development of the mining industry, nor have they allowed the Uitlanders any share in the government.

**Uitlander
Enter-
prise.**

In 1887, the year after the discovery of the Rand gold mines, the value of the output was half a million pounds sterling. In 1899, twelve years later, it had increased to sixteen million pounds, or thirty-two times as much. In 1884 the Transvaal owned three hundred and ninety-six thousand pounds sterling, its revenue then being one hundred and forty-three thousand pounds, and its expenses about one hundred and eighty-four thousand pounds. While the expenditure exceeded the revenue about twenty-five per cent., the revenue had fallen from the previous year by about the same rate. The security on the public debt was uncertain, and the possibility of paying the interest on the debt was even doubtful.

**Develop-
ment of
the Rand
Gold
Mines.**

In 1897 the revenue had arisen to four million four hundred and eighty thousand pounds sterling, while the expenditure was four million three hundred and ninety-four thousand pounds, thus assuring

**Increase
of the
Trans-
vaal
Revenue.**

the payment of interest on a public debt of three million pounds. In 1884 the salaries of the Transvaal officials were insignificant. In 1886, the year of the Rand gold discovery, the total amount paid in salaries was fifty-one thousand pounds sterling. In 1899 it had arisen to a total of one million two hundred and sixteen thousand three hundred and ninety-four pounds, a sum sufficient to give every adult male of the small Boer population of the Transvaal forty pounds, or two hundred dollars, a year.

Uitlanders
Grievances.

As before remarked, the Uitlanders supplied all the industrial energy which developed the country, while the Boers reserved to themselves all the rights of government and all the emoluments of official position. The Uitlanders complained that they were deprived of political rights; were taxed without being represented; were deprived of the privilege of naturalization through illiberal naturalization laws; were subjected to mob rule; were denied justice in the Transvaal courts; were nevertheless compelled to pay nine-tenths of all the taxes; were compelled to perform military service and to pay poll taxes while not being given the rights of citizenship and not being allowed to vote. Of the twenty million dollars in taxes levied annually in the Transvaal, the Uitlanders paid eighteen millions, or nine-tenths. The taxes amounted to about eighty dollars a head yearly.

New
Illiberal
Natural-
ization
Laws.

When foreigners, at President Krüger's published invitations in England, Holland and Germany, in 1884, first settled in the Transvaal the naturalization laws were very liberal, a residence of only two years being required for full citizenship. After the foreigners had accepted his invitation by coming into the Transvaal he repealed all naturalization laws absolutely. Under pressure he afterwards restored them, but extended the time for naturalization to five years and afterwards to fourteen years.

Uitlanders
without
Political
Rights.

These were fourteen years of suspense to the foreign applicant for Transvaal citizenship, during which he was a citizen of no country, being required to renounce for that time all claims to protection both from the government of his native country and from the Transvaal government, without any rights which a Boer was bound to respect.

Forced
Military
Service.

During these fourteen years he was subject to forced service in the Transvaal army on twelve hours' notice, for which service he would receive no pay and be compelled to provide his own food and clothing. He was also subject to a poll tax during this long period of non-citizenship of any country, although he could not vote.

Hard
Condi-
tions.

At the end of these fourteen years of degrading humiliation he would not be allowed to vote, unless his humble petition was approved by two-thirds of his Boer neighbors, by the military commander of the district and finally by His Excellency the President of the Republic

himself. Even then he could not vote unless he were forty years of age.

Although two-thirds of the white inhabitants of the Transvaal spoke the English language, the Uitlanders were compelled to have their children educated in the corrupt Dutch language taught in the Boer schools and were forbidden to have them taught in their own English mother tongue.

**Boer
Dutch
Schools.**

In 1895 various annoyances were inflicted upon these foreigners, in order to make their unwelcome presence in the Transvaal territory as unpleasant and irksome to them as possible. By a press law, passed for the avowed purpose of crushing the Uitlanders, all newspapers were placed at the mercy of President Krüger, who could suppress them at his pleasure. By another law, passed with the same object in view, all meetings of more than seven persons in the open air were absolutely prohibited, while all other meetings would be dissolved in an instant, at the discretion of any policeman. Another law was passed absolutely prohibiting any foreigner from presenting a petition for a redress of grievances.

**President
Krüger
and the
Germans.**

As early as 1892 President Krüger replied to an influential Uitlander deputation that had waited upon him and petitioned for a redress of grievances: "Go back and tell your people that I shall never give them anything; I shall never change my policy; and now let the storm burst." To Mr. Campbell, the spokesman of the deputation, who protested against a certain measure, the President replied: "Protest! protest! What is the good of protesting? You have not got the guns! I have."

**His
Reply to a
Uitlander
Deputa-
tion.**

When the Transvaal Volksraad confirmed President Krüger's attitude in 1895, by absolutely rejecting a Uitlander petition for a redress of grievances bearing thirty-five thousand signatures, and giving the Uitlanders to understand that if they wanted the franchise they would have to fight for it, the relations between the Transvaal government and the oppressed Uitlanders had become so strained that the choice lay between redress and revolution; but the criminal folly of the Jameson raid upset the reformers' plans.

**His
Rejection
of a
Uitlander
Petition.**

The British opposition to the extension of the Transvaal territory in all directions by six armed Boer raids destroyed President Krüger's hopes in that direction; and he accordingly began to cultivate friendly foreign relations with other powers, especially with Germany, the other great European power with territorial possessions in South Africa. Dr. Leyds, the Transvaal diplomatic agent in Europe, was credited as the author of President Krüger's ambitious policy of striving to secure foreign alliances as a counter-balance to Great Britain's power in South Africa.

**His
Friendly
Relations
with
Germany.**

**Trans-
vaal
Emissa-
ries and
Secret
Service.**

The conventions of 1881 and 1884 stood in the way of any Transvaal treaty with foreign powers inimical to Great Britain, but it was believed that Transvaal emissaries were secretly at work on the Continent of Europe and that an extensive secret service was maintained by the Transvaal. Dr. Leyds was active in his secret work at Berlin and Lisbon, to win for the Transvaal the friendship and support of Germany and Portugal, the two Continental European powers with large possessions in South Africa.

**The
Trans-
vaal
Seeks a
Seaport.**

Transvaal orders for military equipments were placed with Continental European firms. The Transvaal government made fruitless efforts to acquire Delagoa Bay from Portugal, in order to give the South African Republic a seaport of its own; its inland situation placing it at a great disadvantage in an international point of view.

**Boer-
German
Schemes.**

Rumors were current that a Dutch South African rising, backed by foreign support and having for its object the establishment of an independent United States of South Africa, was contemplated. As early as 1892 it was reported that a detailed scheme, bearing the German consul's name, had been drawn up in Pretoria for the landing of German troops at Delagoa Bay. It was known that the reorganization of the Transvaal forces was being placed in German hands. The Transvaal gave secret advantages to German firms, in defiance of the terms of the London Convention of 1884, thus causing great annoyance in commercial circles.

**Uitlander
Alarm.**

The immense supplies of arms and ammunition which were known to be pouring into the Transvaal, as well as the construction of forts at Johannesburg and Pretoria, caused great uneasiness to the British authorities and to the Uitlanders in the Transvaal. These growing suspicions were confirmed by a speech of President Krüger at a banquet in honor of the German Emperor's birthday, early in 1895, when he eulogized the Germans in the Transvaal and condemned British subjects, making use of the following words on this occasion:

**President
Krüger's
Pro-
German
Speech.**

"Therefore I shall ever promote the interests of Germany, though it be but with the resources of a child, such as my land is considered. This is now being trodden upon by one great power, and the natural consequence is that it seeks protection from another. The time has come to knit ties of the closest friendship between Germany and the South African Republic, ties such as are natural between father and child."

**Scheme
of the
Afrikan-
der Bond.**

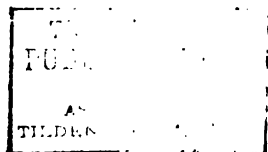
About the same time the formula of "South Africa British or Lower German" began to be commonly used in German colonial circles on the Continent of Europe. The secret scheming for the overthrow of British power in South Africa, and the establishment in its stead of a great Dutch republic to be known as the United States of South



From a Photograph, copyright by Underwood & Underwood

PRESIDENT KRUGER, AND HIS HOUSE AT PRETORIA

Digitized by Google



Africa, was said to be the work of an organization known as the Afrikander Bond, instigated by the Boer leaders.

While the Boers were accusing the British of aiming to deprive the Transvaal of its independence, the British were accusing the Boers of endeavoring to deprive Great Britain of her South African dominions, or, at least, of trying to make the Transvaal Republic the paramount power in South Africa instead of Great Britain.

**Mutual
Accusa-
tions.**

Late in 1895 President Krüger closed the drifts, or fords, by which goods were carried on the Orange Free State and Natal railways, for the purpose of forcing traffic over his own line by Delagoa Bay. The British imperial government and the Cape Colony government, by a joint ultimatum, informed him that his action in this case was a plain violation of the terms of the conventions of 1881 and 1884 relating to freedom of trade with the Transvaal, and that it would not be tolerated; whereupon he rescinded his declaration and retreated from his position in this matter. His course in this affair looked as though he was ready to separate the interests of the Transvaal Boers from the interests of the Dutch populations of the Orange Free State and of British South Africa.

**President
Krüger's
Blow at
Free Com-
merce
and His
Retrac-
tion.**

The most important result of the discovery of the Rand gold mines was the fact that it placed in the hands of a naturally-warlike people the means to convert themselves into a fully-armed military power, organized and equipped on modern principles. The Transvaal was always able to find men for this purpose; but, as modern military efficiency is largely a matter of expense, it was only by the industry of the Uitlanders that the difficulty presented by the enormous expense of carrying out the Transvaal scheme for a large military establishment was overcome.

**The
Trans-
vaal's
Military
Estab-
lishment.**

Besides his desire to throw off British suzerainty, President Krüger desired to enlarge the Transvaal territory in all directions, although his people already had more land than they could occupy, the Boer population of the Transvaal then numbering only about forty thousand and its territory being greater than that of both New York and Pennsylvania. The treaty of 1881 clearly defined the boundaries of the Transvaal; but during the fourteen years beginning with 1881 and ending with 1895 there were six Boer lawless, filibustering raids into the neighboring native negro states under British protection—raids similar to the raid of five hundred British filibusters under Dr. Jameson into the Transvaal at the close of 1895. These six Boer raids were thus in violation of the treaties of 1881 and 1884. Although the treaty of 1881 forbade negro slavery, the Transvaal Boers, in a war with Mapoch, a negro chief on the northern Transvaal frontier, seized about eight thousand blacks and held them as "apprentices."

**Six.
Great
Boer
Filibus-
tering
Raids.**

**Boer
Raid into
Bechu-
analand.**

The first of the six Boer raids occurred a few months after the treaty of 1881, when lawless Boer raiders whom the Transvaal authorities professed to be unable to control made raids across the western Transvaal frontier into Bechuanaland, wherein within two years they established two little Boer republics known as Stellaland and Goshen. After making many fruitless efforts at negotiation for several years for a peaceful settlement, the British authorities effected an adjustment only by sending an expedition under General Sir Charles Warren into Bechuanaland in 1885, at an expense of two million pounds sterling (about ten million dollars in United States money), and after much disturbance and trouble in Cape Colony. This first Boer raid occurred before the London Convention of 1884 was negotiated, and the settlement of the trouble resulting therefrom was effected only in the year after its negotiation.

**Five
Other
Boer
Raids.**

The London Convention of 1884 defined a rectified boundary of the Transvaal, which the Transvaal, by a special clause, solemnly bound itself to observe faithfully. Notwithstanding this clause, the Transvaal Boers made five other raids into the neighboring negro states under British protection, in utter violation of both the conventions of 1881 and 1884.

**Boer
Raid into
Zululand.**

In the year in which the troubles resulting from the first Boer raid were adjusted—1885—the Boers made a raid into Zululand and established the "New Republic" in the most fertile part of that neighboring land. British intervention proved fruitless; and in 1886 the British authorities recognized the "New Republic," and it was annexed to the Transvaal. Thus the second Boer raid into neighboring territory was successful, in defiance of the treaties of 1881 and 1884 and of British intervention.

**Boer
Raid into
Swazi-
land.**

In 1887 the Boers made a third raid into the neighboring territory by invading Swaziland, whose independence was guaranteed by the London Convention of 1884. After many unsuccessful incursions into this region, some of which almost caused British armed intervention, President Krüger finally had his way and Swaziland practically became a dependency of the Transvaal Republic.

**Boer
Raid into
Tonga-
land.**

In 1887 also the Boers made a fourth raid into neighboring territory by invading Tongaland, on the south-eastern frontier of the Transvaal; but the Queen of Tongaland asked for the protection of Great Britain, whose suzerainty she accepted, and the fourth Boer raid into neighboring territory ended in failure.

**Boer
Raid into
British
Bechu-
analand.**

In 1890—the year after the grant of a royal charter to Cecil John Rhodes—the Boers made their fifth raid into neighboring territory by organizing an immense trek for the purpose of establishing a Boer republic in the territories of Mr. Rhodes's chartered company; but this

Boer raid was frustrated by the firmness of the British High Commissioner of South Africa and of Dr. Jameson, who met the Boer raiders on the Limpopo river with a band of the British Bechuanaland Police, while the High Commissioner informed President Krüger that if his people crossed the river as raiders it would mean war.

In 1895 the Boers made their sixth raid into neighboring territory by inroads into the native territories of Lambaan and Umbegesa, on the eastern coast of South Africa, between the boundaries of Zululand and Portuguese South-east Africa; but this attempt at Boer aggression was prevented by the annexation of these territories to British South Africa, whose protectorate thus was extended to the frontier of Portuguese South-east Africa. Thus the last hope of extending Transvaal territory had vanished.

Boer
Raid into
Lambaan
and Um-
begesa.

Having just described six great Boer filibustering, lawless and criminal raids into the neighboring negro states under British protection, of which very few people ever have heard, we will now proceed to give an account of the single, solitary British filibustering, lawless and criminal raid into the Transvaal, of which every intelligent person has heard so much about. The fact that the Transvaal Boers engaged in six such great outrageous and lawless enterprises did not justify the British sympathizers with the oppressed Uitlanders in engaging in even a single enterprise of a similar character. By engaging in such a criminal raid, Dr. Jameson and his five hundred raiders proved themselves as bad as the naughty Boers who had engaged in the six great raids to which we just have alluded.

One
Great
British
Filibus-
tering
Raid.

Late in 1895 and early in 1896 the Uitlander agitation for reform had reached such a crisis that a revolutionary rising was threatened at Johannesburg. The leaders of the Uitlander reform movement were British, with one exception, John Hays Hammond, an American mining engineer, who went to South Africa from California.

Crisis at
Johannes-
burg.

To aid the threatened Uitlander rising at Johannesburg, Dr. Jameson led a force of five hundred British colonial raiders across the border into the Transvaal; but the raiders were defeated at Doornkop with heavy loss by Transvaal troops and forced to surrender. Dr. Jameson was handed over to the British authorities for punishment, and afterward was tried and convicted in London for a violation of the Foreign Enlistment Act and was given a term of imprisonment.

Dr.
Jame-
son's
Raid
into the
Trans-
vaal.

In consequence of this foolish raid the diplomatic relations between Great Britain and Germany became very strained. The Emperor William II. of Germany sent a telegram to President Krüger congratulating him upon the defeat of the raiders, thus giving currency to rumors of a secret understanding between Germany and the Transvaal and making the British more suspicious of President Krüger's

Strained
British-
German
Rela-
tions.

good faith toward Great Britain. The press of Great Britain and that of Germany both assumed a warlike tone, and a rupture of the peaceful relations between these two Great Powers was threatened; but the good sense of both prevailed, and within a week peaceful relations were restored between them.

**Accusa-
tions
against
Chamber-
lain and
Rhodes.**

The Rt. Hon. Joseph Chamberlain, the British Colonial Secretary, and Mr. Cecil John Rhodes, the Prime Minister of Cape Colony, the "Uncrowned King of South Africa," were accused loudly by the Boers and by their sympathizers everywhere of not only complicity in the plot for the Jameson raid, but of being the schemers and originators of the whole thing. No accusation whatever was made against Sir Hercules Robinson, the Governor of Cape Colony and British High Commissioner for South Africa. Messrs. Chamberlain and Rhodes both denied the serious charges against them. Mr. Rhodes was accused by persons in England of aiming to establish an English republic in South Africa, independent of Great Britain, which he also denied strongly.

**Boer
Rejection
of the
Uitlander
Petition.**

The crisis at Johannesburg at the close of 1895, which had incited the Jameson raid, was brought about by the failure of a petition for a redress of grievances, signed by thirty-five thousand Uitlanders and presented to the Transvaal Volksraad, which rejected the petition with insult and ridicule, President Krüger speaking against the petition several times, and one member saying: "The Raad had frequently heard that if the franchise were not extended there would be trouble. I would say: 'Come on and fight! Come on! Come on and have it out; and the sooner the better!'"

**Uitlander
Mani-
festo.**

Hitherto the capitalists of Johannesburg, with the usual timidity of moneyed interests, held aloof from the reform movement; but now they took part in that movement, thus making revolution a necessity. The day after Christmas, 1895, the demands of the Uitlanders were stated in a manifesto issued by the Transvaal National Union, the reform organization, and were as follows: The establishment of a true republic; a constitution framed by the representatives of the whole people, to be safeguarded against hasty alteration; an equitable franchise law; and the independence of the courts of justice.

**Uitlander
Plot.**

As they had petitioned and remonstrated in vain for years, many of the Uitlanders, most of whom were British and Americans, plotted to secure redress by force of arms. They had collected arms and ammunition, but never made use of them and never committed any overt act, owing to a misunderstanding in connection with the Jameson raiders, who took the field in their cause before they were ready and thus defeated the plans of the reform party at Johannesburg.

The plot being discovered before the conspirators carried it out, sixty of them, among whom were six Americans, were arrested, im-

prisoned in a filthy jail, and informed that if they did not plead guilty they all would be hanged, but that if they did plead guilty they would be let off with fines. As President Krüger had no judge willing to do his bidding, he imported an unscrupulous one named Gregorowski, who announced that he had come expressly to make it hot for the Uitlanders. After all the prisoners had pleaded guilty the promise made to them was violated; and Judge Gregorowski informed the four leaders, among whom was the American, John Hays Hammond, that he would not sentence them under the statute law, which prescribes too mild a punishment, but that he would sentence them under the unwritten law of the Transvaal, which prescribed death for such an offense. Therefore the four leaders were condemned to death, and all the others were sentenced to various terms of imprisonment and heavy fines.

**Punishment
of the
Uitlander
Leaders.**

Even the Dutch settlers were horrified at this harsh sentence, and hundreds of them poured into Pretoria to remonstrate against it; whereupon President Krüger relented, but announced that his religious scruples forbade that he should commute the death to fines, as that "would be the price of blood," saying that "reverence for my dear Lord forbids that I should be less scrupulous than the priests of Jerusalem." Finally the prisoners were pardoned on agreeing to "subscribe for charities" sums varying from twenty-five thousand to a hundred thousand dollars each for leading men and not less than ten thousand for anybody. All the accused Americans made heavy contributions to "charity," Mr. John Hays Hammond himself paying a hundred thousand dollars. Thus altogether a million dollars were paid over to Paul Krüger for "charity," but the "charities" never turned up. It is said that Mr. Krüger alluded to these Englishmen and Americans accused of treason as "dogs, who, if they are good, will lick my boots."

**Conditional
Pardons.**

Thenceforth President Krüger increased his orders for arms in Europe, ordering a quantity sufficient to arm the whole Dutch population of South Africa, both in and out of the Transvaal, twice over; and the erection of forts was pressed hurriedly. The drill and reorganization of the Transvaal military forces were carried forward under the charge of qualified European instructors. The military alliance between the Transvaal Republic and the Orange Free State was strengthened, and political propaganda in the British colonies of South Africa became more active.

**Transvaal
Army
Reorganization.**

The criminal folly of the Jameson raid, in their interest, was made the occasion for additional persecutions and oppressions of the Uitlanders; and every effort at reform which they attempted was sternly repressed and treated as treason by the Transvaal government, thus only aggravating the evils of which they complained, while the jeal-

**Situation
of the
Uitlanders.**

ousy and suspicion with which the Boers looked upon them were intensified continually.

**Their
Denial
of Civil
Rights.**

Besides being denied political rights, the Uitlanders were also practically denied civil rights. For instance, if a Boer would spit into a Uitlander's face in the streets, and the Uitlander would resent by striking the Boer, the Uitlander would be arrested for assault and be fined and imprisoned by a Boer magistrate. If, instead of taking the law into his own hands, the Uitlander had the Boer who had spit in his face arrested, the Boer would swear that he had been assaulted, and in that case also the Uitlander would be fined and imprisoned by the Boer magistrate, and the Boer would escape in any case.

**Instance
of Boer
Justice.**

In one case an Irish woman named O'Neill was tarred and feathered and railridden by a Boer mob headed by a Boer magistrate, and when the woman had the magistrate arrested he was sentenced to a nominal imprisonment of a few days, but he did not serve even this short term, as President Krüger immediately pardoned him. Such examples of the administration of justice in the Transvaal were the rule.

**No Legal
Redress
for Uit-
landers.**

Whenever the Uitlanders held public meetings to consider their grievances and to petition for redress the Boers came in large numbers and disturbed the meetings by loud noises, such as talking, cheering and stamping of feet, so that not a word of the speakers or anything else could be heard or understood; and the Uitlanders had no legal protection or redress, as the Boer police protected and encouraged the mob.

**Forced
Military
Service
of the
Uitland-
ers.**

British subjects and American citizens who were mere residents of the Transvaal and who did not intend to apply for Transvaal citizenship were forced to serve in the Transvaal army. An American who complained on the ground that he was no Transvaal citizen and did not wish to become one was told that that made no difference so long as he resided in the country; and the Transvaal government paid no attention to the protest of the United States consul, who then advised the man to leave the country, which he did.

**President
Krüger's
Quarrel
with
Chief
Justice
Kotze.**

After his reelection to a fourth term of five years, February 3, 1898, President Krüger forgot his promises of conciliation toward Great Britain and the Uitlanders; and one of his first acts was a quarrel with Chief Justice Kotze, of the Transvaal High Court, concerning the executive and judicial powers. By an arbitrary use of his power, in the case of one Brown, an American mine owner, President Krüger confiscated two million dollars of American capital invested in gold mines at Johannesburg; and when the American investors appealed to Chief Justice Kotze against the arbitrary act of the Transvaal President, and the Chief Justice decided against the legality of the President's act, the President removed Kotze and appointed a Chief Justice who would decide according to the wishes of Paul Krüger. When Judge

Kotze threatened to appeal to Great Britain as the paramount power. President Krüger refused to recognize British suzerainty, and considerable correspondence followed between the Transvaal President and British Colonial Secretary Chamberlain.

The shooting of a British subject at Johannesburg by a Transvaal police officer during the Christmas holidays in 1898, and the release of the officer on bail instead of being remanded to jail for murder, was the immediate pretext for public meetings, proclamations and petitions; and serious trouble was averted only by the vigorous action of the British representative in the Transvaal. But back of this were the arbitrary acts of the Transvaal government, such as new taxes upon mining property in the face of the overflowing condition of the Transvaal treasury; the oppressive regulations concerning the laborers from Cape Colony and India, and the drafting of British subjects into the Transvaal armies to fight the native blacks then at war with the Boers, despite the British representative's protest. The Boers were aroused by the threat of the Uitlanders to celebrate January 2, 1899, as "Jameson Day"—a threat which was not carried out.

**Uitlander
Public
Meetings,
Procla-
mations
and
Petitions.**

A mass meeting of the Uitlanders at Johannesburg, December 24, 1898, held for the purpose of drawing up a petition to the British government asking for redress against the tyranny of the Boer police was broken up by bands of armed Boers, who invaded the hall and occupied the galleries, throwing down boxes, chairs and tables upon the assembled Uitlanders, wrecking the interior of the hall and injuring many Uitlanders, the police being passive spectators of the outrage.

**Boer
Outrage
at a
Uitlander
Public
Meeting.**

Another public meeting of Uitlanders, held on January 13, 1899, to protest against the arrest of the officers of the previous meeting on the charge of violating the Public Meetings Act and to approve of the petition to the British government, also was broken up by a mob of Boers and Afrikanders, who made such demonstrations of hostility when the secretary began reading the petition that not a word of the petition could be heard; and the meeting became a free fight, chairs and benches being broken up and used as weapons and the Uitlanders being driven off, as the police made no effort to preserve order. During the night there were many street fights in Johannesburg.

**Another
Boer
Outrage
at a
Uitlander
Public
Meeting.**

The situation at Johannesburg was very threatening, as the grievances of the Uitlanders were more serious than ever before and taxation was exceedingly burdensome. The Transvaal had a little war with the negro tribe of Mpetu, which cost about two hundred thousand dollars, but which the Transvaal government made the pretext for the imposition of a war tax of two million dollars, or ten times the actual cost, and which the Uitlanders had to pay. There were heavy taxes on mining profits and mining leases; and the Uitlanders were compelled

**Intoler-
able
Situation
of the
Uitland-
ers.**

to pay a large poll tax, although they did not have the right to vote. The inhabitants of Johannesburg were denied the right of public assemblage and were obliged to sue out a permit from the Boer police to hold a meeting.

Uitlander
Petition
to Sir
Alfred
Milner.

On March 24, 1899, a petition signed by twenty-one thousand six hundred and eighty-four British subjects in the Transvaal was handed to Mr. Conyngham Greene, the British Agent at Pretoria, to be transmitted to Sir Alfred Milner, Governor of Cape Colony and British High Commissioner for South Africa, "for such action as His Excellency might think necessary." Sir Alfred Milner forwarded the petition to Colonial Secretary Chamberlain in London.

Contents
of This
Petition.

This petition cited the constant violation of President Krüger's promises concerning reforms; the total lack of protection against mob violence; the law authorizing the Transvaal President to expel British subjects at his will without appeal to the High Court; the total disfranchisement of the entire Uitlander population of Johannesburg, who were ruled by a thousand Boers of the city—in short, the intolerable condition of the Uitlanders, who implored the British government to secure for them the ordinary rights of citizens.

Demands
of the
French
Press.

The *Paris Temps*, *Journal des Debats*, *Gazette, Coloniale* and other French newspapers voiced the dissatisfaction of the financial interests of Continental Europe with the condition of affairs in the Transvaal Republic, and called upon the British government to obtain "justice for French investors in the Transvaal," or to relinquish the claim of suzerainty and permit foreign powers to protect their own subjects in their rights; and the French stockholders in the Rand gold mines prepared a memorial to the British government, about the middle of May, calling for "protection for foreign capital in the Transvaal." Under such pressure Mr. Chamberlain could not delay action much longer.

Alleged
British
Military
Plot.

On May 16, 1899, seven alleged ex-officers of the British army were arrested at Johannesburg on a charge of high treason and were taken to Pretoria, where they were remanded for trial. Affidavits were presented to the court, alleging that two thousand men had been enrolled for military service and were to be supplied with arms in Natal, after which they were to be taken back to the Rand, and, at a signal, were to seize and hold the fort at Johannesburg for twenty-four hours, awaiting the arrival of British troops. The trial of the accused persons failed to show any relation between this obscure plot and any department of the British home or colonial government.

Bloem-
fontein
Confer-
ence and
Sir Alfred
Milner's
Franchise
Propo-
sals.

At the suggestion of President Steyn, of the Orange Free State, a conference was held at Bloemfontein, the capital of that republic, between President Krüger and Sir Alfred Milner, the Governor of Cape Colony and British High Commissioner for South Africa, for

the settlement of the franchise question. The conference lasted from May 31 to June 5, 1899, and ended in a disagreement, as was anticipated. Sir Alfred Milner proposed that the franchise be granted to every white man who had been five years in the Transvaal and was prepared to take the oath to obey the laws, to undertake all the obligations of citizenship, to defend the independence of the country and to renounce his citizenship of his native country, and who owned property and was of good character. President Krüger replied that if he granted Sir Alfred Milner's request the Transvaal would be controlled by foreigners and all power taken from the Boers, and made franchise proposals of his own, which were passed by the Transvaal Volksraad before the British authorities had any time to examine them.

These proposals required a seven years' residence in the Transvaal for aliens to obtain the franchise, the applicant being required to signify his intention in writing to the Field Cornet, the Landdrost and the State Secretary. Two years later he might be naturalized, without receiving full citizenship rights, provided he produced a certificate, signed by the Field Cornet, the Landdrost and the Commandant of the district, stating that he never had violated any of the laws of the Republic. If these officials were not well enough informed as to the private life of the applicant then a sworn statement to the same effect, signed by two-thirds of his Boer neighbors, would be required. The certificate then would have to be handed to the State Attorney, who would return it with a legal opinion to the State Secretary. If the legal opinion were favorable the applicant might be granted the franchise; if unfavorable the matter was to be referred to the Executive Council.

**President
Krüger's
Franchise
Propo-
sals.**

Sir Alfred Milner and the Uitlanders regarded this complicated scheme as impracticable, and Mr. Chamberlain proposed another meeting of British and Transvaal delegates to discuss President Krüger's proposed plan. The Transvaal government proposed a new franchise law giving a five year's retrospective franchise on condition that the British government would agree not in future to interfere in the Transvaal's internal affairs; not to insist further on its claims of suzerainty, and to agree to arbitration in controversies between Great Britain and the Transvaal Republic.

**Further
Proposals
and
Counter
Propo-
sals.**

Negotiations continued all the summer and early fall of 1899; and in September the relations between Great Britain and the Transvaal became strained, as Great Britain would not relinquish her suzerainty claims, which President Krüger was determined to get rid of. New franchise proposals and counter proposals were made constantly by both parties; but the suzerainty question and the British paramountcy in South Africa gradually became the real issue, all British imperialists

**Strained
Relations**

recognizing that the British Empire itself was at stake, but Great Britain disclaiming any intention of annexing the Transvaal.

**Military
Prepara-
tions on
Both
Sides.**

In the meantime military preparations were continued by both parties with great urgency and under the greatest excitement. Uitlanders fled in consternation from Johannesburg, more than fifteen hundred having gone on September 9th. On October 7th armed Boers who had been assembling on the border between the Transvaal and Natal were preparing for a sudden invasion, but were reported as returning home because of scarcity of forage and supplies. The British feared that the Boers suddenly might declare war and attack and ravage the defenseless towns in the British colonies. In pursuance of a British order-in-council, a royal proclamation was issued for the summoning of Parliament and the mobilization of the reserves. All haste was made for gathering and transporting a large British military force to South Africa, and twenty-five thousand troops were ordered immediately to their colors, while General Sir Redvers Henry Buller was appointed to the chief command of the British forces in South Africa. A state of war practically existed for several days before the final diplomatic rupture.

SECTION V.—THE GREAT BRITISH-BOER WAR (A. D. 1899–1902).

**Boer
Ultima-
tum and
Invasion
of
British
Terri-
tory.**

On October 9th the Transvaal government presented an ultimatum to Mr. Conyngham Greene, the British Agent at Pretoria, declaring that "Her Majesty's unlawful intervention in the internal affairs of the Republic has caused an intolerable condition of things to arise," and demanding that all points of mutual difference be regulated by arbitration or any other amicable course which may be agreed upon; that the British troops on the frontiers of the Republic be withdrawn instantly, and that all reinforcements which had arrived in South Africa since June 1, 1899, or which were on the way thither be recalled at once; stating that if these demands were not complied with before 5 P. M. on October 11th the Transvaal government would regard the action of the British government as a formal declaration of war. In reply to the Transvaal ultimatum the British government stated that the peremptory demands of the government of the South African Republic were such as it was impossible to discuss. Mr. Conyngham Greene, the British Agent, left Pretoria on the day set for the expiration of the time fixed by the ultimatum and started for Cape Town. On the same day—October 11, 1899—President Steyn, of the Orange Free State, issued a proclamation to his people, denouncing the British

government and calling on them to "stand up as one man against the oppressor and violator of right." On the same day both the Transvaal and Orange Free State forces invaded British territory, crossing their frontiers on both the east and the west, thus beginning an aggressive campaign before the British were prepared, the Boer forces outnumbering the British troops then in South Africa three to one. Thus the war was declared and begun by the Transvaal, and not by Great Britain. It was begun with the invasion of the British colonies of South Africa by the Boers, and not by the invasion of the Boer Republics by the British.

This act of President Krüger was regarded in Great Britain, and in Europe and America generally, by his sympathizers and his opponents, as a false step, liable to unite all parties in Great Britain against him; and it had that effect very largely, as he practically told Great Britain to back down or fight. His declaration that "if the Republics must belong to England the cost will stagger humanity" was borne out by subsequent events. Lord Salisbury and his Cabinet generally had been anxious to avoid a war, and the Boer ultimatum was a great disappointment to them. The British Ministry regarded it with cynical amusement, as an unnecessary assumption, before the general public, of the responsibility for war. The press and people of Continental Europe generally were almost unanimously in sympathy with the Boers and in condemnation of what they called the British selfish greed for gold and land. In the United States public sentiment was divided; some being favorable to Great Britain's general course as just, wise and necessary, and others denouncing it as unjust and impolitic.

Effect
Abroad

It has been charged that the Emperor William II. of Germany secretly urged both parties on to the war, by urging Chamberlain to make demands on Krüger and then urging the Transvaal President to reject the British Colonial Secretary's demands; his object being to exhaust both parties by a fierce war, so that the German colonies in South-west Africa and East Africa would have no formidable rivals, and so that the Boers in those German colonies would be in no condition to make trouble for him.

Charge
against
Emperor
William
II.

It has also been charged by the friends of the Boers everywhere that the Uitlanders wanted the suffrage so that they could vote away the independence of the Transvaal by voting for its annexation to the British Empire. This the British and the Uitlanders had denied resolutely all along. However this may be, the United States obtained its largest State and its first island possession in that way. Americans settled in the Mexican province of Texas, at the invitation of the Mexican government, and rebelled because they were dissatisfied with Santa Anna's government, and established their independence, and afterwards

Parallel
Cases.

got their independent republic annexed to the United States, all with the encouragement and approval of the American people. American capitalists in Hawaii got possession of the government of those islands and established a so-called republic, in which the native Hawaiians had no voice whatever, and afterwards got their insular country annexed to the United States, being all along encouraged and sustained by the American people and even being aided in their revolution by American blue jackets. So, then, if the very worst charged against the British be true it would be just what Americans did in two instances with the national approval.

**Citizen-
ship.**

It has also been charged that the Uitlanders wanted to be Transvaal citizens and British subjects at the same time; but this is not so, as Sir Alfred Milner himself said that the moment the Briton applies for citizenship of another country he ceases to be a British subject. He did say, however, that it was unjust to require a man to be without a country for fourteen years and longer.

**Diamond
and Gold
Mines.**

It is often said by the Boers and their sympathizers everywhere that the whole trouble had been brought about by unscrupulous British capitalists who wanted to get possession of the diamond and gold mines of South Africa. But the Kimberley diamond mines, which supply ninety-eight per cent. of the diamonds of the world's commerce, were in British territory, just across the western boundary of the Orange Free State; and the Johannesburg gold mines, in the Transvaal, were all owned by foreign capitalists, nine-tenths of whom were British. So, then, as the British capitalists had both the diamond mines and the gold mines, they would not have needed to go to war to get possession of them, while they jeopardized their own property by the war.

**Uitlander
Enter-
prise.**

The Uitlanders had supplied all the industrial energy which developed the Transvaal, while the Boers reserved all the rights of government and all the emoluments of official position. The aspirations of the Uitlanders for a voice in the government under which they lived and which taxed them heavily was the great direct cause of the war; but at the bottom of the trouble was the century-old race hatred between the English and Dutch in South Africa and the desire of each for supremacy in that quarter, although the Boers claimed that they were fighting for the preservation of their national independence, while the British contended that they were fighting for the equal political equality of all white men from the Cape to the Zambesie and for the preservation of their empire in South Africa. The Roman Catholic Bishop of Kimberley said: "I am not an Englishman, as you know, nor are my sympathies in general with England. But in this case I do believe that England will do credit to our common humanity by forcing a small state calling itself a republic to give equal rights to all."

After taking his warlike action President Krüger expelled all Uitlanders who refused to fight in the Transvaal cause and confiscated their property. Those who remained were forced under rifle and stock whip into the Transvaal armies. They gave horrible accounts of the cruelties inflicted upon their people. Mr. Webber, a Danish subject, published an account in the principal newspapers of Denmark of how he saw a little girl trampled to death and how he saw men, women and children beaten with the butt end of rifles, stripped, spat upon and deprived of food or drink. Mr. Webber was one of seventeen hundred persons who were expelled in one batch and deprived of almost everything that they possessed. Such was a foreigner's account of the sufferings of the Uitlanders.

Sufferings
of the
Uitland-
ers.

Though it seemed to be generally conceded that the little Boer commonwealth finally would have to succumb to the colossal British Empire, and no matter how great might be the Boer success in the first conflicts the Transvaal so much more surely would be overwhelmed in the end, still it was expected that the Boers could offer able and stubborn resistance to British forces numbering sixty thousand men; the number which a British army officer, Lord Cecil Douglas Compton, said would be required to subdue them and bring them to terms. This military expert carefully studied the Boers in their own country, and he frankly said that considerations of a purely military character "operate to make us chary of rushing into a campaign which must present the most formidable obstacles and involve questions of transport, supply and strategy that might stagger a military expert." This British officer, who was a captain of lancers, said of the Boers that "they are magnificent fighters"—a fact very well known. Their great passion for hunting has made them expert marksmen, and they are born rough riders and possess unsurpassed courage and tenacity. The same British officer said: "Individually they are as good military stuff as the world possesses." They were fully armed, and some experts pronounced them the best soldiers in the world. The Boer Republics were on a small scale what the Great Powers of Continental Europe are on a large scale—military camps. The money which the Boers obtained by taxation of the Uitlanders had been expended in purchasing war material and in preparing themselves for the conflict which they regarded as inevitable. The Boers were thoroughly convinced of the justice of their cause, and were willing to die to a man at the order of Paul Krüger.

Boer
Strength.

In the east the Transvaal and the Orange Free State Boers under General Joubert, the Transvaal Vice President, invaded Natal. The inferior British forces fell back as the Boers advanced, and the invaders at once occupied Newcastle after its evacuation by its British

Boer
Invasion
of Natal.

garrison. The British and Boer forces first came into collision near Acton Homes, about sixteen miles from Ladysmith, on October 18th.

**Boer
Invasion
of Cape
Colony.**

In the west the Boers of the two Republics under General Cronje invaded the northern part of Cape Colony and destroyed the railway at different points, thus severing communication between Mafeking, Vryburg and Rhodesia on the one hand and Cape Colony on the other. Both Kimberley and Mafeking were isolated and closely besieged by the invaders, Cecil John Rhodes being among the besieged in Kimberley. The garrison of Mafeking was commanded by Colonel Baden-Powell. There was some skirmishing north of Mafeking. General Cronje bombarded Mafeking on October 16th and at other times thereafter. On October 12th a British armored train conveying two 7-pounder guns from Cape Town was attacked and captured by Boer artillery about four miles south of Mafeking.

**Sieges of
Kimber-
ley and
Mafeking.**

**Native
Animos-
ity to the
Boers.**

Four native tribes in South Africa—the Basutos, the Swazis, the Zulus and the Kaffirs—who had suffered wrongs and oppression from the slaveholding and slave-trading Boers, felt a deep-rooted animosity toward the two Republics and were ready to take advantage of the Anglo-Boer war to rise against the Boers, but were dissuaded therefrom by the British civil and military authorities, who feared that a native rising would kindle a general race conflagration in South Africa, in which the black natives would be arrayed against the white settlers. All these native races had suffered intolerable wrongs from the Boers, who had driven them from their homes and seized their country and stolen many of their people for slaves, and were eager to seize their opportunity for revenge. Both British and Boer accused each other of intriguing with the natives for aid. Maseru, the capital of Basutoland, was placed in a state of defense by the British, in anticipation of Boer attacks.

**British
Call to
Arms.**

Prime Minister Schreiner, of Cape Colony, issued a circular to the field cornets, requesting them to soothe the race feeling and prove themselves and their people loyal subjects of Queen Victoria. In the meantime Great Britain was hurrying troops to South Africa from England and British India; while Canada, Australia, New Zealand and other British colonies were showing their loyalty to the Mother Country by offering their contingents to uphold the flag of the British Empire and what they regarded as the cause of civilization, progress and equal rights in South Africa; and General Sir Redvers Henry Buller was on his way to the Cape to assume the chief command of all the British forces in the field against the Boers. In Great Britain the men of the First Class Reserve responded in large numbers to the call for service, and the Militia Reserves were to replenish British garrisons at home denuded of the line battalions sent to South Africa.

The British government was sustained by public sentiment at home and in all the colonies of the Empire, which has done more for the spread of civilization, liberty and justice than all other human agencies put together. A crowded public meeting was held in London on October 16th, at the call of the Lord Mayor. Sir John Lubbock said in a speech that in the diplomatic negotiations Colonial Secretary Chamberlain had combined the meekness of Moses with the patience of Job. On October 12th The Rt. Hon. Herbert Henry Asquith, in an address to his constituents at Newburg, said that, as British subjects and patriots, they must stand together with an unbroken front and see that the conflict was prosecuted with promptitude and energy. The Rt. Hon. Leonard Henry Courtney, in a speech at Liskeard, regretted the Boer ultimatum, though he could not honestly condemn it; but a motion of confidence in the honorable gentleman was rejected by the audience. The opposition in Parliament to the British government's policy came from some of the Liberals and Irish Home Rulers—Sir William Vernon Harcourt and Mr. Labouchere among the Liberals, and John Redmond, John Dillon, Michael Davitt and other Irish leaders; Mr. Davitt going so far as to resign his seat in the House of Commons as a protest against the British policy.

War and
Anti-war
Feeling in
Greater
Britain.

Sir Edward Grey, M.P., in a speech at Glasgow on October 25th, said that, after a careful study of the Blue Books and of the whole negotiations between the British and the Transvaal governments, he held that Great Britain was in the right; that the attitude and aims of the governments of the two Boer Republics had made war inevitable, though doubtless mistakes had been committed by the British government in the course of the negotiations.

Sir
Edward
Grey's
Speech

The first serious engagement of the war occurred at Glencoe and Dundee, in Natal, October 20th, resulting in great success to the British arms, though at heavy loss in killed and wounded. During the 18th and 19th the Boer movements indicated a design on their part to concentrate as large a force as they could muster from the commandos operating from Newcastle and the Buffalo River for an attack on the British positions at Glencoe and Dundee; while it was also evident that the Orange Free State Boers, issuing from the Drakensberg passes, would menace General Sir George Stuart White's camp at Ladysmith. The latter part of the plan was but partly executed. After advancing in considerable strength and pushing back the British patrols, the Orange Free State Boers fell back the next day; but a Boer force advanced from the direction of Newcastle, took up a strong position on Smith Hill, in front of Glencoe and Dundee, and opened an artillery fire on the British camp at Glencoe early on the morning of the 20th. The British artillery replied and soon silenced the Boer

Battle of
Glencoe.

cannon, which was served badly and did no harm to the British. The King's Royal Rifles and the Royal Irish Fusiliers formed opposite the Boer position, advanced against it under cover of the fire of the British batteries and carried the Boer position after severe fighting, driving the Boers in headlong flight down Smith Hill and capturing their cannon. The British lost forty-three killed and one hundred and eighty-one wounded; among whom was General Sir William Penn Symons, who was mortally wounded, being shot through the stomach and dying several days afterward. A squadron of the Eighteenth Hussars who pursued the Boers in their flight after the battle of Glencoe were made prisoners by the retreating Boers.

**Battle of
Elands-
laagte.**

Notwithstanding their severe repulse at Glencoe, the Boers persevered in their attempt to cut off Glencoe and Dundee from Ladysmith; and the next day, October 21st, was fought the severe battle of Elandslaagte, in which the British were victorious. On the 20th the Boer commando descended from Biggarsberg and seized Elandslaagte, midway between Dundee and Ladysmith, and cut off communication between the two places. On the 21st General Sir George Stuart White, leaving Major-General Hunter with a sufficient force at Ladysmith, sent a detachment consisting of the Fifth Lancers, a squadron of the Fifth Dragoon Guards, the Imperial Light Horse, two squadrons of the Natal Carbineers, three batteries of artillery, the Devonshire Regiment, the Manchester Regiment and half-battalions of the Gordon Scotch Highlanders to attack the Boers at Elandslaagte. General White himself accompanied the detachment, which was under the immediate command of General French. The Boers occupied a strong position on the hills south-east of Elandslaagte Station. The conflict began in earnest about 3:30 P. M., and after a protracted artillery duel the British infantry assailed and carried the Boer position, the Boers falling back after making a stubborn resistance. The British cavalry charged the retreating Boers three times, doing great execution, and capturing the Boer camp, with two cannon, tents, wagons, horses and a number of prisoners. The British loss was again very heavy.

**Battle of
Reit-
fontein.**

On October 23d General Sir George Stuart White moved out with a strong force to cover the movement of the British column under General Yule which was falling back on Ladysmith, the Boers having taken up a strong position on the main road from Dundee to Ladysmith. The next day General White found the Boers in a strong position at Reitfontein, west of the road and about seven miles from Ladysmith. General White defeated the Boers at Reitfontein, thus preventing them from attacking General Yule's column. He then concentrated the British forces at Ladysmith, where, with about nine thousand men, he

was then closely besieged by about thirteen thousand Boers under General Joubert, being in a perilous position, his communications with the outside world being cut off in every direction by the Boers, who for some time bombarded the town daily, the British making a vigorous defense by means of naval guns.

**Siege of
Ladysmith.**

In Northern Cape Colony operations were also in progress. The Boers were repulsed near Mafeking in the meantime; while Kimberley was closely besieged by Boers under General Cronje, who proclaimed the annexation of that part of Cape Colony to the Orange Free State.

**Kimberley and
Mafeking.**

While the Boer force under General Joubert was investing Ladysmith, some of the Boer commandos were cutting communications between Ladysmith and Pietermaritzburg, the capital of Natal. On October 28th a captive balloon was raised over the beleaguered town, thus enabling General White to locate the besiegers' works. General White detailed two brigade divisions of the Royal Artillery, with five infantry battalions and General French's cavalry, to attack a position in which the Boers had mounted cannon on the 22d. It was discovered that the Boers had since evacuated that position, but the British detachment was assailed vigorously by a large force of Boers with many cannon. The British drove the Boers back several miles, but failed to reach the laagers. After several hours' fighting, the main body of the British detachment returned to their cantonments unmolested. But on the night of the 29th General White sent out Colonel Carlton, with a mountain battery and some of the Royal Irish Fusiliers and some troops of the Gloucester Regiment, to take up a position in the hills on his left, or southern flank, and to march up Bell's Spruit and seize Nicholson's Nek for the purpose of turning the Boers' right flank. When this British detachment was at Farquher's Farm, two miles from its objective point, two boulders were rolled down a hill and some rifle shots were fired, thus causing the mules hitched to the ammunition wagons and to the heavy batteries to stampede, with practically the entire artillery equipment and ammunition. The infantry battalions fixed bayonets and seized a hill, which they defended until 3 P. M. Their ammunition then became exhausted, and they were surrounded by the enemy and forced to surrender. The British loss were forty-two killed and one hundred and fifty wounded; the Boer loss thirty-three killed and sixty wounded. General Yule's column evacuated Dundee and joined General White at Ladysmith, the movement being executed so admirably and with such secrecy that the Boers did not discover it and go in pursuit for twenty-four hours. The Boers occupied Dundee on October 30th.

**British
Disaster
at Nicholson's
Nek.**

In the meantime operations were being conducted vigorously in Northern Cape Colony. Vryburg had been evacuated by the British

**Sieges of
Kimber-
ley and
Mafeking.**

and occupied by the Boers. On October 24th the Kimberley garrison made a sally and had a severe engagement with a Boer force of seven hundred men to the north of the town; the Boers being defeated and many of them killed, their commander among them, and the British loss being three killed and twenty-one wounded. The Boers closely besieged Kimberley and destroyed the railway line along the western frontier. On October 17th the Boers bombarded Mafeking four hours and killed a dog. On the 23d they bombarded the town again, but did little damage. The Boers themselves lost five hundred and thirteen men at Mafeking.

**Rhodesian
Frontier.**

In the meantime there was some fighting on the Rhodesian frontier; and the British patrols retired to Tuli, as the Boers were in considerable force. Boer patrols were harrying the natives and stealing cattle.

**Canadian
and Aus-
tralian
Contin-
gents.**

General Sir Redvers Henry Buller arrived at Cape Town on October 31st. The departure of the Canadian contingent from Quebec was the occasion for a great popular demonstration of Canadian loyalty to the British Empire; and stirring speeches were made by Lord Minto, the Viceroy of Canada, and Sir Wilfred Laurier, the Canadian Prime Minister. The French Canadians were as loyal to Great Britain as were the English Canadians in this emergency. The contingents from Victoria and Tasmania embarked at Melbourne for South Africa on October 28th, amid great popular enthusiasm. The troops were addressed by Lord Brassey before they started. On the same day the first portion of the New South Wales contingent sailed from Sydney. The Queensland contingent also sailed. The Emperor William II. of Germany, who is Colonel-in-Chief of the Royal Dragoons, sent to the Lieutenant-Colonel the following telegram: "Bid my farewell to the regiment. May you all return safe and well."

**Lord
Rose-
bery's
Speeches.**

Lord Rosebery, the leader of the Liberal party, in a speech at Bath on October 27th, said that in time of war all British subjects, of whatever party, should trust the man at the helm and present a united front to the enemy; that the Transvaal question was not a complicated one; that it was the effort of a nation or a community to put back the hands of the clock. In a speech at Edinburgh on November 1st Lord Rosebery again referred to the war in South Africa.

**European
Antipa-
thy to
Great
Britain.**

Ladysmith having been invested by the Boers, and telegraphic communication therefore interrupted, there was for some days a virtual absence of authentic news from the field in Natal. In the absence of trustworthy news the manufacture of false intelligence proceeded actively on the Continent of Europe, where the feeling against Great Britain was as hostile as it was to the United States during the Spanish-American War. At one time it was said that Ladysmith had surrendered to the Boers. At another time it was said that General White

had made a sortie and suffered an annihilating defeat. A Berlin dispatch in the Paris *Liberte* announced the capture of Mafeking by the Boers and asserted that General White was mortally wounded.

On Sunday, November 5th, General Sir Redvers Henry Buller received a message from General White by pigeon-post, dated two days before, reporting that on the 2d there was a successful reconnoissance and that on the 3d a British detachment under General Brocklehurst engaged the Boers south-west of Ladysmith for several hours with a small British loss. Fuller accounts of these actions were received afterwards. In the British sortie from Ladysmith on November 2d the Fifth Lancers, with a large field battery, found an Orange Free State laager at Tatham's Farm and shelled it vigorously, driving out the Boers and capturing their camp equipage, the Boers being cut to pieces by the British cavalry. In the action between Ladysmith and Dewdrop, on the 3d, General Brocklehurst, with the Eighteenth and Nineteenth Hussars, the volunteer cavalry, the mounted infantry and a battery, found the Boers in force, holding a laager, with cannon. After being reinforced by the Fifth Dragoon Guards, Royston's Horse and two batteries, General Brocklehurst drove the Boers from all their positions and shelled three guns into silence. The Imperial Light Horse pressed too far into a gulley and were extricated by the Fifth Dragoon Guards. The British loss was small. The Boers fell back toward Colenso, which the British had evacuated. In these engagements near Ladysmith the Boers lost heavily, their losses being estimated at eight hundred, at one thousand and even two thousand. There also was fighting near Bulwana and at Bester's Station. The Boers continued to bombard Ladysmith without much effect. Lieutenant Egerton, of the British warship *Powerful*, died of a shell wound.

Defense
of Lady-
smith.

The Boers proclaimed the Upper Tugela division of Natal to be annexed to the Orange Free State, and they invaded Zululand, hoisting their flag. The Boers also invaded Cape Colony from Bethulie, occupied Colesberg and held Norval's Pont and Philippolis bridges over the Orange River, November 4th. The British concentrated troops at De Aar Junction to repel the Boers invasion of Cape Colony. The British military authorities proclaimed martial law in the district occupied by the British troops between the Orange River railway bridge and the De Aar. On November 9th the Boers blew up two railroad bridges—Vanzyl bridge, seven miles from Norval's Pont, and Atchertang railway bridge—and cut telegraph wires.

Boer
Invasions
of
Zululand
and Cape
Colony.

In the meantime Kimberley and Mafeking were as closely besieged as was Ladysmith. The Boer forces investing Kimberley were being reinforced constantly and frequently bombarded the town. The Boers

Defense
of Kim-
berley
and
Mafeking.

blew up the dynamite stores of the De Beers Company, seven miles from Kimberley. The garrisons of both Kimberley and Mafeking were making as heroic defenses against the besieging Boer forces as was Ladysmith. On November 9th the Boers captured part of Kimberley's food. The diamond mines at Kimberley were said to have been injured by the bombardment. At Mafeking the British garrison, under the able leadership of Colonel Baden-Powell, was making daily sorties, always repulsing the Boers. Colonel Baden-Powell captured a number of horses and mules from the Boers. In a sortie from Mafeking on November 18th Captain Fitz-Clarence, of the Third Royal Fusiliers, and Lieutenant Swinton were killed.

**Skirmish
at
Belmont.**

There was activity in other quarters. On the Rhodesian frontier there was more skirmishing. The railway in the Orange Free State was wrecked completely. On November 11th there was a skirmish at Belmont, near the Orange River, in which Colonel C. E. Keith-Falconer, of the Northumberland Fusiliers, was killed and Lieutenants F. Beven, H. C. Hall and C. C. Wood and two privates of the North Lancashire Regiment were wounded.

**Bombard-
ment and
Invest-
ment of
Ladys-
smith.**

In the meantime the Boers pressed the siege of Ladysmith with vigor and fiercely bombarded the city daily. Great heroism was manifested by the gunners on both sides. The British garrison repulsed the besieging Boers in a number of brilliant sorties. After the evacuation of Colenso by the British, on November 4th, the Boers held possession of the Colenso and Durban Railroad and the bridge over the Tugela River, thus cutting off White's retreat from Ladysmith. White was surrounded and could communicate with General Buller at Durban only by means of carrier pigeons. Buller's orders to White were: "Hold Ladysmith till the last man drops." The Boers moved a siege train on Ladysmith and were preparing for a desperate assault on the beleaguered town. They were strengthened constantly by the arrival of fresh reinforcements and were straining every nerve to capture the town and garrison. On November 14th the Boers were repulsed in an attempt to make a closer investment of the town, being driven from their guns with the loss of five killed and two wounded, while there were no casualties on the British side. The Boer shells did no damage to the town. The British batteries on both the north and south sides of Ladysmith vigorously shelled the Boer batteries, which as vigorously returned the fire. Severe fighting occurred at Ladysmith on November 15th and 16th, the Boers losing heavily, while the British loss was small. In the fight of the 15th the Boers attempted to reach the north of Ladysmith with a large force, but were unable to make any headway against a well-sustained fire of the British riflemen and Maxims. A British detachment afterward moved around the Boer flank, thus

**Boer
Repulses.**

causing the Boers to retire under a deadly fusilade with very heavy losses, large numbers of their dead and wounded being said to have been left on the field and a number of prisoners being captured. The British losses were very small.

On November 16th an armored train from Colenso was ambushed and derailed by the Boers, and one hundred and fifty British troops were missing. On the same day Lieutenant Winston Churchill, son of the late distinguished Lord Randolph Churchill, was taken prisoner by the Boers.

**Armored
Train
Am-
bushed.**

In the meantime the Boers were also investing Estcourt, south of Ladysmith, and were preparing to besiege that town, which was defended by a strong garrison of British troops. The Boers assailed the town on November 18th, but the British naval guns soon compelled them to fall back. The next day a detachment of British infantry under Major Thorneycroft made a sortie from the town, but without any material result.

**Defense of
Estcourt.**

The Boers now had over fifty thousand troops in the field. Transports were constantly sailing from various British ports with troops for the seat of war, and by the middle of November forty thousand had arrived in South Africa and over ten thousand had landed at Durban. Large Boer forces marched southward to check the British advance all along the line under Generals Lord Methuen, Clery, Hildyard and Gatacre.

**British
Rein-
force-
ments.**

In the meantime the Boers overran Natal and threatened many important points. The British advance was impeded by the lack of cavalry, and the Boers were fortifying many strong positions. Large Boer forces were investing Estcourt and other places and menacing Pietermaritzburg, the capital of Natal. The Boers held the railroad from Escourt to the Mooi River and occupied Belmont, Colesberg and Highlands Station in force. They were reinforced by large numbers of disaffected Dutch from Cape Colony, who occupied the town of Lady Grey and other places. They cut off two portions of the Ladysmith relieving force from their base of supplies and were occasioning constant surprises.

**Boer
Move-
ments.**

On November 22d and 23d the Boers shelled the British camp at the Mooi River, in Natal, and heavy artillery duels were in progress there those two days. In Northern Cape Colony they bombarded Kimberley daily. On November 22d detachments of British cavalry, with two Maxims and two field guns, under Major Scott Turner and Captain May, together with the town guard of Beaconsfield, opposite Kimberley, made a reconnaissance and were attacked by two hundred and fifty Boers in a kloof on Alexander's Fontein farm, Captain Bodley being wounded and two horses being killed.

**Opera-
tions at
Mooi
River and
Kimber-
ley.**

**Tugela
River
and
Mafeking**

On November 23d three hundred Boers were repulsed in an attack on one hundred and forty British at the Tugela River, a British sergeant being wounded. The situation at Mafeking was becoming serious, the Boers bombarding the town daily and continually drawing their lines closer. Sir Alfred Milner issued a proclamation to the people of Cape Colony, commending the Dutch inhabitants of the colony for their loyalty to Queen Victoria and to the British flag in this emergency.

**Battle of
Belmont.**

On November 22d and 23d was fought the important battle of Belmont, in which seven thousand British troops under General Lord Methuen gained a great victory over five thousand Boers. The Boers shelled the British advance body on the 22d, and the British artillery shelled the Boer position on a hill, which was captured with two cannon, the Boers losing thirty men killed and wounded. At dawn the next day the British attacked the Boers in their strongly-intrenched position and stormed and carried three ridges in succession. The Boer loss in killed and wounded was heavy, and the victorious British took forty prisoners and many horses, cows and sheep. The British loss was about two hundred. Among the British wounded were General Fetherstonhaugh and Lieutenant-Colonel Crabbe, of the Grenadier Guards. The Grenadier Guards and the Northumberland Regiment showed great heroism. Great valor was displayed on both sides, but the Boers could not stand the British bayonet charge. The British took possession of the Boer laager and destroyed the Boer stores and ammunition. The Boers hoisted a white flag over their second position, whereupon Lieutenant Willoughby, of the Coldstream Guards, stood up and was shot down immediately. The Boers did this treacherous act the second and third time. This treacherous use of flags of truce aroused great indignation among the British, and General Lord Methuen protested to the Boer commander against it and against the use of dum-dum bullets. Great rejoicing was caused in England by General Lord Methuen's victory over the Boers at Belmont and the defeat and death of the Khalifa in battle with the Anglo-Egyptian army under General Lord Kitchener, near Godid, in the Egyptian Soudan, on November 25th.

**Battle of
Graspan.**

Proceeding northward General Lord Methuen again defeated the Boers at Graspan on November 25th, when he drove twenty-five hundred Boers with six cannon and two machine guns from their position after some hours' hard fighting. As the Boers retreated the Ninth Lancers sought to intercept them, but failed. The British losses were very severe, especially those of the Naval Brigade. Commander Ethelston, of the warship *Powerful*; Major Plumbe and Captain Senior, of the marines, were killed. Altogether the Naval Brigade had

four officers and ten seamen and marines killed and two officers, thirteen petty officers and seamen and twenty-six marines wounded.

On November 28th General Lord Methuen won a third victory after severe fighting with the Boers at the Modder River, the Boer forces having concentrated there to arrest his advance for the relief of Kimberley. The Boers numbered eight thousand and were strongly intrenched, with two large cannon and four Krupp cannon. The struggle was desperate and was described by Methuen as "the bloodiest battle of the century." After a battle of ten hours the Boers were driven from their intrenchments, and General Pole-Carew succeeded in getting a small party across the Modder River. The British loss was eighty-four killed, three hundred and eighty-eight wounded and six missing. The Boer loss was said to be one hundred and fifty killed and many more wounded, while seventy were made prisoners. The Scots Guards lost many men and a Maxim gun. After many hours' fighting, the Sutherland Highlanders and part of the Ninth Brigade crossed the river at dusk and occupied a strong position on the opposite bank, while the British artillery shelled the Boer intrenchments. The Boers vigorously replied to the British bombardment; but early the next morning the Scots Guards crossed the river as the Boers had evacuated their position. The Boers numbered eleven thousand men and were commanded by General Cronje in person. Lord Methuen remained at the Modder River to rebuild the bridge which had been destroyed by the Boers, and he was reinforced by Highlanders and cavalry.

**Battle of
Modder
River.**

On November 25th the Kimberley garrison made a successful sortie against the besieging Boers. The Boers retired from Estcourt about this time, and the railway was reopened. On November 23d there was a skirmish south of Estcourt between the British force under General Hildyard and the Boer commandos, the British losing eleven men killed, sixty-seven wounded, eight prisoners and one missing. On the same day fighting occurred at Tugela Drift, where more than two hundred Boers were repulsed by one hundred and forty Natal troops, the Boers losing heavily. The Boers were now driven north of the Mooi River. The sieges of Ladysmith, Kimberley and Mafeking were being pressed with vigor by the Boers.

**Boer
Repulse
at Kim-
berley,
Estcourt
and
Tugela
Drift.**

General Gatacre, advancing from the south, had occupied Bushman-shoek on November 27th with a battalion of infantry and some mounted infantry, his main body being at Putter's Kraal. The Boers had retired in the direction of Molteno. The Boers' commando at Barkly East was said to include at least two hundred colonial rebels.

**General
Gatacre's
Advance.**

In Bechuanaland, on November 18th, Kuruman was attacked by fifty Boers, who were driven off, with a loss of thirty killed and twenty-eight wounded, after six days' and nights' fighting, the British loss

**Boer
Repulse
at
Kuruman.**

being one killed and one wounded. On November 19th the Boers suddenly disappeared.

**Defense of
Mafeking.**

On November 28th a Boer laager west of Kimberley was captured. Major Scott Turner, another officer and twenty-one non-commissioned officers and men were killed. The Boers were bombarding Mafeking in a desultory manner, and on November 22d they were repulsed in an assault upon the outside trenches of the town. By November 27th the Boer investing force had ceased to attempt any serious operations against the town. Colonel Baden-Powell was ably conducting the defense of Mafeking.

**Defense
of Lady-
smith.**

The British relieving force under General Sir Redvers Henry Buller was pushing steadily towards Ladysmith. The Boers were concentrating to oppose him at Grobler's Kloof, near Colenso. The Tugela railway bridge at Colenso had been destroyed, but not the road bridge. A corps of colonial scouts to check Boer raiding was formed at Durban. General Clery arrived at Frere on December 1st and assumed the command there. The Boers were still vigorously bombarding Ladysmith, but without much effect. On December 8th the British made a successful sortie from Ladysmith, stormed a hill at Lombardskop, silenced several Boer cannon and captured a Maxim gun.

**Three
Great
British
Reverses.**

We are now entering on a period of British reverses lasting over two months, beginning on December 10, 1899. The British suffered three severe defeats in different quarters in South Africa in one week in December, 1899, their three relieving columns having successively encountered serious reverses—the defeat of General Sir William Forbes Gatacre at Stormberg Junction on December 10th; the defeat of General Lord Methuen at Magersfontein on December 11th, and the defeat of General Sir Redvers Henry Buller at Colenso on December 15th.

**General
Gatacre's
Defeat at
Storm-
berg
Junction.**

Early on Sunday morning, December 10, 1899, the smallest of the three British relieving forces, under General Gatacre, advancing to invade the Orange Free State, in an attempt to surprise the Boers near Stormberg Junction, in the north of Cape Colony, by a night attack, was ambushed, defeated and utterly routed, retreating in disorder to Molteno, whence it had made a long, wearisome forced march on Saturday night for the purpose of attack. The British loss was over six hundred and fifty in killed, wounded and missing. The scene of this British defeat in Cape Colony was about two hundred miles south-east of Kimberley and about two hundred and fifty miles south-west of Ladysmith.

**Lord
Meth-
uen's
Defeat at
Magers-
fontein.**

The next day, Monday, December 11, 1899, the next in size of the British relieving columns, that under General Lord Methuen, numbering about twelve thousand men, and designed for the relief of Kimberley, the seat of the great De Beers diamond mines, and where Cecil

Rhodes was penned up by the besieging Boers, met with a serious reverse at Magersfontein, near the scene of Lord Methuen's victory on the Modder River on November 28th. After the battle of November 28th Lord Methuen's force remained on the battlefield, recuperating from the terrible loss in that action. This army left its camp on Sunday evening, marching in a north-easterly direction to attack the most easterly portion of the Boer position, held by General Cronje. Before daybreak on Monday morning, December 11th, at Magersfontein, two hundred yards from what the British supposed was the Boer position, and while still marching in close order, a heavy fire from both flanks was poured upon the British van, consisting of the Highland Brigade. The British had marched into another bloody Boer ambush and were forced to fall back with a loss of nine hundred and sixty-three men; General Wauchope, commander of the Highland Brigade, being killed. The battle had lasted the whole day; and the next day, Tuesday, December 12th, General Lord Methuen withdrew to his former camp on the Modder River.

Finally, on Friday, December 15, 1899, the largest British relieving force, that under General Sir Redvers Henry Buller, the British commander-in-chief in South Africa, numbering twenty-three thousand men, advancing to the relief of Ladysmith, was severely repulsed in an attempt to force a passage over the Tugela River, at Colenso, being driven back with the loss of eleven hundred and sixty-seven men after desperate fighting. In his retreat from his position General Buller was obliged to abandon eleven heavy cannon. Thus the effort for the relief of Ladysmith failed, and General Buller was obliged to remain inactive until he had recuperated his great losses. This third great British reverse within a week was the climax of this series of disasters.

General
Buller's
Defeat at
Colenso.

The three great British reverses just mentioned greatly elated and encouraged the Boers and caused great gloom in London; but the spirit of the British nation did not sink under these disasters, and the patriotic war feeling of the English people manifested itself in this crisis. Nowhere was there visible any disposition to relinquish the struggle, but instead there was a determination to make every sacrifice to uphold the dignity and prestige of the British Empire and to bring the war to a successful conclusion.

British
Resolu-
tion and
Patriot-
ism.

The British Ministry decided upon heroic measures to recover lost prestige in South Africa and to stamp out every vestige of rebellion among the Dutch population of Cape Colony. The three greatest British generals of the time were Lords Wolseley, Roberts and Kitchener, all of them being Irishmen. Lord Wolseley was the British commander-in-chief. Lord Roberts had been the British commander-in-

Lords
Wolseley,
Roberts
and
Kitch-
ener.

chief in India for a score of years. Lord Kitchener had acquired fame in the last few years by overthrowing the Khalifa and restoring peace to the Egyptian Soudan, which had been convulsed for a score of years by the wars caused by the Mahdi, the Khalifa and their followers.

British
Prepara-
tions.

It was now determined to send Lords Roberts and Kitchener to South Africa, Roberts to be commander-in-chief, and Kitchener to be his chief of staff. Just after his appointment Lord Roberts received the sad news that his only son had died of wounds received in the battle of Colenso. There already were eighty thousand British troops in South Africa, and fifty thousand more were to be sent from England, India, Canada, Australia, New Zealand and other British colonies. These fifty thousand new troops and twenty thousand then on the way to South Africa would give Field-Marshal Lord Roberts one hundred and fifty thousand men. There was the greatest patriotic enthusiasm throughout Great Britain and her colonies, and volunteers came forward by thousands.

Imperial
Yeo-
manry
and Vol-
unteers.

The British government had now completed all preparations for mobilizing an Eighth Division, and many more of the Yeomanry and Volunteers throughout Great Britain offered their services than could be accepted. Local funds for the equipment of the Imperial Yeomanry were raised, and by the close of the year 1899 over seventy-eight thousand pounds had been subscribed for the equipment and transport of the City of London Imperial Volunteer Corps. Colonel Mackinnon, Assistant Adjutant-General for the Home District, was assigned to command the regiment. The response from the Metropolitan Volunteer Corps to the invitation from the City Corporation to join the regiment was so enthusiastic that the strength of the regiment was raised to fourteen hundred men. The government of British India offered to increase its contingent in South Africa by a regiment of cavalry and two batteries of artillery. This offer was accepted, and the Sixteenth Lancers were ordered to start for the seat of war. An additional requisition for two thousand horses for the mounted infantry was complied with. The new Australian contingent consisted of over eleven hundred men in addition to the New South Wales Battery and field hospital. All the Australian colonies started a patriotic fund, and gifts of horses and stores were offered freely in support of the imperial cause.

Lords
Roberts
and
Kitch-
ener Sail
for Cape
Town.

Lord Roberts left London on December 23d for the seat of war in South Africa, amid scenes of great public enthusiasm. The Prince of Wales, the Duke of Connaught, the Duke of Cambridge, Lord Wolseley and Mr. Balfour were among those who came to Waterloo Station to take a personal farewell of the new British commander-in-chief in South Africa. The vessel in which he sailed, the *Dunottar*

Castle, arrived at Gibraltar on December 26th, taking Lord Kitchener on board there, and the next morning started for Cape Town.

Queen Victoria gave a tea party in Windsor Castle to seventy women and one hundred children belonging to the families of non-commissioned officers and privates serving their country in South Africa. The queen and the members of her family gave Christmas presents to the children, the queen herself talking informally and familiarly to the soldiers' wives and children, saying among other things: "It gives me great pleasure to make happy the children of my brave soldiers."

Queen
Victoria's
Tea
Party at
Windsor.

The Archbishops of Canterbury and York circulated a general Church collection in aid of the war fund; Sunday, January 7, 1900, being the day fixed for the collection. Cardinal Vaughan wrote to the Roman Catholic clergy of Great Britain and Ireland directing them to offer up prayers for speedy British success. The clergy patriotically responded to the cardinal's appeal, and accordingly prayers were offered very generally in the Roman Catholic churches throughout the United Kingdom.

British
Clerical
Patriot-
ism.

After the battle of Colenso the victorious Boers were actively strengthening their positions around Ladysmith. The British shelled the Boer positions on the Tugela River on December 19th and 20th, during which the wagon bridge over the river was destroyed. The Boers continued the bombardment of Ladysmith at intervals, and the garrison was prepared to hold out indefinitely.

Opera-
tions
around
Ladys-
smith.

On the western frontier General Lord Methuen reported to General Sir Forestier-Walker in Cape Town that the Boer forces in that quarter were increased. Lord Methuen reconnoitered with two squadrons of mounted infantry for two miles along the Boer line and drew fire from four Boer cannon and two Vicker's machine guns. Four of the British horses were hit. Lord Methuen's position was believed to be unassailable.

Lord
Meth-
uen's
Move-
ments.

On the southern frontier the British outpost at Vaal Kop was abandoned on December 16th, because it was commanded by the artillery of the Boer main position. On December 21st a British patrol of fifty men encountered about thirty Boers nine miles south of Dordrecht. The Boers escaped, leaving a wagon with three rifles and a load of stores in the possession of the British. General Gatacre's troops occupied Dordrecht without loss, the Boers retreating. General French's force at Arundel checkmated the much larger Boer force about Colesberg. The Boer positions north of Arundel were strong. It was stated that less than one-tenth of the Dutch colonists in British territory were in favor of British supremacy, but the Boers were very bitterly disappointed at the small number of Dutch colonials who had actually taken up arms against the British. The country from

Opera-
tions
in Cape
Colony.

Queenstown to the coast was enthusiastically loyal to Great Britain, owing to the immense preponderance of the British element.

British Reinforcements.

British troops were continually moving to the front. A squadron of the Tenth Hussars proceeded from Cape Town to Naauwpoort, and the Sixty-third Battery of Field Artillery proceeded to Natal on December 23d. The Boers were circulating among the Basutos reports of the Boer successes and were urging the Basuto chiefs to defy the British authorities and to send natives to the Orange Free State for the harvest. Lieutenant Winston Churchill secured his freedom and arrived at Delagoa Bay in fine spirits on December 21st.

Boers and Basutos.

Boer Attacks at the Modder River.

The shelling of the advanced trenches at the Modder River still continued. On the night of December 26, 1899, the Boers opened a heavy fusillade, lasting twenty minutes. They appeared to think that the British were meditating an assault. On the night of January 3, 1900, the Boers repeated these tactics.

British Sortie from Mafeking.

The garrison at Mafeking, under the enterprising Colonel Baden-Powell, attacked a Boer fort, but failed in its assault, the British loss being fifty-five, and the Boers taking three prisoners. Among the British killed were Captains Sandford and Vernon, and among the wounded were Lord Edward Cecil and Lord C. Cavendish Bentinck.

Defense of Ladysmith.

In Natal some traction engines arrived at Frere. The Boers were said to be placing cannon in position at Springfield, to the west of the British position on the south side of the Tugela River. The Boer bombardment of Ladysmith was of some effect. Sickness was increasing among the garrison, but all were confident. The field fortifications could withstand any attack, and the food supplies could last two months.

Boer Repulse near Dordrecht.

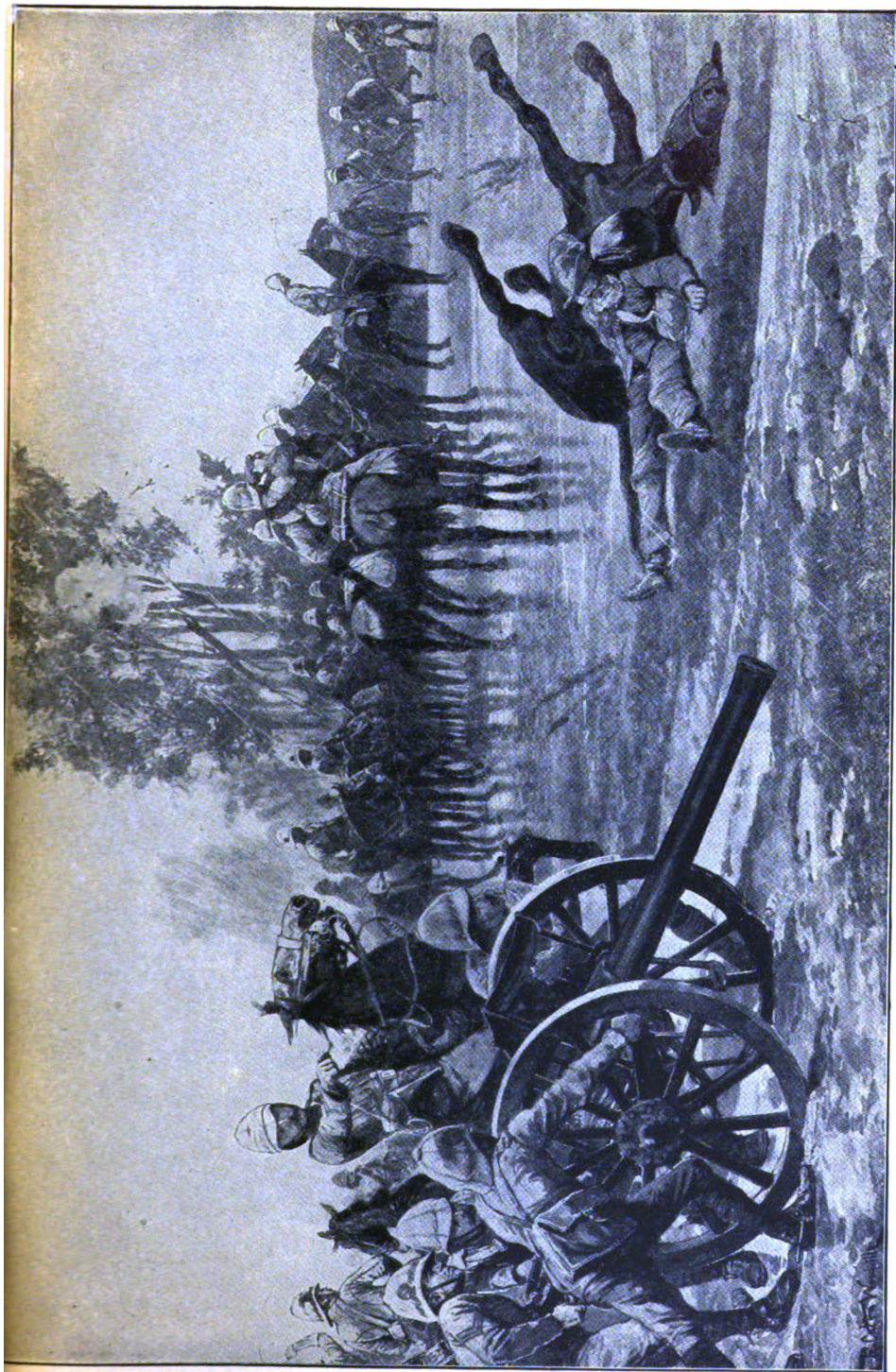
In the north of Cape Colony, on December 30, 1899, Lieutenant de Montmorency made a reconnaissance and found the Boers at Labuschaghes Nek, six miles north of Dordrecht. In the evening forty men were cut off in a donga, on account of their refusal to leave a wounded officer. The little detachment defended itself bravely against eight hundred Boers until the next morning, when some of the Cape Mounted Rifles came to its relief. The Boers retreated. The British loss was two wounded. The Boer loss was about thirty, of whom eight were killed.

Two British Victories.

New Years' Day, 1900, was signalized by British victories on the southern and western frontiers—namely, the success of General French's force over the Boers at Colesberg and the victory of Colonel Pilcher's force of Canadians and Australians at Sunnyside.

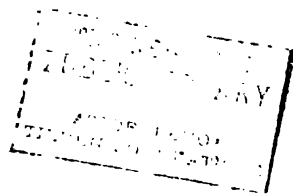
Battle of Colesberg.

On December 30, 1899, the Boers left their intrenched position at Rensburg and returned to Colesberg, fearing that their communications would be cut off, as they were threatened by the British cavalry.



A RECONNAISSANCE UNDER DIFFICULTIES DURING THE SOUTH AFRICAN WAR—GENERAL FRENCH'S
FORCE IN THE COLESBURG DISTRICT

From the Drawing by R. Caton Woodville



General French started from Rensburg on the night of December 31, 1899, to flank the Boer position at Colesberg. The Boer outposts were taken by surprise; and at dawn of New Year's Day, 1900, General French shelled the Boer laager and enfiladed the right of their position. The Boers replied, but their artillery was silenced; and the British advanced to the north of Colesberg, where General French reported that his position cut the Boer line of retreat. The British lost three killed and a few wounded. A British provision train broke away from a siding near Colesberg Junction, it being suspected that somebody had treacherously taken off the brakes. The train ran down the line for some distance and then got off the track. The Boers attempted to loot the train, but were driven off by the British artillery fire. Fighting around Colesberg lasted several days, and the Boers recovered their lost positions.

On the western frontier a severe action occurred at Sunnyside, thirty miles north-west of Belmont, where Colonel Pilcher's force, largely Canadians and Australians, completely defeated a Boer commando on New Year's Day, 1900, taking the Boer laager and forty prisoners, and killing and wounding many Boers. The British loss was two killed and one dangerously wounded. The British occupied Douglas, but soon evacuated that town. The Boers occupied Molteno, but evacuated that town after a hot skirmish.

Battle of Sunnyside.

The British cruiser *Magicienne* siezed the German liner *Bundesrath* north of Delagoa Bay, on the charge of having on board three officers and twenty privates who were intending to serve in the Boer army. There were persistent rumors at Lorenzo Marques and Durban that artillery and ammunition for the Boers were being smuggled constantly through Lorenzo Marques. This seizure threatened serious diplomatic complications between Great Britain and Germany, and there was great indignation in the latter country. Two other German vessels, the *Hersog* and the *General*, were siezed soon afterwards on similar charges. The siezed vessels were released by the British authorities after an official investigation. American goods on board the *Beatrice*, the *Mashona* and the *Maria* were also siezed by the British authorities at Lorenzo Marques, on the charge of being contraband to be used by the Boer army; but these goods were also released after an official investigation.

British Seizure of German Vessels.

The transport *Orient* sailed from England for Cape Town on December 9, 1899, with twelve hundred and seventy-five British officers and privates. On New Year's Day, 1900, almost two thousand officers and privates embarked on the *Cymric*. On January 3d the *Kildonan Castle* sailed with eighty-one officers and twenty-five hundred and ninety-six non-commissioned officers and privates. The Prince of

British Reinforcements.

Wales consented to be colonel-in-chief of the Imperial Yeomanry. On January 2d the British War Office announced that twelve battalions of militia were to be called out for foreign service and that seven of them were to be sent to South Africa. A London gentleman offered to equip and send out to South Africa a complete hospital for the use of the field force, to contain a hundred beds. On December 29, 1899, a supplicatory service for the success of the British arms in South Africa was held in St. Paul's Cathedral, when the Bishop of London preached an impressive sermon.

**Hindoo
Loyalty
to Great
Britain.**

At this time there were many examples of Hindoo loyalty to Great Britain. The Nizam of Haiderabad made an address at Calcutta, saying that his purse, his army and his own sword were ever ready to defend the British Empire. The Maharajah of Gwalior asked permission to serve in the British army in South Africa and offered to send troops, horses and a transport to that quarter. The entire Third Bengal Cavalry, composed of native Hindoos, voluntarily subscribed a day's pay toward the British war fund. Every Hindoo prince now offered to send horses to the seat of war. Lord Curzon, the Viceroy of British India, informed Queen Victoria of the loyal spirit manifested by all classes of her Hindoo subjects; and the queen sent the Viceroy a message expressing her warm appreciation of this loyalty.

**Great
Boer
Repulse
at Ladysmith.**

On January 6, 1900, the Boers under General Joubert made a desperate effort to carry Ladysmith by storm. The conflict raged fiercely for seventeen hours; and the Boers repeatedly captured strong points, and the British as often recaptured them and finally repulsed the Boers. The British loss in killed and wounded was over eight hundred men, and the Boer loss is said to have been over two thousand, the lyddite shells fired by the British producing wonderful havoc in the Boer ranks. But General White's situation at Ladysmith was still critical, owing to disease and scarcity of supplies among his troops. The relief expected from General Buller had not yet materialized; and Buller's reported attack on Colenso, on the advance toward Ladysmith, was simply a demonstration. General Buller finally got one of his divisions across the Tugela River at Potgieter's Drift, and this division at once occupied strong positions opposite the Boers' extreme right flank. The Boers made no resistance to the crossing and were completely taken by surprise.

**Kuruman,
Mafeking
and Rensburg.**

In the meantime stirring incidents were occurring on the northern frontier. Kuruman was captured by the Boers, with its small garrison. A fort at Mafeking was destroyed by Boer shells. On the southern frontier twenty Australians were captured at Rensburg after a spirited conflict. The British under General Wood invaded the Orange Free State.

Lords Roberts and Kitchener, the newly-appointed British commanders in South Africa, arrived at Cape Town on January 10, 1900. There were now in circulation persistent rumors that General Lord Methuen was insane, in consequence of injuries sustained by being thrown heavily to the ground by the rearing of his charger in the battle of Magersfontein, but these rumors were found to be utterly without foundation in fact.

Lords
Roberts,
Kitchener
and
Methuen.

For several weeks in January, 1900, General Buller had been making preparations for the relief of Ladysmith. On January 17th a British cavalry force under Lord Dundonald defeated the Boers in a sharp engagement west of Acton Homes, and occupied several kopjes, which he continued to hold, the Boers losing twenty killed and wounded and fifteen taken prisoners, while the British lost two killed and two wounded. During the same day the Boer trenches were shelled all day long by the British naval cannon. A balloon did good service to the British in observing the Boer positions. General Sir Charles Warren held two prominent kopjes beyond Spion Kop against all Boer attacks and bombarded the Boer trenches. President Krüger's grandson-in-law was taken prisoner.

Successes
of Lord
Dundonald
and General
Warren
around
Ladysmith.

On January 20th General Sir Cornelius Francis Clery, with part of General Warren's force, was engaged with the Boers for thirteen hours, capturing ridge after ridge for about three miles. The British troops bivouacked on the ground which they had won, but the main Boer position was still in front of them. The British loss in wounded was two hundred and ninety. To relieve the pressure on General Warren and to ascertain the Boer strength in front of Potgieter's Drift, General Lyttleton made a reconnaissance in force on the same day, losing two men killed, twelve wounded and two missing. The trenches evacuated by the Boers were occupied by the British troops at dawn the next day, Sunday, January 21st. All of that day General Warren was engaged, mainly on his left, which he pushed forward two miles, the Boers clinging to their rocky fastnesses with great tenacity. The British artillery fire was very severe, and a strong Boer patrol met with a disaster.

Successes
of
Generals
Clery and
Warren.

On the night of January 23d General Warren captured Spion Kop, a rocky, precipitous height, which was believed to command the Boer intrenchments; the British loss being considerable, and General Woodgate being fatally wounded. The next night, January 24th, the British garrison evacuated Spion Kop; and General Warren's and Lord Dundonald's forces recrossed to the south bank of the Tugela River on January 27th, though General Lyttleton's brigade still occupied its original position. Thus General Buller's second effort for the relief of Ladysmith ended in complete failure, after a week's fight-

Capture
and Re-
capture
of Spion
Kop.

ing. The Boers estimated the British loss in killed at fifteen hundred, and captured one hundred and fifty prisoners.

Colonel
Thorneycroft.

General Buller stated that Colonel Thorneycroft was the officer who ordered the evacuation of Spion Kop, and that Colonel Thorneycroft was not to be censured, because that officer's conduct was admirable throughout. It was stated by others that when the order for the evacuation of Spion Kop was given artillery and engineers were on their way to strengthen the British position, but that Colonel Thorneycroft was not aware of that fact.

Bombard-
ment of
Ladysmith.

The Boers daily shelled Ladysmith; and among the killed in the beleaguered town was Mr. G. W. Stevens, the well-known correspondent of the London *Daily Mail*. The Boers were very active in throwing up intrenchments while they were vigorously keeping up their bombardment, but their large cannon "Susannah" had burst.

Operations
on the
Western
Frontier.

In the meantime the war was progressing actively on the western frontier. On January 17th General Lord Methuen made a reconnaissance to destroy a new laager within the Boer lines to the right of the British position, but the Boers had anticipated the movement and removed the laager. On January 22d the British artillery shelled the Boer artillery for an hour, silencing one cannon and blowing up a magazine of black powder. Deserters stated that the Boer position at Magersfontein was becoming unbearable through enteric fever, the absence of all food except meat, and exposure to the weather. The Boers there were suffering from the insanitary condition of their trenches.

Bombard-
ments of
Mafeking
and Kim-
berley.

The Boer bombardment of Mafeking was continued very actively and was directed deliberately on the women's laager and hospital, and the Boers were using explosive bullets. The Boers bombarded Kimberley very vigorously on January 23d, but with no result. A 30-pounder cannon, cast by an American citizen for the De Beers Company and named "Long Cecil," in honor of Cecil John Rhodes, who fired off the gun with his own hand on several occasions, was shooting very effectively.

Movements
on the
Southern
Frontier.

In the meantime there was great activity on the southern frontier. A patrol of Australian troops fell into a Boer ambush on January 16th, and a hot fight ensued, in which one Australian was killed and thirteen were made prisoners by the Boers. The British under General French attacked the Boers at Colesberg on January 20th, and a fierce struggle ensued, without a decisive result. On January 24th the British forces under Generals French and Gatacre effected a junction at Steynsburg. A British column under General Kelly-Kenny, the commander of the Sixth Division, occupied Thebus, on the railway between Steynsburg and Rosmead Junction.

On January 29th Commandant Olivier, of the Orange Free State, made a speech to the Boers at Lady Grey, in which he said that his men were almost surrounded at Stormberg and that unless troops were forthcoming he would be compelled to abandon the position. Many colonists who fought at Stormberg went back to their farms and refused to return to active service, though threatened with death. Among these men were some conspicuous burghers who originally had invited the Free Staters to invade Cape Colony.

**Boer
Situation
at Storm-
berg.**

In the meantime there were daily rumors of desultory shell firing at various points throughout South Africa and concerning the movements of patrols. The Boers held the British at bay at many points by their peculiar strategy.

**Desultory
Warfare.**

The Portuguese authorities at length took active steps to check the wholesale entrance of foreigners at Delagoa Bay on the way to the Transvaal to enlist in the Boer service. These steps were taken in consequence of the earnest representations of the British authorities to check this foreign individual aid to the Boers.

**Portu-
guese
Vigilance.**

Queen Victoria gave one hundred pounds for the Imperial Yeomanry Hospital. Major-General Sir Leslie Rundle was appointed to command the Eighth Division, then being mobilized for the British service in South Africa. Nine battalions of militia were called upon for garrison service in place of the battalions of regulars sent to South Africa. Altogether eight hundred and one officers and privates of the Imperial Yeomanry, with six hundred and fifty-nine horses, sailed from Liverpool for the seat of war on January 27th and 28th. The second detachment of the London City Imperial volunteers, eight hundred strong, left Southampton on January 20th on the transports *Ariosto*, *Gaul* and *Kinfauns Castle* for Cape Town. The transport *Manchester Corporation* was disabled on her way to Cape Town, and the *Cymric* was sent to her assistance. A committee of Danish farmers gave the Prince of Wales twelve thousand boxes of butter for the British soldiers in South Africa.

**Imperial
Yeo-
manry
and Vol-
unteers.**

On January 23d Lord Rosebery made a speech at Chatham, in which he said that the British are not fighting against freedom, but against corruption; and, in reviewing the evils which the British had undergone and the good they had achieved during the war, he said that he did not think that the balance was against the British. Speeches on the war were also made by Sir M. W. Ridley, Mr. Courtney, Mr. Herbert Gladstone, Mr. John Morley and Sir Edward Grey.

**Speeches
on the
War.**

On January 27th the third contingent of the London City Imperial Volunteers, consisting of one hundred and thirty-five officers and privates, sailed on board the transports *Pembroke Castle* and *Scot* for Cape Town. The next day about one thousand of the Imperial Yeo-

**More
Imperial
Yeo-
manry
and
Militia.**

manry sailed for the same point. Several other transports sailed during the same week. A special army order directed the embodiment of three more battalions of militia. The Estates of the Island of Jersey voted unanimously five thousand pounds for a battery of six field cannon to be presented to the British government for use in South Africa. The sixty-two thousand pounds raised in Church collections was divided equally between the Red Cross Society, Lloyd's Patriotic Fund and the Soldiers' and Sailors' Families Association. At the close of January one hundred and fifty American scouts arrived at Cape Town as muleteers and enlisted in the British service.

**The
British
Parliament.**

The British Parliament reassembled on January 30th. The speech from the throne declared that the war must continue until the British arms are triumphant and that Her Majesty was gratified over the response to the call for resistance against the invaders of British territory. In the House of Lords, Lords Salisbury, Kimberley and Rosebery made speeches; Lord Rosebery criticising the Ministry's attitude on the question of the war and the want of adequate preparation to meet the immense armaments of the Boers. In the House of Commons the Opposition apparently were united in pressing an amendment to the speech from the throne in relation to the South African war.

**Colonial
Secretary
Chamberlain's
Speech.**

Spirited debates continued in the British Parliament for a full week; and the Irish National leaders and Mr. James Bryce, the Scotch Liberal leader, made speeches against the war, which they denounced as unjust on the part of Great Britain. Colonial Secretary Chamberlain made a speech on February 5th, calling the war just and righteous on the part of Great Britain, and predicting that there will be "no second Majuba," but saying that it is premature to talk of terms of settlement. Among other things he said: "Never again shall the Boers erect in the heart of Africa a citadel whence to proceed to disaffection and race animosity. Never again shall they be able to endanger the paramountcy of Great Britain. Never again shall they be able to treat an Englishman as though he belonged to an inferior race." Referring to statements regarding "national gloom," Mr. Chamberlain said: "I do not accept the phrase. I know of anxiety and of irritation, perhaps, but not of vacillation approaching fear or gloom. We are now finding the infinite potentialities and resources of the Empire. We are advancing to the realization of that great federation of our race which must inevitably make for peace, liberty and justice."

**The
Ministry
Sustained.**

Sir Henry Campbell-Bannerman and Mr. Herbert Henry Asquith, Liberals, made speeches in reply to Mr. Chamberlain; and Mr. Balfour, the Ministerial leader, closed in defense of the government. One of the ablest speeches made in the House of Commons during these debates was that of the Rt. Hon. George Wyndham, Under Secretary

of State for War, who skillfully defended the government against the Liberal attacks. The debate was followed by a vote of the House of Commons in approval of the Ministry's policy, the vote standing three hundred and fifty-two against and one hundred and thirty-nine for the Liberal amendment to the address from the throne; the Irish members having left the House in a body before the vote was taken, some of the Liberals refusing to vote and others voting to sustain the government.

Public opinion in England was strongly on the side of the government, as exemplified in the York city election, in which the Liberal majority of eleven in the preceding election was changed to a Unionist majority of fourteen hundred and thirty. There was no question that the war, with all its British disasters and humiliations, had the unexpected effect of unifying and consolidating the British Empire to a degree never attained before. This was clearly expressed by Dr. Arthur Conan Doyle at the Author's Club in London on January 22d, when he said: "I would build a monument to President Krüger of the size of St. Paul's Cathedral, putting him under it; and I would write across it: 'To the Memory of the Man who Federated the British Empire.'"

**War
Feeling in
England.**

On February 7th the House of Commons rejected a motion offered by Mr. John Redmond, the leader of the united Irish Nationalist party, and supported by his party associates, requiring the government to conclude the war on the basis of the recognition of the independence of the Transvaal Republic; the vote standing sixty-six for the motion and three hundred and sixty-eight against it. Even in Ireland a vote to fill a vacancy in the House of Commons was against Boer sympathy, as the Nationalist candidate who had organized an Irish regiment for the Boers was defeated overwhelmingly by another Nationalist, receiving a little over four hundred votes, and his successful competitor over twenty-four hundred.

**Irish
Attitude.**

An optimistic feeling prevailed among all ranks of the British troops in Natal, all being confident of ultimate success. Great enthusiasm was aroused by the queen's speech at the reassembling of Parliament and by General Buller's speech expressing admiration for Generals Warren's and Clery's troops.

**British
Opti-
mism.**

It was stated that almost ten thousand trained European soldiers, including about three hundred officers, were then fighting in the Boer service. These foreigners included Frenchmen, Germans, Dutchmen, Belgians, Irishmen and men of other nationalities. A German military officer in the Boer army stated in regard to the military situation at Ladysmith: "Owing to the strength of our position, on a circle of heights, like Sedan, we cannot be brushed aside except by a relief

**Foreign-
ers in
the Boer
Service.**

**Views
on the
Military
Situation.**

column outnumbering us two to one." A British military expert expressed the opinion that the British would need ten men to each one of the Boers in order to end the war victoriously for the British cause, on account of the strength of the Boer positions in consequence of the nature of the country, which favors the kind of warfare the Boers carried on, their quick movements, their continual fighting under cover behind rocks and their adequate preparation, the work of years. A French officer with the Boers expressed the opinion that the British would need fifteen men to each Boer soldier in order to conquer the Boers. General Ricciotti Garibaldi, son of the great Italian patriot, Giuseppe Garibaldi, offered to command a corps of Italian volunteers in the British ranks.

**The
Prince of
Wales
and the
Volun-
teers.**

On February 2d the Prince of Wales inspected a contingent of Yeomanry and Honorable Artillery Company Volunteers at the Life Guards' barracks at Regents' Park, prior to their departure from London to embark for South Africa. The spectators included Lord Mayor Newton, a number of city dignitaries, army officers and many ladies. The Prince of Wales made a speech to the troops in the same vein as his address to the first contingent of Yeomanry at their departure from London on January 26th.

**More
British
Reinforce-
ments.**

It was stated that Field-Marshal Lord Roberts, the commander-in-chief of the British forces in South Africa, had asked for ninety thousand additional troops and that the British government had promised to furnish them, sending fifty thousand militia and forty thousand militia reserves. It was also said that the Volunteers would be mobilized forthwith. It was also asserted that the Militia Ballot Act would be put in force on February 14th. That act made every unmarried man between the ages of eighteen and thirty years liable to serve as a soldier for five years.

**Renewed
Fighting
around
Lady-
smith.**

After several days' fighting General Buller again crossed the Tugela River on February 5th, in a third attempt to relieve Ladysmith. The passage of the river was made at Potgieter's Drift and at Molen's Drift, with the object of storming the Boer positions. On that and the next day the British bombarded the Boer positions on the upper part of the Tugela with naval and other cannon. At Potgieter's Drift the Boers under General Schalk-Berger beat back the British and recrossed the river in great confusion. The fighting continued at Molen's Drift with the Standerton and Johannesburg commandos. The Boers did not lose a man. The cannonade was the fiercest yet experienced, and there was one continuous roar all day long. On the morning of the 6th the British renewed the bombardment with an increased number of cannon. The Boers enfiladed the advancing British columns, using their artillery posted on Spion Kop and other high hills.

The main British column, which had crossed the river at Molen's Drift, had occupied Vaal Krantz, a hill on the north side of the river. The Boers attempted to retake Vaal Krantz, but were repulsed with heavy loss. Although the Boer shell and Maxim fire was severe, the British loss was comparatively small. Great heroism was displayed on both sides. The British loss at Potgieter's Drift was two hundred and thirty-three in killed, wounded and missing. Among the British officers killed were Major Johnston Smyth and Lieutenant Shafto, both of the Durham Light Infantry; and among those wounded were Colonel Fitzgerald, of the Durham Light Infantry; Colonel A. J. Montgomery, of the Royal Artillery, and Lieutenant Sir T. A. Cunningham, of the Rifle Brigade. The British held their position at Molen's Drift on the 7th; but on the morning of the 8th they evacuated Vaal Krantz and recrossed the Tugela River to their former position, being driven back by the heavy bombardment by Boer cannon. Thus General Buller's third attempt to relieve beleaguered Ladysmith ended in utter failure.

**Capture
and Re-
capture
of Vaal
Krantz.**

In the meantime there was activity in other quarters. On February 2d Colonel Plumer's force attacked the Boer position near Ramonsta, on the Rhodesian frontier, about eighty miles north of Mafeking; and after heavy fighting, including an effort to take the place by storm, the British assailants were repulsed, with some loss, the Boers not losing a man.

**Battle of
Ramon-
sta.**

There were also some important movements in Natal about this time. On February 2d it was rumored that Lord Dundonald had made a reconnaissance on the upper part of the Tugela River, crossing the stream without difficulty. On February 6th an armored train made a sortie from Chieveley toward Colenso and landed two thousand British troops on the right of the Boer position. The Boers immediately crossed the Tugela River and attacked with rifles and artillery, compelling both the armored train and the British troops to fall back to Chieveley. The British artillery forced the Boers to evacuate their camp on Hlangwana Hill, south of Colenso, on February 12th. On the same day a detachment of General Buller's army made a reconnaissance at Springfield, being fired upon by the Boers near Fustenberg; but the Boers were driven back. Captain Hamilton Russell, Lieutenant G. Churchill and ten men were wounded, and Lieutenant Pinkington and sixteen men were captured by the Boers. Lord Dundonald, with seven hundred cavalry, a field battery and the First Royal Welsh Fusiliers, reconnoitered the high ground, forcing the Boers to evacuate their position after slight resistance, with the loss of two men; but the Boers returned and resumed fire upon the British when they retired from the hill.

**Renewed
Fighting
around
Lady-
smith.**

Severe
Fighting
around
Rensburg

There also was activity in the north of Cape Colony, especially around Rensburg. On February 7th the Boers shelled the British position on Porter's Hill without effect, and the next day the Boer position between Rensburg and Colesberg was bombarded by the British with lyddite shells for an hour in the morning. On the morning of the 9th the British bombarded the Boer position at Rensburg with lyddite shells, silencing the Boers' Maxim-Vicker cannon, and a dozen dead Boers were found on the kopjes. The Boers now assumed the aggressive at Rensburg and shelled the British camp with little effect. The Boers attempted to turn both flanks of the British army at Rensburg and threatened the British rear, from which direction the British supplies came from Cape Town; but the British maintained their position. On February 12th the Boers began an extended attack on the British lines in the vicinity of Rensburg and met with minor successes, which had considerable influence on the Dutch colonists in the north of Cape Colony. The British suffered small loss in killed and wounded; Lieutenant Coningham, of the Worcestershire Regiment, being mortally wounded.

Fighting
near
Sterk-
stroom.

In the meantime General Gatacre's force was assailed near Sterkstroom, being attacked by the Boers from two directions; but General Gatacre held his own against all his assailants, and no decisive result followed these operations. The Boers here, as elsewhere, were very active, not allowing the British any rest and trying to prevent General Gatacre's force from moving northward to assist in the invasion of the Orange Free State.

Battle of
Koodoes-
berg
Drift.

After occupying a strong position at Koodoesberg Drift, the Scotch Highlanders, under General Hector A. MacDonald, were engaged with the Boers in a severe battle lasting all day on February 7th, the British position being severely bombarded by the Boer cannon. General Babington was sent with a detachment to reinforce General MacDonald, but failed to do so. The British loss in killed and wounded was fifty men. The next morning General Lord Methuen ordered General MacDonald to evacuate Koodoesberg and to retire across the Modder River, which was done accordingly.

Fighting
around
Kimber-
ley.

On February 8th Kimberley was bombarded by the Boers; but the garrison, under Colonel Kekewich, was as resolute as ever. On the morning of February 9th a small infantry engagement occurred at Alexander's Fontein, lasting two hours. On February 10th the Boers took possession of Hobkirk's windmill and Bastard's Nek, but two days later the British shelled the Boers out of those positions and reoccupied them. The Boers turned the tables the same day, compelling the British outposts to evacuate Hobkirk's windmill, Bastard's Nek and other points and to retire to Moeder's farm.

On February 10th the Boers entered the town of Inkandla, in Zululand, the magistrate having exploded the magazine on the previous night and retired from the place with his police and proceeded to Eshowe.

Boers in Zululand.

All the great European governments recently had been endeavoring to show friendliness toward Great Britain, even the Czar of Russia himself; but the people and press of France, Germany, Russia, Austria-Hungary, Italy, Spain, Holland, Belgium, Switzerland and other European countries had been outspoken in their sympathies with the Boers, on the ground that the Boers were fighting for their homes and freedom. A great deal of this European sympathy with the Boers could be traced to national hatred and envy of Great Britain, but a great part of it was also aroused by a natural feeling to side with two little states against a worldwide empire; to a feeling of admiration for two small peoples, numbering together only about two hundred thousand souls, against a world power with a total population of over four hundred millions.

European Sympathy for the Boers.

The people and press of Continental Europe sympathized with the Boers and were against Great Britain, just as they sided with Spain and were against the United States in the Spanish-American War. This popular European sympathy with the Boers found practical expression in the action of many foreigners who entered the Boer service, among whom were Irishmen, Frenchmen, Dutchmen, Germans and others. Many French and German military officers held important commands in the Boer armies.

European Officers in the Boer Service.

In the United States popular sympathy was divided, the pro-Boer sympathizers becoming more and more demonstrative in their expressions of sympathy and more and more abusive of Great Britain. The classes which sympathized with the Boers were mainly the Irish, German and Dutch elements of the American population. The people who sided with Great Britain were generally very quiet and embraced a large and intelligent portion of the population of English and Scotch extraction. The press was very much divided in its sympathies, many prominent newspapers being on the Boer side, while some were non-committal and others were outspoken in their sympathies with Great Britain. There were many pro-Boer meetings in the large cities, while the pro-British sympathizers did not hold meetings. The sympathy for the Boers was on the ground that the Boers were fighting for their homes and the preservation of their independence against the conscienceless greed and aggression of a great worldwide empire. The sympathy for the British was based on the ground that the Transvaal was no real republic, but a theocratic despotism, and that Great Britain's triumph would be in the interest of real liberty, civilization

Divided American Sympathy.

Demonstrative pro-Boer Sympathizers.

and justice. A number of prominent Americans openly expressed their sympathy with the British, such as Whitelaw Reid, Senator Chauncey Mitchell Depew, Ex-Secretary of War Alger, General Wesley Merritt, and Captain Mahan, of the United States navy. In general the sympathizers with the Boers were also sympathizers with the Filipinos in their struggle for independence against the United States government, prominent among which were Senators Hoar, Mason, Allen, Pettigrew and others.

American
Volun-
teers
for Both
Sides.

At the beginning of the South African war there were three kinds of petitions sent to President McKinley, some in favor of mediation, others asking the President to interfere in favor of the Boers, and still others asking him to intervene on the British side; but the President positively declined to interfere on any side, taking the ground that it was a question that did not concern us. It was said that there were Americans desiring to volunteer on each side. A United States army officer was said to be trying to raise a filibustering expedition to aid the Boers, while American and Cuban soldiers in Cuba were said to be ready to take the field on the British side, carrying a banner with the motto: "We fight for civilization." The British consul in Chicago said that he had so many applications from Americans who desired to volunteer on the British side that he could not answer them. The British consul in New York city stated that over five thousand Americans applied to him to serve in the British army in South Africa. A number of Irish Americans actually served in the Boer army.

Case of
Consul
Macrum.

As the United States government ordered Consul Macrum at Pretoria to look after British interests and refused to recognize John O'Birne as official representative of the Transvaal Republic in the United States, President Krüger regarded the United States as Great Britain's ally. Consul Macrum, who sympathized with the Boers, resigned his post, came home and charged the British at Cape Town with opening his mail; but an official investigation showed his charges to be unfounded, so far as a design of tampering with the United States official mail was concerned. In the haste in opening the immense mail at Cape Town several wrappers of Consul Macrum's mail were accidentally and unintentionally torn off, for which the British government made a suitable apology to the United States government. Adelbert S. Hay, son of Secretary of State John Hay, was appointed his successor and looked after British interests at Pretoria.

Johannes-
burg's
Great-
ness.

In the meantime there were rumors of threatened foreign intervention in the South African war. Russia, France and Germany were represented as being hostile to Great Britain's policy toward the Boers; but Germany became Great Britain's friend in the settlement of the Samoan question early in November, 1899, in which Great Britain made

concessions to Germany in South Africa and retired from the Samoan Islands altogether in exchange for compensation elsewhere. But Russia and France still were exceedingly jealous of Great Britain; and it was rumored that Russia, France and Spain had come to an understanding to act together against Great Britain's policy in South Africa in certain emergencies. The United States government was on the most friendly terms with Great Britain.

The published statements of Olive Schreiner in the American press had a great influence upon American opinion on the war. This gifted female author charged the responsibility for the war upon the greedy British capitalists whom she represented as being desirous of bringing the Transvaal under the British dominion in order to have the Rand gold mines in British territory. While expressing her uncompromising sympathy with the Boer cause, she professed to dearly love Old England.

Olive
Schrei-
ner.

Olive Schreiner was the daughter of a German peddler named Schreiner who, a generation before, settled in South Africa, with his wife, to make his permanent home in that quarter of the globe, and who gave a good education to his children, who all were talented and who all had made their mark in life. The father of the family had now been dead for some years, but the mother was still living. Olive devoted herself to literature and became a famous novelist. She acquired a worldwide literary reputation by her *Story of An African Farm*, in which she graphically depicted the life of a typical Boer family and the story of their wrongs and sufferings, and which she had written in an humble Boer farm cottage, furnished in the most primitive style, having the bare ground for a floor and a large store-box for her table. After acquiring fame as a writer she married Cron Wright, a young Englishman in South Africa, who, in deference to her literary reputation, generously consented to allow her to retain her maiden name, himself assuming her family name, so that he called himself Cron-Wright-Schreiner, writing his full assumed name with two hyphens, while she still went by the name of Olive Schreiner, instead of by the name of Mrs. Cron Wright.

Her
Literary
Fame.

Her brother, W. P. Schreiner, became a friend of Cecil John Rhodes, was elected to the Cape Colony Parliament, and had been the Prime Minister of Cape Colony for the last few years, under the Governorship of Sir Alfred Milner, then British High Commissioner for South Africa; being the representative of the Dutch population of Cape Colony, whose representatives constitute a majority of the Colonial Parliament. He was believed to be a sympathizer with the Boers at heart, as was his distinguished sister, but he had all along openly professed loyalty to Great Britain; and his half-hearted course in en-

W. P.
Schrei-
ner.

deavoring to curry the favor of both parties in the war had won for him the distrust of both.

Theophilus Schreiner.

Olive's widowed mother was a strong British sympathizer. Olive's brother Theophilus, who had acquired prominence by his religious and temperance work and by his labors in every good cause for the elevation of the masses of the people in the scale of social morality, was likewise an ardent British sympathizer, and had announced his intention to taking up his pen in the British cause to counteract the effects of his celebrated sister's writings in favor of the Boers.

His Colloquy with Mr. Reitz.

Theophilus Schreiner gave an account of a conversation which he had with Mr. Reitz, the Secretary of State of the Transvaal Republic, concerning the famous Afrikaner Bond and the future of South Africa. This interview took place soon after the treaty of 1881, in which Great Britain had restored the independence of the Transvaal. Mr. Reitz was then Judge of the Orange Free State. The following colloquy took place at this interview in Bloemfontein, when Mr. Schreiner refused to become a member of the Afrikaner Bond, after studying its constitution and program:

Mr. Reitz—Why do you refuse? Is the object of getting the people to take an interest in political matters not a good one?

Mr. Schreiner—Yes, it is; but I seem to see plainly here between the lines of this constitution much more ultimately aimed at than that.

Mr. Reitz—What?

Mr. Schreiner—I see quite clearly that the ultimate object aimed at is the overthrow of the British power and the expulsion of the British flag from South Africa.

Mr. Reitz—Well, what if it is so?

Mr. Schreiner—You don't suppose, do you, that that flag is going to disappear from South Africa without a tremendous struggle and fight?

Mr. Reitz—Well, I suppose not; but even so, what of that?

Mr. Schreiner—Only this, that when that struggle takes place you and I will be on opposite sides; and what is more, the God who was on the side of the Transvaal in the late war, because it had right on its side, will be on the side of England, because He must view with abhorrence any plotting and scheming to overthrow her power and position in South Africa, which have been ordained by Him.

Mr. Reitz—We'll see.

His Comment Thereon.

This ended the colloquy, which Mr. Schreiner says was impressed indelibly upon his memory. He said he had watched the course of Krüger, Reitz, Steyn and their coworkers, and they had been plotting and scheming ceaselessly for the overthrow of the British dominion in South Africa and for bringing on the war, with the view of establish-

ing a great Dutch Republic there in place of the British dominion. He asserted that the Boer leaders and the Afrikaner Bond, and not England, nor England's queen, nor England's government, were the real originators of the lamentable war. This conspiracy, he declared, had begun five or six years before the discovery of the gold mines enabled the Transvaal to prepare for the struggle by the immense armaments which it thus was empowered to establish. He also said that the Boers did not think that England would fight, considering the English too cowardly.

The commanders on the British side in the war now were the following:

**British
Com-
manders.**

Field-Marshal Lord Frederick Sleigh Roberts of Kandahar and Waterford, the new British Commander-in-Chief in South Africa, an Irishman, who for over twenty years had been the British Commander-in-Chief in India.

Major-General Lord Horatio Herbert Kitchener of Khartoum and Aspell, Lord Roberts's chief of staff, also an Irishman, who won fame and title by his great victory over the Khalifa, in the Egyptian Sudan, in September, 1898.

The Right Honorable Lieutenant-General Sir Redvers Henry Buller, lately British Commander-in-Chief in South Africa, who suffered three severe repulses in his efforts for the relief of Ladysmith, which he finally accomplished on the last of February.

Lieutenant-General Lord Paul Sanford Methuen, who won the victories of Modder River, Belmont and Graspan, but was finally disastrously defeated at Magersfontein.

Major-General Sir William Forbes Gatacre, who was severely defeated near Stormberg Junction.

Lieutenant-General Sir Charles Warren, who won some advantages near Ladysmith and captured and lost Spion Kop.

Colonel Alexander Whitelaw Thorneycroft.

Lieutenant-General Sir Cornelius Francis Clery, who commanded under General Warren.

Lieutenant-General Sir George Stuart White, the brave defender of Ladysmith, an Irishman.

Colonel Robert Stephenson Smyth Baden-Powell, the gallant and enterprising defender of Mafeking.

Colonel Robert George Kekewich, the brave defender of Kimberley.

Lieutenant-General Sir Thomas Kelly-Kenny, commanding a cavalry division in Lord Roberts's army, an Irishman.

Major-General Sir John Denton Pinkstone French, who won the victory of Elandslaagte, defended Colesberg and Rensburg and relieved Kimberley, an Irishman.

Major-General the Earl of Dundonald (Douglas Mackinnon Baillie Hamilton Cochrane), in command of a cavalry division under General Buller, defeated the Boers near Acton Homes and entered Ladysmith, a Scotchman.

Major-General Sir Archibald Hunter, General Buller's chief of staff, a Scotchman.

Major-General Sir Herbert Charles Chermiside, commanding the Fourteenth Brigade.

Brigadier-General James Herbert Yule, the successor of the lamented Major-General Sir William Penn Symons, who was killed at Glencoe.

Colonel Thomas David Pilcher, commanding the British mounted infantry at the Modder River, who won the victory of Sunnyside.

Colonel Herbert Charles Onslow Plumer, commanding a British column marching to the relief of Mafeking, defeated at Ramonsta.

Brigadier-General Hector A. MacDonald, Scotchman, the commander of the Highland Brigade, as successor to the late General Wauchope, Scotchman, who was killed at Magersfontein.

General Sir Frederick William Edward Forestier-Walker, commanding at Cape Town.

Major-General Sir Henry Macleod Leslie Rundle.

Lieutenant-General Sir Frederick Carrington, in command of the Rhodesian field force.

Major-General Sir Henry John Thoroton Hildyard.

Brigadier-General Hon. Sir. Neville Gerald Lyttleton.

Brigadier-General Sir Edward Yewd Brabant, who relieved Wepener.

Brigadier-General Ralph Arthur Penryhn Clements.

Major-General Sir Reginald Pole-Carew, General Gatacre's successor.

Major-General Sir George Tindal Pretymann.

Major-General Sir Elliott Wood.

Major-General Sir Charles Tucker.

Major-General Sir Henry Edward Colville.

Colonel Edwin Alfred Hervey Alderson.

Brigadier-General Arthur Fitz-Roy Hart, an Irishman.

Brigadier-General Horace Lockwood Smith-Dorrien.

Brigadier-General Geoffry Barton.

Brigadier-General Sir Ian Standish Monteith Hamilton.

Brigadier-General Sir Bruce Meade Hamilton.

Brigadier-General Sir John Grenfell Maxwell, Scotchman.

Lieutenant-Colonel David Henderson, Scotchman.

Colonel Herbert Scott Gould Miles.

Brigadier-General Sir Charles Edmond Knox.

Brigadier-General Sir William George Knox.



From Photographs, copyright by Underwood & Underwood



COMMANDERS IN BOER WAR

Left: Generals Botha De Wet and De La R y

Right: Lord Roberts

THE
UNIVERSITY OF
TORONTO
LIBRARY
400 SPENCER
TILLEN FOUNDATIONS

Major-General Sir Edward Thomas Henry Hutton.

Colonel James Henry Gordon.

Lieutenant-Colonel Hon. Frederick Gordon.

Lieutenant-General Sir William Francis Butler, an Irishman, was removed at the beginning of the war to make room for General Buller.

Among the British generals killed during the war were the following:

Major-General Sir William Penn Symons, at Glencoe.

Brigadier-General Wauchope, a Scotchman, at Magersfontein.

Brigadier-General Sir Edward Woodgate, fatally wounded at Spion Kop, died two months afterward.

The following were the most prominent of the Boer leaders:

Stephanus Johannes Paulus Krüger, President of the Transvaal, or South African Republic. Boer Leaders.

Petrus Jacobus Joubert, Vice President of the South African Republic and Commandant-General of its Forces, who died March 27, 1900.

General Piet A. Cronje, who surrendered to Lord Roberts after ten days' heroic fight at Paardeberg.

General Schalk-Berger, commanding under Joubert.

General Louis Botha, the successor of Joubert.

General Christian R. De Wet.

General J. H. Delarey.

Dr. Willem Johannes Leyds, Transvaal Diplomatic Agent in Europe.

The Honorable Francois Willem Reitz, the Transvaal Secretary of State.

Montagu White, Transvaal Diplomatic Agent in the United States, an English colonist of South Africa in the Transvaal service.

President Martinus Theunis Steyn, of the Orange Free State.

We have noticed that there was a battle of Belmont in this war. Interesting Facts. There was also a battle of Belmont in the Great Civil War in the United States. The names of some British generals in the great British-Boer War were the same as those of some Union generals in the great American Civil War—such as Walker, Warren, Butler, French, Hunter, Miles.

The period of constant disastrous and humiliating British reverses was followed in February, 1900, by a period generally characterized by British successes, beginning with the new campaign inaugurated by Field-Marshal Lord Roberts's invasion of the Orange Free State. The relief of beleaguered Kimberley by General French about the middle of February; the defeat of General Cronje in a ten days' struggle at and around Paardeberg and his final surrender to Lord Roberts on the 19th anniversary of Majuba; the relief of Ladysmith by General Buller the Period of British Successes.

next day, and the occupation of Bloemfontein, the Orange Free State capital, near the middle of March, were the substantial British successes in the course of a month. We will now proceed to a detailed account of these great and decisive events.

**Lord
Roberts's
Invasion
of the
Orange
Free
State.**

Field-Marshal Lord Roberts, the new commander-in-chief of the British forces in South Africa, and his chief of staff, Major-General Lord Kitchener, left for the front early in February; their purpose being to direct the movements against the Boers for the relief of Kimberley and the invasion of the Orange Free State from the northern frontier of Cape Colony; the objective point being Bloemfontein, the Free State capital, from which point the movement was to be directed toward the invasion of the Transvaal and the occupation of its capital, Pretoria.

**His
Advance
toward
Kimber-
ley.**

The first object of the British invasion of the Orange Free State was the relief of Kimberley. Field-Marshal Lord Roberts, commanding in person an army of thirty-seven thousand British troops, was conducting the advance. He left behind him at the Modder River, his advanced base, a force estimated at ten thousand men, under the command of General Lord Methuen. Lord Roberts began his advance on Sunday, February 11th. General Cronje was in command of the Boers in that section.

**General
French's
Advance.**

General French fixed himself on General Cronje's communications with Bloemfontein and executed a series of brilliant movements. A force of twenty thousand infantry, with seventy-two cannon, was pushed up to support him there. The British were on the flank of General Cronje's main position at Magersfontein, being between five and ten miles from that place. In command of the British cavalry and with a force of horse artillery, General French left the Modder River on Sunday morning, February 11th, for Rambam, twelve miles east of Enslin, where the entire division concentrated.

**Colonel
Hannay's
Success.**

On the same day Colonel Hannay, in command of a British brigade of mounted infantry coöperating with General French's force, having marched from the Orange River to Ramah, had a slight engagement with the Boers who occupied the hills and menaced his right flank. With a detached part of his force Colonel Hannay detained the Boers while he pushed his main body and his baggage through to Ramah, successfully carrying out the object of his march. His loss was four men killed, twenty-two wounded and thirteen missing.

**General
French's
Success.**

The next day, February 12th, General French made a rapid march to the Reit River, where a party of Boers disputed his passage at Dekil's and Waterfall Drifts. After some hours' shelling General French drove the Boers away and crossed the river. He was then on the soil of the Orange Free State. The following day he left Dekil's

Drift with three brigades of cavalry, horse artillery and mounted infantry, including several colonial contingents, for the purpose of seizing a crossing of the Modder River, about twenty-five miles distant. He forced a passage of Klip Drift and occupied the hills north of the river, capturing three of the Boer laagers, with their supplies. General Gordon, of the Fifteenth Hussars, with his brigade, having made a feint at Rondaval Drift, four miles west, had seized it and another drift between that and Klip Drift, together with two more laagers, besides a large number of cattle and two thousand sheep. On account of the rapidity of his movements, General French encountered very little resistance and his losses were very small. Lieutenant Johnson, of the Enniskillen Dragons, was the only officer severely wounded.

General French finally reached Kimberley on the evening of February 15th, with a force of artillery, cavalry and mounted infantry. He announced that he had completely dispersed the Boer forces from the southern side of Kimberley, from Alexander's Fontein to Oliphant's Fontein, and was then going to occupy their ground. He further announced that he had captured the Boer laager and store depot supplies and supplies of ammunition. His loss was twenty men wounded. He announced: "Kimberley cheerful and well." Field-Marshal Lord Roberts highly complimented General French on the brilliant success of his operations.

**His
Relief of
Kimber-
ley.**

Although General French's rapid march was marked by a series of conflicts, his actual entrance into Kimberley was unopposed. When his advancing troops were still eight miles distant the signalling corps intercepted a heliograph message from the beleaguered garrison to the Modder River, saying: "The Boers are shelling the town." French's advance column replied: "This is General French coming to the relief of Kimberley." The garrison, being incredulous and thinking the message was a Boer ruse, flashed the query: "What regiment are you?" The reply satisfied the garrison that the anxiously-awaited succor was at hand; and a few hours afterward General French, at the head of the column, made a triumphal entry into the town, the inhabitants surrounding his troops and intermingling with them, cheering wildly, grasping the soldiers' hands, waving flags, hats and handkerchiefs, and exhibiting in many ways the intensity of their joy. The inhabitants had been on short rations for some time, eating horse-flesh and living in burrows under heaps of mine refuse. Diminishing rations were served out daily at 11 o'clock in the market square, under the shell fire of the Boers, whose cannon opened on the square whenever the inhabitants assembled. No horse food remained. During the siege Cecil John Rhodes provided the negroes with work and food, thus keeping them quiet. The miles of convoy bearing provisions for

**His
Entrance
into Kim-
berley.**

General French's troops, coming to Kimberley, was the most pleasing sight that greeted the eyes of the besieged for four months. A week later the *New York Journal* received the following dispatch:

"CAPE TOWN, February 22.

TO THE EDITOR OF THE NEW YORK JOURNAL:

Thank you. It has been a good defense, chiefly by citizens. Our greatest help was the DeBeers' chief engineer, Mr. Labram, an American citizen, who made a gun throwing a thirty-pound shell, with the assistance of a local man. Poor fellow! He was killed four days before our relief.

CECIL RHODES."

The Mr. Labram to whom Mr. Rhodes here alluded was a Chicago man. He cast the large cannon named "Long Cecil," which Mr. Rhodes sometimes fired off with his own hand.

Speeches
in the
British
Parliament.

The success of Lord Roberts's and General French's movements thus far caused great joy in England. Important speeches were made in Parliament on February 15th. In the House of Commons, Colonial Secretary Joseph Chamberlain and the Rt. Hon. Arthur James Balfour, the Ministerial leader in that House, sustained the course of the Ministry. In the House of Lords, Lord Rosebery, the Liberal leader, severely scored the Ministry on account of the want of preparation which had caused the ill success of the British thus far. The Earl of Kimberley, another Liberal leader in the House of Lords, agreed with Lord Rosebery. Lord Salisbury defended the course of the Ministry.

British
Rejoicing.

The news of the relief of Kimberley caused great rejoicing at Cape Town and other towns of Cape Colony; and Sir Alfred Milner, the Governor of Cape Colony and British High Commissioner for South Africa, received a great popular ovation. Queen Victoria promoted Brigadier-General French to the position of Major-General; and Lieutenant-Colonel Kekewich was promoted to the rank of Colonel, because of his gallant defense of Kimberley.

Yeomanry
Sail for
South
Africa.

The first unit of the special corps of Yeomanry, called the Duke of Cambridge's Own, left London on the morning of February 17th to embark at Southampton for South Africa, receiving a great popular ovation as they left. The Duke of Cambridge and other titled personages went to Southampton to bid the Yeomanry farewell.

Case of
Bugler
Dunn.

Bugler Dunn, the fifteen-year-old member of the First Royal Dublin Fusiliers, who was the first to cross the Tugela River, and who was shot in the right arm while running with the soldiers and sounding the "advance," saw Queen Victoria, at Osborne, in the Isle of Wight, on the morning of February 19th, and was presented with a handsome and

suitably-inscribed silver-mounted bugle by Her Majesty, who gave the boy a motherly welcome and expressed her hope that he would have a successful career in the army.

In the meantime, while the main British forces under Lord Roberts and General French were so successful in the Orange Free State and the north of Cape Colony, there were important minor operations in the same sections. On February 12th Colonel Plumer's force attacked the Boer position near Crocodile Pools, near Gaberones, defended by a 12-pounder cannon. While the British were struggling up the hill in the dark, through a net of barbed wire, they alarmed the Boer watchdogs, which gave the alarm. The Boers opened fire and the British charged; but the Boers exploded dynamite mines, doing much damage, and the British retreated.

**Colonel
Plumer's
Repulse.**

On February 14th a small British cavalry patrol entered Jacobsdal, in the Orange Free State, and found the town full of wounded, including several British troops from Rensburg. The small Boer force which had occupied the town fell back before the British patrol, after a series of small skirmishes. A battery of British artillery shelled the environs and drove out the last of the Boers.

**British
Capture
of Ja-
cobsdal.**

Early in the morning of February 15th a large Boer force from Colesberg with ten cannon captured a convoy of two hundred wagons at the Reit River, shelling vigorously and doing damage, although strong British reinforcements had been sent forward to bring in the entire convoy safely.

**Fight
near
Coles-
berg.**

The Boers were leaving Magersfontein to reinforce other positions, leaving about ten thousand men at Magersfontein. While the British were endeavoring to intercept the Boer communications, a parallel Boer column was trying to cut off the British lines to DeAar and was meeting with success, General Clements being obliged to retire to Arundel; but during the course of the march the Boers were driven off by the heavy fire of the British, the Enniskillen Regiment charging brilliantly and inflicting great loss on the Boers. There was great activity over the whole Modder River district, and the Boers were active elsewhere and were endeavoring to cut the British lines of communication at Graspan and at De Aar, but the British under General Hector A. MacDonald reoccupied Koodoesberg.

**Movements
in Cape
Colony.**

By Sunday, February 18th, the country around Kimberley seemed to be clear of the Boers, who had evacuated Dronfield, Saltpan, Spytfontein and Schlotz Nek. One of their 12-pounder cannon, with ammunition, was captured by the British, as was also their laager at Dronfield, which they evacuated on the night of February 16th. A railway was being laid to the Modder River, and several herds of cattle were captured by the British.

**Operations
around
Kimber-
ley.**

General French's Action.

After General French's arrival at Kimberley fighting still continued there, and the Boers still bombarded the town. General French notified General Cronje that he was bombarding the hospital where the sick and wounded British soldiers and many women and children were inmates, but General Cronje paid no attention to General French's repeated notifications, whereupon General French put a number of Boers whom he had taken prisoners into the hospitals and notified General Cronje of the fact.

Boer Captures.

Although unable to prevent the relief of Kimberley, the Boers captured two thousand head of cattle, one hundred wagon-loads of provisions and one hundred prisoners. On Sunday, February 18th, the Boers captured three thousand head of cattle and a number of wagons near Koffyfontein, in the Orange Free State; eighteen of these wagons being loaded with provisions intended for the garrison and inhabitants of Kimberley. A number of prisoners were also taken.

Boer Evacuations.

The Boers evacuated Spytfontein, going in a north-westerly direction. Early in the morning of February 17th the Boers, with artillery, attacked the British force under General Gatacre at Molteno. On Sunday, February 18th, the Boers evacuated Dordrecht, and the British colonials under General Brabant occupied the town, General Brabant clearing the road for the advance of General Gatacre.

First Canadian Regiment.

The First Canadian Regiment was engaged at the Modder River all day Sunday, February 18th, losing eighteen men killed and sixty wounded. Among the wounded was Captain Mason, of Toronto. The Canadians forded the Modder River after a night's march.

Situation on the Western Frontier.

On the western frontier the Boers were repulsed in fierce assaults on Mafeking on February 17th and 18th. On February 26th Colonel Plumer occupied the Boer position at Crocodile Pools, which had been evacuated during the night. General Lord Methuen reported that the British troops occupied Barkly West on February 21st and that the country west of the Cape Town and Kimberley Railway was settling down.

Situation on the Southern Frontier.

On the southern frontier, on the morning of February 28th, General Clements, escorted by Colonel Henderson's Enniskillens, occupied Colesberg, which the Boers had evacuated. Colonel Henderson's Enniskillens, with two cannon, reconnoitered near Colesberg; and severe shelling occurred on both sides. The Australians bore a prominent part in these operations. Rensburg and Colesberg were both evacuated by the Boers and reoccupied by the British. The British colonial force under General Brabant occupied Jamestown, more than twenty miles north-west of Dordrecht, and captured many horses belonging to the Boers, who retreated in all directions on foot. The relief of Kimberley had a marked effect upon the Dutch in the Sterkspruit and Stormberg dis-

tricts, and they were now anxious that the English farmers should return.

By February 16th the Boer army under General Cronje, ten thousand strong, was in full retreat toward Bloemfontein, with the British under General Kelly-Kenny harassing their rear. The Boer laager was shelled. General Lord Kitchener was superintending the pursuit of General Cronje. The British divisions under Generals Tucker and Colville were coöperating with General Kelly-Kenny in the pursuit of the retreating Boers. In this pursuit General Kelly-Kenny's brigade captured seventy-eight wagons laden with stores and ammunition, two wagons of Mauser rifles, eight boxes of shells, ten barrels of explosives and a large quantity of stores, all belonging to Cronje's laager, which was still being shelled by the British artillery when Lord Kitchener dispatched his messenger.

**Cronje's
Retreat
and the
British
Pursuit.**

General Cronje was now said to be in a very bad situation, his force being surrounded and he being given a time limit to surrender. In the fighting near Paardeberg, from February 16th to 18th, on the British side Major-General Knox and Major-General Hector A. MacDonald were wounded and Lieutenant-Colonel Aldworth was killed.

**Cronje's
Situation.**

One of the bloodiest battles of the war was fought near Paardeberg Drift, on Sunday, February 18th. While pursuing General Cronje, General Kelly-Kenny caught his rear-guard at Klip Drift and followed it to the Boer laager at Koodoosrand. The action at the drift commenced at dawn, the British mounted infantry driving the Boer rear-guard up the Modder River toward the Boer main body, while another body of mounted infantry maneuvered on the right front and flank of the Boers. The British main body advanced to outflank the Boer laager on the north bank of the river. After seizing two drifts General Kelly-Kenny found the Boers strongly inclosed, and he ordered an attack with the Highland Brigade on the left and General Knox's brigade on the center and right, while General Smith-Dorrien's brigade crossed the river and advanced along the north bank. On the north and south banks the ground is level, and the advance across this was deadly and the British losses were heavy. The battle resembled that of the Modder River. The British soldiers were under fire all day long; and all the fighting had no decisive result, as the Boer laager was well barricaded and the Boers remained therein. The British artillery shelled the laager vigorously, and the Boers admitted that they lost over eight hundred men.

**Battle of
Paarde-
burg
Drift.**

The terrific shelling was resumed by the British the next day, Monday, February 19th, when General Cronje asked for an armistice of one day to bury his dead. Lord Kitchener refused to grant it, saying: "Not a minute. It must be surrender or fight to a finish." Cronje

**Renewal
of the
Battle.**

replied: "It will be fight to a finish." The Boers had constructed intrenchments around their laager during the night and were still threatened by General Smith-Dorrien. The British infantry rested after the terrible fight of the previous day. The infantry and a battery of horse artillery started to observe the Boers, who were holding a kopje; but while riding around they received a heavy fusilade and were obliged to move farther out, but suffered no loss. They pushed on and found that the kopje extended a considerable distance west, sloping gradually to the plain. They seized a good defensive position, which was garrisoned. They completely flanked the Boers, whose left held strongly by a farm-house, which was shelled vigorously. The British detachment returned to camp at nightfall, leaving a garrison on the right. In the meantime a desultory bombardment of the Boer position was kept up, and considerable rifle fire was concentrated where the Essex Regiment was attempting to rush up the river. About midday the cry was raised that General French had arrived, but his division was engaged in another quarter. When Field-Marshal Lord Roberts arrived he addressed several regiments and was cheered vigorously and enthusiastically.

**Cronje's
Continued
Resist-
ance.**

Tuesday, February 20th, was the third day of General Cronje's tight situation and his grim resistance in the face of death. Early in the morning the British infantry engaged the Boers in the bed of the Modder River, driving them back a short distance. The Boers were busy on their intrenchments around their laager. A few shells were fired at them. General French's artillery was heard off to the east. About noon the British planted three field batteries and two naval 12-pounder cannon on the south bank of the river, and three field batteries and three naval 4.7-pounder cannon on the north bank, along with one howitzer, thus enfilading the whole river. Thus a number of powerful cannon concentrated their fire upon an area of a square mile; and the exploding lyddite shells raised vast clouds of green smoke, which completely filled the bed of the river. The shells burst on each bank and in every ravine and bush of the river bed, and the roar was deafening. The enfilading cannon did terrible execution. The Boers fought with a courage of madness. The long line of these batteries carried frightful havoc and carnage into the Boer ranks, while the Maxims of the two British infantry battalions were at work on each side of the river. General Cronje's pluck and heroism were admired by his foes. The British bombardment of the Boer intrenchments resulted in driving the Boers away in all directions, with many killed and wounded, while fifty were made prisoners. On the British side Captain Campbell, of the Ninth Lancers, and Lieutenant Houston, of the artillery, and four privates were slightly wounded.

Boer reinforcements under General Botha came from General Joubert's army before Ladysmith to reinforce General Cronje's force. On Wednesday, February 21st, General Botha's force was defeated and scattered, after heavy fighting, and suffered immense loss. A Boer kopje was captured with fifty prisoners, and General Cronje's position was still very precarious.

**Botha's
Defeat.**

On February 24th the Boers were defeated in repeated attempts to break through the British lines to reinforce General Cronje, and General De Wet's column was repulsed with severe loss and compelled to fall back. Cronje's army was living in burrows in the banks of the Modder River, where they were not much exposed to the British shell fire.

**De Wet's
Defeat.**

Finally, the capture of an important strategic point by the Canadians before daybreak on February 27th put an end to General Cronje's heroic resistance, and he sent a flag of truce to the British outposts offering to surrender unconditionally. Lord Roberts replied that General Cronje and his troops must come out of their laager and present themselves at the British commander's camp after laying down their arms. Lord Roberts congratulated his vanquished foe on his gallant resistance and granted his request that his wife, grandson, private secretary, adjutant and servants might accompany him wherever he might be sent. Lord Roberts assigned Major-General Pretzman to accompany the captive general and his attendants to Cape Town, where he was handed over to General Sir Forestier-Walker, the commanding general at that post. Several foreign officers in the Boer service were captured with General Cronje, among whom were Field Cornet Frus, a Scandinavian; Major Albrecht, a famous German artillery officer, and Major Von Dewitz, a distinguished German engineer, to whom the Boers owed their splendid engineering works. The number of men surrendered was about four thousand. As Cronje's surrender occurred on the nineteenth anniversary of the disastrous British defeat at Majuba Hill, the British considered Majuba avenged. England went wild with joy at this victory.

**Cronje's
Surrender.**

While Lord Kitchener and General Kelly-Kenny were closely pursuing General Cronje in his retreat toward Bloemfontein and General French was so successful in the vicinity of Kimberley, General Buller was fighting successfully against the Boer forces under General Joubert in Natal. On Sunday, February 18th, General Buller moved around the Boer flank. The Queens, who had bivouacked on the northern slope of the Cingolo, crossed the nek, and, with the support of the remainder of the Second Brigade, under General Hildyard, assailed and captured the southern end of Monte Christo. The Fourth Brigade won the eastern slope; and the Welsh Fusiliers, with the support of the

**General
Buller's
Victories
in Natal.**

remainder of the Sixth Brigade, assailed the eastern flank of the Boer position; while the Second Brigade cavalry, on the extreme right, watched the eastern slopes of Monte Christo and drove back those Boers who tried to escape there from the British artillery fire. As the Boers were assailed by a heavy artillery fire on their front and flank and were attacked on their flank and rear, they made but little resistance, fled from their strong position and were driven across the Tugela River. The British troops behaved splendidly; the conduct of the irregular cavalry, the Queens, the Scotch Fusiliers and the Rifle Brigade being particularly noticeable. By this success General Buller took several camps, a wagonload of ammunition, several wagons of stores and supplies and a few prisoners. The British loss was very small. The Boer position on Hlangwana Hill was bombarded on that and the following days, February 18th and 19th, and the British captured one hundred prisoners.

**Buller's
Continued
Victories.**

The fighting at Monte Christo between General Buller's forces and the Boers was renewed the next day, February 19th, from the British positions on Gun Hill and Hussar Hill. The British troops advanced from the fortress toward Monte Christo. There was a heavy bombardment with three 4.7-inch cannon and the 100-pounder siege cannon, supported by infantry, against the Boer position on Hlangwana Hill, adjacent to Monte Christo and regarded as the key to Grobler's Kloof. The firing was particularly active from Hussar Hill on the formidable Boer intrenchments at the extreme end of Hlangwana Hill. These intrenchments were strengthened with sand bags. The firing continued all day. During the day the large cannon "Lady Randolph" arrived on the armored train from the direction of Colenso. The British took over one hundred prisoners. The British naval cannon knocked out the big Boer cannon "Long Tom" on Hlangwana Hill at the first shot, for which General Buller especially complimented the cannoniers. Hlangwana Hill is located between two bends of the Tugela River. The Boers erected a bridge between Hlangwana Hill and the northern bank of the river. The Fusilier Brigade finally took Hlangwana Hill, the right of the Boer position and commanding Colenso; the remainder of the British force advancing toward the Tugela River.

**Boer
Retreat.**

The next morning, February 20th, the Boers retired from the north side of the Tugela and practically evacuated Colenso, which General Hart occupied after a slight engagement with a weak Boer rear-guard; and the British held the line of the Tugela, on the south side of Colenso to Eagle's Nest. The Boers were in full retreat and only held the position they occupied across the Colenso and Ladysmith Railway with a weak rear-guard. General Hart's advance guard crossed the Tugela at Colenso. The British loss was small.

On February 21st a part of General Buller's army crossed the Tugela River on pontoons and drove back the Boer rear-guard, the British 12-pounder naval cannon silencing all the Boer cannon. The British crossed the Tugela on a pontoon northward of Hlangwana Hill and occupied Fort Wylie. Heavy bombardments were carried on by both sides.

Buller's Pursuit.

At length the British captured Pieter's Hill, the Boer main position before Ladysmith, on February 27th, the day of General Cronje's surrender; but General Buller encountered fierce resistance at every step of his advance.

Capture of Pieter's Hill.

Finally, General Buller's hard task of relieving Ladysmith was accomplished on the night of February 28th, when Lord Dundonald, at the head of the Natal Carbineers and a composite regiment, entered the beleaguered city. This great victory caused unbounded rejoicing in England, coming right after the day of General Cronje's surrender; and London was ablaze with every demonstration of patriotic enthusiasm.

Relief of Ladysmith.

Joy in England.

Accounts of the relief of Ladysmith stated that General White met the first relieving troops in the center of the town. He briefly addressed the crowd and thanked the garrison for their magnificent support. The British artillery and cavalry there needed remounting. The losses of the garrison in deaths in action and from wounds during the siege was two hundred and fifty-nine, and the losses in deaths from disease was three hundred and forty-six. The number of officers and troops wounded was five hundred and ninety. On March 1st seventy-three wagon loads of supplies entered Ladysmith, the first eleven containing hospital comforts.

Condition of Affairs at Ladysmith.

After the relief of Ladysmith, General Buller reported that Natal was practically cleared of the Boer invaders, who had left behind them some ambulances full of their sick and wounded, the mules having been taken away for transport. They had also left vast quantities of ammunition and cattle, but they had succeeded in taking along all their cannon except two pieces. General Buller reported formidable lists of British casualties to the War Office in London. On March 9th General White, the heroic defender of Ladysmith, was given an enthusiastic reception at Pietermaritzburg, the capital of Natal.

Boer Evacuation of Natal.

General White's Reception.

On the very day of General Cronje's surrender and the capture of Pieter's Hill by General Buller's troops, February 27, 1900, Queen Victoria visited the sick and wounded at Netley and spoke to every one of the almost six hundred inmates. The next day she inspected a company of Berkshire Volunteers, which was about to proceed to South Africa. A number of transports sailed from Great Britain with reinforcements at the end of February and the beginning of March, and the

Queen Victoria's Interest in the Troops.

Eighth Division was preparing to leave. Queen Victoria ordered that in future, upon St. Patrick's Day, all ranks in Her Majesty's Irish regiments shall wear a sprig of shamrock to commemorate the gallantry of her Irish soldiers in South Africa.

**Cronje at
Cape
Town.**

General Cronje arrived at Cape Town on March 2d and was allotted the Admiral's quarters on board the *Doris*. Boer prisoners continued to arrive daily at Cape Town and were placed on board transports in the harbor.

**President
Krüger's
Sermon.**

On the Sunday following Cronje's surrender and the relief of Ladysmith, President Krüger preached a sermon in the great church at Pretoria, in which he told his people not to be disheartened by their recent reverses; that the Lord is on their side and that they finally will be victorious; that their recent reverses were sent to them as a punishment by the Lord of Hosts because they had been too proud of their earlier achievements and their victories over the British; that they had been glorifying themselves too highly in consequence of their great victory of Majuba, and had taken too much credit upon themselves for their victories and had not given the credit to the Lord God Jehovah, to whom it properly belonged.

**Lord
Roberts's
Continued
Success.**

On March 7th Field-Marshal Lord Roberts achieved another great success by routing the Boer forces which had collected in extensive and strongly-intrenched positions a few miles east of Orfontein. The British cavalry turned the Boer left flank, thus putting the Boers in full retreat. The British loss was about fifty. The British captured one cannon, an immense quantity of forage and a large number of tents.

**Lords
Roberts
and
Kitchener
at Kim-
berley.**

On the western frontier a strong British force left Kimberley, moving northward toward the Vaal River. Lords Roberts and Kitchener visited Kimberley on March 1st and attended a meeting in the town hall. Lord Roberts referred to the courage and endurance of his troops and to the heroism displayed in the defense of the town and spoke warmly of the same qualities as exhibited in the relief of Ladysmith.

**Lord
Roberts's
Advance
in the
Orange
Free
State.**

Presidents Krüger and Steyn were both present with the Boer forces retreating before Lord Roberts's advance in the direction of Bloemfontein. On March 10th Lord Roberts's forces came into collision with the Boers at Driefontein, the brunt of the fighting on the British side falling on General Kelly-Kenny's division. The Welsh and the Essex battalions drove the Boers out of two strong positions at the point of the bayonet. The British buried one hundred and two of the Boer dead, and the British ambulance parties brought in a number of Boer wounded. The British loss was about seventy killed and missing and three hundred and twenty-one wounded.

The next day Lord Roberts addressed to the Presidents of the two Boer Republics a telegram stating that, as another instance had occurred of a gross abuse of the white flag, it was his duty to announce that if such abuse occurred again he would order his troops to disregard the white flag entirely. Lord Roberts also complained of finding large quantities of explosive bullets among the captured Boer stores. On Sunday, March 11th, the British column advanced twelve miles without opposition. The next day the British advance was again unopposed and came within eighteen miles from Bloemfontein.

**His
Protests
to the
Boer
Presi-
dents.**

On the night of March 12th the British under General French occupied two hills close to the railway at Bloemfontein after considerable opposition. The next day, March 13th, Lord Roberts took possession of Bloemfontein, and the British flag was hoisted over the President's mansion in the capital of the Orange Free State, the building having been vacated the previous night by President Steyn. Mr. Fraser, a Scotchman and a member of Mr. Steyn's Cabinet, and other Free State officials met Lord Roberts two miles from the town and gave him the keys of the public office. Such of the inhabitants of Bloemfontein as had not fled with the Boer forces gave the British troops a most enthusiastic welcome.

**Lord
Roberts's
Occupa-
tion of
Bloem-
fontein.**

Presidents Krüger and Steyn now made overtures for peace with Great Britain on condition that their Republics should be recognized as independent sovereign states and that amnesty should be granted to the rebels of Cape Colony and Natal. Lord Salisbury replied, refusing the request of the Boer Presidents and recounting the circumstances which led to the war, the Boer ultimatum, the invasion of the British South African colonies and the consequent expenditure of British blood and treasure in the contest, which he said was provoked to dismember the British Empire and to drive the British out of South Africa. Lord Salisbury's reply to the overtures of the two Boer Presidents was received with unbounded satisfaction by the British colonists throughout South Africa.

**Boer
Peace
Over-
tures.**

**Lord
Salis-
bury's
Reply.**

For about a week the Presidents of the two Boer Republics had been endeavoring to secure peace through the mediation or intervention of the Great Powers of Continental Europe; but Germany, France and the other Great Powers declined to intervene or mediate unless such intervention or mediation were acceptable to both belligerents. Ineffectual Boer appeals were also made to Holland, Belgium and Switzerland. Finally, the President of the United States received a request from Presidents Krüger and Steyn, through United States Consul Adalbert S. Hay at Pretoria, to act as intermediary in conveying the Boer overtures to Lord Salisbury. In transmitting the Boer overtures to the British government, President McKinley politely offered his services

**Futile
Boer
Appeals
for
Foreign
Mediation
or Inter-
vention.**

as mediator in restoring peace if such services were acceptable to Her Majesty's government. Lord Salisbury replied very politely that, while he heartily appreciated President McKinley's humanitarian motives, such offers would not be acceptable; and there the matter rested, March 18th.

**Sir
Wilfrid
Laurier
and the
Canadian
Parlia-
ment.**

In the Canadian Parliament, on March 18th, Sir Wilfrid Laurier, in defending his Ministry against a motion of want of confidence on the ground of Canada's participation in the war, delivered an eloquent speech sustaining and justifying the war and anticipating that the glorious part which the Canadians played in it would promote the work of unity in the Dominion itself. The Prime Minister's speech aroused great enthusiasm, and the motion was rejected by a vote of one hundred and nineteen to ten. All Canadians, British and French alike, sustained the British imperial government in the South African war loyally and patriotically.

**Proposed
British
Loan.**

At a meeting of the British financiers on March 9th the Chancellor of the Exchequer explained the government's proposal to issue a loan of thirty million pounds, redeemable in ten years at $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. interest. The fixed price would be $98\frac{1}{2}$ per cent., and subscriptions would be generally invited throughout the British Empire.

**Queen
Victoria's
Continued
Interest
in Affairs**

In Buckingham Palace, on March 10th, Queen Victoria inspected the Second Battalion of the Grenadier and Scots Guards about to leave for South Africa. Her Majesty intended to bestow a baronetcy on the Lord Mayor of London and a knighthood on each of the two sheriffs to mark her sense of the distinguished services which the city of London had rendered to the British Empire in the previous two months. On March 14th Her Majesty inspected a detachment of the Grenadier Guards at Windsor.

**British
Progress
on the
Southern
Frontier.**

On the southern frontier the advance of the British forces from Dordrecht and Colesberg northward continued, and General Gatacre occupied Stormberg on March 5th. Railway communication between Colesberg and Cape Town was reopened. General Brabant's advance from Dordrecht against Labuschagne on March 4th and 5th was completely successful, the British troops carrying a hill commanding the Boer position and the Boers suffering severely and fleeing toward Aliwal North. The British under General Clements occupied Norval's Pont, on the south side of the Orange River, on March 8th; the Boers having previously blown up the bridge and retired to the north bank of the river. On Sunday, March 11th, the British force under General Gatacre was within a mile of Bethulie railway bridge, which had been partly destroyed by the Boers, who fled to the opposite bank of the river there also. On the same day, March 11th, the British force under General Brabant occupied Aliwal North after some sharp fighting, in

which the British lost about twenty men killed and wounded. Barkly East was also reoccupied by the British.

The rebel movement among the Dutch population in the northern and eastern portions of Cape Colony practically collapsed after the withdrawal of the Orange Free State commandos. The revolt in some of the western districts of Cape Colony continued, but Lord Kitchener was making final arrangements to quell the insurrection. Many of the Dutch politicians of the Afrikaner Bond in Cape Colony were making overtures in favor of "conciliation," by which they meant the preservation of the independence of the two Boer Republics. The Boers were bitterly disappointed with Prime Minister Schreiner, of Cape Colony, and Mr. Hofmeyr, the leader of the Afrikaner Bond, whom they accused of treachery to the Boer cause, saying that they had expected a hundred thousand Dutch colonists from Cape Colony to join them.

Lord Kitchener occupied Prieska on March 19th without resistance, the rebel Dutch of Cape Colony laying down their arms and the Transvaalers escaping across the river. The British took thirty-three prisoners, two hundred stand of arms and a quantity of ammunition and explosives. At Belmont deserters came into the British lines with a Maxim and 9-pounder guns. Another 9-pounder was brought into the British lines at Colesberg. The Boers occupied Griquatown, one hundred miles south-west of Kimberley. In western Cape Colony the Boers were also aggressive, having reoccupied the town of Campbell and being in force near Taung's and Barkly West. A large number of Boer prisoners made a desperate effort to escape from the British camp at Simonstown on March 30th. About thirty escaped, but fifteen were recaptured. The remaining two thousand Boer prisoners at Simonstown were landed, except ninety sick.

It has been stated that President Steyn had left his capital on the evening before the British occupation for Kroonstad, which was selected as the seat of government of the Orange Free State. General Joubert, with three thousand Boers, intended to get to Bloemfontein on the day of its capture by the British, but was prevented from doing so by the blowing up of the railway by Major Hunter-Weston. Three bridges on the most important line to Kroonstad were blown up by the Boers during their retreat. Seven British officers and forty-three privates were found in the hospital at Bloemfontein. A corps of young Boers was detailed, under a British officer, for police duty around the Orange Free State capital.

In the meantime Boshof, in the north-western part of the Orange Free State, was occupied by British troops. The British force under General Gatacre crossed the Orange River and occupied Bethulie on March 15th. General Pole-Carew, with two thousand of the Guards,

**Collapse
of the
Dutch
Revolt
in Cape
Colony.**

**Boer
Disap-
point-
ment.**

**Opera-
tions in
Cape
Colony.**

**Affairs at
Kroon-
stad and
Bloem-
fontein.**

**Continued
Progress
of the
British
in the
Orange
Free
State.**

left Bloemfontein that day by railway and joined the forces under Generals Gatacre and Clements, without meeting any opposition. The Guards returned to the Free State capital on the 17th. General Clements crossed the Orange River on the 15th. Rouxville was occupied without resistance by the Kafrarian Rifles. The English mail was dispatched from Bloemfontein by railway on the 17th, and two days later the regular railway service with Cape Town was reopened.

Submission of Orange Free Staters.

General Pretymann, the British Military Governor of Bloemfontein, called on all Boers within a radius of ten miles to deliver up their arms on penalty of confiscation of their property. It was stated that three-fourths of the Orange Free Staters were returning to their farms. The Resident Commissioner of Basutoland reported that eight hundred Boers from Bloemfontein and another body who had been at Aliwal North were only waiting to know the terms of the proclamation to surrender. They had refused to attend a council at Kroonstad to which they had been summoned by President Steyn.

President Steyn's Reply to Lord Roberts.

In reply to Lord Roberts's complaint about Boer treachery, President Steyn denied the charge of the misuse of the white flag, accused the British of resorting to that practice and alleged that any explosive bullets used by the Boers were captured from the British. Lord Roberts said that, as inquiry had proved President Steyn's allegations to have been unfounded and as he himself had seen the abuse of the white flag complained of, he had not thought it desirable to continue the correspondence.

His Speech and Threat.

President Steyn, in a speech at Kroonstad, warned the Boers not to believe in Lord Roberts's proclamation, as the British had violated solemn treaties and Sir Alfred Milner had publicly announced that the Afrikaners must be exterminated. President Steyn also circulated a notice that any Boer who signed the declaration that he would not fight against the British would be shot as a traitor. In some parts of the Orange Free State the Free State authorities were commandeering Boers, British and negroes and compelling them to proceed to Kroonstad immediately, under penalty of death.

British Successes.

Many Boers expressed their desire to surrender. General French's cavalry proceeded eastward to Thabanchu; and another British detachment occupied Smithfield, where some Transvaalers and a wagon with arms and ammunition was captured. The Scot Guards were at Edenburg and Reddersburg, and General Clements's brigade was marching thither by way of Philippolis and Fauresmith.

Boer Activity in the Orange Free State.

Lord Roberts was stretching out his troops north of Bloemfontein, but his movements were much hampered by the destruction of the railway near the town by the Boers. At this time Lord Roberts reported that the country south of Bloemfontein was settling down and that arms

were being surrendered. The Boers reoccupied Ladybrand. Numbers of Boers, including General De Wet, were constantly arriving at Kroonstad, the new Orange Free State capital. The Boer force under General Olivier joined the Boer detachment under Generals Kroblaar and Lemmer, and the combined forces were moving to reinforce General De Wet.

On March 23d four British officers rode nine miles beyond their camp on the Modder River, escorted by a trooper; and the party were fired on by the Boers, one officer being killed and the other three officers and the trooper being wounded. There were at this time slight reconnaissances. On March 25th Captain Sloane-Stanley, of the Sixteenth Lancers, was slightly wounded in an affair of outposts north of the Modder River, toward Brandfort.

**Events
in the
Modder
River
District.**

By March 23d General Clements had reached Philippolis, in his march northward; and General French's cavalry was still at Thabanchu. General Clements's column entered Fauresmith on March 27th, having previously occupied Jagersfontein. Magistrates were appointed, the proclamation was read, bands of music met the British troops and British flags were flying. On the night of March 27th Sir Alfred Milner, Governor of Cape Colony and British High Commissioner for South Africa, arrived at Bloemfontein and was met by Field-Marshal Lord Roberts and his staff.

**British
Advance
on the
Southern
Frontier.**

President Steyn issued a circular letter dealing with Lord Roberts's proclamation and declaring that it is obvious that "the enemy's policy is, as it always has been in South Africa, to divide and dominate his opponent." The circular went on to say that before the war the British "attempted to seduce the Free State by treacherous means from its solemn convention with the Transvaal in order to facilitate the swallowing up of the Republic." He repudiated the charge that the Boers had been misled by their leaders.

**President
Steyn's
Circular
Letter.**

At the end of March the Boers assumed the aggressive north of Bloemfontein. From their intrenchments at Kroonstad the Boers sent bodies of troops south almost to Glen, ten miles north of Bloemfontein, where Lord Roberts had his advance posts. British reinforcements were sent up to Glen, including the Seventh Division and part of General French's cavalry, thus making the British force there about twenty thousand men. The Boers were accused of maltreating and even shooting people who had surrendered their arms to the British in compliance with Lord Roberts's proclamation. General Gatacre was preparing to thwart any Boer effort to cut the British communications with Bloemfontein. On March 29th the British cavalry under General Brabant occupied Wepener without opposition. A Boer force near Paardeberg marauded farms in that locality. The British military authorities

**Boer
Aggres-
siveness.**

discovered a half million's worth of realizable securities in the Orange Free State government chest at Bloemfontein.

**Boer
Defeat
and Rout.**

On March 29th the British under Generals French and Tucker drove the Boers from the kopjes which they had occupied at Karee Siding Station, a few miles south of Brandfort, after severe fighting, the Boers retreating to Brandfort and the British holding possession of the kopjes. The British lost twenty killed, one hundred and sixty-six wounded and three missing. The next day there was indecisive fighting south of Brandfort.

**British
Disaster
at
Sanna's
Post.**

On March 31st a British force under Colonel Broadwood, consisting of the Tenth Hussars, the Household Cavalry, two horse batteries and mounted infantry under Colonel Pilcher, having abandoned its position at Thabanchu, took post at the Bloemfontein water works, about fifteen miles east of the town, where it was shelled by the Boers, estimated to number about eight thousand men. Colonel Broadwood sent a convoy with the two batteries toward Bloemfontein, while the rest of the force remained behind to act as a rear-guard. This detachment walked blindly into a Boer ambush at Sanna's Post and was captured, with seven cannon, three hundred and eighty-nine men thus being made prisoners. The remainder of Colonel Broadwood's force escaped by a passage across the spruit discovered by Lieutenant Chestermasters, of Remington's scouts. Lord Roberts sent the Ninth Division under General Colville and two cavalry brigades under General French to Colonel Broadwood's rescue. Colville shelled the Boers upon his arrival. Generals Colville and French attempted to surround the Boers holding the Bloemfontein water works, but failed in their mission and returned to Bloemfontein. The Boers thus cut off the water supply of Bloemfontein.

**British
Repulse
and Boer
Retreat.**

On March 31st there was heavy fighting between Brandfort and Bloemfontein. The Wakkerstroom and Ermelo commandos attacked three thousand British and drove them back with heavy loss. There was fighting all along the line. The Boers held positions on the side and top of the mountains, while the British positions were on the opposite side of the hill. The British charged repeatedly, but were repulsed. The Boers lost nine killed and wounded. The arrival of thirteen thousand British reinforcements compelled the Boers to fall back finally. On March 31st the British outlying pickets at Springfield were attacked by the Boers, who had advanced from the Bloemfontein water works. Remounts were arriving daily in Bloemfontein. The Boers were talking about retaking the Orange Free State capital.

Colonel Plumer occupied Lobatsi on March 5th and was advancing steadily to the relief of Mafeking, the garrison of which was still holding out as heroically and resolutely as ever, though reduced to desperate

straits by disease and by scarcity of provisions. In the meantime the garrison had constructed a new howitzer to prolong their defense. The Boers under Commandant Snyman were advancing in force from Mafeking toward Lobasti. A British detachment under Colonel Bodle made a reconnaissance on March 13th and found Pitsani and Pothlugo occupied by the Boers. He returned to Goodesiding and made a demonstration on March 14th, finding the Boers at a sharp curve on the railway. They had mounted a cannon and were lying in wait for the construction train. The next morning brisk firing occurred a few miles south of Lobatsi, the Boers freely using their Maxim. Colonel Bodle arrived just in time to prevent the Boers capturing the British camp. The Boers attacked the advance party, captured a few boxes of ammunition and almost got possession of a Maxim. On the British side Lieutenant Tyler was killed and Lieutenant Chapman was captured. The Boers were routed with heavy loss when Colonel Bodle arrived.

**Defense
of
Mafeking
and
Colonel
Bodle's
Recon-
naissance.**

On March 15th the Boers pressed closely on Colonel Plumer's main camp and kept up a hot fire with a Maxim gun, killing a white man and a negro. They placed the Maxim gun and a 12½-pounder cannon on a hill east of the line, four thousand yards from the camp. The British right was protected by Chief Bathien, who had warned the Boers not to enter his territory. The Boers wrecked the railway south of Lobasti by dynamite. The operations for the relief of Mafeking seemed to promise early success. General Lord Methuen arrived at Warrenton on March 16th in time to prevent the deviation bridge from being destroyed completely and to secure a port on the Vaal River. Colonel Peakman, in command of mounted British troops from Kimberley, had a skirmish with a Boer force near Fourteen Streams on March 18th, and the Boers retreated toward Christiania. On March 14th Colonel Plumer had restored railway and telegraphic communication as far south as Pitsani, and British troops were being pushed forward. It was also reported that Colonel Plumer's force advancing to the relief of Mafeking was engaged in desultory skirmishing with Boer forces near Gaberones and Lobatsi, and that Colonel Plumer had retired to Crocodile Pools, thus postponing the relief of Mafeking. The siege of Mafeking was maintained vigorously and the Boers were constantly shelling the town. The garrison under Colonel Baden-Powell was holding out heroically, though in desperate straits for food, and on one occasion a British patrol lost five men in an attempt to capture twenty-six cattle. A British column was on its way to relieve the beleaguered garrison.

**Opera-
tions of
Colonel
Plumer
and
Others
for the
Relief of
Mafeking.**

On March 25th Colonel Plumer's mounted infantry entered the Transvaal, and they arrived within twelve miles of Zeerust before re-

turning to their old position. On March 27th an advance by the Boers under cover of an artillery fire was repulsed by the British at Mafeking.

Colonel
Plumer's
Invasion
of the
Trans-
vaal
and His
Repulse.

On March 28th the Boers bombarded the British camp at Fourteen Streams, north of Warrenton, compelling the British to evacuate the place during the night. A British column of three thousand mounted men, commanded by Colonel Drummond and accompanied by three batteries, a pontoon and several wagons of ammunition, passed Barkly West on March 26th, on an extensive march, the object of which was a strict secret. On March 31st heavy fighting occurred around Mafeking, and Colonel Plumer's relief column was compelled to retire with heavy loss, thus delaying the relief of Mafeking. Lieutenant Frank Milligan was wounded severely and taken prisoner. Colonel Plumer was wounded slightly.

Renewed
Activity
in Natal.

There was renewed military activity in Natal. The town of Pomeroy, thirty miles east of Ladysmith, was burned by the Boers, who were shelled by a British force which arrived as the Boers were leaving; but the Boers, five thousand in number, took a strong position in the hills. The Boers were intrenched very strongly at Biggarsberg with heavy artillery. The Boers were destroying coal mines in Natal. The Dundee colliery was blown up and the machinery was destroyed, the mine being rendered useless for three months.

Notable
Deaths.

On March 23d General Sir Edward Woodgate died of his wounds at Spion Kop on January 24th. General Joubert, the Transvaal Vice President and commander-in-chief, died near midnight on March 27th, after a severe illness, and was universally mourned by his countrymen.

Occur-
rences in
England.

Queen Victoria, in acknowledgment of resolutions passed at a meeting of Irishmen at Cape Town, replied that their loyal sentiments greatly touched her and that she always felt confident that the same spirit of courage and allegiance which had distinguished her Irish subjects in face of the enemy would be shared by their brethren in the colony in sustaining the authority of her government. On March 17th General Sir Frederick Carrington sailed in the *Dunottar Castle* to assume a command on the southern frontier of Rhodesia. The Duchess of Teck and Lady Roberts sailed in the same steamer. Large numbers of British troops sailed from England for South Africa during that week. The Mansion-house Fund was now more than eight hundred and six thousand pounds sterling. It was determined to establish an advisory committee to bring about closer coöperation in the administration of relief. The Prince of Wales was to act as chairman.

Speeches
on the
War.

Sir Henry Morton Stanley, the famous African explorer, in a letter to a correspondent, said that the Boer Republics must be extinguished and direct governments by Crown officials substituted therefor, and that the irritating cause of the war, the Afrikander Bond, must be removed.

Sir Edward Grey, M.P., spoke at the London Liberal Club on March 20th on the subject of the war. At Chelsea barracks, on March 29th, the Prince of Wales inspected a battalion of sharpshooters organized by Lord Dunraven for the Imperial Yeomanry, complimenting them on their good appearance, and saying: "I sincerely hope that you may shoot straight when the necessity arises." On the same day Herbert Gladstone, son of the late Rt. Hon. William Ewart Gladstone and member of the British House of Commons for West Leeds, in a speech at a breakfast of the Liberal agents at Nottingham, said that nearly all the Liberals had agreed, in regard to the settlement of the South African question, that it was the duty of the British government to make a recurrence of the war impossible and to show the world that British power in South Africa was predominant and that the British flag must wave over the whole of South Africa. In an address before the Militia Rifle Association of Great Britain on March 28th, Field-Marshal Lord Wolseley said that the barracks in the United Kingdom were fuller than ever before, notwithstanding the vast land armaments sent to South Africa. On March 30th the *London Gazette* published dispatches from Rear-Admiral Harris on the proceedings of the British Naval Brigades with the forces under Generals Lord Methuen and Sir Redvers Henry Buller.

The Transvaal government cabled to Lord Salisbury some weeks previously that if the Dutch inhabitants of Cape Colony who had fought for the Boers were not treated as prisoners of war the Boers would make reprisals on the British prisoners at Pretoria. Lord Salisbury replied that if any British prisoners were injured he would hold President Krüger personally responsible.

Treat-
ment of
Captives.

In reply to an interpellation in the French Senate on March 15th, M. Delcassé, the French Minister of Foreign Affairs, said that the reply of the British government to the message of the Presidents of the two Boer Republics precluded any attempt at foreign mediation.

French
Policy.

Near the end of March refugees from the Transvaal reported that Boers were continually being arrested by Transvaal officials for desertion and that the Boer stock of ammunition had been reduced to a low point. Provisions, except groceries, were still plentiful in the Transvaal.

Boer
Extrem-
ities.

Much excitement was created in the Boer camp by rumors that Commandant Olivier had defeated General Gatacre near Bethulie, making General Gatacre and his staff prisoners and capturing twelve cannon; but the falsity of the rumor was soon proven.

Boer
Rumor.

President Krüger is said to have told his people that Great Britain was in dire extremities; that the Russians had taken London, and that a Russian army of over two million men had invaded British India.

Wild
Talk.

President Steyn told his people that the Boers had lost only eight hundred men in the war, while the British had lost sixty-four thousand.

**Boer
Arrests.**

General Prinsloo and two other Orange Free State Boers, who had retired to their farms after receiving permits from President Krüger, were arrested by the Johannesburg police and sent to Pretoria. On the last week of March the Volksraad of the Orange Free State had a short session at Kroonstad. At Johannesburg three British subjects were accused of decoying Acting State Engineer Munnik, of the Transvaal Republic, to a house at the City and Suburban Mine, with the intention of holding him as a hostage against the destruction of British mining property. They were also charged with attempting to murder him; and Dempsey, one of the accused men, was sentenced to seven years' imprisonment, but he escaped.

**Dr.
Leyds's
Protest
to the
Egyptian
and
Turkish
Govern-
ments.**

On March 29th Dr. Leyds, the Transvaal diplomatic agent in Europe, called the Egyptian and Turkish governments' attention to the fact that the British government had admitted in the House of Commons that six Maxim guns were borrowed from the Egyptian army for use in the South African war, and demanded explanations of this breach of neutrality, declaring that unless the guns were immediately returned the Transvaal government would consider that the Egyptian government had abandoned neutrality and was lending openly its assistance to Great Britain. The protest was sent on March 18th, and no reply was received from the Egyptian government.

**Portu-
gal's
Policy.**

On April 4th Senhor Beirao, the Portuguese Minister of Foreign Affairs, made the following statement in the Portuguese Chamber of Deputies concerning the transport of British troops across Portuguese East Africa into Rhodesia: "The transport of British soldiers by railroad from Beira to Utali was requested by Great Britain and consented to by Portugal because the British government thereby only exercised a right recognized in the treaties between the two countries. The outbreak of war has not abrogated these treaties, which were concluded and signed prior to the war by Portugal in a spirit of loyalty. I have informed the Transvaal of this resolution. Portugal has loyally adhered to its duties and neutrality, and its resolutions have been communicated to all interested parties. There could occur no more solemn occasion than the present to declare that the British Cabinet has maintained with Portugal relations of cordiality and loyalty, for which there is reason for congratulation. Please God that these good relations shall always be maintained."

**Fight
at the
Bloem-
fontein
Water
Works.**

On April 1st the British shelled the Boers holding the Bloemfontein water works, but failed to dislodge them, and the Boers still held the works. Among the British killed were Major Booth, of the Northumberland Fusiliers; Lieutenant Crowley, of Roberts's Horse, and

Lieutenant Irvine, of the army medical service. Among the British officers wounded were Colonel Rochfort and five others, of the artillery; Lieutenant A. V. Meade, of the Royal Horse Guards; three of Roberts's Horse and four of the mounted infantry. Among the missing British officers were Captain Wray, of the artillery, and Lieutenants D. R. H. Anderson-Pelham and C. W. H. Crichton.

In the early part of April the Boers were making a determined effort to recover complete control over the south-eastern portion of the Orange Free State. On the 3d three companies of the Royal Irish Rifles and two companies of the Ninth Regiment Mounted Infantry were surrounded near Reddersburg, about forty miles south of Bloemfontein, and surrendered to the Boers the next morning. Two British officers were killed and two wounded, and eight non-commissioned officers and troops were killed and thirty-three were wounded. The remainder of the force, among whom were eight officers, were taken prisoners, altogether numbering one hundred and sixty-seven mounted infantry and four hundred and twenty-four infantry. The British surrender was necessitated by the exhaustion of the British ammunition. Upon hearing the firing, Colonel Sitwell marched from Edenburg with a British force and made an effort to reach the detached column, attempting to outflank the Boers, but he was too late. The Boers numbered about five thousand men, and included many citizens of Ladybrand who had submitted to the British. Many of the Boers who had accepted Lord Roberts's proclamation were flocking into the British camps for military protection, but others rejoined the Boer commandos.

On April 5th a Boer force was surrounded near Boshof, and not a man of this force escaped. De Villebois-Mareuil, the skillful French officer in the Boer service, was killed in the action which followed. Seven Boers were also killed and eight wounded, and fifty-four were made prisoners by the victorious British.

Lord Roberts was finding great difficulty on account of the scarcity of water in consequence of the capture of the Bloemfontein water works by the Boers, and was obliged to have water drawn from wells. Lord Roberts made strong representations to Presidents Krüger and Steyn regarding the treatment of British colonial prisoners, it being reported to him that the prisoners had suffered the most disgraceful treatment.

Operations in the Orange Free State were in active progress. The attempt of the Boers to cut Lord Roberts's communications were foiled completely. A large British force could now be concentrated at any point with great rapidity. The British force at Bloemfontein was increasing daily. The Eighth Division, under General Sir Leslie Rundle,

**Capture
of a
British
Detach-
ment
near
Redders-
burg.**

**Boer
Disaster
near
Boshof.**

**Scarcity
of
Water.**

**Treat-
ment of
Captives.**

**Renewed
Activity.**

**Siege of
Wepener.**

was diverted to Springfontein. On April 9th three separate Boer commandos attacked three thousand British colonials under Colonel Dalgety at Wepener, and they continued the assault the next day. The losses were heavy on both sides, but the Boer assailants suffered a decided check. The British garrison at Wepener had been practically isolated before the attack began, but the British lines were very strong and the garrison was fully provisioned and prepared for a long siege. For more than a week there was daily fighting at Wepener, where the British under Colonel Dalgety were still surrounded by the Boers. The British garrison inflicted heavy loss on the Boers on April 9th. On the 18th the Boers attempted to rush Colonel Dalgety's left front, but fell back after an hour's fighting. From April 9th to 17th the British losses at Wepener were twenty killed and one hundred wounded. The Boer losses were said to have been much larger. The garrison captured a Boer cannon. On April 11th Lord Kitchener visited Aliwal North and sent a message to the Wepener garrison hoping for an early change in the situation. The British under General Brabant reoccupied Rouxville on April 15th. British forces under Generals Brabant and Rundle were approaching for the relief of Wepener from two directions.

**Other
Opera-
tions
in the
Orange
Free
State.**

The military activity in the Orange Free State was displayed at various points. Heavy cannonading occurred around Bultfontein, midway between Winburg and Boshof. Firing was also heard north of Brandfort on April 11th. The Third Division of the British army, under the immediate command of Major-General Chermiside, arrived at Reddersburg from Bethany on April 18th. There was severe fighting around Dewetsdorp on April 9th, 10th, 11th and 12th, the Boers being under the command of General De Wet. Major-General Pretymann, the British Military Governor of the Orange Free State, was now organizing a corps of mounted police and dividing the country into sections, to be administered by commissions, to be composed probably of British army officers. On April 19th fighting occurred south of Karee Siding, six miles north of Glen, where the British infantry, supported by artillery, held a strong position on a large dam. The Boers south of Bloemfontein were said to be retreating. Large numbers were seen near Thabanchu on April 19th, but their progress was slow on account of the terrible condition of the country.

**Fighting
near
Dewets-
dorp and
Boshof.**

On April 20th General Sir Leslie Rundle's force became engaged with the Boers four miles south-west of Dewetsdorp and drove them back after severe fighting. The fighting was renewed the next day. Generals Rundle and Chermiside were now within twenty miles of Wepener. On April 20th two thousand Boers attacked General Lord Methuen's division near Swartz-Kopjes-Fontein while on its return to

Boshof, but were held in check and finally retired. On April 22d General Lord Methuen had another sharp fight with the Boers near Boshof without any decisive result. A British patrol was attacked near Brandfort on April 21st, losing one man killed and two men taken prisoners. On the same day there was indecisive fighting near Dewetsdorp.

In the meantime fighting was going on day and night at Jammersburg Drift, near Wepener. The British trenches were so flooded by rains that the troops frequently climbed to the banks, only to be shot down by the Boers. The Boers were so drenched that they were unable to sleep. Roberts's powder mill was captured on April 21st. During the siege of Wepener the Cape Mounted Rifles lost one hundred and twenty out of five hundred men. Many relatives were fighting on both sides at Wepener. The British relief columns, about twenty-thousand men, attacked the Boers' defensive positions on the road to Wepener. On April 21st General Sir Leslie Rundle attacked the Boers, and he renewed the fight the next day. On Sunday, April 22d, General Brabant attacked the Boers. The Boers renewed their attacks on the garrison of Wepener under Colonel Dalgety and prepared a series of defensive works on the way of the British advance. The fighting at Wepener and Dewetsdorp continued on April 23d, and the Boers captured General Brabant's cattle and horses. The Boers captured twenty British prisoners at Dewetsdorp. While General Rundle was preparing to strike the large Boer force at Dewetsdorp, Generals Brabant and Hart were pushing along the frontier of Basutoland, and Generals French and Pole-Carew were hastening from Bloemfontein to cut off the Boer line of retreat northward. Many of the Boers were moving southward. General Rundle was advancing slowly to the relief of Wepener, every step being contested closely by the Boers. The British occupied some kopjes, but their left wing was driven back.

During General Alderson's advance on Leeuw Kop the Canadians found themselves in a very tight corner near Donkerpoort on Sunday, April 22d. The Canadian mounted infantry sent to reconnoiter the Boer position approached within three hundred yards of a farm flying the hospital flag, under cover of which the Boers opened such a hot fire on the Canadians that they were unable to retire until another Canadian force covered their retreat by threatening the rear of the Boer position. The Boers were driven from Leeuw Kop so hurriedly on April 23d that they left a large quantity of ammunition and many rifles behind them. The Warwickshire Regiment took the farm-house at the foot of the ridge and were subjected to a cross-fire from the Boers. When the Boers were driven off they retreated eastward. A portion of General French's cavalry reconnoitered the new positions of

Operations
around
Wepener
and
Dewets-
dorp.

British
Capture
of Leeuw
Kop.

the Boers. A strong Boer force under General De Wet held the Bloemfontein water works.

British
Defeat
near
Boshof.

On April 23d Commandant Cronje, the second son of the renowned general then a prisoner at St. Helena, with a strong commando, attacked the British north-east of Boshof; and after a fierce engagement the British were driven from kopje to kopje and fell back toward Boshof, with the loss of fifteen men killed, three wounded and eight captured, while the Boer loss was only two men wounded.

Relief
of
Wepener.

About half of Lord Roberts's force was now trying to relieve Wepener, forty thousand men thus being detached from the main British army to rescue the garrison of fifteen hundred colonials under Colonel Dalgety, besieged by the Boers. General Brabant, who had started from Aliwal North, in Cape Colony, with not less than two thousand colonials, arrived at Bushman's Kop, twenty miles from Wepener, on the evening of April 21st, and found the Boers in a strong position. Fighting began at sunrise the next day, Sunday, April 22d. General Rundle, who had left Bloemfontein with about twenty thousand men, encountered the Boers east of Reddersburg, where the fighting was so hard that Lord Roberts had to send a reinforcement of fifteen thousand men to General Rundle's assistance. The fact that the besieged garrison at Wepener were British colonials made the struggle partake of the nature of a civil war, as relatives were fighting relatives. Wepener was finally relieved on April 24th, and the next day General Chermiside occupied Dewetsdorp without opposition and General Pole-Carew arrived at Roodekop without loss. The indecisive actions and slow progress of Generals Brabant and Hart were counterbalanced by the progress of General French. Lord Roberts now intended to entrap the Boers, and for this purpose he concentrated forty thousand British troops in the south-eastern portion of the Orange Free State.

Operations
around
Wepener,
Dewets-
dorp and
Thabanchu.

The Boers outwitted the British and escaped from the cordon around Wepener and Dewetsdorp, in which the British tried to inclose them, having relinquished their position on the night of April 25th, on account of General French's approach and General Rundle's persistent shelling, retiring in a north-easterly direction, with General Rundle in pursuit by forced marches. Generals Rundle and French joined their forces in the running fight against the retreating Boers. General French entered Dewetsdorp with two cavalry brigades on April 25th, having left his camp at daylight and shelled the Boers from the hills which they had occupied and forced them to retreat, after which he flanked the Boer position above the town and came to General Rundle's aid; but six thousand Boers had outwitted French's cavalry by passing the town the previous night to avoid General French's attack in the rear. The Boers escaped unbeaten, after ac-

completing an immense amount of damage and after clinging to their positions as long as it was safe to do so, thus slipping off to hold their next commanding ridge through a broken country admirably adapted to their style of warfare. The attempt of the Boers at Brandfort to get in touch with the Boer command at Thabanchu was frustrated by a British force which General Tucker had dispatched from Glen. Lord Rosslyn was taken as a prisoner to Pretoria. On April 27th, 28th and 29th the Boers made very persistent attacks around Thabanchu; but General Rundle's division held a strong position and was supported by Gordon's and Dickson's brigades, General French's cavalry, General Smith-Dorrien's infantry and General Ian Hamilton's mounted infantry. General Pole-Carew's division returned from Dewetsdorp. Among the British officers killed was Lieutenant Geary. On April 29th General French found the Boers in strong positions near Thabanchu, they having evacuated the town to occupy stronger positions in the hills east of the town. General De Wet failed in an effort to turn General French's eastern flank after a series of maneuvers. On April 30th the Boers made a daring attempt to cut off a British convoy between Thabanchu and Dewetsdorp, opening fire from the adjacent hills; but the convoy was rescued promptly by a small force of British Yeomanry under General Brabazon just arriving from Wepener. There was much cannonading with very little effect. On the same day General Maxwell's brigade occupied Vlaksontors and Schaus Kraal, a row of kopjes, without encountering any opposition from the Boers; but the British mounted infantry were engaged with the Boers for some hours.

The British were making great progress in the Orange Free State at the close of April. By a flank movement, General Ian Hamilton drove the Boers from a strong position at Israel's Poort on April 25th. General French reached Thabanchu with his cavalry on April 27th and met General Ian Hamilton's and General Smith-Dorrien's brigades there. The Boers made desperate but unsuccessful attacks on the British around Thabanchu on April 28th and 29th. General Ian Hamilton marched north from Thabanchu on April 30th, with the British mounted infantry and General Smith-Dorrien's brigade. At Houtney he encountered a strong Boer force, but he was reinforced from Thabanchu during the night. On April 30th General Maxwell's brigade captured some kopjes from the Boers at Vlakfontein-Schamskraal, the British mounted infantry being engaged for some hours. General Ian Hamilton's and General Smith-Dorrien's brigades flanked the Boer position on May 1st and drove back the Boers. The country between Thabanchu and Dewetsdorp was now practically clear of the Boers, many who had been serving in the Boer commandos returning to their

Operations
around
Thaban-
chu and
Dewets-
dorp.

farms. The Boers who again took up arms after taking the oath under Lord Roberts's proclamation were now being treated more severely by the British. General Sir Charles Warren was appointed Military Governor of Griqualand West, for the purpose of dealing effectively with the Dutch rebellion in Cape Colony.

Operations at
Mafeking,
Fourteen
Streams
and War-
renton.

Sharp fighting again occurred in the vicinity of Mafeking on April 2d. The garrison under Colonel Baden-Powell made a sortie, while Colonel Plumer's cavalry attacked the Boers at Ramathlabama, but both attacks were repulsed. Colonel Plumer lost twenty killed and six wounded. The Boer loss was small. The British shelled the Fourteen Streams Railway Station on April 6th and 7th, as a number of Boers occupied the station. Considerable activity was also shown by the Boers in the vicinity of Warrenton. The Boers vigorously bombarded Mafeking at intervals. Lieutenant Smitheman, of the Rhodesian Regiment, got into Mafeking and returned to Colonel Plumer's camp on April 8th. On April 13th two hundred Boers attacked forty troops of Orpen's Horse near Drachoender, but were driven off. Good news was received from Mafeking up to April 10th. All was reported well, and the brave little garrison was as resolute as ever in its defense against the besieging Boers. The besiegers captured several native women who were trying to escape from the town, but these were turned back. News from Mafeking up to April 20th stated that the Boers had been blowing up the railroad southward, but that there was little bombardment or cannonading. The garrison responded cheerfully to Lord Roberts's request to hold out for another month. On April 23d the Boers shelled the British river redoubts near Warrenton and were in strong force down the stream. About the same time the Boers were driven from Fourteen Streams, where they had been disputing the passage of the Vaal River so as to prevent the British from entering the Transvaal.

Operations in
Natal.

Active military operations were also again being prosecuted in Natal. On April 10th there was a lively cannonade at Elandslaagte, the scene of the British victory of October 21, 1899. The Boers attacked General Buller's right flank under General Clery while the British were changing their position, but the British artillery silenced the Boer cannon. The British lost four killed and eight wounded. In the evening the Boers retreated in a north-westerly direction. On April 12th there was a continuous musketry and artillery fire at Elandslaagte, but after two hours' fighting the Boers were checked. The Boers continued shelling the British position for several days, the British retiring toward Ladysmith. A British force under General Hunter proceeded from Ladysmith to Durban. The British position at Biggersberg was defended by about seven thousand British troops

with artillery. The Boers were still aggressive. They cannonaded Elandslaagte and attempted feints in other directions.

On April 3d a transport sailed from Cape Town for St. Helena, with General Cronje and one thousand other Boer prisoners on board. The loyalists of Cape Colony complained bitterly of the indulgence shown the Dutch rebel colonials. A loyalist meeting was held at Paarl, in Cape Colony, and was attended largely by Dutch colonials. On April 4th a great meeting was held at Cape Town, which demanded that the two Boer Republics should not retain their independence. In view of the state of unrest in Cape Colony, Lord Roberts issued a proclamation warning the Dutch colonists that further acts of hostility would be treated with the utmost rigor of martial law. The Boers reappeared along the Orange River and at the drifts. Sir Alfred Milner, in replying to an address from clergymen, said that the rebel leaders should be treated severely. Two of the Cape Colony rebels were sentenced at Naauwpoort, one to ten years' penal servitude and the other to five years. On April 23d the thirty-six Dutch rebel colonials captured at Douglas were convicted of treason at Cape Town. The ringleaders were sentenced to five years' imprisonment and the others to three years' imprisonment, except those under age. At Cape Town a government contractor named Bam was arrested for harboring three escaped Boer prisoners dressed as clergymen. The prisoners were sent back to Simonstown, whence they had escaped.

**Cape
Colony
Loyalists
and
Colonial
Rebels.**

The *Niobe* and the *Milwaukee* arrived at the island of St. Helena with the Boer prisoners on April 10th. General Cronje was landed on the 14th, on which day Colonel Schiel and two other Boer prisoners attempted to escape. The Governor of the island was notified that the British authorities desired that the prisoners should be treated with every courtesy and consideration.

**Boer
Prisoners
at St.
Helena.**

General Sir William Forbes Gatacre was succeeded by Lieutenant-General Pole-Carew in command of the Third Division, and several other changes of British commanders in South Africa were announced. General Sir George Stuart White, the heroic defender of Ladysmith, arrived at Southampton, England, on April 14th, and was received with the most extravagant enthusiasm. The British cruiser *Powerful* arrived at Portsmouth, England, on April 11th, and had a most enthusiastic welcome.

**Changes
of British
Com-
manders.**

The British government made a contract in the United States for between thirty thousand and forty thousand horses for the British forces in South Africa. On April 14th three transports arrived at Beira, in Portuguese East Africa, with the Australian Bushmen. General Sir Frederick Carrington's force was to detrain at Marandellas, on the Mashonaland Railway, from which point it was to proceed

**British
Prepara-
tions.**

south-west to Victoria, in the direction of the Transvaal. The governments of the two Boer Republics notified Portugal that the passage of British troops and munitions of war through Beira would be considered tantamount to hostile action.

Criticism
on Spion
Kop.

The London *Gazette* of April 17th published dispatches describing the battle of Spion Kop on January 23d and 24th, with a covering dispatch of Lord Roberts, who severely criticised Generals Buller and Warren, and Lieutenant-Colonel Thorneycroft and said that the attempt to relieve Ladysmith described in the dispatches ought to have succeeded. On April 18th it was stated that General Sir Charles Warren had been ordered to return to England.

Speeches
on the
War.

Toward the close of April speeches on the war were made by three British Cabinet Ministers—Sir Michael Hicks-Beach, Mr. Long and Mr. Ritchie. Mr. Long said that the government was not bound to dismiss every general who had made a mistake, and Mr. Ritchie said that Lord Roberts's criticism of the Spion Kop incident was not published without that commander's knowledge. References to the same subject were made in speeches delivered by Sir Henry Hartley Fowler, Sir Charles Wentworth Dilke, Sir Walter Peace, Lord Strathcona and Lord Spencer.

Doings
of the
Trans-
vaal
Govern-
ment.

On April 2d the Transvaal government published a notice in Pretoria to all British residents in Johannesburg, Boksburg and Krügersdorp to leave the Transvaal within forty-eight hours. The Transvaal government requested Lord Roberts to be allowed to send a clergyman to St. Helena and also a neutral consul to watch the interests of the Boer prisoners in the same manner as United States Consul Adelbert S. Hay guarded the interests of the British at Pretoria. The Transvaal government also issued a proclamation prohibiting the working of the mines on Sunday and inflicting punishment on managers who paid more than a pound (almost five dollars) a month to natives.

Chicago
Ambu-
lance
Corps.

United States Consul Hay at Pretoria notified the State Department at Washington by cable on April 19th concerning the reported action of members of the Chicago Ambulance Corps, in taking up arms in the Boer army, instead of continuing with the hospital corps, to which they had pledged themselves upon leaving the United States.

French
and
German
Sympa-
thy for
the Boers.

In France and Germany popular sympathy was still strongly on the side of the Boers. A pro-Boer committee from München submitted to Chancellor Von Hohenlohe a petition with seventy thousand signatures, asking for international intervention in South Africa. The same petition was to be sent to all the signers of The Hague convention. The names of many prominent men appeared on the petition, and also a number of societies, some which have thirty thousand members. A committee at Hamburg was receiving signatures to a similar petition.

The transport *Portugal*, with eight hundred Portuguese troops, arrived at Lorenzo Marques from Lisbon on April 21st, thus making Portugal feel easier regarding the Boer protest against the British use of Beira. On April 21st the Irish brigade in the Boer service paraded in front of President Krüger's house. The President made a speech of thanks and welcome to them, and the force was photographed afterward.

Portu-
guese
Troops.

Irish
Brigade.

On the night of April 25th the Boer arsenal at Pretoria was blown up by a serious explosion in a magazine containing smokeless powder, across the street. The walls of the arsenal building were destroyed and the structures in the vicinity were a mass of flames. Ten workmen were killed and thirty-two were wounded, among whom was Herr Grunberg, the manager of the Begbie works. Thirteen of the occupants of the building were blown to pieces and fifty were injured. The Transvaal authorities believed the explosion to be the work of British or Uitlander incendiaries; and, as a result, another batch of British subjects, consisting of ten men, two hundred and sixty-five women and four hundred and twenty-nine children, were expelled from the Transvaal and were on their way to Delagoa Bay.

Explosion
of the
Pretoria
Arsenal.

On May 3d Lord Roberts captured Brandfort without much opposition, and the next day the British mounted infantry went to the Vet River. The rest of the British force marched there on the 5th. On May 2d the Boers evacuated Thabanchu and marched northward. The next day General French left Thabanchu, leaving General Rundle in command. General Brabant soon reinforced General Rundle. Lord Roberts marched to the Vet River with General Pole-Carew's Division on May 5th. The British mounted infantry flanked the Boer right and pushed across the river under a heavy shell and musketry fire. General Ian Hamilton prevented the two Boer forces from uniting by his presence in the action on May 4th. The Boers left their dead and wounded on the field. General Rundle moved forward from Thabanchu and attacked the Boers, capturing their positions and pursuing them eastward. The British crossed the Vet River on May 6th and encamped at Smaldeel Junction. The Boers were in full retreat towards the Sand River and Kroonstad. The British captured a Maxim cannon and twenty-five prisoners. On May 5th Winburg surrendered to General Ian Hamilton, who for a week was continually in touch with General Botha's rear-guard and whose advance scouts were overlapping Winburg before the Boer transport was clear. Winburg contained large stocks of grain and quantities of ammunition. The Highland Brigade occupied Winburg, and General Ian Hamilton pushed on to the Sand River. General French reached Smaldeel on May 8th.

British
Occupation
of
Brand-
fort,
Thaban-
chu and
Winburg.

**Lord
Roberts's
Passage
of the
Sand
River
and
Occupation
of Kroon-
stad.**

In his advance northward to the Transvaal, Lord Roberts forced the passage of the Sand River on May 10th, though the Boer position was twenty miles long and the British position was necessarily longer. General Ian Hamilton's division encountered an obstinate resistance from the Boers. General Broadwood's brigade overtook part of the Boer convoy and captured several wagons and prisoners. On May 12th Lord Roberts entered Kroonstad without opposition and hoisted the Union Jack. President Steyn had fled the previous evening, after vainly endeavoring to persuade his followers to continue their resistance. The Transvaalers said that they would no longer fight in the Orange Free State and fled to the Vaal River. The Free Staters accused the Transvaalers of having made use of them and then deserted them. Many of the Free Staters had gone to their homes, and hundreds remained in town to surrender. President Steyn had gone to Heilbron, which he proclaimed to be the new capital of the Orange Free State. The day previous to the British occupation of Kroonstad the Irish-Americans in the Boer service got possession of a large quantity of rum and became beastly intoxicated, and while in that condition they burned down the goods' sheds before they fled on the British approach. Lord Roberts reported another gross instance of Boer treachery near Kroonstad on May 14th, when the British who came to receive the surrender of a farmer from whose house a white flag was flying were fired upon by Boers in ambush and a number of British were killed.

**Boer
Disse-
sions.**

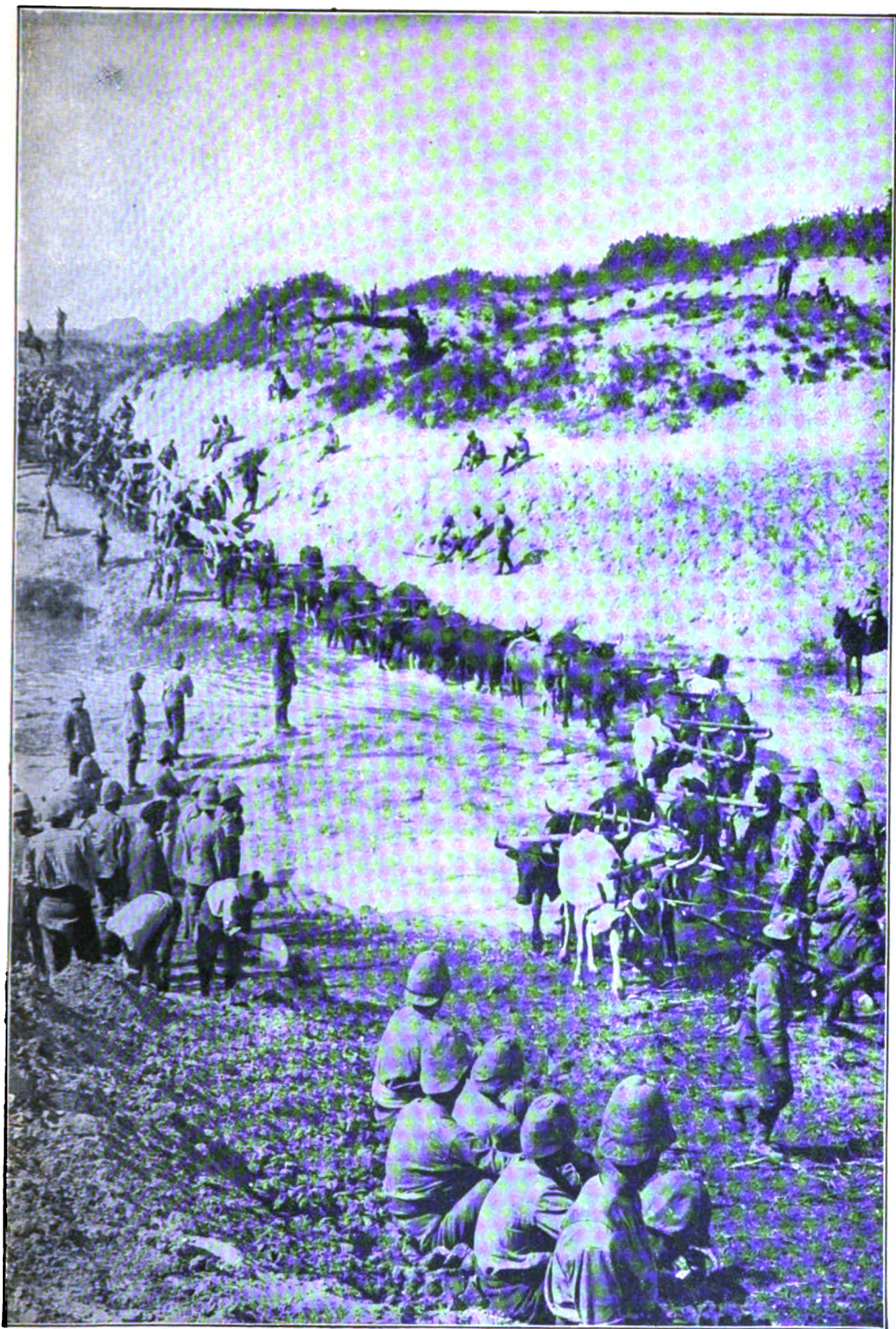
**Other
Incidents.**

**Boer
Despera-
tion.**

The Transvaal Volksraad was opened at Pretoria on May 7th. It was rumored that a strong party in the Volksraad was determined to have peace negotiations reopened. It was now stated that the Boers recognized that they were in their last extremity and that all sorts and conditions of men were being compelled to go on commando. The Rev. Adrian Hofmeyr was released from Pretoria after seven months' incarceration.

**Opera-
tions of
Generals
Rundle
and
Brabant.**

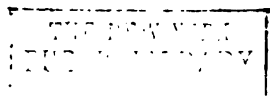
General Rundle's operations east of Thabanchu utterly foiled the Boer efforts to rally in that quarter. Many Boers were made prisoners and large numbers were surrendering daily. General Rundle advanced to Brand's Drift, twenty miles north-east of Thabanchu, on May 13th. General Brabant's division was also moving northward and was taking many prisoners. Captain Grenfell's force entered Newberry's Mills on May 12th and captured large quantities of grain and flour. President Steyn's brother surrendered to the British. General Rundle occupied Mequatling's Nek and Modderpoort without opposition and was close to Clocolan on May 16th, the country being clear of Boer troops. A few days later Generals Rundle and Brabant occupied Trommel and Clocolan. General Rundle advanced and occupied the town of Mexico, twenty miles east of Winburg. Large



From Photograph copyright by Underwood & Underwood

LORD ROBERTS' ADVANCE ON PRETORIA

Taking Heavy Naval Guns Across the Vet River



numbers of Orange Free State Boers continued to surrender and deliver up their arms to the British.

On May 14th the Imperial Yeomanry occupied Ladybrand. The British force under General Hunter entered the Transvaal from the south-west on May 15th and occupied Christiania the next day, the Boers having retired to Klerksdorp. General Lord Methuen entered Hoopstad without opposition on May 17th, and General Ian Hamilton occupied Lindley on the same day. The British made important captures. Generals Du Prey and Daniels and forty men surrendered. The British mounted infantry under General Hutton surprised General Botha and twenty-three other Boers thirty miles north-west of Kroonstad also on May 17th. The Boers blew up a bridge over the Rhenoster River, thirty-seven miles north of Kroonstad, to obstruct the progress of the invaders.

**General
Hunter's
Invasion
of the
Trans-
vaal.**

**British
Captures.**

Lord Roberts, General Lord Methuen and General Hunter were all coöperating for the invasion of the Transvaal from three different points, Roberts from Kroonstad, Methuen from Hoopstad, and Hunter having also crossed the Vaal and occupied Christiania. General Hunter was pushing up the railway with supplies for the Mafeking garrison and was arranging a hospital train to convey the sick and wounded to Kimberley. General Lord Methuen left Hoopstad to co-operate with General Hunter's force. On May 20th a British convoy on its way to Lindley was attacked by the Boers and obliged to halt. On the same day the Boers under General Kolbe were routed by the British between Heilbron and Lindley, losing one man killed and seven wounded. Over three hundred and fifty Boers surrendered to the British officer at Boshof unconditionally, thus giving up three hundred and sixty rifles, one hundred horses and much ammunition. Three companies of Yeomanry sent by General Kelly-Kenny repaired the telegraph line and cleared the country between Boshof and Bloemfontein. General Chris Botha was appointed assistant to his brother, General Louis Botha, the Boer commander-in-chief; and he revived the fighting spirit of many Boers.

**Opera-
tions of
Lords
Roberts
and
Methuen
and
General
Hunter.**

It was now persistently rumored that a peace party was being formed at Pretoria in consequence of the discouragement among the Transvaalers on account of the recent Boer reverses. The committee of the International Peace Bureau, at Berne, Switzerland, decided to make an appeal for peace to the twenty-five powers which signed the conventions of The Hague Peace Conference.

**Peace
Move-
ment.**

It was now stated that the Transvaal government had decided to blow up the Johannesburg gold mines, and that when General Louis Botha heard of this he hastened to Pretoria and protested strenuously against such action, threatening to use his own army to protect the

**Gold
Mines
Threat-
ened.**

mines in case the attempt were made to destroy them, thus compelling President Krüger to abandon the scheme.

**Passage
of the
Rhenoster
River and
Occupation
of
Heilbron.**

On May 22d General French crossed the Rhenoster River, north-west of Horningspruit, driving the Boers before him. The same day General Ian Hamilton occupied Heilbron, after a series of engagements with the Boers under General De Wet. The main British army, under Lord Roberts, resumed its advance toward the Transvaal. President Steyn had fled from Heilbron on May 22d, the very day that General Ian Hamilton occupied the town. General Broadwood captured fifteen Boer wagons. On May 23d Lord Roberts reached the Rhenoster River, the Boers having abandoned their strong position on the north bank of the river when the British approached. General Ian Hamilton drove the Boers under General De Wet before them from Lindley to Heilbron. The Boers strongly disputed the passage of the Rhenoster River, and General Hamilton's force was saved great loss by the skillfully-executed flank movement of General Smith-Dorrien's brigade.

**Boer
Resolu-
tion:**

After two days' consultation at Pretoria, Presidents Krüger and Steyn and all the prominent Transvaal and Orange Free State officials decided to fight to the bitter end unless Great Britain granted favorable terms of peace. The Transvaal government warned the Johannesburg people that it would defend that city against the British army advancing against it.

**Operations
of
Generals
Rundle
and
Brabant.**

A British patrol was attacked near Trommel by a Boer force, and one man was wounded and three horses were killed. General Rundle occupied Senekal on May 24th. On May 28th General Rundle attacked a large Boer force at Senekal with small loss. On the same day General Brabant sent out two patrols consisting of two officers and forty privates, all of whom were made prisoners by the Boers. On May 31st General Rundle routed the Boers in a desperate conflict eight miles east of Senekal, thus facilitating the reoccupation of Lindley without opposition. General Colville was opposed by the Boers all the way from Ventersburg to Heilbron, losing six killed and thirty-two wounded. The Lancashire battery of field artillery and Grant's naval guns did efficient work. General Rundle lost thirty-two killed and one hundred and fifty wounded in his operations. General Brabant practically surrounded the Boers five miles outside of Ficksburg by the close of May. The only avenue of retreat for the Boers was into Basutoland, where thousands of Basutos under Chief Jonathan were awaiting events. The Thirteenth Battalion of Imperial Yeomanry was compelled to surrender to a very superior Boer force near Lindley on May 31st. Lord Methuen afterwards attacked and routed the Boers, numbering more than two thousand strong.

On May 28th Lord Roberts announced to his troops the annexation of the Orange Free State, which thenceforth was to be known as the Orange River Colony. On the same day Major-General George Tindal Pretzman, at Bloemfontein, amid salutes and cheers and the singing of "*God Save the Queen*," formally proclaimed that the Orange Free State was annexed to the British dominions under the title of the Orange River Colony, while Lord Acheson unfurled the royal standard and the bands played "*God Save the Queen*," after the reading of the royal proclamation, the multitude singing the British national anthem while the band was playing it, the ceremony closing with loud cheers for the queen, Lord Roberts and the British army, and a salute of twenty-one cannon.

**Formal
Annexa-
tion
of the
Orange
Free
State.**

In Natal, General Buller advanced on the Helpmakaar Road on May 12th. By the next day the Boers had abandoned their strong positions and retired to the Nek in front of Helpmakaar, which in turn they evacuated that night, leaving a rear-guard of about one thousand men, whom the British drove back the next day. On May 15th General Buller occupied Dundee and Glencoe without opposition. At some of the collieries he found the machinery destroyed. The Boer retreat through Dundee was an utter rout. The Boers also evacuated Biggarsberg. General Buller was in close pursuit of seven thousand retreating Boers, and the Second Division entered Dannhauser on May 17th, on which day Buller also occupied Newcastle. The Fifth Division was between Glencoe and Elandslaagte, and the Fourth Division at Sunday River Drift. On May 19th General Clery moved to the Ingogo River and Lord Dundonald advanced to Laing's Nek, the latter almost overtaking the retreating Boer column and capturing a few prisoners and a few wagons. General Buller's advance was retarded by the destruction of the railway by the retreating Boers. The Boers seemed to be occupying Laing's Nek and Majuba Hill in considerable force.

**General
Buller's
Opera-
tions in
Natal.**

In a Boer ambush between Nqutu and Mount Prospect eight British were killed and thirteen wounded on May 19th. The next day seventy British of Colonel Bethune's mounted infantry were ambushed by eighty Boers of the Swaziland commando at Scheeper's Nek, while on the way to Newcastle, the British detachment being thoroughly annihilated, losing sixty-six men in killed, wounded and missing, while the Boers lost only one man killed and one wounded and captured twenty-five horses, two Maxim cannon and much ammunition. Among the British wounded was Captain the Earl of De la Warr (Delaware).

**Colonel
Bethune's
Force
Am-
bushed.**

On May 21st the British crossed the Buffalo River, and severe fighting occurred at Botha's Nek on the same day. General Hildyard reached Newcastle on May 26th, after which he invaded the Trans-

**British
Invasion
of the
Trans-
vaal
from
Natal.**

vaal and occupied Utrecht on May 30th. The movements of Generals Hildyard and Lyttleton compelled the Boers to evacuate Dornberg and to retreat northward. On May 29th General Clery bombarded Laing's Nek, which the Boers evacuated the next day, retreating before their assailants.

**Operations of
Generals
Hunter
and
Barton.**

On the western frontier General Hunter crossed the Vaal River at Windsorton on May 3d without opposition. General Barton's brigade had a severe engagement with the Boers two miles north of Rooidam on May 5th, the Boer position being about four miles long and held strongly, but ridge after ridge being captured by the British after brilliant and heroic fighting. After thus defeating the Boers, General Hunter joined the British force near Warrenton, and the Boers were driven from their position at Fourteen Streams.

**Colonel
Baden-
Powell's
Defense of
Mafeking.**

Colonel Baden-Powell was still gallantly holding out at Mafeking against the besieging Boers. Natives who arrived at Plumer's camp early in May stated that the bombardment of Mafeking on the 1st was not heavy. About twelve hundred and eighty refugees from Mafeking had reached Plumer's camp. The Boers regularly patrolled the vicinity of Mafeking, but did not appear to be aggressive. On May 7th Colonel Baden-Powell reported that all was well at Mafeking, that the garrison was cheerful, that the fever was abating and that the food supply would last until June 10th. There was severe fighting at Mafeking on May 11th and 12th. A force of besiegers stormed the native township, but suffered a crushing defeat.

**Operations of
Colonel
Plumer
and
Generals
Warren
and
Hunter.**

In the meantime Lieutenant Moorsome with the protectorate regiment from Mafeking met Colonel Plumer, and, after a daring march of three hundred miles and many narrow escapes, reached Vryburg, through a deadly fever-stricken country. Many concealed arms were discovered and the owners were arrested. They informed the British against their neighbors. The natives rendered the British every assistance. General Warren occupied Douglas after heavy fighting and without any loss on his part, the Boers retreating northward. About this time eight hundred Boers surrendered at Vryburg. The road from Mafeking to Kimberley, two hundred miles long, was clear; and all opposition in that quarter was practically ended. General Hunter occupied Vryburg on May 23d.

**Operations of
Colonel
Mahon
and
Others.**

Colonel Mahon halted with his British flying column at Maribogo and was awaiting remounts and supplies before advancing into the Transvaal from the west. On May 27th a British detachment under Colonel Adye completely defeated a force of Dutch Cape Colony rebels at Kheis. On May 30th General Warren, with seven hundred British troops, was surrounded by one thousand Dutch rebels from Cape Colony at Faber Spruit, but repulsed their attack. Late in May

the British invaded the Transvaal from the west, occupied Zeerust and advanced toward Lichtenburg.

After a heroic and desperate defense of seven months by the valiant Colonel Baden-Powell's gallant little garrison, Mafeking was finally relieved on the morning of May 17th by a British flying column from the south under Colonel Bryan T. Mahon, which had been joined by Colonel Plumer's force from the north on May 15th at Jamaïda.

Relief of Mafeking.

In his march for the relief of Mafeking, Colonel Mahon had some severe fighting with the Boers who opposed his advance. On May 12th he fought the Boers from Maritsani Siding, losing five killed, twenty-four wounded and two missing; but the Boer loss was heavier. On May 16th—the day after he was joined by Colonel Plumer's force—he fought fifteen hundred Boers nine miles from Mafeking, driving them from a strong position after five hours' fighting. On the morning of this fight a detachment of Canadian artillery came up by forced marches and rendered efficient aid. The British loss was about thirty, and the Boer loss was greater.

Colonels Mahon's and Plumer's Advance.

On May 12th—five days before the relief of Mafeking—the Boers made their last desperate attempt to carry the beleaguered town by assault. Before daybreak, while the Boer main force under General Snyman made a feint on the east side of the town, a storming party of seven hundred Boers under Commandant Eloff, President Krüger's grandson, crept up stealthily by the bed of the Molopo River and made a desperate and unexpected assault upon the town; but Eloff's force got divided, and after a day's fighting two parties of the Boer assailants were repulsed and surrendered soon after nightfall, while the third party was driven off. The Boers lost ten killed, nineteen wounded and one hundred and eighteen prisoners, among whom were Commandant Eloff, Count de Bremont, a Frenchman, and Count von Weiss, a German. The British lost six killed and eleven wounded.

Last Boer Assault on the Town.

As soon as Colonel Mahon's relieving force arrived at Mafeking, on May 17th, it was joined by the garrison under Colonel Baden-Powell; and the combined British forces marched out, attacked the Boer laager, shelled the Boers out and almost captured General Snyman, killing five Boers and wounding fifteen and capturing a cannon, a flag and a large amount of ammunition, stores, etc. This great victory of Colonels Mahon and Baden-Powell raised the siege of Mafeking, and Colonel Mahon's flying column entered the town before daybreak the next morning, May 18th.

Colonel Baden-Powell's Successful Sally

England and the whole British Empire went wild with joy at the news of the relief of Mafeking and of Colonel Baden-Powell's long and heroic defense against immense odds and his final brilliant repulse and capture of a Boer storming party. The enthusiastic popular rejoic-

Rejoicing Throughout the British Empire.

ings in London were absolutely unparalleled, entirely eclipsing the extravagant rejoicings which followed the reliefs of Kimberley and Ladysmith and Cronje's surrender. Lord Roberts, General Buller and the other heroes of the war were entirely forgotten amid these public rejoicings; and Robert Stephenson Smyth Baden-Powell, although only a colonel, was the favorite popular idol and was justly regarded as the real hero of the war, as his talents and genius prolonged a defense which many another would have given up months before. With a handful of men he held out against great odds for seven months in an outpost on a South African prairie. Even the pro-Boer sympathizers outside of South Africa admired his genius, heroism and worthy qualities. Queen Victoria rewarded him with the appointment of major-general. Baden-Powell is an artist, a poet and a prose writer as well as a talented military commander.

General
Baden-
Powell's
Speech.

Mafeking was resuming its normal condition. On the Queen's birthday, May 24th, Major-General Baden-Powell gave a dinner to the officers of the relief columns. During the course of a speech proposing the queen's health, the heroic defender of Mafeking said that he felt so elated by the recent occurrences that he could "drink the health of Paul Krüger himself coupled with that of Cecil Rhodes," further remarking: "Because Krüger has been the cause of the present great outburst of imperial feeling and Rhodes was the red rag to the bull which drew him on."

Austin's
Poem.

The following is a poem by the Poet-Laureate, Alfred Austin, on the successful defense of Mafeking:

MAFEKING, OCTOBER 13, 1899.—MAY 17, 1900.

"Once again, banners, fly!
Clang again, bells, on high,
Sounding to sea and sky
Longer and louder
Mafeking's glory with
Kimberley, Ladysmith,
Prouder and Prouder.

"Hemmed in for half a year,
Still with no succor near,
Nor word of hope to cheer
Wounded and dying,
Fevered, and foiled of sleep
By the fierce cannon's leap,
They still, still vowed to keep
England's flag flying.

"Nor was their metal shown
By male and strong alone,
But, as intrepid grown,
Fragile and tender,

Without a tear or sigh,
 Echoed the brave old cry,
 'We, too, would rather die,
 Die than surrender.'

"As pressed the foe more near,
 Only with naked spear,
 Ne'er knowing what to fear,
 Parley, or blench meant,
 Forward through shot and shell,
 While still the foremost fell,
 They with resistless yell
 Stormed his intrenchment.

"Then, when hope dawned at last,
 And fled the foe, aghast
 At the relieving blast
 Heard in the melody—
 O our stout, stubborn kith!
 Kimberley, Ladysmith,
 Mafeking, wedded with
 Lucknow and Delhi!

"Sound for them martial lay!
 Crown them with battle-bay,
 Both those who died, and they
 'Gainst death could wrestle;
 Powell of endless fame,
 All, all with equal claim,
 And, of the storied name,
 Gallant young Cecil!

"Long as the waves shall roll,
 Long as Fame guards her scroll,
 And men through heart and soul
 Thrill to true glory,
 Their deed, from age to age,
 Shall voice and verse engage,
 Swelling the splendid page
 Of England's story!"

The British invasion of the Transvaal began on May 24th, when the advance portion of Lord Roberts's army crossed the Vaal River near Parys. In the meantime Colonel Henry's mounted infantry, with the Bedfordshire Yeomanry and Lumsden's cavalry, crossed the Vaal at Viljoen's Drift, after some skirmishing among the coal mines; and Colonel Henry occupied Vereeniging at midday on May 26th, capturing twenty-seven locomotives. General French's column had crossed the Vaal at Lindrique's Drift on May 25th. It was said that supplies and foreign recruits still reached the Boers by way of Lorenzo Marques. It was also said that foreign residents were fast leaving Pretoria.

Lord
 Roberts's
 Invasion
 of the
 Trans-
 vaal.

**Fighting
at Van
Wyk's
Rust,
Witwa-
tersrand
and Klip
River.**

On Sunday, May 27th, a fight occurred near Van Wyk's Rust, in Gatsrand, in which the Boers were routed and driven toward Van Wyk's Rust. The next day the British attacked Witwatersrand, but were repulsed by the Boers under General Louis Botha. On Sunday, May 27th, Generals French and Ian Hamilton defeated the Boers at the Klip River and prepared to force their way to the northward of Johannesburg. The fighting was renewed the next day, to the disadvantage of the Boers. The Boers were so hard pressed that they only had time to get their five cannon into a train and move out as some of the West Australian mounted infantry dashed into the station.

**British
Advance
and Boer
Retreat.**

On May 26th Lord Roberts marched twenty miles and was eighteen miles from Johannesburg, the Boers evacuating all their strong positions as the British advanced. The farmers on the line of the British march mere surrendering their arms and horses. On May 28th and 29th General French was opposed in his march by large forces of Boers in strong positions, from which he drove them with the loss of four of his own men killed and twenty-seven wounded. On May 29th and 30th the Boers stubbornly resisted the British advance to Johannesburg, the brunt of the fighting on the British side falling upon General Ian Hamilton's column, which was supporting General French's cavalry to the west of Johannesburg on the 29th, the Boers being driven from their positions. The next day the remnants of the Boer rear-guard fought the British in the streets of Germiston, but the streets were easily cleared by the British grenadiers. General Ian Hamilton was then at Florida, west of Johannesburg, and General French was a few miles farther north-east. General Bruce Hamilton and Colonel Spens, of the Shropshire Light Infantry, of General Smith-Dorrien's division, fought with great skill.

**President
Krüger's
Flight.**

Johannesburg was now at the mercy of the British. The Boer resistance seemed to have collapsed completely; and President Krüger had fled to Waterval Boven, on the Delagoa Bay Railway, east of Pretoria, where he had his capital in a railway car. To a newspaper correspondent who interviewed him in that car the fugitive Transvaal President said, in answer to a question as to where he would have his capital now that the British closed on Pretoria: "Here is my capital—right in this car." Thus Krüger's capital was on wheels; while, in the Philippines, Aguinaldo's capital was on foot. Nine engines, a coal train and a large quantity of rolling-stock were captured by the British at Johannesburg. The gold mines were uninjured. On the morning of May 30th Lord Roberts sent a flag of truce to Johannesburg, in answer to which the Boer commandant there came to see the British commander-in-chief and begged him to defer entering the city for twenty-four hours, as there were many armed Boers still in the

**Lord
Roberts's
Occupation
of
Johannes-
burg.**

city. Lord Roberts willingly granted the Boer commandant's request, in order to avoid disturbance. The London newspapers all acknowledged the prompt friendliness of Mr. Adelbert S. Hay, the United States consul at Pretoria, in insisting on the release of a number of British officers to take command of the British prisoners in order to avert a possible disturbance among the latter. While the British were at Johannesburg dictating the terms of surrender, the British advance guard was halfway between Johannesburg and Pretoria, and all the Boer troops at the forts of the Transvaal capital had been dismissed from garrison duty. On May 31st the Union Jack floated over the government buildings at Johannesburg, and Lord Roberts formally entered the "Golden Reef City" with his army the next day, June 1st. The town was very empty and all was quiet, there being a general feeling of relief at the peaceful British occupation. A Creuzot cannon and ammunition had been captured, as well as Commandant Botha and one hundred other prisoners.

Lord Roberts pushed on to Pretoria, the Transvaal capital, thirty-five miles north from Johannesburg. On June 4th the Boers resisted his approach at Six Miles Spruit, but after twelve hours' marching and fighting they were driven back, and the British bivouacked near the southern forts of Pretoria. General Botha did not defend Pretoria, and Lord Roberts and his troops took possession of the Transvaal capital on June 5th. A few of the British prisoners had been removed, but most of them were still at Waterfall. The British occupation of Pretoria passed off most satisfactorily, and the British flag was hoisted over the government offices. The British troops met with a more enthusiastic reception than Lord Roberts had anticipated. The news of the occupation of the Transvaal capital caused much rejoicing in London, and the streets of the British capital and metropolis were filled with enthusiastic multitudes. Lorenzo Marques was now said to be full of foreign mercenaries, who, like rats, were deserting the sinking Boer cause; but thousands of Boers under General Botha took an oath to fight to the bitter end.

Lord
Roberts's
Occupation
of
Pretoria.

The British Naval Brigade from the warship *Powerful* came to London on May 7th for inspection by the Prince of Wales and the Lords of the Admiralty, and also marched through the city, being received everywhere with unbounded enthusiasm by enormous crowds. On May 16th Queen Victoria again visited Netley Hospital, conversing with many of the invalids and distributing flowers among them and doing what she could to cheer them up. General Sir George Stuart White presided over the annual meeting of the Army Temperance Association on May 14th. Lord Roberts wrote that he supposed that there never was a more temperate army than that which marched under

Occurrences
in Great
Britain.

his command to Bloemfontein. In a speech at Birmingham on May 11th Mr. Chamberlain said that the two Boer Republics must be finally incorporated in Her Majesty's dominions. In a speech at Bristol on May 16th the Chancellor of the Exchequer denied that he had interfered with the preparations of the Army Corps or in the matter of transport.

War
Office
Investigation.

The House of Commons Committee on War Office Contracts heard evidence on this subject near the middle of May from Mr. Major, Director of Contracts to the War Office. Lieutenant-General Clarke, Quartermaster General, and Colonel Day, Acting Deputy Assistant Adjutant-General for the North-western District, testified as to the bad hay shipped in the *Manchester Port*. They did not know of any system of gratuities paid to officials by contractors. The committee had two more sittings on the hay which had been condemned after being put on board the *Manchester Port*.

Occurrences in
Cape
Colony.

The *South African Review* asserted that a Dutch member of the Cape Colony Parliament offered money to a man to shoot Sir Alfred Milner. Affidavits on the subject were said to be in the possession of the Attorney-General of Cape Colony. The *South African Review* demanded the punishment of the member of the colonial Parliament making this offer, describing him as a prominent Bond man from Piquetberg. American residents of Cape Town repudiated the statements made by Webster Davis, the former United States Assistant Secretary of the Interior, who recently had visited South Africa and who, after his return to the United States, made serious accusations of cruelty and treachery against the British and blamed them wholly for the war. The Boers removed nine hundred British prisoners from Pretoria to Nooitgedacht, in the Elands Valley; but the other thirty-five hundred, with one hundred and fifty officers, were released by Lord Roberts in his advance toward the Transvaal capital.

Occurrences
in Great
Britain.

The British transport *Kildonan Castle* left the English coast for South Africa late in May, with one hundred and seventy-three British military officers and two thousand one hundred and fourteen privates on board. Late in May the Imperial Yeomanry Committee received from Sir Ralph Knox, on behalf of Lord Lansdowne, a letter intimating the release of the committee from its arduous duties and expressing very warm appreciation of the committee's services and of the Yeomanry's bravery and efficiency in the field. On May 30th the Mansion-house War Fund in London amounted to nine hundred and eighteen thousand six hundred pounds, and the Mafeking Relief Fund to fourteen thousand pounds. The National Bazaar was opened in London by the Prince of Wales on May 24th, Queen Victoria's eighty-first birthday. On the 25th the Bazaar was opened by the Duke of Cam-

bridge, and on the 26th by General Sir George Stuart White. A very large sum was realized for the war fund.

At a banquet of the City of London Conservative Association, on May 29th, Lord Salisbury said it had been stated that he had promised that there should not be any annexation of territory or of gold fields. He said that he never used language that could be construed thus. He said that the British government had been accused of going to war with the Boers to acquire territory and gold mines—an atrocious calumny. He said that now their only security against a recurrence of this terrible war was to make certain that not a shred of the former independence of the Boer Republics should remain. At a banquet of the City of London Liberal Club, late in May, Mr. Asquith said it was the practically-unanimous judgment of Englishmen that the British Empire must be protected, but that they should not be animated by revenge or forget that they had made themselves trustees of a policy of equal rights for the whites and full justice for the blacks of South Africa. General Sir George Stuart White also made two interesting speeches.

**Speeches
on the
War.**

About the middle of March a commission, composed of Messrs. Fischer, Wessels and Wolmarans and representing the Transvaal Republic and the Orange Free State, sailed from Lorenzo Marques for Europe. After passing some weeks in Europe in trying to enlist the Great Powers of Continental Europe in schemes of mediation or intervention in the interest of peace and the cause of the Boer Republics, the commission sailed for the United States and arrived at New York about the middle of May. The commissioners were greeted by large crowds in New York and Washington, but their efforts to induce the United States government to mediate or intervene were unsuccessful. During their short visit to the White House, President McKinley received them courteously, conversed with them about the weather, showed them the view down the Potomac and then bid them "good morning," never alluding to the war, the Boer Republics or the object of their mission.

**Boer
Commissioners in
Europe
and
America.**

On May 31st a People's Congress was held at Graaf Reinet, in Cape Colony, and bitter speeches were made by Olive Schreiner and others against the British annexation of the two Boer Republics, and equally violent resolutions were passed to the same effect.

**Dutch
Congress.**

In the Transvaal, on June 11th, Lord Roberts attacked the Boer force under General Botha about fifteen miles east, on the Middelburg road. The British gained the key to the left flank of the Boer position before dark, and Lord Roberts ordered his troops to bivouac on the ground which they had won. Among the British killed was the gallant Lord Airlie and two officers of the Seventeenth Lancers. The

**Lord
Roberts's
Continued
Successes.**

fighting continued all of the next day, in the evening of which the Boers were driven eastward.

**British
Disaster
and Suc-
cesses.**

In the Orange River Colony, from June 6th to 13th, Lord Roberts's communications were cut, the railway and telegraph line having been destroyed by a large force of Boer raiders at Roodeval, north of Kroonstad. On June 7th the Boers surrounded the Fourth Militia Battalion of the Derbyshire Regiment, and in the fight which followed Lieutenant-Colonel Baird-Douglas and thirty-five others were killed on the British side, while one hundred and four were wounded on the same side and all the rest except six were made prisoners. On hearing of this Boer raid Lord Roberts sent off Lord Kitchener, who united his force with Lord Methuen's force at Vredefort Road Station on June 10th; and the combined forces marched the next day to the Rhenoster River, where Lord Methuen completely defeated the Boers under General De Wet. The British lost one man killed and eighteen wounded. The wounded of the Derbyshire Regiment were found in the Yeomanry Hospital, which was captured by the Boers and recaptured by Lord Methuen. On June 11th fifteen hundred Boers surrendered to General Brabant in the Ficksburg district of the Orange River Colony. In the last engagement at Rooikrantz, Commandant Olivier was killed and General De Villiers mortally wounded on the Boer side.

**General
Buller's
Suc-
cesses
in Natal.**

In Natal, General Buller's forces were still successful. On June 6th General Coke seized Van Wyk Hill; whereupon the British artillery was brought up, and, under cover of a heavy cannonade, the British under General Hildyard assailed and carried all the spurs of the hill between Botha's Nek and Inkwelo. The attack was carried out with immense dash. The British loss was two killed and fourteen wounded. On Sunday night, June 10th, General Buller's force concentrated on the Klip River at the junction with Gansvlei Spruit. The Boers retired as soon as the heavy British cannon opened fire. The British loss was six killed and seven wounded. The next day General Buller forced Almond's Nek, the Second Dorsetshire Regiment carrying the Boer position at the point of the bayonet. The British loss was about one hundred. That night the Boers completely evacuated Laing's Nek and Majuba Hill. The Boer invaders were thus driven from Natal, and the Wakkerstroom district of the Transvaal submitted to General Buller. Queen Victoria congratulated General Buller and his troops for driving the Boer invaders from Natal.

**New
Ministry
in Cape
Colony.**

Sir Alfred Milner warned miners and others against a premature return to the Transvaal. A Ministerial crisis occurred at Cape Town. The majority of the Afrikaner Bond in the Cape Colony Parliament opposed Prime Minister Schreiner's intention to proceed with rigor against the Dutch rebels of Cape Colony, and on June 13th Mr.

Schreiner tendered the resignation of his Ministry to Sir Alfred Milner. His resignation was accepted; and a new Ministry came into power in Cape Colony, headed by Sir John Gordon Sprigg, who was supported by Mr. Schreiner, Mr. Solomon and their followers in carrying out the policy opposed by the Bond members.

In a speech at Glasgow on June 7th Sir Henry Campbell-Bannerman said that a military occupation of the Boer states for a considerable time must follow the war, but the final settlement must be based largely on the judgment of the British subjects in Cape Colony, belonging to the British and Dutch races. In a speech at Oxford on June 9th John Morley said he never could accept the view that the war was made just and inevitable by the Boer ultimatum, and if the present British High Commissioner for South Africa should proceed to the Transvaal to arrange a settlement it would be the last link in a chain of folly that had marked the whole affair from beginning to end, the whole transaction being one of injustice and wrong on the British side.

**Speeches
of
Liberal
Leaders.**

On June 8th Lord Roberts announced that over two thousand stand of arms had been surrendered in Pretoria and that these were utilized for the released prisoners, who numbered one hundred and forty-eight officers and three thousand and thirty-nine privates. General Baden-Powell occupied Rustenburg on June 15th and arrived at Pretoria on the 18th. He received the surrender of about six hundred Boers and captured two hundred and thirty prisoners. On June 16th Klerksdorp surrendered to General Hunter, and on the 18th Krügersdorp surrendered to the same commander. While escorting a large convoy to Heilbron on June 19th, General Lord Methuen routed a Boer force under Christian De Wet. On June 20th Hutton's Mounted Infantry captured two cannon from the Boers under Du Plessis. The Boer force under General Louis Botha retired toward Middelburg. On June 14th the Boers attacked a construction train north of the Rhenoster River, but were driven off by some mounted troops. On the same day the Boers attacked Ficksburg, but were repulsed. President Krüger retired to Alkmaar, near Nelspruit.

**British
Captures.**

On June 13, 1900, an official bulletin announced the complete evacuation of Natal by the Boers with the advance of General Buller's force into the south-eastern portion of the Transvaal, also the restoration of Lord Roberts's railway and telegraphic communication through the Orange River Colony.

**Complete
Boer
Evacua-
tion of
Natal.**

By the middle of June, 1900, the war had passed into the guerrilla stage, the Boer armies having broken up into numerous small bands and there being no prospect of raising and equipping a large Boer army; and thereafter, for the next two years of the war, the war bulletins were mainly accounts of skirmishes and raids, particularly in

**Guerrilla
Warfare.**

the Orange River Colony, with the slow and steady but sure advance of the principal British armies. In several large districts the Boers were bringing in their arms and formally accepting British sovereignty, some sullenly and others with welcome. In the northern part of the Orange River Colony bands of armed Boers, numbering several hundred, in some instances one or two thousand, were moving about quickly and by sudden dashes at various points occasionally capturing British convoys or small British detachments. The small Boer bands were reported as being directed by Commandant Christian DeWet, and the Boer leaders made them the theme for glowing announcements of Boer victories. In the meantime the other Boer forces in the eastern portion of the Orange River Colony were endeavoring to avoid being surrounded by the British forces under Lord Methuen and Generals Rundle and Brabant, together numbering thirty-five thousand men with fifty cannon. The Boer raiding bands were active and harassing. In the western portion of the Transvaal a small British force under General Baden-Powell was establishing order, already having received the surrender of more than a thousand stand of arms and the submission of many Boers, among whom was Piet Krüger, son of the fugitive Transvaal President. East of Pretoria a small Boer force under Commandant Louis Botha was in possession of some very strong defensive positions.

**British
Weari-
ness.**

The British people now grew tired of the war and lost interest in the struggle; the continuance of the contest in its guerrilla character being a source of great disappointment to the British tax-paying public, who had hoped for the restoration of peace and order in South Africa upon the British occupation of Johannesburg and Pretoria and the general collapse of the organized resistance of the Boers.

**Loss of
Interest
in the
Struggle.**

The change in the character of the struggle from a conflict of great organized armies to a petty guerrilla warfare of numerous small bands of Boer raiders was followed by a loss of public interest in the struggle throughout the civilized world; the people of Europe and America, who had viewed the brilliant military operations of the large opposing armies with absorbing interest, paying little attention to the innumerable raids of small Boer guerrilla bands and the petty conflicts between them and the British troops; though the pro-Boer sympathy throughout the world had not abated.

**Situation
in the
Trans-
vaal.**

On June 23d General Ian Hamilton occupied Heidelberg, and on the same day General Sir Redvers Henry Buller reached Standerton. These two British generals were then coöperating to cut off all communication between the Boer forces in the Transvaal and those in the Orange River Colony. General Botha, with the foreign legion in the Boer service, twelve hundred strong, was in the vicinity of the Pienaars

River. General Ian Hamilton was suffering from a broken collar bone.

In the Orange River Colony the British had thirty-five thousand troops between Ficksburg and Lindley, and these were distributed in camps about three miles apart. The Boer lines between Ficksburg and Bethlehem were very strong. Generals Rundle and Brabant were engaged in successful operations against the Boers near Gembokfontein on June 22d and 23d. General Clements defeated a Boer force near Winburg on June 24th. The Boer commando under De Villiers in Cape Colony surrendered to General Sir Charles Warren, thus crippling the Dutch rebellion in that colony.

The Transvaal government was now in desperate financial straits. Provisions were scarce at Pretoria and Lord Roberts was feeding many Boer families who fought against him. Mr. Burdett-Coutts made serious charges against the transport and hospital service of the British military establishment, and a great deal of correspondence was published thereon. The Princess of Wales sent out twenty nurses from the London Hospital to the war. The Prince and Princess of Wales fitted up a farmhouse near Sandringham for invalid officers.

On June 26th and 27th two attacks were made on Lord Roberts's line of communications, but both attacks were repulsed with small British loss. General Brabant and Major Grenfell had some sharp fighting with a strong Boer force near Winburg, the Boers retreating toward Lindley. On June 26th there was severe fighting between General Paget's force and a Boer detachment. On the same day a British convoy of stores for the Lindley garrison was attacked by the Boers, but the convoy safely reached Lindley. General Lord Methuen captured eight thousand sheep and five hundred cattle, which the Boers had seized. He also captured the commander of De Wet's scouts and Andries Wessels, the head of the Afrikander Bond. On June 28th the Boers attacked the railway terminus at Springs, but were repulsed and routed by the Canadians. General Clements's flying column had a hot engagement about five or six miles from Senekal on the Lindley road. General Clements practically united with General Paget after encountering much opposition from the Boers on the line of his march. General Hunter's division, after crossing the Vaal River, reached Frankfort on July 1st, and the next day was joined by General Hector A. McDonald's brigade. On the same day General Clery occupied Greylingstad, thus completely hemming in the Boers. On July 3d General Paget drove the Boers from a strong position near Leeuwkop. On July 4th the Boers made a desperate effort to retake Ficksburg, the fighting lasting an hour. As the Boers threatened Lord Roberts's railway communications, Lord Roberts sent General Hutton on July 5th

Situation
in the
Orange
River
Colony.

Boer
Straits.

British
Hospital
Service.

British
Forces
and Boer
Guerrilla
Bands.

to reinforce Colonel Mahon and to drive the Boers east of Bronkerspruit, and these orders were carried out during the next two days. On July 8th the Boers attacked General Hutton, but were repulsed very easily. On July 7th the Boers attacked Rustenburg, but were repulsed and routed with heavy loss. The Boers were making demonstrations against the railway between Johannesburg and Pretoria, but the British forces were prepared to resist any attack. On July 7th the Boers took Bethlehem, but by noon they were in full retreat. The Boers also evacuated their position near Senekal. All the members of President Steyn's government had now surrendered to the British, except President Steyn himself. Lord Roberts was now joined by General Buller in Pretoria. About eight hundred British prisoners were released and put over the Natal frontier from Reitz. Many Transvaal Boers, with large herds, were removing to Portuguese East Africa. It was rumored that President Steyn had fled to the mountains. Complete railway communication was restored between Pretoria and Natal.

Other
Items.

Sir Alfred Milner issued a warning that after the public begin returning to the Transvaal it will require six weeks or two months before all the refugees can return there, and that no one should leave England for the Transvaal until then. Victoria Crosses for bravery in South Africa were conferred upon Captain E. B. Towse, Captain C. Fitz-Clarence, Sir John Millbank, Sergeant H. R. Martineau and Trooper H. E. Ramsden. Captain the Hon. T. A. Brassey was appointed Acting Civil Commissioner for Her Majesty's government in Pretoria. The transport *Dilwara* left Southampton, England, on July 6th, with almost thirteen hundred British officers and privates for South Africa. On July 11th the Mansion-house War Fund amounted to nine hundred and seventy-eight thousand six hundred pounds.

British
Reverse.

On July 11th the British sustained a reverse eighteen miles from Pretoria, when a Boer force attacked Nital Nek, which was held by a small British garrison; a squadron of Scots Greys, two horse artillery cannon and about ninety troops of the Lincolnshire Regiment being captured, and Colonel Roberts, who was in command, being wounded and taken prisoner. Lieutenant Conolly, of the Scots Greys, and Second Lieutenant Pilkington, of the Royal Dragoons, were killed; the casualties being heavy on both sides.

British
Successes.

A simultaneous Boer attack on the British outposts near Derdepoort was checked until the British troops retired upon their supports, and General Smith-Dorrien defeated the Boers with heavy loss at Krügersdorp. On the same day Colonel Mahon, after being reinforced by General French's brigade, took all the Boer positions near Reitfontein. Lord Dundonald captured a Boer camp belonging to the

detachment which blew up Leeuwspruit bridge. On July 18th a patrol of Australian bushmen defeated a Boer detachment. On the same day General Clery cannonaded the Boer position in his front, driving the Boers eastward, after which he returned to Vaal, near Greylingstad. On July 16th the Boers made an unsuccessful attack on the British left flank; the positions held by the Royal Irish Fusiliers, the New Zealanders and the Canadians being defended most gallantly, and the Boers losing heavily in their repeated assaults. A Boer force of fifteen hundred men broke through the cordon formed by General Hunter's and General Rundle's divisions between Bethlehem and Ficksburg, the Boers retreating toward Lindley and being pursued closely. General Lord Methuen left Krügersdorp to clear the country between that town and Rustenburg.

Sir Alfred Milner appointed a commission to report on the direct losses suffered by the people of Cape Colony in consequence of the war. An arrangement was now made for the emigration of ten thousand Boers to the United States of America. On July 19th General Lord Methuen occupied Heckpoort, after which he continued his march and engaged the Boer rear-guard near Zandsfontein on the 20th. Early on the 21st he dispersed the Boers at Oliphant's Nek with heavy loss, thus relieving Rustenburg, after which his force joined hands with that under General Baden-Powell. On July 19th General Broadwood had a sharp fight with a Boer commando at Palmietfontein. On the 21st the Boers attacked the British post at Railhead, thirteen miles east of Heidelberg, surrounding the Royal Dublin Fusiliers, but were driven off. On July 22d about four hundred and fifty British troops under Colonels Airey and Lussington drove one thousand Boers from a very strong position at Majato Pass and dispersed them with considerable loss. The Boers cut the telegraph wires and the main railway north of Horningspruit, and General De Wet crossed the railway and went north-eastward. A British supply train, with one hundred Scotch Highlanders, was captured by the Boers. On July 22d General De Wet's force was at Vredefort, being pursued closely by General Broadwood, who arrived at Vredefort on the 24th, after capturing five of General De Wet's wagons. The Boers captured two officers and two hundred privates of the Royal Welsh Fusiliers with a supply train. Lord Roberts now began his advance against the Boers. General Ian Hamilton reached Rustfontein, near Bronkhorst Spruit, on July 22d, and so completely commanded the Boer line of retreat that the Boers abandoned their strong position in front of General Pole-Carew's division, a brigade from which advanced the next day to Elands River Station without opposition. On the 24th the main British force marched to Bronkhorst Spruit without opposition, while

Progress
of the
Guerrilla
Warfare.

Generals French and Hutton drove back Boer detachments and took several prisoners.

Other
Events.

On July 19th Sir Alfred Milner opened the Cape Colony Parliament. Mr. Merriman's resolution for the immediate repeal of martial law in the rebellious districts was opposed strongly by Mr. Rose-Innes and by Mr. Solomon, the late Attorney-General of Cape Colony. Ex-Chief Justice Kotze, of the Transvaal Republic, was appointed Attorney-General of the British colony of Rhodesia. Mr. Wolmarans, of the Transvaal, was arrested at Pretoria after a quantity of arms and bar gold had been found concealed in his house.

Decorations and
Hospital
Investigation.

Victoria Crosses were conferred upon Captain M. F. M. Meiklejohn, of the Gordon Highlanders; Second Lieutenant John Norwood, of the Fifth Dragoon Guards; Sergeant-Major (now Quartermaster and Honorary Lieutenant) William Robertson, of the Gordon Highlanders; the decorations being for services in Natal. The British Hospital Commission met on July 24th and left for South Africa on August 4th. On July 25th evidence was heard from the Rev. W. H. Oxford, Sir Howard Vincent, Dr. Watson Cheyne and a trooper of the London City Imperial Volunteers.

Prinsloo's
Surrender.

On July 26th General Hector A. MacDonald fought an all-day engagement with a Boer detachment nine miles from Naauwpoort, and effectually blocked Naauwpoort Nek against the Boer wagon traffic. General Hunter advanced toward Naauwpoort, and on July 28th he drove the Boers from two strong positions. The next day General Prinsloo applied for an armistice. General Hunter replied that unconditional surrender only would be accepted, and accordingly General Prinsloo surrendered unconditionally at Fouriesburg, with nine hundred and eighty-six troops, one thousand four hundred and thirty-two horses, nine hundred and fifty-five rifles and one Krupp 9-pounder cannon; and on the 31st twelve hundred more Boers surrendered to General Hunter. Three Boer commandants surrendered to General Bruce Hamilton, who had collected twelve hundred rifles, six hundred and fifty ponies and an Armstrong cannon. Commandant Olivier, with five cannon and a number of Boers, broke away in the direction of Harri-smith. In an accident to a British supply train near Frederickstad, on July 29th, thirteen men were killed and thirty-nine wounded, some of them very severely.

Other
Surrenders.

British
Activity.

The Boers were now very much disheartened, and there was a growing animosity among them toward President Krüger and the Transvaal officials. When General Hunter occupied Fouriesburg on July 26th he found President Steyn's wife there. On July 27th General French occupied Middelburg. General Buller opened the railway to Heidelberg, thus giving Lord Roberts through communication with Natal.

General Clery's division guarded the railway line from Standerton to Heidelberg.

Mr. Rose-Innes's Treason Bill was being debated in the Cape Colony Parliament. The South African Hospitals Commission visited Netley Hospital on July 27th and examined about seventy patients. On the 30th evidence was given by Captain Cousens, C. I. V.; Mr. Murray-Guthrie, M. P.; Dr. Russell, senior surgeon to the Kimberley Hospital; Dr. Treves and Dr. Arthur Conan Doyle. On July 31st Mr. Burdett-Coutts, M. P., was the first witness and was followed by Sir W. MacCormac. On August 1st the witnesses included the surgeon-in-chief to the Langman Private Hospital, Mr. Rudyard Kipling, Colonel Mulcahy, of the Royal Army Clothing Department, and Lieutenant-Colonel Barrow, principal medical officer of No. 9 General Hospital at Bloemfontein. The Victoria Cross was conferred upon Captain Conwyn Mansel-Jones, of the West Yorkshire Regiment, for gallantry in Natal.

**Hospital
Investi-
gation.**

On July 31st a Boer force attacked the British under General Smith-Dorrien, encamped near Frederickstad, but were routed before General Lord Methuen's arrival to reinforce General Smith-Dorrien, the London Imperial Battalion and the Suffolk and Buckingham Yeomanry bearing the brunt of the Boer attack. On August 2d General Knox attacked the Boers on Rhenoster Kop, putting them to flight and capturing five wagons and a lot of cattle. In the night of the same day the Boers derailed and attacked a train twenty miles south of Kroonstad, four men being killed, three wounded and more than forty being taken prisoners, but all the prisoners except two officers were released afterward by the Boers. The Boers who wrecked the train were pursued by British mounted infantry, who killed three and wounded several of them at Holfontein.

**Rout of
Boer
Guerrilla
Bands.**

General Hunter reported that three thousand three hundred and forty-eight Boers thus far had surrendered to him. He had taken three thousand and forty-six horses and three cannon. Commandant Olivier had fled from the Bethlehem hills with about fifteen hundred Boer troops, and did not consider himself bound by General Prinsloo's offer to surrender his whole force and resolved to remain in the field against the British, taking up a position near Harrismith and being pursued by General Rundle's force.

**Olivier's
Flight.**

On August 3d a British expedition started from Standerton against a Boer commando on the Klip River, the Boer leaders having compelled Boers who had surrendered to return to the Boer service. This Boer commando was dispersed by the British, who burned the house of one of the Boer leaders. On August 4th Harrismith surrendered to General Hector A. MacDonald, and there now was railway communica-

**British
Pursuit
of Boer
Guerrilla
Bands.**

tion between Harrismith and Natal. On August 5th General Lord Kitchener, who was then in the Orange River Colony, was reinforced by a strong detachment of Brabant's cavalry and by the Canadian regiment. On August 7th General Ian Hamilton left Rustenburg, bringing General Baden-Powell's force with him. On August 6th Commandant De Wet began to cross the Vaal River, and the next day Lord Kitchener went in pursuit. On the right bank of the river General Lord Methuen came into contact with De Wet's advance guard. As western Cape Colony was now pacified, General Sir Charles Warren was returning home. On August 8th three hundred Boer prisoners, of whom one hundred and ten were Irish Americans, Germans and Hollanders, arrived at Colombo, in Ceylon. On August 7th General Buller's force moved northward from Paardekop and captured the strong position held by the Boers under Commandant Christopher Botha, the Boers keeping up a running fight in a north-easterly direction, the British loss being about twenty-five.

Plot
against
Lord
Roberts.

On August 10th Lord Roberts made known that a plot to kidnap him and carry him off had been discovered at Pretoria. The ring-leaders and all the other conspirators were arrested. Besides intending to kidnap Lord Roberts, the conspirators had planned to assassinate all the leading British officers in Pretoria. All the conspirators implicated had taken the oath of neutrality.

British
Pursuit of
De Wet.

Lords Kitchener and Methuen were still pursuing Commandant De Wet. On August 7th Lord Methuen engaged a part of De Wet's force near Venterskroon, driving them from a series of hills, the British losing seven killed. On August 8th Lord Kitchener crossed the Vaal River. The next day Lord Methuen fought a rear-guard action near Buffelshoek and captured six wagons and two ambulances. The Boers fled before the forces of Lords Kitchener and Methuen, and early on the 11th they attempted to cross the railway at Welverdiend Station, where they were engaged by General Smith-Dorrien's force. The next day De Wet blew up three of his wagons, and sixteen British prisoners held by De Wet made their escape. These escaped prisoners stated that President Steyn was confined in De Wet's camp and was under surveillance. De Wet was obliged to throw away some ammunition and to leave behind him thirty exhausted horses, and one of his cannon was captured by Lord Methuen on August 12th. Lord Methuen shelled the main Boer convoy effectively. Lords Kitchener and Methuen were then at some distance from the telegraph line. On August 7th General Buller occupied Amersfoort, and two days later he arrived at Klippart Drift, the main Boer force retreating before the British advance. On August 10th and 11th the retreating Boers passed through Ermelo on their way to Machadodorp, and soon after-

ward General Buller occupied Ermelo. On the 12th a field cornet and one hundred and eighty-two Boer soldiers of the Standerton commando surrendered to the British.

On August 5th General Sir Frederick Carrington's force attempted to relieve the British garrison at Elands River Station, which was besieged by the Boers. After losing twenty-one killed, wounded and missing, General Carrington's small force retired to Mafeking. Thus far the small British garrison at Elands River Station had lost sixty-seven men in killed and wounded. General Carrington was ordered to march to Zeerust at once, and General Ian Hamilton was to reinforce Carrington as soon as possible. The Elands River Station garrison consisted of about one hundred and forty Bushmen, eighty Rhodesians and eighty Rhodesian volunteers. General Hunter announced that four thousand one hundred and forty Boers were made prisoners in the Bethlehem and Harrismith districts, most of them being then on the way to Ceylon. The British also captured three cannon, over four thousand horses and ponies and large quantities of ammunition. General Rundle arrested a Boer commandant, three field cornets and one hundred and thirty armed Boers at Harrismith. The Boers murdered Colonel Helyar, who had been reported missing on July 31st. After being pursued closely by Lord Kitchener and other British generals, De Wet escaped northward. He appeared before Commando's Nek and invited General Baden-Powell to surrender, but changed his route when he found the place strongly defended. On August 16th Lord Kitchener relieved Colonel Hore's post on the Elands River, after the garrison had lost twelve men. The next day General Ian Hamilton's column occupied Oliphant's Nek, in the Mageliesberg, capturing two Krupp cannon and three wagons. General Ian Hamilton's advance troops, under Colonel Mahon, fought the Boers on Sunday, August 19th, at Roode Kopjes, on the west bank of the Crocodile River, losing only a few men in killed and wounded and capturing two wagons and seven prisoners. General Rundle announced from Harrismith that six hundred and eighty-four Boers had surrendered to him in that district up to Sunday, August 19th. Lord Roberts issued a new proclamation intimating that thenceforth more severe measures would be taken to punish acts of treachery and bad faith on the part of the Boers, such offenses having become intolerable.

After about a week's trial by court-martial, on the charge of plotting to abduct Lord Roberts and murder other British officers, Lieutenant Hans Cordua, of the Staats Artillery, was found guilty on all counts and was sentenced to be shot. Lord Roberts approved the finding of the court-martial, and Lieutenant Cordua was shot in the morning of August 24th. The Treason Bill was passed in the Cape Colony

Various
British
Operations.

Execution
of Lieutenant
Cordua.

Parliament by a vote of forty-eight to thirty-eight, all the opposition of the Dutch members of Parliament proving futile.

**British
Success
over
Botha.**

On August 24th the British under General Pole-Carew occupied Belfast; and Lord Roberts proceeded thither the next day and met Generals Pole-Carew, Buller and French. The British began a combined movement against the concentrated Boer commandos under Commandant Louis Botha; and on Sunday, August 26th, fighting occurred over a perimeter of almost thirty miles. The British made slow progress on account of the great extent and difficult nature of the country, but on that day they had made a satisfactory advance and won a decided success. The work fell wholly on General Buller's troops and resulted in the capture of Bergendal, a very strong position two miles north-west of Dalmanutha Railway Station. The Enniskillen Fusiliers and the Second Battalion of the Rifle Brigade constituted the attacking party, the latter suffering most, a good many Boers being killed, some on a rocky knoll by lyddite shells. The British captured a "Pom Pom." General Buller managed his troops very skillfully, and the combination of artillery and infantry fire was most effective. General Buller's advance troops occupied Machadodorp on August 28th, the Boers retreating northward.

**British
Advance
on Lyden-
burg.**

At his headquarters at Belfast, on September 3d, Lord Roberts issued a proclamation, under queen's warrant dated July 4, 1900, annexing the Transvaal to British South Africa. The Boers released over seventeen hundred British prisoners at Nooitgedacht on August 25th. After evacuating Machadodorp the Boers were pursued and were pressed so closely that they abandoned four wagons. In a message on September 1st Lord Roberts stated that General Buller was encamped on the north bank of the Crocodile River, resting in his march from Helvetia to Lydenburg. The Boer rear-guard retired before him without offering any resistance. In his march toward Lydenburg, General Buller lost one man killed and fourteen men wounded. As the Boers held a strong position in his front, which he could not flank, Lord Roberts sent a column on September 3d along the direct road from Belfast to Dulstroom to reinforce General Buller. General Ian Hamilton drove a small Boer force before him and had arrived at Swart Kopjes on September 3d. The Boers invested Ladybrand, but they abandoned the siege on the approach of a British relief column. The British met with a number of minor successes in various quarters at this time.

**Procla-
mations
of Lord
Roberts
and Sir
Alfred
Milner.**

On September 5th Lord Roberts issued another proclamation to the inhabitants of the Orange River Colony, reminding them that they were now subjects of Queen Victoria and warning them of the penalties which those who continued in arms would incur, especially those who

had taken the oath of allegiance. General Baden-Powell arrived in Cape Town on September 7th and was received with tremendous enthusiasm. He was appointed Chief of the Transvaal Police. Sir Alfred Milner issued a proclamation in which he stated that every concession granted by the South African Republic would be considered on its merits, the British government reserving full freedom of action. The commission which was to inquire into the subject held its first meeting on October 1st.

On September 8th General Buller attacked a Boer position on a precipitous ridge, fifteen hundred feet high and very difficult to flank, as it was cleft at various points by deep ravines. Under cover of the British artillery the Boer position was carried by the Devonshire Regiment, the Royal Irish and the Royal Scots. The Boers retreated over a narrow causeway, after suffering great loss in killed and wounded. The British loss was thirteen killed and twenty-five wounded. General Buller's forces finally occupied Lydenburg after his great victory on September 8th, General Ian Hamilton's flanking movement being entirely successful. The next day, Sunday, September 9th, General Buller advanced farther and occupied the Mauchberg, after overcoming considerable resistance from the Boers. He then moved against Spitzkop. Lord Roberts now returned to Pretoria.

**Capture
of Lyden-
burg.**

On September 8th Lord Methuen moved out of Mafeking, and attacked and routed a Boer force the next day, Sunday, September 9th, taking thirty prisoners, twenty-two wagons, two heliographs, some horses and forty thousand rounds of ammunition.

**Methuen's
Victory.**

President Krüger and some of the officials of his government arrived at Lorenzo Marques on the night of September 11th and took up their quarters with Mr. Pott, the Transvaal consul. It was said that they intended to sail for Europe in a fortnight on the German mail steamer *Herzog* and that President Krüger had obtained six months' leave of absence. It was stated that President Steyn was returning to the Orange River Colony. On September 11th Lord Roberts testified before the Hospitals Commission at Pretoria.

**Move-
ments of
Presi-
dents
Krüger
and
Steyn.**

On September 13th Lord Roberts issued a proclamation in English and Dutch, at Machadodorp, to the people of the Transvaal Colony, saying that President Krüger's flight from the Transvaal and the severance of his official connection therefrom should make it clear to his fellow-countrymen that it is useless for them to continue the struggle, as the war had degenerated into irregular and irresponsible operations, except in a small area, and Lord Roberts will use every means in his power to end this guerrilla warfare. President Krüger, who accepted a passage to Europe on a Dutch vessel, proclaimed Lord Roberts's proclamation null and void.

**Lord
Roberts's
Procla-
mation
to the
Trans-
vaal.**

British
Succes-
ses.

On September 11th General Hart occupied Potchefstroom, capturing many Boers. The next day Colonel Douglas captured thirty-nine prisoners, ten wagons and some sheep and oxen near Lichtenburg. Lord Roberts reported two cases of Boer treachery where British soldiers were fired upon from farms over which the white flag was flying. General Hector A. MacDonald defeated the Boers near Tafel Kop, on the Vet River, capturing thirty-one wagons, two hundred and seventy trek oxen, large quantities of ammunition and supplies and seven prisoners. On September 13th General Ian Hamilton's column arrived at Goodwaan, the Boers retiring from a formidable position. On the same day General French occupied Barberton and released eighty-two British prisoners, of whom twenty-three were officers, at the same time capturing over one hundred Boers, many Mauser rifles, much ammunition, fifty wagons, forty-three locomotives and some rolling stock. General French's advance cavalry from Barberton afterwards found fifty more locomotives at Avoca Railway Station. On September 13th General Buller's troops occupied Spitzkop, where they found three hundred thousand pounds of Boer supplies and about three hundred boxes of Martini-Henry ammunition. About thirty Boers surrendered, and General Buller reported that most of those who confronted him were mercenaries and Cape Colony Dutch rebels. General Buller's guides found one hundred tons of foodstuffs and three hundred thousand rounds of ammunition in a mill belonging to Glynn's Lydenburg Mine. General Paget arrived at Hebron, north-west of Pretoria, on September 14th, after taking ten prisoners and one thousand cattle. The British garrison at Schweizerreneke was surrounded by Boers, but was intrenched strongly. A British relief force was on its way from Vryburg, thirty-six miles distant, for the relief of the beleaguered garrison.

Other
Items.

Lord Roberts arrived at Nelspruit on September 18th. Lord Kitchener testified before the Hospitals Commission on September 14th. The Victoria Cross was awarded to Sergeant Arthur Richardson, of Lord Strathcona's Corps, for bravery in the engagement at Wolve Spruit. It was announced that representatives of the colonial corps serving under Lord Roberts were to be allowed to visit England as the guests of the nation, and the queen hoped to present them with colors. On September 10th the Mansion-house Fund amounted to one million seven thousand three hundred and fifty pounds.

Boer
Flight.

Lord Roberts stated that of the three thousand Boers who retreated to Komati Poort about seven hundred crossed into Portuguese East Africa and others had deserted in various directions. The "Long Toms" and several pieces of field artillery, among which were some that the Boers had captured from the British, were destroyed by the

Boers before they had fled. It was said that all that was now left of the Boer military forces were a few marauding bands of guerrilla raiders.

Lord Methuen captured a Boer convoy, among which was one of the 15-pounder cannon which General Buller had lost in the great battle of Colenso on December 15, 1899, while twenty-six wagons, eight thousand cattle and four thousand sheep were also captured. Over eighty Boers surrendered to General Buller, who also captured twenty prisoners, two hundred rifles, some wagons and much ammunition. On September 22d a Boer force attacked the Elands River Railway Station, but were repulsed; and during their absence their camp was captured by General Paget, who took twenty-five hundred cattle, six thousand sheep, fifty horses, twenty rifles, some ammunition and twelve prisoners. This Boer commando afterwards was engaged by Plumer's Bushmen, who captured eleven prisoners, seven hundred and fifty cattle and sixteen hundred sheep. General Pole-Carew, with the Guards, occupied Komati Poort on September 24th, taking a large amount of rolling stock and locomotives, along with some truckloads of "Long Tom" ammunition. General Pole-Carew found a "Long Tom" 98-pounder and a Creuzot cannon destroyed. He also found thirty rifles, thirty boxes of small-arm ammunition, forty "Long Tom" shells and one hundred and thirty boxes of other shells. There was an immense amount of rolling stock on the Main and Selati lines, most of it in good order. During a short march from Krügersdorp, General Barton captured nine prisoners, seven hundred and twenty trek oxen, nine hundred and fifty cattle, one thousand sheep, thirty-four ponies and seventeen wagons.

On September 23d the Boers on the frontier of Portuguese East Africa destroyed their "Long Toms" and then crossed the frontier and surrendered to the Portuguese, who sent the entire Boer force, three thousand men, under escort to Delagoa Bay. General Ian Hamilton found several cannon in the Crocodile River, near Hector Spruit, most of them being destroyed. These cannon included two 12-pounders belonging to Q Battery of Royal Horse Artillery, two 75-mm. Creuzot cannon, two 3-in. Krupp cannon, one 77-mm. Vickers-Maxim mounted cannon, two "Pom Poms," one 7-pdr. r. m. l. mountain cannon and three muzzle-loading mountain cannon.

There was now no organized opposition in the southern portion of the Orange River Colony. The Hospitals Commission was taking evidence and visiting hospitals in Natal, and seemed resolved to arrive at the truth. Lord Roberts stated that over four hundred persons had been arrested for being implicated in the Johannesburg plot of July

**British
Captures.**

**Boers in
Portu-
guese
East
Africa.**

**Boer
Cannon.**

**Boer
Plot.**

14th, of whom seventy-five afterward were released on being vouched for by their respective consuls. The remainder and very few other foreigners were expelled from South Africa.

British
Suc-
cesses.

General Hart's column returned to Krügersdorp from the vicinity of Potchefstroom, where it had cleared the country of bands of marauders. On September 26th one of General Rundle's brigades captured one of the cannon which the Boers had taken at Nicholson's Nek, two wagons and sixty-five thousand rounds of Martini-Henry ammunition. On the same day seventeen officers and three hundred and nineteen privates of the Royal Canadian Regiment left Pretoria en route for Canada. On September 27th the Boers attacked a detachment of General Paget's force at Pienaars River Station, but were routed after three hours' fighting. General Paget then granted a five days' armistice to Commandant Erasmus to enable him to send to Komati Poort to ascertain whether the report of the collapse of the Boer army was correct, agreeing to surrender if the report were confirmed.

British
and
Portu-
guese
Courte-
sies.

On October 2d Commandant Dirksen surrendered when he learned that President Krüger had crossed the frontier into Portuguese East Africa. A few days before—September 28th—General Pole-Carew held a parade of all the British troops at Komati Poort in honor of the birthday of the King of Portugal. Lord Roberts sent a telegram of congratulation to the Portuguese king. General Pole-Carew obtained ample supplies from Lorenzo Marques, where the Portuguese officials were most obliging.

British
Move-
ments.

Colonel Dalgety's mounted British Colonials and Colonel De Lisle's new force were coöperating for the purpose of surrounding General De Wet, who was said to be south-west of Kopjes Station with nine hundred Boer troops and three cannon. General Settle relieved the beleaguered British garrison of Schweizerrenneke. The British reoccupied Heilbron, Reitz and Lindley. The Boers suffered some loss in slight encounters near Lindley and Heilbron. The British reoccupied Rustenburg on September 26th. On October 1st a convoy of twenty-two wagons proceeding to Vryheid under escort of sixty mounted British troops was attacked by Boers near De Jagers Drift. Twelve men of the escort escaped. That night the Boers derailed a train near Pan Station, killing five men.

Other
Items.

General Baden-Powell arrived at Pretoria to command the Transvaal and Orange River Colony Police. The Treason Bill was read a third time in the Cape Colony Legislative Council by a vote of twelve to eight. Mr. Chamberlain stated that, as the Transvaal and the Orange River Colony had been annexed to the British dominions, he did not anticipate that there would be any formal proclamation of peace. The Victoria Cross was awarded to Captain W. E. Gordon, of

the Gordon Highlanders; Private C. Ward, of the Yorkshire Light Infantry, and Corporal J. Shaul, of the Highland Light Infantry.

General Buller returned to Lydenburg after a successful march from Spitzkop, having brought back six hundred cattle, four thousand sheep and one hundred and fifty wagonloads of supplies, and having destroyed one hundred and eighty-four thousand rounds of ammunition, while one hundred and nine Boers surrendered. General Hart's column lost three men killed, twenty-nine wounded and three missing during thirty-three days' marching and fighting in the Krügersdorp district; while a good many Boers were killed and wounded and ninety-six were taken prisoners, and many cattle, sheep, horses, wagons and supplies were captured. On October 2d a small Boer laager between Johannesburg and Pretoria was taken by a bayonet charge by the Dublin Fusiliers, nine Boers being taken prisoners. Lord Methuen fought two small engagements with the Boers on September 28th and arrived at Rustenburg on October 4th. The engine of a train conveying men of the Natal Brigade and the Coldstream Guards was derailed on October 5th by the explosion of a dynamite cartridge, but nobody was injured. The Colonial Division and Colonel De Lisle's force had a three days' fight with Commandant De Wet on October 5th, 6th and 7th, dislodging the Boers, who retreated in a demoralized condition. On October 6th a lieutenant and a corporal of the Royal Engineers were killed by an explosion at Pienaars River camp. For a few days Wepener, Rouxville and Ficksburg were occupied by Boer detachments which had been driven southward by British columns. General Clements cleared the country near Rustenburg and captured twenty-nine wagons, some rifles and over ten thousand rounds of small-arm ammunition. The commandant of a Boer scouting party which had been very active for some months surrendered with six of his men at Krügersdorp on October 6th, and confirmed the report that the Boers were now divided into many small bands without much fight in them. The number of Boers captured and surrendering was increasing daily and now amounted to almost sixteen thousand.

British
Successes.

The London City Imperial Volunteers sailed from Cape Town on October 7th, and on the same day Lord Roberts bade farewell to the Naval Brigade. The Hospitals Commission sailed for England. On October 6th General Buller left Lydenburg, going south. Cecil John Rhodes presided at a congress of the South African League on October 10th and suggested three points for the League's program—the supremacy of the British flag; equal civil and political rights, and friendly feeling toward the Dutch population. The Victoria Cross was bestowed on Sergeant H. Engleheart, of the Tenth Hussars, and Corporal F. Kirby, of the Royal Engineers.

Other
Items.

**Boer
Activity.**

On October 9th a train of cars was upset at Kaapmuiden, three men being killed and fifteen wounded. A party of British from Vlaktefontein proceeded to examine into the damage done, but was ambushed by Boers, losing two killed, seven wounded and eleven prisoners. On October 9th General Barton defeated the Boers north of Krügersdorp. After a fight near Reitsburg the Boers under De Wet were driven north of the Vaal, and many of them deserted their ranks. Several efforts, more or less successful, were made to interfere with the railway and telegraph communications. On October 11th Colonel Grove surprised a Boer laager near Frankfort, seven Boers being killed, nine wounded and eighteen made prisoners. On October 14th General Broadwood defeated the Boers near Rustenburg, capturing fourteen wagons and five prisoners. Generals Broadwood and Clements were still sending in prisoners from the Mageliesberg district. About the middle of October General French started from Machadodorp towards Heidelberg, to clear a part of the country previously not visited. The mounted infantry under Colonel Mahon defeated the Boers on October 13th, losing eleven men killed and twenty-eight wounded. On October 14th General French occupied Carolina, and the Carabineers captured a Boer convoy on the way.

**Defeats
of Boer
Raiders.**

On October 12th an Australian patrol defeated the Boers near Otshoop, three Australians being wounded, one mortally, and another missing, while nine Boers were wounded. On October 14th General Settle entered Bloemhof, east of the Kimberley and Mafeking Railway, after capturing one hundred and fifty prisoners, and moved toward Hoopstad. Boers made raids near Kroonstad and Vryburg. On October 14th a small detachment of British police attacked Boer raiders at Wepener, killing seven and making two prisoners. On the same day Lieutenant Attfield and two men were killed and four wounded near Ventersburg Railroad Station. Boer raiding parties were committing depredations in the vicinity of Welverdiend, some of them being defeated on October 14th by Scottish Yeomanry Cavalry and the Royal Welsh Fusiliers, six Boers being killed and a large quantity of ammunition being captured. On October 13th Theunis Botha, brother of Commandant-General Botha, surrendered to the British at Volksrust. A Reuter dispatch from Pietermaritzburg on October 10th gave details of the capture of a Boer convoy near Blood River, attributing the disaster to the breakdown of a Hotchkiss cannon, of the mechanism of which the men of the Middlesex Regiment, to whom it had been entrusted, were ignorant.

**Other
Events.**

Lord Roberts requested the Viceroy of British India, as Colonel of Lumsden's Horse, to have the situations of members of that corps kept open a little longer, if possible. General Buller was now returning to

England. The South African League declared itself against the introduction of Asiatic labor into South Africa. Some startling disclosures were made at the sittings of the Transvaal Concessions Commission in Pretoria, on October 11th and 12th, as to the activity of the Netherlands Railway management; it being shown that they had made cannon and ammunition, destroyed bridges on British territory, paid their staff on commando and aided the Orange Free State with men and material.

On October 17th Lord Wolseley made a speech on the war, saying that during the last ten months the British people had disproved the statement that they were not a military nation; that they had sent two hundred and thirty-four thousand men and one hundred and seventy thousand horses a distance of seven thousand miles; that he did not believe that any other nation could have performed such a feat, and as to the mistakes made he said that no nation could send an army into the field without making mistakes. The British War Office in London issued a circular on the return of the British troops from South Africa. The Mansion-house War Fund amounted to one million and sixteen thousand pounds on October 17th.

**Lord
Wolse-
ley's
Speech.**

On the night of October 16th a party of Boers entered Jagersfontein; and the next morning a fight ensued, in which the British lost eleven killed and the Boers twenty-one. The Boers killed about ten unarmed natives with explosive bullets. The British mounted infantry of General Knox's command attacked and drove away about one hundred Boers from a position near the railway at Kroonstad with some loss. The Boers made a determined attack on the British at Fauresmith on October 10th, but were repulsed. On October 17th General Barton's force had a running fight with a Boer detachment near Frederickstad, driving the Boers from several positions. The Boers attacked a foraging party five miles from Frederickstad Station on October 18th, killing two men, wounding four and taking six prisoners. On October 21st General Barton's camp was assailed with great daring.

**British
Suc-
cesses.**

Lord Methuen arrived at Zeerust after fighting the Boer commandants Delarey and Lemmer for several days, the Boers losing heavily. The Boers attacked one of Methuen's convoys near Zeerust on October 20th, the British losing one killed and nine wounded. On the same day Lord Methuen attacked and dislodged a strong Boer detachment north of Zeerust, the British losing four killed and ten wounded. In conjunction with the Mafeking forces, General Erroll occupied Louw's Farm, where the Boers were driven back on October 16th, after a sharp fight. General Paget's troops surprised two Boer detachments west of the Pienaars River, capturing eighteen prisoners and large numbers of cattle and sheep. On October 20th General

**More
British
Suc-
cesses.**

French arrived at Bethel, having fought the Boers most of the way from Carolina, and having lost seven killed, twenty-seven wounded and five missing. On the same day General Settle arrived at Hoopstad, after being attacked and having sixteen men wounded.

Kruger's
Sail for
Europe.

President Kruger secretly embarked on the Dutch warship *Guelderland* on October 19th, and the vessel sailed for Europe the next day. His arrival at Marseilles and his enthusiastic receptions there and at Paris late in November will be dwelt upon fully hereafter.

Lord
Roberts's
Promise.

Lord Roberts announced that Boers who surrender voluntarily, having taken the oath of allegiance to Great Britain and having then been forced to violate that oath, will not be sent out of South Africa, but may return to their farms at the end of the war, and their stock, if taken, will be paid for. He stated that no promise would be made to Boers captured in battle. General Buller arrived at Durban, in Natal, on October 20th, where he made an interesting speech. On the 23d he reached Cape Town, whence he sailed for England the next day.

British
Captures.

Reports from various quarters of the Transvaal and the Orange River Colony indicated a continuance of a spirit of active hostility among the Boers. A Boer attack upon Jacobsdal, near Kimberley, on October 25th, was repulsed after severe fighting. The inhabitants who admitted the Boer soldiers into their houses at night had their houses destroyed. The Boer commandant Bosman was killed. General Paget's troops captured from the Boers nine wagons, sixty-five prisoners and a large number of cattle in three days. On October 25th General Paget was attacked by Boers with a convoy of cattle, but he repulsed the attack and took twenty-six prisoners and twenty-five thousand head of cattle, the "biggest single haul of the campaign." On October 24th Lords Methuen and Erroll and General Douglas made a combined attack upon the Boer position near Zeerust, dislodging and dispersing the Boers, who left six dead and wounded on the field, while twenty-eight Boers were made prisoners by the British, who also captured a large number of cattle, the British losing eight men wounded and one missing. On October 29th Lord Methuen marched from Buffelshoek, and General Douglas from Zeerust to Makokloof, during which they captured three prisoners and six wagons. The British captured a Boer laager near Krügerspoort. A Boer detachment occupied Philippolis for a short time; but the little British garrison held out, having three killed and eleven wounded before being relieved. A British lieutenant with fifty cavalry details fell into a Boer ambush between Springfontein and Philippolis, forty-three being captured.

Defeats of
De Wet.

In describing the ceremony of proclaiming the annexation of the Transvaal to British South Africa, on October 25th, Lord Roberts stated that it included a march of six thousand two hundred troops in

garrison, who all looked in the best of health. On the same day General Barton attacked a Boer force under General De Wet at Frederickstad and dispersed them in all directions, but lost thirteen killed and forty-five wounded. The Boers left many dead upon the field, while twenty-six Boers were taken prisoners and thirty wounded Boers were in the British hospitals. The fighting was at close quarters, the bayonet being used. Three Boers who held up their hands in token of surrender and then treacherously fired upon the British were tried by court-martial and sentenced to death. General French arrived at Heidelberg, having captured one hundred Boers during his march, besides taking a large quantity of cattle and stores. Because of the many Boer attacks on the railway near Ventersburg, General Hunter drove the Boers from Ventersburg on October 30th, Major Hanwell being killed. On October 27th General Knox defeated the Boers under De Wet while they were in retreat, inflicting considerable loss upon them and taking two cannon and three wagons. Another Boer ammunition wagon was blown up by a British shell. The British pursuit was stopped by darkness and a heavy storm. The British did not lose a man. A small British garrison at Holfontein Siding was surprised by a small Boer force on October 28th, but the Boers were able only to capture a few rifles and some ammunition before they were driven off. Four Boer laagers were discovered near Vryburg.

Lord Roberts stated that there was a growing disposition among property-owning Boers to coöperate with the British in establishing peace. Lord Roberts expected soon to leave South Africa for England, to assume the post of commander-in-chief of the British army upon the retirement of Lord Wolseley. On October 21st General Buller arrived at Bethlehem, just in time to prevent the British sick and wounded from being sent off by the Boer commandant, and the Boers were driven from their strong position near Bethlehem. On October 28th a Boer commando captured a British outpost of ninety men near Kroonstad, and afterward stopped and pillaged a mail train. The Boers afterward released their captives. On October 24th the Boers occupied Koffyfontein, but the British garrison was relieved on November 3d. Lord Kitchener made a night march from Lydenburg and surprised two Boer laagers, one of them under General Schalk-Berger. The Boers trekked northward and could not be pursued. On November 1st General Paget defeated the Boers south-west of Magato Pass, driving them from two strong positions. On the same day a night march by General Smith-Dorrien from Belfast ended successfully, a Boer laager at Witkop being surrounded by the British; but unfavorable weather prevented the British from following up their victory. The Boers captured a military traction engine drawing

More
British
Suc-
cesses.

trucks loaded with stones near Kimberley. After operating in the vicinity of Bloemhof and Hoopstad, General Settle's British column, three thousand strong, arrived at Kimberley, but left at once by rail for the south. Reuter telegrams reported the destruction of Ventersburg and the appearance of Boer raiding parties at Reddersburg, Bloemfontein, Maseru and near Vryburg.

**Interest-
ing Facts.**

Three Irish Americans who were carrying dispatches from President Steyn were captured at Lebombo. Lord Roberts stated that President Steyn was doing his utmost to encourage the Boers by deceiving them with false accounts of victories. The Eleventh Division of the British army was broken up, and a number of Australian troops left for home. Some startling disclosures were made before the Transvaal Concessions Commission concerning the wholesale bribery of prominent Transvaal officials and members of the Volksraad by the Dynamite Company. A consignment of gold bars, valued at two million marks, was seized at Cuxhaven on board the *Bundesrath*, by order of the German authorities. Lord Roberts issued an appeal to the English people to refrain from treating the British soldiers with alcoholic stimulants on their return home from South Africa, when giving them the hearty welcome they deserved so well. He gave emphatic testimony to the exemplary conduct of the British army throughout the South African campaign. On November 5th the South African Hospitals Commission sat in London. Mrs. Richard Chamberlain, in giving the evidence relative to the hospital at Wynberg, said that it seemed to her that the whole place was in a horrible muddle, and doctors who frequently were intoxicated were put in charge of invalids returning home on transports.

**British
Victories
and
Captures.**

The British under Colonel Le Gallais defeated the Boers under President Steyn and Christian De Wet near Bothaville on November 5th, taking eight cannon, with all the Boer ammunition and wagons and one hundred prisoners, but Colonel Le Gallais and ten others were killed. General Smith-Dorrien had a hard fight with the Boers near Belfast on November 6th and 7th, in which the Canadians greatly distinguished themselves, and Generals Henry Prinsloo and Joachim Fourie were killed on the Boer side. On the night of November 7th General Frederick Walter Kitchener surprised the Boers near Lydenburg and routed them completely. The next day Colonel Plumer's force was attacked by four hundred of Delarey's Boers, who were beaten, leaving behind them two killed and sixteen prisoners. On the same day the British reoccupied Philippolis. On November 9th General Lord Methuen surprised the Boers under Snyman and Vermaas between Ottoshoop and Lichtenburg, taking thirty prisoners and several wagons. Boer raiders were near Bloemfontein and refugees were com-



From Photographs, copyright by Underwood & Underwood

THE KIMBERLEY DIAMOND MINES

Upper: Sorting the Diamonds

Lower: General View of Kimberley

Digitized by Google

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO
LIBRARY
5405 LENOX
EAST FOUNDATIONS

ing into the town. General Rundle's forces had skirmishes with small parties of Boers in the vicinity of Harrismith, Reitz and Vrède. General Douglas's column arrived at Ventersdorp on November 11th, after a very successful march from south of Zeerust. The South African Conciliation Committee protested to Prime Minister Sprigg against measures which are "not war as practiced in Europe and as regulated by the conventions of civilized nations." On November 14th General Sir Charles Warren spoke on the war at Chatham, England. On November 8th sixteen Boers were captured in trying to cross from Portuguese East Africa into the Transvaal at a place where they had been trying to get ammunition into the Transvaal. On November 10th Lord Methuen routed a Boer force and captured a "pom pom." On the same day a police post near Vryburg killed and captured several Boers. On November 14th a British cavalry column from Bloemfontein dispersed a guerrilla force eighteen miles west of that town.

On November 16th Generals Barton and Douglas occupied Klerksdorp. General Douglas had some desultory fighting with the Boers under Liebenberg and took eight prisoners and a large number of sheep and cattle. General Barton took seven prisoners and some horses, mules and cattle. Boer raiding parties were operating in the vicinity of Wepener, near Standerton and at other places. On November 19th a British outpost on the Bluffs was surprised with the loss of six killed, five wounded and thirty-one prisoners; but the post was reoccupied afterward by the British, four Boer prisoners being taken and five Boers being wounded. Commandant De Wet was in constant communication with the Boer laagers and informed the men that Lord Roberts was being prevented from burning farms and that the other Great Powers of Europe would interfere very shortly. General Delarey, with one thousand Boers, was between Vryburg and Fourteen Streams; and the Boers lost seventy-five killed and wounded in a fight near Edenburg. All the Boer families near Standerton were being brought in, with their cattle, sheep, grain and forage. Small engagements occurred near Frankfort and at Drainsfontein. The British captured large numbers of stock near Klerksdorp and Heidelberg. General Clements proceeded towards Reitfontein and dispersed one thousand Boers under General Delarey. The Boers were repulsed in a fierce attack on Brakpan by seventeen British soldiers, three Boers being killed and a Boer flag being captured. All the flour mills in the vicinity of Ladybrand were put out of working order by the British. This was considered a wise measure, as the marauding Boers would not then find large stores of meal if they revisited that region.

Mr. Pott, the former consul for the Transvaal at Lorenzo Marques, was notified by the Portuguese authorities there that he must not fly

**British
and Boer
Activity.**

**Portu-
guese
Action.**

the Transvaal and Orange Free State flags any longer, as the Portuguese government does not recognize those countries any longer as independent states. Portugal thus gave proof of her friendliness toward her old ally, Great Britain.

Plot
against
Lord
Roberts.

Lord Roberts reported a plot against his life by Europeans. On November 16th the Johannesburg police arrested five Italians, four Greeks and one Frenchman, who were charged with the design of exploding a mine in St. Mary's Church at Johannesburg during service on November 18th. Arrangements were made for the return of two thousand refugees to Johannesburg on condition that they would enroll themselves as a town guard. The hostile feeling of Dutch Cape Colony sympathizers with the Boer republics toward the British Empire caused great anxiety among the English colonial population, and the loyal newspapers at Cape Town advised martial law.

Dutch
Hostility.

General
Buller in
England.

The British colonial troops invalided from South Africa visited Oxford on November 15th; and the next day they proceeded to Windsor, where they were inspected by Her Majesty, who was visited by General Buller on November 17th. On the 20th General and Lady Audrey Buller proceeded to their home, near Crediton, England, and had a great popular welcome. General Buller visited Exeter on November 22d and received the freedom of the city and a sword of honor. Orders were issued in London for the dismemberment of twenty-one battalions of the British militia.

Henrik
Ibsen's
View
of the
War.

The newspaper *Oerebladet*, published at Christiania, Norway, gave an account of an interview with Henrik Ibsen, the Norwegian novelist, on the British-Boer War. He said that the Boers themselves had taken unrighteous possession of their territory after cruelly driving out the aboriginal inhabitants. The Boers came as a semi-civilized people and not with the intention of spreading civilization. On the contrary they had for a long time done much to hinder the spread of a higher civilization. If, then, the British, who had a higher culture, came and wished to push their way into the country, that was no worse, and, indeed, not so bad, as what the Boers themselves had done. In conclusion Ibsen said: "The British are only taking from the Boers what they themselves have stolen. The Boers must put up with that. The Boers have defended themselves bravely, but they had also good positions to defend."

President
Krüger in
France.

President Krüger landed at Marseilles on November 22d and was received with loud acclamations by an enormous multitude. In reply to an address of welcome, he said that the war waged against his people was a war of barbarians, but that the Boers never would surrender. He arrived at Paris on November 24th and was again welcomed by an immense concourse of people. He was conveyed in a state carriage to the

Elysée, where he had a brief interview with President Loubet, who returned the visit a little later. Two days later Mr. Krüger visited the grounds and buildings of the Paris Exposition. The next day he visited the French Prime Minister, M. Waldeck-Rousseau. At the Hotel de Ville he was addressed by the President of the Paris Municipality and the Seine Departmental Council, and in reply he reiterated his demand for arbitration. On the 28th he visited an exhibition of the various projects for the monument to the late Colonel De Villebois-Mareuil. One of his adherents said that Mr. Krüger hoped to obtain arbitration by appealing to popular opinion in Belgium, Holland, Germany, Hungary and Russia. Both Chambers of the French National Assembly passed resolutions of sympathy with the Boer cause.

Lord Roberts arrived at Ladysmith on November 30th and at Durban on December 7th, on his way to Cape Town, en route for England. Lord Kitchener was appointed his successor as commander-in-chief of the British forces in South Africa. In his farewell address to his troops Lord Roberts commended their courage, endurance, patriotism and humanity toward their foes. He said that the experience which he had gained would help him greatly in the work that lay before him, which was to make the British army as perfect as it was possible for an army to be.

**Lord
Roberts's
Return to
England.**

On November 23d the British met with a serious disaster at Dewetsdorp, where four hundred British troops surrendered to twenty-five hundred Boers after losing fifteen killed and forty-two wounded. The Boers were pursued by General Knox, who defeated President Steyn and Commandant De Wet near Vaalbank on November 27th. The British also defeated the Boers near De Wagen Drift, at Tiger Kloof, near Bethlehem, at Bultfontein and at other places. On November 25th General Bruce Hamilton surprised a Boer laager six miles from Springs, in the Transvaal. Two days later General Knox defeated the rear-guard of De Wet's Boer force between Dewetsdorp and Smithfield, capturing two wagons and stampeding three hundred horses. On November 28th General Settle defeated the Boer commando under Herzog at Kloof and occupied Luckhoff. On that and the next day General Paget defeated a Boer commando under Viljoen and Erasmus north-east of Bronkhorst Spruit; but Lieutenant-Colonel Lloyd, of the West Riding Yorkshire Regiment, was killed, and ten officers were wounded, five of whom were New Zealanders, while thirteen British privates were killed and fifty-nine wounded. Three British columns under General Knox got south of De Wet, after some very hard marching. On December 4th General Knox again defeated and routed De Wet, driving him from all his positions. Further fighting resulted in favor of the British. The Fifth Battalion of British Yeomanry,

**British
Disaster
and
Victories.**

under Colonel Meyrick, reoccupied Lichtenburg, after compelling the Boer commando under Lemmer to evacuate the town.

**Plotters
Deported.**

The eleven men arrested in Johannesburg on suspicion of being concerned in a plot to assassinate Lord Roberts were merely deported from the country, the evidence against them being insufficient to warrant a trial. A body of troops, to be called the Rand Rifles, was to be formed of all British citizens between certain ages in the district, to protect the Rand against the marauding incursions of Boer raiders and guerrilla detachments.

**Rand
Rifles.**

**Return of
British
Troops to
England.**

The British transport *Hawarden Castle*, having on board the Composite Regiment of Household Cavalry, the Second Royal Canadian Regiment and Battery A of the Royal Horse Artillery, arrived at Southampton, England, on November 29th. The First Life Guards proceeded to Windsor, where they marched past the queen. Her Majesty inspected the Canadian troops on November 30th. On December 1st the Canadian troops were welcomed in London by the Lord Mayor. On December 3d the Prince of Wales inspected the Guards and the Canadians together. On December 5th the Canadians visited the Houses of Parliament and were entertained at luncheon at Kensington Palace by the Duke of Argyll and Princess Louise. On November 30th General and Lady Buller were the guests of the evening at the annual dinner of Devonians in London. On that day the Mansion-house War Fund amounted to one million twenty-seven thousand eight hundred and fifty pounds.

**Krüger in
Holland.**

President Krüger left Paris on December 1st for Cologne, where he was disappointed to hear that the Emperor of Germany could not receive him; the Emperor apparently having purposely avoided meeting him, much to the chagrin and sorrow of the fugitive Transvaal President. He, therefore, decided not to go to Berlin; but he proceeded directly to Holland, where he was received warmly by Queen Wilhelmina.

**Delarey's
Attack.**

On December 3d the Boers under General Delarey attacked a British convoy on its way from Pretoria to Rustenburg. The Boers got into the first half of the convoy and burned the wagons. The second half was not touched. The British lost fifteen killed and twenty-three wounded.

**De Wet's
Move-
ments.**

On December 5th General De Wet crossed the Caledon by Kareepont Drift, going toward Odendaal, but failed to capture the Commassie Bridge, and proceeded toward the north-east, abandoning five hundred horses and many carts which he had obtained from Cape Colony, thus making his attempt on Cape Colony a failure. De Wet was pursued by General Knox, who captured a Krupp cannon and a wagon-load of ammunition and engaged in a running fight with De Wet's

force. The Boers proceeded toward Reddersburg, where they had a column ready to coöperate.

The Boers made a successful attack on a British mounted infantry post near Barberton. The British prisoners taken at Dewetsdorp, excepting the officers, were released by the Boers. On December 3d General Broadwood's Brigade reached Oliphant's Nek. In a reconnaissance at Drakensberg, General Talbot Coke collected one hundred horses, six hundred cattle and eight thousand sheep. General Settle's column marched from Luckhoff to Edenburg, seizing grain and live stock and capturing thirty prisoners.

**Various
Succes-
ses.**

The Boers murdered two unarmed Scotch Highlanders at Pretoria. The Cape Colony government issued a weekly memorandum containing official-vouched reports to correct the false reports persistently circulated about the war.

**Opposing
Reports.**

On December 6th the Afrikaner Congress at Worcester adopted resolutions demanding the termination of the war and the preservation of the independence of the two Boer Republics, at the same time condemning the attitude of Sir Alfred Milner. A deputation from the Congress conveyed the resolutions to Sir Alfred Milner, who promised to transmit them to the Imperial Government in London with an expression of his emphatic dissent.

**Action
of the
Afri-
kander
Congress.**

On December 8th Lord Roberts reached Cape Town and was enthusiastically cheered by an immense multitude. Lord and Lady Roberts, with their daughters, sailed for England on December 11th. Before sailing, Lord Roberts sent to the Prime Minister of Cape Colony a memorandum on the subject of farm-burning, explaining the reasons for which the policy was adopted and the limitations within which it was employed, and pointing out that it is in strict accordance with the usages of civilized warfare.

**Lord
Roberts's
Depart-
ure for
England.**

President Krüger arrived at The Hague on December 5th and received an enthusiastic welcome. On the 8th he was received by the young Queen of Holland. On the 10th he had an interview with the Dutch Ministers of Foreign Affairs and Finance.

**Krüger
in
Holland.**

On December 10th the German Imperial Chancellor, Count von Bülow, stated in the German Reichstag that no intervention in South Africa was possible or was contemplated at any time by Germany beyond the exercise of pacific influence. Two days later the Pan-German leader condemned the German government for refusing to receive President Krüger. The Chancellor replied at length, stating that if Germany interfered in South Africa she would have to rely on her own strength alone.

**Attitude
of
Germany.**

The British government decided to issue a war gratuity to all its troops in South Africa, the Field-Marshal to receive twenty-five hun-

**Events in
England.**

dred pounds and the privates five pounds each. On December 6th the Transvaal Concessions Commission met at Westminster. On December 10th the Princess of Wales went to Southampton to visit the hospital-ship bearing her name, which arrived from Cape Town two days before with one hundred and seventy invalids. Queen Victoria personally conferred the Victoria Cross on several officers and privates from South Africa.

**Delarey's
Victory
over
Clements.**

At dawn on December 13th General Clements's force at Nooitgedacht, on the Mageliesberg, was attacked by twenty-five hundred Boers under Delarey. The Boers reached the summit of the Mageliesberg, which was occupied by the Northumberland Fusiliers and thus commanded General Clements's camp. General Clements finally brought in his force to Commando Nek. The British lost fourteen killed and five hundred and seventy-three missing, the latter being four companies of the Northumberland Fusiliers and some Yeomanry and other details. The Northumberland Fusiliers fought until their ammunition was exhausted. As many negro drivers fled, a considerable amount of transport was lost. All ammunition that was not taken away was destroyed. The Boers reported that their own losses were very heavy.

**Boer
Defeats at
Vryheid.**

On December 10th the Boers attacked Vryheid, and only retired in the evening with a loss of about one hundred killed and wounded. The British lost six killed, nineteen wounded and thirty missing. On the 13th Colonel Bloomfield moved on Vryheid and drove the Boers in confusion from Scheeper's Nek, inflicting heavy loss upon them and capturing a large quantity of arms and stock.

**Methuen's
Victory.**

While operating in the Zastron district some of Brabant's Horse were surrounded in a defile and obliged to surrender. On December 13th Lord Methuen attacked the Boer positions at Ottoshoop and captured their laager, thus obtaining fifteen ox wagons, a number of Cape carts, fifteen thousand rounds of ammunition, fourteen hundred and sixty cattle and two thousand sheep. The Boers lost two killed and five taken prisoners. The Boer General Lemmer was killed in an attack on the British at Lichtenburg. Boer attacks on Bethlehem and Vrede were repulsed with a loss of ten Boers killed and fourteen wounded. A party of eighty-one Boer prisoners were brought into Kimberley from the Boshof district.

**De Wet's
Move-
ments.**

General Knox drove De Wet north to the line of Thabanchu and Ladybrand, which was held by the British troops. De Wet's force, three thousand strong, made several attempts to get through, aided by a number of Boers operating from the north. They were driven back, but a portion of them got north on December 14th, after losing a 15-pounder cannon which they had captured at Dewetsdorp, a "Pom-

Pom," several wagonloads of ammunition, twelve prisoners and some horses and mules, besides thirty killed and wounded.

About six hundred Boers invaded Cape Colony about the middle of December. Lord Kitchener requested that the New Zealand contingent should remain in South Africa until the end of the war, and the New Zealand Cabinet consented.

New
Zealand
Contin-
gent.

Queen Victoria expressed her grateful appreciation of the signal services of the Yeomanry, volunteers, militia and colonial troops in South Africa during the year 1900. It was decided to recruit up to five thousand men in the United Kingdom for the South African Constabulary. On December 13th and 14th the Transvaal Concessions Committee met at Westminster, when evidence was given as to the Selati Railway. President Krüger, who was still in Holland, dined with Queen Wilhelmina at The Hague and visited Amsterdam. Manifestations of popular sympathy with him and his people were still very warm.

Events in
England.

Krüger in
Holland.

On December 19th about eight hundred Boers invaded Cape Colony by crossing the Orange River at Rhenoster Hoek, and a second band crossed near Sand Drift. Lord Kitchener sent forces of mounted troops to flank them and thus check the invasion. About two hundred Boers who occupied Britstown retired after commandeering supplies. It was rumored that a force of Yeomanry was entrapped by the Boers and most of them captured. On December 18th a fight occurred on the Colesberg road, eleven miles from Steynsburg, the Boers retreating to the Zuurberg. On the 23d there was some indecisive fighting at Rooipoort, fifteen miles from Burghersdorp. Fighting also occurred at De Aar. The damage to the railway and telegraph lines in Cape Colony was slight. Very few Cape Colony Dutch joined the invaders. After visiting Naauwpoort, Lord Kitchener returned to the north. Martial law was proclaimed in Cape Colony by the British authorities.

Boer Raid
into Cape
Colony.

General Clements defeated the Boers under Delarey in two engagements near Nooitgedacht on December 19th and 20th, driving them from the valley south of the Mageliesberg. General French defeated two Boer commandos with considerable loss. The British Secretary for War informed Lord Kitchener that eight hundred mounted infantry would sail for South Africa during the last week of December. It was also announced that two cavalry regiments would leave England for South Africa as soon as possible.

British
Suc-
cesses.

British
Recruits.

The recruiting of colonial police to make up ten thousand was being expedited. A sixth New Zealand contingent, half of whom were Maoris, was preparing to sail for South Africa in January, 1901. Major-General Baden-Powell visited Port Elizabeth on December 23d

Various
Events.

and Grahamstown on the 24th. Lord Roberts arrived at Madeira on Christmas day and left the next day.

De Wet's Escape. General De Wet himself was foiled in an attempt to invade Cape Colony, but he finally escaped from the British who sought to entrap him. As the British now were keeping him continually on the move, his horses were wearing out.

Boer Success and Defeat. The Boers captured a strong post at Helvetia, on the Machadodorp and Lydenburg Railway; but General Reeves afterward reoccupied Helvetia, the Boers escaping with a British 4.7-inch cannon and two hundred British prisoners. The British also lost eleven men killed and twenty-six wounded.

Boer Defeats. The Boers blew up a train near Pan on December 26th, and attacked Utrecht and Benoni, near Boksburg, but were driven off. Colonel Colville was engaged with the Boers near Greylingstad, when another Boer commando attacked the baggage, but were driven off, the British loss being eight killed, twenty-seven wounded and twenty missing. On December 28th General French occupied Ventersburg, the Boers evacuating their position on the approach of the British.

De Wet's Movements. De Wet was now endeavoring to break through the British lines to the south, but General Knox's column and Boyes's Brigade were holding him. De Wet tried to move towards Bethlehem, but was headed off by Colonel Pilcher, and retreated toward Lindley or Reitz. General Knox defeated the Boers and occupied Senekal. Colonel Hallett's column captured a large quantity of stock and eleven thousand horses at Jagersfontein. The British made several captures at other points.

Boer Raiders in Cape Colony. In Cape Colony the Boer invaders broke up into many small commandos, which held up trains and captured convoys, and also engaged in looting operations. The eastern invaders were moving rapidly about, waiting for support from the north, while the western force moved toward Caernarvon; but the British under De Lisle and Thorneycroft pursued them. The British under Williams engaged the Boers south-west of Middelburg. The British also occupied Graaf Reinet, in Cape Colony. The Cape Colony government called on the loyal inhabitants of the colony to form a colonial defense force.

Lord Roberts's Reception in England. Lord Roberts arrived at Cowes, in the Isle of Wight, on January 2, 1901, and drove with the Duke of Connaught and Princess Henry of Battenberg to Osborne to see Queen Victoria. Addresses of welcome were presented at East Cowes Town-hall; and Lord Roberts, in his reply, said that he did not think he should have left his command had he not had the most implicit confidence in Lord Kitchener. The task which had devolved on that commander was surrounded with difficulties, partly owing to the marvelous mobility of the enemy, but mainly owing to the vast extent and absolute barrenness of the country. Neverthe-

less, there was no need to fear as to the result if England's enemies were made to understand clearly that England is determined, however long the war might last and whatever it might cost, to bring it to a successful issue. With the British Empire firmly knit together Great Britain need fear no foe so long as she was careful to see that there was no weak point in her armor.

Lord Roberts was welcomed by Queen Victoria at Osborne, and the Queen bestowed upon him an earldom and the Knighthood of the Garter. Lord Roberts spent the night on board the *Canada* and left for London the next morning. Over twelve thousand troops were already in London to line the route arranged to be taken by the Prince of Wales and Lord Roberts from Paddington Station to Buckingham Palace.

His
Welcome
by the
Queen.

General Colville, commanding the infantry brigade at Gibraltar, who was requested to resign, refused to comply with the request, and returned to England at the close of December. He issued a long statement concerning the surrender of the Imperial Yeomanry at Lindley in May, 1900. He insisted that the chief cause of the surrender was bad staff work. Colonial Secretary Chamberlain refused the services of Maoris in the New Zealand contingent.

General
Colville's
Action.

The Princess of Wales, as President of the Soldiers' and Sailors' Families Association, appealed for further public support. President Krüger was still in Holland and was suffering from bronchitis, one of his lungs also being affected.

Charity
Fund.

Krüger.

Two skirmishes took place in Cape Colony on the first two days of January, 1901, south of Middelburg. There were few Boer invaders, but these few were very mobile. The British threw up intrenchments all around Caernarvon. The country around Kimberley was being cleared of people and stock. The loyal inhabitants of Cape Colony spontaneously responded to the appeal for the formation of a defensive force, the whole able-bodied population practically offering themselves. Though the Dutch population had not actually risen, the Boer invaders were assisted by them in many places. The Boers in Bechuanaland were again joined by some of the Cape Colony Dutch who had been already in rebellion. Martial law still prevailed in Cape Colony.

Events
in Cape
Colony.

A deputation from one hundred thousand negroes waited on Sir Alfred Milner and offered to help the British forces in every possible way. He told them they could aid without taking up arms; for instance, by giving information. Mr. Malan, a member of the Cape Colony Parliament and editor of *Ons Land*, was arrested on a charge of defamatory and seditious libel.

Negro
Offer.

Malan's
Arrest.

A detachment of General Knox's force encountered a superior Boer force near Lindley, and Lieutenant-Colonel Laing was killed, seventeen of his troops being killed and twenty-two wounded. On January 5,

British
Suc-
cesses.

1901, General Babington drove back the Boer commandos under Delarey and Steenkamp at Naauwpoort, Commandant Dupreez being taken prisoner by the victorious British.

**Boer
Repulses.**

On the night of January 7th the Boers simultaneously attacked all the British posts at Belfast, Wonderfontein, Wildfontein, Nooitgedacht and Pan. The Boers took advantage of a dense fog to creep up close to the British posts. Heavy firing continued until late in the day, when the Boers were driven off. On the British side Captain Fosberg and twenty-three of his followers were killed and fifty-nine were wounded. The Boer loss was heavy, twenty-four dead being counted.

**Boer
Defeat.**

A British convoy carrying supplies to General Gordon's Brigade north of Krügersdorp was attacked by Beyer's commando on the morning of January 8th. The Boers were driven off, leaving eleven dead on the field. The British loss was only four men slightly wounded. On January 9th the Boers were repulsed in a night attack at Machado-dorp.

**British
Recruits.**

The British were preparing to send more men to South Africa from Great Britain and her colonies. Men were being enrolled rapidly in Australia and New Zealand for the new contingent to be sent to the scene of war in South Africa.

**Peace
Agents
Flogged.**

Three agents of the Peace Committee were taken as prisoners to De Wet's laager near Lindley on January 10th. One British subject was flogged and shot and two Boer peace agents were flogged by De Wet's orders.

**Boer
Defeats.**

On January 13th about fourteen hundred Boers crossed the line between Zuurfontein and Kaalfontein and attacked both stations, but were driven off. On January 7th the Boers attacked Zeerust. Fighting also occurred north of Krügersdorp and near Senekal.

**Boer
Raiders
in Cape
Colony.**

Lord Kitchener decided to evacuate all towns lying outside the lines of communication, so that there would be no convoys for the Boers to loot. The Boers still avoided fighting in Cape Colony. Hertzog's commando was near Sutherland, in Cape Colony. On the Midland's line the Boers seemed to have broken up into small bands, one-half going north and the other half hiding in the mountainous country north-west of Jamestown. Several small parties of Boers appeared to be returning to the Orange River Colony. The Boers attempted to cut the water main at Towns River, on which the railway depended. In the Australian colonies of New South Wales and Victoria great enthusiasm was shown in response to the call for volunteers for the new colonial contingents for South Africa.

**Boer
Defeats.**

About three thousand Boers concentrated at Carolina, in the Transvaal. On January 17th General Colville's mobile column was attacked north of Standerton, but the Boers were driven off with severe loss.

The Boers were also defeated near Ventersburg. The Johannesburg Mounted Rifles captured a Boer outpost at Springs. The Boers captured a train with mine materials near Balmoral. On January 21st small Boer bands seriously damaged electric light works near Johannesburg. A Boer detachment entered Aberdeen, in Cape Colony, on January 15th and plundered the stores. Skirmishes occurred at other points, the Boer invaders suffering great losses.

On January 24th General Cunningham moved from Oliphant's Nek and captured seventeen Boers of Delarey's commando. General Babington moved north from Ventersdorp and menaced the Boer flank, whereupon the Boers retired westward. General Smith-Dorrien dispersed the Boers after a five hour's engagement between Wonderfontein and Carolina.

**More
Boer
Defeats.**

On January 25th the Boers captured a goods train with cattle and provisions for troops north of Kimberley, after they had surrounded and captured an outpost of the Dublin Fusiliers. General Knox attacked Haasebroek's laager and captured a field cornet, four other prisoners and twenty horses.

**Boer
Success.**

General Knox engaged De Wet's force about forty miles north of Thabanchu. De Wet intended again to attempt the invasion of Cape Colony. The Boer invaders of Cape Colony were intrenched at Calvinia, which was regarded as their base, and were engaged in pillaging the country. Colonel Bethune and Colonel De Lisle were about to begin operations for the purpose of driving them out of the colony.

**De Wet
and Cape
Colony.**

On January 29th General Knox fought De Wet's force north of Thabanchu. General French engaged two thousand Boers east of the Pretoria and Johannesburg Railway. A British outpost of two hundred men was captured by the Boers at Modderfontein. The Delagoa Bay Railway was cut by the Boers within the limits of Portuguese East Africa.

**Various
Operations.**

The Boer invaders of the Oudtshoorn district of Cape Colony were repulsed completely by the British. A detachment of about four hundred Boers inflicted considerable damage to the Modderfontein and Van Ryn mines on January 29th. The mine guard was being organized as rapidly as possible. In compliance with Lord Kitchener's request, the British government decided to send thirty thousand more cavalry to South Africa to put an end to the destructive guerrilla warfare.

**Boer
Raiders.**

A British column destroyed Boer supplies at Petrusburg and brought in thirty-five hundred horses and cattle without sustaining any casualty. Lord Methuen dispersed the Boers at Lillifontein and captured twelve wagons and two hundred cattle. The British columns operating east occupied Ermelo on February 6th; General Louis Botha,

**British
Successes.**

with a Boer force of seven thousand men, retiring eastward. About fifty Boers surrendered.

**Botha's
Defeat.**

General Louis Botha, with two thousand Boers, attacked the British under General Smith-Dorrien at Bothwell early on February 6th, and was repulsed after severe fighting. General French captured a convoy of fifty wagons and fifteen carts, besides forty-five prisoners.

**De Wet's
Band.**

General De Wet, with his Boer force, appeared to be crossing the line south of the Jagersfontein road to the west. A deserter from De Wet's commando stated that great dissatisfaction prevailed among De Wet's followers, and that they had little food and ammunition.

**Events
in Cape
Colony.**

In Cape Colony the British under Colonel De Lisle occupied Calvinia on February 6th. A British convoy and forty Yeomanry were captured by the Boer invaders in Cape Colony. About this time the Boers derailed three trains near Vlaklaagte.

**Official
Dis-
patches.**

In the parade of the City Guard of Cape Town on February 10th over seven thousand men were present, and their officers were addressed in a stirring speech by Sir Alfred Milner. A number of official dispatches relating to the war were published in the *London Gazette*, including reports of General Sir George Stuart White and Sir Redvers Henry Buller on the defense and relief of Ladysmith, with Lord Roberts's comments and his explanations of his operations while in chief command in South Africa, and the dispatches of his subordinates on the defense and relief of Mafeking, the defense of Wepener, Sanna's Post, the capture of Prinsloo in the Brandwater Basin, General Buller's march after the relief of Ladysmith, etc.

**Other
Events.**

Mr. Burdett-Coutts, M. P., commented on the report of the Hospitals Commission in a letter. The Transvaal Concessions Commission heard evidence from Baron von Eckhardstein, of the German embassy in London, as to the position of the German and Austrian shareholders in the Netherlands Railway.

**De Wet
again
in Cape
Colony.**

Commandant De Wet crossed the Orange River into Cape Colony, near the Sand River, on February 10th or 11th, and attacked Philipstown, but was repulsed after three hours' fighting. De Wet's force crossed the railway at Baartman's Siding, north of De Aar, on February 15th, closely followed by Colonel Plumer. Colonel Crabbe, with two armored trains, engaged the Boers and captured twenty wagons, several of which were loaded with ammunition, besides a Maxim cannon, twenty prisoners and over one hundred horses. De Wet was still reported to be north-west of Hopetown. His animals were said to be exhausted and badly fed. Large bodies of British troops were in contact with the Boers or close to them. The Boer invaders of Cape Colony were plundering and cruelly treating the negroes in the Calvinia and Caernarvon districts.

A British supply train, running in front of Lord Kitchener's special train, was blown up by the Boers at Klip River, south of Johannesburg. The Boers were driven off by a party of Lord Kitchener's bodyguard, who came up in armored trains. General French drove a large Boer force on to Piet Retief, capturing a large number of wagons, carts and cattle about twenty-five miles south-east of Ermelo.

**Boer
Defeats.**

De Wet was in full retreat and his forces were dispersing. Colonel Plumer engaged him on February 23d, on the south bank of the Orange River, and captured a cannon, a "Pom Pom," over forty prisoners and some carts. De Wet then moved toward Petrusville with a force of over five hundred men. In a letter written to Hertzog, De Wet requested that officer to tell all the Boer commandants and field cornets that if they did not meet with signal success on entering Cape Colony they should consider the question of surrender.

**De Wet's
Retreat.**

About forty Boers and the whole of the Boer supplies at Scheeper's laager, near Willowmore, were captured by the British. The Boers in General French's front were retreating before him in scattered and disorganized bands numbering together about five thousand men, losing almost three hundred men killed and wounded, two hundred and thirty-nine prisoners, a 15-pounder cannon, four hundred and sixty-two rifles, one hundred and sixty thousand rounds of small-arm ammunition, thirty-five hundred horses, seventy mules, three thousand five hundred and thirty trek oxen, eighteen thousand seven hundred cattle, one hundred and fifty-five thousand four hundred sheep and one thousand and seventy wagons and carts, all of which were captured by the British. The British lost forty-six killed and one hundred and twelve wounded. In the course of the next few days General French captured a 19-pounder Krupp cannon, a Maxim cannon, a howitzer, twenty rounds of small-arm ammunition, one hundred and fifty-three rifles, three hundred and eighty-eight horses, fifty-two mules, eight hundred and thirty-four trek oxen, fifty-six hundred cattle, ninety-eight hundred sheep and two hundred and eighty-seven wagons and carts. The Boers lost four men killed, five wounded and about three hundred made prisoners. The British sustained no casualties. Lord Methuen defeated fourteen hundred Boers under De Villiers and Liebenberg at Haartbeestfontein, the Boers leaving eighteen dead on the field, and the British losing sixteen men killed and thirty-four wounded.

**Boer
Losses.**

**Boer
Defeat.**

The National Liberal Federation's General Committee passed a resolution calling on the British government to announce and, on the cessation of hostilities, to carry out a policy which would secure equal rights to the white races and just and humane treatment to the negroes.

**Liberal
Party's
Attitude.**

De Wet was driven northward across the Orange River out of Cape Colony, the British taking about two hundred prisoners and capturing

**De Wet's
Expul-
sion from
Cape
Colony
and His
Losses.**

a number of stragglers from the Boer ranks. President Steyn was with De Wet, who was also joined by Hertzog and Brand. Prisoners in the hands of the British reported the Boers as much dispirited. General Babington dug up a Krupp cannon, a "Pom Pom" and some ammunition which had been buried at Sandfontein. Captain Dallimore, with sixteen of the Victoria Rifles, captured thirty-three Boer soldiers and fifty horses on the Seacow River. General Dartwell captured a Hotchkiss cannon from the Boers near Piet Retief. Boer surrenders continued in that district; over fifty Boers, with a commandant, surrendering on March 2d. Colonel Plumer captured De Wet's last cannon from his rear-guard on February 23d. It was stated that De Wet's attempted invasion of Cape Colony was the most disastrous adventure that yet had befallen him, as he was forced to abandon over four thousand horses and most of his convoy. Colonels Plumer, Haig and Williams were pursuing him closely. His troops were undergoing great hardships.

**Other
Boer
Bands.**

About eighty of Lord Kitchener's scouts surrendered to a superior Boer force after a prolonged fight. About five hundred Boers under Van Reenan, a Steynsburg rebel, were laagered for several weeks at Diepkloof, on the south-east border of the Colesberg district of Cape Colony, and this commando was increasing gradually.

**General
French's
Opera-
tions.**

General French's operations and convoys were delayed by continuous rains. Boers surrendered to the British daily or were taken prisoners in battle, and the entire Boer force confronting General French was broken up into small parties. General French dug up a Krupp cannon, a Maxim cannon and some ammunition, all of which the Boers had buried. Sir Alfred Milner arrived at Pretoria on March 4th.

**Armis-
tice.**

Lord Kitchener met Commandant Louis Botha and other Boer leaders at Middelburg on February 27th, and Lord Kitchener granted Botha a week's armistice to enable him to confer with the other Boer generals.

**Boer
Defeats.**

The Boers were repulsed in their attack on Lichtenburg, and their commander, General Celliers, was killed. In the eastern Transvaal, General French's troops captured a 14-pounder Creuzot cannon, a Hotchkiss cannon, one hundred and sixty-nine rifles and large quantities of forage and live stock. De Wet was now north of Brandfort, having escaped by forced marches with about four hundred men. Continuous heavy rains interfered with the military operations.

De Wet.

**Boers
in Cape
Colony.**

In Cape Colony two small Boer commandos were being hunted amongst the hills by the British troops. The Boers occupied Pearson on March 8d, but the British reoccupied the town two days later. The Boers had captured sixty rifles and over fifteen thousand rounds of ammunition. There was some skirmishing near Rouxville and

Aliwal North. Two Cape Colony rebels, who had been arrested in connection with an attack on a railway train at Taaibosch, were tried, convicted and sentenced to death. The British occupied Maraisburg on March 8th.

In the Orange River Colony, Colonel Pilcher's troops drove the Boer forces out of the country between the Orange River and Bloemfontein. There were eight Boer commandos at large in the Orange River Colony, but military rule was being superseded by a civil administration, as far as possible. A large proportion of the Boers were now frankly throwing in their lot with the British, and many of them were actually serving against the Boers who were still in the field fighting the British. The Victoria Cross was conferred on Lieutenant Maxwell, of Roberts's Light Horse, for conspicuous bravery at Koorn Spruit on March 31, 1900.

On March 14th it was learned that De Wet had reached Senekal. General French's troops killed and wounded forty-six more Boers and took one hundred and forty-six prisoners, two hundred rifles, thirty-seven hundred rounds of ammunition, twenty-four hundred horses, one hundred and twenty mules, three hundred and seventy trek oxen, twenty-five hundred cattle and four hundred carts and wagons. On March 14th a British column from Lydenburg captured a Boer laager at Krügerspost, with thirty-two prisoners and a large quantity of grain and live stock.

The operations for the surrender of the Boer commando under Kruitziuger on March 16th and 17th were rendered abortive by a mistake on the part of Colonel De Lisle's force. Four British subjects were shot at Wolmaranstad on March 9th, by orders of Smuts and Delarey. In Cape Colony and the Orange River Colony the British continued active operations against the scattered Boer guerrilla bands. Three Cape Colony Dutch rebels sentenced to death for wrecking a train were executed at De Aar on March 19th.

Lord Kitchener telegraphed to England that any comforts which private individuals might desire to send out for the British soldiers in South Africa would be very acceptable, in view of the approaching winter in the southern hemisphere, and should be sent as early as possible. The British War Office issued a statement as to the articles most likely to be useful to the troops in the field, and also regulations as to the transmission of parcels. Lord Roberts said that he had every hope that, in the able hands of Lord Kitchener, it would not be long before peace would be restored.

Colonel Babington's force defeated the Boers under Delarey near Ventersdorp, capturing two 15-pounder cannon, a "Pom Pom," six Maxim cannon, large quantities of ammunition, carts and wagons, and

Boers
in the
Orange
River
Colony.

Rewards.

Boer
Losses.

Other
Events

Comforts
for
Soldiers.

Delarey's
Defeat.

one hundred and forty-four prisoners. The British lost two killed and seven wounded, while the Boers left twenty-two dead and thirty wounded on the field.

**British
Captures.**

General French arrived at Vryheid late in March, after having killed, wounded or captured twelve hundred Boers and taken seven cannon, one thousand rifles, two hundred and twenty-six thousand horses, cattle and sheep, and eighteen hundred wagons. In a night march from Thabanchu, Colonel White surprised a party of Boers and took four prisoners, six wagons, thirty-four horses and a number of cattle. Colonel Thorneycroft's column brought three thousand horses, three thousand cattle and seventeen thousand sheep into Dewetsdorp.

**Boer
Losses.**

General Philip Botha, brother of General Louis Botha, was killed in the fighting at Doornberg. The Boers in the Orange River Colony disbanded and dispersed. A Boer force wrecked a British supply train north of Vlaklaagte on March 22d.

**British
Recruits.**

The British transport *Bavarian* left England on March 25th, sailing out of the Mersey with seventeen hundred troops for South Africa. The British War Office issued a list of promotions and appointments for exceptional gallantry in the field.

**Peace
Terms.**

The peace negotiations between Lord Kitchener and General Botha failed, and the war continued. As the question of absolute Boer independence was not listened to by Lord Kitchener, the discussion turned on other points, the terms of which were quite generous on the British side; but the Boers would not listen to Lord Kitchener's demand that civilized, intelligent and property-owning negroes should have the same right to vote as the whites.

**British
Captures.**

At the close of March the Boers derailed a train near Pan by exploding a mine, but two hundred Boers who advanced to plunder it were driven off, leaving six dead and one wounded. In the Orange River Colony fifteen hundred horses, besides other stock, were brought into the British lines at the close of March, seven Boers being killed, nine wounded and seventy taken prisoners. General French's forces captured prisoners, arms, ammunition and horses and other live stock in the vicinity of Vryheid. Colonel Plumer occupied Nylstroom. General French captured a 15-pounder cannon and two "Pom-Poms" on the lower Pongola River. In the Orange River Colony thirty-one Boer prisoners were captured.

**Boer
Losses.**

In the Springfontein district General Bruce Hamilton's force traversed eighty miles in three days, collected a large number of horses and cattle and destroyed much grain. The Boers of Fourie's commando acknowledged that they lost seven hundred men in killed, wounded and prisoners during their invasion of Cape Colony and that they brought back only four Cape carts out of their entire convoy.

They lost thirty men drowned in crossing the Orange River. On March 29th General French drove the Boers out of several positions east of Vryheid, killing four Boers and wounding several and capturing wagons and cattle.

General Bruce Hamilton's mounted column fought the Boers of Fourie's commando near Dewetsdorp, the British capturing horses, cattle and carts. On March 28th the Boers derailed a train on the Delagoa Bay Railway near Balmoral, and another Boer detachment derailed a train near Newcastle, Natal. In Swaziland the Imperial Light Horse took an entire convoy of wagons, with cattle, sheep and horses, and at the same time captured another herd of one thousand head of cattle.

**British
Captures.**

Colonel Davies was forming a permanent police force for Johannesburg. It was decided not to issue any further application forms for the South African Constabulary for the time being. The Victoria Cross was conferred on Lieutenant H. E. Douglas, of the British Army Medical Corps, for conspicuous bravery at Magersfontein. The British War Office issued an army order specifying the various clasps to be awarded with the South African medal.

**Other
Occurrences**

On March 29th the Mansion-house War Fund amounted to one million one hundred and fourteen thousand nine hundred and fifty-five pounds. General Sir Redvers Henry Buller, in a reply to a correspondent, deprecated the drawing of comparisons between Lord Roberts and himself, and asked that both might be allowed to stand as having done their best.

**War
Fund.**

Early in April, General French captured another "Pom-Pom," thus accounting for all of the Boer cannon known to be in the south-eastern Transvaal. General French also took prisoners, wagons and cattle. Colonel Plumer occupied Pietersburg with little opposition, capturing sixty prisoners, a 7-pounder cannon, two locomotives and thirty-nine trucks. Lord Kitchener's forces captured sixteen prisoners, sixty horses and a depot of stores in the Orange River Colony.

**British
Captures.**

On April 3d Colonel Crabble surprised a Boer laager at Sand Drift and captured three hundred horses, besides arms, ammunition, etc. On April 6th the Boers under Scheepers captured a party of the Fifth Lancers and Imperial Yeomanry north of Aberdeen, Cape Colony. About eight hundred Boers were baffled in an attempt to get north between Vryheid and Zululand, and one hundred and twenty Boers surrendered in Zululand.

**More
British
Captures.**

Commandants Botha and De Wet met at Vrede, and Botha was reported to have reopened negotiations for peace, being convinced of De Wet's insanity. The Boers shot another peace envoy, Meyer de Kock, at Belfast.

**Peace
Efforts.**

**Relief
Fund.**

About two million six hundred thousand pounds was contributed to the British war relief fund down to the end of the year 1900, and a million remained unexpended. The *Matin*, of Paris, published an interview with President Krüger.

**British
Captures.**

After two hours' hard fighting, Bethune's mounted infantry captured eighty Boers and eight wagons near Dewetsdorp. Two Boers were killed, one wounded and six captured in a fight near Brandfort. In General Babington's operations Sir Henry Rawlinson's column rushed Smuts's laager, north-west of Klerksdorp, six Boers being killed, ten wounded and twenty-three taken prisoners, and a 12-pounder cannon and a "Pom-Pom" were captured, along with ammunition, wagons, horses and cattle. Colonel Plumer captured field-cornet Briel and sixteen other Boers, besides rifles, wagons and horses.

**Opera-
tions
in the
Trans-
vaal.**

Early in April military operations were begun in the eastern Transvaal. Since Sir Bindon Blood took command of the British forces in that district the wrecking of trains had ceased. On April 14th Colonel Plumer's force left Pietersburg, and the next day it crossed the most difficult pass in the country without opposition.

**Boer
Treach-
ery.**

Two men of the Imperial Yeomanry who asked for water at a farm at Jagersfontein Road were treacherously directed by a woman to a place where some Boers were in ambush, and one yeoman was killed and the other wounded. Andries Wessels, a peace envoy to the Boers, who had been reported to have been shot, was said to be still alive.

**Other
Events.**

On April 10th a British transport arrived at Port Elizabeth with four hundred Australians. The British established a definite civil administration of justice in the Transvaal. Transvaal law was allowed to remain, but pleading was to be conducted in English. The Victoria Cross was conferred on Sergeant Donald Farmer for conspicuous bravery at Nooitgedacht on December 18th.

**British
Captures.**

General Sir Bindon Blood's forces captured eighty-one prisoners, one hundred thousand rounds of ammunition, two hundred horses and many wagons and cattle. About the middle of April the British columns captured two hundred and forty-two prisoners, two hundred and forty-eight rifles, some ammunition, wagons and carts. A party of the Ninth Lancers was ambushed by the Boers, four of the Lancers being killed and five wounded. The Boksburg commando of one hundred and six Boers surrendered, with rifles and horses.

**Cape
Colony.**

There still were Boer roving parties in Cape Colony, where slight skirmishes occurred, and the Boers captured a train near Molteno on April 19th. Lord Kitchener issued a warning in Cape Colony against interference with the British operations.

**Editors
Jailed.**

Mr. Cartwright, editor of the *South African News*, and Mr. Malan, editor of *Ons Land*, were sentenced to a year's imprisonment for

sedition libel. The proprietors of two other Afrikander organs were sentenced to six months' imprisonment for libel.

During the last week of April the British had captured one hundred and thirteen prisoners, one hundred and thirty-eight rifles, ninety-eight horses, a 12-pounder Krupp cannon and fifteen thousand rounds of small-arm ammunition, while the Boers lost twelve killed, twenty wounded and ninety-nine prisoners. Besides these, it was afterwards learned that Lieutenant Reid and twenty Imperial Bushmen had captured Commandant Schroeder and forty-one Boer soldiers, with a Maxim cannon, horses, wagons and much ammunition on April 25th; while four Boers were killed and one hundred and eighty taken prisoners, with three thousand cattle, six thousand sheep and many wagons, near Paardeplatz.

**British
Captures.**

The British scouts under General Grenfell surprised and captured Van Rensburg's laager north of Pietersburg, seven Boers being killed, thirty-seven taken prisoners, and eight thousand rounds of ammunition, with all the wagons, oxen, horses, etc., of this Boer commando being captured. General Grenfell afterwards made additional captures, while the British detachment under Byng defeated the Boers on the frontier of Basutoland. About four hundred Boers were repulsed in an attack on the Malalatini Magistracy in Zululand, on April 28th. General Grenfell routed the Boers at Bergplaats, where they had their last "Long Tom" in position, the Boers blowing up this cannon and fleeing, ten of them being captured. General Sir Bindon Blood's forces cleared the country in the vicinity of Roos Senekal and captured sixty-five armed Boers, thirty wagons, a quantity of stock, a Krupp cannon and a quantity of ammunition.

**More
British
Captures
and
Successes.**

After abandoning his wagons and destroying two cannon, Ben Viljoen, with five hundred armed Boers, went south along the Steelport Valley. After successful operations in the south-eastern portion of the Orange River Colony, Major Du Moulin's column returned to Aliwal North, with three hundred prisoners, sixty thousand sheep, six thousand cattle, one hundred wagons, three hundred horses and eight hundred refugees.

**More
Boer
Losses.**

It was afterwards learned that early in May the British columns reported ten Boers killed, one hundred and six taken prisoners, and two hundred and eighty-six thousand rounds of small-arm ammunition, one hundred wagons, with their teams, and two thousand and seventy other horses being captured. Several days later it was learned that the British columns had, in addition, killed four Boers, wounded five and captured one hundred and eighteen prisoners, one hundred and twenty wagons and one hundred and six thousand rounds of small-arm ammunition.

**More
British
Captures.**

**Boer
Losses.**

At this time the first real Boer surrenders since Prinsloo's capitulation occurred. General Babington drove a large Boer force from its intrenched position at Hartebeestfontein, and was heavily engaged the next day at Lopfontein. General Colville's column surprised Hans Botha's laager near Heidelberg, the Boers fleeing and leaving their wagons to the British. Generals Douglas's and Benson's columns defeated the Boers at Goedekop, capturing their laager.

**Boer
Success
and
Defeats.**

A small patrol of the Diamond Fields Horse was captured by the Boers near Cradock, but was rescued the same day. A small Boer force which had reoccupied Roos Senekal was dispersed, losing three killed, nine taken prisoners, seven wagons and one hundred cattle. Lord Methuen reoccupied Lichtenburg, and the British columns operating in the Standerton district captured two Boer laagers. General Plumer's column arrived at Eerste Fabrieken, after successful operations near Oliphant's River.

**More
Boer
Losses.**

A week later it was announced that the Boers had in several days lost twenty-eight killed, six wounded and three hundred and thirteen prisoners, while the British also captured nine thousand rounds of small-arm ammunition, two hundred and thirty wagons, fifteen hundred horses and large quantities of grain and stock. General Grenfell occupied Louistrichart and fifty Boers were made prisoners. In the next few days the Boers lost eight killed, twenty wounded and one hundred and thirty-two made prisoners, besides a machine cannon, sixty-four hundred rounds of small-arm ammunition, one hundred and fifty wagons and eight hundred and seventy horses.

**British
Captures.**

The net result of the combined operations in the bush veld was the capture of fifteen hundred armed Boers and the Pietersburg base by the British columns. Most of the stores at Johannesburg were reopened and a number of mines were restarted. Lord Methuen recaptured from the Boers the cannon belonging to the "O" Battery.

**Boer
Losses.**

A British armored train was derailed by the Boers, and Major Heath, of the South Lancashire Regiment, was killed. During the third week in May the Boers lost nineteen killed, fourteen wounded and two hundred and thirty-eight taken prisoners, while two hundred and twelve rifles, one hundred and five thousand rounds of ammunition, two hundred and eighty-six wagons and large numbers of horses and other live stock were captured.

**De Wet
and the
Boer
Invaders
of Cape
Colony.**

There now seemed to be a distinct change in the attitude of the Boers, who came forward in large numbers to surrender. The Boer invaders in Cape Colony were slightly reinforced, as the result of the continued harrying movements against the Boers in the southern part of the Orange River Colony. De Wet made strenuous efforts to induce his lately-dispersed followers to return with him to Cape Colony, but

they flatly refused. Bands of Boers were defeated at Cradock and Middelburg, in Cape Colony, and at Paardefontein, in the Orange River Colony.

During the last week of May the British captured large numbers of prisoners, rifles, cattle and horses from the Boers, who also lost sixty-three killed and thirty-six wounded. The Boers in the eastern Transvaal trekked in confusion, breaking up into small parties. The Highland Light Infantry surprised a Boer laager in the Brandfort district, killing twelve, wounding thirteen and capturing twelve Boers. Colonel Wilson, with Kitchener's scouts at Pietersburg, completed another successful expedition. The Johannesburg Rifles routed some Boers in the hills near Johannesburg and entrapped eleven of them.

**British
Captures.**

About eight hundred Boers under Kruitzinger advanced southward in Cape Colony and captured forty-one men of the Midland Mounted Rifles, after a stout resistance. A British patrol successfully defended themselves against the attacks of two hundred Boers north-east of Bangor until the arrival of reinforcements, when the Boers retired. About one hundred Boers were routed by a patrol of Border Scouts near Kenhardt, losing fifteen killed and seventeen wounded and captured.

**Boer
Losses.**

On May 29th fourteen hundred and fifty British troops, with seven cannon, were returning to camp at Vlakkfontein, when the Boers under Delarey, under cover of a veld fire, attacked the British rear-guard, composed of three hundred and thirty men, with two cannon, which were captured, but recovered when the rest of the British force came into action, the Boers being driven off and their position being occupied by the British, the British losses being sixty-two killed, one hundred and twenty-one wounded and eight missing, and the Boer killed numbering forty-one.

**Delarey's
Defeat.**

On June 2d Kruitzinger's commando captured Jamestown, in Cape Colony, the British losing three killed and two wounded, and the stores in the town being pillaged, but the small garrison was released soon after it had surrendered. The next day Colonel White's column attacked the Boers, five miles north of Jamestown, and drove them from the field with heavy loss, recapturing fifty horses and a large quantity of rifles, ammunition and stores.

**Boer
Victory
and
Defeat
in Cape
Colony.**

Lord Kitchener placed General French in command of the British forces in Cape Colony. On June 2d seven hundred Boers, under Scheepers, attacked Willowmore, but were repulsed after nine hours' fighting. Boer raiders were active in Zululand.

**Another
Boer
Defeat.**

The Victoria Cross was conferred on Captain Howse, of New South Wales; Captain J. E. Masterson, of the Devonshire Regiment; Corporal J. J. Clements, of Rimington's Guides, and Private C. C. Ravenhill, of the Royal Scots Fusiliers.

Rewards.

**Boer
Losses.**

Lord Kitchener reported that during May twenty-six hundred and forty Boers were killed or made prisoners, and that during the first week of June twenty-six Boers were killed, four wounded and four hundred and forty-two made prisoners, while six hundred and fifty-one rifles, one hundred and fifteen thousand five hundred and fifty rounds of ammunition, one hundred and twenty wagons and four thousand horses were captured. Lord Kitchener also reported that Commandant Van Rensburg and his command had surrendered at Pietersburg.

**British
Suc-
cesses.**

In Cape Colony the British gained two important successes. Colonel Scobell surprised a party of Boers under Kruitziuger at Diepfontein, north-west of Barkly East, and took twenty prisoners, one hundred and sixty-six horses, etc. Colonel Wyndham attacked the Boers under Van Reenen at Ruigte Vlei and took twenty-two prisoners, with horses, rifles and ammunition.

**Escaped
Boers
Recap-
tured.**

Nine British soldiers were killed in a railway collision near Pretoria. Six Boers who had taken the oath of neutrality escaped from Pretoria, with arms, to join one of the Boer commandos, but three of them were recaptured by the British and two of them were shot.

**Other
Occur-
rences.**

The Victoria Cross was awarded to Sergeant W. Firth, of the West Riding of Yorkshire Regiment. The Compensation Commission in London heard evidence of two Belgian claimants, one of whom, E. Burton, was a stationmaster on the Netherlands Railway. Mrs. Louis Botha arrived in England and several days later went to Belgium. The report of the Transvaal Concessions Commission was now completed and published.

**De Wet's
Defeat.**

The British under General Elliot marched from Vrede and engaged the Boers under De Wet near Reitz, capturing seventy-one loaded wagons, forty-five prisoners, fifty-eight rifles, ten thousand rounds of ammunition and four thousand cattle. The Boers left seventeen killed and three wounded on the field, while the British lost twenty killed and twenty-five wounded.

**Boer
Victory.**

A superior Boer force surprised two hundred and fifty Victorians near Wilmansrust, in the Transvaal, the Victorians losing eighteen killed and forty-two wounded, and only fifty-two escaping, the remainder being captured but soon released. The Boers also captured two "Pom-Poms."

**Boer
Defeat.**

A very belated dispatch described the surprise of a Boer laager by British scouts on the Pienaars River on May 31st, when the Boers lost all their wagons, seven thousand cattle, forty prisoners, twenty-seven killed and eighty-six wounded, the British losing five killed and twenty-one wounded.

**Boers
in Cape
Colony.**

It was stated that eighteen hundred Boers still were in Cape Colony, many of them being dismounted. The Boer commandos were repulsed

with loss near Tarkastad by the British under Colonel Munro. In the western Transvaal the Boers were worsted at Haartebeestep.

There now were many Boer refugees at the camps at Bloemfontein. In a speech at Bulawayo, Mr. Cecil John Rhodes said that the war was practically over and that South African confederation would come within four years.

**Rhodes's
Speech.**

Lord Kitchener reported that during the second and third weeks of June the Boers lost forty-one killed, twenty-seven wounded, two hundred and thirty who were made prisoners, forty-one thousand eight hundred rounds of small-arm ammunition and two hundred and sixty-four rifles. On June 20th a party of Cape Midland Mounted Rifles suffered a reverse at Waterkloof from Malon's Boer commando, the British losing ten killed, four wounded and sixty-six taken prisoners.

**Boer
Losses
and
Victory.**

The British had swept the Orange River Colony so thoroughly in May and June that there was a perceptible desire on the part of the Boer commanders to make voluntary surrenders. General Blood endeavored to capture the Boer government officials who were hiding twenty miles south-west of Carolina, but Commandant Louis Botha escaped by leaving his wagons and cattle and turning south-westward in the direction of Bethel.

**Escape
of Boer
Officials.**

Lord Methuen arrived at Zeerust after a fight in which the Boers lost twenty-six killed and some taken prisoners. A number of Boer families trekked into Bechuanaland from the Transvaal and surrendered to the British. A number of other Boer families trekked into Damaraland, but the German authorities arrested all who entered that German territory. Mr. Botha, a Dutch member of the Cape Colony Parliament, was captured and sjamboked. The report of the South African Land Settlement Commission was now completed and published.

**Boer
Treks.**

**Other
Events.**

Lord Kitchener reported that during the last week of June seventy-four Boers were killed, sixty wounded, two hundred and ninety-six taken prisoners, and a large quantity of rifles, ammunition and live stock captured by the British. On June 26th a British armored train repulsed Boer attacks on two blockhouses on the Delagoa Bay Railway. Many Boer refugees were brought into Harrismith, with large capture of wagons, horses, cattle, sheep and grain. Conroy's Boer commando was defeated near Uppington, in Cape Colony. Fouche's Boer commando invaded the native Transkei territory, but soon fled towards the Drakensberg Mountains. A large Boer force attacked Richmond, in Cape Colony, on June 25th, but retired on the approach of a British column.

**Boer
Losses
and
Defeats.**

Lord Kitchener reported that during the first week of July forty Boers were killed, twenty-seven wounded and two hundred and three made prisoners, while one hundred and forty-nine rifles and three hun-

**Boer
Losses
and
Raids.**

dred and twelve wagons were also captured. By the wrecking of a train a British officer and eighteen other persons lost their lives. The Roodepoort railway station was burned by the Boers, who were, however, driven off with heavy loss. The Rimington Rifles captured a Boer position, taking nineteen prisoners.

Other
Occurrences.

The Dutch pastor at Kroonstad and a prominent Boer prisoner appealed to the Boers to settle down under the British flag. A Parliamentary paper was issued containing documents on the peace negotiations between Lord Kitchener and Commandant Botha and on the measures taken to coerce the Boers into resistance to the British. A dispatch from Lord Kitchener covering the military operations during March and April was also published. M. Jean Bloch replied at the United Service Institution to the criticisms upon his paper about the war in South Africa.

British
Captures.

General Broadwood captured the Orange Free State government, except President Steyn, who escaped in his shirt sleeves. The British also captured Scheepers's laager at Cambdeboo with thirty-one prisoners, most of them Cape Colony Dutch rebels. Lord Kitchener reported that during the second week of July thirty-two Boers were killed, thirty-four wounded and four hundred and forty-seven made prisoners. In an attack by the Boers on a South African Constabulary post the British lost three killed and seven wounded, the Boers capturing an old 7-pounder screw cannon. In a message about the skirmish near Warmbaths Lord Kitchener explained how it was that he contradicted Reuter's account, and added that he does not telegraph news of actions unless they have definite results.

More
British
Captures.

Lord Methuen surprised and captured a Boer laager, taking forty-three prisoners. Sir John Gordon Sprigg considered the war at a more hopeful stage for the British at this time than ever before. Major-General Baden-Powell now started for England on sick leave. Lord Kitchener reported that during the third week of July forty-three Boers were killed, twenty-five wounded and three hundred and sixteen made prisoners. General French was pressing northward the Boer bands in Cape Colony, but the Boers made two determined attacks on Aberdeen, and they also captured and burned a train near Beaufort West, killing three and wounding eighteen of the British. Seven of the Connaught Rangers were killed and twenty wounded near Jamestown, but the Boers were driven off.

Boer
Defeats
in Cape
Colony.

On July 19th a Boer commando in the Orange River Colony was surprised by the British under Major Pine-Coffin, fourteen Boers being captured. On July 22d a Boer laager in Cape Colony was surprised, ten Boers being made prisoners and one hundred and five horses being captured by the victorious British. A subaltern in charge of a British

garrison tracked and surprised a Boer party, killing three or four and capturing as many. Two Cape Colony rebels were hanged at Burghersdorp and Somerset East, and four others were sent into penal servitude for ten years each. Death sentences on thirty-four rebels were commuted.

Letters found in President Steyn's baggage showed that Secretary Reitz was anxious for peace, in view of the desperate condition of the Boer forces. It was now announced that in June the concentration camps contained eighty-five thousand four hundred and ten whites and twenty-three thousand four hundred and eighty-nine blacks. A woman physician and philanthropist wrote showing that the refugee camp complaints were much exaggerated and that the British refugees fared worse than the Boer refugees. Major-General Baden-Powell was ordered to take a three months' complete rest. President Krüger's wife died of pneumonia at Pretoria on July 20th, and was buried there the next day, Sunday, July 21st.

Other
Matters.

On July 21st a Boer convoy was surprised, twenty-five prisoners being captured. Lord Kitchener reported that during the last week of July the Boers lost twenty-four killed, twenty-five wounded and three hundred and three made prisoners, while large quantities of stock, etc., were also captured. The British surprised Potgieter's laager near Wolmarans and Myburgh's commando near Dassiespoort, the Boers losing heavily in both cases. The British under General Frederick William Kitchener, while operating against Boers under Ben Viljoen north of Middelburg, captured a "Pom-Pom," twenty wagons and thirty-two prisoners. On July 21st a small British column was attacked by four hundred Boers on the northern frontier of Natal, the Boers being repulsed with heavy loss.

British
Captures.

A detachment of Steinacker's Horse, occupying Bremersdorp, in Swaziland, were driven out on July 24th, and fought their way sixteen miles, losing about ten men killed and wounded and a few missing. General Sir Charles Knox's columns arrived at Bethulie and Aliwal North, having cleared the country from Thabanchu. Mr. Van Rhyen, a member of the Cape Colony Legislative Council, was arrested for treason. In the Orange River Colony the Boers were driven westward by the British under General Plumer.

More
British
Captures.

The British War Office published certain evidence of the shooting of wounded British soldiers by the Boers. It was now stated that in the refugee camps the death rate was diminishing and that everything that was possible was being done for the refugees. The Compensation Commission decided that the Netherlands Railway employees, as a class, were so actively hostile against the British that they had forfeited any right to compensation as neutrals. Major-General Baden-Powell,

Other
Matters.

on his arrival in England, was given most enthusiastic popular receptions at Southampton and Woking. Lord Chesham also was accorded a most hearty popular welcome in Buckinghamshire on July 25th, on his return home from South Africa.

**Boers
in Portu-
guese
Africa.**

A dispatch from Lorenzo Marques on July 31st stated that a Boer commando, with two cannon, had entered Portuguese territory, encamping at Guanetz, where there already were five hundred Portuguese troops, and to which artillery was sent on the morning of the same day, while three hundred Portuguese troops in addition were ready to proceed there unless the Boers surrendered.

**Other
Matters.**

Commandant Hermanus Steyn, a cousin of President Steyn, was killed while fighting the British at Ficksburg on August 1st. On July 31st the British House of Commons voted an annuity of one hundred thousand pounds (half a million dollars) to Lord Roberts for his services in South Africa. On August 9th Lord Kitchener issued a proclamation warning the Boers that unless they ceased their resistance by September 1st their leaders would be banished permanently from South Africa.

**Boer
Shooting
of
Natives.**

The Boer leaders having announced their intention to shoot all blacks in the service of the British, whether armed or unarmed, Lord Kitchener warned them that if they carried out their threat all Boers who shot natives would be court-martialed and shot. In the British House of Commons, Colonial Secretary Chamberlain also announced that all Boers who shot natives would be court-martialed and executed.

**Land
for
British
Soldiers.**

Mr. Chamberlain asked the House of Commons to vote a grant of six million five hundred thousand pounds (thirty-two million five hundred thousand dollars) in aid of the Transvaal and Orange River Colonies, the grant to be for the purchase of land for British soldiers who would settle in those colonies and for Boers who accepted British sovereignty.

**Outrages
and
Reprisals.**

Much had been said about British cruelty in this war, but such charges are made against invaders in every war. The British burned farm buildings because Boer guerrillas fired shots from them at British troops. United States Consul-General Stowe at Cape Town said: "The British only burned buildings from which shots were fired at them. I know of several instances myself in which they refrained from burning buildings where they would have had very good reasons for doing so." In our Civil War the same thing was done by Union troops as a reprisal for guerrilla outrages and murders, all buildings being sometimes burned for several miles around, and after the war many houseless chimneys could be seen in the Southern States. In the Shenandoah Valley in 1864 General Hunter ordered a fine mansion with piano and all furniture to be burned, because two shots had been fired at him

from the windows. In a dispatch to General Grant, dated October 7, 1864, General Sheridan, while in the Shenandoah Valley, in Virginia, made this statement: "I have destroyed over two thousand barns filled with wheat and hay and farming implements, over seventy mills filled with flour and wheat, have driven in front of this army four herd of stock, and have killed and issued to the troops not less than three thousand sheep. * * * Lieutenant John R. Meigs, my engineer officer, was murdered beyond Harrisonburg, near Dayton. For this atrocious act all the houses within an area of five miles were burned." Early in 1865 General Grant ordered General Sheridan to desolate the Shenandoah Valley so completely that a crow in flying over it would have to carry its food with it. In Raleigh, North Carolina, in April, 1865, General Kilpatrick had a man hanged to a tree for firing a shot at him from a second-story window near his quarters. In the Franco-German War of 1870-'71 the Germans punished the outrages of the franc-tireurs, the French guerrillas, by burning buildings. In the Philippine War American troops burned villages to punish guerrilla outrages.

Bishop Hartzell, an American Methodist missionary in South Africa, said that the Boers were entirely responsible for the war and that Great Britain had God and right on her side. United States Consul-General Stowe at Cape Town said: "I think Sir Alfred Milner is the man for the occasion, as he is a man of firmness, like Grant. * * * I cannot understand Webster Davis. When he was in Cape Colony he was making pro-British speeches." Captain Musgrave, who fought in the Cuban army and in the American army in Cuba, went to South Africa a Boer sympathizer, but ceased to be one when he got there, saying that he saw Boers fire on white flags and do other things that turned him against them. In answer to the oft-made assertion that nine-tenths of the American people sympathized with the Boers, an American in Cape Town said that nine-tenths of the Americans in South Africa sympathized with the British.

**American
Pro-
British
Sympa-
thizers.**

In answer to the pro-Boer demands for the independence of the two Boer republics, Sir Alfred Milner presented a petition signed by one hundred and fifty thousand natives of South Africa, protesting against such Boer independence, as it meant oppression for the negro races within the limits of the territory of the former Boer republics. The negroes of South Africa were on the British side, one traveling in the United States saying that the English protected them in their rights, while the Boers oppressed them wherever they had the opportunity.

**Negro
Petition
against
Boer Inde-
pendence.**

The pro-Boer sympathizers in Europe and America still were very loud and demonstrative in their utterances, though all the Continental European governments, as well as the government of the United States, refused absolutely to intervene or mediate in the interest of the Boers.

**Pro-Boer
Sympa-
thizers.**

The press of France and Germany especially, as well as a large portion of that of the United States and even a small part of that of Great Britain itself, were as ardent as ever in their sympathy with the Boers. In France, Germany and the other Continental European countries the press showed a disposition to couple Great Britain and the United States together in their denunciations, condemning the British for their attitude in South Africa and the Americans for their course in the Philippines, and accusing the British of cruelty toward the Boers and charging the Americans with the same treatment toward the Filipinos. The American pro-Boer sympathizers, with some exceptions, also generally sympathized with the Filipinos.

**Boer
Notions.**

Letters to the London *Times* from Natal declared that the people of that British colony were either thoroughly loyal or thoroughly rebels, while in Cape Colony thousands of Afrikanders were "on the fence." These letters also stated that in dealing with the Boers the British were dealing with a very peculiar people, who, from childhood, have been imbued with the belief that they are the chosen of God Who has called them to the dominion of South Africa, and that ultimately the British intruders are to be driven into the sea, leaving the millions of blacks to be the slaves of the Boers.

**Boer
Emis-
saries
in the
United
States.**

On February 24, 1902, Messrs. Wessels and Wolmarans arrived at New York as Boer emissaries to the United States; and on March 5th they called on Secretary of State John Hay and President Roosevelt at Washington, who received them personally, but not in their official capacity, and informed them that the United States could not and would not intervene in the South African conflict, and that the shipment of horses to the British in South Africa could not be stopped, as it was perfectly legitimate under international law and the laws of war.

**Sir
Wilfred
Laurier's
Remarks.**

In the meantime Sir Wilfred Laurier, Canada's Prime Minister, said in a speech in the Canadian Parliament: "There is but one future for the Dutch. They have been conquered, but I pledge my reputation and my name as a British subject that if they have lost their independence they have not lost their freedom. There is but one future for South Africa, and that is a grand confederation on the pattern of the Canadian confederation. It is a federation in which Cape Colony and Natal, the Orange Free State, the Transvaal and Rhodesia shall be united under a federal constitution under the British flag. * * * They will have that which has been found everywhere during the last sixty years under the British flag—namely, liberty for all, equality for all, justice and civil rights for British and Dutch alike."

**Refugee
Camps.**

In the meantime many thousands of the population of districts that were the scenes of disturbance had been collected in refugee camps,

where they were guarded, sheltered and fed by the British, who thus took care of the Boer families whose adult male members were in the Boer guerrilla bands raiding the Vaal River Colony, the Orange River Colony and Cape Colony. These were practically concentration camps, though they were wholly unlike the concentration camps of the Spaniards in Cuba, where the reconcentrados were left to starve, and were more like the concentration camps of the Americans in the Philippines, where the Filipino refugees were guarded, sheltered and fed by the American military forces. These British concentration camps in South Africa and the American concentration camps in the Philippines frequently were denounced as "Weylerism in South Africa" and "Weylerism in the Philippines"; but these comparisons with Weyler's methods in Cuba were wholly incorrect, as the British and the Americans did not starve the inmates of their refugee camps as did the Spaniards in their concentration camps in Cuba. The Boer soldiers, thus being relieved of the care of their families, seemed to be enabled to prolong their guerrilla warfare for an indefinite period. In the meantime large numbers of Boers, tired of the useless guerrilla war, gradually laid down their arms and returned to their farms, and some even coöperated with the British in restoring order by taking the field against their kinsmen and their former companions in arms, thus being looked upon as traitors by the irreconcilable Boers who seemed determined to keep up the struggle with the British.

There were the usual Boer raids on the British convoys and the capture of small Boer bands of raiders during August, 1901. The Boer bands under Kruitziuger and other leaders in Cape Colony, which had been raiding in various districts in that colony and even menacing important towns, with the aid of several thousand Dutch farmers of the colony, who joined their ranks or furnished them with supplies, were driven out of that colony before the end of August.

**Military
Situation.**

Reports of atrocities by the Boers, such as the murder of wounded men, of prisoners and of natives, were frequent and at first were discredited and even suppressed by the British government. These reports were denied by the Boers, and in England some of them were considered false or very much exaggerated; but evidence of such atrocities increased during August, 1901, thus calling forth a public demand for summary vengeance upon all Boer guerrillas guilty of such outrages. On August 1st Lord Kitchener telegraphed that, after the surrender of an officer's patrol of twenty men and a few native scouts who had been surrounded by two hundred Boers in the Orange River Colony, the Boers forced the native scouts to hold up their hands and then shot them down in cold blood, afterward shooting a wounded trooper whom they believed to be a Cape Colony boy. On the same

**Reports
of Boer
Atrocities.**

day General French informed Lord Kitchener that he had received a letter from Kruitzingen declaring his intention to shoot all natives found in British employ, whether armed or unarmed. Reports were received of many atrocious murders of natives by Boers in Cape Colony. On August 29th the British government ordered Lord Kitchener to proclaim the death penalty for all found guilty of such atrocities as those at Vlakfontein.

**Boer
Raiders
in Cape
Colony.**

Regarding the field of military operations in September, 1901, Rudyard Kipling remarked: "The front is precisely where it has been for the last year—neither in the Transvaal nor in the Orange River Colony, but in Cape Town and Cape Colony." The scene of operations sometimes extended to the frontier of Natal, and parts of Cape Colony hitherto unmolested were now invaded by Boer raiders. As a large portion of the Cape Colony Dutch were either in secret or in open sympathy with the Boer invaders, and to prevent disorders in the vicinity of Cape Town, severe restrictions were considered necessary by Lord Milner, by which title Sir Alfred Milner was now known, having been created Baron Milner in 1901 and Viscount Milner in 1902. General French had driven the Boer raiders out of Cape Colony. In the meantime Scheepers's bands had dashed southward into the colony toward the coast two hundred miles east of Cape Town, but by September 5th Scheepers's three hundred raiders had been driven northward.

**Progress
of the
Guerrilla
Warfare.**

Early in September, 1901, the British mounted columns scoured the deserted regions of the Orange River Colony and Cape Colony in pursuit of guerrilla bands consisting of from one hundred to three hundred men. These guerrilla bands were well informed of British movements. They evaded their pursuers, and when they were pressed very hard they dissolved into small squads, which afterward united into larger bands. These Boer bands always were raiders, traversing the country to surprise and plunder some village held as a British post, embracing every opportunity to ambush the British mounted columns. To meet this kind of guerrilla warfare on the part of a few thousand Boers, the British now had more than one hundred and seventy-five thousand men, more than a hundred thousand men being required to guard three thousand miles of railway, while about seventy-five thousand were required to search, pursue and fight the roving guerrilla bands, all numbering about twelve thousand men.

**Delarey's
Defeat
and
Botha's
Victory.**

On September 11, 1901, Lord Methuen defeated the Boers under Delarey and Van Tonder, driving them from their strong position in Great Maries Valley, the British losing twenty-five killed and thirty wounded. About September 17, 1901, the Boers achieved two very notable victories; when one thousand Boers under Botha ambushed three companies of British mounted infantry near Scheepers's Nek, the

British losing sixteen killed, thirty wounded and one hundred and fifty-five prisoners, the latter soon being released; while a Boer force commanded by Smuts, dressed in Khaki and mistaken for British troops, made a sudden dash on about a hundred British lancers, killing forty-two and wounding thirty-six.

On September 26, 1901, a force of two thousand Boers under Botha attacked Forts Italia and Prospect, near the Zululand frontier, but were repulsed with heavy loss. The garrison of Fort Italia numbered three hundred men, of whom eighty occupied an outpost on a hill. About midnight six hundred Boers made a sudden and fierce attack on the outpost and soon seized it, killing the commander and disabling the whole force; after which they assailed the main camp from all sides, the garrison resisting them successfully from one o'clock in the night until seven o'clock in the evening of the next day, when the Boers retired as the garrison's ammunition was failing, the Boers losing one hundred and twenty-eight killed and two hundred and seventy wounded, while the British lost twelve killed and about a hundred wounded or missing. Fort Prospect was garrisoned by twenty men and was attacked by five hundred Boers, who were repulsed with the loss of sixty killed, among whom were two generals and a commandant, while many of them were wounded, the British losing only one man killed and eight men wounded.

**Botha's
Defeats
near the
Zululand
Frontier.**

After these two disastrous repulses Botha's force broke up into small bands, which moved swiftly in the rough and bushy region on the frontier of Zululand and near Luneburg, in the Transvaal. There were several rumors of Botha's capture while he was preparing to reunite his forces for a serious attack. Near the close of October he had a narrow escape, the British suddenly seizing his quarters at night, capturing some prisoners and finding Botha's hat, revolver and papers, which he had left in his hasty flight a few moments previously.

**Botha's
Narrow
Escape.**

On September 29, 1901, about a thousand Boers under Delarey made a night attack on Colonel Kekewich's camp at Moedwell, seventy-five miles west of Pretoria, but were repulsed after two hours' fighting, with the loss of many killed and one hundred and twenty-eight wounded, the British loss being thirty-three killed, eighty-eight wounded and forty missing. On October 24, 1901, the Boers under Generals Delarey and Kemp attacked a British force near the Bechuanaland frontier, but were repulsed after severe fighting, carrying off eight British wagons, but leaving forty of their dead on the field, while the British loss was twenty-eight killed and fifty-five wounded. Near the end of October, 1901, Colonel Kekewich captured seventy-eight Boers in a night surprise of Van Albert's camp about sixty miles west of Pretoria. Finally, on October 12, 1901, Lord Kitchener reported that General

**Delarey's
Defeats.**

**Capture
and
Exile of
Scheep-
ers.**

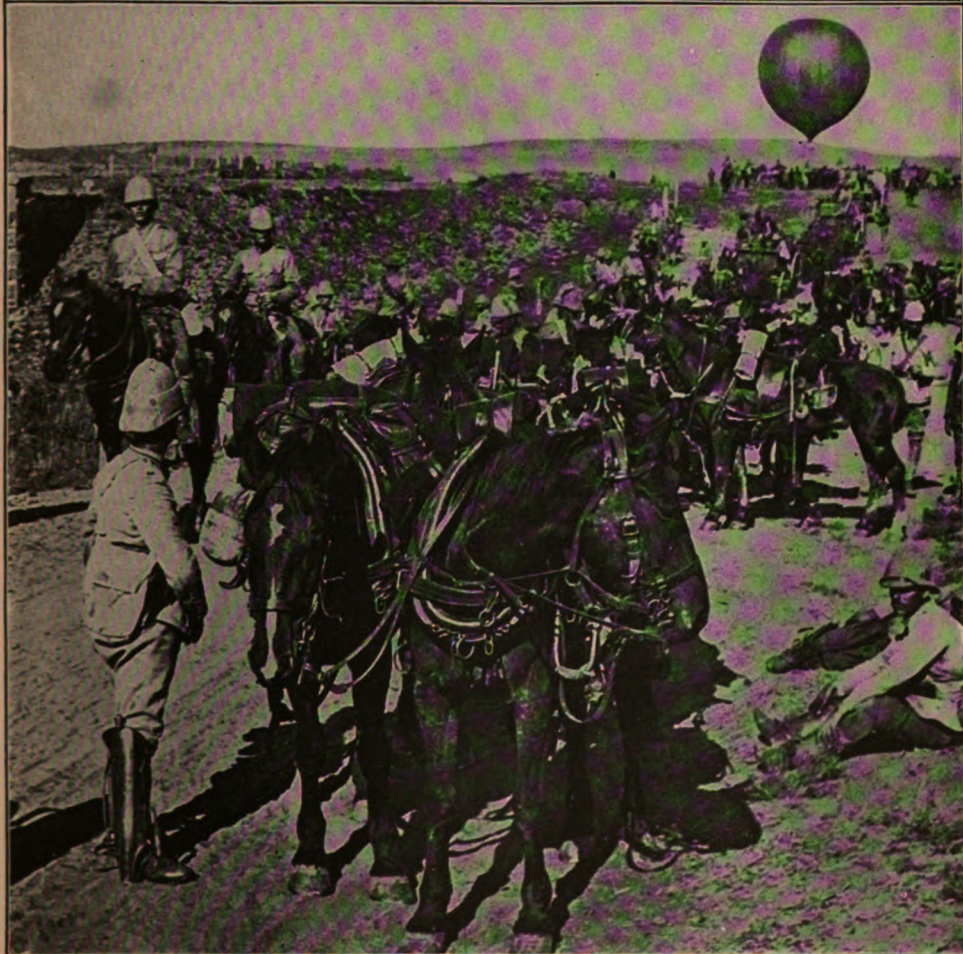
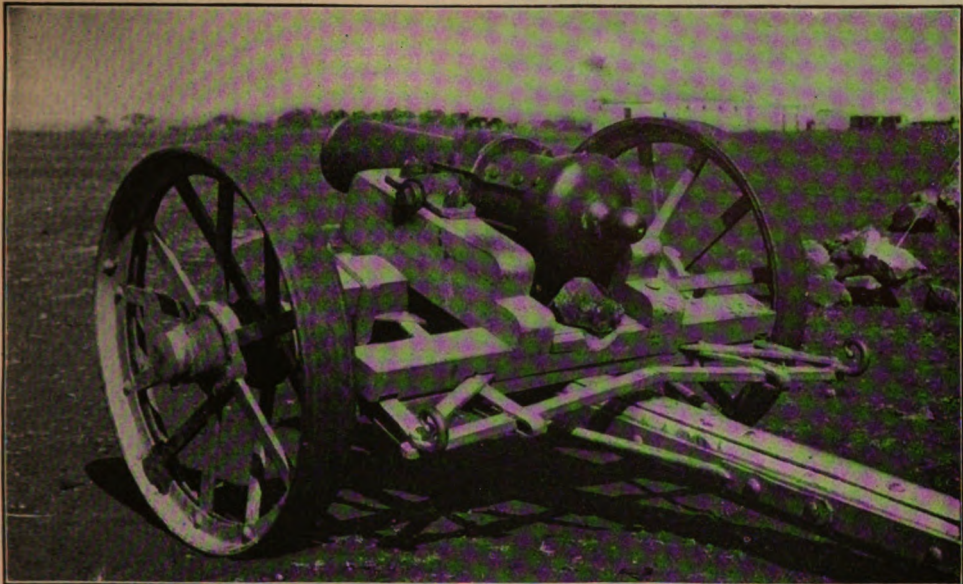
French had captured Commandant Scheepers, an active Boer invader of Cape Colony. Scheepers and eighteen other Boer leaders were banished permanently from South Africa.

**Martial
Law in
Cape
Colony.**

The British began their threatened infliction of the death penalty on Cape Colony rebels after sentence by court-martial. Lotter, a Cape Colony rebel, who for months had led a Boer commando in that colony, was executed at Middelburg, in that colony, on October 11, 1901. Schoeman, his second in command, was sentenced to death. A few other rebels were executed, and the death sentences of a number of others were commuted to penal servitude. There was some anxiety in London as to possible Boer reprisals for the capital punishment of Cape Colony rebels, as it was feared that Botha and De Wet might retaliate by killing captured British soldiers. Lords Milner and Kitchener had decided to make treason in Cape Colony odious and hazardous, as they now felt that the Boer leaders no longer were able to capture British soldiers and shoot them in retaliation, the total Boer forces now being reduced to about eight thousand men. The only persons on whom the Boers now could retaliate were those Boers in the Transvaal and the Orange Free State who had accepted British rule and thus had become abettors of the British cause. In fact, the Boers themselves had made a precedent for the British to follow; as General Delarey had issued a proclamation on August 16, 1901, warning all Boers not to aid the British by word or deed, as "by doing so they will be guilty of high treason and be dealt with stringently according to law, not only as regards their persons, but their property as well." The only persons upon whom the Boers inflicted the death penalty under this proclamation were a few poor Kaffirs who had assisted the British.

**Battle of
Brakens-
laagte.**

On October 31, 1901, Colonel Benson's rear guard was surprised in a fierce attack by a thousand Boers under General Louis Botha, near Brakenslaagte, in the eastern Transvaal, about twenty miles north-west from Bethel. The Boers began the attack in a blinding rainstorm, and fierce fighting ensued during the day and the following night, the Boers charging again and again upon the British lines and being repulsed in every assault until the following morning, November 1, 1901, when the British were reinforced by a detachment under Colonel Barker, which had marched all night. The Boers then retired, having captured two cannon; while the British convoy had retired under the brow of a hill, in which movement the greatest British losses occurred. Colonel Benson was wounded mortally in the beginning of the conflict and was succeeded in command by Major Woods-Sampson. The British loss was sixty-one killed and one hundred and seventy-three wounded, the loss in officers being heavy. The Boer loss was



From Photographs, copyright by Underwood & Underwood
SCENES IN BOER WAR

Upper: Cannon Made at Mafeking During the Siege
Lower: Balloon Reconnaissance near Johannesburg

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO
LIBRARY
1100 S. MICHIGAN AVE.
CHICAGO, ILL. 60607
FUNDATIONS

forty-four killed and about a hundred wounded, General Opperman being among the killed.

About the middle of November, 1901, De Wet assailed a British rear-guard in the north-eastern part of the Orange River Colony, but he was repulsed very easily. The Boers captured fifty-eight of the British South African Yeomanry patrol at Brakspruit, on November 13, 1901, but they soon released their captives. A Boer commando under Grobelaar surrounded and captured a hundred Cape railway pioneers at Villiersdorp, about November 20, 1901; but this Boer detachment was driven off by a British force under Colonel Rimington. The British under General Knox captured thirty-six Boers of Buoy's commando who had escaped after the fight, among whom were Commandant Joubert and two field cornets.

**De Wet
Repulsed.**

**Boer
Captures.**

**British
Capture.**

Lord Kitchener's blockhouse system had cleared the Dutch districts of the Boer raiders to such an extent as to prevent systematic hostilities from being carried on in those districts, the Boer fighting forces being simply roaming and scattered bands. Some sickness among the refugee camps where the Boer women and children were collected under the supervision of the British military authorities drew some criticism from Miss Emily Hobhouse, but certain stories as to the sufferings of the refugees were denied, not only by the British, but by Americans and persons of other nationalities.

**Block-
house
System
and
Refugee
Camps.**

At the beginning of December, 1901, Lord Kitchener's blockhouse system had become so effective that the Boer bands of raiders were able no longer to roam over vast areas at their will; but the great number of these small Boer commandos made it very difficult to pursue and capture them. There were seventy of these small bands registered—twenty-six in the Transvaal, thirty-one in the Orange River Colony and thirteen in Cape Colony, the latter comprising about fifteen hundred men. Eight bands under Delarey were scattered through the western Transvaal. Two hundred Boers under Ben Viljoen were north of the Delagoa Bay Railway. Eleven bands, comprising eighteen hundred men, were south of that railway about December 3, 1901, being in touch with General Louis Botha and the so-called Boer government near Lake Chrissie. All these bands would separate whenever they were threatened with attack and would reunite quickly whenever an opportunity afforded for an assault on a small British force. The War Office in London decided at once to withdraw twenty batteries of artillery from South Africa, because heavy cannon were of little use and were a hindrance to swift movements in guerrilla warfare. The British blockhouse system was so effective that there was not a single interruption of railway operation from October 1 to November 21, 1901, while there had been thirty-two such interruptions in November,

**Boer
Bands.**

1900. A large and increasing area was cleared of Boer guerrillas, and more than sixteen hundred miles of railway were now protected by blockhouses, rendering it possible not only to confront the military situation, but also to accommodate the large and increasing volume of business traffic.

**Rapid
Wane
of the
Boer
Fortunes.**

It was now reported that civil administration was reëstablished firmly in the Transvaal, and that the war could not last many months longer. All the Boers except the most obstinate had been captured or had surrendered voluntarily; and among these a strong pro-British feeling had grown up gradually, which recognized the hopelessness and uselessness of further resistance to the British arms, and they resolved to accept the inevitable and to promote the prosperity of the country under the British flag. Many of these reconciled Boers were even offering their services to the British to assist in restoring order. Those who remained with the irreconcilable Boers were believed to be desperate men and were not expected to surrender, as every Boer now taken prisoner fought savagely before he could be captured. The British were as determined as ever, and their proposed method was to wear out the small remaining Boer force by constant harassing. Lord Kitchener's report for September, 1901, showed that more than two thousand men had been withdrawn from the Boer ranks during that month—one hundred and seventy men being killed in fighting, one hundred and fourteen wounded prisoners being taken, also one thousand three hundred and eighty-five unwounded prisoners and three hundred and ninety-three surrendered Boers. Some of the British successes of the time were attributed to the coöperation of the new Boer allies of the British, these reconciled Boers having been organized into a pro-British corps under the command of Cellier and Cronje, acting under General Bruce Hamilton.

**Boers
in the
British
Service.**

**British
Captures.**

On December 5, 1901, three British columns near Ermelo, in the Waterberg district, and in the north-western Transvaal, captured about two hundred and fifty Boers. Lord Kitchener's report for the week ending December 9, 1901, showed the following Boer losses: thirty-one killed, seventeen wounded, three hundred and fifty-two prisoners, thirty-five submitted—total, four hundred and forty-four. On December 11, 1901, General Bruce Hamilton surprised and captured nearly the entire Bethel commando after a night march, killing seven Boers and taking one hundred and thirty-one prisoners. After another night march he surprised Piet Viljoen's laager, twenty-five miles north-west from Ermelo, killing sixteen Boers, capturing seventy-six armed men and wounding many others, who were left at farms.

**Boths
Defeated.**

On December 5, 1901, an engagement also occurred near Luneberg, in the Transvaal, in which the British took eighty prisoners, and in

which Commandant Louis Botha was wounded severely in the left leg below the knee, escaping capture only by crawling into a bush. About December 15, 1901, Commandant Badenhorst and fourteen other Boers were captured in the Waterberg. About the same time Commandant Kruitziuger was wounded severely and captured while attempting to break through the cordon of blockhouses at Hanover Road, in the eastern Transvaal.

**Capture
of
Baden-
horst and
Kruitzi-
nger.**

On December 18, 1901, the flooding tide of British successes commenced ebbing. On three successive days the Boers were assailing the British at various points, suddenly surrounding advance guards or dashing on small British posts and inflicting heavy losses. The losses of both sides were about equal, but the losses of the Boers were more serious on account of the smallness of their remaining forces. On the above-named date—December 18, 1901—De Wet, at the head of a Boer force of eight hundred men, attacked the British at Langberg, but retired after four hours' fighting. On the night of the 19th the Boers were repulsed in an attack on the British at Eland Spruit, with the loss of eight killed and four wounded left on the field, other wounded having been carried off, while the British loss was seven killed and twenty-four wounded. On the same day a British detachment attacked Commandant Smit's band in the eastern Transvaal, killing six Boers and capturing sixteen. On the 20th—December, 1901—the most serious of the three days' fighting occurred at Tabel Kop, or Maggiesdeel, in the Orange River Colony, where the Boers, disguised as British Yeomanry, deceived Colonel Damant and gained the race for a commanding summit, whereupon they opened a heavy fire from this point and inflicted a serious loss upon the British, who lost thirty-two killed and forty wounded; after which Colonel Rimington's force appeared on the field and dispersed the Boers in all directions, capturing some prisoners, one of whom was a commandant, and killing thirty-three Boers.

**British
Reverses
and Suc-
cesses.**

Lord Kitchener reported the Boer losses for the week ending December 21, 1901, as forty-five killed, twenty-five wounded, three hundred and ten captured and thirty-five voluntarily surrendered—total, four hundred and fifteen. Reports of Boer losses for the week of December 23–30, 1901, showed eighty-nine killed, fifty-five wounded, four hundred and thirty-one captured and voluntarily surrendered—total, five hundred and seventy-five.

**Boer
Losses.**

On Christmas morning, 1901, before day, De Wet, with his guerrilla band, said to number over a thousand men, defeated a British detachment of over three hundred men at Zeefontein. The British camp, on the edge of a precipice which was guarded inadequately, was assailed by the Boers, who climbed up the precipice, suddenly over-

**De Wet's
Victory.**

powered the picket, rushed through the camp and shot the British soldiers as they came out from their tents. The few British soldiers who got clear from their camps fought heroically, but were soon overpowered by the superior numbers of the Boers. The British loss was fifty-six killed, fifty-four wounded and two hundred and forty-nine prisoners. It was reported that the Boers carried off two wagon-loads of their own dead and wounded. The Imperial Light Horse came a distance of fourteen miles and arrived at Zeefontein after six in the morning, pursuing the Boers, who fled safely into the rough country, with the ammunition and supplies which they had captured, but released their prisoners, as usual, a few days later, as they were unable to guard them. Lord Kitchener's report stated that the victorious Boers treated the British wounded very well.

**Boer
State-
ments.**

**Shooting
of
Natives.**

**Refugee
Camps.**

**Guerrilla
Warfare
at the
Opening
of 1902.**

An English translation of the Boer telegrams, reports and proclamations showed that the Boer leaders constantly deceived their people as to the real state of affairs by reporting British defeats in every fight, the Boers being represented as losing only in cattle and horses, while the British were accused of attacking Boer ambulances and of ignoring the Red Cross and the white flag. Lord Kitchener's reports showed that the Boers shot Kaffirs on slight cause and cruelly treated the British wounded at Brakenslaagte. There were contradictory statements as to the condition of the refugee camps, and a great outcry was raised by pro-Boer sympathizers in Europe and America.

The year 1902 opened with the South African situation unchanged on the surface, the Boer bands being so small that no regular battle occurred in January; but the Boer guerrillas still were unceasing in harassing the British convoys by ambushes and night surprises of small detached British posts. Lord Kitchener's blockhouse system was hampering the Boer movements, and the small Boer forces were becoming still smaller constantly by surrender, capture or death in conflict. British reports for the week ending January 6, 1902, showed the Boer losses as thirty-six killed, nine wounded, two hundred and sixty-one captured and seventy-two willingly surrendered—total, three hundred and seventy-eight. For the week ending January 13th twenty Boers were reported killed, nine wounded, two hundred and three captured and ninety-five willingly surrendered—total, three hundred and twenty-seven. For the week ending January 27th thirty-one were reported killed, twenty wounded, three hundred and twenty-two captured and fifty-three willingly surrendered—total, four hundred and thirty-four.

**British
Official
Reports.**

The British official reports for 1901 showed that the Boer forces during that year lost eighteen thousand three hundred and twenty men in killed, wounded, captured and willingly surrendered. It was

believed that all the Boer artillery—twenty-seven cannon—was captured, though two cannon were taken by De Wet. The British captured twenty-nine thousand eight hundred and eighty-two horses from the Boers. The British losses were half as heavy as the Boer losses and numbered nine thousand one hundred and thirteen men, of whom one thousand five hundred and thirteen were taken prisoners, but soon were released because the Boers could neither feed nor guard them. The total British losses for 1899, 1900 and 1901 by death in battle and from disease and missing was twenty-four thousand two hundred and ninety-nine. Deaths in battle or by disease or accident were reported as numbering nineteen thousand four hundred and thirty. A great majority of the large number invalided home recovered and again joined their commands. The total British expenditure for the war up to 1902 was computed as one hundred and fifty million pounds, and the rate of expenditure at the beginning of 1902 was about four million pounds monthly.

During January, 1902, two able Boer leaders were captured—General J. D. Opperman and General Ben Viljoen. General Louis Botha narrowly escaped capture, being pursued seven miles by General Bruce Hamilton. On January 18th Commandant Scheepers met with a sad fate in Cape Colony. After his capture in October, 1901, he was tried for seven heinous crimes, was convicted and was sentenced to be shot. A resolution was introduced into the United States House of Representatives directing the State Department to ask the British government to set aside the sentence, but the House took no action on the resolution. It was discovered afterward that Scheepers had been shot three days previously. In the British House of Commons, on January 23d, Mr. Broderick, Secretary of War, was asked by William E. Redmond, Irish Nationalist, why Scheepers had been executed, and was answered that he was shot because he had been convicted of various offenses against the usages of war, including seven cold-blooded murders of natives and the flogging of a white man.

General Ben Viljoen, one of the surrendered Boer leaders, was authorized to raise an additional corps of fifteen hundred Boers to fight on the British side. He notified ex-President Steyn of his intention and said that the Boers who had surrendered were weary of the useless struggle and were resolved to bring it to its only possible end.

The month of February, 1902, showed little variation in the general military situation in South Africa. There were no great battles, and the small Boer bands were on the move constantly, but they effected small captures in a number of places. The lines of blockhouses and the raids by British detachments greatly annoyed the Boers, and the latter were a menace to Boer stores of grain hidden in the north-east

**Boer
Leaders
Captured**

**Fate of
Scheep-
ers.**

**Viljoen's
Espousal
of the
British
Cause.**

**Progress
of the
Guerrilla
Warfare.**

of the Orange River Colony. One of the blockhouse lines was one hundred and twenty miles in length, from Kroonstad to Harrismith. The number of Boers enlisting in the British service was increasing all the time, almost three hundred Boers having joined the National Scouts in one week near the close of January.

**British
Capture.**

Though there were no regular battles in February, 1902, there was some extraordinary fighting in consequence of the effort to surround and capture De Wet in the region of Frankfort and Heilbron, near the southern frontier of the Orange River Colony, on February 6th and 7th. A preliminary struggle occurred on February 3d, when Colonel Byng, after a night march, attacked one of De Wet's bands under Colonel Wessels; the Boers being dispersed, and their horses, mules, ammunition and three cannon, the last that De Wet had, being captured, while the British losses were slight.

**De Wet's
Dashing
Escape.**

On the night of February 5, 1902, the British under Major Leader attacked a Boer commando near Klerksdorp, Commandant Alberts and six other Boers being killed. The British forces closed in gradually and formed a triangle in which the Boers were inclosed at nightfall on February 7th, the sides of the triangle respectively having a length of sixty-six, fifty-five and thirty miles. De Wet was within this inclosure on February 6th; but, as he perceived his peril, he ordered his followers to disperse, while, with some of his troops and a herd of cattle, he proceeded to a point on the southern blockhouse line, in the midst of a very dark night, and after midnight he rushed his cattle at the barbed-wire fence, through which he broke with a loss of three men, twenty-five horses and many cattle.

**His Next
Escape.**

During the night of February 7th the intrenched outpost lines were attacked by the Boers in various places, but no large organized bodies of men broke through. Armored engines with searchlights patrolled the tracks on the railway lines, but individuals broke through the obstructions at various points, and in some places bands with cattle rushed through. At daybreak on February 8th the British columns on one side along a length of forty miles rushed forward, and it was apparent that most of the Boers had escaped. While De Wet was not captured, which was the main object of the movement, two hundred and eighty-three Boers and seven hundred horses were captured by the victorious British.

**Boer
Losses.**

The British official report of all Boer losses during the week ending February 9, 1902, reached a total of seven hundred and seventeen; sixty-nine being killed, seventeen wounded, five hundred and seventy-four captured and fifty-seven voluntarily surrendering.

**British
Capture.**

On February 22, 1902, three hundred mounted National Scouts, Boers now fighting on the British side, surprised a Boer force at

Nooitgedocht, in the Transvaal, and captured one hundred and sixty-four prisoners, with horses, wagons and munitions of war, there being no losses by the National scouts.

On February 24, 1902, a severe fight occurred in the Transvaal, south-west of Klerksdorp, where the Boers attacked and captured a British convoy of empty wagons and four hundred and sixty-seven prisoners, of whom one hundred and six were released, the British losing heavily in killed and wounded.

**Boer
Capture.**

On the night of February 18, 1902, six hundred Boers made a desperate effort to break through the British outpost lines near Botha's Berg, in the Transvaal, with an immense herd of cattle, thus bringing on a stubborn fight. A few Boers broke through; but the main body of the Boer force crouched behind the dead cattle which thickly strewn the ground, and from that defense they fired on the British troops. The British returned the fire vigorously and finally drove back the Boers, who left fifteen dead and six wounded on the field, also leaving one hundred and seventy horses dead or wounded, besides the captured herd of cattle, said to number six thousand. The British loss was twenty killed and thirty-eight wounded.

**Boer
Defeat.**

On February 26 and 27, 1902, the British made a combined movement from the north-east of the Orange River Colony over a region ninety miles long and forty miles wide, within which the Boers had collected large army supplies and thousands of horses and cattle.

**British
Move-
ments.**

The British drove the Boers against the Harrismith and Van Reenen blockhouse line. The British held the river Wilge and formed on the Frankfort and Botha's Pass blockhouse line and advanced southward, holding the entire region between the Wilge and the Natal frontier. On the first night the Boers made a desperate effort to break through the blockhouse line, and the fighting was at close quarters. As usual, the Boers drove the herd of cattle in front of them. Manie Botha, the Boer leader, was killed, and thirty-five dead Boers were left on the ground. Over one hundred horses were killed, and six thousand head of cattle were left in the possession of the British. On the last day four hundred and fifty Boers were captured, with their rifles and horses. Over eight hundred Boers were either killed or captured by the British, along with two thousand horses, twenty-eight thousand head of cattle, sixty thousand sheep, two hundred wagons, six hundred rifles and fifty thousand rounds of ammunition. Among the prisoners were General De Wet's son and his secretary, Commandants Meyer and Truther and several field cornets.

**British
Suc-
cesses.**

On February 25, 1902, Delarey's Boer band made a successful attack on Lieutenant-Colonel Anderson's British force in charge of "Von Donop's convoy" of empty wagons, about ten miles from Klerksdorp,

British
Disaster
near
Klerks-
dorp.

in the south-western Transvaal, one hundred and twenty-five miles from Pretoria. The Boer assault was planned very skillfully and with careful preparation in every particular. Anderson's troops numbered about eight hundred and eighty, and the Boer force was estimated at from twelve hundred to seventeen hundred. Six Boer commandants participated in the conflict. The Boers began the struggle by opening a heavy rifle fire from the dense bushy growth, but were driven off; whereupon the convoy resumed its march, and the Boers made a more determined attack on the British left flank, thus stampeding the mules hitched to a number of wagons. This Boer attack also was repulsed. Soon afterward the British rear-guard was assailed by a large number of Boers, while another Boer detachment charged the center of the British convoy, thus stampeding hundreds of mules in all directions. The stampede of the mules threw the British escort into confusion, in the midst of which the Boers charged repeatedly, riding down the scattered British troops in a two hours' conflict. The Boer losses were thirty killed and twenty-eight wounded. The British loss in killed, wounded and prisoners was six hundred and thirty-two; the prisoners being released soon afterward. Five British cannon were reported to have been captured.

Lord
Meth-
uen's
Startling
Reverse.

General Delarey's Boer force of fifteen hundred men won a still more decisive victory over Lord Methuen's force halfway between Klerksdorp and Mafeking, on March 7, 1902. With nine hundred mounted troops, three hundred infantry, four cannon and a pom pom, Lord Methuen was marching to effect a junction with Colonel Grenfell and his force of thirteen hundred mounted men near the western frontier of the Transvaal. Methuen's column was moving in two bands, one with the ox wagons starting from Twe-Bosch at three o'clock in the morning, and the other with the mule wagons starting an hour later. Just before dawn the British rear-guard was attacked by the Boers from behind and on both flanks. The flank attacks were resisted for a time, but the rear-guard had given way before it could be reinforced. The mules had been startled into a stampede, and all efforts to check them were of no avail, so that the mule wagons were mingled unmanageably with the mounted yeomanry and with native boys galloping wildly while leading horses, these mule wagons being rushed among and through the lines of ox wagons and their guards, thus throwing the whole British force into inextricable confusion. When the mounted yeomanry, mainly South African raw recruits, were driven in with Delarey's Boer troops galloping alongside the wagons the British regulars were unable to distinguish their own men from the enemy, as most of the Boer soldiers wore British Khaki uniforms. Major Paris, with forty men, was surrounded by the Boers, but held his ground until ten

o'clock in the morning. Sections of two batteries of British artillery, with three hundred of the Northumberland Fusiliers and Lancashires, bravely protected the wagons. Lord Methuen and Major Paris were captured, with all the British cannon and baggage. Lord Methuen was wounded seriously in one thigh, but he recovered very rapidly. The British loss was forty-one killed, seventy-seven wounded and about two hundred prisoners, the latter soon being released.

General Delarey added to his renown for remarkably-brilliant and dashing exploits a fame for magnanimity, courtesy and diplomacy in his generous care and speedy release of Lord Methuen. It was said that many of the Boers bitterly opposed the British general's release, and the British themselves were surprised at the release. The anti-British utterances of pro-Boer sympathizers in Europe and America, echoed loudly by a large body of British Liberals, with almost fierce demands for the withdrawal of the British government from a war which they denounced as hopeless as well as unjust, along with the Boer defiance, which had grown more sullen as the Boer strength waned—all these had prepared the English people to expect anything but kindness and magnanimity from a victorious Boer general. However, Lord Roberts testified in the House of Lords that Delarey's previous conduct in the war gave assurance of great care and kindness for the wounded British general. The questions in London generally were: What will be the price for the release of a British major-general? Will the release of General Cronje suffice? Or will Methuen be held as a hostage? The latter was the prediction ascribed to the Transvaal legation at Brussels.

While Delarey's victory was bewailed in England it was also admired there for its skillfulness and brilliancy, and the news of his generous release of the captive Lord Methuen was received with admiration as well as with welcome by the English people. The Irish Nationalist members of the House of Commons had received the news of Methuen's capture with loud cheers. The news of the reverse was received in London with stoical calm. The effect on English feeling as voiced by the English press was one of stunning surprise and disappointment at the prospect of the war being prolonged, with a corresponding strengthening of British determination by sending to Lord Kitchener six thousand yeomanry with strong recruits of cavalry and infantry. The great sympathy at first expressed for Lord Methuen was without criticism of his judgment or his capability.

The effect of Lord Methuen's disaster in France was quite unexpected; as hitherto the news of every British reverse had been welcomed there with delight, not only as a Boer gain, but apparently more as a British loss. However, in this instance, the Paris press found occasion to express sympathy for Great Britain by expressing sympathy for

Lord
Meth-
uen's
Release
by
Delarey.

Effect
of Lord
Meth-
uen's
Reverse
in
England.

Effect in
France.

Lord Methuen, reaching this attitude through sympathy for Colonel de Villebois-Mareuil. The *Paris Figaro* thus was constrained to admire the "magnificent spectacle" of Great Britain's "stoic resolution," which only confirms itself under cruel disaster. A well-known writer in the *Paris Journal* predicted that the middle of the twentieth century will find the Anglo-Saxon race overwhelmingly preponderant in South Africa. General de Gallifet, a military critic who had studied the South African struggle very carefully, in an article in the *Paris Matin*, said that nothing but defeat could be expected for Lord Methuen's raw recruits, young and untrained mountain yeomanry, if attacked in a wilderness by a force of veterans under one of the most experienced of living leaders.

**Effect in
Germany.**

The effect of Lord Methuen's disaster in Germany was similar to its effect in France. In the Prussian Diet, in Berlin, Baron von Richtofen, the Foreign Secretary, after reading the British government's reply allowing the delivery of German charitable gifts to the Boers in concentration camps, under surveillance of the British camp authorities, uttered the following strong sympathetic words: "The English and German nations are connected by ties of blood, race and friendship. They are cousins who may again find themselves side by side. General Methuen deserves our complete sympathy. As the military attache to the British embassy in Berlin he enjoyed the esteem of the Emperors William and Frederick." Baron von Richtofen said further that Great Britain's susceptibilities had been made more acute by her sacrifices in blood and treasure; that every harsh word was doubly felt by her, and that there was need of a somewhat more just mode of criticism. Said he: "Let us not always assume that everything done by the English is wrong and bad. * * * I have read descriptions of the prisoners' camps which made my hair stand on end." He then quoted the testimony of one whom he said was a perfectly-capable witness, General von Trotha, who had said to him a few days before: "I consider it my duty, and authorize you to use my name, to declare that I found the prisoners' camps in Ceylon to be perfect models." Baron von Richtofen then went on to say: "In my opinion, the dignity of the nation would not have suffered derogation if it had displayed some human sympathy, as, for instance, yesterday, when the news came of the severe wounding of General Methuen. With proper consideration for national feelings it will be possible to make further progress in the direction desired by the Boer relief committee." In conclusion he said that Germany's policy was conducted with the purpose of pleasing the German people and no one else, but he believed that the lines which he had indicated might be followed without any relinquishment of German views in regard to the war itself.

Toward nightfall on March 23, 1902, a combined movement to capture General Delarey was undertaken by British columns of mounted men without artillery or impediments of any kind. These mounted columns moved north-westward rapidly all night, and at dawn they had formed a line of positions eighty miles long, from the Vaal River to the vicinity of Mafeking. This line then moved eastward swiftly for the purpose of driving the Boers against the cordon of blockhouses or of forcing a battle. The chief design failed, but the British captured one hundred and thirty-five prisoners and five cannon, with many mules and wagons, the cannon being those taken by the Boers in the disaster to "Von Donop's convoy," three weeks before, to which we have alluded already.

**Effort to
Capture
Delarey.**

The Canadian government offered a fourth contingent of two thousand mounted infantry to go with dispatch to South Africa. In the House of Commons, on March 20, 1902, Colonial Secretary Chamberlain estimated the number of Boers then in the field at five thousand. The estimate of the Boer delegates in the United States was twelve thousand.

**Other
Military
Items.**

Early in March, 1902, two British troopers, irregulars, who were convicted by court-martial of shooting a Boer after his surrender, were shot under British orders at Pretoria. For the same crimes committed repeatedly against British officers, the Boer Commandant Scheepers had been shot under Lord Kitchener's order a short time previously; and the Boer Commandant Kruitziuger had been condemned to death after trial by court-martial, but his sentence was commuted finally to permanent banishment.

**Military
Execu-
tions.**

Mayor Seth Low, of New York city, made public in the press a series of resolutions passed in a public meeting of the citizens of Bloemfontein, the capital of the Orange River Colony, on February 18, 1902, and attested to by the town clerk and ordered to be sent to the Mayors of Paris, Berlin and New York, denouncing as utterly false the accusations of inhumanity and barbarous cruelty in the treatment of defenseless women and children by the British soldiers.

**Charges
of Cruelty
Refuted.**

There were several sharp conflicts on March 31st and during the first two weeks of April, 1902. In an engagement in the south-western part of the Transvaal two thousand Boers under Generals Delarey and Kemp attacked the British under Cookson and Keir, but were compelled to retreat with a loss of one hundred and thirty-seven killed and wounded, the British losing heavily also. On April 11th the British under Colonel Kekewich were attacked by the Boers under Generals Kemp and Potgieter, who were forced to retreat and were pursued eighteen miles, Potgieter being killed and three cannon being captured by the British, thus leaving Delarey with only one cannon. The Boer

**Boer
Defeats.**

forces in the field late in April, 1902, were estimated at from six thousand to eight thousand.

**Military
Trials
and Sen-
tences.**

An official statement from the War Office in London on April 4, 1902, showed the result of the trial of the Colonials, an irregular corps recruited in South Africa, accused of serious crimes against Boer prisoners. As a result of a court of inquiry, convened on October 16, 1901, five officers were tried at Pietersburg in January, 1902, and were convicted as principals or accessories in twelve murders. Two lieutenants were found guilty of murder and were sentenced to death, which sentence was commuted to imprisonment for life at penal servitude. Another lieutenant was found guilty of manslaughter and was expelled from the service. A major was found guilty of culpable neglect in not reporting the crimes and was sent home in disgrace. The trial of the Boer Commandant Kruitinger on the charge of shooting natives was resumed on April 5, 1902, and ended in his acquittal on all four of the charges.

**Great
Britain's
War Ex-
penses
and
Losses.**

Official reports showed Great Britain's war expenses thus far to have been about one hundred and fifty million pounds and the war's monthly expense to be about four hundred and fifty million pounds. The total British loss in men to January 1, 1902, amounted to twenty-four thousand two hundred and ninety-nine, of which nineteen thousand four hundred and thirty were killed in battle or died from disease. Sixty-four thousand three hundred and thirty were sent home as invalids. The Boer losses were not known. On September 1, 1901, more than thirty-six thousand Boer soldiers were held as prisoners by the British government.

**Indefinite
Situation.**

The military situation in South Africa from the end of April to the end of May, 1902, was somewhat indefinite, though for the first time since the Boers declared war against Great Britain there was a serious movement on the part of the Boer leaders toward the consideration of terms of peace, even on the part of such men as Botha, De Wet, Schalk-Berger and Steyn, who now perceived the folly and hopelessness of further resistance to the inevitable; and the month of May was signalized by peace negotiations, whose progress and final result we shall notice at the close of this section and chapter. In fact, both sides were weary of the protracted struggle and were longing for its conclusion, though the British were as determined as ever on insisting on their conditions of peace.

**Final
Military
Opera-
tions.**

The final military operations of this protracted guerrilla warfare, while the peace negotiations were in progress, were very much restricted in area, though prosecuted actively in various districts. On May 12, 1902, Lord Kitchener reported that more than eight hundred prisoners had been taken during the previous week, along with a large quantity

of supplies. Early in May Colonel Barker reported the capture of Commandant Manie Botha, nephew of General Louis Botha and De Wet's ablest subordinate leader. A brother of General Delarey was captured about May 15th, and eight hundred and sixty of Delarey's troops had been captured within two months previous to May 12th. The chief military activity late in May, before the end of hostilities, was in Cape Colony, where about twenty places were occupied by bands of Boer raiders who eluded British pursuit. As the struggle was nearing its close the bitter feeling between the two parties seemed to have died out largely, as shown by baseball games between groups of Boer and British soldiers, who were tired of fighting each other.

As before noticed, both parties had grown weary of the long and sanguinary guerrilla war; but the great obstacles to peace were the obstinacy of the irreconcilable Boers under the leadership of ex-President Steyn and the redoubtable General De Wet, as well as the question of the treatment of the Cape Colony Dutch rebels, whom the British regarded as traitors, but whom the Boers of the two former republics were anxious to save from punishment for their assistance to their kinsmen of the Transvaal and the Orange River Colony. Many months before the peace negotiations some of the Boer women interested themselves in peace efforts, and Mrs. General Louis Botha went to England on a peace mission.

**Peace
Move-
ments.**

The final peace negotiations occupied a period of almost two months. As early as March 12, 1902, General Schalk-Berger, the acting President of the Transvaal since President Krüger's flight from South Africa, informed Lord Kitchener of his readiness to make proposals of peace. A month later the Boer delegates submitted certain peace propositions; but the British Secretary of War, Mr. Broderick, rejected these proposals on April 13, 1902, because they included the independence of the two Boer republics. Then President Steyn and Generals Schalk-Berger and Louis Botha proposed that the question of the surrender of the independence of the Boer republics be submitted to the Boers in the field. The British government expressed surprise at this Boer attitude, but announced its willingness to give facilities for a consultation of the Boer commanders in the field and to accept a surrender by the Boers on terms which Lord Kitchener previously had offered to General Louis Botha. After the Boers had availed themselves of the British offer to refrain from attack on or interference with their convention at Vereeniging, General Schalk-Berger and President Steyn informed Lord Kitchener on May 17th that the Boers assembled there had authorized a commission to negotiate terms of peace which would require ratification at Vereeniging. Two days later Lord Milner and Lord Kitchener met the Boer commission at Vereeniging, when the Boer

**Final
Peace
Negotia-
tions.**

commissioners offered to surrender the independence of the republics concerning foreign relations and to surrender a portion of the territory of the republics, but to retain self-government under British supervision; but Lords Milner and Kitchener instantly rejected these terms. On the same day—May 19, 1902—Lord Milner and two of the Boer commissioners, General Smuts and Judge Hertzog, drew up a form of agreement which was to be submitted to the convention at Vereeniging for a simple yea or nay vote. This form became practically the final agreement, as Colonial Secretary Chamberlain approved it with slight alterations when it was submitted to him. In giving notice of his approval, Mr. Chamberlain directed Lord Kitchener to inform the Boers that if they did not accept the agreement within a fixed time limit the whole peace conference would be regarded as ended and the British government would not consider itself bound in any manner by the declarations which it had made in this instance. The Boers asked to be permitted to deliberate until the last night in May, when they would give their final answer. Lords Milner and Kitchener granted this last Boer request, and the result was that before midnight on the appointed night the great British-Boer War was ended by a treaty of peace in which the Boer leaders accepted the British terms, the final vote of the Boer convention at Vereeniging being fifty-four in favor of surrender and six in opposition to such terms. Ex-President Krüger was ignored entirely in the terms of peace, the British not recognizing him as having had any part in the negotiations. The Boer deliberations in their convention were conducted with much bitterness, the irreconcilable Boers hotly taunting their kinsmen who advocated peace on the terms proposed.

**Peace of
Pretoria.**

Finally, at 10:30 on the night of Saturday, May 31, 1902, a document containing the terms of surrender and submission was signed at Pretoria by all the Boer commissioners, with General Christian R. De Wet at their head, as well as by Lord Milner, the British High Commissioner in South Africa, and by Lord Kitchener, the commander-in-chief of the British military forces in South Africa. This peace agreement was the result of the decision arrived at on the morning of that day in the Boer convention at Vereeniging by the Boer political and military leaders. The signing of the agreement was entirely devoid of ceremony, as are likely to be the acts of most momentous results. The Boer and British signers met in the dining room of the house in which the Boer commissioners had been lodging, where the significant document was spread on a table. In profound silence the Boer commissioners took a pen and affixed their signatures to the momentous document, in the order of their rank, General Christian R. De Wet's name being first, as he had been appointed as acting President by Mr. Steyn,

who did not sign the document on account of absence through illness. After being signed by the representatives of both parties, the document was handed to official messengers for delivery to King Edward VII. In all the concentration camps in South Africa the glad tidings of peace came like the dawn after a long gloomy night; the refugees in the camps assembling and singing Psalms, the women weeping for joy. By the terms of agreement the Boers accepted British sovereignty, while the British government granted them three million pounds sterling (fifteen million dollars) to restore their destroyed buildings and restock their farms; exempted them from taxation for thirty years; allowed them all civil and political rights; permitted the Dutch language to be taught in the Boer schools, and brought back to their homes at British expense all the Boer prisoners in St. Helena, Ceylon and other places.

The following were the terms of the Peace of Pretoria, as announced by the Rt. Hon. Arthur James Balfour in the British House of Commons on June 2, 1902.

**Terms
of the
Peace
Treaty.**

First—The burgher forces in the field will forthwith lay down their arms and hand over all the guns, rifles and ammunition of war in their possession or under their control, and desist from further resistance, and acknowledge King Edward VII. as their lawful sovereign.

Second—All burghers outside the limits of the Transvaal and Orange River Colony and all prisoners of war at present outside South Africa who are burghers will, on duly declaring their acceptance of the position of subjects of His Majesty, be brought back to their homes as soon as means of transportation can be provided and means of subsistence assured.

Third—The burghers so returning will not be deprived of their personal liberty or property.

Fourth—No proceeding, civil or criminal, will be taken against any burghers surrendering, or so returning, for any acts in connection with the prosecution of the war. The benefits of this clause do not extend to certain acts contrary to the usages of war, which have been notified by the commander-in-chief to the Boer generals and which shall be tried by court-martial after the close of hostilities in accordance with military law.

Fifth—The Dutch language will be taught in the public schools of the Transvaal and Orange River Colony, where the parents desire it, and will be allowed in the courts of law, for the better and more effectual administration of justice.

Sixth—Possession of rifles will be allowed in the Transvaal and Orange River Colony to persons requiring them for their protection, on taking out a license, according to law.

Seventh—The military administration of the Transvaal and Orange River Colony will, at the earliest possible date, be succeeded by a civil government; and, as soon as circumstances permit, representative institutions, leading up to self-government, will be introduced.

Eighth—The question of granting the franchise to natives will not be decided until after the introduction of self-government.

Ninth—No special tax will be imposed on landed property in the Transvaal or Orange River Colony to defray the expenses of the war.

Tenth—So soon as the conditions permit it, a commission, on which the local inhabitants will be represented, will be appointed in each district of the Transvaal and Orange River Colony, under the presidency of a magistrate or other official, for the purpose of assisting in the restoration of the people to their homes, and supplying those who, owing to war losses, are unable to provide for themselves, with food and shelter and the necessary amount of seed, stock and implements, etc., indispensable to the resumption of their normal occupations.

Eleventh—His Majesty's government will place at the disposal of these commissions the sum of three million pounds [fifteen million dollars] and will allow all the notes issued under the law of 1900 of the South African Republic, and all receipts given up to officers in the field of the late republics, or under their orders, to be presented to a judicial commission, which will be appointed by the government, and if such notes and receipts are found by this commission to have been duly issued in return for valuable considerations, they will be received by the first-named commissions as evidence of war losses suffered by the persons to whom they were originally given.

Twelfth—In addition to the above-named free grant of three million pounds, His Majesty's government will be prepared to make advances, on loan, for the same purposes, free of interest for two years, and afterward repayable, over a period of years, with three per cent. interest. No foreigner or rebel will be entitled to benefit under this clause.

**Mr.
Balfour's
Declara-
tions.**

After Mr. Balfour had read the foregoing peace agreement in the British House of Commons he proceeded, in reference to "certain important points not dealt with in that document," to read a dispatch from Lord Kitchener dated May 30, 1902, relating to the more delicate and difficult question of the treatment to be accorded to Cape Colony and Natal colonists who had become rebels by enlisting in the Boer armies. In this dispatch Lord Kitchener reported that he had read to the Boer delegates and given them a copy of the following statement:

"His Majesty's government must place on record that the treatment of the Cape and Natal colonists who have been in rebellion and who now surrender will, if they return to their colonies, be determined by the

colonial courts and in accordance with the laws of the colonies; and any British subjects who have joined the enemy will be liable to trial under the law of that part of the British Empire to which they belong."

Mr. Balfour proceeded to say concerning the colonial rebels as follows:

"His Majesty's government are informed by the Cape government that their views regarding the terms to be granted to British subjects in Cape Colony now in the field or who have surrendered or been captured since April 12, 1901, are as follows:

"With regard to the rank and file, they should all, after surrender and giving up their arms, sign a document, before the resident magistrate of the district in which they surrender, acknowledging themselves guilty of high treason; and the punishment to be accorded them, provided they are not guilty of murder or acts contrary to the usages of civilized warfare, shall be that they are not entitled, for life, to be registered as voters, or vote in any Parliamentary or Provincial Council or municipal election.

"With reference to Justices of the Peace, field cornets and all others who held official positions under the government of Cape Colony, or who have been occupying a position of authority, or who have held commands in the rebel or burgher forces, they shall be tried for high treason before the ordinary courts of the country, or such special courts as may hereafter be constituted, with the proviso that in no case shall the penalty of death be inflicted.

"The Natal government is of the opinion that rebels should be dealt with according to the law of that colony."

"These arrangements the government have approved."

The British terms of peace were regarded everywhere as most magnanimous. Thus at last the British had surprised the Boers. The nation which had been denounced as the great robber nation of the world, selfish, pitiless, yielding nothing except to superior force, thus far had spent seven hundred and fifty million dollars in a war suddenly commenced by the Boers, with a loss of twenty-eight thousand four hundred and thirty-four men dead or permanently disabled by disease; the Boer forces actually remaining in the field being only about three thousand men, with a few thousand more of boys and old men; while the British force numbered more than two hundred thousand men. This same great nation which had sent a quarter of a million men seven thousand miles by sea—a feat never performed by any other nation—now calmly appropriated two hundred million dollars more, to demobilize and transport her own troops home; to bring home the thirty-one thousand Boer prisoners from Ceylon, from St. Helena and from the Bermudas; to move the one hundred and eleven thousand Boer

Change
in the
Boer
Feeling
toward
the
British.

women and children from the various concentration camps where they had been sheltered, fed and clothed, and to grant to each Boer in the two former republics about five hundred dollars toward restoring his home on the veldt. The British peace terms were firm on all the main political issues, while generous in all personal matters. The simple-hearted Boers evidently were surprised at British generosity, and their former feelings of animosity toward their recent foes had disappeared. Their sense of defeat had been soothed by the generous allusions of King Edward VII. and Mr. Balfour in the British Parliament to their bravery and by Lord Kitchener's address to them in their camp at Vereeniging when he said that if he had been one of them he would have been proud to have done so well in the field as they had done. So much for the change in the feeling of the Boers toward their late foes.

Change
in the
Boer
Feeling
toward
the
French
and the
Germans.

As sudden as had been the revulsion of Boer feeling in favor of the British had been the Boer revulsion against the French, the Germans and other nationalities who had encouraged the Boers to begin the war. The Dutch farmers of the South African veldt, who had been unfamiliar with the intricacies of European international politics, had trusted the people of Continental Europe who had assured them that the governments of the Great Continental European Powers hated Great Britain as an overbearing and rapacious rival and that these governments would aid the Boers either openly or secretly in breaking British power in South Africa. Apparently the Boers now ascribed to those misleading European advisers the suffering and desolation which the war had brought upon the Boer population. Leading Boers declared at Pretoria that the war had been prolonged unnecessarily through the false hopes of European assistance held out to the struggling Boers by the French and German press. Three weeks after the conclusion of the peace agreement sixteen thousand five hundred Boers had surrendered by accepting the British terms; and at the end of June, 1902, all indications showed that the recent powerful and hated enemy of the Boers actually had come to be regarded by them as their trusted friend. The late enemy had dealt generously with the Boers in her peace terms in furnishing them with material aid in repairing the ravages of the late bloody war, while the pretended friends from Continental Europe had brought them well-nigh to ruin by their false encouragement and false hopes and thus deceived them to their detriment. Thus the only ill-feeling which the Boers now manifested was against those European advisers who had been urging them to continue the war and against those of their kinsmen who had entered the British service as National Scouts. The Boer feeling regarding the result of the war was illustrated in General De Wet's speech at Winburg, where he made his appearance after signing the peace agreement and shook the hands of

thousands of Boer men and women who had crowded around him. In his speech on this occasion De Wet praised the Boer women for their staunch support of the Boer cause during the war and urged his hearers to support loyally the government to which they now owed their allegiance, uttering the following words: "God has decided thus. I fought until there was no more hope of upholding our cause. * * * The time has now come to lay down our arms. As a Christian people, God now demands that we be faithful to our new government." Several hundred Boers enlisted in the British service to fight the Mad Mullah of Somaliland.

In Great Britain the news of the peace agreement was received with profound gratification, as giving relief from a long anxiety and a heavy burden. The London *Daily Chronicle* remarked: "The close of the war has converted us all to pro-Boerism." Even such a pro-Boer journal as the London *Daily News* called the peace agreement "a peace with reason." The London *Times* declared the peace terms "excellent in all respects." A peculiar trait of the English character was exemplified in the very general expression of magnanimous feeling toward the Boers, with praise for their qualities as warriors and ardent approval of all reasonable proposals for instantly aiding them in the distressful condition to which they had been reduced by the two and a half years of the war which they had undertaken against the great British Empire. To this general magnanimous British feeling there were a few exceptions, a few extremists fearing that the Boers had not been punished and humiliated sufficiently for their fierce and fruitless attack on Great Britain. In Canada the peace terms at first were considered too liberal to the Boers, and the permission of the Dutch language in the Boer schools and courts was regarded as very dangerous. The pro-Boer sympathizers in Great Britain, as well as those in other lands, lamented the destruction of the two little Boer republics at the hands of what they denounced as a selfish and unscrupulous power; and to this lamentation was added the bitter outcry of the Irish Nationalist leaders. In Great Britain and in the United States the lamentation over the overthrow of the Boer republics in some instances developed into exaltation that Great Britain and not the Boers had made the real surrender; that Great Britain had been unable to conquer the Boers and therefore had conceded practically all for which the Boer had begun the war, having then assumed her usual attitude of magnanimity, the Boers in reality not having been conquered. With the preceding exceptions, in the United States the peace was a welcome relief, the terms being regarded as generous on the part of Great Britain.

The news of the conclusion of the Peace of Pretoria was received with satisfaction everywhere on the Continent of Europe. The expressions

Feeling
in Great
Britain
and Her
Colonies,
and in the
United
States.

Feeling
on the
European
Conti-
nent.

of the French press were generally anti-English in tone, their utterances frequently belittling the importance of the magnitude of the British victory, the more popular French newspapers denouncing Great Britain as the enemy of mankind. In Paris the *Journal des Debats* and the *Temps* expressed satisfaction at the end of the war; the *Temps*, however, reviewing the situation in Cape Colony as menacing. On June 2, 1902, the Paris municipal council adopted a resolution of sympathy with ex-President Krüger, "whose people have so valiantly fought for right against might." The general tone of the German press displayed a profound disappointment at what appeared to be the sudden close of the war without either Great Britain's disgraceful defeat or a disastrous diminution of her power, there being scarcely any effort to conceal the fact that the German people had cherished a hope that the war would last until Great Britain had been thoroughly humbled and ruinously weakened. While the business circles of Germany were glad that the war was over and were expecting to share in the revival of business due to increased financial confidence in London, the world's great money center, almost the entire German press eulogized the Boer valor and steadfastness, regarded the result as a shameful victory of brute strength, of might over right, and lamented that the gallant Boers had been forced to yield to an unrighteous and overwhelming power. The *Berliner Tageblatt* predicted that as Great Britain was now freed from pressure in South Africa she would take advantage of her fortunate situation to enter on a more decided foreign policy in other quarters of the globe, as, for instance, in Morocco and in Persia, but that this would not disturb the world's peace, as Great Britain's release from the South African trouble would make her European rivals adequately cautious. While the German press very generally showed its anti-English tone respecting the South African war, the Count von Waldersee, at a dinner given him with other German officers in London by Lord Roberts on June 22, 1902, toasted King Edward VII. and the British army, bestowing on that army a high compliment in these words: "We German soldiers know how difficult and arduous was the task the British army had to accomplish in South Africa and that this task was accomplished with bravery, humanity and the utmost devotion to the country." At Vienna the news of peace was received with almost universal satisfaction, and the Austrian Minister of Commerce expressed the opinion that under British rule the trade in the Transvaal would be developed greatly to the benefit of Austria-Hungary and of all Europe. The leading Hungarian newspaper said on June 2, 1902: "The Boers will doubtless soon find that British ideas of freedom and toleration are more liberal than those which prevailed under the regime of republican Krügerism." At The Hague and in

Holland generally there was satisfaction at the end of the war, but this satisfaction was mingled with general regret at the loss of Boer independence, while a general complaint was heard because in the last days of the war the British government had refused to permit the Boers to communicate with their agents in Europe and thus excluded those agents from participating in the negotiations. At Brussels and in Belgium as a rule there also was general satisfaction at the return of peace in South Africa, and the pro-Boer *Independence Belge* assumed an unusual tone in advising the Continental European press to stop slandering Great Britain. In Russia the St. Petersburg newspapers disclosed their regret at the tidings of peace and intimated that as Great Britain now was released from her trouble in South Africa she might interfere with some of Russia's movements in the East.

The general popular judgment seemed to be that Great Britain had shown great military incapacity and inefficiency during the war, but German and Austrian military experts did not sustain this popular notion. An Austrian field-marshal declared that "England's army may look back with justifiable pride upon its achievements"; that the usual diminution of efficiency during a war was not seen, but, instead, an increase; that "it must be admitted that the war has raised England's military prestige." German military officers of high rank expressed the opinion that under all the circumstances of the war not any troops in the world could have done better. Military critics declared that in all history no other nation ever had shown the capacity to transport a quarter of a million soldiers who could keep the field and win a war seven thousand miles from home.

Effect on
British
Prestige.

Lord Kitchener emerged from the war with fame both as a warrior and as a peacemaker. He constructed four thousand miles of block-house wire-fence, thus effectively interfering with the Boer style of migratory warfare; and immediately after the surrender of the Boers he made a speech in which he won their friendship by his noble tribute of respect for their bravery as soldiers. His services were recognized and rewarded by King Edward VII., who created him a viscount on June 4, 1902, and promoted him to the rank of General. On June 5th Parliament voted him a gift of fifty thousand pounds (a quarter of a million dollars), the vote being three hundred and eighty in favor of the grant and forty-four in opposition to it.

Lord
Kitch-
ener's
Achieve-
ments.

Commandant Kemp, Delarey's chief subordinate, who did not surrender until June 11, 1902, said that fifty thousand Boers were in the field at the beginning of the war. The British mortality, except during the first year of the war, was not as great as usually has been the case in wars; the number of deaths in battle or from wounds being seven thousand seven hundred and ninety-two, and the number of deaths from

Boer
Military
Strength.

British
Mor-
tality.

disease being thirteen thousand two hundred and fifty, making a total of twenty-one thousand and forty-two deaths.

**British
Aid to
the Boers.**

Though the Dutch language was to be allowed in the Boer courts and schools when the people desired it, the English was to be the official language. The concentration camps were to be converted into supply depots to provide the returning Boers with the means to rebuild and restock their farms, while their wives and families were being maintained for the time at the British government's expense. At the request of the Boers for an increase of the grant of three million pounds for the restoration of the Boer buildings and farms, the British government soon raised the amount to eight million pounds (forty million dollars) and a little later to fifteen million pounds (seventy-five million dollars). Some months later some of the Boer leaders visited England and were welcomed with most courteous and kindly receptions by all classes of the English people.

**Kruger's
Last
Days.**

A dispatch from Brussels on June 11, 1902, stated that ex-President Kruger finally had lowered the Transvaal flag in front of his house. For many months he suffered from ill health; and finally he died of pneumonia and supervening heart weakness at Clarens, Switzerland, July 14, 1904, at the age of seventy-nine years. He was born at Colesberg, Cape Colony; October 10, 1825, and in his boyhood was one who went from that colony in the Great Trek of 1835, which led to the founding of the Transvaal Republic and the Orange Free State. He had been a leader in Transvaal affairs from the beginning of the Transvaal until his exile during his last few years.

**Relations
of Great
Britain,
Germany
and the
United
States.**

Various utterances of the German press displayed a feeling of disquietude respecting the relations of the two great English-speaking nations with Germany. The press of both Great Britain and Germany did not conceal the mutual dislike of the two nations for each other, but the governments of the two nations were indulging in frequent expressions of their reciprocal trust and regard. The *Berliner Tageblatt* accused the English newspapers of being responsible largely for exciting animosity in the United States against Germany concerning Germany's attitude during the Spanish-American War, to the great injury of Germany, and complained that the English newspapers also reproduced all the anti-English utterances of the German press about the British-Boer War. The German government publicly expressed a desire that the bitter feeling occasioned by the British-Boer War might be forgotten speedily in both Germany and Great Britain, but the German government also accused the English newspaper correspondents in Germany of being responsible wholly for the continuance of the bitter feeling between the two nations. At a Parliamentary reception early in June, 1902, the Baron von Richtofen, the German Secretary of Foreign

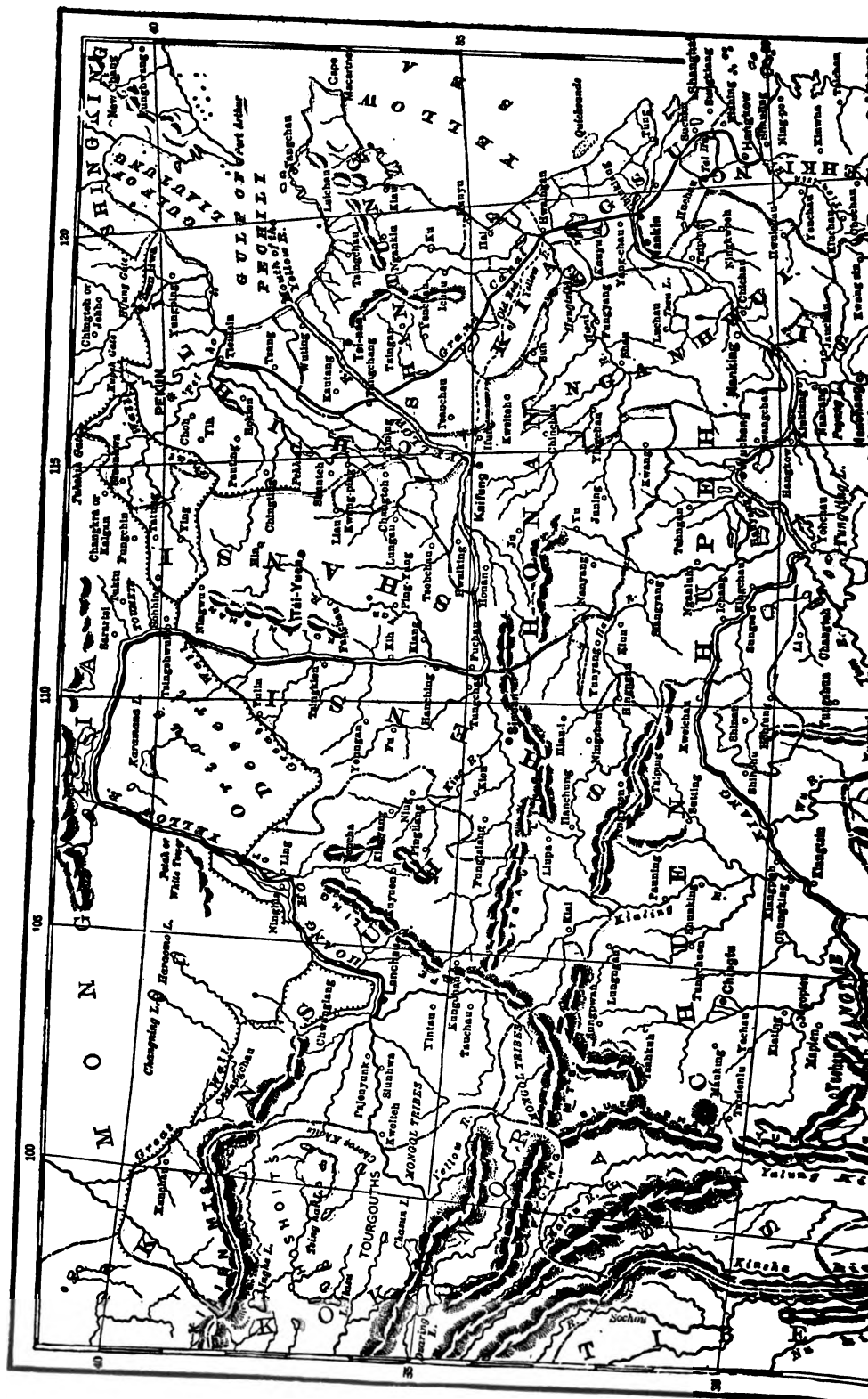
Affairs, in conversing with the Berlin correspondent of the *London Times*, accused him of "poisoning public opinion in England against Germany," drawing general attention by saying loudly: "Your biased and venomous reports were an absolute calumny to both countries."

A Dutch Republic of the United States of South Africa would not mean freedom, but would mean oppression of the black race and of all whites except Dutch, and would be as great a misfortune for the black race in South Africa as would have been the founding of an independent republic of the Confederate States of America south of the Potomac and the Ohio for the same race in this country forty years ago. Under a British South African Confederation there would be equal political rights for all white men and all civilized black men, and equal civil and religious freedom for all uncivilized blacks; but under a united Dutch South African Republic it would not be so. In the British colonies of South Africa, Englishmen and Dutchmen and all other white men have equal civil, political and religious rights. In the so-called Transvaal Republic only Dutchmen and Protestants had equal political rights, and blacks had not even equal civil rights, while Jews and Catholics were proscribed and politically disabled. So, it was the British side, not the Dutch side, which represented civil, political and religious liberty for the individual. Abraham Lincoln said: "Those who deny liberty to others deserve it not themselves and will not long retain it." As in the American Civil War, so in this South African War, the wrong of human slavery, fastened upon the country two centuries before, was the great cause of bloodshed, as its abolition was responsible for the prolonged race hatred. The people of later years had been paying the penalty for the crimes of their ancestors. In answer to the general charge that the British robbed the Boers of their country, it can be said that, going back to the principle of original abstract right, neither the Boers nor the British have a strict moral right to the country. Thus the Boers had no birthright to the Transvaal. It was the negro's country. The Boers stole it from the negro. It was not the original Boer home, but was the birthright of the native negro tribes inhabiting that country.

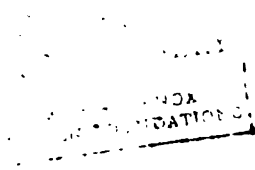
A great political achievement, proclaimed May 31, 1910, was the federation of the British Colonies in South Africa: Cape Colony, Natal, the Transvaal, Orange River Colony and Rhodesia, with a form of government similar to that of the Dominion of Canada. Sir Herbert Gladstone was chosen Governor-General, representing the British Crown. General Botha, who had been influential in bringing about the union, was elected Premier. February 11, 1914, Viscount Gladstone resigned as Governor-General, and Sydney Buxton, President of the British Board of Trade, succeeded him.

View
of the
Result
of the
War.

Federation
of
British
Colonies.







CHAPTER XLVI.

MODERN CHINA AND JAPAN.

SECTION I.—CHINA UNDER THE MING AND MANCHU DYNASTIES (SINCE A. D. 1368).

As before remarked, the sixteen Chinese Emperors belonging to the native Ming dynasty, which ruled China after the expulsion of the Mongol Tartars, in 1368, were mostly able sovereigns. Toward the middle of the fifteenth century the Tartars renewed their invasions of China, but were repulsed. During the reign of the Emperor SHI-TSUNG, A. D. 1522–1567, the Manchu Tartars invaded China, but were driven back. The Manchus seem to have originated ages ago by the commingling of the Mongols and the Tungouse in the country afterward called Manchuria, which is north of China proper and east of Mongolia.

**Ming
Dynasty.**

During the long reign of Shi-tsung, in the fifteenth century, began the intercourse between China and Europe by the trading ventures of the Portuguese, who established themselves on the Chinese island of Macao. In 1604 the Dutch sought to open a direct trade with China by sending three vessels to that country, but these Dutch vessels were not permitted to enter any Chinese port. In 1622 the Dutch made a second effort to open a trade with China, but again they were resisted; whereupon they endeavored to enter the Chinese Empire by force, but were driven off. The Dutch, however, effected a lodgment on one of the Pescadore Islands, which afterward they relinquished for the more important Chinese island of Formosa.

**Portu-
guese and
Dutch
Inter-
course
with
China.**

In the meantime several wars had taken place between the Chinese and the Manchus, and the Chinese reduced the Manchus to subjection. Finally the Emperor of China caused the King of Manchuria to be assassinated—an act which so exasperated the Manchus that they renewed the war with the Chinese.

**China-
Manchu
Wars.**

The last Chinese Emperor belonging to the Ming dynasty was HWAE-TSUNG. Very soon after this Emperor's accession the King of Manchuria led his army toward the Chinese frontier and issued a proc-

**Manchu
Invasion.**

lamation declaring that he had been divinely commissioned to rule the Chinese Empire.

**China's
Internal
Troubles.**

In the midst of this Manchu invasion, China was distracted by rebellions in different parts of her Empire. Bands of robbers infested the roads, placed themselves under favorite chiefs and bade defiance to the imperial army. One of these rebel chiefs was Li-tse-ching, who marched into the provinces of Shensi and Honan, where he put to death all the mandarins and gained the favor of the common people by freeing them from the payment of taxes. Multitudes flocked to his standard, and whole battalions of the imperial army deserted to him. Li-tse-ching then considered himself sufficiently powerful to declare himself Emperor of China. He therefore led his army to Peking and contrived to convey a number of his men in disguise into the capital, who were to open the gates to him when he appeared before the city at the head of his army.

**Li-tse-
ching's
Rebellion.**

**His
Capture
of Peking.**

Shortly afterward the rebel chief entered Peking in triumph at the head of three hundred thousand men, while the Emperor Hwae-tsung shut himself up in his palace and devoted himself to superstitious ceremonies. When the Emperor found himself betrayed and deserted by his own troops and servants, and saw that he was unable to escape, he resolved to kill his own children and to commit suicide rather than incur the disgrace of being taken captive by his rebellious subjects.

**Hwae-
tsung's
Despera-
tion.**

**Suicide
of the
Emperor
and the
Empress.**

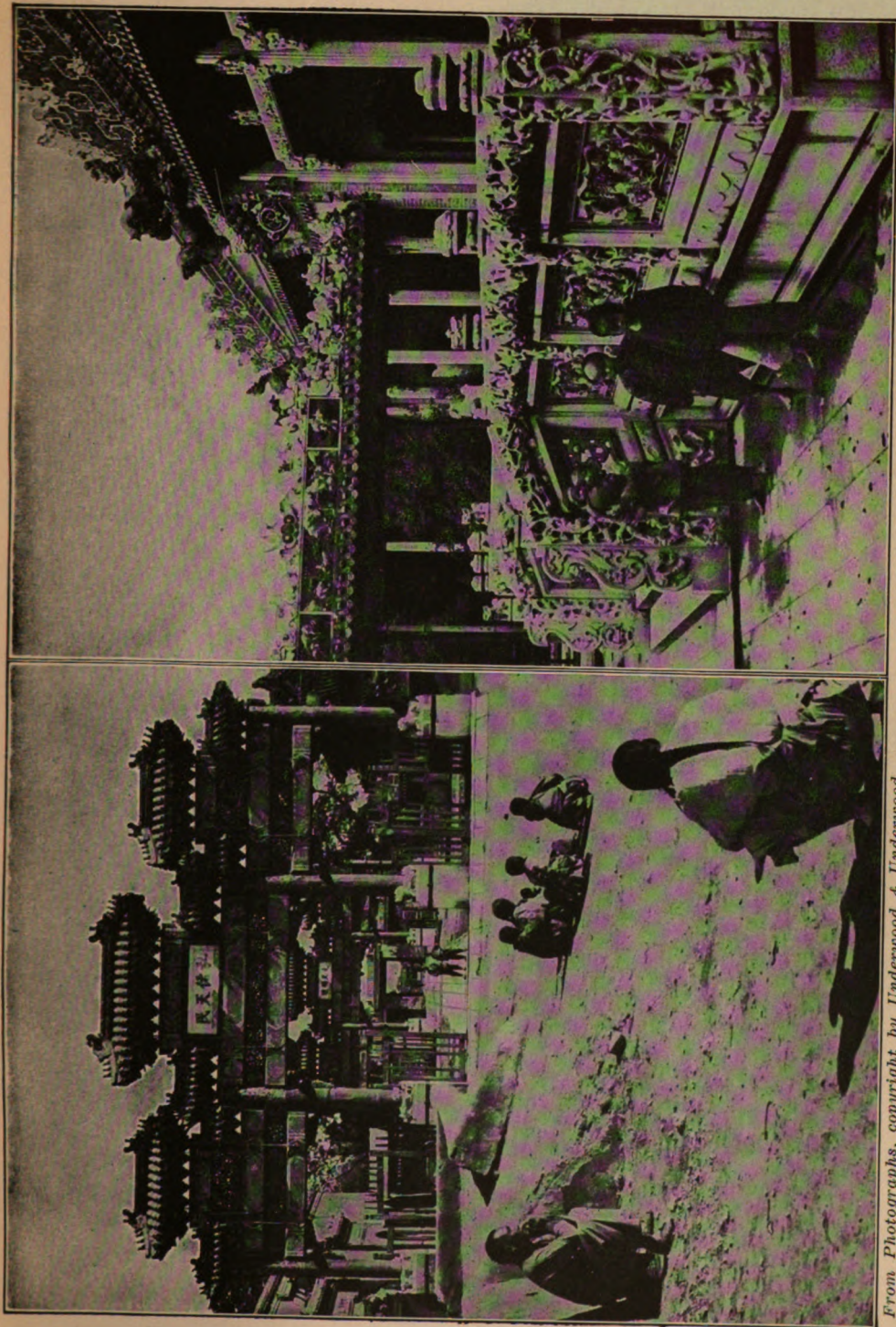
Hwae-tsung accordingly conducted his beloved empress into a private and distant part of the gardens without saying a word. She at once comprehended his silent emotions of agony and despair; and, after embracing him tenderly, she retired into the woods, where she suspended herself by a silken string. The Emperor hastened to follow her in suicide. After cutting off the head of his young daughter with his cimeter, he hanged himself on another tree. His Prime Minister, his queens and his faithful eunuchs soon followed his example.

**Li-tse-
ching's
Brutality.**

Hwae-tsung had left behind him a written request that the conquering rebel leader should be satisfied with the destruction of the imperial family and not inflict any cruelty on the people. When the self-immolated Emperor's body was laid before Li-tse-ching, as he was seated upon the throne, the brutal wretch treated the corpse in the most shameful manner. He also beheaded two of the dead Emperor's sons and his Ministers, the eldest son making his escape.

**Woo-
san-kee's
Attitude.**

While the princes and nobles of the Empire submitted to the usurper Li-tse-ching, there was a celebrated general who alone refused to acknowledge the usurper. This was Woo-san-kee, who commanded the Chinese army stationed on the frontier of Manchu Tartary. This general resolved to avenge his dead sovereign and to punish the usurper. Li-tse-ching march against him with a powerful army.



From Photographs, copyright by Underwood & Underwood

OLD CHINESE ARCHITECTURE

Left: Typical Gateway in Peking

Right: Ancestral Hall of the Chun Family

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO
LIBRARY
1100 S. EAST ASIAN BLDG.
CHICAGO, ILL. 60607
U.S.A.

After investing the capital of Woo-san-kee's provinces of Liao-tung, Li-tse-ching resorted to the most cruel expedient to force him to surrender. The usurper showed Woo-san-kee his father loaded with chains, declaring that he should be sacrificed instantly if the son refused to submit. The brave general was almost overcome at so sad a spectacle, but remained firm in his opposition to the usurper. The good father of Woo-san-kee, understanding his son's intentions by the signs which he made, applauded his resolution and quietly submitted to his fate.

**His
Father's
Resolu-
tion and
Devotion.**

For the purpose of revenging his dead sovereign, as well as his dead father, Woo-san-kee immediately concluded a peace with the Manchu Tartars and even solicited their active aid. The Manchus gladly accepted a proposal which opened to them a passage into China; and Tsong-ti, the Manchu king, immediately joined Woo-san-kee, thus forcing Li-tse-ching to raise the siege of the capital of the gallant general's province. The usurper was defeated in three great battles by Woo-san-kee and the Manchu king, but when Woo-san-kee desired to dismiss his Manchu allies they refused to return to their own country, and they even marched upon Peking in pursuit of the fleeing Li-tse-ching. But the usurper, thinking himself unsafe in his capital, plundered and burned his palace and then fled with his vast treasures into the province of Shensi.

**His
Alliance
with the
Manchus.**

**Li-tse-
ching's
Defeat
and
Flight.**

Tsong-ti, the victorious King of Manchuria, at once took possession of China's great capital, but died almost immediately thereafter, after declaring his son Shun-chi his successor. SHUN-CHI soon afterward was conducted to Peking, where he was welcomed joyfully on all sides as a deliverer, A. D. 1644. Thus ended the Ming dynasty of native Chinese Emperors, and thus began the Ta-tsing, or Manchu dynasty, which still occupies the throne of the Celestial Empire. Thus China was for the second time placed under the rule of a Tartar dynasty. The war which had effected this important revolution had lasted twenty-seven years, A. D. 1617-1644.

**Shun-chi,
First
of the
Manchu
Dynasty,
A. D.
1644-
1662.**

During this calamitous period for China a Chinese pirate named Coxinga kept the entire coast of China in constant alarm and laid siege to the city of Nankin, where his followers abandoned themselves to dissipation on their leader's birthday, in which condition they were attacked by the garrison, and many of them were slaughtered. Coxinga expelled the Dutch from the island of Formosa, which flourished for a time as an independent kingdom; but after Coxinga's death his son submitted to the Manchus, and that large island was annexed to the Chinese Empire.

**The
Chinese
Pirate
Coxinga.**

The Manchu Tartar conquest of China was not yet complete, as resistance was kept up against the Manchus in different portions of the

**Manchu
Conquest
of China
Com-
pleted.**

Celestial Empire. The Chinese nobility imagined that they should find the Manchus mere auxiliaries who would aid them in placing a native Chinaman upon the Chinese throne, but these allies regarded the Chinese Empire as the just reward of their trouble. Under these circumstances, submission to them was difficult. Competitors arose in the various provinces of China against Shun-chi, the Manchu Emperor, and hostilities were carried on obstinately both by sea and land; but the vigor of the Tartars, stimulated by the inestimable value of the prize within their grasp, was crowned with complete success.

**Shun-
chi's
Good
Rule.**

Shun-chi was a mere youth when he ascended the throne of China; and his education was conducted by Adam Schall, a German Jesuit, who afterward was made Prime Minister of China by Shun-chi. Shun-chi acquitted himself with great address in his new station. He showed a marked deference to the ancient and fixed laws and customs of China. He conferred the offices of state upon such native Chinese as were found qualified for them, and he adhered to this principle in the disposal of the most exalted dignities. He evidently sought the public welfare rather than the extension of his own power. He encouraged learning and himself acquired some proficiency in several sciences.

**Russian
Trade.**

In 1653 the Dutch again endeavored to open a trade with China, but again were refused admittance. Permission, however, was granted to the Russians to trade with the northern parts of the Chinese Empire. In consequence of misconduct and affliction in his domestic relations, the Emperor Shun-chi became melancholy, and died in 1662.

**Shun-
chi's
Death.**

**Kang-hi,
A. D.
1662-
1722.**

KANG-HI, the son and successor of Shun-chi, reigned sixty years, A. D. 1662-1722, and was, next to Kublai Khan, the greatest sovereign that ever reigned over China. Under him the whole of the Celestial Empire was brought under subjection to the Manchu, or Ta-tsing dynasty; and the Empire, which had been distracted by repeated rebellions, impoverished by long and ruinous wars and oppressed by vicious administration, was restored to order and prosperity.

**Kang-hi's
Good
Rule.**

Kang-hi was both a great statesman and a great general. His chief counselors were two Frenchmen, Bouvet and Gerbillon, to whom he was indebted for much of the success which attended his efforts in governing China. He introduced wise reforms into the financial administration of the Chinese Empire and caused the Empire to be surveyed and a map of it to be made by European engineers. He was very anxious to make his subjects acquainted with the arts and sciences of Europe. He established institutions of learning and in every way vastly promoted science and literature. He showed great favor to the Jesuit missionaries who came to his court, and he profited so much by their instructions that he wrote a treatise on geometry; but all his efforts to give a new turn to Chinese literature were frustrated by the native Chinese

scholars and literary men, who refused to abandon the tracks of their ancestors, and the consequence was that nothing new was produced.

At one time Kang-hi issued a severe decree against the Catholic converts among his subjects, demolishing all their churches; and only the influence of a Jesuit at the Chinese court prevented the destruction of the whole city of Ma-kau, but afterward this Jesuit was imprisoned with others and loaded with irons.

His Persecution of His Catholic Subjects.

As we have seen, the long reign of the Chinese Emperor Kang-hi extended into the eighteenth century. Kang-hi was unhappy in his domestic relations on account of the conduct of his two sons, who rebelled against their father and successively were banished from China.

His Unhappy Domestic Relations.

Kang-hi enlarged the Celestial Empire by the conquest and annexation of the island of Formosa and the Kingdom of Thibet, the latter near the close of his reign. In 1720 he received the congratulations of his whole Empire upon the signal Chinese victory over the Eleuts, or Thibetans, who had ravaged China for several years—a victory which made Thibet a dependency of the Chinese Empire.

Conquest of Formosa and Thibet.

In November, 1720, the illustrious Czar Peter the Great of Russia visited Pekin, with a splendid retinue in European costume, and was received at the Chinese court with all due respect; but he failed to secure the adoption of measures for the establishment of free intercourse between the Chinese and Russian Empires, which had been the object of his visit.

Czar Peter the Great's Visit.

Kang-hi died December 20, 1722, in the sixty-ninth year of his age, after a reign of sixty years; just before his death having declared his fourth son YUNG-CHING his successor. Yung-ching did not pursue his illustrious father's enlightened policy. The haughty conduct of the Jesuit missionaries in China aroused the new Emperor's suspicions; and he broke up their schools, imposed many restrictions upon them and finally banished them from China, retaining at court only a few with whose services he could not dispense. The native Christians were then persecuted, not excepting those of the imperial family. It must be confessed that the intriguing spirit of the Jesuits had given Yung-ching some reasonable grounds for alarm, and that their extravagant assertions of papal supremacy might have infused suspicion of their designing to render the Emperor of China dependent upon the Pope of Rome.

Yung-ching, A. D. 1722-1736.

His Persecution of the Jesuits and His Catholic Subjects.

In other respects Yung-ching was a good sovereign, assiduous and indefatigable in the discharge of his duties, steady and resolute in his disposition, endowed with a degree of eloquence and address, and attentive in answering the petitions which were addressed to him. He himself governed entirely, and no monarch ever was more absolute in his rule or more dreaded by his subjects. By this unlimited authority he

His Good Rule.

was enabled to enforce a great many excellent laws and regulations, in the framing of which he had spent entire days and nights with the most unrelenting industry and perseverance. The most certain method of gaining his favor was by presenting him with some scheme tending to the public welfare or to the relief of his subjects in times of famine and pestilence—in the execution of which he spared no pains, if the measure seemed practicable. He preserved peace during his reign, and by his prudent precautions he averted the horrors of those famines and pestilences that periodically devastated China.

Great
Earth-
quake at
Pekin.

The city of Pekin was almost destroyed by an earthquake, November 13, 1731—the severest earthquake that ever had been felt in China, and in which four hundred thousand persons are said to have perished. The first shocks were so sudden and so violent that a hundred thousand of the inhabitants of the Chinese capital were buried in the ruins of their houses. Three hundred thousand people perished in the surrounding country, and entire villages were laid prostrate. The Emperor Yung-ching was affected deeply by the great calamity; and he ordered an account to be taken of the families that had suffered by it, with an estimate of the damage it had occasioned, while he himself advanced considerable sums for the relief of his suffering subjects.

Kien-
lung,
A. D.
1736-
1796.

His Vow.

Yung-ching died in 1736 and was succeeded on the Chinese throne by his illegitimate son KIEN-LUNG, who, upon his accession, made a vow that if, like his grandfather Kang-hi, he were permitted to reign sixty years he then would abdicate his throne. In the estimation of Europe, Kien-lung was the greatest of the sovereigns of the half-civilized nations during the last half of the eighteenth century.

Conquest
of Central
Asia.

Kien-lung's long reign was spent almost entirely in wars with the barbarous nations on the entire western frontier of China. These wars were mainly a series of ruthless massacres. The Chinese conquered the greater part of Central Asia. The Emperor Kien-lung always thought that he had a just cause when he massacred whole tribes. After the defeat and massacre of the Kalmuck Tartars, he erected a stone tablet at Elee with the following inscription: "The tree which Heaven plants, though man may fell it, cannot be uprooted. The tree which Heaven fells, though man may replant it, will never grow."

Stone
Tablet
at Elee.

Perse-
cution
of the
Chinese
Chris-
tians.

To his own subjects Kien-lung was on the whole a just and good sovereign; but he inherited his father's dislike of the Christians, and for a time he cruelly persecuted them, accusing them of treasonable designs without the least shadow of reason. The relentless fury which he thus displayed was seconded eagerly by the mandarins, who had been jealous of the superior intelligence of the Jesuit missionaries, who had come as the apostles of a proselyting propaganda for the diffusion of Roman Catholic Christianity in China.

Kien-lung's fame extended to Europe; and missions from England, Holland and Russia were sent to his court. It was in 1793 that the famous British embassy under Lord Macartney arrived in China with the design of establishing commercial intercourse between Great Britain and China. It was in 1795 that the Dutch embassy under Titsing appeared in China. These embassies were not productive of the good results expected therefrom. The Chinese believed themselves the only enlightened nation in the world and claimed homage from all others as barbarians. The Emperor Kien-lung himself seems to have been free from these prejudices; but all his officers of state were opposed to an increase of foreign intercourse, which they feared would be fatal to their privileges. Kien-lung therefore pursued the narrow-minded, illiberal policy of his predecessors; and he sternly refused to permit the European powers to open commercial relations with China, making a single exception in favor of Russia, which country carried on considerable commerce with Mongolia and Manchuria, the Tartar provinces of the Celestial Empire.

British and Dutch Embassies in China.

Kien-lung's Illiberal Foreign Policy.

Kien-lung's expressed desire to live to reign sixty years was granted; and, in accordance with the vow which he had made at the time of his accession, in 1736, he abdicated the Chinese throne in 1796, appointing his fifth son, KIA-KING, his successor. Kien-lung died February 11, 1799. Kia-king's twenty-four years' reign, A. D. 1796-1820, was the first Chinese reign in the nineteenth century. He was a cruel and lustful tyrant, whose oppressions at length caused a rebellion of his subjects, which he was unable to suppress. Like his predecessors, Kia-king pursued the traditional Chinese policy in guarding against the admission of foreigners into the Celestial Empire. During his reign the Bible was translated into the Chinese language by Mr. Morrison, an English Protestant missionary, A. D. 1807. Mr. Morrison and Mr. Milne, another English missionary, founded the Anglo-Chinese College at Malacca.

Kien-lung's Abdication.

Kia-king, A. D. 1796-1820.

Rebellion.

Bible in Chinese

Upon Kia-king's death, in 1820, his second son, TAOU-KWANG, ascended the Chinese throne. Taou-kwang was chosen because he had saved his father's life during the insurrection of 1813. He is the first Chinese sovereign whose name is connected with English and American history. Soon after his accession the Tartar tribes in the remote western dependency of Little Bucharía revolted, and they were subdued only after the most shocking barbarities had been committed. Soon afterward a more formidable rebellion of the mountain tribe of the Meaou-tse broke out; and this rebellion was suppressed by the government only after a struggle of six years, mainly by the bribery of the revolted chiefs. An insurrection of the Tartars of Mongolia occurred in 1826.

Taou-kwang, A. D. 1820-1850.

Rebellions of the Tartars and the Meaou-tse.

**Com-
mercial
Inter-
course
with
Great
Britain.**

The commercial intercourse between China and Great Britain was carried on entirely by the English East India Company until the charter of that powerful corporation expired in 1833, when the British government sent Lord Napier to superintend the English trade with China. As Lord Napier was refused permission to communicate with the Chinese viceroy at Canton on terms of equality, he attempted to force his way to Canton; but after a spirited engagement at the Bogue forts, September 11, 1834, he withdrew to Macao, where he died a month afterward. Thereafter for several years the trade between the Chinese and the British merchants was carried on without the superintendence of the British officials. One of the principal articles of this traffic was opium, of which large quantities were sold annually in China by British merchants.

**Opium
Traffic.**

The Chinese government at first tolerated this traffic; but, at length, becoming alarmed by the terrible evils which the use of opium was producing among the Chinese people, it sought to put an end to so injurious a traffic. In the fall of 1837 Captain Elliott, the British agent at Canton, was ordered by the Chinese government to send away the opium ships and to discontinue the harmful traffic. This demand was disregarded, and the trade continued. Early in 1839 the Chinese viceroy Lin, by the orders of the imperial government at Peking, seized and destroyed all the opium then at Canton, valued at ten million dollars. Thereupon an illicit traffic in opium sprang up, which was resented by the Chinese government, which declared all commercial intercourse with Great Britain at an end, thus bringing on the "Opium War," which has been alluded to in a preceding volume of this work. The British captured the island of Chusan and took the Bogue forts by storm.

**China's
Opium
War
with
Great
Britain.**

**Capture
of
Chinese
Cities.**

The capture of Canton in 1841 led to a suspension of hostilities, and that city was ransomed by the Chinese by the payment of six million dollars; but the war was renewed, and the great cities of Amoy, Ningpo and Chin-kiang-foo were taken by the British. By the Treaty of Nankin, August 29, 1842, China was required to pay a war indemnity of twenty-one million dollars; to cede the island of Hong Kong to Great Britain; to open five of her principal ports—Canton, Amoy, Ningpo, Shanghai and Foo Chow—to the commerce of the world, and to allow European consuls to have official residences therein.

**Treaty of
Nankin.**

**Other
Treaties.**

In 1842 Caleb Cushing arrived in China as an envoy from the United States government; and two years later he negotiated a treaty between China and the United States, July 3, 1844. A treaty between China and France was signed October 23, 1844.

**China's
New Era.**

These treaties with the Western nations broke down the barriers of Chinese exclusiveness and opened a new era in the history of the

Celestial Empire by bringing China into more intimate commercial relation with Christendom.

In 1846 and 1847 there were anti-foreign outbreaks in China. In 1846 riots broke out at Canton, caused by a superstitious belief that a weather-vane on the top of the flagstaff over the American consulate interfered with the spirits of the air. A Chinaman was shot during the riots. The British interfered on behalf of the threatened Americans. The Emperor Taou-kwang allayed the excited passions of the mob by a conciliatory declaration that the Christian religion could be commended as a faith for inculcating the principles of virtue. He also sent Ke-Ying as a special commissioner to regulate amicably the commerce of the foreign merchants at Canton.

Anti-American Riots at Canton.

In March, 1847, riots again occurred at Canton, when a small English hunting and fishing party violated the agreement confining them to the foreign concessions at Canton, the party being stoned by a Chinese mob. Sir John Davis denounced this riot as an international outrage; and, regardless of the accepted treaty stipulations, he declared: "I will exact and acquire from the Chinese government the guarantee that British subjects shall be as free from molestation and insult in China as they would be in England." On April 1, 1847, all the available British forces at Hong Kong were summoned to Canton. Three steamships, conveying two regiments of British troops, convoyed by a British man-of-war, attacked and recaptured the Bogue forts, without any resistance on the part of the Chinese garrison, who acted under orders from Ke-Ying. A British landing force seized the batteries and spiked all the cannon. The forts opposite Canton were occupied without opposition, and Canton was at the mercy of the British. Ke-Ying accepted the British ultimatum that Canton be opened to Englishmen two years later. The Chinese Emperor accepted the result under protest.

Anti-English Riots at Canton.

The Emperor Taou-kwang died February 24, 1850, and was succeeded by his son HIEN-FUNG. During the same year a formidable rebellion headed by Tae-ping Wang broke out in the southern provinces of China. The rebels were at first successful and overran a considerable portion of Southern China. This rebellion continued fourteen years. In 1857 the Mohammedans of Yunnan, the most south-western province of China, rose in rebellion; and for some time they were successful. This revolt lasted sixteen years.

Hiên-fung, A. D. 1850-1862.

Tae-ping Wang and Yunnan Rebellions.

The Chinese government never intended to observe its treaties with the Christian powers in good faith, and its treatment of the foreigners within its dominions always was marked by deceit and ill-concealed hostility. This feeling caused constant disputes between the Chinese authorities and the foreign consuls and merchants. Matters were

China's Deceit.

**China's
War with
Great
Britain
and
France.**

brought to a crisis in October, 1856, by the seizure of the *Arrow*, a British vessel built in China, by the Chinese officials. This act led to a desultory war of several years between China and Great Britain, in which the Chinese generally were successful. France, having suffered the same wrongs at the hands of the Chinese, made common cause with Great Britain. These two European powers determined to compel China to a settlement, sending a combined expedition against China in 1857. The Anglo-French fleet bombarded Canton, December 28, 1857; and the next day the British and French land forces, numbering six thousand men, entered the city. The Chinese viceroy, Yeh, was taken prisoner; but the Chinese government sought to offset this reverse by degrading Yeh and appointing his successor.

**Capture
of Canton.**

**Capture
of the
Peiho
Forts.**

**China's
Treaties
with the
Western
Nations.**

Russia and the United States now united with Great Britain and France in seeking to compel China to negotiate more liberal treaties with the Western powers. As the action of the Chinese government was unsatisfactory, the allied forces assailed and took the Taku forts, at the mouth of the Peiho, and advanced to Tien-tsin, fifty miles above the mouth of that river. Thereupon the Chinese government yielded and at once concluded treaties with Great Britain, France, Russia and the United States, stipulating for the residence of foreign Ministers at Pekin; for the opening of several additional ports to foreign commerce; for the free navigation of the river Yangtse-kiang, and for the settlement of the transit-dues question. China paid to Great Britain an indemnity of five and a half million dollars and paid a smaller sum to France.

**China's
Evasion.**

**British
Fleet
Repulsed.**

**Action
of the
Foreign
Envoys.**

As usual, China sought to evade this treaty, endeavoring to prevent the foreign Ministers from reaching Pekin by prescribing a most unusual route for them and imposing various vexatious delays upon them. Thereupon the British Minister ordered the British fleet under Admiral Hope to force the passage of the Peiho river. That naval commander attempted to execute the orders of the Minister, but was repulsed with heavy loss by the Taku forts.

**Capture
of
Tien-tsin
and
Pekin.**

The British and French Ministers then retired to Shanghai to await instructions from their respective governments. The United States Minister, Mr. Ward, decided to accept the Chinese conditions; and, after undergoing many inconveniences and indignities, he at length arrived at Pekin; but, as he was granted an interview with the Chinese Emperor only on conditions degrading to himself and his country, he returned in disgust to Shanghai, where he joined the British and French Ministers.

Great Britain and France resented China's bad faith by renewing the war with the Celestial Empire, and a combined British and French expedition proceeded against Pekin. The allies took the Taku forts

August 21, 1860, and occupied Tien-tsin three days later. The Chinese authorities sought to check the advance of the allies by negotiation; but the allies, understanding the Chinese design, pushed on to the Chinese capital. The allies reached Peking on October 6, 1860, plundered and burned the Emperor's summer palace and obtained possession on one of the gates of the city on October 13, 1860. Thereupon the Chinese government yielded and at once renewed and ratified its treaties with Great Britain and France. The allies then retired from Peking, and China ever since has observed her treaties with the Western powers in good faith. In 1859 China ceded a large part of the valley of the Amour river, embracing much of Manchuria, to Russia.

Treaty of
Tien-tsin.

The Emperor Hien-fung died in 1862, and was succeeded by his son YUNG-CHI. After great bloodshed, the gigantic rebellion of Tae-ping Wang finally was suppressed in 1864, and the imperial authority was reestablished in the revolted districts of Southern China. The Mohammedan rebellion in the south-western province of Yunnan was quelled in 1873, in the spring of which year the Chinese imperial forces captured the city of Tali-foo, the capital of the province of Yunnan, after a vigorous siege. Upon entering the conquered city the imperial army massacred thirty thousand of their captives. The Mohammedan Sultan, Suleiman, poisoned himself rather than be taken prisoner by his victorious enemies. In 1862 a second Mohammedan rebellion broke out in the north-western provinces of China, but it was crushed in 1873.

Yung-chi,
A. D.
1862-
1875.

Three
Great
Rebell-
ions Sup-
pressed.

In 1864 the provinces of Soongaria and Kashgar achieved their independence under the able and powerful Yakoob Khan, who maintained an independent government until his death in 1877, and who was one of the greatest chieftains of Central Asia in modern times.

Yakoob
Khan's
Revolt.

In 1868 a Chinese embassy headed by Anson Burlingame, formerly United States Minister to China, visited the United States and the various European powers and entered into new treaties with all those powers. Mr. Burlingame died at St. Petersburg in 1869, during his mission to Russia as the head of this Chinese embassy.

Burlin-
game
Embassy.

In 1870 the Chinese attacked the French at Tien-tsin and massacred the consul, the vice-consul, the interpreter of the French legation at Peking and his wife, a Catholic priest, nine Sisters of Charity and some others. The French consulate, the cathedral and the missionary hospital were destroyed by the Chinese mob. The Chinese government severely punished the outrage and made an apology to France.

Anti-
French
Riots.

In 1871 China became involved in a dispute with Russia and was obliged to cede to that European power the district of Kulja and the entire basin of the Elee, a region comprising about six hundred thousand square miles and containing about two million inhabitants.

China's
Cession
to
Russia.

Kwang-su, since A. D. 1875. The Emperor Yung-chi, who had become of age only in 1873, died in 1875 and was succeeded by his son KWANG-SU, who was a mere child. The first railway in China—from Shanghai to Wu-Sung, a distance of eleven miles—was opened June 30, 1876. This road was built by an

China's First Railroad. English company and at first was regarded with hostility by the Chinese, so that it seemed probable at one time that the Chinese government would cause the tracks to be torn up; but the vigorous protestations of the British Minister obliged China to remain faithful to her obligations and to respect the rights of the owners of the road. The hostility of the Chinese changed to delight as soon as the trains commenced running, and they loudly praised this new means of locomotion.

China's Recovery of Kashgar. For twelve years the Chinese had been engaged in a struggle for the recovery of Kashgar, which had gained its independence under Yakoob Khan in 1864; but they were able to recover their lost province only after the death of Yakoob Khan, in 1877.

China's War with France. The French invasion and conquest of Tonquin during France's war with Anam in 1883 brought on a war between France and China in 1884, as the Chinese government claimed a suzerainty over Tonquin. The French navy bombarded Foo Chow in August, 1884, and the French armies gained some victories over the Chinese forces in Tonquin; but the great Chinese victory at Langson, in the spring of 1885, led to a treaty of peace by which France was obliged to relinquish her claim for indemnity from China, while China recognized France's suzerainty over Tonquin.

Neighboring Empires of Siam, Anam and Burmah. Farther India, or India beyond the Ganges, has been the seat of several empires. Of these Siam is very ancient, but Anam and Burmah rose to importance only in the eighteenth century. Pegu was an ancient kingdom of Farther India which was conquered about 1755 by Alompra, the victorious founder of the Empire of Burmah, who established the complete independence of Burmah, subdued the small neighboring kingdoms, invaded Siam, and, after a series of victories, besieged the Siamese capital. Only Alompra's sudden illness and death in 1760 prevented his entire subjugation of Siam. The Burmese army at once evacuated Siam, which thus remained independent. In 1767 a Chinese army invaded Burmah and approached its capital, but was routed with great slaughter in a pitched battle. The Chinese failed in another invasion of Burmah some years afterward. Several subsequent wars between Siam and Burmah resulted in the extension of Burmese territory.

British Conquest of Burmah. Burmah's three wars with Great Britain resulted in the conquest and extinction of the Burman Empire as an independent power. In the first of these wars the British conquered and annexed a large slice of Burmese territory in 1826. In the second war the British conquered

and annexed another large portion of Burmese territory in 1852. In the third war the British subdued the remainder of the Burman Empire, and that once-powerful state of Farther India ceased to exist as an independent nation by annexation to British India in 1885.

French
Conquest
of Anam.

In 1858 the Empire of Anam became involved in a war with France and Spain, and the French conquered and annexed a large part of Anamese territory in 1862. Another war between France and Anam begun in 1883 ended in the conquest of Tonquin and Cochin China in 1885, and the whole of Anam since has been under the sovereignty of the French Republic, under the name of French Indo-China. In 1893 France forced Siam to cede all her territory east of the Mekong river to French Indo-China.

SECTION II.—ANCIENT, MEDIÆVAL AND MODERN JAPAN (B. C. 660—A. D. 1894).

THE early history of Japan is purely fabulous. The islands of Yezo and Hondo were occupied by an indigenous savage race, called Ainōs. The islands of Shikoku and Kiushiu were inhabited by mixed races from various portions of Southern Asia. The Japanese legends state that when the divine ancestors of the Japanese imperial family came to the southern islands they found those islands thus peopled. These and their descendants taught the people the simple arts of civilization and conquered the savage inhabitants of the two great northern islands.

Japan's
Early
History.

The authentic history of Japan begins with JIMMU TENNO, the first *Mikado*, or Emperor, about B. C. 660. This great personage established his power over the southern islands about that time and subdued the Ainōs of the northern islands, whereupon he ascended the throne of Japan. He was a good and wise ruler as well as a great warrior. He established his capital near Kioto and gave his subjects a code of laws and a strong, settled government. He exerted himself earnestly to promote the civilization of his dominions and was esteemed highly by his subjects. His descendants occupied the Japanese throne for many centuries, bearing the title of Mikado and claiming to reign by divine right, as their illustrious ancestor was considered the fifth in descent from the sun-goddess. The anniversary of Jimmu Tenno's accession to the Japanese throne still is celebrated in Japan as a national holiday.

Jimmu
Tenno,
the First
Mikado.

Under Jimmu Tenno's descendants Japan steadily advanced in civilization and prosperity. We are told that twelve Mikados reached the age of a hundred years. One of them is said to have reigned one hundred and one years. The reigns of the first seventeen are said to

His Suc-
cessors.

have averaged over sixty-one years. From the seventeenth to the thirty-first the average reign is little over twelve years.

**Sujin, the
Civilizer.**

In B. C. 97 began the reign of the tenth Mikado, **SUJIN THE CIVILIZER**, who labored to promote the prosperity of his subjects, improved the Japanese system of irrigation and founded a new military system.

Keiko.

The twelfth Mikado was **KEIKO**, whose son Yamato-Daké extended the Empire by conquering the Kwantung and was a great legendary hero.

**Jingu-
Kogu.**

In A. D. 203 the Empress-Regent **JINGU-KOGU** subdued Korea. Her

Ojin.

son and successor **OJIN** was a great warrior. He was deified after his death and is now worshiped as the Japanese god of war.

**Korean
Migration
and Bud-
dhism.**

After the Japanese conquest of Korea there was a large Korean migration to Japan, and the Korean immigrants introduced Buddhism into the Empire. This faith spread silently among the Japanese; and in A. D. 552 a company of doctors, diviners, astronomers and mathematicians came from Korea to live at the Japanese court, bringing a band of Buddhist missionaries with them. This Korean immigration introduced the civilization of continental Asia into Japan and brought with it art, science, letters, literature and the Buddhist religion, all of which hitherto had been unknown in the Japanese Empire; thus changing the character and history of Japan forever.

**Triumph
of Bud-
dhism.**

The Mikado and his subjects endeavored to suppress Buddhism; but that religion grew in spite of all opposition, and in A. D. 593 the Empress **SUIKO** granted perfect toleration, since which time Buddhism has grown with unceasing rapidity. At present it is one of the national religions of Japan, the other being Shintoism. The Empress **Suiko** was one of the great sovereigns of Japan. She caused written codes of laws to be framed, constituted a new and rigid system of official grades, caused the Empire to be resurveyed and fixed the boundaries of its provinces more accurately.

**Empress
Suiko.**

**Dissen-
sions and
Civil
Wars.**

For the next five centuries the Mikado's power declined, and Japan was distracted by the contentions of rival families. The Mikado became a mere puppet of the great nobles, who increased their own power. The Mikado was allowed one wife and twelve concubines, so as to insure offspring; and the succession depended upon the Mikado's arbitrary will. This was the cause of the centuries of civil war that followed. To end this anarchy and strife, the Mikado finally established the office of *Shogun* and assigned to him the civil power of the realm.

**Office of
Shogun.**

**Yoritomo,
the First
Shogun.**

Yoritomo, the first *Shogun*, was a great Japanese hero and was the son of a Minamoto noble by a peasant family. He quickly established his power over the whole Empire and soon reduced all the rebellious nobles to submission. He usurped all the powers of the government, leaving to the Mikado his hereditary rank, dignity and character, A. D. 1184. Thenceforth until the Japanese revolution of 1868 the

Shogun was the real ruler of Japan, while the Mikado was the true source of power. The office of Shogun was made hereditary in Yoritomo's family, but eventually passed to other families. Yoritomo established his capital at Kamakura, about thirty-five miles from Yeddo, and set up a magnificent court. Kioto remained the Mikado's capital. Yoritomo died A. D. 1199, after a reign of fifteen years.

Dual Government.

The Hojo family then held the Shogunate until 1333 and maintained order and tranquillity in Japan for over a century. They encouraged literature, science and art. During their rule the resources of Japan were developed, and some branches of useful handicraft and the fine arts attained a perfection in that country never since surpassed. Uneki, the celebrated image carver, sculptor and architect, flourished during that period; as did also the lacquer artists, who are the "old masters" in that branch of art. The military spirit of the Japanese people was kept alive, and tactics were improved, while the civil administration was simplified. Splendid temples were erected, and the glory and prestige of this isolated Far Eastern empire were maintained at a high state.

The Hojo Family.

Japan's Progress in Civilization.

In 1274 Kublai Khan, the great Mongol conqueror of China, sent an expedition against Japan; but these Tartar invaders were routed. In 1281 Kublai Khan sent a still more formidable fleet and army against Japan, but this armament was destroyed by a storm and by the desperate valor of the Japanese. Since then no foreign power has attempted to invade Japan.

Kublai Khan's Invasions.

In 1333 the Mikado cast off the Shogun's rule and asserted his power; but in 1336 he again was forced to submit to his great vassal, and the dual government was restored. From 1336 to 1573 Japan was governed by thirteen Shoguns of the Ashikaga family. Nobunaga, who became Shogun in 1558, attempted to reduce the whole Empire to submission to him, but finally was killed by an officer whom he had offended. He persecuted the Buddhists, burned their temples and monasteries and caused thousands of them to be massacred. To counteract their influence, he showed great favor to the Jesuits, who were then in the midst of their labors in Japan. After his death Japan was torn by dissensions for a year until Hidéyoshi defeated his rivals, made himself Shogun and forced the Mikado to confirm him permanently in his office.

Ashikaga Family of Shoguns.

Nobunaga.

Persecution of Buddhists.

Hidéyoshi.

Hydélyoshi was a great warrior and a great statesman and framed a useful code of laws, called the *Laws of Taiko*. He contemplated the conquest of China and sent an army of one hundred and sixty thousand men into Korea in 1592. The Koreans at once submitted; but Hydélyoshi's death, September 15, 1598, obliged the expedition to return to Japan immediately.

Laws of Taiko.

Invasion of Korea.

**Toku-
gawa
Iyeyasu
as
Shogun.**

**His
Great
Rule.**

**Tyranny
of the
Shoguns.**

After a struggle of a few years, the great Tokugawa Iyeyasu deprived Hidéyoshi's infant son of the Shogunate and made himself Shogun, A. D. 1603. His family held the Shogunate until 1867, and during the period of their rule Japan was blessed with profound peace. Yeddo hitherto had been a small town; but Iyeyasu made it his capital, and in a few years it became a populous and magnificent city. He perfected the system of dual government; and, although he did not dare to depose the Mikado and professed to rule in his name and for his benefit, he and his successors firmly wielded the real powers of the Empire. Under Iyeyasu the feudal system of Japan was brought to perfection, and the great nobles were made directly responsible to the Shogun.

Under Iyeyasu and his successors a perfect tyranny had full sway in Japan. The Chinese classics were to constitute the limit of learning. The Buddhist hierarchy was given the encouragement of government example and patronage to crush the intellect of the Japanese masses. Foreign ideas were interdicted. Edicts ordered the destruction of all boats built upon a foreign model and forbade the building of vessels of any size or shape superior to that of a junk. Belief in Christianity was punished with death, as was also traveling abroad or studying foreign languages or introducing foreign customs. People were required to seal their upper windows and to bow their faces to the earth before the august train of the Shogun. The populace were required even to do obeisance with their faces in the dust before his tea jars and cooking pots. The study of ancient history was forbidden to the lower classes and discouraged among the higher, because it would expose the origin of the Shogunate. The life-blood of many a master spirit was drained by a rigid censorship; while the preparation of false and garbled histories, which extolled the reigning Shogunate or which glorified the dual system of government as the best and only one for Japan, was encouraged. A large army of spies was kept in the pay of the government. The eight classes of the Japanese people were kept contented and happy. A fertile soil and genial climate gave food in abundance. As there was no commerce, there was no vast wealth to be accumulated. The Samurai alone possessed all learning and education and also were given the sword and privilege. The daimios were kept poor, and no two of them were permitted to meet in private or to visit each other without spies.

**Marco
Polo,
Dutch
and Por-
tuguese
Traders
and the
Jesuits.**

In the meantime Christianity had been introduced into Japan. Japan was first made known to Europeans in the thirteenth century by Marco Polo, the great Venetian traveler, during his residence in China. This knowledge was extended subsequently by Portuguese and Dutch traders, during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries. The Portu-

guese first visited the country in 1542. Jesuit missionaries soon followed; and in 1549 St. Francis Xavier, "the Apostle of the Indies," came to Japan. These Jesuit missionaries were treated kindly at first; and they made many converts to Christianity, even among the most powerful nobles.

In 1582 these Japanese Christians sent an embassy to the Pope to assure him of their submission to the Roman Catholic Church. In 1598 the Dutch opened commercial intercourse with Japan; and in 1609 they were granted the port of Hirado, where they built a factory or trading post. They were granted important privileges. We have seen that Nobunaga favored the Portuguese and the Jesuits for the purpose of destroying Buddhism. Hidéyoshi persecuted the native Christians because they opposed his tyranny, and he finally banished the Portuguese and the Jesuit missionaries on account of their insolent defiance of his government.

This edict was renewed in 1596, and the next year twenty-three priests were massacred at Nagasaki in one day. The native Christians espoused the cause of the Jesuit missionaries; whereupon they were persecuted terribly, their churches and schools being destroyed, while it was declared treason to hold to or teach Christianity. The Portuguese were deprived of their privilege of free access to the Empire and were confined to the island of Deshima at Nagasaki.

In 1622 a terrible massacre of the Christians occurred at Nagasaki, many being sacrificed with horrible tortures. Driven to despair, the surviving native Christians plotted to overthrow the government. This plot was discovered in 1637, whereupon the persecution was renewed with increased severity. The Portuguese were banished from Japan forever, and all natives and Japanese ships were forbidden to leave the country under severe penalties.

After the Portuguese had been thus expelled from Japan their trade and privileges at once were bestowed upon the Dutch, who, being Protestants, were not hated as were the Jesuits and their disciples. In 1640 the native Christians openly rebelled, but finally were reduced to submission; and thirty-one thousand of them were massacred at the capture of their last stronghold. In 1641 the Dutch were forced to abandon their factory at Hirado and to remove to the island of Deshima, whence they were permitted to trade with the Empire under certain rigid conditions; and for the next two centuries they enjoyed a monopoly of the trade with Japan.

After Christianity had been thus stamped out in Japan the Japanese devoted themselves to their old religions. The Shoguns favored Buddhism, while the Mikados supported Shintoism. Thus for two centuries Japan rigidly excluded herself from the rest of the world.

Privileges to Dutch Traders.

Expulsion of Portuguese and Jesuits.

Persecution of Japanese Christians.

Massacre and Renewed Persecution of Christians.

Trade with the Dutch.

Christian Rebellion and Massacre.

Buddhism and Shintoism.

Reaction
against
the
Shoguns.

In the meantime a strong reaction had been growing up in Japan against the Shogun's rule. The educated classes of Japan never had ceased to consider the Mikado the only legitimate sovereign of Japan. These persons began to draw nearer to the Mikado as early as the beginning of the eighteenth century and discussed among themselves measures for restoring the Mikado to his lawful position. The second Prince of Mito originated this movement by gathering many scholars about him and having the *History of Japan* prepared under his guidance.

His
History
of Japan.

This prince died in 1700, but his son and successor took up his work and caused the great history to be completed in 1715. This work immediately became a classic and was read eagerly by all classes. Its main objects were to show that the Mikado was the rightful sovereign of Japan and that the Shogun was a military usurper.

External
History
of Japan.

The *External History of Japan*, the product of twenty years of labor on the part of the great scholar, Rai Sanyo, published in 1827, had the same object in view. The influence of these works was great, and thinking men were convinced that a collision between the partisans of the Mikado and those of the Shogun was inevitable.

Failure
at Revolt.

Thinking the time propitious, the Prince of Mito resolved to bring on the struggle in 1840; but his efforts were suppressed promptly by the Shogun, and he was taken prisoner and kept in captivity twelve years. After this failure the southern clans prepared secretly for another effort.

Commo-
dore
Perry's
American
Expedi-
tion to
Japan.

The Japanese having treated the wrecked crews of European and American vessels on the Japanese coasts with great harshness, the United States government sent an expedition under Commodore Matthew C. Perry to Japan in 1852, to negotiate a treaty of commerce and friendship with the Empire of Japan. After delivering the President's letter to the Japanese authorities Commodore Perry sailed for China, but returned to Japan in 1854 and succeeded in negotiating a treaty with the Shogun at Kanagawa, March 31, 1854, by which the ports of Shimoda and Hakodate were opened to foreign commerce and made the places of residence of American consuls.

His
Treaty.

Japan's
Commer-
cial
Treaties
with the
Western
Nations.

In September of the same year, 1854, a British squadron under Sir James Stirling entered the harbor of Nagasaki and concluded a treaty with the Shogun, opening the ports of Hakodate and Nagasaki to foreign commerce. The Russians and the Dutch made similar treaties with the Shogun. Mr. Harris, the United States consul, made a still more liberal treaty with the Shogun, June 17, 1857, by which the harbor of Nagasaki was opened to American commerce. In spite of the opposition of the Japanese, Mr. Harris proceeded to Yeddo in 1858 and concluded a third treaty still more favorable to the United States.

During the same year Lord Elgin, escorted by a British squadron, reached Yeddo and negotiated a treaty with the Shogun by which the ports of Hakodate, Nagasaki and Kanagawa were opened to British commerce after July 1, 1859. Thenceforth until 1874 Japan concluded treaties of friendship with Russia, Holland, Prussia, Portugal, Spain, France, Switzerland, Italy, Austria, Greece, Denmark, Sweden and Norway, the Hawaiian Islands, Peru and China. Commodore Perry's treaty was the beginning of Japan's intercourse with the Western nations—an intercourse which has entirely changed the destiny of that ancient and remote Oriental empire.

The Japanese considered the Shogun's action in negotiating these treaties as another usurpation of the Mikado's power, and his course aroused a strong reaction in favor of the Mikado. The nation resented the Shogun's violation of the traditional policy of non-intercourse with foreigners, and the country resounded with the cry of "Honor the Mikado and expel the barbarian." The Shogun was considered a traitor, and the Mikado's cause was vastly strengthened.

Reaction
in Favor
of the
Mikado.

Upon the Shogun's death, in 1858, his able but unscrupulous Prime Minister, Ii, became regent, and, setting aside the legitimate successor, conferred the Shogunate upon the infant Prince of Kii, but kept the real power in his own hands. He suppressed the opposition to his arbitrary act by imprisoning and executing the leaders of the movement against him. His action in sending an embassy to the United States and Europe in 1859 without consulting the Mikado increased the hatred of the Japanese people toward him; and he was assassinated in the streets of Yeddo, March 23, 1860.

Ii's Usur-
pation
of the
Shogun-
ate.

The Mikado's party now rapidly increased in numbers; and the Shogun's followers sought to recover their lost ground by trying to persuade the foreigners to close the ports and leave the country, but failed in this effort. About this time the forces of the Prince of Choshu, or Nogato, by the Mikado's order, fired upon the ships of the United States, Great Britain, France and Holland. These powers punished this act by sending a combined squadron to Shimonoseki and capturing that port after a severe bombardment, A. D. 1864. Japan was obliged to pay an indemnity of three million dollars. This occurrence showed the Japanese the power of the foreigners and made them more careful in their conduct toward them in the future.

War
with the
United
States,
Great
Britain,
France
and
Holland.

Though the Prince of Choshu had obeyed the Mikado in firing upon the foreign vessels, he had disobeyed the Shogun; and in 1866 the Shogun marched against him to punish him for his disobedience. The Shogun's forces were armed and disciplined in the old Japanese style, while those of the Prince of Choshu were armed with European rifles and artillery and had been disciplined by Dutch officers. A campaign

Civil War
between
the
Shogun
and the
Mikado.

of three months ended in the Shogun's overwhelming defeat; and he died September 19, 1866, worn out with disease and with mortification at his failure.

**Keiki,
the Last
Shogun.**

His successor, Keiki, was the last Shogun. The Mikado's party grew bolder, and in October, 1867, urged the Mikado to abolish the Shogunate and to resume the government himself. This proposal was sustained so generally by the most powerful princes and nobles of the Empire that Keiki resigned the Shogunate, November 9, 1867.

**The
Mikado's
Revolutionary
Changes.**

The Mikado's party seized the palace on January 3, 1868, drove out the nobles and established a government under which the highest offices were filled by the *kuge*, or court nobles of the imperial family; those of the next order by the *daimios*, or courtiers, and those of the third order by men selected by the Samurai. This gave the whole power of the government of the great Japanese Empire to the Satsuma, Choshu, Tosa and Hizen clans.

**Complete
Restoration of the
Mikado's
Authority.**

The ex-Shogun was highly displeased with this arrangement and appealed to arms to recover his lost power, but he was defeated in a three days' battle and fled to Yeddo in a United States steamer. Seeing the hopelessness of further resistance, he surrendered to the Mikado's forces, announced his determination never again to oppose the Mikado and retired to private life. The Shogun's submission fully restored the Mikado's authority throughout the Empire as it had existed previous to A. D. 1184 and gave tranquillity to Japan.

**The
Mikado's
New
Foreign
Policy.**

Hitherto the Mikado's party had been the most inveterate enemies of the treaties negotiated by the Shogun with the foreign powers. A few men among them had profoundly studied the subject and had perceived the folly of holding their country isolated from the rest of the world. These men now devoted themselves to promoting the intercourse of Japan with the treaty powers and found this an easy task, as the leaders of the Mikado's party now had become convinced of the vast superiority of the foreign system of warfare over the native. They likewise feared that the foreign powers would force Japan to observe the treaties negotiated with the Shogun and were convinced that the Japanese were not able to make a successful resistance. They therefore invited the representatives of the foreign powers to a conference at Kioto.

**Friendly
Inter-
course
with the
Western
Nations.**

Many of the Japanese court nobles never had seen a foreigner, and when they saw these foreign representatives at the conference they instantly abandoned their prejudices against them. The treaties with the Western powers therefore were renewed cordially, and the foreign powers recognized the Mikado as the only legal sovereign of Japan. The foundations thus were laid for the cordial relations which ever since have existed between Japan and the nations of Christendom. Foreign



From Stereograph, copyright 1905 by Underwood & Underwood
FARMERS' WIVES HEADING BARLEY

THE
UNIVERSITY OF
CHICAGO
PRESS
CHICAGO, ILL.
1927

ideas and customs ever since have been adopted gradually by the Japanese, who are great imitators.

Since 1868 the character of Japanese civilization has undergone a total change. The government, the army, the navy and the finances are administered on the European plan. The European dress is rapidly taking the place of the old Japanese costume, and many Japanese young men destined for the public service of their country are sent to the schools and colleges of Europe and the United States to be educated in the learning and civilization of the Christian world. In all these measures the young Mikado MUTSUHITO, who ascended the Japanese throne in 1867, has taken an active part; and he has sought constantly to promote the civilization of his Empire and to render its intercourse with the United States and the European powers more intimate.

European-
ization of
Japan.

The
Mikado
Mutsu-
hito.

The changes which occurred in the Japanese government since 1868 have been very rapid. In 1871 the Mikado abolished the titles of *kuge* and *daimio*, or court and imperial noble, and replaced them with that of *kuazoku*, or noble families. This decree deprived the great Japanese nobles of their territorial fiefs, which were reclaimed by the crown, thus destroying the feudal system of Japan at one blow. In the same year the Mikado removed his capital from the old sacred city of Kioto to the great city of Yeddo, the name of which was changed to *Tokio*, meaning "Western capital." The Mikado granted to the daimios one-tenth of their former incomes on condition of residing permanently at Tokio.

Abolition
of the
Feudal
System
of Japan.

Yeddo, or
Tokio,
the
Capital.

In December, 1871, Japan sent an embassy to Europe and the United States. This embassy visited each of the Western nations in succession and negotiated new treaties of commerce and friendship with them. The embassy returned to Japan in September, 1873.

Japanese
Embassy.

In 1874 Japan sent an expedition to the island of Formosa to chastise the natives for their outrages upon Japanese sailors wrecked on their shores. This expedition was successful, but involved Japan in a dispute with China, which claimed Formosa as one of her dependencies. War was threatened, but the firmness of the Japanese ambassadors induced China to enter into a treaty with Japan and to make reparation to that power for her losses.

Japan's
Dispute
with
China
in 1874.

In July, 1875, Japan ceded the island of Saghalien to Russia in exchange for the Kurile Islands. In 1876 a long standing quarrel with Korea was settled upon terms favorable to Japan. In the same year Japan took part in the Centennial International Exhibition at Philadelphia, where that Oriental empire gave satisfactory evidence of its success in the new national career upon which it so recently had entered.

Exchange
with
Russia.

Japan in
the Cen-
tennial.

Conserv-
ative
Party.

Rebellion
of 1877.

Eminent
Japanese.

Japan's
Constitu-
tion and
Transfor-
mation.

In the meantime Japan had been making great progress in the adoption of Western civilization, but there still was a conservative party which adhered to the old traditions. In 1877 a formidable rebellion headed by the daimio Saigo broke out at Satsuma and Choshu to check the Europeanizing of Japan, but the rebellion was crushed after desperate fighting. Among great Japanese, Count Saigo, Minister of Marine and Admiral of the Fleet, and Generals Oyama, Kawakami and Kabayama are from Satsuma, while Field-Marshal Yamagata, Count Ito, the Premier, and Count Inouye, the other Chief Minister, are from Choshu.

In February, 1889, Japan adopted a new constitution, giving the Empire two legislative Chambers and a Ministry; thus making it a constitutional monarchy and modeling its government upon that of Great Britain. On account of the wonderful and peaceful progress in recent times by which Japan has turned her back upon the past and taken her place among the most enlightened nations of the world, that Oriental nation has been called the "England of the East."

SECTION III.—THE CHINO-JAPANESE WAR (A. D. 1894-1895).

Chino-
Japanese
War and
Result.

THE old rivalry between Japan, the representative of Western civilization in the Far East, and China, the champion of the old civilization of Fohi and Confucius, broke out into a fierce and bloody war during the summer of 1894—a war which lasted about nine months and which was characterized by uninterrupted victory on the side of Japan, with her forty million people, and the utter humiliation of China, with her four hundred million population.

Collisions
of the
Mikado
with His
Parlia-
ment.

In the course of time, for many years past the position of the Mikado's government, face to face with an intractable Parliamentary opposition, had been extremely difficult. The lower chamber, or popular branch of the Japanese Parliament, frequently had refused to vote supplies, and the Mikado and his Ministry repeatedly had been obliged to strain their constitutional powers. A particularly acute crisis in December, 1893, and January, 1894, was ended by a dissolution of Parliament; but a general election in April, 1894, left the Mikado and his Cabinet at the mercy of their opponents, who suffered but slight loss in the elections. In this emergency the Mikado and his Ministers resolved to gain popularity and strength by the old device of resorting to foreign war.

In May, 1894, a month after the general elections, public opinion in Japan was excited intensely by the murder of a Korean rebel poli-

tician at Shanghai, China, with Chinese connivance. The murdered Korean rebel's intrigues in his own country had been favored and fostered by Japan. In June, 1894, a month later, rebellion broke out in the Kingdom of Korea; and the Chinese Emperor, as suzerain of the little kingdom, undertook the suppression of the rebellion in his tributary kingdom. About the same time the Japanese Parliament was again dissolved, and the Mikado and his Ministers found themselves with a free hand and a considerable support of public sentiment behind them. In July, 1894, Japan sent troops to Korea, and Japanese warships were in Korean waters. The Korean port of Chemulpo was occupied by a Japanese garrison; and Seoul, the Korean capital, was garrisoned by six thousand Japanese troops. Thus a state of war between the Empires of China and Japan actually existed by the close of July, 1894.

**Korean
Rebellion
against
China.**

**Japan's
Aid to
Korea.**

The Chinese Emperor resolved to sustain his suzerainty over the Kingdom of Korea, which had been tributary to China for several centuries. This Chinese supremacy over Korea always had been a source of rivalry between China and Japan; and in 1874, twenty years before the recent war, a war was threatened between the two great Oriental empires, but finally was averted by diplomacy and by the mediation of the great European powers, which exerted their good offices to prevent the kindling of the flames of conflict in Eastern Asia, and peace was preserved for a score of years longer.

**Chino-
Japanese
Rivalry
over
Korea.**

Early in July, 1894, Japan summoned the King of Korea to relinquish the suzerainty of China, to declare independence of China, to accept Japanese protection and to dismiss the Chinese Resident. Three thousand more Japanese troops were sent to Seoul. Japan then had ten thousand troops in Korea, consisting of infantry, cavalry and artillery. Li Hung Chang sent twenty battalions of Chinese troops by sea to Korea to oppose the Japanese. Russia and Great Britain endeavored to mediate between the two great Oriental powers for the preservation of peace, Russia urging both China and Japan to withdraw their troops from Korea.

**Japan's
Demands
on Korea.**

**Chinese
and
Japanese
Troops
in Korea.**

Civil war actually had broken out in Korea about the middle of May, 1894. The rebels against the Korean king had possession of one entire province. Korea had been distracted by insurrections of the Tonghak, a reform party, for three years. In July a number of Christians were massacred.

**Civil War
in Korea.**

Japan continued her warlike preparations. Japanese pickets and detachments were posted along the great northern road from China and held the principal pass, Ping Yang, in force. The Chinese troops remained where they were landed originally, near the seat of the recent Korean rising, sixty miles south of Chemulpo.

**The Rival
Armies.**

More
Japanese
Demands
on Korea.

The Japanese Minister now made further demands upon the Korean king, including the reform of civil government, the development of the resources of the country, including railway and telegraph concessions and the employment of Japanese capital in industry, and reform in the military system, providing for internal and external security. The Japanese Minister also required the Korean king to abjure his allegiance to China. The Japanese government refused to withdraw its troops from Korea.

Korean
Defeat by
Japanese.

On July 24, 1894, the Korean troops, instigated by the Chinese Resident, attacked the Japanese garrison at the palace of Seoul, but were defeated after spirited fighting. The six thousand Korean troops at Seoul were armed with several Gatling guns. Twelve thousand Chinese troops despatched from China in Chinese transports effected a landing in Korea. Li Hung Chang had thirty thousand troops in his camp at Tien-tsin. The Japanese captured the King of Korea, July 23d.

Chinese
Troops
in Korea.

Chinese
Transport
Sunk by
Japanese
Cruiser.

On July 25, 1894, the Japanese cruiser *Naniwa* sunk the Chinese transport *Kowshing* with thirteen hundred Chinese soldiers on board, in Korean waters, about forty miles off Chemulpo, thus creating a profound sensation throughout the civilized world. Captain von Hanneken, the commander of the *Kowshing*, escaped miraculously and arrived at Chemulpo, July 28th, in a Korean fishing boat; and one hundred and fifty of the Chinese soldiers on board the *Kowshing* reached a rock, but over a thousand perished in the waters with the sunken vessel. The Japanese vessel continued discharging broadsides into the *Kowshing* and fired upon the Chinese troops struggling in the water. The Chinese vessel fired to the last and went down with her colors flying. Some of the Chinese fired upon their own people, who tried to escape with their lives by swimming, determined that all should die together.

Japan's
Apology
to Great
Britain.

The Japanese government, upon being informed that the *Kowshing* was a British vessel chartered by the Chinese government to carry troops, at once spontaneously apologized to the British Charge d'Affaires; and the Japanese Minister of Foreign Affairs declared that if, after thorough investigation, the Japanese were found to be in the wrong the Japanese government was prepared to make full reparation.

Japanese
Victories
over the
Chinese.

On July 29, 1894, the Japanese under General Oshima gained a decisive victory over twenty-eight hundred Chinese at Chanhon, capturing the Chinese intrenchments; the Chinese losing over five hundred men killed and wounded, and the Japanese only seventy-five. A few days later the Chinese under General Yeh were routed with the loss of five hundred killed and wounded, thus giving the Japanese possession of Seikwan and Asan, or Yashan.

The Emperor of China issued an edict bidding his troops to "rout these pestilent Japanese out of their lairs," and Li Hung Chang declared that China would fight to the bitter end. The Chinese placed an order in Germany for four torpedo-boats, and Chinese agents ordered twenty-five thousand army rifles from New England manufacturers.

**China's
Prepara-
tions.**

On August 1, 1894, the Japanese government declared to the foreign ambassadors and Ministers at Tokio that a state of war existed between Japan and China. The Japanese army and navy reserves were called out. The Chinese residents in Japan were fleeing in great numbers. Japan and China issued formal declarations of war against each other.

**Japan's
Declara-
tion of
War.**

In the meantime a Chinese army of twenty thousand men marched into Korea from Manchuria. The Japanese attacked and maltreated Chinese residents at Kobe, and the Chinese at Taku openly insulted members of the Japanese embassy returning from Peking. Li Hung Chang sent a personal message to the Japanese Minister regretting that the Chinese soldiery so far forgot themselves. The riotous soldiers were punished. Japanese residents in China were mobbed, but the police tried to protect them.

**Riotous
Soldiery
on Both
Sides.**

On August 11, 1894, a large Japanese fleet exchanged a few shots with the Chinese forts on the Straits of Pechili. Both China and Japan were sending reinforcements to their armies in Korea. Twenty thousand Japanese were marching on Seoul. On August 17, 1894, the Chinese under General Tio attacked and routed Japanese detachments at Ping Yang and the next day at Chungho. On September 6th a large body of Chinese cavalry were routed by the Japanese, who captured the Chinese intrenchments and a quantity of stores and ammunition; the Chinese retreating to Ping Yang, after losing over four hundred killed and wounded, and the Japanese losing less than one hundred. The Koreans routed two thousand Japanese marching on Seoul, with a loss of twelve hundred men. On September 13th a Japanese column from Pong-San, making a reconnaissance in force, was fired upon by the Chinese forts.

**Rival
Armies
in Korea.**

**Chinese
Victories.**

**Japanese
Victory.**

**Korean
Victory
over
Japanese.**

Field-Marshal Yamagata prepared to reduce Ping Yang; and at dawn on September 15, 1894, the Japanese opened a cannonade upon the Chinese fortifications. In the afternoon the Japanese infantry took part in the fight. The Chinese replied vigorously to the Japanese fire. The firing was renewed at intervals during the night. Before daybreak, Sunday, September 16, 1894, the Japanese renewed their attacks, assailing the Chinese intrenchments in front and rear in three columns, sixty thousand strong. The unsuspecting Chinese were taken utterly unawares and fell into a panic, being completely surrounded by their foes and cut down by hundreds. After half an hour's

**Battle of
Ping
Yang.**

fight, this night attack gave the Japanese possession of Ping Yang. Of the twenty thousand Chinamen defending Ping Yang very few escaped death or capture. Whole regiments surrendered after the retreat of a detachment of two thousand panic-stricken Chinese had been cut off. The Chinese loss in killed, wounded and prisoners was seventeen thousand. General Tso Fonk Wai, commander of the Chinese Manchurian army, was wounded mortally and captured. The Chinese Generals Tsa Paok Woi, Wei Jink Woi and Sei Kinlin also were taken prisoners. The Japanese lost over seven hundred killed and wounded. The battle was decisive and the Japanese victory was complete. They captured all the Chinese stores, provisions, arms and ammunition and hundreds of colors. Field-Marshal Yamagata telegraphed the news of his victory to the Mikado at Hiroshima and was congratulated by His Majesty. Field-Marshal Yamagata issued an address to his troops, commending them for their bravery.

Naval
Battle of
the Yalu
River.

On Sunday, September 16, 1894, while the Chinese army was annihilated at Ping Yang, the Chinese fleet of eighteen vessels was attacked at the mouth of the Yalu river, while covering the landing of troops. These troops comprised the Second Chinese Army Corps, consisting entirely of Hunanese. Before the Chinese transports had landed all the troops the Japanese fleet of thirteen ships attacked them. The Chinese battleships *Chih-Yuen* and *King-Yuen* were blown up and sunk by torpedoes, after fighting desperately. The Chinese steel cruisers *Chao-Yung* and *Yang-Wei* were driven ashore and set on fire by Japanese shells and burned. The Chinese warship *Chen-Yuen* and the flagship *Ting-Yuen* were damaged seriously. Three Japanese cruisers *Matsushima* and *Yoshino* and the Japanese transport *Saikiomaru* were damaged badly. The fighting was desperate on both sides. The Chinese loss in killed and wounded was about fifteen hundred men. Among the wounded were Admiral Ting and Captain von Hanneken. The Japanese also lost heavily in killed and wounded.

Li Hung
Chang's
Disgrace.

In the meantime the Viceroy Li Hung Chang was disgraced officially by the Chinese Emperor, through the instrumentality of the Tsung-li-Yamen, or Foreign Office of the Celestial Empire, making him responsible for the disasters to the Chinese arms in Korea, thus making him the scapegoat for its blunders.

Formid-
able
Japanese
Invasion
of Korea.

In the meantime thirty-two Japanese transports had arrived at Chemulpo, convoyed thither by the Japanese fleet, bringing seven thousand Japanese troops, three thousand coolies, two thousand pack horses, pontoons and mountain guns. The Japanese government decided to follow up its victories and to prosecute the war with all possible vigor before the opening of winter. A second Japanese army, thirty thousand strong, was mobilized at Hiroshima, under the command of Count

Oyama, the Japanese Minister of War. The national enthusiasm over the recent Japanese victories in Korea was unbounded. The war loan, which was raised entirely in Japan, was subscribed three times over. The Empress, as chief patroness of the Japanese Red Cross Society, personally set the example of preparing lint and bandages for the wounded, in which humane work Her Majesty was supported actively by all the ladies of the Japanese court, whose handiwork was to be distributed between the wounded Japanese and Chinese soldiers without distinction. The Japanese Parliament was convened for an extraordinary session at Hiroshima on October 15, 1894.

**Japanese
Enthu-
siasm.**

The Chinese rapidly fortified the city of Moukden, the capital of the Chinese dependency of Manchuria, where the Chinese Emperor was believed to have had twelve hundred million dollars of treasure, accumulated in the course of two centuries. Thousands of Chinese soldiers were poured into the city to defend it at all hazards against any force which General Kawakami, the generalissimo of the Japanese armies, might send against it. The naval battle in the Yalu river practically annihilated the naval power of China, and, in connection with the land battle of Ping Yang, virtually placed the Celestial Empire at the mercy of the triumphant army and navy of Japan.

**Chinese
Fortifica-
tion of
Moukden.**

**China's
Weak-
ness.**

The remnant of the vanquished Chinese army, in its flight from the disastrous field of Ping Yang, acted the part of bandits and robbers, pillaging and burning villages, destroying farms and burning the stored produce, also massacring the natives who resisted these outrageous acts.

**Chinese
Pillage.**

An imperial decree in China appointed Prince Kung, the Emperor's uncle, and the Presidents of the Tsung-li-Yamen and of the Admiralty as a special committee to conduct the military operations. This decree was suggested by Li Hung Chang and was supported vigorously by the Empress-Dowager. The news that the imperial treasure and the dynastic archives at Moukden had been removed to a safer place inland produced a bad effect at Peking.

**China's
Prepara-
tions.**

An imperial decree in China assigned General Sung to the command of the Pei-Yang Army Corps in Manchuria and also to the command of the Manchu militia, except the Kirin division, which was left under the command of the Tartar general. The other Chinese generals were ordered to obey General Sung on pain of death.

**The
Chinese
General
Sung.**

The Chinese Emperor and his Councilors were in a state of alternate terror and indignation at the possibility of a Japanese invasion. The Emperor declared that the recent defeats could have been caused by incompetence and corruption only, and the enemies of Li Hung Chang sedulously encouraged this mood of the Emperor. The disorganization of the Chinese military affairs was appalling, and the corruption

**Chaos,
Corrup-
tion and
Dismay
in China.**

of the Chinese officials was astounding. There was no clothing and only scanty food for the Chinese troops. Guns, rifles and ammunition which had been bought and paid for could neither be found nor traced. Chaos and terror prevailed everywhere. The great Chinese camp between Tien-tsin and Taku was filled with raw levies. Disorders were rampant, and the daily beheadings of delinquents did not produce any improvement in discipline. There were no rifles or muskets for these troops.

**Anti-
Foreign
Feeling
in China.**

No foreigners ventured near the Chinese camp unless they were guarded sufficiently. Most Europeans went to the coast towns, where they were under the protection of the warships of their respective nations. Foreigners were menaced with violence constantly, and the authorities were unable to keep the mobs in check. All the European women and children in Hankow were sent to Shanghai for safety. The European men, traders and officials alike, formed a volunteer corps to defend their lives and property. The native hostility to foreigners was growing stronger daily. Many Chinese merchants also migrated to the coast towns, as they felt more secure near foreigners than with their own countrymen. The Viceroy feared that the mobs would break out into armed rebellion; and fortifications were thrown up at Woo-chang, opposite Hankow, in anticipation of a serious attack upon the city. The European powers acted in accord for the protection of their subjects in China. Great Britain, France, Germany, Italy, Russia and the United States reinforced their squadrons in Chinese waters.

**Cheng's
Disgrace.**

Cheng, nephew of Li Hung Chang and the chief magistrate of Tien-tsin, was disgraced officially after an investigation conducted by Li Hung Chang himself, revealing the fact that Cheng had bought three hundred thousand obsolete rifles from German agents for two taels each, while he charged the imperial treasury nine taels each for them. The cartridges were of inferior quality and of various patterns, and Cheng made a large profit from them also. Li Hung Chang sent for his nephew, who did not deny his guilt. Li Hung Chang ended a strong interview by slapping his nephew's face, and Cheng was removed from his position at once.

**China's
Defensive
Measures.**

Wang Seng Tsao, the late Chinese Minister to Japan, was reprimanded by his government for his ignorance of the Japanese designs against Korea. The Chinese Emperor now took matters into his own hands, and precautionary measures were taken at all the ports. The Chinese closed Foochow and put Canton in a state of defense. Prince Kung was occupied mainly in providing for the defense of Peking and its approaches. Li Hung Chang sent eight thousand men, well armed and disciplined, to Peking; but his best regiments were with him at Tien-tsin. Two thousand Chinese troops in Korea deserted for want

of pay and joined the enemy. The Chinese soldiers lived off the country they happened to be in and reduced it to a desert, thus obliging the inhabitants to abandon their homes for want of the means of subsistence.

**Chinese
Lack of
Disci-
pline.**

In the meantime Japanese spies were detected in China and were arrested, tried, convicted and beheaded. These spies were discovered cutting telegraph wires and laying torpedos along the coast.

**Japanese
Spies.**

The Japanese Parliament was convened in extraordinary session, October 15, 1894, at Hiroshima, where the Mikado established his headquarters, and remained in session one week, during which it authorized war loans amounting to one hundred million yen and a total war expenditure of one hundred and fifty million yen. Count Ito, the Japanese Premier, addressed both Houses.

**Action
of the
Japanes
Parliam-
ent.**

The Japanese occupied Wi-ju, October 8, 1894, after a slight encounter with the Chinese, who fled precipitately after a feeble resistance and crossed the Yalu river, after losing about a hundred men out of a force of two thousand. The Japanese advanced steadily on Port Arthur, in the peninsula of Liao-tung, and a Japanese force invaded Manchuria from Korea. A Japanese detachment of sixteen hundred men which crossed the Yalu river above Wi-ju captured a Chinese intrenchment after brief fighting, the Chinese losing twenty killed and wounded and the Japanese none, October 24, 1894. The next day the Japanese gained a signal victory at Hoosan, near Kiu-lien-tcheng, after three hours' fighting. The Chinese force, numbering thirty-five hundred men, was routed utterly and scattered, with the loss of over two hundred killed, while the Japanese lost a little over a hundred killed and wounded. Before dawn on October 26th the Japanese army under Field-Marshal Yamagata attacked sixteen thousand Chinese under General Sung at Kiu-lien-tcheng. The Chinese fled; and the victorious Japanese next captured Andong with twenty cannon, besides rifles and ammunition. The Chinese also took Tatung-Kao. These Chinese defeats produced consternation at Tien-tsin.

**Japanese
Victories.**

A Chinese court-martial convicted Generals Yeh and Wei of cowardice and neglect of duty in retreating from Ping Yang without justification, thereby leaving General Tso and his Kirin troops alone to fight the Japanese armies; and both generals were degraded from military rank and deprived of honors, for their cowardice. General Wei was beheaded afterward.

**Disgrace
of Two
Chinese
Generals.**

The Chinese Board of War made great efforts to obtain more troops for the defense of Peking. The Viceroy of Nankin, who already had raised twenty thousand Hunanese troops, was ordered imperatively to send several additional battalions overland from Chin-kiang to Tien-tsin. He accordingly collected several thousand men from various

**Prepara-
tions to
Defend
Pekin.**

garrisons, but they refused to go unless their three months' arrears of pay had been handed them.

Prince
Kung's
Appeal
and
Offers of
European
Media-
tion.

In the meantime the Great European Powers made efforts to bring about peace. Their Ministers in China met the Tsung-li-Yamen on November 3, 1894, to hear what the Chinese government had to say respecting the critical Chinese situation. Prince Kung calmly and frankly avowed China's impotence and her inability to withstand the Japanese attack, and he appealed to the Powers to intervene for peace. He stated that China was willing to relinquish her suzerainty over Korea and to pay a war indemnity. The foreign Ministers promised to use their influence in procuring the mediation of their respective governments in favor of peace. The United States also endeavored to mediate.

Japan's
Defiant
Attitude.

The dream of the Japanese nation, flushed with victory, was the complete submission of China to any terms which Japan chose to dictate. The Japanese were so intoxicated with their successes that they now considered themselves invincible and powerful enough to defy any interference from any or all of the European Powers.

Japanese
Suc-
cesses
in Man-
churia.

The Japanese entered Feng-huang-tcheng on October 31, 1894, the Chinese having fled, their generals going to Moukden. The inhabitants of the captured town, hating the violence and rapacity of the Chinese, welcomed the Japanese army. Thus the Chinese defense of Moukden collapsed; and the Japanese invaders marched westward, though cold weather had set in and snow had fallen in Manchuria. The Japanese here took no prisoners, but they disarmed and dispersed the Chinese soldiers wherever found. By Field-Marshal Yamagata's orders, the peaceable inhabitants were treated with the utmost consideration, all food purchased being paid for at a recognized scale, and laborers being paid daily for any extra help required; the result of which was that the Japanese camp was thronged with Chinese peasants offering produce, while more Chinese laborers were asking for work than could be accommodated. The Japanese established a local government at An-tung for the administration of the Chinese territory occupied by the Japanese, and the taxes leviable on the Chinese were remitted for a year. The Chinese there welcomed the Japanese with open arms. The Japanese reputation for humanity in paying for supplies did the Japanese immense service; and their conduct was contrasted with that of the Chinese troops, who made war in the ancient style and were dreaded by the people and officials alike in victory and in defeat.

Siege of
Port
Arthur.

A Japanese army of forty thousand men under Marshal Oyama left Hiroshima and landed on Chinese territory in the peninsula of Liao-tung without meeting any opposition, captured fifteen timber-laden

Chinese junks, blockaded Port Arthur and Talienwan, completely invested Port Arthur before the end of October, captured one of the forts at Port Arthur and defeated the Chinese in a spirited engagement. The Chinese troops at Port Arthur, Kinchou and Talienwan numbered thirteen thousand men. The Chinese situation at Port Arthur now was extremely critical, and the Chinese Pe-Yang squadron in the port was caught in a trap. Early in November the Japanese established a complete cordon around Port Arthur and captured the two outermost forts on the land side.

The Japanese took Kinchou and Talienwan on November 8, 1894, the Chinese garrisons offering little resistance and fleeing in the direction of Port Arthur. Two thousand Chinese troops under General Shui were overpowered by the Japanese east of Kinchou on the same day, after two days' fighting. The next day the Japanese routed the Chinese at Namquan Pass, twenty-five miles from Port Arthur. At Talienwan the Japanese captured eighty cannon, large stores of ammunition and one steamer.

Japanese
Victories.

Field-Marshal Yamagata continued his victorious march in Manchuria, his various divisions defeating the Chinese detachments in several engagements. The defeated Chinese troops suffered from cold and hunger. Field-Marshal Yamagata sent a brigade under General Osako to disperse six thousand Chinese troops under General Ma at Siu-Yen, but the Chinese fled on Sunday night, November 18, 1894, without offering any resistance, and the Japanese quietly occupied Siu-Yen and took possession of the five cannon which the Chinese had abandoned in their flight. The Chinese retreated toward Hai-tcheng.

More
Japanese
Successes.

The second Japanese army under Marshal Oyama marched toward Port Arthur in two divisions by different routes. On November 19, 1894, a Chinese force strongly intrenched in the passes north of Port Arthur was attacked, and, after desperate fighting, was driven from its intrenchments, fleeing to Port Arthur. Both sides suffered severe losses. On the same day the Japanese captured a fort two miles west of Port Arthur. The next day the right division of Marshal Oyama's army had a skirmish with the Chinese, who retired in good order. The same division captured the fort and village of Shui-sy-Ching.

Japanese
Victories
near
Port
Arthur.

The next morning the right division carried the low range of hills north-west of Port Arthur with a rush and then cannonaded and bombarded a strong redoubt a thousand yards distant. The Chinese garrison returned the fire briskly; but the Japanese infantry advanced in the face of a well-directed shell fire without faltering, and before nine o'clock they carried the redoubt by storm in the most gallant style. The Chinese resisted fiercely for several minutes and then fled toward the dockyard.

Capture
of a
Redoubt
at Port
Arthur.

Capture
of Ports
at Port
Arthur.

In the meantime the left division of Marshal Oyama's army had been engaged fiercely with the Chinese on the south-east side of Port Arthur. After advancing over the hills this division was raked by a heavy fire from three forts connected by trenches strongly held, and a heavy duel ensued between the Japanese artillery and the heavy Chinese cannon in the forts, while the Japanese infantry meanwhile advanced all along the line, taking advantage of the brushwood and other cover. The forts finally were carried by assault, the Chinese garrisons being driven from the three forts after making the most gallant defense.

Capture
of Port
Arthur.

By evening of the same day, November 21, 1894, Port Arthur was in the possession of the Japanese; but the Chinese still held ten redoubts on the coast line, armed with about twenty cannon. Early on the morning of the 23d (November, 1894) these works were captured by the Japanese without serious loss on their part. Twenty-three Japanese torpedo-boats suddenly rushed through the entrance to Port Arthur, thus surprising the Chinese and distracting their attention while the land attack was being delivered.

The
Spoils of
Victory.

Thus the Japanese captured Port Arthur after several days of continuous fighting. They found eighty cannon and mortars in the captured forts and redoubts and many more in the dockyards. They also obtained possession of an immense quantity of ammunition, besides completely-equipped torpedo stores and large quantities of rice and beans. All the Chinese vessels, factories and docks were taken intact and were ready for use. The Chinese forces at Port Arthur numbered about twenty thousand men and lost more than a thousand men, while the Japanese lost about two hundred and fifty killed and wounded. Most of the Chinese escaped from Port Arthur on the night of November 21st.

Japanese
Reprisals.

In revenge for the mutilation and decapitation of a number of Japanese prisoners in the hands of the Chinese, the triumphant Japanese troops gave no quarter to their vanquished foes during the storming of the defenses of Port Arthur and shot many Chinese soldiers who attempted to escape. The Japanese also pillaged the town and killed nearly every man in it. They also committed atrocities on Chinese prisoners, who were pinioned, stripped, shot, hacked with knives, disemboweled and dismembered.

Japanese
Victory
near
Moukden.

The capture of Port Arthur was followed by a victory of the Japanese arms in Manchuria. The first Japanese army under Field-Marshal Yamagata, in its advance in that Chinese dependency, defeated the Chinese near Mo-thieu-ling. The Japanese lost about forty killed and wounded, while the Chinese lost over two hundred. Moukden was evacuated by the foreign residents early in November. The city was deserted by its inhabitants also, and for miles around the ground was

covered with broken household furniture and articles of clothing. All the treasure also had been removed. The country traversed by the Chinese army was stripped of its vegetation and resembled fields ravaged by locusts.

A rebellion broke out at Jehol, in the Chinese dependency of Mongolia, in revenge for the assassination of six Mongolian princes by the Chinese General Yeh. Very soon the rebellious Mongols committed ninety-one murders. Many deserters from the Chinese armies joined the permanent Manchurian banditti, who now formed a dangerous band, after the death of the Chinese General Tso in the battle of Ping Yang, who had been a terror to the robbers. Robbery now was prevalent in Manchuria and already was extending southward across the Great Wall into China proper. Ordinary traffic and traveling were suspended. The country people had implicit confidence in foreign protection, and the fugitive peasants asked only the nearest way to an English settlement.

**Rebellion
in
Mongolia.**

Over two hundred Chinese mandarins signed a memorial charging Li Hung Chang with corruption, peculation and treason and demanding his instant punishment. Accordingly an imperial edict was issued depriving him of his rank and all his titles, but allowing him to retain his office of Viceroy.

**Li Hung
Chang's
Disgrace.**

The fall of Port Arthur and the advance of the Japanese in Manchuria made the Chinese government exceedingly anxious for peace, and a customs officer in the employ of China was in Japan for the purpose of opening peace negotiations; but Count Ito, the Japanese Prime Minister, refused him an audience or to receive any communication from him, as the sending of a subordinate official was regarded as little less than an insult on the part of the Chinese government. Japan was ready to accept peace proposals if put forward by a properly-accredited envoy and not by a mere messenger sent by a Chinese Viceroy. The only credentials of Detring, the messenger, were a letter from Li Hung Chang to Count Ito. China intimated her intention to offer a war indemnity of one hundred million taels and to pay Japan's war expenses as one of the conditions of peace.

**China
Sues for
Peace.**

Fighting continued in Manchuria between Japanese detachments and small bodies of Chinese troops. Several thousand Tonghaks who attacked a Japanese force at Kong-ju, in Southern Korea, on November 28, 1894, were defeated with great slaughter.

**Japanese
Victories.**

Two high Chinese officials—Olo Ho Pu, President of the Board of War, and Chang Chi Wan, President of the Civil Board—were superseded at the Chinese Court in consequence of the discovery of certain designs in which a number of high officers were interested. This was another blow to Li Hung Chang's party. Li Hung Chang still was

**Disgrace
of
Chinese
Officials.**

Viceroy of Pechili. A Court of Inquiry at Peking condemned the Chinese commandant at Kinchou for surrendering the post to the Japanese, and he therefore was degraded from military rank. General Chan was found guilty of gross neglect in allowing his troops to pillage the populace and more particularly in not preventing them from burning down the Roman Catholic church at Ki-chow, and he was handed over to the Board of War for punishment. The Chinese government gave a four-and-a-half per cent. loan of twelve hundred thousand pounds sterling to an English firm.

Japanese
Regret
for the
Atrocities
at Port
Arthur.

The Japanese authorities expressed great sorrow for the atrocities of their troops at the capture of Port Arthur and instituted an official inquiry. It appeared that the Japanese soldiers who committed the atrocities had been frenzied by intoxicating drinks which they had captured from the Chinese. These atrocities were an exception to the conduct of the Japanese during the entire war. Marshal Oyama, commander of the second Japanese army, upon his invasion of Manchuria, early in November, 1894, had issued a proclamation in which occurred a passage of which the following is a translation:

Marshal
Oyama's
Order.

"Our army fights for the right and for the principles of civilization. Our enemies are the military forces of the country with which we are at war, not the individuals of the country. Against the forces of our foe we must fight with all resolution; but as soon as any of his soldiers surrender they cease to be enemies, and it becomes our duty to treat them with all kindness. * * * These principles apply with still greater force to the peaceful inhabitants of an enemy's country. Except in cases where the inhabitants offer opposition they should be treated with the utmost consideration."

Chinese
General's
Order.

Among the abandoned papers and effects on one of the Chinese generals who fled during the Japanese attack upon Port Arthur were found letters from Chinese officers claiming, as a matter of course, rewards for Japanese hands, heads and feet forwarded to headquarters.

Japanese
Victory.

On December 10, 1894, the Japanese division under General Techimi defeated over three thousand Chinese near Kinhuahu, the Chinese fleeing in great disorder after a sanguinary struggle. The Japanese loss was forty killed and wounded. The Chinese left about a hundred dead upon the field. The Japanese advanced in force upon Tso-hun-kou.

Capture
of
Fouchou
and Hong-
kaputz.

A brigade of Marshal Oyama's army took Fouchou from the Chinese without encountering any opposition and advanced rapidly towards Niu Chwang. The first Japanese army had considerable fighting in its advance through Manchuria in the middle of December, 1894. On December 11th General Osako's brigade, after several days' slow advance and occasional skirmishing, made a dashing attack upon Hungkaputz, where the Chinese had concentrated their forces. The Chinese

line was broken and the Chinese troops fled in disorder, abandoning all their heavy war material. Some fled northward toward Hai-tcheng and others westward in the direction of Yingkow.

The third division of the left wing of the first Japanese army attacked Si-mu-tcheng, December 12, 1894, and drove the Chinese from the place. The left wing effected a junction with General Osako's brigade the same day, and the combined forces marched upon Hai-tcheng, which was garrisoned by about five thousand Chinese troops. The Japanese attacked the place the next day, and the greater part of the Chinese at once fled, while the fifteen hundred who resisted were routed after a severe engagement, and the Japanese immediately occupied the town.

**Capture
of Si-mu-
tcheng
and Hai-
tcheng.**

On the same day a Japanese force repulsed several attacks by five thousand Chinese at Yih-man-shan, five miles from Feng-huang-tcheng. The next day the Japanese attacked the Chinese left flank and routed it after a severe struggle, driving it in disorderly retreat by a second charge, the Chinese losing about four hundred killed and wounded, while the Japanese lost about eighty.

**More
Japanese
Victories.**

Prince Kung now was appointed President of the Grand Council of the Chinese Empire, thus making him virtual dictator. Li Hung Chang's position at Tien-tsin was established firmly. The Empress-Dowager gave emphatic assurances of her confidence in him, and the Chinese court found him indispensable, as he was the only capable man, the others having proven useless.

**Prince
Kung and
Li Hung
Chang.**

Li Hung Chang was ordered to arrest the civil and military officials who were in command at Port Arthur and to send them to Peking to be tried and punished for the loss of the fortress. Generals Yeh and Wei, who escaped from Ping Yang, also were to be handed over to the Board of Punishment. The Court slowly sifted out the truth in regard to the conduct of the campaign, and it discovered that General Yeh was rewarded undeservedly for his retreat from Asan. The Emperor was indignant.

**Punish-
ment of
Chinese
Officials
and
Generals.**

Cheng, Li Hung Chang's nephew, was arrested at Nankin, charged with peculation, and his property was seized. Orders were issued also for the arrest of Li Hung Chang's son-in-law at Tien-tsin.

**Chang's
Arrest.**

The native rebellion at Jehol, in Mongolia, was spreading; and Li Hung Chang tried to raise a special force of five thousand Chinese troops to cope with the Mongols, but no arms were available for this force.

**The Jehol
Rebellion.**

The Japanese government intimated that the overtures of China for peace through the United States Ministers at Tokio and Peking were futile, as Japan did not believe in China's sincerity; and Japan intimated further that China must sue for peace directly.

**Japan's
Reply to
China.**

**Japanese
Investi-
gation of
the Port
Arthur
Excesses.**

The Japanese authorities made a strict official inquiry into the excesses committed by the Japanese troops upon the capture of Port Arthur. It was found that the reports of the cruelties of the Japanese were true, but that, besides the mutilated bodies of captured Japanese soldiers, the Japanese, on entering the town, found many heads of Japanese soldiers stuck upon poles erected over or in front of the residences of civilians resident in the town. The Japanese officials at Port Arthur adopted stringent regulations for the protection of the inhabitants who returned to their homes, also furnishing food to many of them.

**Battle of
Kung-
wasai.**

On December 19, 1894, the Japanese force under General Katsura attacked ten thousand Chinese under General Sung at the village of Kungwasai, about eight miles from Hai-tcheng, and a severe fight followed. General Osako's brigade was the first to engage. Meanwhile the Japanese were reinforced by General Oshima's brigade from Hai-tcheng. The Japanese artillery played havoc in the Chinese ranks. The Japanese infantry cut their way through the Chinese ranks, but the Chinese rallied and stubbornly held their ground. Thrice the Japanese dashed through the Chinese lines, and after five hours' desperate hand-to-hand fighting the Chinese began to falter and were in full and disorderly flight, while the Japanese occupied the village of Kungwasai. The Chinese lost about nine hundred killed and wounded, while the Japanese lost four hundred and fifty. A division of the second Japanese army under Lieutenant-General Baron Yamagi entered Kai-chou, or Kai-phing, without resistance, December 18, 1894.

**Guards'
Passes.**

After a stormy session of the Tsung-li-Yamen, the opposition of Prince Ching was overruled, and passes were granted for foreign guards for the foreign legations at Peking.

**Victories
of Korean
Rebels.**

The Tonghak rebels in Korea captured Hai-ju, the capital of Hwang-hai-do, north-west of Seoul, expelled the governor and installed one of their own leaders in the place. The rebels also were very active in the south of Korea, where they burned three towns. A thousand Tonghaks attacked and defeated the garrison of Chollado, consisting of three hundred troops, December 17, 1894, looting and burning the houses in the vicinity and compelling the people to flee. The rebels murdered the chief Korean official at Sunchou. Chinese were reported to be among the Tonghak rebels. The Korean government decided to borrow five million yen from the Japanese and to issue notes to the amount of fifteen million yen.

**Japanese
Parlia-
ment.**

The Japanese Parliament convened on Christmas eve, 1894. The Mikado's speech referred briefly to the Japanese victories in the field and also alluded to the satisfactory relations of Japan with the great Western powers.

Isolated encounters occurred between the Japanese and roving bands of Chinese, who were being driven beyond the Japanese line of occupation in Manchuria. At this time Field-Marshal Oyama established a central civil administration at Kinchou, in order to preserve confidence among the people of the Liao-tung peninsula. He assured peaceful inhabitants of protection by the Japanese authorities and invited those in distress in consequence of the war to apply to the administrator for relief.

Marshal Oyama's Civil Rule.

Lin-kun-yi, late Viceroy of Nankin, was appointed to the chief command of all the Chinese armies in the field, superseding both Prince Kung and Li Hung Chang. He immediately petitioned to be relieved on account of indisposition, but his request was refused. The Governor of Shantung sent a memorial to the Chinese court, bringing further grave charges of cowardice, negligence and incompetence against several high officials, including Admiral Ting and General Wei. These accusations were supported by fresh evidence, and an imperial decree ordered the immediate arrest and punishment of the accused.

New Chinese Commander-in-chief

Charges against Chinese Officials.

A censor who had the temerity to charge the Empress-Dowager of China with exercising undue influence in matters of state entirely beyond her capacity to understand was condemned to perpetual banishment.

Censor Banished.

John W. Foster, Secretary of State in President Harrison's administration in the United States, agreed to go to Japan to aid the Chinese plenipotentiaries to negotiate peace, in accordance with a request from the Chinese government to President Cleveland's administration.

American Mediation.

Japanese marines under Tsukuba Kan landed in the province of Chollado, in the south-west of Korea, and dispersed the Tonghak rebels, who had founded a new kingdom, styling it the Kingdom of Kainan and installing a member of the Nieng family as king. A Japanese detachment defeated and dispersed more than six thousand Tonghak rebels in the province of Whang-hai-do-met, after four hours' fighting, December 23, 1894.

Japanese Victories over Korean Rebels.

Mr. Detring, who had been appointed peace envoy to Japan by Li Hung Chang, was recalled by a telegram from Prince Kung, whose action was prompted by the American Minister at Peking. In the latter part of December, 1894, Chang-yin-houan, the Vice President of the Tsung-li-Yamen, was appointed envoy; and the Japanese government promised to receive him with an honest desire to help him in his peaceful mission.

Chinese Peace Envoys.

The independence of Korea was proclaimed solemnly at Seoul, January 7, 1895. In the forenoon the king and his Cabinet, with civil and military dignitaries and officers of the royal household, proceeded to the Temple of the king's ancestors and there declared that thence-

Korea's Independence Proclaimed.

forth Korea would be independent of every other country. The ceremony was a striking one. The Korean soldiers of His Majesty's escort wore uniforms fashioned in the modern Japanese style. Ministers Bokuyeiko and Yokohan were guarded specially by Japanese policemen, but the streets were guarded entirely by the newly-formed native Korean police, who performed their duties well. Everything went on smoothly at Seoul, and the Koreans seemed quite reconciled to the presence of the Japanese and disposed to follow their advice. Several Tonghak leaders were captured and beheaded near Sunchou; and the Korean soldiers dispersed the rebels, who were disheartened by the death of their leaders.

Chinese
Excesses
in Man-
churia.

The Chinese under General Sung retreated from Niu Chwang after severe fighting on December 22, 1894, but on Christmas day General Sung marched back and reoccupied Niu Chwang without opposition. The Japanese soldiers in Manchuria suffered intensely from the cold. A state of anarchy prevailed at Moukden, where the Chinese and Manchu soldiers frequently fought each other; and the populace were outraged and plundered by both, who killed every civilian who dared to offer the least resistance to the brutal soldiery. Twelve thousand more Chinese troops were sent to the Manchurian capital. A Chinese force under General Nieh between Hao-cha-fang and Shi-hao-tsu harried the district as though it were an enemy's country, all able-bodied Manchurians being pressed into the Chinese military service and every village being ransacked for arms, the Chinese soldiers paying for nothing.

Chinese
Peace
Envoys
in Japan.

Chang-yin-houan, the Chinese peace envoy, proceeded to Japan and afterwards was joined by the other Chinese envoys in the peace negotiations. John W. Foster, the American ex-Secretary of State, left Victoria, British Columbia, for Japan to assist the Chinese envoys. Li Hung Chang handed General Wei over to the Board of Punishment at Peking, as there was a disposition to hold the Viceroy himself responsible for the accused general's cowardice and incapacity. The Board of Punishment found General Wei guilty of cowardice, extortion and plundering; and soon afterward he was beheaded at Peking.

General
Wei Be-
headed.

Disorders
in
Shantung
and
Pechili.

Disturbances occurred in the Chinese provinces of Shantung and Pechili, and the government was endeavoring to repress disorder. Two detachments of Mohammedan cavalry, five thousand each, arrived at Tien-tsin early in January, 1895. These men were fanatics and swore to avenge the death of their chief, killed at Ping Yang.

Desola-
tion in
Man-
churia.

The Manchu princes took the defense of their country into their own hands, having been thwarted hitherto by the Chinese officials, a disagreement which paralyzed the executive and rendered the central government bewildered and helpless. The district between the rivers Yalu

and Liao, in Manchuria, presented one ghastly scene of desolation, reducing a populous region to a vast solitude. No houses were left standing, the very timbers being burned. Towns and villages were without a vestige of life, the entire populations having perished. Only scattered groups of frozen corpses were seen, while neither food nor fuel could be procured. The stragglers from the Chinese army who sought refuge in the hills and forests became savages and lost all human feeling. The sufferings of the wounded were terrible. The movements of both armies were hindered by the exhaustion of supplies which had been brought in by the country people from fear. The prospect of the continuation of such scenes appalled even the stolid Chinese who witnessed them.

A brigade of the second Japanese army, under General Nogi, in the midst of a deep snow, which hindered the movements of artillery, attacked four thousand Chinese under General Seh, who had fourteen cannon, at Kai-phing, January 10, 1895. After four hours' fighting, the Japanese infantry made successive charges on the right and left flanks and the center of the Chinese, who were thrown into confusion and routed in headlong flight, leaving the Japanese in possession of the town. The Chinese lost two thousand killed and wounded, nearly half their force. General Neih, narrowly escaped capture by the Japanese while fleeing from Kai-phing through Honmonzen in a carriage, his horse being killed and himself being wounded in the thigh. The Japanese loss in killed and wounded in this action was over three hundred.

**Battle of
Kai-
phing.**

On January 16, 1895, about thirteen thousand Chinese cannonaded the Japanese position at Niu Chwang. The Japanese under General Katsura replied by an artillery fire, and their shells threw the Chinese into confusion, and finally a charge by the Japanese upon the Chinese right flank resulted in the capture of five Chinese cannon and the rout of the entire Chinese force, while a charge upon the Chinese center completely dispersed the fleeing host, one portion fleeing northward, while the remainder retreated toward Niu Chwang. The victorious Japanese pursued the fleeing Chinese, charging them wherever they made a stand. The Chinese lost about two hundred. The Japanese lost less than fifty killed and wounded.

**Battle of
Niu
Chwang.**

The Japanese bombarded Teng-chou, north-west of the Shantung promontory, one whole day, January 19, 1895, dismounting many of the Chinese cannon and silencing the fire of the Chinese forts. The next day, Sunday, January 20, 1895, fifty Japanese transports appeared off Yung-tcheng Bay, south of the Shantung promontory, and landed twenty-five thousand Japanese troops, after three Japanese men-of-war had silenced the Chinese earthworks.

**More
Japanese
Suc-
cesses.**

**Situation
at Wei-
hai-wei
and
Chefoo.**

Many Chinese warships were blockaded in the harbor of Wei-hai-wei, which was garrisoned by eleven thousand Chinese troops. The population of Chefoo were so excited by the near approach of the Japanese that sailors were landed from the British, German, French and American warships, and all the foreign consulates were guarded specially, while foreign blue jackets and marines patrolled the European quarter of the city.

**Chinese
Repulses
at Hai-
tcheng.**

On January 22, 1895, ten thousand Chinese attacked the Japanese at Hai-tcheng, but were repulsed, leaving one hundred dead upon the field, while the Japanese lost none killed and only twenty-eight wounded. On January 24th the Chinese renewed their attack on the Japanese at Hai-tcheng, but were repulsed again after a short engagement.

**Japanese
Repulses
at Yung-
tcheng
and Wei-
hai-wei.**

On January 23, 1895, the Chinese repulsed an attack of the Japanese advance guard near Yung-tcheng. The Japanese also were repulsed in several attacks on Wei-hai-wei with considerable loss. On January 26th the Japanese fleet advanced in two divisions of nineteen ships on Wei-hai-wei, but was driven off by a fire from the Chinese fleet and shore batteries. The Chinese lost twenty-seven sailors. At the same time the Japanese army made an attack upon Wei-hai-wei from Ning-Hai, but was repulsed. In these attacks the Japanese lost over three hundred killed and wounded.

**Chinese
Peace
Envoys.**

On January 18 and 19, 1895, three Japanese war vessels bombarded Teng-chou. Continued risings occurred in Southern Korea and the adjacent islands. The Chinese peace envoys who arrived at Kobe, Japan, late in January, 1895, were received by the populace with a hostile demonstration. A Tartar from the border of Kerin, the eastern district of Manchuria, arrived in the camp of the Japanese General Nodzu, where he denounced the ravages of the Chinese and offered the services of sixty thousand Manchus to join the Japanese in attacking Moukden and avenging the cruelties of the Chinese. The Japanese paid the man's traveling expenses and instructed him to report upon the condition of the Chinese army, but refused his services.

**A
Tartar's
Offer.**

**Capture
of Wei-
hai-wei.**

On January 30, 1895, the Japanese captured all the southern forts at Wei-hai-wei, after a spirited resistance on the part of the Chinese garrisons and considerable loss on both sides, the Chinese evacuating the forts and retreating to Fung-lin-Chu. The Japanese attack had been made under cover of a severe bombardment from the Japanese fleet in the harbor. The next day the Japanese garrisons in the captured forts and the Japanese warships cannonaded and bombarded the Chinese fleet, finally driving back the Chinese war vessels. The Japanese entered Wei-hai-wei on February 2, 1895. On Sunday, February 3, 1895, the fortress island of Leu-kung-tau, in Wei-hai-wei harbor, was captured by the Japanese, after a severe bombardment

from the Japanese fleet and the Japanese shore batteries on the mainland and a spirited resistance on the part of the Chinese garrison in the island forts. The loss was heavy on both sides, the Chinese losing about two thousand killed and wounded. A Japanese gunboat was sunk, and a magazine in one of the forts was blown up by the explosion of a shell from the Japanese. Japanese torpedo-boats entered Wei-hai-wei harbor and sunk the Chinese cruisers *Ting Yuen*, *Lai-Yeun* and *Chen Yeun* during the nights of February 4 and 5, 1895, and pursued and captured or destroyed thirteen Chinese torpedo-boats. Japanese marines and sailors landed on Leu-kung-tau island on February 6th, but were resisted obstinately by the Chinese, and desperate fighting followed. Admiral Ting surrendered the remaining Chinese war vessels and the Leu-kung-tau forts to Admiral Ito. Admiral Ting, General Chang and Captain Liu committed suicide. The Chinese soldiers and sailors just surrendered were liberated at once by the Japanese.

In the meantime the Japanese were experiencing great difficulties at Niu Chwang, where the cold was intense, the thermometer at one time registering thirteen degrees below zero. On January 17, 1895, the Japanese suffered a slight reverse between Hai-tcheng and Liao Yang, at the hands of fifteen hundred Manchus under Han, a rebel squatter from Northern Manchuria. The commander of a Manchu battalion who failed to support Han was beheaded promptly for cowardice. The mob at Niu Chwang plundered and ill-treated the native merchants and alarmed the foreign residents, who feared for their lives and their property.

Situation
at Niu
Chwang.

The Chinese peace envoys, with Mr. Foster, their American adviser, arrived at Hiroshima, in Japan, January 31, 1895, and were refused an audience by Count Ito, the Japanese Prime Minister, on the ground that their plenary powers were utterly inadequate. As the Japanese government officially declined all further negotiations, the envoys left Hiroshima on February 4th. The text of the credentials given to the Chinese envoys empowered them to "meet and negotiate the matter with the plenipotentiaries of Japan," but directed them to "telegraph to the Tsung-li-Yamen for the purpose of obtaining our commands, by which you will abide."

Chinese
Peace
Envoys
in Japan.

Eleven foreign residents of Chefoo sought refuge at Shanghai, while many Chinese merchants also left Chefoo. The Chinese authorities at Chefoo beheaded all runaway Chinese soldiers who came there from Wei-hai-wei. The Chinese Emperor was so incensed at the loss of Wei-hai-wei that he authorized the Viceroy of the province of Shantung to behead all fugitives without previously reporting to His Majesty.

Situation
at Chefoo.

Chinese
Em-
peror's
Wrath.

**Black
Flags in
Formosa.**

The Black Flags committed ravages on the island of Formosa, and a British war vessel went thither from Hong Kong in response to a request from the British residents. The foreign Ministers in China were received by the Emperor on the occasion of the Chinese New Year, February 14, 1895. The Ministers obtained certain ceremonial concessions, one of which was that they be admitted by the front gate of the imperial palace at Peking. They afterward ordered guards from Tien-tsin for the protection of their respective legations.

**Plot
against
China's
Emperor.**

A formidable conspiracy in Peking against the Chinese Emperor and his government was discovered, the conspirators being members of a secret society called the *Thalli* and said to number fifty thousand persons. Their plans for an outbreak had been almost completed when they were frustrated by the discovery of the plot and the arrest of the leaders.

**Li Hung
Chang's
Peace
Mission.**

Li Hung Chang was restored to all his honors and was appointed Imperial Commissioner to negotiate for peace with Japan. China requested that the Japanese peace commissioners might meet Li Hung Chang at Port Arthur to conduct the negotiations there. The Japanese government declined absolutely to treat anywhere but on Japanese soil.

**New War
Credit in
Japan.**

The Japanese government asked the Japanese Parliament for a fresh credit of one hundred million yen on account of the war expenditure, which was voted at once, thus making the amount thus far voted two hundred and fifty million yen. The Korean Ministry tendered their resignations, but the king refused to accept them, and the anti-reform Ministers instigated several attempts to assassinate Prince Pok.

**Chinese
Repulses
at Niu
Chwang.**

Fifteen thousand Chinese were repulsed in an attack on the Japanese position at Hai-tcheng, February 16, 1895, with the loss of one hundred and fifty killed and wounded, the Japanese losing only three men killed. Twelve thousand Chinese from the Niu Chwang and Yinkow districts made a concerted attack on the Japanese position on February 21st, but were repulsed with considerable loss. The repeated attacks of the Chinese were repelled by the well-directed fire of General Nodzu's artillery. The first attack was made from the Liao Yang road, but the most determined assaults were from the Tong-wa-shan road, where more than a hundred Chinese were killed by the Japanese shells. At three o'clock the Chinese retreated on all sides and were pursued by the Japanese cavalry, who took some prisoners. Six Japanese were killed.

**Chinese
Repulse
in Man-
churia.**

In Manchuria a Chinese force of three thousand infantry and one hundred cavalry and eight cannon attacked Kumo-tcheng on February 17, 1895, but was repulsed with the loss of thirty killed and a number captured, without any loss by the Japanese.

An imperial decree issued at Peking, February 19, 1895, announced that the Taotai Kung and General Yeh-chi-cau had been tried by the Board of Punishment for the loss of Port Arthur and sentenced to imprisonment until the next autumn, which was the time set for their execution.

Punishment of Chinese Officials.

The Tsung-li-Yamen deliberated on the question: "Shall the war with Japan be continued or shall we treat for peace?" It was decided to submit the question to all the provincial authorities of the first three ranks, and their opinion was demanded urgently by telegraph. The replies were to the effect that, although Japan had provoked the war unjustly, peace was very desirable. But some of the replies declared that the terms of peace must be "bearable." In an interview with a news correspondent Prince Kung said that Japan had provoked the war deliberately, and he asked: "Can the Japanese overrun all our provinces? Will Heaven permit such a thing? Will other nations acquiesce in it?"

China's Peace Deliberations.

On Sunday, March 3, 1895, the Chinese army in Manchuria made two attacks on the Japanese positions at Hai-tcheng, but were repulsed in both instances, with the loss of two hundred killed and as many wounded.

Chinese Repulses at Hai-tcheng.

The Japanese under General Nodzu attacked eighteen thousand Chinese, between the Liao Yang and Niu Chwang roads, with complete success, on Sunday, March 3, 1895; the Japanese losing ten men killed and about a hundred wounded, while the Chinese lost a hundred and fifty killed and about two hundred wounded. The Japanese captured Niu Chwang the next day, after desperate fighting, the fortifications being carried after a two hours' bombardment and the Chinese driven out after eleven hours' fighting. The Chinese lost nineteen hundred killed and five hundred prisoners. The Japanese lost over two hundred killed and wounded. On the same day an attack by ten thousand Chinese under General Sung on the Japanese positions at Taping-shan was repulsed without loss to the Japanese. Two days later a division of the second Japanese army captured Yinkow, the port of Niu Chwang, after severe fighting with the Chinese under General Sung, who lost several hundred killed and wounded, while the Japanese loss was small.

Capture of Niu Chwang and Yinkow.

Disturbances were increasing throughout the Chinese Empire. A general in the province of Shantung who attempted to suppress pillage was beheaded by his own troops, and similar disorders occurred in the province of Honan.

Disorders in China.

The Chinese warships captured by the Japanese at Wei-hai-wei were taken to Yokohama by their Japanese crews. The Japanese abandoned Wei-hai-wei and the entire province of Shantung, after destroying the

Japan's New War-ships.

forts. During the last few months of the war Japan bought war vessels from Chili at several different times.

**Events
in Korea.**

Bands of Manchurian soldiers ravaged the province of Ham-Gyong-Do, in Northern Korea, and plundered the gold mines. The Korean Minister of War and several other high Korean officials were permitted to accompany the second Japanese army to witness the military operations.

**Battle of
Thien-
chuang-
thai.**

After the capture of Niu Chwang and Yinkow the first and second Japanese armies effected a junction; and a division of the first army attacked the Chinese under General Sung at Thien-chuang-thai, March 9, 1895, and gained a decided victory after three hours' hand-to-hand fighting in the streets, nearly two hundred Chinese being killed and wounded and six hundred taken prisoners, while eighteen cannon and a large quantity of rifles and ammunition were captured by the victorious Japanese. General Sung's army was broken up completely by his repeated reverses. The Mikado congratulated General Nodzu on his successes in Manchuria and promoted him to the rank of Field-Marshal. The Chinese held their ground in fighting near Kiu-lien-tcheng on March 18, 1895. Prince Komatsu, the Japanese commander-in-chief, was ordered to China.

**Li Hung
Chang's
Peace
Mission
to Japan.**

The Chinese government now reluctantly recognized the abandonment of a war policy as the only possible course in view of the uninterrupted disasters to the Chinese arms, and Li Hung Chang was sent to Japan as a peace envoy. China already had agreed to the points to be discussed at the peace conference, but instructed her Ministers in Great Britain, France, Germany and Russia to solicit the intervention of those powers for the protection of the integrity of China's continental territories in case Japan insisted on concessions on the mainland.

**Attempt
to Assassinate
Li Hung
Chang.**

Li Hung Chang arrived at Shimonoseki, Japan, March 19, 1895, and was received by the Japanese Minister of Foreign Affairs. On Sunday, March 24th, a dastardly attack was made upon the life of Li Hung Chang by a young Japanese, named Koyama Rukonosoki, who rushed from the crowd in the street, pistol in hand, and shot the distinguished Chinese statesman in the left cheek, while he was being conveyed to his hotel in his palanquin from a conference with the Japanese peace negotiators. The would-be-assassin was arrested on the spot. The strongest indignation was expressed by the native and foreign press in Japan. Special messages of sympathy and regret were sent to the wounded envoy from the Mikado and his Empress, and the Japanese Ministers of State and high government officials called at his residence. The Japanese Parliament adopted fitting resolutions of regret at the dastardly outrage, and the Mikado and his

Ministry published in the *Official Gazette* a message condemning the horrid deed. General indignation at the attempted assassination prevailed throughout Japan. By the Mikado's command two eminent surgeons and physicians attended the wounded Chinese envoy, and the Empress of Japan sent two nurses to attend him. Li Hung Chang soon recovered from his wound. The would-be-assassin was tried for his dastardly crime and convicted and was sentenced to fourteen years' imprisonment.

On March 22, 1895, the Japanese effected a landing on one of the Pescadore Islands and took the forts the next day. Makung Castle was taken only after two engagements. A thousand Chinese troops on the Yen-kung peninsula surrendered. The trophies captured by the Japanese were nine heavy cannon and a large number of rifles. The Chinese lost thirty killed and sixty prisoners, while the Japanese lost only one killed and sixteen wounded. The Chinese themselves blew up the magazine on Fisher Island. On March 24th a Japanese squadron bombarded the forts of Haichow, on the Kiangsu coast, and under cover of the fire a force of several thousand Japanese troops landed and captured the city after a determined resistance from the Chinese, who lost three hundred killed and wounded.

The Japanese plenipotentiaries proposed the following conditions for an armistice: 1. The occupation of Shan-hai-kuan, Taku and Tien-tsin by Japanese troops. 2. Japanese control of the unfinished railroad from Shan-hai-kuan to Tien-tsin, and custody of the various forts and fortifications, together with the arms and ammunition. 3. The payment by China of the war contributions required for such occupation.

The Japanese refused Li Hung Chang's request for more moderate conditions, but the Mikado finally ordered the Japanese plenipotentiaries to consent to an armistice until April 20, 1895. The armistice applied only to Feng-thien, Pechili and Shantung.

The most responsible statesmen of Japan desired peace, but their efforts were thwarted by the war party. The Japanese newspapers were practically unanimous for a continuance of the war. Some influential newspapers called for the occupation of Peking and the conquest of Southern China.

The peace negotiations proceeded leisurely for several weeks, China hesitating to accept the Japanese conditions; but finally, when Japan by an ultimatum threatened to renew hostilities within twenty-four hours unless her terms were accepted, China agreed to Japan's conditions and the treaty was signed, April 16, 1895. The following were the conditions of the Peace of Shimonoseki: 1. The independence of Korea. 2. The retention of the conquered places by Japan. 3. The

More
Japanese
Suc-
cesses.

Japanese
Terms
for an
Armis-
tice.

An
Armis-
tice.

Japan's
War
Party.

Peace of
Shimo-
noseki.

cession of the Liao-tung peninsula by China to Japan. 4. The permanent cession of the island of Formosa and the Pescadores by China to Japan. 5. The payment of a war indemnity of two hundred million taels in silver (one hundred million dollars) by China to Japan, in seven yearly instalments, five per cent. interest being added each year on the amount remaining unpaid, the whole of the interest to be canceled if China paid the entire indemnity within three years. 6. The opening of the ports of Chingtu, Kai-fong, Huchou and Shao-king, in China, to foreign commerce. Three weeks were allowed for the exchange of ratifications, and the armistice was prolonged to May 8th.

**Rejoicing
in Japan.**

The conclusion of peace was received with great satisfaction in Japan, the only disapproval being by the extreme war party, whose leading members still declared that the humiliation of China ought to have been completed by a Japanese occupation of the Chinese capital. The war had produced a terrible strain on Japan, and there was general and sincere rejoicing among the Japanese people at the termination of the struggle. The Mikado, in a proclamation to his subjects, expressed his appreciation of their unselfish and patriotic conduct, which had enabled the Japanese to be victorious everywhere on land and sea, but at the same time he pointed out that it is through peace that the national prosperity is to be promoted and the national greatness to be advanced.

**Dissatis-
faction
in China.**

The extreme war party in China, like that of Japan, was dissatisfied with the treaty of peace; and this party at once accused Li Hung Chang of needlessly consenting to and even facilitating the degradation and dismemberment of his country. In Canton the discontent was very strong, and a popular rebellion against the Manchu Tartar dynasty and for the expulsion of the Viceroy and other imperial officials from the city was threatened. In Formosa there was great opposition to the cession of that island to Japan, and open rioting resulted, in which nearly a hundred persons were killed and wounded.

**Protest of
Russia,
France
and
Germany.**

The cession of Chinese territory on the continent of Asia to Japan was opposed bitterly by Russia, France and Germany; and the Ministers of these three European powers at Tokio issued a formal protest against the articles of the Peace of Shimonoseki stipulating for the cession of the Liao-tung peninsula to Japan. Great Britain refused to unite with the three powers in the protest and was denounced bitterly by the Russian press, which intimated that Russia should seize India in revenge for Great Britain's attitude in this emergency. Japan finally receded in this matter and agreed to accept a money compensation in place of the cession of the Liao-tung peninsula, whereupon the treaty of peace was ratified speedily by both China and Japan.

Thus the Chino-Japanese War ended in the triumph of Japan. Such was the result of the vigorous, progressive civilization of the smaller of the two great empires of the Orient in its contest with the old, effete civilization of the larger of these empires with its tenfold greater population and its fiftyfold more territory. The new triumphed over the old—the modern over the past. China, which so stubbornly had rejected Western civilization, had been taught that she had lived in the past. In an incredibly brief space of time the defenses of the great Chinese Empire had been shown to be rotten; while Japan had proved herself to be on a level with the highest European standards in organization, in science, in discipline and in military spirit.

Late in May, 1895, the Formosans proclaimed their island a republic, electing Tang, the late Chinese governor of the island, for their President; but when the Japanese troops took possession of the island President Tang fled, and the Formosan republic fell as suddenly as it arose, the Japanese defeating the Black Flags in several actions early in June.

The selfishness of Russia threatened to deprive Japan of the fruits of her victories. No sooner had Japan liberated Korea from the suzerainty of the Emperor of China than Russia coveted the little kingdom, claiming that the possession of Korea was indispensable to the eastern dominions of the Czar. It seemed as if war between Russia and Japan would follow in the course of a few months, as the Russians were mobilizing an army of eighty thousand men at Vladivostok, the Russian port on the western coast of the Sea of Japan.

An outbreak in Koera on October 8, 1895, removed the queen of that "Hermit Kingdom," who had been the chief obstacle to Japanese influence in the little peninsular kingdom. All the officials at the Korean court had been superseded by others who were in thorough sympathy with Japan. But on February 11, 1896, a counter-revolution began at Seoul, the Korean capital; and affairs were in so unsettled a condition that Russia intervened and sent a body of troops for the protection of the Czar's subjects and for the restoration of order. In June, 1896, Russia and Japan entered into an arrangement for a joint protectorate over Korea, Japan's control being merely nominal, while the Korean king practically relied upon Russia. The Korean monarch's title was soon changed from that of King to that of Emperor.

The constant rivalry between Russia and Japan during the next few years for trade supremacy and political influence in Korea threatened to break out into open hostilities on several occasions, and, along with the Russian aggressions in Manchuria, eventually led to the great Russo-Japanese War of 1904-1905, which will be dwelt upon fully in the last section of this chapter.

**Pro-
gressive
Japan's
Superior-
ity over
Conserv-
ative
China.**

**Revolt of
Formosa
against
Japan.**

**Russia's
Designs
on Korea.**

**Revolu-
tions in
Korea.**

**Russo-
Japanese
Rivalry
in Korea.**

**Result
of this
Rivalry.**

SECTION IV.—FOREIGN AGGRESSIONS AND BOXER OUTBREAK IN CHINA (A. D. 1895–1900).

**Russo-
Chinese
Financial
Relations
and the
Chinese
Indem-
nity to
Japan.**

AFTER the Chino-Japanese War, Russia increased her influence upon China as a result of a clever financial coup organized between the Russian government and the Paris bankers. A Chinese indemnity loan was floated successfully in the French capital in July, 1895, the proceeds of which were handed over to China by Russia, which power guaranteed the interest. Ten million pounds sterling of the amount thus raised, which was paid over to Japan in accordance with the treaty of peace, was deposited by the Japanese government in the Bank of England, most of it being destined to pay for new Japanese ships of war. Japan's industrial progress after her war with China was most remarkable, and Japan was becoming as preëminent in the arts of peace as she had been victorious in war.

**China's
Foreign
Relations.**

After the Chino-Japanese War there were a series of isolated, though in some cases very serious, outbreaks of the anti-foreign mob spirit in China; which spirit resulted in the destruction of the foreign mission station and the massacre of several British missionaries at Ku-cheng, near Fu-chen, in August, 1895. In compliance with the stern demand of the British government, the Viceroy of the Chinese province of Szu-chuan was degraded, a consular investigation was held and a number of the guilty were executed. France obtained a rectification of the frontier between China and French Indo-China and considerable trade advantages with China. By a treaty with China in 1896 Russia secured the right to extend her Trans-Siberian Railway through Manchuria.

**China's
Demoral-
ized
Condi-
tion.**

The close of the Chino-Japanese War found China in a demoralized condition. Her navy was annihilated; her army was broken up; her finances were in disorder; her government was reeking with corruption; her condition generally was absolutely helpless, and her Empire was believed to be in the throes of dissolution. China's general policy in opposing modern progress had borne its legitimate fruit; and even the brilliant abilities of such distinguished statesmen as Prince Kung, the Marquis Tseng and Li Hung Chang, who had been prominent in China's public affairs during the last forty years of the nineteenth century, were unable to stay the progress of decline and decay which seemed destined to overtake the oldest nation still existing in the world—the only modern nation which dates its existence from the remotest antiquity. While her apparent end seemed pathetic, she had brought herself to her present pass by her persistent opposition to modern progress and enlightenment.

The Great Powers of Europe were not slow to take advantage of China's helpless condition to aggrandize themselves at her expense. For the purpose of extending their trade, Russia, Germany and France seemed intent upon a partition of the Celestial Empire, each to take a large slice of territory wherein to plant its political influence as well as to establish its trade firmly. In the latter part of 1897 Kiao-Chau Bay was occupied by a German military and naval force on the pretext of punishing the massacre of German missionaries by a Chinese mob, and China was forced to cede Kiao-Chau Bay and the adjacent territory to Germany for trade purposes, January, 1898. Soon afterward Russia seized Port Arthur and obtained the cession of that port and Ta-lien-wan from the Chinese Emperor for naval and commercial purposes. A little later a French fleet occupied the large and important island of Hainan, off the southern coast of the mainland of China, and obtained the cession of territory in Southern China for commercial purposes. These cessions of Chinese territory were called "leases" and "spheres of influence," and the European powers which obtained them were aiming for political influence as well as for trade and commercial privileges. It was believed that the European powers were seeking to partition China among themselves as they had partitioned Africa.

Threat-
ened
European
Partition
of China.

Long and complicated negotiations ended in the conclusion of a large loan to China by an Anglo-German syndicate, which was completed only after M. Pavloff, the very energetic Russian Minister to China, had opposed successfully a proposal for a loan to China guaranteed by the British government and many other proposed arrangements. In the meantime the business of obtaining concessions for the construction of railways and the development of mines in China was pushed very actively by Russian, German, French, Belgian, Italian, British and American syndicates, thus causing intense commercial rivalry among the European powers and the United States. A concession for a railway from Peking to Hankow was granted by the Chinese government to a Belgian syndicate acting in the interest of France and Russia, in June, 1898. Russia was busy at the port of Niu-Chwang as well as at fortifying Port Arthur and Ta-lien-wan, the name of the latter afterward being changed to Dalny. The agents of the German-Asiatic Bank were active also. Besides obtaining valuable concessions in South China, France was granted privileges at Shanghai, in spite of the most vigorous opposition from Great Britain, which for many years had controlled the commercial activities of the Yang-tse-Kiang valley, the chief port of which was Shanghai.

Foreign
Railway
and
Mining
Conces-
sions in
China.

These concessions to foreign syndicates in China never were relished by the Dowager Empress and the Conservative party at Peking; and the

Coup
d'état
of the
Dowager
Empress
of China.

result was a remarkable *coup d'état* in the imperial palace in China's capital, in September, 1898, by which the wicked Dowager Empress, a woman guilty of many political murders and having the active support of the anti-foreign mandarins, practically deposed her nephew, the Emperor Kwang-su, reestablished herself as regent and caused six of the leading reformers to be beheaded. After this palace revolution the energetic and vigorous but wicked Dowager Empress announced herself as favoring a policy of moderate reforms and proceeded to adopt a remarkable new precedent by receiving the wives of the foreign Ministers at the imperial palace in Peking. After that remarkable palace revolution in China's imperial capital the Dowager Empress was practically the real ruler of China for the rest of her days.

Russia's
Rivalry
with
Great
Britain
and
Japan.

Lord Salisbury was criticised very severely in England for his lack of vigor in opposing the aggressions of Russia in the Far East, his course in this instance being in direct contrast with his vigorous and effective opposition to France's threatening attitude in Africa in connection with the Fashoda incident. The political and commercial rivalry of Russia with Great Britain and Japan in China, Manchuria and Korea continued; Russia seeking political preponderance and commercial monopoly in those countries, while Great Britain and Japan were striving for equal trade privileges, or for the "open door" policy of all nations in the Far East, having the support of the United States in this attitude, as the great American Republic was competing with the other great nations of the world for the Chinese trade. As an insular nation, like Great Britain, Japan depended upon foreign commerce for the support of her people; and China was her nearest market. There was a constant rivalry between Russia on one side and Great Britain and Japan on the other side for commercial supremacy and political influence in the Far East, and this rivalry threatened to break out into hostilities several times during the year 1899. The combined fleets of Great Britain and Japan in Far Eastern waters were far superior to the fleets of all other powers in those waters. Russia and Japan by turns had controlled the policy of Korea, according as which party at Seoul swayed the destinies of Korea. Japan was alarmed at Russia's aggressions in Manchuria as well as at her spasmodic influence in Korea. Great Britain was as jealous of Russia's aggressions in Korea as was Japan; and when Russia caused the British commissioner of customs at Chemulpo, Korea, to be superseded by a Russian customs commissioner a British fleet proceeded to that Korean port and restored the deposed British commissioner, and the matter was settled by British and Russian diplomacy. The rivalry between Russia and Japan on repeated occasions threatened to break out into a war between those two empires. In case of hostilities Japan would

have had the advantage of numerical superiority on both sea and land, as her navy in those waters was far superior to that of Russia, while on land she could have poured several hundred thousand troops into Korea and Manchuria long before the Russians could have put an equal force into the field in those countries, as the Russian troops would have had to be transported by land five thousand miles from European Russia, and the Trans-Siberian Railway was not yet completed.

The active rivalry between the Russian and British Ministers at the Chinese capital, sometimes amounting to direct opposition early in 1899, was terminated eventually by an agreement between the Russian and British governments regarding their respective interests in China. These two Great Powers agreed to maintain the integrity and independence of China and provided against any clash of interests concerning railway development in Manchuria and in the Yang-tse-Kiang valley. This Anglo-Russian agreement for the time put an end to Anglo-Russian rivalry in the Far East.

An imperial decree issued by the Dowager Empress on January 24, 1900, announced the incapacity of the Emperor Kwang-su and the appointment of Prince Tuan's nine-year-old son, To-Pu-Chun, as the heir to the Chinese imperial throne. The Dowager Empress immediately dismissed the generalissimo of the Chinese armies and other prominent state officials. These arbitrary proceedings produced rebellious outbreaks at Swatow and in the interior provinces of China under the instigation of the Chinese reform party, which appealed to the British, American and Japanese Ministers at Peking to intervene and restore the Emperor Kwang-su to his throne. The deposition of Kwang-su caused great indignation in Japan. Kang-Yu-Wei, one of the reform leaders, telegraphed from Singapore, British India, that he could raise an army of four hundred thousand men to restore the deposed Emperor. The *China Gazette* accused the Dowager Empress of fearing a revolution in Peking and appealing to Russia for aid, against which Japan protested. The Dowager Empress continued her persecution of the Chinese reform party and her antagonism to all Western ideas in China, drawing up a list of three hundred reformers who were to be proscribed and another list of thirty-five who were to be killed as soon as they were captured, at the same time offering a sum equal to one hundred thousand dollars for the head of Kang-Yu-Wei. The arbitrary course of this woman ruler threatened to involve China in both civil and foreign war. In a secret edict which she issued the Dowager Empress asserted that foreign powers were coveting China with "tiger-like voracity" and that she deprecated "the evil habits" of Chinese viceroys and governors attempting peaceable solutions of international disputes, saying: "It is our special command that should

Russo-
British
Agree-
ment.

Another
Coup
d'état
by the
Dowager
Empress
of China.

any high official find himself so hard pressed by circumstances that nothing short of war would settle matters he is expected resolutely to set himself to work out his duty to this end." In the new examination for degrees in honor of the Chinese Emperor's birthday the Dowager Empress ordered that the examining officials should suppress all essays mentioning reform, Western science or "new ideas"; threatening severe punishment to all who disobeyed this decree.

**Boxer
Out-
breaks
in 1900.**

In the spring of 1900 the disorders in China became extreme, especially in the provinces of Shantung and Pechili, whence they threatened to spread into other provinces. The boldness of the *Boxers*, a powerful anti-foreign league of Chinamen, increased as time went on. The *Boxers* were so called because the pretended reason for their existence was to indulge in the athletic pastime of boxing. They continued their outrages on foreigners in the provinces of Shantung and Pechili. The efforts of Chinese officials to fulfil the government's promises to suppress and punish the Boxers were only half-hearted; and the lawlessness had become so serious as to give rise to the report from Shanghai that the British, French, German and American Ministers in China had sent a joint note to the Tsung-li-Yamen, or Chinese Foreign Office, on April 7, 1900, to the effect that if the Boxers were not suppressed by the Chinese authorities foreign troops would be landed in China and would march into the interior of the country to protect foreigners whose lives and property were menaced.

**Insincere
Attitude
of the
Chinese
Govern-
ment.**

The Chinese government, under the Dowager Empress, showed itself either unwilling or powerless to suppress the constantly-increasing lawlessness of the Boxers. It issued wordy commands which were not enforced, and it expected the foreign diplomatic representatives to accept these commands as evidence of fulfilling its obligations. On April 19, 1900, an imperial edict was issued to all Chinese viceroys and governors, directing them to warn armed organizations to refrain from hostile and lawless acts toward native Christians and to punish with great severity any violation of this edict. To offset this the Dowager Empress issued a secret edict to the Chinese soldiers not to fire on the Boxers, and no Boxer had been arrested so far. The Tsung-li-Yamen discussed an offer of Russian troops to suppress the disorders which the Boxers had excited. During the second week of June, 1900, the Dowager Empress issued another decree virtually justifying the Boxer disturbances. From the very beginning of the outbreak the Chinese government's attitude was practically one of approval of the anti-foreign Boxer movement; and the Chinese troops supposed to be fighting the Boxers were operating against them in a half-hearted manner, while many of the troops openly deserted to the Boxers. The Dowager Empress issued an edict censuring the Chinese General Nieh for killing

Boxers and transferring him to another station, and the military desertions to the Boxers were with her connivance and approval.

A mob of three thousand Boxers attacked sixty British troops under Captain Watson at Wei-hai-wei, but were repulsed without any loss to the British. On May 16, 1900, it was announced that the Boxers who had murdered the English missionary Brooks had been punished by order of the Dowager Empress, one of the murderers being beheaded, another being sentenced to strangulation, a third to life imprisonment and four others to ten years' imprisonment. It was stated afterward that the two men condemned to death purchased substitutes to receive the penalty in their stead, one for a sum equal to one thousand dollars and the other for a sum equal to six hundred dollars.

**Boxer
Repulse
and
Punish-
ments.**

A condition of anarchy existed between Peking and Tien-tsin. The destruction of the Christian mission stations and the massacre of native Chinese Christians was spreading throughout the provinces of Pechili and Shantung; and thousands of foreign missionaries and native Christians fell victims to the inhuman fury of the Boxers and the Chinese troops, being hacked to pieces in the most inhuman manner at Tungchow, Weiksien, Kung-tsun and other places. Several thousand were massacred at the Roman Catholic convent at Paotingfu. The English missionaries Norman, Robinson and Ellis were cut to pieces. The Christian missionaries in Peking appealed to Christendom to come to their rescue. The Methodist missionaries in Peking cabled an appeal to President McKinley. The great foreign powers told the Dowager Empress of China to restore order or they would do so.

**More
Boxer
Massa-
cres.**

Late in May, 1900, owing to the spread of the Boxers' outbreak and the dangerous excitement which prevailed in Peking, the legations of the Great European Powers and the United States notified the Tsung-li-Yamen that foreign guards had been summoned and would arrive immediately. The disturbances which the Boxers excited in the vicinity of Peking produced a crisis which brought three hundred and forty British, American, French, Italian, Russian and Japanese troops into the Chinese imperial capital, with quick-firing cannon. Several American warships under the command of Admiral Kempff were stationed at Taku, with the warships of the Great European Powers and Japan.

**Foreign
Guards
in Peking.**

On June 10, 1900, about two thousand foreign troops—British, Americans, French, Germans, Italians, Russians and Japanese—left Tien-tsin for Peking by train, under the command of the British Vice-Admiral Edward Hobart Seymour; and the next day—June 11, 1900—this allied international force routed the Boxers at Lang-fang, midway between Tien-tsin and Peking, about thirty-five Boxers being killed; but, as many miles of the railway had been torn up by the Boxers, Admiral Seymour's relief force was delayed in its advance to the

**Admiral
Seymour
and His
Relief
Expedi-
tion.**

Chinese capital to rescue the foreign legations, missionaries and others. The foreign Ministers in Pekin were virtual prisoners, and their only protection against attacks from Chinese troops and mobs was a small international guard. Admiral Seymour's relief force was not heard from for several weeks. Captain McCalla, the commander of the American marines in Admiral Seymour's expedition, saved the expedition from starvation. A few American marines under Lieutenant Jayne went on a perilous expedition up the Peiho river. The famous United States battleship *Oregon* ran ashore on Hookie Island and was disabled.

Foreign
Troops
and War-
ships.

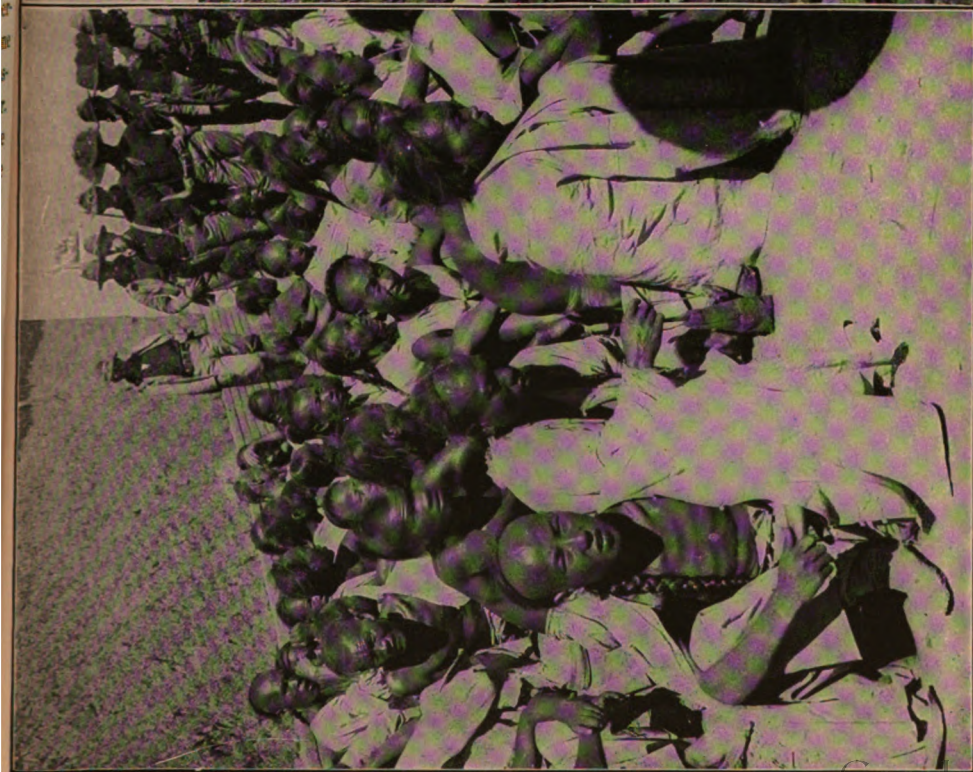
The allied foreign powers came to an understanding by which each agreed to send troops to rescue their beleaguered envoys in Pekin. Russia sent six thousand troops from her garrison at Port Arthur, and Great Britain sent six hundred from Hong Kong; while warships of Great Britain, Russia, Germany, France, Japan and the United States had collected in the vicinity of Taku, to be prepared for any emergencies. Thus China had arrayed herself against Christendom and defied all the great nations of the world.

Capture
of Taku
by the
Allies.

On Sunday, June 17, 1900, the allied international fleet was fired upon by the Chinese forts at Taku without warning, whereupon the allied foreign fleets bombarded the Taku forts and took them. The British gunboat *Algerine* was damaged. The losses of the allies were as follows: Twenty-one killed—one Briton, one Frenchman, three Germans and sixteen Russians; fifty-seven wounded—four Britons, one Frenchman, seven Germans and forty-five Russians. The heavy Russian losses were due to the blowing-up of the magazine at Mandjur. About four hundred Chinese were killed and a large number were wounded. Thirty-two allied foreign warships were engaged in the fight with the Chinese forts. Two of the forts were blown up, and several of the foreign warships were struck by shells from the 12-inch cannon of the forts. While retreating from the forts the Chinese garrisons were captured by the Russian land forces. Admiral Kempff, the commander of the American warships, reported that he did not join in the attack on Taku because, to use his own words, "I was not authorized to initiate any act of war with a country with which my country was at peace."

Allied
Troops
Ordered
to China.

The action of the Taku forts in firing upon the allied fleet was said to have been in accordance with secret orders conveyed in a personal edict from the Dowager Empress of China, by advice of Kang-Yi, President of the Chinese Ministry of War. As China, by this action, practically declared war against the allied foreign powers, the powers took prompt action. Germany ordered four thousand troops to China. France ordered ten thousand from French Indo-China. Russia ordered



From Photographs, copyright by Underwood & Underwood

THE BOXER TROUBLES

Left: Boxer Prisoners at Tientsin

Right: U. S. Soldiers Assisting Wounded Japanese After the Battle at Tientsin



five thousand more from Port Arthur. Japan prepared to send twenty thousand men to the seat of action. Great Britain ordered several additional regiments from British India and ten thousand troops from South Africa, at the same time sending the warship *Daphne* to the scene of hostilities. The United States ordered three infantry regiments under General Adna Romanza Chaffee from the Philippines to China and ordered the cruiser *Brooklyn* under Admiral Remey from Manila to Taku. Li Hung Chang instructed the Chinese envoys in Europe and America to implore the allied powers not to send any more troops to China, but his request was refused outright by all the interested powers.

On June 21, 1900, it was announced officially that the Chinese portion of Tien-tsin was being bombarded by the allied fleets, because the Chinese were bombarding the foreign settlement there, having shelled and destroyed the American consulate and much of the foreign concessions. Admiral Seymour had not been heard from for more than a week, and a report spread to Europe that he had been killed. The foreign quarter of Tien-tsin was bombarded for five days by Chinese imperial troops, and the allied naval commanders at Taku were hurrying a relief expedition to that place. The United States gunboat *Nashville* rescued the whole foreign community at Peitaho, including thirty-three Americans; and eight hundred American soldiers took part with three thousand troops of other nations in defending Tien-tsin against a greatly-superior Chinese force. On June 21st four of Major Waller's United States marines were killed and seven wounded and one hundred and eighty Russians were killed and wounded in a Chinese ambush near Tien-tsin, in trying to relieve the besieged foreigners. In the fighting at Tien-tsin on June 22d the commander of the British battleship *Barfleur* was killed and the allies lost three hundred men in killed and wounded.

Bombardment of Tien-tsin.

On Sunday, June 24, 1900, the allied relief force of two thousand troops, half of them Japanese, started for Tien-tsin. On the same day a British Indian force consisting of eight hundred Sikhs and two hundred Welsh Fusiliers joined the American, German and Russian forces which had been cut off by the Chinese about nine miles from Tien-tsin. These combined allied troops made an assault on the Chinese force at Tien-tsin the same day and rescued the besieged foreigners. The British and American troops broke the lines of the Chinese besiegers and silenced the Chinese artillery, and they were the first of the allies to enter the city. The allies suffered small losses, the Russians suffering most, their loss being four killed and thirty wounded. Late in June three thousand Japanese troops landed at Taku, where a French battalion also arrived. After the allied relief force had gone

Relief of Tien-tsin

to rescue Admiral Seymour the Chinese regulars under General Nieh again fiercely bombarded the foreign settlement at Tien-tsin.

**Rescue of
Admiral
Seymour.**

Admiral Seymour's heliograph message for help spurred the international relief force under the Russian general to haste. The Russian general started on June 25, 1900, to rescue the British admiral and his allied troops and the foreign envoys who were supposed to be with him, as the American Admiral Kempff and the British Admiral Bruce had cabled their respective governments that Admiral Seymour's relief expedition then was eight miles from Tien-tsin and in dire straits and that the foreign Ministers were with the expedition. To the great relief of Christendom, it was learned on June 29, 1900, that Admiral Seymour and his brave marines from the allied nations had been rescued by the allied international force under the Russian general, the relief being effected by the advance column under the British Colonel Dordward. American marines under Commander McCalla, of the United States navy, participated in the rescue and saved the expedition from starvation; while Lieutenant Jayne, of the United States warship *Newark*, with a few American marines, went on a hazardous expedition up the Peiho river. It was learned now that the foreign Ministers were not with Admiral Seymour's expedition, which for fifteen days before its rescue had been fighting the immense hordes of Chinese who had surrounded and threatened to overwhelm the heroic little band of allies, who lost sixty-two killed and two hundred and six wounded. The four thousand Russians who had left Tien-tsin four days after Admiral Seymour never got into communication with him. The allied troops which had relieved the besieged foreigners at Tien-tsin and rescued the international column under Admiral Seymour were considered too few to rescue the imperiled foreign Ministers at Pekin, whose fate was unknown, as reports were conflicting.

**Massa-
cres in
Pekin.**

In the meantime Pekin was in the power of the Boxer mob; but this mob was directed and controlled by the Dowager Empress, Prince Tuan and their party; while Prince Ching, who desired to protect the foreigners, was utterly powerless. On Sunday night, June 10, 1900, the British legation's new summer residence near Pekin was burned down. On the 11th the Chancellor of the Japanese legation in Pekin was assassinated by Chinese soldiers belonging to the Dowager Empress's bodyguard. The next day—June 12, 1900—while a delegation from the Tsung-li-Yamen was calling on the British Minister, Sir Claude Macdonald, two thousand Christians were seeking refuge in Peitang Cathedral under Monseigneur Favier; and that very night the demoniac yells of the Boxers and the shrieks and groans of their dying victims resounded in other quarters of China's capital. According to Dr. Morrison, correspondent of the *London Times*, "acres of houses

were destroyed and the [native] Christians in thousands put to the sword." Said the same writer: "During the awful nights of the 13th and 14th [June, 1900] Duke Lan, brother of Prince Tuan, and Chao-Shu-Chiao, of the Tsung-li-Yamen, had followed round in their carts to gloat over the spectacle." On the 15th—June, 1900—the Boxers set fire to a foreign drugstore and the flames spread and destroyed "the most interesting street in China, filled with priceless scrolls, manuscripts and printed books," along with "the pearl and jewel shops, the silk and fur, the satin and embroidery stores, the great curio shops, the gold and silver shops and nearly all that was of the highest value in the metropolis."

On June 19, 1900, the Chinese government, directed by the Dowager Empress, Prime Tuan and the reactionary mandarins, sent a message to the foreign legations in the Chinese capital to the effect that the capture of the Taku forts two days before—June 17, 1900—constituted a state of war and that therefore all foreigners must leave the Chinese capital within twenty-four hours under safe conduct and retire to Tien-tsin. The British Minister, Sir Claude Macdonald; the United States Minister, Hon. Edwin Hurd Conger, and the other diplomats, with the single exception of the Baron von Ketteler, the German Minister, suspecting Chinese treachery, feared to comply with the Chinese official demand; and their suspicions were justified by the tragedy of the following day. On the morning of June 20, 1900, as the Baron von Ketteler and his secretary were riding along Legation street, on their way to the Tsung-li-Yamen, they were attacked fiercely by Chinese soldiers; the Minister being killed and his secretary being wounded. The secretary escaped almost miraculously and returned to the other foreign legations in the British legation inclosure, and his account of the tragic end of the German Minister finally induced the other foreign Ministers to remain where they were and not to venture away from the British legation grounds and run the risk of assassination by a treacherous Chinese mob. In revenge for the murder of the Baron von Ketteler, the German guards burned the building of the Tsung-li-Yamen. The German government received messages of condolence and sympathy from the other great powers of the world; and all the foreign Ambassadors in Berlin, along with the Chinese Minister, called at the Foreign Office in that capital to express their sympathy. The Emperor William II. was furious with rage at the assassination of his diplomatic representative in China's capital and prepared to send an army to that country sufficiently large to avenge the crime. The Baron von Ketteler's wife, who still was in Peking, was an American woman, as was the wife of his successor, Dr. Mumm von Schwarzenstein, then German Envoy Extraordinary to the Grand Duchy of

**Assassination of
Baron
von
Ketteler.**

Luxemburg, who had been in Germany's diplomatic service for many years and who started for his new post in China a few days after his appointment.

**Siege
of the
Legations
in Pekin.**

The siege of the foreign legations at Pekin definitely began on June 20, 1900, the day of the murder of the Baron von Ketteler. The foreign diplomats and missionaries, all penned up in the British legation grounds, were fighting for their lives, being besieged under constant rifle and artillery fire, with women and children starving and dying in the legation buildings. The British legation grounds in Pekin are an inclosure of ten acres surrounded with a high wall of sun-dried clay, and in this inclosure are a series of legation buildings. In this inclosure and in the adjoining palace of Prince Su the little band of foreign diplomats and missionaries, exposed to the constant rifle and artillery fire of the Boxers and Chinese troops, for eight long and weary weeks were protected by three hundred and forty foreign guards, who successfully repelled all the attacks of their infuriated foes, in one of the most heroic and celebrated defenses against superior odds to be found in all history, until finally rescued by the allied army of deliverance on August 14, 1900. Heads of massacred foreigners were paraded constantly in the streets of Pekin, at the tops of spears, followed by crowds who sang: "Tapi yang kuei tse; tapi, tapi!" ("Kill the foreign devils; kill, kill!") Pekin's millions were roused to patriotic fervor, breaking out into the wildest excesses, while over half the city could be heard fighting around the legations. The foreign inmates of the British legation buildings could escape bullets only to face starvation. The survivors were short of food. During those terrible weeks of suspense Europe and America were without authentic news of the inmates of the legations, and even in official circles at times it was believed that the legations had fallen and that all the inmates had become victims to the fanatical rage of the Chinese mob. The American missionaries were assembled in the Methodist compound (inclosure), which had a guard of only ten marines. A committee of American missionaries sent out the following appeal: "Arouse the Christian world immediately to our peril. Should this arrive too late, avenge us." Sir Robert Hart reported several times that there was little hope of holding out successfully. A message from United States Minister Conger, dated July 4th, got to Tien-tsin and was as follows: "Been besieged two weeks British legation. Grave danger general massacre by Chinese soldiers, who are shelling legation daily. Relief soon, if at all. City without government except by Chinese army (which is) determined massacre all foreigners Pekin. Entry relief forces into city probably be hotly contested. Conger." A cipher dispatch from Minister Conger on July 18th said: "Quick relief only can prevent

a general massacre." The United States government ordered Admiral Remey to "use and urge every means possible for the immediate relief of Minister Conger." Minister Conger sent to General Chaffee, the commander of the American contingent of the allied army marching on Peking, the following message: "We will hold out until your arrival." Sir Robert Hart cabled the following cipher message to London: "The sooner we are out of this the better, for it is inconvenient for the Chinese government and unsafe for ourselves."

The Dowager Empress of China issued two edicts declaring that reconciliation with the Christians is impossible; the whole nation—princes, military officials, literati and nobles—being united against them and now engaged in stamping them out. The Dowager Empress asserted that the allied foreign powers began the struggle by attacking Taku, thereby aggravating the bitter feeling against all foreigners. She asserted that any attempt to suppress the Chinese people would be dangerous, saying: "Therefore it seems expedient now to utilize the anti-foreign movement." One of the Dowager Empress's edicts asserted that she is ready to protect the threatened legations at Peking, remarking, however: "But it remains to be seen whether the foreigners or the Chinese are the stronger. In any case, all the Governors should immediately enroll troops for the defense of their districts, as they will be held responsible for loss of territory."

**Edicts
of the
Dowager
Empress
of China.**

It was reported the Boxers burned the mission hospital at Moukden, in Manchuria, and massacred the native Christians and that Boxers also destroyed a Roman Catholic mission near the Korean frontier of Manchuria. Boxers also shelled and burned Blagovestchensk, destroying much property, thus assailing the Russians in Manchuria. Aigun was burned after some days fighting, and the Chinese again bombarded Blagovestchensk late in July. The Russians burned some villages and drove the Chinese from Bejantum, capturing five Krupp cannon and four gun carriages.

**Boxers
and
Russians
in Man-
churia.**

In the meantime fighting had been going on almost daily at Tien-tsin, and the Chinese quarter of the city was bombarded constantly by the allies. By the end of June, 1900, the allies had landed fourteen thousand troops at Taku, and these foreign troops were going daily to reinforce the allied force at Tien-tsin. The Chinese surrounded and bombarded the foreign settlement. The Japanese pushed on to Tien-tsin; and a Russo-Japanese force left Tien-tsin, following the railway as far as Lang-fang, whence they swept swiftly to the west, attacking the Chinese troops sent out by Prince Tuan, eighteen miles north of Tien-tsin, and killing one thousand of them. On July 6, 1900, the allies were defeated in a six hours' battle at Tien-tsin, the Chinese reoccupying the eastern arsenal after inflicting great loss upon the allies, and

**Incessant
Fighting
at
Tien-tsin.**

both sides fighting with the greatest determination. The allied commanders sent urgent appeals for reinforcements, and the Japanese commander said that the international forces under his command were in imminent danger of general defeat. Chinese cannon were sweeping the streets of the foreign settlement at Tien-tsin, driving the allies from position after position. In the incessant fighting at Tien-tsin the Chinese were using twelve new cannon in advantageous positions; and, although they drove the allies from one position after another, they lost three thousand killed, among whom was General Kek. The Chinese were defeated twice at new positions commanding the river communications with Tien-tsin near the middle of July, but the Chinese forces besieging Tien-tsin were growing stronger daily and were attacking the foreign settlement incessantly.

**Allied
Repulse
at
Tien-tsin.**

On July 13, 1900, the allies were repulsed terribly by the Chinese at Tien-tsin. The Ninth United States Infantry was cut to pieces; and its commander, Colonel Emerson H. Liscum, was killed. Other allied officers also were killed. More than one hundred of the allied troops were killed and over three hundred were wounded in an attempt to storm the native city wall. Seven thousand allied troops were engaged—Americans, British, Japanese, Russians and French; while the Chinese troops numbered twenty thousand. The battle began at dawn and lasted all day, ending at nightfall in a Chinese victory. The Chinese troops at Tien-tsin were armed with modern Krupp canon and Mauser rifles, more than eighty thousand Chinese troops being armed with these improved implements of war. The accuracy of their fire showed how rapidly the Chinese learned under German, French, Russian and English tutors.

**Capture
of
Tien-tsin
by the
Allies.**

Finally, on July 15, 1900, after terrific fighting, the allies drove the Chinese forces entirely out of Tien-tsin, back to the Shekan arsenal. Tien-tsin was taken and the battle won by the British naval cannon and lyddite shells, the Chinese troops being demoralized so thoroughly that they stole away quietly in the night, leaving the native Chinese quarter to the mercy of the frenzied inhabitants, who plundered that entire district. The left wing of the allies consisted of the British and Americans under the command of the British General Dorward. Only after repeated assaults by the British, American and Japanese troops was the city taken. The city caught fire from the British lyddite shells and was almost destroyed. Thus Tien-tsin—a Chinese city with a million inhabitants—was in the military possession of the allied international forces. The British standard floated over the north gate of the city walls, the American flag over the south gate, the Japanese banner over the east gate and the French tricolor over the west gate. The victorious allied troops, exhausted by the long and fierce fighting, rested on

the city walls. When the triumphant foreign forces entered the native Chinese quarter they found the walls strewn with the dead bodies of Chinese soldiers and a large part of the Chinese population dead in their houses, all killed by the destructive British lyddite shell fire. The Chinese quarter was plundered by its own inhabitants while the city was burning. In the attacks upon the city before its capture the Russians were upon the east and north; and other allied forces, which were under the command of the Japanese General Fukushima and the British General Dorward, were on the south. The Chinese imperial troops had destroyed the bridge and flooded the canal, thus making it impossible to cross the canal. The Chinese finally evacuated all their positions near Tien-tsin about July 21, 1900, and three hundred tents were pitched there for the wounded allies.

The allied foreign powers still were sending troops and warships to China. More British troops proceeded to China from British India. French troops and warships sailed from Toulon for the scene of hostilities. German troops and warships sailed from Kiel for the same destination. American troops under General Adna Romanza Chaffee were sent to China from the Philippines, and American warships under Admirals Kempff and Remey were near the seat of action. Russian troops were on the way from Manchuria. Japan was sending twenty thousand troops to China, and of all the international troops in the field hers were the best-equipped as well as the most numerous. There were nine foreign warships at Shanghai—four British, two Japanese, one American, one French and one Dutch. The French Chamber of Deputies voted an additional fourteen and a half million francs to conduct military operations in China, and drastic measures were proposed in the British Parliament to deal with the situation there. Great Britain also notified the Chinese imperial government and the Viceroy of the various Chinese provinces that they would be held responsible personally if any Europeans within their respective jurisdictions were harmed by the bloodthirsty Boxers.

In the meantime Prince Tuan's emissaries had been endeavoring to spread the Boxer propaganda over China. Risings were feared at Niu-Chwang, Chefoo, Fouchow, Shanghai, Nankin, Amoy, Canton and Hankow. Fiendish massacres of foreign missionaries and native Chinese Christians were perpetrated at various places. The distinguished Chinese statesman, Li Hung Chang, then Viceroy of Canton, was threatened by the Boxers because he protected "foreign devils." The Viceroy of Hankow nipped the threatened Boxer outbreak there. The Boxer movement threatened to spread over southern China, but the energetic action of the Viceroys of the southern provinces stayed the anti-foreign craze.

**More
Foreign
Troops
Sent to
China.**

**Threat-
ened
Spread
of the
Boxer
Move-
ment.**

**Situation
at
Canton.**

Li Hung Chang, as Viceroy of the Kwang provinces, Kwangtung and Kwangsi, was doing all in his power to protect the foreigners within his jurisdiction; and he caused the daily arrests and executions of Boxers and smugglers loaded with arms and ammunition, but the rowdy element there was undismayed. In the surrounding country the people were more threatening than in the city, and the following inflammatory placards were posted freely:

**Inflam-
matory
Placards.**

"We, the Chinese children of the sages, are faithful and filial as well as modest. How does it come to pass then that any of us can so far forget himself as to become the proselyte of a barbarian's religion? Tens of thousands of native converts have been killed in North China and their houses and possessions destroyed. Because of this all the countries of the world have sent soldiers to Tien-tsin to protect the converts. This they have failed to do. The mission churches, the foreign consuls and all the barbarian troops have been slaughtered, just as you kill chickens and dogs. You converts have involved the barbarians in this calamity. We look upon you as rebels, and soon your doom will overtake you. Unhappy is your condition, for all men hate and despise you. Great is your distress. Your hands hang helpless to your sides. Despair has seized your minds. Death alone will relieve you. By following the doctrines of these renegades and foreigners you have forfeited your rights as men. We warn you at once to fly to safe hiding places while yet there is opportunity."

**China's
Plea for
Peace.**

Li Hung Chang, who had been transferred from the post of Viceroy of Canton to that of Viceroy of the province of Pechili, in which Pekin is situated and which has a population of eighteen million inhabitants, exerted himself for peace, appealing to the United States to stop the allied movement on Pekin; but the United States refused to do so as long as the Chinese were fighting the allies and besieging the foreign legations in Pekin. The Emperor Kwang-su appealed successively to President McKinley, the Emperor William II. and President Loubet for peace and for the stopping of the allied advance on his capital; but all these rulers refused his request so long as the foreign legations were besieged in Pekin and so long as the Chinese troops were opposing the march of the allied troops for the relief and rescue of the beleaguered foreign envoys.

**Field-
Marshal
Count
von Wal-
dersee.**

Owing to the animated rivalry and jealousy between the British and the Russians as to which should furnish the chief commander of the allied troops in China, the allied powers finally agreed upon the German Field-Marshal Count von Waldersee, a warrior high in the estimation of the Emperor William II. The United States agreed to accept him as the international generalissimo provided war existed in China when he arrived there.

In the meantime jealousies among the allied powers hindered harmonious action among them, especially the traditional jealousy between Russia on the one side and Great Britain and Japan on the other; and only the urgent necessity for common united action prevented an open rupture on several occasions. The apparent disposition of the Russians to hold on to Manchuria, where they had defeated the Boxers in a number of engagements, aroused the jealousy of the British and the Japanese; while the attitude of the British at Shanghai was causing uneasiness to the French and Germans, who protested against the landing of British troops there. Great Britain and the United States acted harmoniously as allies in their policy toward China, opposing all schemes for wars of conquest and all projects for the partition of China, their only purpose being to rescue their beleaguered legations and to protect their respective subjects and citizens in that Far Eastern country. The allied powers seemed to be alligned thus: Great Britain, the United States and Japan standing together, while Russia, France and Germany appeared to be acting in harmony. There was no open expression of such attitude; but the apparent disposition of the powers acting for the moment in unison against the Boxers furnished seeming evidences of such division among them, which only the most skillful diplomacy was able to conceal.

**Attitude
of the
Allied
Powers.**

The Emperor William II. of Germany called for vengeance on China and prepared a fleet and army to execute his demands. In addressing the force of German marines which sailed from Wilhelmshaven for China on July 2, 1900, His Majesty spoke as follows:

**Speech
of the
German
Emperor
at Wil-
helms-
haven.**

"The firebrand of war has been hurled in the midst of the most profound peace. Unhappily, this was to me not unexpected. A crime of unspeakable insolence, horrifying in its barbarity, has been committed against the person of my trusty representative and has taken him from us. The Ministers of the other powers hover between life and death, and with them comrades sent for their protection. It may be that while I speak they have already fought their last fight. The German flag has been insulted and the German Empire treated with contempt. This demands exemplary punishment and vengeance. Events have moved with frightful rapidity and have become profoundly grave and still graver. Since I called you to arms what I hoped to effect with the help of the marine infantry has now become a difficult task, which can only be fulfilled with the help of the serried ranks of all civilized states. This very day the commander of the cruiser squadron has asked me to consider the dispatch of a division. You will have to face an enemy who are no less courageous than yourselves and trained by European officers. The Chinese have the use of European weapons. Thank God, your comrades of the marine infantry and my navy, when

they have encountered them, have proved true to the old German battle cry. They have defended themselves with glory, have won victory and have done the duty committed to them. I now send you out to avenge the wrong and ill. Do not rest until the German flag, joined to those of the other powers, floats triumphantly over China's flag, and until it has been planted on the walls of Peking to dictate peace to the Chinese. You will have to maintain good comradeship with all the other troops whom you will come in contact with over yonder. Russians, British and French, all alike, are fighting for one common cause—for civilization. We must bear in mind, too, something higher—namely, our religion and the defense and protection of our brothers out there, some of whom staked their lives for the Saviour. Think, also, of the honor of our arms. Think of those who fought before you. Go forth with the old Brandenburg motto: 'Trust in God, stand bravely. This is the whole of thy honorable duty. For who, helped by God, dares battle heartily, is never driven from the world.' The flags which here float above you go under fire for the first time. See that you bring them back to me clean and stainless and without a spot. My thanks, my prayers and my solicitude go with you."

Address
of the
German
Emperor
at Kiel.

Addressing his First Naval Division at Kiel, prior to its departure for China, on July 9, 1900, the German Emperor said:

"Yours is the first division of armored ships which I send abroad. Remember, you will have to fight a cunning foe, provided with modern weapons, to avenge the German blood which has flowed. But spare the women and children. I shall not rest until I have forced China upon her knees and all the bloody deeds are avenged. You will fight together with the troops of various nationalities. See that you maintain good comradeship with them."

Speech
of the
German
Emperor
at
Bremer-
haven.

A part of the German force destined to invade China sailed from Bremerhaven on July 27, 1900, on board three transports, on which occasion the Emperor William II. delivered a farewell address, of which the following is a part:

"Every German has been filled with pride to learn that the highest praise bestowed upon German warriors has come from the mouths of foreign leaders. The task before you is a great one. That a people like the Chinese should cast to the winds international rights a thousand years old, and treat with scorn the sanctity of an Ambassador and the rights of hospitality in a manner so horrible, is unprecedented in the history of the world. Every civilization not founded on Christianity is sure to be brought to naught. So I send you out. May you all prove your German efficiency, devotion and bravery, bear joyfully all discomfort and uphold the honor and glory of our arms. You must set an example of discipline, self-domination and self-control. If you close

with the enemy, remember this: Spare nobody! Make no prisoners! Use your weapons so that for a thousand years hence no Chinaman will dare look askance at any German! Open the way for civilization once for all. * * * * The blessing of the Lord be with you. The prayers of the whole people will accompany you in all your ways. My best wishes for yourselves and for the success of your arms will ever follow you. Give proofs of your courage, no matter where. May the blessing of God rest on your banners and may He vouchsafe to you to find a path for Christianity in that far-off country. For this you have pledged yourselves to me with your oath to the colors. I wish you god-speed. Adieu, my comrades."

The Emperor William II. also preached a sermon on board the imperial yacht *Hohenzollern* on Sunday, July 29, 1900, the day of the assassination of King Humbert of Italy by an anarchist; the subject of this sermon being: "The Holy Duty and Holy Power of Intercession." The reports showed that the imperial sermon was bellicose throughout. Of the soldiers going to China the imperial preacher said:

"They shall be the strong arm which punishes assassins. They shall be the mailed fist which smites the chaotic mass. They shall defend, sword in hand, our holiest possessions. True prayers can still cast the banner of the Dragon into the dust and paint the banner of the Cross upon the walls. * * * * Once, again has the heathen spirit of the Amalekites been raised in distant Asia, with great power and much cunning. With destruction and murder it will dispute the way to European trade and European culture. It will dispute the victorious march of Christian customs and Christian faith. And again is heard God's command: 'Choose us out men, and go out to fight with Amalek.' A hot and sanguinary struggle has begun. Already a number of our brethren are over there under fire. Many more are traveling along hostile coasts. You have seen them, the thousands who, to the call of volunteers to the front who will guard the Empire, have assembled themselves to battle with victorious banners. We who remain at home are bound by other sacred duties. Woe unto us if we remain slothful and sluggish while they are engaged in their difficult and bloody work, and if, from our place of security, we only curiously look on while they wrestle in battle. Not only should we mobilize battalions of troops, but we should also and shall set in motion an army of trained people to beg and entreat for our brethren that they may strike into the wild chaos with sword in hand. May they strike for our most sacred possessions. We would pray that God, the Lord, may make heroes of our men and lead those heroes to victory, and that then, with laurels on their helmets and orders on their breasts, He may lead them home to the land of their fathers. Our fight will not be finished in one day, but let

Sermon
of the
German
Emperor
on the
Imperial
Yacht
Hohen-
zollern.

not our hands grow weary or sink until victory is secured. Let our prayers be as a wall of fire around the camp of our brethren. Eternity will reveal the fulfillment of an old promise: 'Call upon Me in trouble, and I will deliver thee.' Therefore, pray continuously."

**Allied
March
on Peking.**

**Battles of
Peit-
sang,
Yang-
tsun and
Tsi-nin.**

On August 1, 1900, the allied army of twenty-five thousand men, consisting of British, French, Russians, Japanese and Americans, started from Tien-tsin for the advance on Peking, making good progress the first day. The main body of the Chinese imperial troops had left Peking on July 21st to oppose the march of the allies. The Chinese were fortifying their position outside the British legation. On Sunday, August 5, 1900, the Chinese were repulsed by the allies in a hard fight at Peit-sang, near Tien-tsin, with the loss of almost four thousand men killed and wounded, while the allies lost twelve hundred killed and wounded. The allied troops engaged numbered sixteen thousand and the Chinese thirty thousand. The engagement lasted seven hours, and the Chinese displayed great courage and military discipline. Two days later—August 7, 1900—the allies captured the Chinese position at Yang-tsun after a hard forced march in intense heat, which prostrated many men, the allies losing seven hundred men, sixty of whom were Americans. The next day—August 8—1900—the allies routed the Chinese in a brief engagement at Tsi-nin. The victorious allies now were rushing to Peking, with orders to take no rest; while the Chinese, in a panic, were retreating toward their capital, making little opposition to the advance of the allies, although Prince Tuan had ordered them to contest every inch of ground. The British-Indian contingent under General Sir Alfred Gaselee and the American contingent under General Adna Romanza Chaffee constituted the allied advance. The British General Dorward pronounced the American troops to be "soldiers of the highest class." The Count von Waldersee, who had not yet arrived in China, considered it a great honor to command such gallant soldiers as the American troops.

**Capture
of Peking.**

Finally, on August 14, 1900, the allies captured Peking, after an obstinate resistance on the part of the Chinese, and rescued the besieged legations and missionaries. It is said that when the overjoyed little band of foreigners heard the booming of the cannon of the allied armies coming for their deliverance they sang the familiar Doxology: "Praise God, from Whom all Blessings Flow." The Japanese lost one hundred men, the Chinese four hundred. The allies immediately surrounded the foreign legations to protect them. The allies were obliged to blow up the gates of the city before they could enter. The British and the Americans entered at the Tung Pien gates unopposed; while the Japanese and the Russians, after fierce fighting, blew up the two eastern gates of the Tartar city and entered. Among the Americans killed

was Captain Reilly, of the Fifth United States Artillery. After surrounding the legations the victorious allies drove off the Chinese and rescued the foreigners, all the Ministers being found safe. The Austrian Charge d'Affaires, Dr. von Rosthorn, was wounded slightly. It was said that Prince Ching extended a friendly reception to the allies. The Dowager Empress, The Emperor Kwang-su and the imperial court fled from the capital before the allies entered, going to Singanfu, an ancient capital of China, in the inaccessible portion of the province of Shensi, about seven hundred and fifty miles west of Peking.

The victorious allies still were fighting the Chinese in the streets of Peking and were bombarding the point where the Chinese still were resisting, part of the city being in flames. The Chinese were making a last stand in the inner city, the "Forbidden City," the allies surrounding that quarter and shelling it vigorously. The foreign envoys still were in Peking and were guarded. The United States consul at Tien-tsin reported that the American troops were surrounded in the palace grounds at Peking. The allies in Peking sent to Tien-tsin and Taku earnest requests for reinforcements. The Chinese troops soon were surrounded in the palace grounds of the sacred city, whither they had retired when the allies battered down the outside gates of the Tartar city. It was learned now that the foreign legations had been assailed furiously for two days and soon must have succumbed had not the allied relief force arrived just at the opportune moment. The relieving forces met with a joyful reception from the emaciated inmates of the foreign legations, who had only three days' rations left. About four thousand shells fell in the legation buildings during the siege, and sixty-five of the inmates were killed and one hundred and sixty were wounded. The British Indian troops had entered the British legation building at one o'clock and the Americans at three o'clock. The American and Russian flags had been planted on the eastern wall of Peking at eleven o'clock in the morning. The British and Americans had encountered little resistance until they entered the city, where there was street fighting. The flags of all the allies now were waving over the sacred city, the Chinese Holy of Holies, the imperial palace; five hundred American troops having attacked the palace and captured four of the courts, the Stars and Stripes thus flying over the Chinese Emperor's granary. The American troops were the first of the allied forces to enter the imperial city. The whole Chinese capital now was occupied by the allies, who divided it into districts for police supervision by international commissions, composed of British, Americans, Japanese, Russians and French. The American troops in Peking now were encamped on the grounds of the Temple of Heaven. Captain Reilly, of Battery F, Fifth United States Artillery, who was killed before the imperial palace, was buried in the legation

Occupation
of the
Sacred
City.

grounds; the American, British and Japanese generals and many civilians being present at the burial. Captain Reilly was known as a very brave and efficient artillery officer.

**Street
Fighting
in Pekin.**

Street fighting continued in Pekin, the allies being opposed at every step when they entered new districts, and not having sufficient force to police the city efficiently and put down the half-armed Chinese mobs, though they drove the Boxers from all points which they had occupied. The allies marched through the doors of the imperial palace, probably for humiliating effect on the Chinese nation; and afterwards they closed the doors of the palace, thus shutting out the Chinese soldiers. The Chinese forces rallied to attack the allies in Pekin, and there were signs that the foreign troops might be besieged in the Chinese capital. The American troops were drawn up so as to face thirty thousand Boxers, and Japanese official advices showed that the struggle was not over by any means. By August 18, 1900, forty-six thousand foreign troops had landed at Taku. The allied army in Pekin soon was reinforced by a German contingent, which constituted the vanguard of the army which the Emperor William II. was sending to China to avenge the murder of his Minister; and very soon the Count von Waldersee arrived in the Chinese capital to assume the chief command of all the allied forces there.

**Shameful
Pillage.**

The Germans, French and Russians disgraced themselves by their pillage of the Chinese capital, sending much valuable plunder to their respective countries; in which reprehensible proceedings the British, Americans and Japanese did not participate and against which they protested most vigorously. Among the valuable plunder sent to Europe was the famous clock which had been put in China's capital several centuries before by a celebrated Roman Catholic missionary. During the allied occupation of Pekin it was learned that the Chinese had discovered America in A. D. 499.

**Military
Operations in
Pechili
and
Shan-
tung.**

During the fall of 1900 the allies prosecuted military operations vigorously against the Boxers and the Chinese troops in the provinces of Pechili and Shantung, and won a number of victories over small Chinese detachments, while the Russians achieved a number of successes over the Chinese in Manchuria. The British and Germans sent several punitive expeditions to punish Boxer outrages. The Germans treated their vanquished Chinese foes with the most barbarous cruelty, shooting many of them after taking them prisoners and compelling them to stand over the graves which had been dug for them so that they would fall right into the graves as they were shot.

**Attitude
of Russia
and the
United
States.**

The trouble between China and the allied nations was settled only after many weary months of negotiations, prolonged largely by the attitudes of Russia and the United States. The proceedings of the

Russians in Manchuria caused uneasiness to Great Britain, Japan and the United States, as the Russian generals were issuing edicts of annexation in that Tartar province of China, in utter violation of recent assurances of the Russian government that it had no designs on Manchuria and that its troops were there only to suppress the Boxers; and the allies were convinced that the Russians did not intend to get out of Manchuria. The United States all along had acted with its allies in a half-hearted manner, fearing public sentiment at home, especially as a Presidential campaign was in progress there during that fall; though after the election the United States was brought into line with the other powers in the terms to be demanded of China. The Anglo-German agreement of October 16, 1900, by which Great Britain and Germany bound themselves to prevent the partition of China was a guarantee of the integrity of Chinese territory and of peace among the allied powers. As the principle of this agreement all along had been insisted upon by the United States, the United States thenceforth acted more harmoniously with her allies; her chief concern after the suppression of the Boxer outbreak being the integrity of the Chinese Empire and the maintenance of the "open door" in China, or equal privileges for all nations to trade with China, in which policy she always had been in full accord with Great Britain.

Anglo-German Agreement.

As early as August 20, 1900, Li Hung Chang had asked the allied powers for the cessation of hostilities and for the appointment of commissioners to negotiate a permanent peace, as Peking then had been captured and the foreign legations rescued. The next day he made a request for the speedy evacuation of the Chinese capital by the allied troops. The peace commission met in Paris on October 20, 1900, when the Chinese plenipotentiaries proposed an indemnity amounting to two hundred and thirty million dollars to be paid in sixty installments, all customs and similar taxes to be placed under foreign control in the meantime.

Peace Negotiations.

After almost a month passed in daily conferences, the allied Ministers at Peking finally agreed upon a joint preliminary demand upon China, subject to the approval of their respective governments. The terms were as follows: An indemnity amounting to three hundred and fifty million dollars to be paid by China to the allied nations; the execution of eleven guilty Chinese princes and high officials as a punishment for the Boxer outrages; the Taku forts and other forts on the Gulf of Pechili to be razed and the importation of arms and war material to be prohibited; permanent legion guards at Peking and guards of communication between Peking and the sea; imperial edicts suppressing the Boxers to be posted throughout the Chinese Empire for two years; the Tsung-li-Yamen to be abolished and its functions to be vested in a Minister of

Peace Agreement.

Foreign Affairs, and rational intercourse to be permitted with the Chinese Emperor as in all civilized countries; provincial examinations to be suspended for five years, and in future all officials who have not made due effort to prevent outrages on foreigners within their respective jurisdictions to be removed from office immediately and punished; the indemnity to include compensation for the Chinese who suffered because of being employed by foreigners; the erection of a monument by China to the Baron von Ketteler at the site of his murder and the sending of a Chinese imperial prince to Germany to make an apology for the crime. China finally accepted the allied terms of peace, and the international troops were withdrawn gradually from the country.

By this agreement China gave Russia exclusive mining and railway privileges in Manchuria for three years, but on October 8, 1903, Russia failed to evacuate as agreed. The Russo-Japanese War, however, intervened, and by the Treaty of Portsmouth in 1905 Manchuria was restored to China. On January 15, 1908, the United States remitted ten millions eight hundred thousand dollars of the indemnity claims against China as being unjust. On January 13, 1904, a commercial treaty was proclaimed with the United States, but as Chinese immigration restrictions were still enforced by the latter, a boycott against American goods was declared by Chinese trade guilds on July 19, 1905. During 1906-8 internal affairs assumed a more progressive spirit, special features being the promise by the emperor on September 2, 1906, of constitutional government, army reform, extension of railways, telegraph lines, etc.; the agreement with Great Britain to suppress the opium traffic, and the approval in March, 1908, of laws introducing Western banking methods. In February, 1908, occurred the dispute with Japan over the *Tatsu Maru*, a Japanese vessel seized off Macao by Chinese officials, who claimed that she was transporting arms for Chinese revolutionists. This Japan denied, but after much diplomatic intercourse the incident was amicably settled. China continued her disputes with Japan, however, over railway concessions in Manchuria, and in May, 1908, a boycott was declared against Japanese merchandise.

Boycott
Against
American
Merchan-
dise.

National
Progress.

Tatsu
Maru
Affair.

SECTION V.—RUSSO-JAPANESE WAR (A. D. 1904-1905).

The
Great
War.

THE greatest event in the world's history during the years 1904 and 1905 was the great Russo-Japanese War, one of the most gigantic struggles in the annals of time—a conflict characterized by battles which for magnitude of numbers engaged and losses on each side as well as for length of duration have no parallels in history. To the surprise of mankind generally, the little insular Empire of Japan won



MUTSUHITO, LATE MIKADO OF JAPAN

LIBRARY
OF THE
U. S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE
WASHINGTON, D. C.

an unbroken series of victories on sea and land and came out victorious after a struggle of nineteen months, humbling her great rival in the dust and taking her place as one of the great military and naval powers of the world. Thus Japan, with only about fifty millions of people, after humiliating China with her four hundred million inhabitants, ten years later humbled Russia with her one hundred and thirty million.

The action of Russia in 1895, with the support of France and Germany, in depriving Japan of the great fruits of her victory over China by preventing the cession of the Liao-tung peninsula by China to Japan and afterward obtaining that peninsula for herself by treaty with China, eventually rendered war between Russia and Japan inevitable. In fact, it was inevitable long before that. Russia's gradual expansion eastward through northern Asia, which rendered ultimately necessary to her the control of important points on the Pacific coast of Asia opposite Japan, along with Japan's natural ambition to obtain possessions and commercial advantages on the Asiatic mainland, long before portended an armed collision between the empires of the Czar and the Mikado.

Prelude
to the
War.

Russia's first acquisitions in the Far East since the middle of the nineteenth century were obtained by astute diplomacy at the expense of China; and her successes in this regard were due largely, first and last, to a full acquaintance with the Manchu characteristics. The acquisition of the Amour province by Russia from China through Count Muravieff's skillful diplomacy in 1858 as far south as the site of Vladivostok, with the right to navigate the Amour river for military and other purposes, seemed to open an auspicious way for the absorption of Manchuria by Russia, a very desirable country having an area of four hundred thousand square miles and vast deposits of coal, iron and other minerals and containing "the promise and potency of a splendid industrial future." There was no doubt that while the Chino-Japanese War was in progress that Russia had resolved fully to obtain the whole of Manchuria and that she also contemplated absorbing Korea with its valuable harbors, which were far superior to the port of Vladivostok, which is frozen over completely for five months of every year.

Russia's
Acquisition
of the
Amour
Region.

The starting-point in the recent rivalry between Russia and Japan was the Treaty of Shimonoseki in April, 1895, by which Japan obtained from China the possession of southern Manchuria, along with Russia's subsequent action by which Japan was deprived of the chief fruits of her victory over China. Russia had asserted that China's integrity must be preserved—that is, until China can be annexed to the Russian Empire. As compensation for confining the Japanese to their native islands, Russia obtained from China the railway and other

Russia's
Railway
Conces-
sions
from
China
in Man-
churia.

concessions in Manchuria which led directly to the Russo-Japanese rivalry which ended in war.

**China's
Integrity.**

China's integrity was the point insisted upon by the Great European Powers at the end of the Chino-Japanese War in 1895. China's integrity was insisted upon by the same Great Powers also at the time of their suppression of the great Boxer outbreak in China in 1900. During these five years many things transpired that had a bearing upon the situation between Russia and Japan. In the construction of the Manchurian Railway, in the operations of the Russo-Chinese Bank and in all the devices in which Russia is so skillful, that Great European Power had built up a claim steadily and had strengthened her hold on Manchuria, notwithstanding all her promises to China, Japan and the world not to annex that Chinese province to her own dominion.

**Great
Britain's
Rivalry
with
Russia.**

Besides Russia, the leading Great Power of Europe concerned in the Far Eastern question was Great Britain, which always had maintained that Russia's expansion eastward to the ice-free Pacific coast should be opposed as resolutely as her advance southward to the Mediterranean Sea or the Persian Gulf. Russia's acquisition of Port Arthur and Ta-lien-wan from China, in March, 1898, was not relished by Great Britain, as it disturbed very seriously the balance of power in the Far East and attacked the "equality of opportunity" for all nations which Great Britain always had upheld. To offset Russia's occupation of Port Arthur and Ta-lien-wan and Germany's acquisition of Kiao-Chau Bay, as well as France's gains in South China, Great Britain occupied Wei-hai-wei. Such was the famous scramble among the Great Powers of Europe for "leases" and "spheres of influence" in China, provoked by the insidious and subtle policy of Russia in her schemes of territorial aggrandizement in the Far East. One of the most important circumstances connected with the great Boxer uprising in China in 1900 and its results was the coming of the United States upon the scene in the Far East, with its insistence upon the same "open door" policy for international commerce in that quarter of the world as advocated by Great Britain, as a checkmate upon the "sphere of influence" scheme inaugurated by Russia, Germany and France.

**Franco-
Russian
and
Anglo-
Japanese
Alliances.**

The Chinese characterized the Franco-Russian alliance of 1895 as a coalition of freebooters and buccaneers for mutual support in the contemplated partition of China. In the spring of 1902 this Russo-French alliance was offset by an Anglo-Japanese alliance, the objects of which were the preservation of peace in the Far East and the protection of the interests of Japan, Korea and China; the prevention of war between Russia and Japan, and the prevention of France or any other power coming to Russia's aid to crush Japan. The effect of this Japanese-British alliance was "to give a new turn to the diplomacy

and politics of all Eastern Asia and to change the angle of vision of the Cabinet Ministers of the West."

As before stated, China's integrity was insisted upon by the great powers of the world after the suppression of the Boxer rising. In accordance with the terms of the Manchurian Treaty, signed by the diplomatic representatives of China and Russia in April, 1902, the Russian troops were to evacuate Manchuria within a year and a half—a result of the British-Japanese alliance and of the resolute insistence of the United States for the "open door" in the Far East. Russia gave various pretexts for her continued military occupation of Manchuria in violation of her solemn treaty with China and for her constant reinforcement of her army in that Tartar province of China. It was very evident that she never seriously intended to retire her troops from Manchuria, as she had invested millions of money in that province and as many Russian people had settled there, while the province was of so much value to her in a geographical point of view to the protection of Russian interests on the Pacific coast of Asia.

**Russia's
Occupation of
Manchuria.**

Japan was the main local protector of Mongolian interests; while her powerful ally, Great Britain, was her associate in that sphere. Germany and France were Russia's allies in the Far East. The United States had an interest in the commercial question involved in the situation. Both Great Britain and the United States were dissatisfied with Russia's attitude in Manchuria, but naturally Japan took the lead in checkmating Russia's schemes of aggrandizement in the Far East.

**Attitude
of the
Great
Powers.**

Russia's persistent meddling with Korea, especially since the close of the Chino-Japanese War, had aroused Japan to aggressive measures far more than had the Russian occupation of Manchuria. Both Russia and Japan were bound by treaty obligations to maintain the independence of Korea, but Russia's course in Manchuria and her commercial advances in Korea had aroused the most profound distrust on the part of Japanese statesmen. During the years 1903 and 1904 long and weary negotiations took place between the Russian and Japanese governments on the Korean question, Russia giving evasive answers to Japan's inquiries and evidently delaying a decisive answer until her armaments on sea and land were prepared fully for hostilities. While seemingly trying to settle the issues between them by diplomacy, the two powers were preparing for open hostilities, the Russians constantly pouring troops into Manchuria. The great issues involved were the independence of Japan and the restoration of Manchuria to China, along with the preservation of the Chinese Empire and Korea and the maintenance of the "open door" for trade in the Far East. Japan rightly feared that if Russia should annex Manchuria, Korea

**Russo-
Japanese
Rivalry
over
Korea.**

and China that the independence of Japan itself would be menaced; that if Manchuria were annexed to Russia the absorption of China by Russia would be inevitable, and if Korea also were annexed to Russia the days of Japan's independent existence would be numbered. Japan, therefore, concluded that war must come sooner or later, and therefore the sooner the better. The sympathies of the British and American people, therefore, were with Japan, both because they believed that her cause was just and because she stood for the "open door," thus striving to safeguard interests which were also the interests of Great Britain and the United States, Japan having resolutely pursued the policy enunciated by Secretary of State Hay's circular of 1900 and which formed the basis of the Anglo-Japanese agreement of 1902. Distrusting Russia's pretended professions of peace while she was preparing quietly for war, Japan was not caught napping and also had been silently pushing her military and naval preparations. The sequel showed that Japan was prepared fully for the struggle when it did come, while Russia was not. Russia's policy of diplomatic procrastination, giving evasive and deceptive answers to Japan's pointed interrogatories, did not work in this case; and Japan struck the great Russian Bear a hard blow full in the face before the Bear was ready to receive such blow.

**Diplo-
matic
Rupture.**

The long and tedious diplomacy between Russia and Japan was cut short very suddenly at the end of the first week of February, 1904. After waiting patiently for almost three weeks for an answer to its diplomatic note of January 18th, the Japanese government decided upon the last resort; and on the afternoon of February 7th M. Kurino, the Japanese Minister at St. Petersburg, called upon the Russian Minister of Foreign Affairs and formally announced that his government had directed him to break off diplomatic relations with the Czar's government, and he demanded his passports. After referring to Japan's demands that Russia should recognize the independence and territorial integrity of Korea, the Japanese Minister to Russia thus concluded his statement: "But finding in their efforts no prospect of securing from the Russian government any adhesion either to Japan's moderate and unselfish proposals or to any other proposals likely to establish a firm and lasting peace in the Far East, the Japanese government has now no alternative than to terminate the present futile negotiations. In adopting that course the Japanese government reserve to themselves the right to take such independent action as they may deem best to consolidate and defend Japan's menaced position as well as to protect her established rights and legitimate interests. The Japanese government, having exhausted in vain every means of conciliation with the view of removing from the relations of the two countries every cause

for future complication, and finding that her just representations and moderate and unselfish proposals made in the interest of permanent peace in the Far East were not receiving from the Russian government the consideration which is their due, have resolved to sever their diplomatic relations with the Russian government, which for the reason named have ceased to possess value."

While believing that Russia's reply to Japan's last diplomatic note would not be acceptable to Japan, the diplomatic world was surprised at Japan's action in breaking off diplomatic relations so abruptly. The Japanese Minister at St. Petersburg left the Russian capital as quick as possible, leaving Japanese interests in the hands of the United States Minister in that capital; while the Russian Minister at Tokio was recalled, thus completing the diplomatic rupture. Diplomatic ruptures do not imply war in every case; but in this instance it was recognized that such was the significance of Japan's action, and events very soon confirmed this view.

Japan instantly began naval operations. Events showed that her plans had been made well and that her preparations for an immediate advance were complete. On the very day of the diplomatic rupture at St. Petersburg—Sunday, February 7, 1904—a Japanese fleet took possession of the port of Masanpho, on the south-eastern coast of Korea; and on the night of the 8th and on the 9th—February, 1904—the war was opened in dead earnest at Port Arthur, that great Russian stronghold in the Far East being defended by massive fortifications and a strong Russian garrison under General Stoessel and by a fleet of thirty Russian warships, including five battleships and five cruisers, along with several torpedo-boats and torpedo-boat destroyers. It was not known that the Japanese were in the vicinity, and it was not expected that they would be there for several days. Evidently the Russians considered themselves as secure as in time of peace. Only one searchlight was at work, and there were few patrol boats there. Suddenly, about midnight, explosions were heard, quickly followed by the roar of small cannon from the aroused Russian fleet. Japanese torpedo-boats had approached the Russian fleet unobserved and had succeeded in placing their explosives against the big battleships *Retvizan* and *Czarevitch* and the cruiser *Pallada*. These three Russian warships were injured very seriously by the explosions, being practically disabled for the time and were reported as grounded near the inner harbor entrance. The two wrecked battleships were among the most modern in the Russian navy, the *Retvizan* having been built in the Cramps shipyards in Philadelphia in 1900, and the *Czarevitch* being the flagship of Admiral Wirenius, while the *Pallada* was a first-class protected cruiser. On the following day—February 9, 1904—a Jap-

Its
Result.

Russian
Warships
Injured
at Port
Arthur.

anese squadron of sixteen warships appeared at Port Arthur and bombarded the Russian fleet and the forts, and in the naval engagement which followed five more Russian cruisers were injured and disabled.

Russian
Warships
Injured at
Chemulpo,
Korea.

On the day after the Japanese naval successes at Port Arthur—February 9, 1904—another Japanese fleet made its appearance at the entrance of the harbor of Chemulpo, on the western coast of Korea, and demanded the surrender of the Russian cruiser *Variag* and the Russian gunboat *Koriets* within an hour; but, instead of complying with the Japanese demand, the two Russian war vessels came forward and gave battle, with the result that after an hour's fighting the Russian vessels retired and later were blown up and sunk, evidently by their own crews to prevent them from falling into the possession of the victorious Japanese, the crews escaping to other ships in the harbor. The *Variag* was recovered by the Japanese afterward and was towed to one of their own harbors. This cruiser was the flower of the Russian navy in many respects and had been built by the Cramps in Philadelphia. The Russians severely criticised the Chemulpo incident and issued a note of much force to the world, claiming that the Japanese violated all rules of war and placed themselves outside the pale of civilized nations by cutting the cable so that no news of a state of war could reach Chemulpo and by demanding that the two Russian vessels come out where they would be obliged to fight in the very midst of a neutral and peaceable shipping.

Other
Russian
Losses
at Sea.

Other disasters befel the Russians at sea, the torpedo transport *Yenisei* being blown up by accidentally striking a mine at Port Arthur, its captian and its crew of almost a hundred men being lost, while on this boat were the plans of all the mines and torpedoes in Port Arthur harbor. The Japanese also captured several Russian merchant ships or vessels loaded with coal or other supplies intended for Russian consumption.

Russian
Naval
Operations.

To offset their great losses at sea, the Russians were unable to inflict any very great damage on Japanese war or merchant ships. A Russian squadron of four cruisers, supposed to be the Vladivostok squadron, created some havoc in the northern portion of the Sea of Japan and was reported to have bombarded Hakodate on February 12, 1904, also sinking a merchant steamer flying the Japanese flag in the Tsugara Strait. The Japanese had closed this strait against any possible passage through it by laying a thorough system of mines. This Russian squadron retired westward, and little was heard of it thereafter, it being unable to join or aid the Russian fleet at Port Arthur.

Russia's
Formal
Declaration
of
War.

On February 10, 1904, Russia and Japan respectively issued their formal declarations of war against each other. The Czar's declaration justified Russia's position and criticised Japan's action by saying

the following: "In our solicitude for the maintenance of peace, which is dear to our heart, we made every exertion to maintain tranquillity in the Far East. In these peaceful aims we signified assent to the proposals of the Japanese government to revise agreements regarding Korean affairs existing between the two governments. However, negotiations begun upon this subject were not brought to a conclusion; and Japan, without awaiting receipt of the last responsible proposals of our government, declared the negotiations broken off and diplomatic relations with Russia dissolved. Without advising us of the fact that the breach of such relations would in itself mean an opening of warlike operations, the Japanese government gave orders to its torpedo-boats suddenly to attack our squadron standing in the outer harbor of the fortress of Port Arthur. Upon receiving reports from the Viceroy in the East of this we immediately commanded him to answer the Japanese challenge with armed force."

The Mikado's formal declaration of war against Russia was issued on the same day as the Czar's declaration of war against Japan, February 10, 1904, and stated Japan's side of the case by justifying Japan's attitude and severely censuring Russia's course during the whole controversy by saying: "It has been our constant aim to promote the pacific progress of our empire in civilization, to strengthen our friendly ties with other states and to establish a state of things which would maintain enduring peace in the Far East and assure the future security of our dominion without injury to the rights or interests of other powers. * * * The integrity of Korea is a matter of the gravest concern to this empire, not only because of our traditional relations with that country, but because the separate existence of Korea is essential to the safety of our realm. Nevertheless, Russia, in disregard of her solemn treaty pledges to China and her repeated assurances to other powers, is still in occupation of Manchuria, has consolidated and strengthened her hold on these provinces and is bent upon their final annexation. And since the absorption of Manchuria by Russia would render it impossible to maintain the integrity of China and would in addition compel the abandonment of all hope of peace in the Far East, we were determined in those circumstances to settle the question by negotiations and to secure thereby permanent peace. With that object in view our competent authorities by our order made proposals to Russia and frequent conferences were held during the last six months. Russia, however, never met such proposals in a spirit of conciliation, but by wanton delays put off a settlement of the serious questions, and by ostensibly advocating peace on one hand while on the other extending her naval and military preparations, sought to accomplish her own selfish designs. We cannot in the least admit Russia had

Japan's
Formal
Declaration
of
War.

from the first any serious or genuine desire for peace. She rejected the proposals of our government. The safety of Korea was in danger and the interests of our empire menaced. The guarantees for the future which we failed to secure by peaceful negotiations can now only be obtained by an appeal to arms."

**First
Japanese
Attempt
to Bottle
up Port
Arthur.**

Early on the morning of February 24, 1904, the Japanese attempted to bottle up the Russian fleet in Port Arthur harbor, in imitation of Hobson's exploit at Santiago harbor in the Spanish-American War. Five steamers, laden with stone and carrying explosives for the purpose of sinking them, came within view of the Russian searchlights and were fired upon very heavily, all five of the steamers being sunk and their crews being rescued by the Japanese torpedo-boats which accompanied them for that purpose under the protection of a Japanese squadron. At first the sinking of these steamers was heralded as the repulse of a heavy Japanese assault and therefore as a great Russian victory, being thus announced at St. Petersburg, where a *Te Deum* was ordered; but later reports showed the true nature of the affair—the intention of the Japanese to bottle up the inner harbor of Port Arthur. The effort was only partially successful, as Russian ships passed in and out of the harbor afterward. The same morning two Russian torpedo-boat destroyers were discovered detached from the Russian fleet, one being destroyed. Such was the result of the first Japanese attempt to bottle up Port Arthur.

**Bombard-
ment of
Port
Arthur.**

The Japanese fleet continued the investment of Port Arthur and daily bombarded its fortifications or its defending Russian fleet. The Japanese naval tactics seemed to be to avoid a conflict at close range, in which some of the Japanese vessels stood the possibility of being injured, but, instead, to shell the defenses of the stronghold and its protecting Russian fleet at safe range, which would be harassing and effective, until a Japanese land force could cooperate with the Japanese fleet in the reduction of this "Gibraltar of the East." The weakness of the Russian fleet enabled it only to act on the defensive, under the protection of the cannon of the forts. The capture of Port Arthur seemed to be the first object of the Japanese. Though considered impregnable by the Russians, it was already in a critical condition and resembled a great military camp, all civilians having left the city. The Russian Viceroy Alexieff already had removed his headquarters from Port Arthur to Moukden, the capital of Manchuria, two hundred and fifty miles distant. The Russian garrison of Port Arthur was reinforced by thousands of Russian troops, and the whole line of the railway was guarded closely. The Japanese made several attempts to land troops on the Liao-tung peninsula, at the southern extremity of which Port Arthur is located.



From Stereograph, copyright 1905 by Underwood & Underwood

JAPANESE HURLING A FIVE-HUNDRED-POUND SHELL AT PORT ARTHUR

Digitized by Google

1917
JAN 17
NOV
LOCATIONS

Immediately upon the seizure of Masanpho and Chemulpo, the chief ports respectively on the southern and western coasts of Korea, large bodies of Japanese troops were landed in that country; and Seoul, the Korean capital, was occupied by a Japanese force, while Japanese troops were landed in northern Korea at the same time. The Yalu river was practically the dividing line between the Japanese and Russian armies, and several skirmishes between small detachments of the hostile forces occurred. By a treaty with Korea, Japan assumed a protectorate over that small independent empire. Foreign observers, officers and newspaper correspondents alluded to the organization, discipline and efficiency of the Japanese military forces in the highest terms, characterizing everything as perfect and as moving like clock-work.

**Japanese
Troops
Landed
in Korea.**

Before the outbreak of hostilities the Russians claimed to have two hundred thousand troops in Manchuria, but after the war had commenced they asserted the number to be only seventy-five thousand. The only connection which the Russian forces in Manchuria had with their European base, five thousand miles distant, was the new Trans-Siberian Railroad, a single-track and poorly-equipped line; the trip from Moscow to Harbin, in Manchuria, occupying thirteen days; and the number of troops that could be transported in one day was only three thousand, instead of seven thousand, as expected. Severe winter conditions prevailed in Manchuria, and the question of supplies was a serious one for the Russians. The Russian troops in Manchuria were surrounded by a hostile population and by Manchurian guerrilla detachments animated by a desire for revenge. Harbin was made the base of the Russian army in Manchuria.

**Russian
Forces
in Man-
churia.**

General Kuropatkin, the Russian Minister of War, was relieved of his Cabinet duties on February 22, 1904, and was appointed commander-in-chief of all the Russian military forces in the Far East. He was the best general of the time in the Russian army and had learned the art of war in the campaigns in Khiva and Khokand in 1873 and 1875 and in the Russo-Turkish War of 1877-'78 under General Skobelev. The Grand Dukes Alexis, Nicholas and Boris were to accompany General Kuropatkin in his campaigns against the Japanese in Manchuria.

**The
Russian
General
Kuro-
patkin.**

An important diplomatic incident connected with the war was the sending of a note by John Hay, the American Secretary of State, to the great powers of the world, asking them to coöperate with the United States in preserving the neutrality of China. Most of them promptly agreed to do so, Japan included; and Russia also agreed, after some delay. This action of the United States was recognized as a clever diplomatic exploit, tending to restrict the area of the war and serving

**American
Diplo-
macy.**

notice on China, Japan and Russia that the great neutral powers expected these limits to be observed.

Outside
Sym-
pathy.

Though all the great neutral powers of the world strictly observed their neutrality in the contest, the inward sympathy of the governments of Great Britain and the United States, as well as the avowed popular sympathy in those countries, was with Japan, because of the selfish and aggressive attitude of Russia in Manchuria and Korea and in the Far East generally. In Continental Europe, especially in France and Germany, official sympathy was secretly with Russia. As before remarked, the British and American sympathy with Japan was both because they believed she had justice on her side and because she championed interests which were similar to their own interests in the Far East.

Siege and
Bombard-
ment of
Port
Arthur.

The main activity of the war during the months of February and March, 1904, were on the sea; and the Japanese had maintained the aggressive, Port Arthur being the center of interest. That great Russian stronghold in Manchuria suffered many bombardments from the Japanese warships; but its heroic Russian garrison under General Stoessel maintained its defense resolutely. The Japanese squadron was near enough to throw tremendous shells into the city, but always was sufficiently cautious to keep out of range of the big guns of the forts. These shells caused fires and explosions within the city and produced much loss of life. A three hours' bombardment on March 10th sent one hundred and fifty 12-inch shells from the Japanese warships, and one hundred and ten of these shells fell into the beleaguered city. As these shells weighed about eight hundred and fifty pounds each, they produced great havoc. On the same day there were two engagements between Russian and Japanese torpedo-boat destroyers in the vicinity of the besieged stronghold, both being desperate hand-to-hand struggles, two of the contesting vessels being so close to each other that explosives were used on the deck of the Japanese boat. One Russian destroyer was captured after its crew of fifty-five men was almost annihilated, only four of the crew being taken prisoners and the boat being damaged so badly that it sank. All the boats of both sides were injured more or less. The details of this struggle and of other conflicts disclosed great personal valor and desperate effort on both sides.

Admiral
Maka-
roff's
Russian
Squadron
at Port
Arthur.

Early in March, 1904, Admiral Makaroff assumed the command of the Russian squadron at Port Arthur, and he appeared disposed to adopt a more aggressive attitude. He caused the injured *Retvizan* to be moved from its position where it partly blocked the harbor, and he now was able to bring out his large vessels. The Russians could not understand where the Japanese squadron went whenever it retired from Port Arthur between attacks, as they had no trace of the

squadron when it disappeared from their sight until it reappeared. They were convinced that it could not go to a home port, and they could not conjecture where it took on the necessary supplies of coal and ammunition.

On March 6, 1904, a Japanese cruiser squadron bombarded Vladivostok, taking a position outside the range of the guns of the forts; the object evidently being to discover if the Russian ships were in the harbor and to draw them out if possible. The Russians did not respond to the Japanese firing; and the Japanese failed to discover the whereabouts of the Russian Vladivostok squadron, believing that it had escaped the vigilance of the Japanese and that it would succeed in effecting a junction with the Russian Port Arthur squadron, as this was known to be the desire of the Russians, who were using every effort to accomplish this result. It was reported that vessels carrying coal, provisions and other contraband articles had reached Vladivostok; the Japanese making no special effort to prevent them doing so, feeling confident that all these could be captured with the port afterward. Japan's control over the Yellow Sea was shown by the fact that regular steamer service had been resumed between Nagasaki and the Chinese ports.

Bombardment of Vladivostok.

Great preparations were being made for operations on land in Korea and Manchuria. Japanese troops were pouring into northern Korea as fast as they could be rushed forward, and the Russian main line fronted them on the Yalu river, though the opposing armies still were far apart. There were many rumors of skirmishes between scattered detachments of the opposing forces. Russian troops were arriving constantly in Manchuria over the Trans-Siberian Railway at the rate of four thousand daily. There was a large Russian force at Niu-Chwang, near the Chinese frontier, to protect that important strategic point against the Japanese and to watch the Chinese, whom the Russians very much feared would make common cause with the Japanese. Indeed this city became so much of a military point that residents were not allowed to go outside the inner walls of the city. General Kuropatkin, the Russian commander-in-chief in the Far East, left Moscow on March 13, 1904, on his way across Siberia to the seat of war; and much was expected of him.

Land Operations in Korea and Manchuria.

Besides her naval forces in Far Eastern waters, Russia had formidable fleets in the Mediterranean and Baltic seas, which could be sent to the scene of hostilities in case of emergency. The movements of the Russian Mediterranean fleet under Admiral Wirenius were occasioning some curiosity. That fleet left Crete on March 20, 1904, for an unknown destination. The Russian Baltic fleet under Admiral Rojestvensky consisted of seven battleships, three armored cruisers, two belted

Russia's Mediterranean and Baltic Fleets.

cruisers, five protected cruisers, about thirty torpedo-boat destroyers and at least forty torpedo-boats.

Other
Russian
War-
ships.

For home coast defense Russia had three coast-service battleships and a number of belted gunboats and torpedo gunboats. The newest vessels were five first-class battleships—the *Borodino*, the *Oriel*, the *Imperator Alexander III.*, the *Slava* and the *Kniaz Suvaroff*. Thus, if Russia's Port Arthur and Vladivostok squadrons were destroyed or captured by the Japanese, Russia still had large naval reserve forces.

Red
Cross,
Etc.

There were pleasant sidelights in the sombre war picture. The Red Cross was well organized for efficient work in both the Russian and the Japanese armies, and large contributions were made to its funds, while many nurses offered their services. A sum equal to two and a half million dollars was subscribed in Moscow for various forms of patriotic purposes in connection with the war. One Russian nobleman offered a sum amounting to more than a million dollars for this purpose if necessary. The Grand Duke Constantine's wife prepared seventeen thousand Easter eggs to provide each Russian sailor in the Far East with a souvenir; each containing a portrait of the Czar, a book, soap and towel, a tobacco pouch, note paper, etc., wrapped in a handkerchief bearing pictures of Peter the Great's boat and of Russian naval victories. The Czarina was providing similar gifts for every Russian soldier in the Far East, the Czar allowing her whatever she might need in the way of money for this purpose.

Russia's
Fear of
China.

Russia continued to be apprehensive as to China's future action in the crisis. Although the Chinese government had declared its neutrality, the Russian government feared that this declaration might not restrain some of the Chinese generals as the strain of the war became more intense. The fact that about thirty thousand Chinese troops had advanced and were maintaining a line along the Manchurian frontier and not far west of the Russian forces at Niu-Chwang had caused Russia to protest at Peking and to demand that these Chinese troops be withdrawn to the south of the Great Wall. The Chinese rejected this demand on the ground that they were there only to aid in maintaining order and to enforce the neutrality which they professed. As Russia practically took possession of a Chinese province by the occupation of Manchuria, and as she would retain possession of that province in case of victory over the Japanese, she might have expected that China naturally would favor Japan and thus felt uneasy at the concentration of Chinese troops on her flank.

Loss of a
Russian
Battle-
ship and
Admiral
Makarov.

On April 13, 1904, the Russians experienced a very great disaster in the loss of the huge battleship *Petropavlovsk*, with Admiral Makarov, the idol of the Russian navy, and his staff and almost six hundred of the crew by the explosion of a mine which sunk the vessel with nearly all

on board in the harbor of Port Arthur after a fierce naval engagement. The Japanese had observed that the Russian vessels followed the same course in entering or leaving the harbor, evidently to avoid their own mines. On the dark and cloudy night of April 12th the Japanese torpedo-boat *Karyu Mara*, under a mine expert, Commander Oda, in spite of the Russian searchlights and patrolling ships, approached close to the harbor and deposited mines along the course used by the Russian ships. At daybreak on the 13th a fight occurred outside the harbor between some Russian and Japanese torpedo-boat destroyers, one of the Russian vessels being sunk. The Russian fleet, consisting of fourteen warships, with Admiral Makaroff on board the *Petro-pavlovsk*, then came out of the inner harbor and attacked the six Japanese cruisers in the offing. The Japanese cruisers retired, pursued by the Russian fleet; but soon six huge Japanese battleships which had been stationed thirty miles out at sea, signalled by wireless telegraphy, approached for the purpose of cutting the Russian fleet out of the harbor. Thereupon the Russian fleet retired, and while the *Petro-pavlovsk* was moving slowly and was waiting for the weaker Russian ships to enter the harbor ahead of her she met her doom. She was near enough to the shore for watchers from the forts there to see her plainly. There was a dull boom, and the great battleship appeared to rise out of the water, followed by two other explosions, and in a moment the huge vessel turned turtle and sank in the water. The Russian battleship *Pobieda* also struck a mine, but was damaged only slightly. The Grand Duke Cyril, one of the Czar's cousins and heirs, had a narrow escape from death, being injured by the explosion and thrown into the water; but, being an athlete and of powerful build, he kept himself afloat until he was rescued by one of the smaller craft. Among those who perished in the water with the vessel's explosion was the famous Russian artist and painter of war scenes—Vassili Verest-chagin.

The Viceroy Alexieff at once proceeded to Port Arthur and took temporary command of the Russian fleet there. Vice-Admiral Skrydloff was summoned to St. Petersburg from the command of the Russian Black Sea fleet to take command of the Russian fleet at Port Arthur. The loss of one of the largest Russian battleships left the Russian navy in Far Eastern waters very much more weakened, with only two battleships in effective condition, thus obliging the Russians to act wholly on the defensive at sea and leaving the Japanese more than ever in control of the naval situation.

Not discouraged by their failure in their first effort in that direction, the Japanese again attempted to bottle up the Russian fleet at Port Arthur. Early on the morning of March 27, 1904, this second

Effect
of the
Disaster.

Second
Japanese
Attempt
to Bottle
up Port
Arthur.

attempt was made, when four large merchant vessels, fitted with explosives for sinking, convoyed by six torpedo-boats, steered for the harbor entrance; the ships being armed with small rapid-fire guns to protect themselves against Russian torpedo-boats. They were revealed by the Russian searchlights and were subjected to a severe fire from the forts and the Russian guard-boats. A Russian torpedo-boat rammed the foremost Japanese vessel, driving it from its course; and eventually all the Japanese merchant ships sank too far from the channel to effect their purpose. The gallant Japanese crews engaged in this desperate venture escaped in small boats to their own torpedo craft, though there were many lives lost among them. A lively conflict with the Russian torpedo-boats followed. The Japanese squadron afterward appeared off the harbor, but retired upon learning of the failure to bottle up the Russian fleet.

The
Japanese
Hero,
Com-
mander
Takaso
Hirose.

The Japanese naval hero of the war thus far was Commander Takaso Hirose, who was killed in the second Japanese attempt to bottle up the harbor of Port Arthur. The Japanese highly appreciated the action of the Russian authorities at Port Arthur in honoring the remains of this heroic Japanese commander with a military funeral after they had recovered his remains. The Japanese found a fragment of his body and brought it to Tokio, where it was honored with a public funeral in accordance with the Shinto ceremonial on April 13, 1904. Already the Japanese were looking forward toward obtaining the remains interred at Port Arthur after the end of the war and bringing them back to Japan.

Russian
Seizure
of Niu-
Chwang.

The Russian Viceroy Alexieff issued an order on March 28, 1904, establishing martial law at Niu-Chwang, one of the Manchurian ports which had been regarded as neutral, but whose position was so strategically important to the Russians that they had treated it as belonging to them, as it defended the head of the Liao-tung gulf and was an obstruction to any invasion from Chinese territory, also being one of the chief fortified places of the Russians, on the Pacific coast in Eastern Asia.

The
Mandjur
Incident.

At the outbreak of the war the Russian gunboat *Mandjur* was some miles up the river Yang-tse-Kiang above Shanghai, China. The Japanese sent a cruiser to Wu-Sung, at the mouth of the river, and demanded that China should force the *Mandjur* to leave neutral territory. The Chinese then ordered the gunboat to leave, but the commander paid no attention to the order. The Japanese then renewed their demand; and after much diplomacy they agreed that if the armament and certain essential parts of the *Mandjur's* machinery were removed, thus rendering the gunboat temporarily useless, they would be satisfied and would withdraw their cruiser. The Russians finally agreed to this, but

they did not carry out their agreement until March 30, 1904. The *Mandjur* was to remain disabled until the close of the war.

By the close of March, 1904, the land operations had assumed more activity, and after ample preparation the Japanese army in Korea advanced northward from Ping Yang to oppose the scattered detachments of the Russian forces in the North of Korea. On March 28th the advance guard of the Japanese encountered the Russians at Chong-ju, where a brief engagement ensued, which ended in the retreat of the Russians. The Japanese then continued their advance unopposed, and on April 3d they occupied the important town of Wi-ju, which the Russians had evacuated on their approach. The Russians then retreated across the Yalu river, leaving the whole of Korea in possession of the Japanese. The Yalu for the time separated the two armies, and several small skirmishes occurred along that river, the Russians occupying many points of vantage. The Japanese army along the Yalu then numbered about forty-five thousand men, and two other Japanese armies of equal size were ready to move. The Russian troops in the Far East now numbered three hundred thousand.

**Russians
Driven
out of
Korea.**

In April, 1904, the land operations assumed great importance. The first Japanese army, under General Kuroki, on the south bank of the Yalu river, was engaged in various movements during the last week of April with the view of crossing the river, and these operations extended seventy-five miles up the stream. There was serious fighting during the last three days of April, and by the night of the last of that month the Japanese had succeeded in crossing the Yalu, the main passage being made on a pontoon bridge near Wi-ju. On May 1st the Japanese made a direct attack on the Russian lines at Kin-lin-chang. The Russians had the advantage of position, but the Japanese were superior in numbers. After the most desperate fighting at close range the Russians were defeated. An-tung was evacuated by the Russians and occupied by the Japanese. The victorious Japanese captured twenty-eight Russian cannon and a large quantity of arms and ammunition. The Russian loss in killed and wounded was over three thousand, while the Japanese loss was less.

**Japanese
Passage
of the
Yalu
River.**

**Battle of
Kin-lin-
chang.**

As the Russian General Zasselitch, in opposing the advance of the Japanese, did not act in accordance with the orders of his superior, General Kuropatkin, he was relieved of his command in the Far East and assigned to duty in Russia. The first Japanese army, under General Kuroki, now numbered one hundred thousand men and was in exceedingly high spirits. After their defeat at Kin-lin-chang the Russians retreated to Feng-Wang-Cheng, the "gate of Korea," about forty-five miles from the Yalu river, in a strong position, where they received heavy reinforcements from Liao-Yang, on the line of the rail-

**Removal
of
General
Zassel-
itch.**

Russian Retreat and Japanese Advance. road, where they expected to resist successfully any attack by the Japanese. But the Japanese pressed forward and occupied Feng-Wang-Cheng on May 6th, the Russians falling back toward Liao-Yang, after exploding their magazine, but leaving large quantities of hospital stores and equipment, and after several spirited engagements. Many Russians were taken prisoners. Thus General Kuroki won great successes in the first week of May, 1904.

Siege and Investment of Port Arthur. While the first Japanese army, under General Kuroki, was so successful in the region of the Yalu, the second Japanese army, under General Oku, landed on the Liao-tung peninsula on May 5 and 6, 1904, landings being made on the east coast of the peninsula at Pitsewu and on the west coast at Port Adams and Kinchou. This Japanese army encountered only small Russian forces and soon reached the lines of the Chinese Eastern Railroad, thus completely cutting off communication between Port Arthur and the North. The Russian Viceroy Alexieff and his staff had left Port Arthur only a day before the way of escape was closed. The Russians succeeded in running a train with war supplies into Port Arthur and also resumed telegraphic communication. This fact caused some elation at St. Petersburg; but this jubilation was of short duration, as the Japanese reoccupied the line of the railroad on May 11th. Fifty miles of the railroad now were destroyed, the Russians participating in this work to prevent the use of the road by the Japanese.

Another Japanese Invasion. A third Japanese army, under General Nodzu, landed at Takushan, to the north of the Liao-tung peninsula and west of the Yalu river, in a position to cooperate with either of the other two Japanese armies, but being more likely to support the first army, under General Kuroki, in the movement against Liao-Yang. **Port Arthur and Liao-Yang.** Port Arthur and Liao-Yang apparently were the two objective points of the Japanese. Port Arthur, with a crippled Russian fleet in a harbor partly blockaded, was isolated wholly from the outside world and thus was cut off from all aid from land or sea, so that the beleaguered port was obliged to rely upon its own resources. The Russian garrison inside this besieged stronghold, this "Gibraltar of the East," numbered about twenty thousand men; while the crews of the Russian warships in the harbor numbered about ten thousand men. Heavy cannon from the disabled Russian ships were mounted on the shore. The food supplies of the besieged city were sufficient to last many months, and Chinese junks still were able to smuggle in additional supplies. The outer defenses of Port Arthur were at Kinchou, about twenty-five miles north, where the isthmus is less than four miles wide and where it was fortified strongly. Liao-Yang, where General Kuropatkin was preparing to make a stand against the Japanese, was a walled town about forty

miles south of Moukden, the seat of the Russian headquarters. The Japanese were advancing from Feng-Wang-Cheng.

On May 12, 1904, the Russian Viceroy Alexieff reported to the Czar Nicholas II. that the Russians had blown up the docks and piers at Dalny, to render the Japanese landing at that point more difficult. This destruction of valuable Russian property by the Russians themselves showed the desperate condition of the Russians at that point. Dalny and Port Arthur had been obtained by Russia by lease from China in 1898, and by 1902 Russia had expended a sum equal to more than six million dollars on the harbor system of Dalny, where five large piers had been constructed, each being supplied with numerous railway tracks and immense warehouses and elevators, gas, electric lights and water works, while a large breakwater was being constructed; the entire cost of completing the works being estimated at almost twenty million dollars. Russia intended to make Dalny the chief commercial emporium of her dominions in the Far East. The city was situated on Ta-lien-wan Bay, one of the finest deep-water harbors on the Pacific coast of Asia.

Destruction of Dalny.

On May 3, 1904, the Japanese made a third determined attempt to bottle up Port Arthur harbor. In the midst of a dense fog, eight Japanese fireships, each armed with rapid-fire cannon and each laden with stone and combustibles, convoyed by five torpedo-boats, undertook this enterprise. Four of the fireships were blown up by submarine mines and four by shells from the Russian shore batteries or by torpedoes from Russian torpedo-boats. On account of the high winds and waves and the vigorous Russian defense, the Japanese torpedo-boats could not save even one man from the crews of four of the fireships, and only about half of the entire number of the crews were saved. The crews numbered one hundred and fifty-nine men, of whom forty-four returned safely, twenty-four being wounded and fifteen being killed. Among the killed was Commander Takayangi, of the steamer *Yeddo Maru*. All the families of the killed and missing were pensioned. The total tonnage of the eight blocking fireships was seventeen thousand three hundred and thirteen tons.

Third Japanese Attempt to Bottle up Port Arthur.

The first really-serious Japanese disaster of the war at sea occurred on May 5, 1904, when two Japanese warships were lost—the battleship *Hatsuse* and the cruiser *Yoshimo*. The *Hatsuse*, Admiral Mashuri's flagship, one of the most formidable battleships of the Japanese navy, was cruising off Port Arthur and was about ten miles south-east of the port when she struck a mine and was damaged seriously. She signaled for help, when almost instantly she struck another mine, thus causing her to sink in half an hour. Admiral Mashuri and three hundred of the crew were saved by torpedo-boats and other vessels which

Loss of Two Japanese Warships.

came to their rescue. The loss of this great battleship was a serious matter for the Japanese, as it was one of the six battleships constructed on modern plans within eight years, which made up a homogeneous and formidable fleet, and its loss thus deprived the Japanese of a sixth part of their effective battleship force. On the same day—May 5, 1904—the Japanese cruisers *Kesaga* and *Yoshimo* collided in a fog off Port Arthur and the *Yoshimo* sank, only ninety of her crew being saved.

Russian
Evacua-
tion and
Reoccu-
pation of
Niu-
Chwang.

On May 8, 1904, close upon the news of the Russian evacuation of Feng-Wang-Cheng came the tidings of the Russian evacuation of Niu-Chwang, the most important treaty port at the head of the Liao-tung gulf, which the Russians had occupied as an essential strategical move, against the protest of the great commercial nations of the world. This port had been fortified very strongly and placed under martial law, and it was said to be garrisoned by a formidable military force. The hasty movement and dismantling of forts evidently was caused by the reports of the Japanese advance toward Hai-cheng, on the main line of the railroad to the east of Niu-Chwang, as the landing of a Japanese army on the Liao-tung peninsula rendered the place untenable or at least subjected its garrison to the danger of being cut off from the rest of the Russian forces in the Far East. To protect the city against possible pillage by Chinese bandits, the Russians retained a force of about a thousand men to protect the commercial interests, but prepared to leave upon a moment's notice. A Russian gunboat which had been blockaded in the harbor since the outbreak of the war was ready to be burned. The evacuation of Niu-Chwang was completed on May 16th, in consequence of the landing of Japanese troops at Kai-chou, twenty-three miles south of Yinkow, the port of Niu-Chwang, and their advance toward Tashi-Chao, a few miles from Niu-Chwang and at the junction of the railroads from Tien-tsin and Port Arthur. After thus advancing and destroying the railroad the Japanese returned to Kai-chou and embarked. Thereupon the Russians reoccupied Niu-Chwang, and Russian officials who had bidden their friends affectionate farewells only a few hours before returned and began rebuilding the forts, while the Russian sailors who had prepared to burn the gunboat *Sivouch* were refitting that vessel. British and American gunboats were ready to proceed to Niu-Chwang to protect commercial interests.

Russian
Vladi-
vostok
Squad-
ron.

The Russian squadron at Vladivostok, consisting of three armored cruisers and one protected cruiser, made a few sorties from that port late in April, 1904, doing slight damage in the Sea of Japan, sinking two Japanese trading vessels and overhauling a Japanese transport, the *Kinshiu-Maru*, with coal, war munitions and a detachment of one hundred and thirty Japanese troops on board, April 27th. The crew and

the six officers of the Japanese military detachment surrendered; but the Japanese soldiers locked themselves in a cabin and refused to surrender, and when the Russians were ordered to leave the vessel the Japanese soldiers came out and began to fire at them. The boat was sunk by a mechanical mine, the Japanese continuing to shout defiance and to fire their small arms as they were being swallowed up by the waves. Admiral Skrydloff, who had been assigned to the command of the Russian fleet at Port Arthur, was unable to reach that port when he arrived in the Far East, as the place had been invested completely by the Japanese. Consequently he was obliged to go to Vladivostok, where he arrived on May 22d. The small Russian squadron there was weakened by the disabling of the protected cruiser *Bogatyr*, which struck upon the rocks there.

About the middle of May, 1904, the Japanese defeated the Russians after a three days' battle in the Liao-tung peninsula, commencing with the battle of Vafangow on May 13th and ending with the battle of Telissu on May 15th. The sites of these battlefields were about a hundred miles south of Liao-Yang, in the vicinity of which were the main Russian and Japanese armies under the respective commands of Generals Kuropatkin and Kuroki. Vafangow was about fifty-five miles north of Port Arthur, and Telissu was about twenty-five miles still farther north. The Russian force in these battles was commanded by General Stakelberg and numbered about thirty-five thousand men; while the Japanese army was twice as large, numbering seventy thousand men. The fighting was most desperate and obstinate on both sides, the victorious Japanese and the defeated Russians both exhibiting the most daring valor and the most resolute determination. The Russians lost two thousand killed and ten thousand wounded and taken prisoners. The Japanese loss was only one thousand men in killed, wounded and prisoners. The fighting ended with a flank movement on the part of the Japanese which threatened the capture of the entire Russian force, and General Kuropatkin went south to the relief of General Stakelberg's imperiled army.

**Battles of
Vafangow
and
Telissu.**

The Russian Vladivostok squadron sailed southward in May, 1904, going as far as the Straits of Korea and the coast of Japan. Vice-Admiral Skrydloff left Vladivostok with three cruisers and several torpedo-boats, eluding the vigilance of the Japanese vessels which were watching that port. These Russian vessels were reported off the Islands of Oki, in the Sea of Japan, on June 14th, when they came in contact with Japanese transports which were conveying troops and supplies from the Japanese ports to the Japanese armies in Korea and Manchuria. These Japanese transports escaped from the Russian squadron, which destroyed two Japanese transports off the island of

**Activity
of the
Russian
Vladivostok
Squadron.**

Shiro, one of the Oki group, on the following day, June 15th; one thousand of the fourteen hundred Japanese soldiers on board the transports being lost, along with horses and large quantities of supplies. Three other Japanese transports in the vicinity escaped. The Japanese complained that one of their transports was raked by heavy fire and sunk without permitting noncombatants to leave the ships. Japanese cruisers sought to come in contact with the Russian warships, but the Russian vessels escaped northward and at last accounts were reported near the Tsugari Strait, the Japanese warships 'being between the Russian vessels and this base. The Russian cruiser *Novik* and ten Russian torpedo-boat destroyers came out of Port Arthur harbor on June 14th, driving back a Japanese flotilla of torpedo-boats and torpedo-boat destroyers which were engaged in a bombardment and reconnaissance a few miles from the harbor. Thus seeing that Port Arthur harbor was not blocked so as to prevent the entrance and departure of Russian vessels, the Japanese laid more mines across the harbor entrance.

**Battle of
Kinchou
and
Capture
of Dalny.**

The Japanese struck a hard blow against Port Arthur by a great victory which they won over the Russians in the battle of Kinchou, in the narrowest part of the Liao-tung peninsula, on June 25 and 26, 1904, driving them from their strong defenses on Nan-Shan Hill, thus forcing them out of their first barrier in the defense of Port Arthur. This place was one of great natural strength, and its natural strategical advantages had been augmented by strong intrenchments, heavy cannon, mines, with miles of tangled barbed wire; but, in spite of all these obstacles, the Japanese were victorious, after sixteen hours' fighting on June 26th. The defeated Russians had fought bravely. The Japanese also fought with the most reckless heroism and with the utmost desperation in their assaults. The losses were very great on both sides. This Japanese victory was followed by the evacuation of Dalny by the Russians, who fled from that port hastily after they had destroyed many of the docks and warehouses. The fall of Dalny was another blow at Port Arthur, which thus was invested more securely and more closely from the land side.

**Russian
Port
Arthur
Fleet.**

The Russian Port Arthur fleet made a sortie from the harbor on June 23, 1904, but was attacked by the Japanese fleet and driven back into the harbor. The Russian fleet afterward ran the blockade and ventured out of the harbor and returned. Four Russian battle-ships, five cruisers and torpedo-boats made voyages to the open sea and returned. It was reported that one torpedo-boat made three trips to Yinkow. A number of Chinese junks, carrying provisions, eluded the Japanese blockading fleet, one junk landing five thousand sacks of flour. It was reported also that a cargo of coal had been landed.



From Stereograph, copyright 1905 by Underwood & Underwood
JAPANESE WAR BALLOON

THE
LIBRARY
OF THE
BIBLIOTHECA
MUSEI
HISTORICO-NATURALIS
ROMAE

On June 16, 1904, was fought the second battle of Vafangow, in which the Japanese won a signal victory. This was the bloodiest battle of the war thus far. It was brought about by the Russian efforts to force the line from Pitsewu to Plan-tien, forming the northern gate of the Liao-tung peninsula. The Russian fighting line consisted of twenty-five battalions of infantry and seventeen squadrons of cavalry, with ninety-eight cannon. These were reinforced later. The Russians made a general advance, scaling the precipitous scarps and pushing back the Japanese to Tafangshin; but the arrival of Japanese reinforcements and the timely movements of the Japanese cavalry threatened the Russian left and rear, thus giving the Japanese the advantage, so that the entire Japanese line gained ground simultaneously, and by three o'clock in the afternoon the Russians commenced a retreat which the Japanese vigorous fire converted into a total rout, although the nature of the ground was an obstacle to pursuit.

**Second
Battle of
Vafan-
gow.**

In an action on June 27, 1904, the Japanese routed ten thousand Russians, after stubborn fighting at Fen-Shui Pass, twenty-five miles from Hai-tcheng. The Russian position was a very strong one and commanded the Shimu-tcheng road. In this conflict the Russian losses again were heavier than those of the Japanese. The Russians burned their warehouses at Shan-Tasu before retreating. Two days afterward the Japanese forced the passage of the Mo-Tien Pass, fifty miles south-east of Liao-Yang, their object being to cut the Russian communication northward of Liao-Yang, while General Kuropatkin was operating in the vicinity of Hai-tcheng at the head of practically the entire Russian forces at his command.

**Fighting
for the
Mountain
Passes.**

On June 26 and 27, 1904, a great battle was fought near Port Arthur on land. The Japanese were victorious, and on the morning of the 28th they occupied certain heights within ten miles of Port Arthur. The two Japanese divisions which attacked Port Arthur consisted of forty thousand men and an independent artillery corps. As a matter of precaution the Japanese landed a division of ten thousand men on one of the Elliot group of islands; and on June 28th they landed the Sixth Division, composed of twenty thousand men, at Kerr Bay. The Elliot Islands are about ten miles south-east of Pitsewu and about sixty-five miles north-east of Port Arthur, while Kerr Bay is about thirty-six miles from Port Arthur and six miles from Kinchou. On July 9, 1904, the Russians evacuated Kai-chow, after a conflict of two days. The Japanese advanced steadily and occupied the town.

**Battle
near Port
Arthur.**

**Russian
Evacua-
tion of
Kai-
chow.**

In the meantime the Russian Vladivostok squadron under Admiral Skrydloff had been raiding the Sea of Japan, thus forcing all the Japanese navy transports to be accompanied by cruisers. Meanwhile two Russian warships, the *Smolensk* and the *St. Petersburg*, were hold-

**Russian
Vladi-
vostok
Squad-
ron.**

Russian
Warships
on the
Red Sea.

ing up British and German ships in the Red Sea, searching them for contraband of war; and, as a result, grave international complications were feared. The *Smolensk* and the *St. Petersburg* were from the Russian Black Sea fleet and passed through the Dardanelles as merchant ships, afterward assuming their true character. The Treaty of Berlin, of 1878, forbids the passage of war vessels through the Dardanelles. It was reported that these Russian vessels seized a British merchant ship and placed a prize crew on board. Skillful diplomacy finally warded off the threatened international complications.

Dispersal
of the
Russian
Port
Arthur
Fleet.

On August 10, 1904, the Russian Port Arthur fleet made a desperate effort to break through the cordon of Japanese warships at the harbor entrance; six huge battleships, four cruisers, eight torpedo-boats comprising the Russian squadron which thus came out of the harbor; but they were encountered by forty-seven Japanese warships, consisting of battleships, cruisers and torpedo-boats, and after a fierce engagement the Russian squadron was defeated most disastrously and dispersed. The Russian torpedo-boat destroyer *Ryeshitelni* sought refuge in the Chinese port of Chefoo, where she was disarmed by the Chinese authorities, but was seized afterward as a prize by the Japanese torpedo-boat destroyers which had pursued her to Chefoo. Russia claimed that China should have prevented the Japanese seizure of the vessel, but the Japanese claimed that she was hiding in a neutral port as a fully-armed vessel. Five Russian warships—the battleship *Czarewitch*, the cruiser *Novik* and three torpedo-boat destroyers—fled to the German port of Kaio-Chau, in China. The *Czarewitch* lost over two hundred in killed and wounded; Admiral Wittsoeft, the commander of the fleet, being among the killed. This large battleship was damaged so seriously that she was unseaworthy, and she was disarmed by the German authorities at Kiao-Chau, as were the three Russian torpedo-boat destroyers that sought refuge in that port. The *Novik* left before the other Russian vessels arrived, after a very short stay, when she was supposed to have taken a supply of coal and was reported to have sailed to Vladivostok. Of the other Russian vessels in this hapless fight the cruiser *Askold* and another cruiser reached Shanghai, China, and the cruiser *Pallada* was lost, while the remaining five battleships and the cruiser *Diana* returned to Port Arthur, the battleship *Retzivan* being damaged very seriously. On August 14th the Japanese squadron of four cruisers under Admiral Kamimura, sailing from the Korean coast, sighted the three Russian cruisers *Rossia*, *Gromoboi* and *Rurik*, of the Russian Vladivostok fleet; and a running sea fight ensued, which ended in the sinking of the *Rurik* and the flight of the other two Russian cruisers to Vladivostok in a very much damaged condition. Six hundred of the *Rurik's* crew were rescued from watery graves by the crews of the Japanese vessels.

On July 20, 1904, the Russian Vladivostok squadron under Admiral Skrydloff sailed through the Tsugara Strait, between the largest two of the Japanese Islands, along the eastern coast of Japan and below Yokohama, and into the chief rout of Japanese commerce from the east, thus making a bold dash of a thousand miles from the fleet's base at Vladivostok and capturing many Japanese merchant vessels, and returning to Vladivostok nine days later. The most notable incident connected with this Russian sea raid was the sinking of the *Knight Commander*, a ship under the British flag, with a cargo from the American Pacific ports. The owners of the ship and the cargo protested against the sinking of the vessel; but the prize court at Vladivostok justified the act on the ground that the cargo consisted mainly of railway material destined to Chemulpo, Korea, and presumably for use on the military railway in course of construction from Seoul to the Yalu river. The *Arabia*, another Pacific ship, was seized by the Russians and taken to Vladivostok; but, after that part of the cargo, chiefly flour, intended for Japanese ports was removed, the vessel was permitted to proceed on its way to China. Both Great Britain and the United States protested to the Russian government against these seizures.

Raid
of the
Russian
Vladivostok
Squadron.

Sinking
of the
Knight
Commander.

Seizure
of the
Arabia.

In the meantime the Japanese were drawing their lines very close to Port Arthur, the intervening distance being covered with mines and obstructions and being defended by the strongest forts of the harbor. Great battles occurred on July 27, 28 and 30, 1904, by which the Japanese advanced their lines still closer to the great fortress, though they lost heavily in killed and wounded. Later assaults by the Japanese advanced their lines still closer, to within two miles of the inner harbor. One hundred thousand Japanese troops under General Nogi by this time invested the fortress, while the Russian garrison defending the fortress numbered less than fifteen thousand. The Japanese called upon General Stoessel, the Russian commandant, to surrender the fortress with the Russian ships in the harbor, offering to allow him and his garrison to join the main Russian army under General Kuropatkin. The Russian commandant indignantly rejected the demand, as he also did an offer to allow the noncombatants to come out of the beleaguered city.

Fighting
at Port
Arthur.

In the meantime the main Russian army of almost two hundred thousand men under General Kuropatkin was forced back gradually to Liao-Yang by the three Japanese armies operating from the east, west and south and together numbering almost two hundred and fifty thousand men, all under the chief command of Field-Marshal Oyama, and Generals Kuroki, Nodzu and Oku as the respective commanders of the three Japanese armies. The Russians had fortified Liao-Yang very strongly. The Japanese sought to get in General Kuropatkin's rear

General
Kuropatkin's
Retreat
to Liao-Yang.

and between his army and Moukden, the capital of Manchuria. The Japanese occupied Hai-tcheng on August 5, 1904, and afterward took possession of Simou-tcheng, the site of one of the many battles which were fought between the two armies in the race for Liao-Yang. The Russian line was sixty miles in extent. General Kuropatkin saved his army by his northward retreat, but he lost prestige thereby. The Japanese army had more than three hundred heavy pieces of artillery. Lieutenant-General Count Keeler, a Russian division commander, was killed in battle on August 2, 1904, being the first Russian general officer to lose his life in this war.

Battle of
Liao-
Yang.

Finally, during the last week of August and the first week of September, 1904, the great and long-expected battle of Liao-Yang was fought—one of the greatest battles of the world's history. Thus was added another to the list of the world's great battles of modern times, ranking with the great modern European battles of Leipsic, Solferino, Sadowa, Sedan and Gravelotte as to the numbers engaged. At Leipsic Napoleon had one hundred and fifty thousand and the allies two hundred and fifty thousand. At Solferino the Franco-Italian army and the Austrian army each had about two hundred thousand. At Sadowa the Austrians and the Prussians each also had about two hundred thousand. At Sedan the French had about one hundred and forty thousand and the Germans about two hundred and fifty thousand. At Gravelotte the French had almost two hundred thousand and the Germans over that number. As to duration Liao-Yang exceeded any battle of history, lasting about ten days. We have seen that after their defeat at Hai-tcheng, August 2, 1904, the Russian army under General Kuropatkin retreated northward to the fortifications of Liao-Yang, where they resolved to make a stand against the three Japanese armies under Generals Kuroki, Nodzu and Oku, all three under the supreme command of Field-Marshal Oyama. After a few weeks' rest during the rainy season the Japanese resumed operations on August 23, 1904, and the next day they began a general advance against the Russian lines covering all points, General Kuroki advancing from the east, General Nodzu from the south-east and General Oku from the south. There was continuous fighting on August 25th and 26th. General Kuroki, whose first operations were directed at Liao-Dian-Shan, about twenty miles south-east of Liao-Yang, flanked the Russians and drove them from Anping with heavy loss. General Oku compelled the Russians to evacuate An-Shan-Shan, their strongest position on the south. Though General Nodzu had not succeeded in maintaining his position, the result of the two days' fighting was to compel the Russians to fall back behind the main defenses of Liao-Yang. As soon as possible the Japanese followed up their successes; and on August 30th, from dawn till nightfall, they bom-

barded and cannonaded the Russian position, the Russians replying with their artillery, so that the thunders of thirteen hundred cannon on both sides shook the earth with their reverberations. There also was the fiercest hand-to-hand fighting with small arms, the Russians repelling all assaults and both sides suffering heavy losses. In the midst of the engagement General Kuroki, by a skillful flank movement, threw his army across the Taitse river at Sakankankwantun, about twenty miles east of Liao-Yang, thus forcing General Kuropatkin to take a portion of his army across the Taitse river to the north side of that stream to cut off General Kuroki from the other Japanese forces, but the Russian commander's plans failed. After fierce fighting near the Yentai mines on September 1st and 2d the Japanese were victorious over the Russians under General Orloff, who was wounded, some of the Russian regiments losing over half of their men. These Japanese successes and the menace to his communications obliged General Kuropatkin's army to evacuate Liao-Yang, which was occupied by the Japanese on the evening of September 4th. Twenty-five thousand Russians under General Stakelberg still were on the south bank of the Taitse river and to the east of Liao-Yang, in danger of being cut off from the Russian main army; but General Stakelberg extricated his force from its dangerous situation and held back General Kuroki in a severe action at Yentai. On the east side of the railroad the Japanese frequently assailed the Russian rear-guard, threatening their communications with Moukden; but by September 7th General Kuropatkin's whole army had arrived safely at Moukden, without losing any cannon or supplies. Thus the great battle of Liao-Yang ended in a Japanese victory. The losses on both sides from August 26th to September 7th were estimated as high as sixty thousand. The Japanese officially reported their own losses as seventeen thousand five hundred and thirty-nine, and the Russian official figures gave Kuropatkin's losses as twenty-two thousand and fifty-six men, thirteen cannon and thirty million dollars' worth of material, including fortifications. After so much continuous fighting, both armies were ready for a short rest.

For five days, August 27-31, 1904, the Japanese assailed Port Arthur, losing eight thousand men in these assaults, while the Russians lost three thousand. Some forts were taken by the Japanese and retaken by the Russians. The Japanese intrenched at points commanding the city and tunneled under the fortifications. The Japanese ships gradually approached nearer to the city and dropped shells into it. The Russian garrison still numbered about twelve thousand men. General Stoessel rejected all Japanese demands for the surrender of the fortress and threatened to shoot any other envoys bringing such demands. Both sides were very determined at Port Arthur.

Fighting
at Port
Arthur.

**Another
Russian
Army for
Man-
churia.**

In consequence of the great Russian reverse at Liao-Yang, an imperial ukase was issued on September 25, 1904, for the dispatch of another Russian army under General Gripenberg to Manchuria. In this ukase the Czar Nicholas II. said: "The intense energy with which Japan is conducting the war, and the stubbornness and high warlike qualities displayed by the Japanese, impel me considerably to strengthen the forces at the front in order to attain decisive success in the shortest possible time." The Czar's ukase notified the world that Russia was resolved to continue the war more vigorously than ever and that she would refuse all foreign mediation or intervention. Russian troops were being transported to Manchuria as rapidly as the railroads could carry them, which was at the rate of only twenty-five thousand per month.

**Japanese
Move-
ments.**

After their great victory at Liao-Yang the Japanese spent three days in burning and burying their dead, after which they resumed operations, leaving a strong garrison in the fortifications of Liao-Yang and throwing up intrenchments at the Yentai mines, while also taking a strong position at Bentsiputze, twenty miles south-east of Moukden. During the last half of September the Japanese were executing a general encircling movement, extending their western flank across to the west bank of the Hun river. On the last day of that month they made a simultaneous movement towards Moukden and Sinmintu. In the meantime there had been many slight encounters, and the Cossacks had kept in touch with the Japanese outposts and had interfered with the Japanese plans.

**Russian
Advance.**

On Sunday, October 2, 1904, General Kuropatkin announced an advance of his army, reading an address to this effect personally from the steps of his train at Moukden, after a solemn religious service, and distributing printed copies of this address to his troops, thus arousing excitement and enthusiasm among them. General Kuropatkin had received reinforcements, thus making his army numerically stronger than the Japanese forces; the Russian troops about Moukden now numbering two hundred and seventy thousand men and the Japanese troops about two hundred and sixty thousand, of whom only one hundred and fifty thousand were north of the Taitse river, the remainder being at or near Liao-Yang.

**Battle of
Sahke.**

On October 4, 1904, General Kuropatkin began his advance southward, in two great armies, one on each side of the railroad, which was available for supplies. As the Russians approached the Japanese outposts the latter retired. The Russians occupied Sahke, on the railroad, ten miles south of Moukden, on October 6th; while the Japanese lines extended fifty-two miles, from Bentsiputze on the east, through Yentai and across the railway, to the banks of the Hun river on the west.

The Japanese were fortified at Bentsiputze, but the Russians captured an important unfortified position there, and the Japanese were obliged to fall back. The Japanese continued their falling-back policy, concentrating their lines and bringing forward a large force from Liao-Yang. The great battle of Sahke really commenced on October 10th, when the Japanese halted the retreating movement and the two armies encountered each other north of the Yentai railroad station and also at Penschu. There was severe fighting at different points on the long lines, without any decisive results; but on October 12th the Japanese drove the Russians back. Severe conflicts occurred on October 12th and 14th, and the fighting lasted twelve days, October 9-21, 1904, ending in another Japanese victory. The Russian losses during this long-continued battle were stated officially as forty-five thousand eight hundred in killed, wounded and missing; while the Japanese claimed to have found thirteen thousand three hundred and thirty-three dead Russians in various portions of the field. The Japanese took seven hundred and nine prisoners and a large quantity of arms and munitions of war as their trophies of victory.

For five days, September 19-23, 1904, there was desperate fighting at Port Arthur, along the whole line, during which time various positions were taken and retaken. After repeatedly attacking Fort High Mountain, a very important Russian position, day and night, the Japanese finally occupied it on the night of September 22d; but the Russians reoccupied it the next day, after General Stoessel had called for volunteers to retake it, there being ample responses to his call. Russian officers and private soldiers carried hand grenades, and one lieutenant and his detachment threw such missiles into the Japanese intrenchments, causing terrible slaughter and creating a panic among the Japanese. The total Japanese losses were very heavy during this fighting. The Japanese dug a tunnel under the Russian intrenchments. On October 22, 1904, the Japanese made a general assault on Port Arthur, which continued until the 30th, when a general battle followed, the Japanese assailing the eastern side and gaining the moats of the principal forts which had been attacked, but finally they were driven back from the hills by the Russians. Nevertheless, the Japanese were drawing nearer to the center of the Russian position and were drawing nearer still by means of mines. The Japanese incessantly bombarded the fortress, and their shells destroyed a ship in the harbor and fired an arsenal. The inner defenses were still intact and out of the reach of the most persistent assaults. Occasional refugees stated that food was scarce and disease rampant in the beleaguered city. General Stoessel refused all demands for surrender and said that he could maintain his position until relief could come to him from the Russian Baltic fleet.

Assaults
on Port
Arthur.

As the Japanese blockade was very rigid Russian ships seldom succeeded in running it.

Russia's
Baltic
Fleet.

North
Sea
Incident.

The Russian Baltic fleet under Admiral Rojestvensky finally started on its long journey to the Far East, sailing from Libau on October 16, 1904. This fleet consisted of seven battleships, six large cruisers, eight torpedo-boat destroyers and several transports, the whole fleet numbering more than thirty ships. While in the North Sea this Russian fleet attacked a number of British fishing boats, under the pretense that they were supposed to be Japanese torpedo-boats—an incident which threatened complications between Russia and Great Britain, as the latter demanded reparation for the outrage. After much diplomacy Russia made a due apology to Great Britain, and the question of damages was submitted to the arbitration of an international commission, in accordance with the provisions of The Hague Peace Conference. The Russian Baltic fleet left Vigo, Spain, on November 1, 1904, on its journey to the Orient, part of the fleet going by way of the Suez Canal and the remainder around the Cape of Good Hope. On November 16th the second division of this fleet, consisting of four cruisers, two auxiliary cruisers and five torpedo-boat destroyers, left Libau, on its way to the Far East. These Russian ships stopped only at French ports to coal.

Costly
Russian
Dispatch.

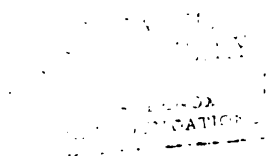
The Russian torpedo-boat destroyer *Ratstoropny* entered the Chinese port of Chefoo on November 16, 1904. As a message from General Stoessel at Port Arthur was sent to the Chinese Emperor, it was believed that the message was brought by the vessel and was considered sufficiently important to risk the safety of the vessel in the effort to get it into the Chinese Emperor's possession. To prevent the capture of the vessel by the Japanese it was blown up.

Operations
about
Moukden.

After the great battle of Sahke, October 9–21, 1904, both armies strengthened their positions and reinforced their ranks, the Japanese having over sixty thousand reinforcements. The Japanese threw up some intrenchments, in some cases preparing two lines of these. In some parts of their respective lines the two armies were so near each other that both occupied the same villages and obtained water from the same springs. There were some heavy artillery duels and some spirited actions among advanced outposts, but there was no regular battle for some weeks, the weather being unfavorable for active military operations, both sides closely watching each other. Lone Tree Hill, often occupied by both armies, finally remained with the Russians. On November 10th the Japanese assumed the offensive on the left bank of the Hun river, but were driven back to their original lines. The next day they made a vigorous artillery assault, but made no advance. The Russian line extended eighty miles. On October 25th an imperial ukase



From Stereograph, copyright 1905 by Underwood & Underwood, New York
JAPANESE INFANTRY READY TO MOVE INTO THE FIRING LINE



was issued at St. Petersburg making General Kuropatkin commander-in-chief of all the Russian armies in the Far East. Alexieff remained Viceroy, but was ordered to St. Petersburg immediately. In the last week of November Field-Marshal Oyama moved on the Russian center in an effort to move around the left flank of Kuropatkin's army. For a week there was much desultory fighting without any result. On December 12th the Japanese made some attacks, but the two armies were recuperating for the most part and preparing for winter quarters, the weather conditions being unfavorable for military operations. A high Russian officer expressed the following opinion concerning the Japanese:

"The Japanese army is unique in military history and probably the strongest in the world of its size, combining the strength of barbarism with civilization, drawing from the former fanatical bravery and scorn of death and from the latter the latest knowledge of the science of war. We have been fighting them under heavy handicaps, but have at last definitely stopped them. They have missed the psychological moment. They should now be at Harbin with Vladivostok and the East literally cut off and de facto theirs instead of wintering where they are. The cold is Russia's ally now as it was against Napoleon. The Japanese cannot endure extreme cold like the Russians. They are not strong enough to attempt to take Moukden now and will not be even if Port Arthur falls and seventy thousand reinforcements are sent up to join Field-Marshal Oyama. In the meantime Russian troops are piling up behind Moukden. In February, before the port of Niu-Chwang is ice-free, General Kuropatkin will have close upon half a million men disposed in three armies amply sufficient to turn Oyama's position at the Sahke river and force the Japanese back into Korea and the Liao-tung peninsula."

A
Russian
Opinion
of the
Japanese.

On November 21 and 26, 1904, the Japanese army under General Nogi again assailed Port Arthur, but was repulsed each time. On November 27th the Japanese gained a great advantage by the capture of 203-Meter Hill, one of the high points from which the heavy cannon can reach the town and the harbor. Both sides fought desperately for the possession of this hill. After heavy and concentrated bombardments, the Japanese made four charges between three and four o'clock, succeeding in the last charge in dislodging the Russians; but during the night the Russians made three counter attacks and drove out the Japanese forces. At dawn the next morning the Japanese renewed the attack; and at eight o'clock in the evening, November 28, 1904, after a series of rushes and counter rushes, advances and repulses, the Japanese again occupied the fort. Finally, at noon, on December 1, 1904, the Russians gave up their attacks on this hill and retired to inner

Japanese
Capture
an Im-
portant
Fort at
Port
Arthur.

positions. The losses were heavy on both sides; and on December 2d an armistice was agreed upon by both sides for the burial of the dead and the removal of the wounded, the armistice lasting six hours, from ten in the morning until four in the afternoon.

Russian
Fleet
again De-
stroyed.

The Japanese mounted heavy naval guns on 203-Meter Hill, and on December 9th they kept up a heavy bombardment on the Russian warships in Port Arthur harbor. Previously the Russian ships had found shelter from the Japanese fire behind Pei-Ya Mountain, but now they were able to do so no longer, and by December 12th the Japanese commander reported that the bombardment of the harbor was necessary no longer, as all the Russian warships there were disabled completely. The Russian battleship *Sevastopol* was moved into the outer harbor and was often attacked by the Japanese torpedo-boats outside, being rendered practically useless.

Siege
and Fall
of Port
Arthur.

Finally, after a siege of about eleven months and many desperate assaults, Port Arthur fell into the possession of the Japanese at the opening of the year 1905. This siege was one of the most famous in the world's history. The fortress was invested by the Japanese from the day of their capture of Nan-Shan Hill on May 26, 1904. The engineering operations began on August 3, 1904, four days after the capture of Wolf Hills by the Japanese. A British military expert had written during the siege: "On one hand is Japanese energy, on the other there is Russian stubbornness. We shall see which will prevail." The Japanese operations against Port Arthur began with the first day of the war, when the Japanese seriously damaged three Russian war vessels there. The various assaults and naval engagements during the siege have been alluded to. The final operations, which resulted in the reduction of the beleaguered port, were the capture of the forts on Kee-Wan Mountain and finally the capture of the great Ehr-Lung Fort by the Japanese by the heavy cannon which they mounted in commanding positions by December 30, 1904. The Russians still had twenty-five forts, comprising most of the permanent interior defenses; but the later positions captured by the Japanese rendered further resistance useless. Accordingly, on Sunday afternoon, New Year's day, 1905, General Stoessel, the Russian commandant, sent a communication to General Nogi, the Japanese commander, proposing negotiations for a capitulation of the fortress. Commissioners were appointed by the two generals, and by 4:30 in the morning of January 2d the terms were agreed upon. In the meantime General Nogi had received a dispatch from the Mikado saying that General Stoessel had rendered "commendable service to his country in the midst of difficulties," and ordering that "full honors be paid him." The Mikado's magnanimous action in this instance facilitated negotiations, and all the terms offered by the Japanese were

accepted without question by the Russian general. The Russian officers were permitted to retain their swords, and upon signing parole not to take up arms during the war they were allowed to return to Russia. The Japanese army entered the city on January 4th, and the next day the two commanders met each other at a miserable hovel, the only undamaged house remaining in the village of Shuishih, each recognizing the other as a brave man and a good soldier, and the exchange of courtesies was very cordial but solemn. On January 13th General Nogi and his army made an imposing triumphal entry into the city, the line being five miles long. The mass of the Russian garrison were against surrender and were surprised and chagrined at the result. The closing words of General Stoessel's dispatch to the Czar announcing surrender were "Great sovereign, pardon us. We have done all that is within human power. Judge us with clemency." After the battle of Nan-Shan Hill, on May 26, 1904, the Japanese lost fifty-five thousand men, of whom eleven thousand were killed. At the beginning of the siege the Russians had seventy-five thousand soldiers, sailors and civilians at Port Arthur, of whom ten thousand were killed or died. The number taken prisoners by the Japanese was almost thirty thousand. Five thousand Russian laborers were sent to Chefoo, China. Two hundred Russian officers were killed or wounded during the siege. Besides the city and the great works there, General Nogi's spoils of victory were four Russian battleships, two cruisers, fourteen gunboats and torpedo-boat destroyers, ten steamers, thirty-five small steamers which can be repaired, five hundred and sixty-four cannon, almost eighty-three thousand shells, thirty thousand kilos of powder and over two million rounds of ammunition. The loss of Port Arthur was a terrible blow to the Russians, as they had spent many millions of money upon the harbor and the fortifications as well as upon those of the neighboring port of Dalny.

On January 25, 1905, General Kuropatkin attempted to break through the Japanese lines and turn their right flank in the direction of Liao-Yang. Five days' fighting followed all along the line and is known as the battle of the Hun river. It was stated that more artillery was used in this fighting than in any previous engagement of the war and therefore more than in any other battle in the world's history. The Russian general's effort failed, the Russians losing over ten thousand men and the Japanese about seven thousand. The troops on both sides suffered intensely from the cold. Many of the engagements were fought in bitter cold winds, while the thermometer registered twenty degrees below zero. The earthworks erected by the Japanese at Sandepu were frozen so solid that the bombardment from the Russian field artillery was ineffective. General Gripenberg resigned the com-

**Battle of
the Hun
River.**

mand of the second Russian army in Manchuria and was succeeded by General Kaulbars.

**Battle of
Moukden.**

Finally the great battle of Moukden—the greatest of all the battles of the Russo-Japanese War, and the greatest of history so far as numbers engaged and length of duration is concerned—lasted twenty days, thus doubly eclipsing the battles of Liao-Yang, the Sahke river and the Hun river. The Japanese forces numbered five hundred thousand and the Russians four hundred thousand. The great battles of this war exceeded in duration those of any other war—the battle of Liao-Yang lasting ten days, that of the Sahke river eight days, that of the Hun river five days and that of Moukden twenty days. In numbers engaged as well as in duration the battle of Moukden exceeded all battles of the world's history as well as all previous battles of the Russo-Japanese War, as nearly a million men were engaged in it on both sides. At the time of the battle of Moukden the Japanese line extended from Sing-King-Ting on the east to Sin-Min-Tin on the west, a distance of more than a hundred miles, and this by telegraph and telephone was under the control of one central head. The real advance of the Japanese army commenced on February 19, 1905, when General Kuroki crossed the Taitse river on the ice and assailed the Russian left, or eastern wing. For two weeks before the Japanese pressed hard against the center of the Russian position at Pulitoff, or Lone Tree Hill, during which they bombarded the Russian lines very heavily, large siege guns from Port Arthur being used for the purpose. On February 25th the Russians evacuated their strongly-intrenched position of Tsin-Ketchen after two days' severe fighting, after which the Japanese captured Ta Pass and other important positions on the east. In consequence of these Japanese successes, General Kuropatkin greatly increased his forces about Fushan and moved his own headquarters from Moukden to that point. Fushan was very important to the Russians on account of its coal mines, as it was the sole source of Russian supply for railroad and other uses and because it defended Moukden on the east. While General Oku continued his assaults on the Russian center in the vicinity of Pulitoff Hill, General Nogi, with an army composed of forces from Port Arthur, made a forced march from Sandepu to Sin-Min-Tin and gained an advanced position a few miles west of Moukden. For six days and nights these Port Arthur Japanese veterans marched and fought to reach their positions, exhibiting the most fanatical bravery in their charges on the Russian intrenchments, with the warcry: "Out of the way! We are from Port Arthur!" These Japanese successes on the west made General Kuropatkin's position critical, and he found himself obliged to send a large force to the west and north to defend Moukden from those directions and to protect the railroad and highway

to Tie Pass and Harbin. At the same time General Oku pressed upon the Russian center and finally made a break in the southern line of the Russian defense, crossing the Hun river on the ice between Moukden and Fushan, in the face of a blinding dust storm which concealed his movements, thus cutting off the Russian force under General Linevitch at Fushan from the other Russian forces. Thus General Kuropatkin's army was broken in the center, attacked on both flanks and almost surrounded on the north, and its capture seemed imminent; but the Russian commander-in-chief saved his army from capture or annihilation by another masterly retreat, evacuating Moukden on March 9th, the Japanese occupying that city the next day, thus making another step in their northward advance. Field-Marshal Oyama made a triumphal entry into Moukden and was received with great ceremony by the Chinese governor, who gave Oyama a banquet. Thus the Japanese won another great victory in the battle of Moukden. The Russian losses were twenty-six thousand five hundred killed, ninety thousand wounded, forty thousand made prisoners, two ensigns, sixty cannon, sixty thousand rifles, one hundred and thirty thousand ammunition wagons, one thousand army wagons, two hundred thousand shells, twenty-five million rifle shots, seventy-four thousand bushels of grain, material for forty-six miles of light railway, three hundred light railroad wagons, two thousand horses, twenty-three Chinese carts full of maps, over one thousand carts full of clothing, one million loaves of bread, one hundred and fifty million pounds of fuel, two hundred and twenty-three thousand bushels allowance, one hundred and twenty-five thousand pounds of hay. These materials were the immense trophies of the Japanese.

After the battle of Moukden the Russians retreated to Tie Pass and the city of Tieling, forty miles north of Moukden, in a strongly-intrenched position, closely pursued by the Japanese, who occasionally assailed the Russian flanks in a continual rear-guard action, adding constantly to their spoils. The Russians lost a large amount of stores, and many detached bands of fugitives surrendered to escape starvation. The Russians made a stand at Tie Pass, but by direct attack and flank movement the Japanese drove them from that position and forced them to retreat northward toward Harbin, three hundred miles away. The losses at Tie Pass and Tieling added to those of the battle of Moukden made the total Russian losses in killed, wounded and prisoners about two hundred thousand men and the Japanese losses about forty thousand. Notwithstanding the great Russian defeat in the battle of Moukden, a Council of War at St. Petersburg resolved to continue the war and to send another large army into Manchuria. There was a strong peace party in Russia, and this party violently opposed the

Russian
Retreat
and
Further
Defeat.

mobilization of another army. General Kuropatkin assumed full responsibility for his great defeat at Moukden and asked to be relieved of his command. His request was granted without comment, and General Linevitch was appointed his successor.

Continued
Operations in
Man-
churia.

Under General Linevitch the Russian army in Manchuria retreated northward toward Harbin, pursued by the Japanese, who hung upon the Russian flanks. The Russians retreated along the railroad, which they destroyed in their retreat. The Japanese army kept at a distance of ten or twenty miles on the east and west sides of the railroad. Another Japanese army under General Kawamura moved still farther east toward Kirin. General Kuropatkin generously offered to remain with the army and was assigned to the command of the first Russian army, formerly commanded by General Linevitch, so that the two leading Russian generals merely changed positions. It was estimated that the Russians destroyed about one million seven hundred and fifty thousand dollars' worth of stores. There were occasional skirmishes afterward between outposts and detachments seeking new positions.

The
Russian
Baltic
Fleet
in the
Far East.

The Russian Baltic fleet under Admiral Rojestvensky finally reached Far Eastern waters, and by May, 1905, it was in the China Sea. This fleet consisted of seven battleships, nine cruisers, eight torpedo-boat destroyers, three volunteer fleet vessels, sixteen colliers, one salvage ship, one hospital ship and three former Hamburg-American liners. The fleet passed through the Straits of Malacca on April 8th and was seen off Singapore, sailing in a north-easterly direction. The Russian consul approached the fleet in a launch and informed the officers of the fall of Moukden. The soft coal burned by the fleet produced dense clouds of smoke that could be seen for miles. On April 13th a hospital ship from the fleet entered Saigon, the capital and chief port of French Indo-China, remaining there thirty-six hours and leaving a number of sick and taking on coal and supplies. From Saigon the fleet sailed to Kamranh Bay, a port of French Indo-China north of Saigon, where the fleet coaled and refitted. Japan complained of violation of neutrality by the French in permitting this hospitality. Japan declared Formosa harbors to be in the war zone and subject to usual conditions in such cases. On May 5th the Russian squadron under Admiral Nebogatoff passed Singapore into the China Sea to join the main Russian fleet under Admiral Rojestvensky. To divert the attention of the Japanese Admiral Togo from the union of the two Russian fleets, the Russian Vladivostok squadron raided the Japanese coast, burned the Japanese warship *Yawata Maru* and fired on several sailing vessels. French violation of neutrality in allowing the use of the French Indo-Chinese port at Kamranh Bay to the use of the Russian fleet for the purpose of reprovisioning had attracted very general attention. In

French
Neu-
trality
Violated.

spite of France's denial that the Russian fleet was outside of her territorial waters, eye witnesses claimed that the fleet was inside the three-mile limit and remained there ten days. The stores were forwarded from Saigon, the capital of French Indo-China, about two hundred miles from Kamranh Bay. Despite Japan's protest, the Russian fleet remained there until its work was completed and until the transports which brought the supplies from Saigon had been emptied. While in the French Indo-Chinese ports the Russians had full use of the telegraphic facilities of the French company.

Finally the long-expected battle between the Russian and Japanese fleets occurred on May 27 and 28, 1905, at the entrance of the Straits of Korea into the Sea of Japan, this great sea-fight being known as the battle of the Sea of Japan. The whereabouts of the Japanese fleet under Admiral Togo was not known generally until the collision between the two fleets. The Russian fleet consisted of seven battleships, two armored cruisers, six protected cruisers, five unprotected cruisers and eleven torpedo-boat destroyers. The Japanese fleet was composed of four battleships, eight armored cruisers, fifteen protected cruisers, seven unprotected cruisers, four coast-defense vessels and nineteen torpedo-boat destroyers. The Russian fleet excelled in battleships and big guns, while the Japanese fleet excelled in cruisers and 8-inch and 6-inch guns and in torpedo-boats. The battle began at ten o'clock in the morning of May 27, 1905, and lasted until night. The three divisions of the Japanese fleet practically surrounded the Russian ships, the Japanese torpedo craft aiding vastly in demoralizing the Russian fleet and preventing its escape from the Japanese cordon. Opening shots were fired at a distance of seven and a half miles. Within two hours the Russian fleet was disorganized completely, and the Japanese were able to close in and concentrate their fire on the individual Russian ships in turn. The Russian battleships *Sissoi Veliky*, *Borodino*, *Alexander III.*, *Oslayba* and *Navarin* were sunk in succession. The *Borodino* was Admiral Rojestvensky's flagship after the *Kniaz Suwaroff* had been disabled. He remained on the *Borodino* until he was wounded severely, when he was taken on board a torpedo-boat destroyer which afterwards was overtaken near the coast of Korea, where the admiral was captured. During the night of May 27th the Japanese used their torpedo-boats with deadly effect, sinking many of the Russian ships, while others escaped in the darkness of the night. On Sunday, May 28th, the fighting resulted in a pursuit of the Russian ships by the Japanese vessels. Admiral Nebogatoff, with five Russian vessels, escaped toward Vladivostok, but was surrounded near Liancourt Island; and the Russian battleships *Nikolai I.* and *Orel*, with two smaller Russian ships, were surrendered by him. The Russian battleship *Izumrud*

Great
Japanese
Naval
Victory.

escaped and almost reached Vladivostok, when it struck a reef and was lost. The Russian cruiser *Almaz* and three Russian torpedo-boat destroyers reached Vladivostok. On June 3d Admiral Enquest, with the Russian cruisers *Oleg*, *Aurora* and *Jeimitchug*, arrived at Manila Bay, where they were interned by the American authorities until the end of the war. The Russian cruiser *Smolensk* escaped to Wu-Sung, China. Several of the disabled Russian ships drifted to the coast of Japan, where they either sank or were captured. All the Russian battleships were either destroyed or captured; and, with the exception of a few scattered remnants, the Russian fleet was annihilated. Admiral Voelkersham, who commanded the Russian battleship squadron, was killed in the tower of his flagship early in the fight. The Russian loss was estimated at almost ten thousand killed and wounded and five thousand prisoners, besides a money loss of seventy-three million dollars. The Japanese lost three torpedo-boats and about five hundred killed and wounded. This Japanese naval victory was almost without a parallel in history, and it made Japan mistress of the Eastern seas, Russia's naval power in the Pacific being annihilated completely.

Opera-
tions in
Man-
churia.

In the meantime the Japanese forces in Manchuria, under Field-Marshal Oyama, were pushing the Russian forces under General Linevitch very hard; advancing from the center and westward and driving in the thin Russian lines south of Palitum, while farther west the Japanese turned the Russian extreme right at Liaoyangchongpeng, flanking the Russians out of their position after a conflict continuing through the night. The Japanese force consisted of an infantry division, four batteries of artillery and thirty squadrons of cavalry.

Japanese
Conquest
of
Sakhalin.

On July 12, 1905, a small Japanese force invaded the island of Sakhalin, north of the Japan Islands, and conquered it from the Russians, this being the first Russian territory occupied by the Japanese during the war. The Japanese began with a naval demonstration against the island; and, as they encountered little resistance, they landed and seized such ports as they desired. The island of Sakhalin formerly belonged to Japan, but was divided between Russia and Japan in 1856, Russia taking the northern part of the island and Japan the southern part. In 1875 Russia forced Japan to cede to her the southern part of the island also.

Other
Japanese
Move-
ments.

The Japanese also sent a land force through Korea toward Vladivostok. In Manchuria the Japanese undertook several flanking movements to keep the Russians under General Linevitch busy before Harbin, while the second Japanese army pushed through Korea to threaten the railroad between Harbin and Vladivostok.

Move-
ments
towards
Peace.

In the meantime the destruction of the Russian fleet in the Sea of Japan led to movements in the direction of peace, President Roosevelt



From a Photograph, copyright 1905 by Underwood & Underwood

THE RUSSIAN AND JAPANESE PEACE COMMISSIONERS

Introduced by President Roosevelt, August 5, 1905

From left to right: Count Serge Witte, Baron Rosen, The President, Baron Komura and Minister Takahira

THE
LIBRARY OF THE
CONGRESS
WASHINGTON, D. C. 20540

acting as mediator. On July 2, 1905, the names of the Russian and Japanese plenipotentiaries were announced. The two Russian plenipotentiaries were N. V. Muravieff, the Russian Ambassador to Italy, and Baron Rosen, the new Russian Ambassador to the United States. On July 12th the announcement came from St. Petersburg that Muravieff had been replaced by M. Witte, the Russian ex-Minister of Foreign Affairs and the principal Russian liberal statesman. Witte was opposed to the war, and his position on the Far Eastern question had led to his retirement from the Czar's Cabinet. The Japanese plenipotentiaries were Baron Komura, then Japanese Minister of Foreign Affairs, and Minister Takahira. The plenipotentiaries of both nations were entrusted with full power to negotiate and conclude a treaty of peace, subject to ratification by the two governments. Some delay was caused in the selection of the plenipotentiaries because of Japan's insistence that the envoys of both powers should be clothed with full power to conclude peace and to negotiate a permanent treaty. Japan declared firmly that she would not enter upon a tentative conference in which Japan was to define her terms and then let Russia decide whether the conference should proceed with its deliberations. She insisted that the plenipotentiaries should have full treaty-making powers and that negotiations should be entered upon in a spirit of perfect sincerity. President Roosevelt assumed the same attitude. Portsmouth, New Hampshire, was selected as the place for the peace conference.

After three weeks of negotiation at Portsmouth, New Hampshire, the Russian and Japanese plenipotentiaries finally agreed upon a treaty of peace between the warring nations, on September 5, 1905. Of the twelve conditions laid down by Baron Komura at the beginning, M. Witte accepted six; namely, the recognition of the Japanese control over Korea; the Russian and Japanese evacuation of Manchuria; the transfer of the Liao-tung leasehold; the restoration of Chinese civil administration in Manchuria; the transfer of public property at Port Arthur and Dalny without compensation; the concession of Japanese fishing rights on the coast of Siberia. M. Witte rejected absolutely three Japanese demands—the war indemnity, the transfer of interned warships and the limitation of Russia's naval power in the Pacific. There was a compromise upon the remaining three demands. One of these demands was the transfer by Russia to Japan of the railroad from Port Arthur to Harbin, Russia conceding four hundred miles of the road north of Port Arthur, retaining for herself one hundred and twenty-five miles at the northern end. Of course, M. Witte accepted the condition that Russia should retain the main Manchurian railway. Concerning the Japanese demand for the cession of the island of Sak-

**Peace of
Portsmouth.**

halin by Russia to Japan, a partition of the island between the two nations was agreed upon, the northern half of the island remaining with Russia and the southern half going to Japan. Russia also agreed to defray Japan's expenses in maintaining her prisoners of war. Japan finally withdrew her demand for a war indemnity. The Czar and the Mikado signed the treaty at their respective capitals on October 14, 1905.

**The
Result.**

The result of the war, in consequence of Japan's uninterrupted victories on land and sea, was to raise Japan's prestige as one of the great powers of the world, while Russia's reverses were a severe blow to her prestige. The peace terms aroused dissatisfaction in both countries. many Russians thinking that their nation had been humiliated unnecessarily, while many Japanese considered that their country did not obtain the terms which the uninterrupted Japanese successes entitled her to. The dissatisfaction in Japan led to serious riots in Tokio, where the Marquis Ito was stoned by a mob. An armistice was signed between the commanders of both armies in Manchuria on September 14, 1905, the armistice to take effect two days later.

**Japan
Gains by
Treaties.**

It had been agreed that Japan and Russia should evacuate Manchuria, but by a subsequent treaty with China, signed December 22, 1905, Japan leased the entire Liaotung peninsula, gained control of the railways as far as Changchun, and also obtained permission to construct a railway from Antung to Mukden and to open 16 ports and cities of Manchuria to foreign trade. On September 27, 1905, a treaty with Great Britain was signed by which Japan obtained, among other things, a protective alliance and an agreement to preserve the integrity of China. Thus Japan's position became still more secure in Far Eastern affairs.

**Protecto-
rate over
Korea
Estab-
lished.**

Korea, however, soon began to cause alarm; the Emperor was obstinate and revolutionary ideas became rampant among the people. The treaty of Portsmouth recognized Japan's control over Korea, but the natives did not and Marquis Ito was twice sent there to adjust matters, his efforts finally resulting in the Japan-Korea treaty of November 17, 1905, which declared a Japanese protectorate over the peninsula. Subsequently Ito was appointed resident-general in Korea and from that time practically administered the Government. On July 17, 1907, the Japanese Government forced the Korean emperor to abdicate in favor of the crown prince, ostensibly because the emperor had sent a delegation to the Hague Peace Conference contrary to an existing agreement with Japan. Whatever the causes for the abdication may have been, Japan gained full control, and now the resident-general holds the reins of government, so that no political or international affairs can be entered upon without his full consent. Serious riots followed the abdication, but they were speedily and severely crushed by the Japanese military.

**Korean
Emperor
Abdicates.**

Meanwhile, several demonstrations against the Japanese had taken place, in San Francisco, Cal. (October, 1906), concerning the rights of Japanese subjects in the public schools, and in Vancouver, Canada (September, 1907), concerning coolie immigration. At the time of their occurrence these events caused much apprehension, but the differences were later easily and satisfactorily settled.

Foreign
Demon-
strations
Against
Japanese.

At home Japan was undergoing much hardship. Late in 1905 the rice crop in the North failed, causing a disastrous famine, but generous contributions greatly alleviated the condition of the sufferers. The industrial depression following the war gradually disappeared and large enterprises and vast commercial schemes of expansion of all kinds were launched until the drain on the productive resources caused a collapse. This only served, however, to place business on a more sane and sound basis.

Financial
and
Industrial
Depres-
sion.

In political affairs there was much turmoil; governmental policies were attacked by the opposition party, who attributed much of the financial burdens of the people to mismanagement by the party in power. The financial budget presented to the Diet on January 16, 1908, showed a deficit of forty million yen (about twenty million dollars) for 1908 and 1909, to overcome which it was proposed to increase taxation, and to reduce army and navy and also railroad appropriations. This plan met with strenuous objections from the interests affected, and finally compelled the resignations of the Minister of Finance, Sakatani, and the Minister of Communications, Yamagata. Premier Saionji also resigned, but the emperor refused to allow his resignation. In February came the dispute with China concerning the seizure of the *Tatsu Maru* by Chinese officials, who claimed that the vessel was smuggling arms to revolutionists in China. The terms upon which this dispute was settled created much dissatisfaction in Japan over the manner in which the government had handled the situation. In May followed a Chinese boycott against Japanese merchandise and a dispute concerning railways in Manchuria, both of which badly affected Japan's commercial and financial enterprises. Therefore at the elections on May 15 the government was only sustained by a very narrow margin and though the Liberal Party continued in power, the Saionji cabinet remained in office but two months longer. On July 14, 1908, the emperor appointed Marquis Katsura premier and minister of finance, and a new cabinet was formed favoring retrenchment. During 1908 an arbitration treaty, an agreement restricting Japanese coolie immigration into the United States, and two conventions to protect copyrights and inventions in China and Korea were signed by representatives of Japan and the United States.

Political
Turmoil.

Cabinet
Changes.

Appoint-
ment of
New
Cabinet.

SECTION VI—RECENT EUROPEAN EVENTS

In January, 1909, Turkey accepted the offer of \$10,500,000 and certain concessions from Austria as indemnity for the annexation of Bosnia and Herzegovina. The Powers approved February 13, 1909.

The Swedish Diet passed a bill permitting all inhabitants over twenty-four years of age to vote, with proportional representation in Parliament. Woman suffrage now obtains also in Norway, Finland, New Zealand and the commonwealth of Australia.

Revolution in Turkey.

In April the Turkish garrison in Constantinople mutinied and forced the government to dismiss the Grand Vizier, the Minister of War and the President of the Chambers. The Young Turks' Committee of Union and Progress influenced the Third Army Corps to march on Constantinople, which surrendered. Sultan Abdul Hamid was deposed and his brother, Reshad Effendi, proclaimed sultan under the title of Mehmed V. In April also the independence of Bulgaria was formally recognized by the Powers.

Political Changes.

In July, 1909, Premier Clemenceau of France ended his three years' ministry—the longest in the history of the Third Republic. The German Chancellor Von Bulow was succeeded by Dr. Von Bethman Hollweg. In this year also was born an heir to the throne of Holland, the Princess Juliana. Albert I became King of Belgium, December 23, 1909, upon the death of King Leopold. The new king is the only son of the late king's younger brother, Count Philippe of Flanders.

British Rule in India.

Lord Morley's reform scheme for India went into effect May 26. The constitution of Hindustan was so amended that natives would be associated with Englishmen in the legislative and administration departments of the Indian government.

Conflict between the Two Houses of Parliament.

On the last day of November, 1909, the House of Lords by the large majority of 275 voted against the budget of the Liberal government. All but four of the 615 peers were present, several for only the second time in their lives and many for the first time in a decade. It was practically the swan song of the House, which was warned by Lord Curzon that it might mean for the peers the handwriting on the wall. The House of Commons concurred in the Premier's resolution that the action of the House of Lords was a breach of the Constitution and a usurpation of the rights of the House of Commons. Parliament was dissolved and a general election ordered. The Liberal government was returned to power with a reduced majority.

Death of King Edward.

On May 6, 1910, died Edward VII, King of Great Britain and Ireland, and Emperor of India. His son, George Frederick, succeeded under the title of George V. He and Queen Mary were crowned June 16, 1911.

Earl Grey retired from the Governor-Generalship of Canada, and the Duke of Connaught succeeded to the office June 9, 1910.

In the Fall of the year there was a revolution in Portugal. King Manuel and his mother, Queen Amelie, fled to Gibraltar. Theophile de Braga was chosen provisional president. In September, 1911, Manuel de Arriza was elected by the Constituent Assembly the first President of the Republic.

**Portugal
Becomes
a
Republic.**

Two world-famous characters died in 1910: Leo Nikolayevitch Tolstoy and Florence Nightingale. The land reform scheme of the Russian Premier Stolypin had succeeded in destroying the vicious communal system, substituting individual peasant proprietorship of land. But political liberty was still denied. There was no freedom of speech or press, and martial law was still exercised in many sections of the Empire. Despite imperial promises, a definite plan for the absorption of Finland was in process of execution.

**Condi-
tions in
Russia.**

Towards the close of 1910 the British House of Lords adopted resolutions looking toward the modification of the constitution of their body. These provided that part of the Lords of Parliament should be chosen by the whole body of hereditary peers from among themselves and by nomination of the crown; others should have the right to sit by virtue of their offices and qualifications, while a certain number should be selected from outside. The Parliament was again dissolved. The Veto Bill of the House of Commons limiting the power of the House of Lords, was finally acceded to by the latter in August, and received the Royal Assent, thus accomplishing a great constitutional change in the British government.

**House of
Lords to
be Newly
Constitu-
ted.**

Italy declared war with Turkey over the possession of Tripoli, September 27, 1911. Peace was declared October 15, 1912, the treaty giving absolute sovereignty to Italy in Libya (Tripolitania and Cyrenaica) without personal recognition there of Italy by Turkey; Turkey to withdraw her troops, and Italy to pay indemnity equivalent to the contribution of Libya to the Ottoman treasury. Restitution of the captured Egean Islands was to be made to Turkey. This war cost Italy \$191,000,000.

**Tripoli
Ceded
to Italy.**

In December, 1911, Roald Amundsen, a Norwegian, discovered the South Pole. On January 18, 1912, Captain Robert F. Scott, of the British Navy, also reached it, but died from exposure on the return trip.

**Discov-
ery of
the
South
Pole.**

In 1912 Morocco became virtually a French protectorate, to be governed by a French Resident-General, Germany finally consenting to the arrangement in consideration of certain concessions in the French Congo.

**Morocco
Becomes
a French
Protector-
ate.**

May 14, 1912, Frederick VIII, King of Denmark, died, and was succeeded by his son, Christian X.

**Working
Men's
Insurance.**

The Lloyd-George Insurance Act went into effect in England July 15, 1912. It insures working people against illness or disability, through a fund to which the workers, the employers and the government contribute.

**Home
Rule
for
Ireland.**

Home Rule for Ireland was a leading feature of British government measures in 1912 and 1913. It is to have its own parliament, although certain exclusions from its control were specified, such as the crown, the army, navy, etc.; the Irish people to be represented at Westminster by forty-two members. The bill passed the House of Commons January 16, 1913, but the House of Lords rejected it January 30 of the same year. May 26, 1914, Home Rule finally was given to Ireland.

**The
Balkan
War.**

Bulgaria, Servia, and Greece mobilized their army reserves in September, 1912, to force Turkey to institute reforms in Macedonia, which comprises the three modern provinces of Monastir, Salonica and Kossovo. These, with Epirus, a part of Turkey inhabited by Greeks, and Albania, were eager for freedom from Moslem rule. On October 8, Montenegro declared war on Turkey for the same reason. October 17 Turkey declared war on Bulgaria and Servia, while Greece and Servia declared war on Turkey. After months of fighting and protracted discussion between the European Powers, Turkey accepted, April 1, 1913, peace proposals which included the surrender of most of her territory in Europe, including Adrianople and the island of Crete, and all west of a line from Enos on the Egean Sea to Midia on the Black Sea, except Albania, over which the Sultan was still to be nominal suzerain.

**New
President of
France.**

Raymond Poincare, ninth President of the French Republic, was elected January 17, 1913, to serve seven years as successor to Armand Fallieres.

**Balkan
Allies
Fight
Each
Other.**

Warfare between the Balkan armies began again in June, because of dissatisfaction with the partition of territory. The allies, whose unity of action against Turkey, their common foe, had occasioned both surprise and admiration, now attacked each other in a sanguinary series of conflicts. Fortunately the resources of the combatants compelled it to be short lived. On August 10, 1913, a treaty of peace was signed by Bulgaria, Roumania, Servia, Greece and Montenegro. A conference of the Powers in London settled the new status of Albania, which an international commission was to control, pending the choice of a prince as its ruler. Roumania, as the price of her neutrality during the war with Turkey, had asked territory of Bulgaria, which had been refused. By the new treaty she obtained what she desired: a section of country on the Black Sea populated by Roumanians, which gives her much needed access to the sea. Servia got commercial rights on the Egean and won back Old Servia, and its ancestral capital, Uskub.

Montenegro received the Sanjak of Novi-Bazar and part of northern Albania, but had to give up Scutari. Bulgaria had to relinquish Adrianople to Turkey. Macedonia was placed under a new bondage. The area of Greece was nearly doubled. The net results leave the Near East problems still in an unsatisfactory condition, due to jealousy of the Powers. The British War Office estimated the cost of the first Balkan war at more than \$900,000,000, and of the second at \$300,000,000. The total loss of life was 380,000. December 3, 1913, the Powers consented to the choice of Prince William of Wied, a Protestant prince, as ruler of Albania. He accepted and entered upon his duties in March, 1913. December 14, 1913, Greece formally annexed Crete, to the satisfaction of the inhabitants, who have for some years past endeavored to transfer their allegiance from Turkey to Greece.

Ludwig, Prince Regent of Bavaria, deposed the mad King Otto, and with the approval of the Diet, proclaimed himself King Ludwig III, in November, 1913.

SUPPLEMENT.

THE BRITISH CONSTITUTION.

1. *Objects of constitutions.—Peculiar character of the British Constitution.*—Constitutions of government are formed among nations to define and restrict the powers of the sovereign, and to specify and secure the rights of the people. The British Constitution, unlike most other constitutions, is not a written instrument; but consist of acts of Parliament, decisions of courts of law, and long-established usages and customs. It is therefore superior to other constitutions; from the fact that it cannot be broken by any legislation. It is very elastic, and can be expanded without changing its form or character. Thus England has the same form of government to-day which it had from its foundation; but the English people have for the last eight hundred years gradually acquired new liberties, so that England to-day is practically as free as the freest republic in the world, the sovereign being divested of all power in the government.

2. *The British Government a mixed one.—The people and the aristocracy.*—The British Government consists of four systems united, affording the best example of a mixed form of government that the world has ever seen. The four systems thus united are monarchy, theocracy, aristocracy and democracy; so that the sovereign, the church, the nobility and the people all have a share in directing the destinies of the mighty British Empire. While the people of England have more civil and political liberty than any other in Europe, there is no aristocracy in the world so wealthy and powerful as the English nobility.

3. *Origin of the British Constitution.—The Feudal System.*—The British Constitution was formed very gradually, and its details are the results of long experience and are precisely adapted to the peculiar circumstances of the British nation. The government established in England by William the Conqueror was a feudal despotism; the lands of the kingdom being assigned to his Norman favorites, and the Anglo-Saxon population became the vassals, or serfs, of their Norman lords.

4. *First step in the direction of liberty.—Magna Charta.*—There were at first no written restrictions upon the king's authority over the barons, or nobles; but King Henry I., in order to secure his usurpation of the crown, granted some special privileges to the nobility and people of England. These privileges were flagrantly violated by King John, who was, however, on June 15, 1215, compelled by the English barons to grant *Magna Charta* [*kar'-ta*], or Great Charter

of rights and liberties, which has ever since been regarded as the foundation of the free constitution of England. Thus the powers of the lords, and also the rights of the commons, received some recognition. The most important provisions of Magna Charta were the following: *No freeman shall be taken, or imprisoned, or dispossessed, or outlawed, or banished, or in any way destroyed; nor will we pass upon him, nor commit him, but by the lawful judgment of his peers, or by the law of the land. To no man will we sell, to none will we delay, to none will we deny right or justice.*

5. *Liberation of the cities and towns.—Origin of the House of Commons.*—The Crusades having tended to break up the feudal system throughout England and every other part of Europe, by compelling the rich barons to sell their lands, a class of small landholders grew up, who looked to the crown for protection against the tyranny of the nobles, while the cities and towns received charters of incorporation and were released from feudal dependence on the great barons. When old Simon de Montfort took up arms to resist the capricious tyranny of King Henry III., he summoned a Parliament to sanction his action; and, in order to gain popular support, he called upon the counties to elect *knights of the shire*, and requested the cities and boroughs to send deputies. Thus not only the lords, but also the commons of England, were represented. This was the beginning of the House of Commons, in which the people of England are represented by deputies elected for that purpose, and which has always defended popular rights against arbitrary encroachments on the part of the king and the lords.

6. *Growth of the royal power under the Tudor dynasty.*—The commons were thenceforth courted by the king as a counterbalance to the power of the nobility, whose repeated encroachments on the royal prerogatives threatened the establishment of an unlimited baronial aristocracy; but the “Wars of the Roses” almost annihilated the ancient nobility of England; and the authority of the king became almost absolute, and so continued throughout the reigns of the sovereigns of the Tudor dynasty, during the whole period of the sixteenth century.

7. *The struggle between the Stuarts and Parliament.—Petition of Right.*—With the accession of the Stuart family to the English throne, the commons insisted upon the recognition of their rights, and thus began those fierce disputes between king and Parliament which distracted England during the whole period of the seventeenth century—the period that the Stuarts occupied the throne. In this contest the lords sided with the commons. King Charles I. was compelled, by the bold attitude of the commons, to grant the *Petition of Right*, which bestowed on the English people many constitutional privileges. The contest between Parliament and Charles I. resulted in the king’s execution and the temporary overthrow of the monarchy.

8. *The Habeas Corpus Act.—The Bill of Rights.*—When monarchy was restored in 1660, the struggle between the king and the commons was renewed, with results beneficial to the cause of liberty. During the reign of Charles II.,

Parliament passed the celebrated *Habeas Corpus Act*, which protected freedom of person against arbitrary arrests; but the grandest result in the onward march of English freedom was achieved by the "Glorious Revolution of 1688," which hurled the tyrant James II. from the throne, when Parliament passed the celebrated *Bill of Rights*, by which the king was shorn of his arbitrary powers, and his authority was reduced to a mere shadow, while the rights and liberties of the English people were secured on a new and permanent basis. The following were the most important provisions of the Bill of Rights: 1. *The king cannot suspend the laws or their execution.* 2. *He cannot levy money without the consent of Parliament.* 3. *The subjects have a right to petition the crown.* 4. *A standing army cannot be kept in time of peace without the consent of Parliament.* 5. *Elections and parliamentary debates must be free, and parliaments must be frequently assembled.*

9. *The Reform Bills of 1832, 1867 and 1884.*—After the Revolution of 1688 no change was made in the British Constitution until 1832, when Parliament passed the *First Reform Bill*, which extended the right of suffrage to half a million additional voters, and invested the middle classes of English society with the chief political power in the British Empire. The Reform Bill of 1832 was to England a great, although a bloodless, political revolution. No further advance in the direction of popular liberty was made in England until 1867, when Parliament passed the *Second Reform Bill*, which made the suffrage almost universal, by diminishing the property qualification of voters for members of the House of Commons, and by re-arranging the Parliamentary constituencies of the kingdom. By the *Franchise Act*, or the *Third Reform Bill*, passed by Parliament in 1884, the suffrage in Great Britain was made practically universal.

10. *The legislative power in England.*—*The English crown.*—The legislative power of England is vested in the king (or queen) and the two branches of Parliament—the lords and the commons. The crown of England is hereditary, but Parliament has the right to alter or regulate the succession. On the death of James II., in the year A. D. 1701, Parliament passed the famous *Act of Settlement*, which extended the right of succession to the Protestant heirs of James I., on the impending failure of Protestant heirs of James II. The crown therefore passed to the House of Brunswick, or Hanover, the Guelf family, the Princess Sophia of Hanover having been a granddaughter of James I.; and George I., Elector of Hanover, the son of Sophia, ascended the British throne in 1714, upon the extinction of the Protestant heirs of the House of Stuart. The present reigning family is the House of Brunswick, and holds the throne by right of the Parliamentary title of the Princess Sophia. Since the Norman Conquest of England, in 1066, the English throne has never been occupied by an Englishman, all the royal families since that date belonging to other nationalities—the dynasty founded by William the Conqueror being Norman-French; the Plantagenets being French; the Tudors being Welsh; the

Stuarts being Scotch, and the present reigning family of the Guelfs, known as the House of Brunswick, or Hanover, being German.

11. *Duties and prerogatives of the sovereign.—His Ministers.*—The duties of the English sovereign, as prescribed in the coronation oath, are: 1. To govern according to law; 2. To execute judgment in mercy; 3. To maintain the established religion. Those privileges of the monarch which belong to him in consequence of his high station are called the kingly prerogatives, and are of two kinds, direct and incidental. The chief of the direct prerogatives of the sovereign are: 1. The power of making war and peace; 2. Of sending and receiving ambassadors; 3. Of pardoning offences; 4. Of conferring honors and titles of dignity; 5. Of appointing judges and subordinate magistrates; 6. Of giving or revoking commissions in the army or navy; 7. Of rejecting bills proffered to him by the two Houses of Parliament. The sovereign is the head of the national church, and appoints to vacant bishoprics and other ecclesiastical dignities. But the king, or queen, cannot exercise his, or her, prerogatives directly and personally; but only through Ministers, who are responsible to the British nation as represented in the two Houses of Parliament. Hence the maxim of English law, "The king can do no wrong;" his Ministers alone being responsible. When, therefore, the measures of a Ministry are disapproved by a majority of the House of Commons, the Ministers in power must either resign or dissolve the House of Commons and order the election of a new House of Commons to ascertain the sense of the nation; and if a majority is returned in favor of the Ministers' policy, the Ministry remains in power; but if a majority is returned disapproving their course, a change of Ministry takes place. The Ministers are taken from the members of the two Houses of Parliament. The head of the Ministry is the *Prime Minister*, the *Premier*, usually the *First Lord of the Treasury*. The other members of the Ministry are the *Lord Chancellor*, the *Lord President of the Council*, the *Lord Privy Seal*, the *Home Secretary*, the *Foreign Secretary*, the *Colonial Secretary*, the *Secretary for India*, the *Chief Secretary for Ireland*, the *Secretary of War*, the *Chancellor of the Exchequer*, the *First Lord of the Admiralty*, the *Postmaster-General*, the *President of the Board of Trade*, the *President of the Poor Law Board*, and the *Chancellor of the Duchy of Lancaster*.

12. *Incidental prerogatives.*—The principal incidental prerogatives of the monarch are as follows: 1. No costs can be recovered against him; 2. His debt shall be preferred before that of a subject; 3. No suit or action can be brought against him, but any person having a claim in point of property on the king must petition him in chancery. There are also certain privileges conceded to the royal family. The queen retains her title and dignity, even after her husband's death; and she has the right to buy and sell in her own name, and to remove any suit at law in which she is a party to any court she chooses, without any of the common legal formalities. The king's eldest son is by birth *Prince of Wales*, and by creation Duke of Cornwall and Earl of Chester. All the

monarch's children, and those of the Prince of Wales, receive the title of *Royal Highness*.

13. *The Privy Council*.—The *Privy Council* is another very important body in connection with the executive branch of the British government; being composed by many civil and ecclesiastical dignitaries appointed by the sovereign, all of them natural-born British subjects. The Cabinet Ministers constitute a committee of the Privy Council, whose President is the fourth great officer of state. This Council meets once in two or three weeks, but only such of its members attend as are specially summoned by the sovereign, the meeting usually consisting of the Cabinet Ministers, the great officers of the royal household and the Archbishop of Canterbury; but on extraordinary occasions all the members are summoned.

14. *House of Lords*.—The *House of Lords*, or Upper House of Parliament, consists: 1. Of *Lords Temporal*, or the princes of the blood royal and the hereditary nobles—such as dukes, marquises, earls or counts, viscounts and barons—who are members by right of birth; 2. Of *Lords Spiritual*, or the Archbishops of Canterbury and York, and the other bishops of the Church of England, who are members by virtue of their offices. The Scotch representative peers sit only for one Parliament; the Irish representative peers sit for life. A peer may vote by proxy; but each peer can only hold the proxy for one absent peer. The House of Lords can alone originate any bills that affect the rights or privileges of the peerage, and the Commons are not allowed to make any changes in them. Peers can only be tried by the House of Lords, and this House of Parliament constitutes the court in which officers of state are tried on impeachment by the House of Commons. The House of Lords is also the last court of appeal from inferior jurisdictions. Each peer may enter his protest on the journals of the houses when a vote passes contrary to his sentiments, and assign the reasons for his dissent in writing. When sitting in judgment his vote is given "on his honor." The same form is observed in answers on bills in chancery, but in civil and criminal cases he must be under oath.

15. *House of Commons*.—The *House of Commons*, or Lower House of Parliament, consists of members chosen by the counties, cities, boroughs and universities of England, Wales, Scotland and Ireland. The county members, usually styled *knights of the shire*, and borough members must possess real estate of a specified yearly value; but the sons of peers and university members need not possess these qualifications. Aliens, clergymen, judges, returning officers in the respective jurisdictions, officers of the excise and the like, those who hold pensions of a limited time, contractors with the Government, and others exposed to outside influences, are not eligible to seats in Parliament. The House of Commons has the sole power of impeachment. The members of Parliament, with the exception of the chairmen of several committees, receive no salaries.

16. *Qualifications of voters for members of the House of Commons*.—By the Reform Bill of 1832, the right of voting for members of the House of Com-

mons was given to leaseholders in counties seized on lands or tenements worth ten pounds a year, to tenants at will, farming lands at fifty pounds a year, and to holders in fee simple of lands or tenements of the yearly value of forty shillings. In cities and boroughs the right of voting is given to resident landholders whose tenements are worth an annual rental of ten pounds, but the rights of freemen in the old constituencies are preserved for life. By the Reform Bill of 1867 all these property qualifications were reduced, and the elective franchise was extended to several hundred thousand additional voters. By the Ballot Act of 1872 members of Parliament are elected by secret ballot, instead of by open voting, as before. By an express act of Parliament, no member of the House of Commons can be appointed to any office by the crown without resigning his seat; and no person elected to Parliament by any constituency can refuse to serve in the capacity to which he was chosen, even against his own will, except by formally resigning his seat in Parliament. By the Franchise Act, or the Reform Bill of 1884, the suffrage was made practically universal in Great Britain and Ireland, the elective franchise being extended to all men but criminals, paupers and lunatics.

17. *Legislation.—Speech from the throne.—Prorogation and dissolution.*—The House of Commons elects its own presiding officer, called the *Speaker*. Bills, in order to become laws, must pass three readings; and after being passed by both Houses of Parliament, must receive the royal assent before they can become laws. Every session of Parliament is opened by a *speech from the throne* to both Houses, the Ministers giving an account of the state of public affairs, and recommending to the consideration of Parliament certain measures of public policy. The act of proroguing Parliament, which means adjourning it for an indefinite time, is vested in the crown; but Parliament may adjourn its sittings to the next or to any future day. The power of dissolving Parliament is also vested in the crown, through its Ministers.

18. *The English Church.*—The established Church—known as the Church of England, the Anglican Church, or the Protestant Episcopal Church, as established during the reigns of Henry VIII., Edward VI. and Elizabeth—is under Government control. The sovereign is the head of the Church; and, as he is such, he must, therefore, be a member of that Church by law; being therefore the only individual in the worldwide British Empire who cannot choose his own religion. The first of the ecclesiastical dignitaries of the Church of England is the Archbishop of Canterbury, or the *Primate*, and next to him is the Archbishop of York. There are twenty-four other Bishops of the established Church. The two Archbishops and the twenty-four other Bishops are members of the House of Lords, as before noticed.

19. *Administration of justice.*—The king (or queen) is the source of executive justice; but law, whether criminal or civil, is administered by the Judges, who, excepting the Lord Chancellor, hold their offices during good behavior. The judiciary department in England and Ireland consists of the *Courts of Chan-*

cery, King's (or Queen's) Bench, Common Pleas, and Exchequer; in Scotland of the *Court of Sessions* and the *High Court of Justiciary*. In the rural districts *Circuit Courts* are held twice a year by itinerant justices. The House of Lords is the highest law court in the British Empire. A *Supreme Court* was recently established for appealed cases previously decided by the House of Lords. The Courts of King's (or Queen's) Bench are each presided over by a *Lord Chief Justice*. *Common law* is based on custom, or precedents established by decisions of the Courts. *Statute law* consists of Acts of Parliament. The *Law of Equity* is administered by the Lord Chancellor, in cases not covered by Statute law, and where justice can not be secured by the Common law. No man can be tried for any offence until a grand jury has decided that there is reasonable ground for the accusation; in which case the accused is handed for trial to a court of law, before a jury of twelve of his equals, and the verdict of that jury is final. No person can be tried twice for the same offence; and when a person is convicted by a jury there is no appeal but to the mercy of the crown. The civil and common law courts are open to every suitor, and justice is freely administered to all, of whatever rank or station. Treason against the government consists in insurrection against its authority or in adherence to its enemies.

MAGNA CHARTA.

(JUNE 15, 1215.)

[THE FOUNDATION OF THE FREE CONSTITUTION OF ENGLAND—THE BASIS OF ALL ENGLISH AND AMERICAN CONSTITUTIONAL LIBERTY.]

John, by the grace of God, King of England, Lord of Ireland, Duke of Normandy and Aquitaine, Count of Anjou, to the archbishops, bishops, abbots, earls, barons, justiciars, foresters, sheriffs, reeves, servants, and all bailiffs and his faithful people greeting. Know that by the suggestion of God and for the good of our soul and those of all our predecessors and of our heirs, to the honour of God and the exaltation of holy church, and the improvement of our kingdom, by the advice of our venerable fathers, Stephen, archbishop of Canterbury, primate of all England and cardinal of the holy Roman church, Henry, archbishop of Dublin, William of London, Peter of Winchester, Jocelyn of Bath and Glastonbury, Hugh of Lincoln, Walter of Worcester, William of Coventry, and Benedict of Rochester, bishops; of Master Pandulf, subdeacon and companion of the Lord Pope, of Brother Aymeric, master of the Knights of the Temple in England; and of the noblemen William Marshall, Earl of Pembroke, William, Earl of Salisbury, William, Earl of Warren, William, Earl of Arundel, Alan of Galloway, constable of Scotland, Warren Fitz-Gerald, Peter

Fitz-Herbert, Hubert de Burgh, steward of Poitou, Hugh de Nevil, Matthew Fitz-Herbert, Thomas Bassett, Alan Bassett, Philip d'Albini, Robert de Ropelay, John Marshall, John Fitz-Hugh, and others of our faithful.

1. In the first place we have granted to God, and by this our present charter confirmed, for us and our heirs forever, that the English church shall be free, and shall hold its rights entire and its liberties uninjured; and we will that it be thus observed; which is shown by this, that the freedom of elections, which is considered to be most important and especially necessary to the English church, we, of our pure and spontaneous will, granted, and by our charter confirmed, before the contest between us and our barons had arisen; and obtained a confirmation of it by the lord Pope innocent III.; which we will observe and which we will shall be observed in good faith for our heirs forever.

We have granted moreover to all free men of our kingdom for us and our heirs forever all the liberties written below, to be had and holden by themselves and their heirs from us and our heirs.

2. If any of our earls or barons, or others holding from us in chief by military service shall have died, and when he has died his heir is of full age and owe relief, he shall have his inheritance by the ancient relief; that is to say, the heir or heirs of an earl for the whole barony of an earl a hundred pounds; the heir or heirs of a baron for a whole barony a hundred pounds; the heir or heirs of a knight, for a whole knight's fee, a hundred shillings or more; and who owes less let him give less according to the ancient custom of fiefs.

3. If moreover the heir of any one of such shall be under age, and shall be in wardship, when he comes of age he shall have his inheritance without relief and without a fine.

4. The custodian of the land of such a minor heir shall not take from the land of the heir any except reasonable products, reasonable customary payments, and reasonable services, and this without destruction or waste of men or of property; and if we shall have committed the custody of the land of any such a one to the sheriff or to any other who is to be responsible to us for its proceeds, and that man has caused destruction or waste from his custody we will recover damages from him, and the land shall be committed to two legal and discreet men of that fief, who shall be responsible for its proceeds to us or to him to whom we have assigned them; and if we shall have given or sold to any one the custody of any such land, and he has caused destruction or waste there, he shall lose that custody, and it shall be handed over to two legal and discreet men of that fief who shall be in like manner responsible to us as is said above.

5. The custodian moreover, so long as he shall have the custody of the land, must keep up the houses, parks, warrens, fish ponds, mills, and other things pertaining to the land, from the proceeds of the land itself; and he must return to the heir, when he has come to full age, all his land, furnished with ploughs and implements of husbandry according as the time of wainage requires and as the proceeds of the land are able reasonably to sustain.

6. Heirs shall be married without disparagement, so nevertheless that before the marriage is contracted, it shall be announced to the relatives by blood of the heir himself.

7. A widow, after the death of her husband, shall have her marriage portion and her inheritance immediately and without obstruction, nor shall she give anything for her dowry or for her marriage portion, or for her inheritance which inheritance her husband and she held on the day of the death of her husband; and she may remain in the house of her husband for forty days after his death, within which time her dowry shall be assigned to her.

8. No widow shall be compelled to marry so long as she prefers to live without a husband, provided she gives security that she will not marry without our consent, if she holds from us, or without the consent of her lord from whom she holds, if she holds from another.

9. Neither we nor our bailiffs will seize any land or rent, for any debt, so long as the chattels of the debtor are sufficient for the payment of the debt; nor shall the pledges of a debtor be distrained so long as the principal debtor himself has enough for the payment of the debt; and if the principal debtor fails in the payment of the debt, not having the wherewithal to pay it, the pledges shall be responsible for the debt; and if they wish, they shall have the lands and the rents of the debtor until they shall have been satisfied for the debt which they have before paid for him, unless the principal debtor shall have shown himself to be quit in that respect towards those pledges.

10. If any one has taken anything from the Jews, by way of a loan, more or less, and dies before that debt is paid, the debt shall not draw interest so long as the heir is under age, from whomsoever he holds; and if that debt falls into our hands, we will take nothing except the chattel contained in the agreement.

11. And if any one dies leaving a debt owing to the Jews, his wife shall have her dowry, and shall pay nothing of that debt; and if there remain minor children of the dead man, necessities shall be provided for them corresponding to the holding of the dead man; and from the remainder shall be paid the debt, the service of the lords being retained. In the same way debts are to be treated which are owed to others than the Jews.

12. No scutage or aid shall be imposed in our kingdom except by the common council of our kingdom, except for the ransoming of our body, for the making of our oldest son a knight, and for once marrying our oldest daughter, and for these purposes it shall be only a reasonable aid; in the same way it shall be done concerning the aids of the city of London.

13. And the city of London shall have all its ancient liberties and free customs, as well by land as by water. Moreover, we will and grant that all other cities and boroughs and villages and ports shall have all their liberties and free customs.

14. And for holding a common council of the kingdom concerning the assessment of an aid otherwise than in the three cases mentioned above, or concern-

ing the assessment of a scutage, we shall cause to be summoned the archbishops, bishops, abbots, earls, and greater barons by our letters under seal; and besides we shall cause to be summoned generally, by our sheriffs and bailiffs, all those who hold from us in chief, for a certain day, that is at the end of forty days at least, and for a certain place; and in all the letters of that summons, we will express the cause of the summons, and when the summons has thus been given the business shall proceed on the appointed day, on the advice of those who shall be present, even if not all of those who were summoned have come.

15. We will not grant to any one, moreover, that he should take an aid from his free men, except for ransoming his body, for making his oldest son a knight, and for once marrying his oldest daughter; and for these purposes only a reasonable aid shall be taken.

16. No one shall be compelled to perform any greater service for a knight's fee, or for any other free tenement than is owed from it.

17. The common pleas shall not follow our court, but shall be held in some certain place.

18. The assizes of *novel disseisin*, *mort d'ancestor*, and *darrein presentment* shall be held only in their own counties and in this manner: we, or, if we are outside of the kingdom, our principal justiciar, will send two justiciars through each county four times a year, who with four knights of each county, elected by the county, shall hold in the county and on the day and in the place of the county court, the aforesaid assizes of the county.

19. And if the aforesaid assizes cannot be held within the day of the county court, a sufficient number of knights and free-holders shall remain from those who were present at the county court on that day to give the judgments, according as the business is more or less.

20. A free man shall not be fined for a small offense, except in proportion to the measure of the offense; and for a great offense he shall be fined in proportion to the magnitude of the offense, saving his freehold; and a merchant in the same way, saving his merchandise; and the villain shall be fined in the same way, saving his wainage, if he shall be at our mercy; and none of the above fines shall be imposed except by the oaths of honest men of the neighborhood.

21. Earls and barons shall only be fined by their peers, and only in proportion to their offense.

22. A clergyman shall be fined, like those before mentioned, only in proportion to his lay holding, and not according to the extent of his ecclesiastical benefice.

23. No manor or man shall be compelled to make bridges over the rivers except those which ought to do it of old and rightfully.

24. No sheriff, constable, coroners, or other bailiffs of ours shall hold pleas of our crown.

25. All counties, hundreds, wapentakes, and tithings shall be at the ancient rents and without any increase, excepting our demesne manors.

26. If any person holding a lay fief from us shall die, and our sheriff or bailiff shall show our letters-patent of our summons concerning a debt which the deceased owed to us, it shall be lawful for our sheriff or bailiff to attach and levy on the chattels of the deceased found on his lay lief, to the value of that debt, in the view of legal men, so nevertheless that nothing be removed thence until the clear debt to us shall be paid; and the remainder shall be left to the executors for the fulfilment of the will of the deceased; and if nothing is owed to us by him, all the chattels shall go to the deceased, saving to his wife and children their reasonable shares.

27. If any free man dies intestate, his chattels shall be distributed by the hands of his near relatives and friends, under the oversight of the church, saving to each one the debts which the deceased owed to him.

28. No constable or other bailiff of ours shall take anyone's grain or other chattels, without immediately paying for them in money, unless he is able to obtain a postponement at the good-will of the seller.

29. No constable shall require any knight to give money in place of his ward of a castle if he is willing to furnish that ward in his own person or through another honest man, if he himself is not able to do it for a reasonable cause; and if we shall lead or send him into the army he shall be free from ward in proportion to the amount of time by which he has been in the army through us.

30. No sheriff or bailiff of ours or any one else shall take horses or wagons of any free man for carrying purposes except on the permission of that free man.

31. Neither we nor our bailiffs will take the wood of another man for castles, or for anything else which we are doing, except by the permission of him to whom the wood belongs.

32. We will not hold the lands of those convicted of a felony for more than a year and a day, after which the lands shall be returned to the lords of the fiefs.

33. All the fish-weirs in the Thames and the Medway, and throughout all England, shall be done away with, except those on the coast.

34. The writ which is called *Præcipe* shall not be given for the future to anyone concerning any tenement by which a free man can lose his court.

35. There shall be one measure of wine throughout our whole kingdom, and one measure of ale, and one measure of grain, that is the London quarter, and one width of dyed cloth and of russets and of balbergets, that is two ells within the selvages; of weights, moreover, it shall be as of measures.

36. Nothing shall henceforth be given or taken for a writ of inquisition concerning life or limbs, but it shall be given freely and not denied.

37. If anyone holds of us by fee farm or by soccage or by burgage, and from another he holds land by military service, we will not have the guardianship of the heir of his land which is of the fief of another, on account of that fee farm, or soccage, or burgage; nor will we have the custody of that fee farm, or soccage, or burgage, unless that fee farm itself owes military service. We

will not have the guardianship of the heir or of the land of anyone, which he holds from another by military service on account of any petty serjeanty which he holds from us by the service of paying to us knives or arrows, or things of that kind.

38. No bailiff for the future shall place anyone to his law on his simple affirmation, without credible witnesses brought for this purpose.

39. No free man shall be taken or imprisoned or dispossessed, or outlawed, or banished, or in any way destroyed, nor will we go upon him, nor send upon him, except by the legal judgment of his peers or by the law of the land.

40. To no one will we sell, to no one will we deny, or delay right or justice.

41. All merchants shall be safe and secure in going out from England and coming into England and in remaining and going through England, as well by land as by water, for buying and selling, free from all evil tolls, by the ancient and rightful customs, except in time of war, and if they are of a land at war with us; and if such are found in our land at the beginning of war, they shall be attached without injury to their bodies or goods, until it shall be known from us or from our principal justiciar in what way the merchants of our land are treated who shall be then found in the country which is at war with us; and if ours are safe there, the others shall be safe in our land.

42. It is allowed henceforth to anyone to go out from our kingdom, and to return, safely and securely, by land and by water, saving their fidelity to us, except in time of war for some short time, for the common good of the kingdom; excepting persons imprisoned and outlawed according to the law of the realm, and people of a land at war with us, and merchants, of whom it shall be done as is before said.

43. If anyone holds from any escheat, as from the honour of Wallingford, or Nottingham, or Boulogne, or Lancaster, or from other escheats which are in our hands and are baronies, and he dies, his heir shall not give any other relief, nor do to us any other service than he would do to the baron, if that barony was in the hands of the baron; and we will hold it in the same way as the baron held it.

44. Men who dwell outside the forest shall not henceforth come before our justiciars of the forest, on common summons, unless they are in a plea of, or pledges for any person or persons who are arrested on account of the forest.

45. We will not make justiciars, constables, sheriffs or bailiffs except of such as know the law of the realm and are well inclined to observe it.

46. All barons who have founded abbeys for which they have charters of kings of England, or ancient tenure, shall have their custody when they have become vacant, as they ought to have.

47. All forests which have been afforested in our time shall be disafforested immediately; and so it shall be concerning river banks which in our time have been fenced in.

48. All the bad customs concerning forests and warrens and concerning foresters and warreners, sheriffs and their servants, river banks and their

guardians shall be inquired into immediately in each county by twelve sworn knights of the same county, who shall be elected by the honest men of the same county, and within fifty days after the inquisition has been made, they shall be entirely destroyed by them, never to be restored, provided that we be first informed of it, or our justiciar, if we are not in England.

49. We will give back immediately all hostages and charters which have been liberated to us by Englishmen as security for peace or for faithful service.

50. We will remove absolutely from their bailiwicks the relatives of Gerard de Athyes, so that for the future they shall have no bailiwick in England; Engelard de Cygony, Andrew, Peter and Gyon de Chancelles, Gyon de Cygony, Geoffrey de Martin and his brothers, Philip Mark and his brothers, and Geoffrey his nephew and their whole retinue.

51. And immediately after the re-establishment of peace we will remove from the kingdom all foreign-born soldiers, cross-bow men, servants, and mercenaries who have come with horses and arms for the injury of the realm.

52. If anyone shall have been dispossessed or removed by us without legal judgment of his peers, from his lands, castles, franchises, or his right we will restore them to him immediately; and if contention arises about this, then it shall be done according to the judgment of the twenty-five barons, of whom mention is made below concerning the security of the peace. Concerning all those things, however, from which anyone has been removed or of which he has been deprived without legal judgment of his peers by King Henry our father, or by King Richard our brother, which we have in our hand, or which others hold, and which it is our duty to guarantee, we shall have respite till the usual term of crusaders; excepting those things about which the suit has been begun or the inquisition made by our writ before our assumption of the cross; when, however, we shall return from our journey, or if by chance we desist from the journey, we will immediately show full justice in regard to them.

53. We shall, moreover have the same respite and in the same manner about showing justice in regard to the forests which are to be disafforested or to remain forests, which Henry our father or Richard our brother made into forests; and concerning the custody of lands which are in the fief of another, custody of which we have until now had on account of a fief which anyone has held from us by military service; and concerning the abbeys which have been founded in fiefs of others than ourselves, in which the lord of the fee has asserted for himself a right; and when we return or if we should desist from our journey we will immediately show full justice to those complaining in regard to them.

54. No one shall be seized nor imprisoned on the appeal of a woman concerning the death of any one except her husband.

55. All fines which have been imposed unjustly and against the law of the land, and all penalties imposed unjustly and against the law of the land are altogether excused, or will be on the judgment of the twenty-five barons of whom mention is made below in connection with the security of the peace, or on

the judgment of the majority of them, along with the aforesaid Stephen, archbishop of Canterbury, if he is able to be present, and others whom he may wish to call for this purpose along with him. And if he should not be able to be present, nevertheless the business shall go on without him, provided that if any one or more of the aforesaid twenty-five barons are in a similar suit they should be removed as far as this particular judgment goes, and others who shall be chosen and put upon oath, by the remainder of the twenty-five shall be substituted for them for this purpose.

56. If we have dispossessed or removed any Welshmen from their lands, or franchises, or other things, without legal judgment of their peers, in England, or in Wales, they shall be immediately returned to them; and if a dispute shall have arisen over this, then it shall be settled in the borderland by judgment of their peers, concerning holdings of England according to the law of England, concerning holdings of Wales according to the law of Wales, and concerning holdings of the borderland according to the law of the borderland. The Welsh shall do the same to us and ours.

57. Concerning all these things, however, from which any one of the Welsh shall have been removed or dispossessed without legal judgment of his peers, by King Henry our father, or King Richard our brother, which we hold in our hands, or which others hold, and we are bound to warrant to them, we shall have respite till the usual period of crusaders, those being excepted about which suit was begun or inquisition made by our command before our assumption of the cross. When, however, we shall return or if by chance we shall desist from our journey, we will show full justice to them immediately, according to the laws of the Welsh and the aforesaid parts.

58. We will give back the son of Lewellyn immediately, and all the hostages from Wales and the charters which had been liberated to us as a security for peace.

59. We will act toward Alexander, king of the Scots, concerning the return of his sisters and his hostages, and concerning his franchises and his right, according to the manner in which we shall act toward our other barons of England, unless it ought to be otherwise by the charters which we hold from William his father, formerly king of the Scots, and this shall be by the judgment of his peers in our court.

60. Moreover, all those customs and franchises mentioned above which we have conceded in our kingdom, and which are to be fulfilled, as far as pertains to us, in respect to our men; all men of our kingdom as well clergy as laymen, shall observe as far as pertains to them, in respect to their men.

61. Since, moreover, for the sake of God, and for the improvement of our kingdom, and for the better quieting of the hostility sprung up lately between us and our barons, we have made all these concessions; wishing them to enjoy these in a complete and firm stability forever, we make and concede to them the security described below; that is to say, that they shall elect twenty-five

barons of the kingdom, whom they will, who ought with all their power to observe, hold, and cause to be observed, the peace and liberties which we have conceded to them, and by this our present charter confirmed to them; in this manner, that if we or our justiciar, or our bailiffs, or any one of our servants shall have done wrong in any way toward any one, or shall have transgressed any of the articles of peace or security; and the wrong shall have been shown to four barons of the aforesaid twenty-five barons, let those four barons come to us or to our justiciar, if we are out of the kingdom, laying before us the transgression, and let them ask that we cause that transgression to be corrected without delay. And if we shall not have corrected the transgression, or if we shall be out of the kingdom, if our justiciar shall not have corrected it within a period of forty days, counting from the time in which it has been shown to us or to our justiciar, if we are out of the kingdom; the aforesaid four barons shall refer the matter to the remainder of the twenty-five barons, and let these twenty-five barons with the whole community of the country distress and injure us in every way they can; that is to say by the seizure of our castles, lands, possessions, and in such other ways as they can until it shall have been corrected according to their judgment, saving our person and that of our queen, and those of our children; and when the correction has been made, let them devote themselves to us as they did before. And let whoever in the country wishes take an oath that in all the above-mentioned measures he will obey the orders of the aforesaid twenty-five barons, and that he will injure us as far as he is able with them, and we give permission to swear publicly and freely to each one who wishes to swear, and no one will we ever forbid to swear. All those, moreover, in the country who of themselves and their own will are unwilling to take an oath to the twenty-five barons as to distressing and injuring us along with them, we will compel to take the oath by our mandate, as before said. And if any one of the twenty-five barons shall have died or departed from the land or shall in any other way be prevented from taking the above-mentioned action, let the remainder of the aforesaid twenty-five barons choose another in his place, according to their judgment, who shall take an oath in the same way as the others. In all those things, moreover, which are committed to those five and twenty barons to carry out, if perhaps the twenty-five are present, and some disagreement arises among them about something, or if any of them when they have been summoned are not willing or are not able to be present, let that be considered valid and firm which the greater part of those who are present arrange or command, just as if the whole twenty-five had agreed in this; and let the aforesaid twenty-five swear that they will observe faithfully all the things which are said above, and with all their ability cause them to be observed. And we will obtain nothing from anyone, either by ourselves or by another by which any of these concessions and liberties shall be revoked or diminished; and if any such thing shall have been obtained, let it be invalid and void, and we will never use it by ourselves or by another.

62. And all ill-will, grudges, and anger sprung up between us and our men, clergy and laymen, from the time of the dispute, we have fully renounced and pardoned to all. Moreover, all transgressions committed on account of this dispute, from Easter in the sixteenth year of our reign till the restoration of peace, we have fully remitted to all, clergy and laymen, and as far as pertains to us, fully pardoned. And moreover we have caused to be made for them testimonial letters-patent of lord Stephen, archbishop of Canterbury, lord Henry, archbishop of Dublin, and of the aforesaid bishops and of master Pandulf, in respect to that security and the concession named above.

Wherefore we will and firmly command that the Church of England shall be free, and that the men of our kingdom shall have and hold all the aforesaid liberties, rights and concessions, well and peaceably, freely and quietly, fully and completely, for themselves and their heirs, from us and our heirs, in all things and places, forever, as before said. It has been sworn, moreover, as well on our part as on the part of the barons, that all these things spoken of above shall be observed in good faith and without any evil intent. Witness the above named and many others. Given by our hand in the meadow which is called Runnymede, between Windsor and Staines, on the fifteenth day of June, in the seventeenth year of our reign.

PETITION OF RIGHT.

(JUNE 7, 1628.)

[SECOND GREAT CHARTER OF ENGLISH LIBERTY.]

The Petition Exhibited to His Majesty by the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons in this Present Parliament Assembled, Concerning Divers Rights and Liberties of the Subjects, with the King's Majesty's Royal Answer Thereunto in Full Parliament

To the King's Most Excellent Majesty.

Humbly show unto our Sovereign Lord the King, the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons in Parliament assembled, that whereas it is declared and enacted by a statute made in the time of the reign of King Edward the First, commonly called *Statutum de Tallagio non concedendo*, that no tallage or aid shall be laid or levied by the King or his heirs in this realm, without the goodwill and assent of the Archbishops, Bishops, Earls, Barons, Knights, Burgesses, and other the freemen of the commonality of this realm: and by authority of Parliament holden in the five and twentieth year of the reign of King Edward the Third, it is declared and enacted, that from thenceforth no person shall be compelled to make any loans to the King against his will, because such loans

were against reason and the franchise of the land; and by other laws of this realm it is provided, that none should be charged by any charge or imposition, called a Benevolence, or by such like charge, by which the statutes before-mentioned, and other the good laws and statutes of this realm, your subjects have inherited this freedom, that they should not be compelled to contribute to any tax, tallage, aid, or other like charge, not set by common consent in Parliament:

Yet nevertheless, of late divers commissions directed to sundry Commissioners in several counties with instructions have issued, by means whereof your people have been in divers places assembled, and required to lend certain sums of money unto your Majesty, and many of them upon their refusal so to do, have had an oath administered unto them, not warrantable by the laws or statutes of this realm, and have been constrained to become bound to make appearance and give attendance before your Privy Council, and in other places, and others of them have been therefore imprisoned, confined, and sundry other ways molested and disquieted: and divers other charges have been laid and levied upon your people in several counties, by Lords Lieutenants, Deputy Lieutenants, Commissioners for Musters, Justices of Peace and others, by command or direction from your Majesty or your Privy Council, against the laws and free customs of this realm:

And where also by the statute called, 'The Great Charter of the Liberties of England,' it is declared and enacted, that no freeman may be taken or imprisoned or be disseised of his freeholds or liberties, or his free customs, or be outlawed or exiled; or in any manner destroyed, but by the lawful judgment of his peers, or by the law of the land:

And in the eight and twentieth year of the reign of King Edward the Third, it was declared and enacted by authority of Parliament, that no man of what estate or condition that he be, should be put out of his land or tenements, nor taken, nor imprisoned, nor disherited, nor put to death, without being brought to answer by due process of law:

Nevertheless, against the tenor of the said statutes, and other the good laws and statutes of your realm, to that end provided, divers of your subjects have of late been imprisoned without any cause showed, and when for their deliverance they were brought before your Justices, by your Majesty's writs of Habeas Corpus, there to undergo and receive as the Court should order, and their keepers commanded to certify the causes of their detainer; no cause was certified, but that they were detained by your Majesty's special command, signified by the Lords of your Privy Council, and yet were returned back to several prisons, without being charged with anything to which they might make answer according to the law:

And whereas of late great companies of soldiers and mariners have been dispersed into divers counties of the realm, and the inhabitants against their wills have been compelled to receive them into their houses, and there to suffer them to sojourn, against the laws and customs of this realm, and to the great grievance and vexation of the people:

And whereas also by authority of Parliament, in the five and twentieth year of the reign of King Edward the Third, it is declared and enacted, that no man shall be forejudged of life or limb against the form of the Great Charter, and the law of the land: and by the said Great Charter and other the laws and statutes of this your realm, no man ought to be adjudged to death; but by the laws established in this your realm, either by the customs of the same realm or by Acts of Parliament: and whereas no offender of what kind soever is exempted from the proceedings to be used, and punishments to be inflicted by the laws and statutes of this your realm: nevertheless of late time divers commissions under your Majesty's Great Seal have issued forth, by which certain persons have been assigned and appointed Commissioners with power and authority to proceed within the land according to the justice of martial law against such soldiers or mariners, or other dissolute persons joining with them, as should commit any murder, robbery, felony, mutiny, or other outrage or misdemeanour whatsoever, and by such summary course and order, as is agreeable to martial law, and is used in armies in time of war, to proceed to the trial and condemnation of such offenders, and them to cause to be executed and put to death, according to the law martial:

By pretext whereof, some of your Majesty's subjects have been by some of the said Commissioners put to death, when and where, if by the laws and statutes of the land they had deserved death, by the same laws and statutes also they might, and by no other ought to have been, judged and executed:

And also sundry grievous offenders by colour thereof, claiming an exemption, have escaped the punishments due to them by the laws and statutes of this your realm, by reason that divers of your officers and ministers of justice have unjustly refused, or forborne to proceed against such offenders according to the same laws and statutes, upon pretence that the said offenders were punishable only by martial law, and by authority of such commissions as aforesaid, which commissions, and all other of like nature, are wholly and directly contrary to the said laws and statutes of this your realm:

They do therefore humbly pray your Most Excellent Majesty, that no man hereafter be compelled to make or yield any gift, loan, benevolence, tax, or such like charge, without common consent by Act of Parliament; and that none be called to make answer, or take such oath, or to give attendance, or be confined, or otherwise molested or disquieted concerning the same, or for refusal thereof; and that no freeman, in any such manner as is before-mentioned, be imprisoned or detained; and that your Majesty will be pleased to remove the said soldiers and mariners, and that your people may not be so burdened in time to come; and that the aforesaid commissions for proceeding by martial law, may be revoked and annulled; and that hereafter no commissions of like nature may issue forth to any person or persons whatsoever, to be executed as aforesaid, lest by colour of them any of your Majesty's subjects be destroyed or put to death, contrary to the laws and franchise of the land.

All which they most humbly pray of your Most Excellent Majesty, as their rights and liberties according to the laws and statutes of this realm: and that your Majesty would also vouchsafe to declare, that the awards, doings, and proceedings to the prejudice of your people, in any of the premises, shall not be drawn hereafter into consequence or example: and that your Majesty would be also graciously pleased, for the further comfort and safety of your people, to declare your royal will and pleasure, that in the things aforesaid all your officers and ministers shall serve you, according to the laws and statutes of this realm, as they tender the honour of your Majesty, and the prosperity of this kingdom.

[The King's first answer, June 2, 1628:

The King willeth that right be done according to the laws and customs of the realm; and that the statutes be put in due execution, that his subjects may have no cause to complain of any wrong or oppressions, contrary to their just rights and liberties, to the preservation whereof he holds himself as well obliged as of his prerogative.

The King's second answer, June 7, 1628:

Soit droit fait comme il est désiré.]

HABEAS CORPUS ACT.

(1679.)

[AN ACT FOR PERSONAL SECURITY AGAINST ARBITRARY ARRESTS.]

An Act for the better securing the Liberty of the Subject, and for Prevention of Imprisonments beyond the Seas.

I. Whereas great delays have been used by sheriffs, gaolers, and other officers, to whose custody any of the king's subjects have been committed for criminal or supposed criminal matters, in making returns of writs of *Habeas Corpus* to them directed, by standing out an *Alias* and *Pluries Habeas Corpus*, and sometimes more, and by other shifts to avoid their yielding obedience to such writs, contrary to their duty and the known laws of the land, whereby many of the king's subjects have been and hereafter may be long detained in prison, in such cases where by law they are bailable, to their great charges and vexation:

II. For the prevention whereof, and the more speedy relief of all persons imprisoned for any such criminal or supposed criminal matters; be it enacted by the King's most excellent Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament assembled, and by the authority thereof, that whensoever any person or persons shall bring any *Habeas Corpus* directed unto any sheriff or sheriffs, gaoler,

minister, or other person whatsoever, for any person in his or their custody, and the said writ shall be served upon the said officer, or left at the gaol or prison with any of the under-officers, under-keepers or deputy of the said officers or keepers, that the said officer or officers, his or their under-officers, under-keepers or deputies, shall within three days after the service thereof as aforesaid (unless the commitment aforesaid were for treason or felony, plainly and specially expressed in the warrant of commitment) upon payment or tender of the charges of bringing the said prisoner, to be ascertained by the judge or court that awarded the same, and endorsed upon the said writ, not exceeding twelve pence per mile, and upon security given by his own bond to pay the charges of carrying back the prisoner, if he shall be remanded by the court or judge to which he shall be brought according to the true intent of this present act, and that he will not make any escape by the way, make return of such writ; and bring or cause to be brought the body of the party so committed or restrained, unto or before the Lord Chancellor, or Lord Keeper of the great seal of England for the time being, or the judges or barons of the said court from whence the said writ shall issue, or unto and before such other person or persons before whom the said writ is made returnable, according to the command thereof; and shall then likewise certify the true causes of his detainer or imprisonment, unless the commitment of the said party be in any place beyond the distance of twenty miles from the place or places where such court or person is or shall be residing; and if beyond the distance of twenty miles, and not above one hundred miles, then within the space of ten days, and if beyond the distance of one hundred miles, then within the space of twenty days, after the delivery aforesaid, and not longer.

III. And to the intent that no sheriff, gaoler or other officer may pretend ignorance of the import of any such writ; be it enacted by the authority aforesaid, that all such writs shall be marked in this manner, *per statutum tricesimo primo Caroli secundi regis*, and shall be signed by the person that awards the same; and if any person or persons shall be or stand committed or detained as aforesaid, for any crime, unless for treason or felony plainly expressed in the warrant of commitment, in the vacation-time, and out of term, it shall and may be lawful to and for the person or persons so committed or detained (other than persons convict or in execution) by legal process or any one on his or their behalf, to appeal or complain to the Lord Chancellor or Lord Keeper, or any one of his Majesty's justices, either of the one bench or of the other, or the barons of the exchequer of the degree of the coif; and the said Lord Chancellor, Lord Keeper, justices or barons or any of them, upon view of the copy or copies of the warrant or warrants of commitment and detainer, or otherwise upon oath made that such copy or copies were denied to be given by such person or persons in whose custody the prisoner or prisoners is or are detained, are hereby authorized, and required, upon request made in writing by such person or persons or any on his, her or their behalf, attested and subscribed by two witnesses who

were present at the delivery of the same, to award and grant an *Habeas Corpus* under the seal of such court whereof he shall then be one of the judges, to be directed to the officer or officers in whose custody the party so committed or detained shall be, returnable immediate before the said Lord Chancellor or Lord Keeper, or such justice, baron or any other justice or baron, of the degree of the coif of any of the said courts; and upon service thereof as aforesaid, the officer or officers, his or their under-officer or under-officers, under-keeper or under-keepers, or their deputy, in whose custody the party is so committed or detained, shall within the times respectively before limited, bring such prisoner or prisoners before the said Lord Chancellor or Lord Keeper, or such justices, barons, or one of them, before whom the said writ is made returnable, and in case of his absence before any of them, with the return of such writ, and the true causes of the commitment and detainer; and thereupon within two days after the party shall be brought before them, the said Lord Chancellor or Lord Keeper, or such justice or baron before whom the prisoner shall be brought as aforesaid, shall discharge the said prisoner from his imprisonment, taking his or their recognizance, with one or more surety or sureties, in any sum according to their discretions, having regard to the quality of the prisoner and nature of the offence, for his or their appearance in the court of king's bench the term following, or at the next assizes, sessions, or general gaol-delivery of and for such county, city, or place where the commitment was, or where the offence was committed, or in such other court where the said offence is properly cognizable, as the case shall require, and then shall certify the said writ with the return thereof, and the said recognizance or recognizances into the said court where such appearance is to be made; unless it shall appear unto the said Lord Chancellor or Lord Keeper, or justice or justices, or baron or barons, that the party so committed is detained upon a legal process, order or warrant, out of some court that hath jurisdiction of criminal matters, or by some warrant signed and sealed with the hand and seal of any of the said justices or barons, or some justice or justices of the peace, for such matters or offences for the which by the law the prisoner is not bailable.

IV. Provided always, and be it enacted, that if any person shall have wilfully neglected by the space of two whole terms after his imprisonment, to pray a *Habeas Corpus* for his enlargement, such person so wilfully neglecting shall not have any *Habeas Corpus* to be granted in vacation-time, in pursuance of this act.

V. And be it further enacted by the authority aforesaid, that if any officer or officers, his or their under-officer or under-officers, under-keeper or under-keepers, or deputy, shall neglect or refuse to make the returns aforesaid, or to bring the body or bodies of the prisoner or prisoners according to the command of the said writ, within the respective times aforesaid, or upon demand made by the prisoner or person in his behalf, shall refuse to deliver, or within the space of six hours after demand shall not deliver, to the person so demanding, a true copy of the warrant or warrants of commitment and detainer of such prisoner,

which he and they are hereby required to deliver accordingly; all and every the head gaolers and keepers of such prisons, and such other person in whose custody the prisoner shall be detained, shall for the first offence forfeit to the prisoner or party grieved the sum of one hundred pounds; and for the second offence the sum of two hundred pounds, and shall and is hereby made incapable to hold or execute his said office; the said penalties to be recovered by the prisoner or party grieved, his executors or administrators, against such offender, his executors or administrators, by any action of debt, suit, bill, plaint, or information, in any of the king's courts at Westminster, wherein no essoin, protection, privilege, injunction, wager of law, or stay of prosecution by *non vult ulterius prosequi*, or otherwise, shall be admitted or allowed, or any more than one imparlance; and any recovery or judgment at the suit of any party grieved, shall be a sufficient conviction for the first offence; and any after recovery or judgment at the suit of a party grieved for any offence after the first judgment, shall be a sufficient conviction to bring the officers or person within the said penalty for the second offence.

VI. And for the prevention of unjust vexation by reiterated commitments for the same offence; be it enacted by the authority aforesaid, that no person or persons which shall be delivered or set at large upon any *Habeas Corpus*, shall at any time hereafter be again imprisoned or committed for the same offence by any person or persons whatsoever, other than by the legal order and process of such court wherein he or they shall be bound by recognizance to appear, or other court having jurisdiction of the cause; and if any other person or persons shall knowingly contrary to this act recommit or imprison, or knowingly procure or cause to be recommitted or imprisoned, for the same offence or pretended offence, any person or persons delivered or set at large as aforesaid, or be knowingly aiding or assisting therein, then he or they shall forfeit to the prisoner or party grieved the sum of five hundred pounds; any colourable pretence or variation in the warrant or warrants of commitment notwithstanding, to be recovered as aforesaid.

VII. Provided always, and be it further enacted, that if any person or persons shall be committed for high treason or felony, plainly and specially expressed in the warrant of commitment, upon his prayer or petition in open court the first week of the term, or first day of the sessions of Oyer and Terminer or general gaol-delivery, to be brought to his trial, shall not be indicted some time in the next term, sessions of Oyer and Terminer or general gaol-delivery, after such commitment; it shall and may be lawful to and for the judges of the court of king's bench and justices of Oyer and Terminer or general gaol-delivery, and they are hereby required, upon motion to them made in open court the last day of the term, sessions or gaol-delivery, either by the prisoner or any one in his behalf, to set at liberty the prisoner upon bail, unless it appears to the judges and justices upon oath made, that the witnesses for the king could not be produced the same term, sessions or general gaol-delivery; and if any person

or persons committed as aforesaid, upon his prayer or petition in open court the first week of the term or first day of the sessions of Oyer and Terminer or general gaol-delivery, to be brought to his trial, shall not be indicted and tried the second term, sessions of Oyer and Terminer or general gaol-delivery, after his commitment, or upon his trial shall be acquitted, he shall be discharged from his imprisonment.

VIII. Provided always, that nothing in this act shall extend to discharge out of prison any person charged in debt, or other action, or with process in any civil cause, but that after he shall be discharged of his imprisonment for such his criminal offence, he shall be kept in custody according to the law, for such other suit.

IX. Provided always, and be it enacted by the authority aforesaid, that if any person or persons, subject of this realm, shall be committed to any prison or in custody of any officer or officers whatsoever, for any criminal or supposed criminal matter, that the said person shall not be removed from the said prison and custody into the custody of any other officer or officers; unless it be by *Habeas Corpus* or some other legal writ; or where the prisoner is delivered to the constable or other inferior officer to carry such prisoner to some common gaol: or where any person is sent by order of any judge of assize or justice of the peace to any common workhouse or house of correction; or where the prisoner is removed from one prison or place to another within the same county, in order to his or her trial or discharge in due course of law; or in case of sudden fire or infection, or other necessity; and if any person or persons shall after such commitment aforesaid make out and sign, or countersign any warrant or warrants for such removal aforesaid, contrary to this act; as well he that makes or signs, or countersigns such warrant or warrants as the officer or officers that obey or execute the same, shall suffer and incur the pains and forfeitures in this act before mentioned, both for the first and second offence respectively, to be recovered in manner aforesaid by the party grieved.

X. Provided also, and be it further enacted by the authority aforesaid, that it shall and may be lawful to and for any prisoner and prisoners as aforesaid, to move and obtain his or their *Habeas Corpus* as well out of the high court of chancery or court of exchequer, as out of the courts of king's bench or common pleas, or either of them; and if the said Lord Chancellor or Lord Keeper, or any judge or judges, baron or barons for the time being, of the degree of the coif, of any of the courts aforesaid, in the vacation-time, upon view of the copy or copies of the warrant or warrants of commitment or detainer, or upon oath made that such copy or copies were denied as aforesaid, shall deny any writ of *Habeas Corpus* by this act required to be granted, being moved for as aforesaid, they shall severally forfeit to the prisoner or party grieved the sum of five hundred pounds, to be recovered in manner aforesaid.

XI. And be it enacted and declared by the authority aforesaid, that an *Habeas Corpus* according to the true intent and meaning of this act, may be

directed and run into any county palatine, the cinque-ports, or other privileged places within the kingdom of England, dominion of Wales, or town of Berwick upon Tweed, and the islands of Jersey or Guernsey; any law or usage to the contrary notwithstanding.

XII. And for preventing illegal imprisonments in prisons beyond the seas; be it further enacted by the authority aforesaid, that no subject of this realm that now is, or hereafter shall be an inhabitant or resiant of this kingdom of England, dominion of Wales, or town of Berwick upon Tweed, shall or may be sent prisoner into Scotland, Ireland, Jersey, Guernsey, Tangier, or into parts, garrisons, islands or places beyond the seas, which are or at any time hereafter shall be within or without the dominions of his Majesty, his heirs or successors; and that every such imprisonment is hereby enacted and adjudged to be illegal; and that if any of the said subjects now is or hereafter shall be so imprisoned, every such person and persons so imprisoned, shall and may for every such imprisonment maintain by virtue of this act an action or actions of false imprisonment, in any of his Majesty's courts of record, against the person or persons by whom he or she shall be so committed, detained, imprisoned, sent prisoner or transported, contrary to the true meaning of this act, and against all or any person or persons that shall frame, contrive, write, seal or countersign any warrant or writing for such commitment, detainer, imprisonment, or transportation, or shall be advising, aiding or assisting in the same, or any of them; and the plaintiff in every such action shall have judgment to recover his treble costs, besides damages, which damages so to be given, shall not be less than five hundred pounds; in which action no delay, stay or stop of proceeding by rule, order or command, nor no injunction, protection or privilege whatsoever, nor any more than one imparlance shall be allowed, excepting such rule of the court wherein the action shall depend, made in open court, as shall be thought in justice necessary, for special cause to be expressed in the said rule; and the person or persons who shall knowingly frame, contrive, write, seal or countersign any warrant for such commitment, detainer, or transportation, or shall so commit, detain, imprison or transport any person or persons contrary to this act, or be any ways advising, aiding or assisting therein, being lawfully convicted thereof, shall be disabled from thenceforth to bear any office of trust or profit within the said realm of England, dominion of Wales, or town of Berwick upon Tweed, or any of the islands, territories or dominions thereunto belonging; and shall incur and sustain the pains, penalties, and forfeitures limited, ordained and provided in and by the statute of Provision and *Præmunire* made in the sixteenth year of King Richard the Second; and be incapable of any pardon from the king, his heirs or successors, of the said forfeitures, losses, or disabilities, or any of them.

XIII. Provided always, that nothing in this act shall extend to give benefit to any person who shall by contract in writing agree with any merchant or owner of any plantation, or other person whatsoever, to be transported to any

parts beyond the seas, and receive earnest upon such agreement, although that afterwards such persons shall renounce such contract .

XIV. Provided always, and be it enacted, that if any person or persons lawfully convicted of any felony, shall in open court pray to be transported beyond the seas, and the court shall think fit to leave him or them in prison for that purpose, such person or persons may be transported into any parts beyond the seas; this act, or anything therein contained to the contrary notwithstanding.

XV. Provided also, and be it enacted, that nothing herein contained shall be deemed, construed or taken, to extend to the imprisonment of any person before the first day of June one thousand six hundred seventy and nine, or to anything advised, procured, or otherwise done, relating to such imprisonment; anything herein contained to the contrary notwithstanding.

XVI. Provided also, that if any person or persons at any time residing in this realm, shall have committed any capital offence in Scotland or Ireland, or any of the islands, or foreign plantations of the king, his heirs or successors, where he or she ought to be tried for such offence, such person or persons may be sent to such place, there to receive such trial, in such manner as the same might have been used before the making of this act; anything herein contained to the contrary notwithstanding.

XVII. Provided also, and be it enacted, that no person or persons shall be sued, impleaded, molested or troubled for any offence against this act, unless the party offending be sued or impleaded for the same within two years at the most after such time wherein the offence shall be committed, in case the party grieved shall not be then in prison; and if he shall be in prison, then within the space of two years after the decease of the person imprisoned, or his or her delivery out of prison, which shall first happen.

XVIII. And to the intent no person may avoid his trial at the assizes or general gaol-delivery, by procuring his removal before the assizes, at such time as he cannot be brought back to receive his trial there; be it enacted, that after the assizes proclaimed for that county where the prisoner is detained, no person shall be removed from the common gaol upon any *Habeas Corpus* granted in pursuance of this act, but upon any such *Habeas Corpus* shall be brought before the judge of assize in open court, who is thereupon to do what to justice shall appertain.

XIX. Provided nevertheless, that after the assizes are ended, any person or persons detained, may have his or her *Habeas Corpus* according to the direction and intention of this act.

XX. And be it also enacted by the authority aforesaid, that if any information, suit or action shall be brought or exhibited against any person or persons for any offence committed or to be committed against the form of this law, it shall be lawful for such defendants to plead the general issue, that they are not guilty, or that they owe nothing, and to give such special matter in evidence to the jury that shall try the same, which matter being pleaded had been good

and sufficient matter in law to have discharged the said defendant or defendants against the said information, suit or action, and the said matter shall be then as available to him or them, to all intents or purposes, as if he or they had sufficiently pleaded, set forth or alleged the same matter in bar or discharge of such information, suit or action.

XXI. And because many times persons charged with petty treason or felony, or as accessaries thereunto, are committed upon suspicion only, whereupon they are bailable, or not, according as the circumstances making out that suspicion are more or less weighty, which are best known to the justices of peace that committed the persons, and have the examinations before them, or to other justices of peace in the county: be it therefore enacted, that where any person shall appear to be committed by any judge or justice of the peace, and charged as accessory before the fact, to any petty treason, or felony, or upon suspicion thereof, or with suspicion of petty treason or felony, which petty treason or felony shall be plainly and specially expressed in the warrant of commitment, that such person shall not be removed or bailed by virtue of this act, or in any other manner than they might have been before the making of this act.

BILL OF RIGHTS.

(1689.)

[THIRD GREAT CHARTER OF ENGLISH LIBERTY.]

An Act Declaring the Rights and Liberties of the Subject and Settling the Succession of the Crown.

Whereas the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, assembled at Westminster, lawfully, fully, and freely representing all the estates of the people of this realm, did, upon the thirteenth day of February, in the year of our Lord one thousand six hundred eighty-eight, present unto their Majesties, then called and known by the names and style of William and Mary, Prince and Princess of Orange, being present in their proper persons, a certain declaration in writing, made by the said Lords and Commons, in the words following; viz:—

Whereas the late King James II., by the assistance of diverse evil counsellors, judges, and ministers employed by him, did endeavour to subvert and extirpate the Protestant religion, and the laws and liberties of this kingdom:—

1. By assuming and exercising a power of dispensing with and suspending of laws, and the execution of laws, without consent of Parliament.

2. By committing and prosecuting divers worthy prelates, for humbly petitioning to be excused from concurring to the same assumed power.

3. By issuing and causing to be executed a commission under the Great Seal for erecting a court, called the Court of Commissioners for Ecclesiastical Causes.

4. By levying money for and to the use of the Crown, by pretence of prerogative, for other time, and in other manner than the same was granted by Parliament.

5. By raising and keeping a standing army within this kingdom in time of peace, without consent of Parliament, and quartering soldiers contrary to law.

6. By causing several good subjects, being Protestants, to be disarmed, at the same time when Papists were both armed and employed contrary to law.

7. By violating the freedom of election of members to serve in Parliament.

8. By prosecutions in the Court of King's Bench, for matters and causes cognizable only in Parliament; and by diverse other arbitrary and illegal courses.

9. And whereas of late years, partial, corrupt, and unqualified persons have been returned and served on juries in trials, and particularly diverse jurors in trials for high treason, which were not freeholders.

10. And excessive bail hath been required of persons committed in criminal cases, to elude the benefit of the laws made for the liberty of the subjects.

11. And excessive fines have been imposed.

12. And illegal and cruel punishments inflicted.

13. And several grants and promises made of fines and forfeitures, before any conviction or judgment against the persons upon whom the same were to be levied.

All which are utterly and directly contrary to the known laws and statutes, and freedom of this realm.

And whereas the said late King James II. having abdicated the government, and the throne being thereby vacant, his Highness the Prince of Orange (whom it hath pleased Almighty God to make the glorious instrument of delivering this kingdom from popery and arbitrary power) did (by the advice of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and diverse principal persons of the Commons) cause letters to be written to the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, being Protestants, and other letters to the several counties, cities, universities, boroughs, and cinque ports, for the choosing of such persons to represent them, as were of right to be sent to Parliament, to meet and sit at Westminster upon the two-and-twentieth day of January, in this year one thousand six hundred eighty and eight, in order to such an establishment, as that their religion, laws and liberties might not again be in danger of being subverted; upon which letters, elections have been accordingly made.

And thereupon the said Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, pursuant to their respective letters and elections, being now assembled in a full and free representation of this nation, taking into their most serious consideration the best means for attaining the ends aforesaid, do in the first place (as their ancestors in like case have usually done), for the vindicating and asserting their ancient rights and liberties, declare:—

1. That the pretended power of suspending of laws, or the execution of laws, by regal authority, without consent of parliament, is illegal.

2. That the pretended power of dispensing with laws, or the execution of laws by regal authority, as it hath been assumed and exercised of late, is illegal.

3. That the commission for erecting the late Court of Commissioners for Ecclesiastical causes, and all other commissions and courts of like nature, are illegal and pernicious.

4. That levying money for or to the use of the Crown, by pretence of prerogative, without grant of parliament, for longer time or in other manner than the same is or shall be granted, is illegal.

5. That it is the right of the subjects to petition the king, and all commitments and prosecutions for such petitioning are illegal.

6. That the raising or keeping a standing army within the kingdom in time of peace, unless it be with consent of parliament, is against law.

7. That the subjects which are Protestants may have arms for their defence suitable to their conditions, and as allowed by law.

8. That election of members of parliament ought to be free.

9. That the freedom of speech, and debates or proceedings in parliament, ought not to be impeached or questioned in any court or place out of parliament.

10. That excessive bail ought not to be required, nor excessive fines imposed; nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

11. That jurors ought to be duly impanelled and returned, and jurors which pass upon men in trials for high treason ought to be freeholders.

12. That all grants and promises of fines and forfeitures of particular persons before conviction, are illegal and void.

13. And that for redress of all grievances, and for the amending, strengthening, and preserving of the laws, parliaments ought to be held frequently.

And they do claim, demand, and insist upon all and singular the premises, as their undoubted rights and liberties; and that no declarations, judgments, doings or proceedings, to the prejudice of the people in any of the said premises, ought in any wise to be drawn hereafter into consequence or example.

To which demand of their rights they are particularly encouraged by the declaration of his Highness the Prince of Orange, as being the only means for obtaining a full redress and remedy therein.

Having therefore an entire confidence that his said Highness the Prince of Orange will perfect the deliverance so far advanced by him, and will still preserve them from the violation of their rights, which they have here asserted, and from all other attempts upon their religion, rights, and liberties:

II. The said Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, assembled at Westminster, do resolve, that William and Mary, Prince and Princess of Orange, be, and be declared, King and Queen of England, France, and Ireland, and the dominions thereunto belonging, to hold the Crown and royal dignity of the said kingdoms and dominions to them the said Prince and Princess during their lives,

and the life of the survivor of them; and that the sole and full exercise of the regal power be only in, and executed by, the said Prince of Orange, in the names of the said Prince and Princess, during their joint lives; and after their deceases, the said Crown and royal dignity of the said kingdoms and dominions to be to the heirs of the body of the said Princess; and for default of such issue to the Princess Anne of Denmark, and the heirs of her body and for default of such issue to the heirs of the body of the said Prince of Orange. And the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, do pray the said Prince and Princess to accept the same accordingly.

III. And that the oaths hereafter mentioned be taken by all persons of whom the oaths of allegiance and supremacy might be required by law, instead of them; and that the said oaths of allegiance and supremacy be abrogated.

I, A. B., do sincerely promise and swear, That I will be faithful and bear true allegiance to their Majesties King William and Queen Mary:

So help me God.

I, A. B., do swear, That I do from my heart, abhor, detest, and abjure as impious and heretical, that damnable doctrine and position, that Princes excommunicated or deprived by the Pope, or any authority of the See of Rome, may be deposed or murdered by their subjects, or any other whatsoever. And I do declare, that no foreign prince, person, prelate, state, or potentate hath, or ought to have, any jurisdiction, power, superiority, pre-eminence, or authority ecclesiastical or spiritual, within this realm:

So help me God.

IV. Upon which their said Majesties did accept the Crown and royal dignity of the kingdoms of England, France, and Ireland, and the dominions thereunto belonging, according to the resolution and desire of the said Lords and Commons contained in the said declaration.

V. And thereupon their Majesties were pleased, that the said Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, being the two Houses of Parliament, should continue to sit, and with their Majesties' royal concurrence make effectual provision for the settlement of the religion, laws, and liberties of this kingdom, so that the same for the future might not be in danger again of being subverted; to which the said Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, did agree and proceed to act accordingly.

VI. Now in pursuance of the premises, the said Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in parliament assembled, for the ratifying, confirming, and establishing the said declaration, and the articles, clauses, matters, and things therein contained, by the force of a law made in due form by authority of parliament, do pray that it may be declared and enacted, That all and singular the rights and liberties asserted and claimed in the said declaration, are the true, ancient, and indubitable rights and liberties of the people of this

kingdom, and so shall be esteemed, allowed, adjudged, deemed, and taken to be, and that all and every the particulars aforesaid shall be firmly and strictly holden and observed, as they are expressed in the said declaration; and all officers and ministers whatsoever shall serve their Majesties and their successors according to the same in all times to come.

VII. And the said Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, seriously considering how it hath pleased Almighty God, in his marvellous providence, and merciful goodness to this nation, to provide and preserve their said Majesties' royal persons most happily to reign over us upon the throne of their ancestors, for which they render unto Him from the bottom of their hearts their humblest thanks and praises, do truly, firmly, assuredly, and in the sincerity of their hearts, think, and do hereby recognize, acknowledge, and declare, that King James II. having abdicated the government, and their Majesties having accepted the Crown and royal dignity aforesaid, their said Majesties did become, were, are, and of right ought to be, by the laws of this realm, our sovereign liege Lord and Lady, King and Queen of England, France, and Ireland, and the dominions thereunto belonging, in and to whose princely persons the royal State, Crown, and dignity of the same realms, with all honours, styles, titles, regalities, prerogatives, powers, jurisdictions and authorities to the same belonging and appertaining, are most fully, rightfully, and entirely invested and incorporated, united and annexed.

VIII. And for preventing all questions and divisions in this realm, by reason of any pretended titles to the Crown, and for preserving a certainty in the succession thereof, in and upon which the unity, peace, tranquillity, and safety of this nation doth, under God, wholly consist and depend, the said Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, do beseech their Majesties that it may be enacted, established, and declared, that the Crown and regal government of the said kingdoms and dominions, with all and singular the premises thereunto belonging and appertaining, shall be and continue to their said Majesties, and the survivor of them, during their lives, and the life of the survivor of them. And that the entire, perfect, and full exercises of the regal power and government be only in, and executed by, his Majesty, in the names of both their Majesties during their joint lives; and after their deceases the said Crown and premises shall be and remain to the heirs of the body of her Majesty: and for default of such issue, to her Royal Highness the Princess Anne of Denmark, and the heirs of her body; and for default of such issue, to the heirs of the body of his said Majesty: and thereunto the said Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, do, in the name of all the people aforesaid, most humbly and faithfully submit themselves, their heirs and posterities, for ever: and do faithfully promise, That they will stand to, maintain, and defend their said Majesties, and also the limitation and succession of the Crown herein specified and contained, to the utmost of their powers, with their lives and estates, against all persons whatsoever that shall attempt anything to the contrary.

IX. And whereas it hath been found by experience, that it is inconsistent with the safety and welfare of this Protestant kingdom, to be governd by a Popish prince, or by any king or queen marrying a Papist, the said Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, do further pray that it may be enacted, That all and every person and persons that is, are, or shall be reconciled to, or shall hold communion with, the See or Church of Rome, or shall profess the Popish religion, or shall marry a Papist, shall be excluded, and be for ever incapable to inherit, possess, or enjoy the Crown and government of this realm, and Ireland, and the dominions thereunto belonging, or any part of the same, or to have, use, or exercise any regal power, authority, or jurisdiction within the same; and in all and every such case or cases the people of these realms shall be and are hereby absolved of their allegiance; and the said Crown and Government shall from time to time descend to, and be enjoyed by, such person or persons, being Protestants, as should have inherited and enjoyed the same, in case the said person or persons so reconciled, holding communion, or professing, or marrying as aforesaid, were naturally dead.

X. And that every king and queen of this realm, who at any time hereafter shall come to succeed in the Imperial Crown of this kingdom, shall, on the first day of the meeting of the first parliament, next after his or her coming to the Crown, sitting in his or her throne in the House of Peers, in the presence of the Lords and Commons therein assembled, or at his or her coronation, before such person or persons who shall administer the coronation oath to him or her, at the time of his or her taking the said oath (which shall first happen), make, subscribe, and audibly repeat the declaration mentioned in the statute made in the thirtieth year of the reign of King Charles II., intituled 'An Act for the more effectual preserving the King's person and government, by disabling Papists from sitting in either House of Parliament.' But if it shall happen, that such king or queen, upon his or her succession to the Crown of this realm, shall be under the age of twelve years, then every such king or queen shall make, subscribe, and audibly repeat the said declaration at his or her coronation, or the first day of the meeting of the first parliament as aforesaid, which shall first happen after such king or queen shall have attained the said age of twelve years.

XI. All which their Majesties are contented and pleased shall be declared, enacted, and established by authority of this present parliament, and shall stand, remain, and be the law of this realm for ever; and the same are by their said Majesties, by and with the advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same, declared, enacted, and established accordingly.

XII. And be it further declared and enacted by the authority aforesaid, That from and after this present session of parliament, no dispensation by *non obstante* of or to any statute, or any part thereof, shall be allowed, but that the same shall be held void and of no effect, except a dispensation be allowed of in

such statute, and except in such cases as shall be specially provided for by one or more bill or bills to be passed during this present session of parliament.

XIII. Provided that no charter, or grant, or pardon granted before the three-and-twentieth day of October, in the year of our Lord One thousand six hundred eighty-nine, shall be any ways impeached or invalidated by this act, but that the same shall be and remain of the same force and effect in law, and no other, than as if this act had never been made.

ACT OF SETTLEMENT.

(1701.)

*An Act for the Further Limitation of the Crown, and Better Securing
the Rights and Liberties of the Subject.*

Whereas in the first year of the reign of your Majesty, and of our late most Gracious Sovereign Lady Queen Mary (of blessed memory) an Act of Parliament was made, intituled "An Act for declaring the Rights and Liberties of the Subject, and for settling the Succession of the Crown," wherein it was (amongst other things) enacted, established and declared, That the Crown and Regal Government of the kingdoms of England, France and Ireland, and the dominions thereunto belonging, should be and continue to your Majesty and the said late Queen, during the joint-lives of your Majesty and the said Queen, and to the survivor: And that after the decease of your Majesty and of the said Queen, the said Crown and Regal Government should be and remain to the heirs of the body of the said late Queen: And for default of such issue, to her Royal Highness the Princess Anne of Denmark, and the heirs of her body: And for default of such issue, to the heirs of the body of your Majesty. And it was thereby further enacted, That all and every person and persons that then were, or afterwards should be reconciled to, or shall hold communion with the See or Church of Rome, or should profess the Popish religion, or marry a Papist, should be excluded, and are by that act made for ever incapable to inherit, possess, or enjoy the Crown and Government of this realm and Ireland, and the dominions thereunto belonging, or any part of the same, or to have, use, or exercise any regal power, authority, or jurisdiction within the same: and in all and every such case and cases the people of these realms shall be and are thereby absolved of their allegiance: And that the said Crown and Government shall from time to time descend to and be enjoyed by such person or persons, being Protestants, as should have inherited and enjoyed the same, in case the said person or persons, so reconciled, holding communion, professing, or marrying as aforesaid, were naturally dead. After the making of which statute, and the settlement therein contained, your Majesty's good subjects, who were restored to the full and free

possession and enjoyment of their religion, rights, and liberties, by the providence of God giving success to your Majesty's just undertakings and unwearied endeavours for that purpose, had no greater temporal felicity to hope or wish for, than to see a royal progeny descending from your Majesty, to whom (under God) they owe their tranquillity, and whose ancestors have for many years been principal assertors of the reformed religion and the liberties of Europe, and from our said most Gracious Sovereign Lady, whose memory will always be precious to the subjects of these realms: And it having since pleased Almighty God to take away our said Sovereign Lady, and also the most hopeful Prince William Duke of Gloucester (the only surviving issue of her Royal Highness the Princess Anne of Denmark) to the unspeakable grief and sorrow of your Majesty and your said good subjects, who under such losses being sensibly put in mind, that it standeth wholly in the pleasure of Almighty God to prolong the lives of your Majesty and of her Royal Highness, and to grant to your Majesty, or to her Royal Highness, such issue as may be inheritable to the Crown and regal Government aforesaid, by the respective limitations in the said recited Act contained, do constantly implore the Divine Mercy for those blessings: and your Majesty's said subjects having daily experience of your royal care and concern for the present and future welfare of these kingdoms, and particularly recommending from your Throne a further provision to be made for the succession of the Crown in the Protestant line, for the happiness of the nation, and the security of our religion; and it being absolutely necessary for the safety, peace and quiet of this realm, to obviate all doubts and contentions in the same, by reason of any pretended titles to the Crown, and to maintain a certainty in the succession thereof, to which your subjects may safely have recourse for their protection, in case the limitations in the said recited Act should determine: Therefore for a further provision of the succession of the Crown in the Protestant line, we your Majesty's most dutiful and loyal subjects, the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament assembled, do beseech your Majesty that it may be enacted and declared, and be it enacted and declared by the King's most excellent Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same, That the most Excellent Princess Sophia, Electress and Duchess Dowager of Hanover, daughter of the most Excellent Princess Elizabeth, late Queen of Bohemia, daughter of our late Sovereign Lord King James I, of happy memory, be and is hereby declared to be the next in succession, in the Protestant line, to the Imperial Crown and dignity of the said realms of England, France and Ireland, with the dominions and territories thereunto belonging, after his Majesty, and the Princess Anne of Denmark, and in default of issue of the said Princess Anne, and of his Majesty respectively: And that from and after the deceases of his said Majesty, our now Sovereign Lord, and of her Royal Highness the Princess Anne of Denmark,

and for default of issue of the said Princess Anne, and of his Majesty respectively, the Crown and regal Government of the said kingdoms of England, France and Ireland, and of the dominions thereunto belonging, with the royal state and dignity of the said realms, and all honours, stiles, titles, regalities, prerogatives, powers, jurisdictions and authorities, to the same belonging and appertaining, shall be, remain, and continue to the said most Excellent Princess Sophia, and the heirs of her body, being Protestants: And thereunto the said Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, shall and will, in the name of all the people of this realm, most humbly and faithfully submit themselves, their heirs and posterities; and do faithfully promise that after the deceases of his Majesty, and her Royal Highness, and the failure of the heirs of their respective bodies, to stand to, maintain, and defend the said Princess Sophia, and the heirs of her body, being Protestants, according to the limitation and succession of the Crown in this Act specified and contained, to the utmost of their powers, with their lives and estates, against all persons whatsoever that shall attempt anything to the contrary.

II. Provided always, and it is hereby enacted, That all and every person and persons, who shall or may take or inherit the said Crown, by virtue of the limitation of this present Act, and is, are or shall be reconciled to, or shall hold communion with, the See or Church of Rome, or shall profess the Popish religion, or shall marry a Papist, shall be subject to such incapacities, as in such case or cases are by the said recited Act provided, enacted, and established; and that every King and Queen of this realm, who shall come to and succeed in the Imperial Crown of this kingdom, by virtue of this Act, shall have the Coronation Oath administered to him, her or them, at their respective Coronations, according to the Act of Parliament made in the first year of the reign of his Majesty, and the said late Queen Mary, intituled, ‘An Act for establishing the Coronation Oath,’ and shall make, subscribe, and repeat the Declaration in the Act first above recited mentioned or referred to, in the manner and form thereby prescribed.

III. And whereas it is requisite and necessary that some further provision be made for securing our religion, laws and liberties, from and after the death of his Majesty and the Princess Anne of Denmark, and in default of issue of the body of the said Princess, and of his Majesty respectively: Be it enacted by the King’s most Excellent Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in Parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same,

That whosoever shall hereafter come to the possession of this Crown, shall join in communion with the Church of England, as by law established.

That in case the Crown and imperial dignity of this realm shall hereafter come to any person, not being a native of this kingdom of England, this nation be not obliged to engage in any war for the defence of any dominions or territories which do not belong to the Crown of England, without the consent of Parliament.

That no person who shall hereafter come to the possession of this Crown, shall go out of the dominions of England, Scotland, or Ireland, without consent of Parliament.

That from and after the time that the further limitation by this Act shall take effect, all matters and things relating to the well governing of this kingdom, which are properly cognizable in the Privy Council by the laws and customs of this realm, shall be transacted there, and all resolutions taken thereupon shall be signed by such of the Privy Council as shall advise and consent to the same.

That after the said limitation shall take effect as aforesaid, no person born out of the kingdoms of England, Scotland, or Ireland, or the dominions thereunto belonging (although he be naturalised or made a denizen, except such as are born of English parents), shall be capable to be of the Privy Council, or a Member of either House of Parliament, or to enjoy any office or place of trust, either civil or military, or to have any grant of lands, tenements or hereditaments from the Crown, to himself or to any other or others in trust for him.

That no person who has an office or place of profit under the King, or receives a pension from the Crown, shall be capable of serving as a Member of the House of Commons.

That after the said limitation shall take effect as aforesaid, Judges' Commissions be made *Quamdiu se bene gesserint*, and their salaries ascertained and established; but upon the Address of both Houses of Parliament it may be lawful to remove them.

That no pardon under the Great Seal of England be pleadable to an impeachment by the Commons in Parliament.

IV. And whereas the Laws of England are the birthright of the people thereof, and all the Kings and Queens, who shall ascend the Throne of this realm, ought to administer the Government of the same according to the said laws, and all their officers and ministers ought to serve them respectively according to the same: The said Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, do therefore further humbly pray, That all the Laws and Statutes of this realm for securing the established religion, and the rights and liberties of the people thereof, and all other Laws and Statutes of the same now in force, may be ratified and confirmed, and the same are by his Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of the said Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, and by authority of the same, ratified and confirmed accordingly.

And I cannot but look upon it as a peculiar happiness, that in my reign so full a provision is made for the peace and quiet of my people, and for the security of our religion, by so firm an establishment of the Protestant succession throughout Great Britain.

Gentlemen of the House of Commons,

I take this occasion to remind you to make effectual provision for the payment of the equivalent to Scotland within the time appointed by this Act, and

I am persuaded you will show as much readiness in this particular as you have done in all the other parts of this great work.

My Lords and Gentlemen,

The season of the year being now pretty far advanced, I hope you will continue the same zeal which has appeared throughout this session, in despatching what yet remains unfinished of the public business before you.

UNION BETWEEN ENGLAND AND SCOTLAND.

(1707.)

An Act for an Union of the two Kingdoms of England and Scotland.

(PREAMBLE.)

ARTICLE I.

THAT the two kingdoms of England and Scotland shall upon the first day of May, which shall be in the year one thousand seven hundred and seven, and for ever after, be united into one kingdom by the name of Great Britain; and that the ensigns' armorial of the said united kingdom be such as her Majesty shall appoint, and the crosses of St. George and St. Andrew be conjoined in such manner as her Majesty shall think fit, and used in all flags, banners, standards, and ensigns, both at sea and land.

ARTICLE II.

That the succession of the monarchy of the united kingdom of Great Britain, and of the dominions thereto belonging, after her most sacred Majesty, and in default of issue of her Majesty, be, remain, and continue to the most excellent Princess Sophia, electoress and duchess dowager of Hanover, and the heirs of her body being Protestants, upon whom the Crown of England is settled by an Act of Parliament made in England in the twelfth year of the reign of his late Majesty King William the Third, entitled, *An Act for the further Limitation of the Crown, and better securing the Rights and Liberties of the Subject*: And that all Papists, and persons marrying Papists, shall be excluded from, and for ever incapable to inherit, possess, or enjoy the Imperial Crown of Great Britain, and the dominions thereunto belonging, or any part thereof; and in every such case, the Crown and government shall from time to time descend to, and be enjoyed by such person, being a Protestant, as should have inherited and enjoyed the same, in case such Papist, or person marrying a Papist, was naturally dead,

according to the provision for the descent of the Crown of England, made by another Act of Parliament in England in the first year of the reign of their late Majesties King William and Queen Mary, entitled, *An Act declaring the Rights and Liberties of the Subject, and settling the Succession of the Crown.*

ARTICLE III.

That the united kingdom of Great Britain be represented by one and the same Parliament, to be styled, The Parliament of Great Britain.

ARTICLE IV.

That all the subjects of the united kingdom of Great Britain shall, from and after the Union, have full freedom and intercourse of trade and navigation to and from any port or place within the said united kingdom, and the dominions and plantations thereunto belonging; and that there be a communication of all other rights, privileges, and advantages, which do or may belong to the subjects of either kingdom; except where it is otherwise expressly agreed in these articles.

ARTICLE V.

(Scotch ships to be registered as British ships.)

ARTICLE VI.

(Concerning Trade, Scots Cattle, and Importation of Victuals.)

ARTICLE VII.

(Concerning Excises.)

ARTICLE VIII.

(Concerning Foreign Salt, Scotch Salt, Flesh Exported from Scotland, Curing of Herrings, Fish Exported, etc.)

ARTICLE IX.

(Concerning Land Tax and Quota of Scotland.)

ARTICLE X.

(Concerning Stamped Vellum.)

ARTICLE XI.

(Concerning the Window Tax.)

ARTICLE XII.

(Concerning Coals, Culm, and Cinders.)

ARTICLE XIII.

(Concerning Malt.)

ARTICLE XIV.

(Scotland not chargeable with any other duties before the Union, except these consented to.)

ARTICLE XV.

(Concerning Equivalent Money and Uses, Coin of Scotland, African and Indian Company of Scotland, Overplus, Public Debts of Scotland, Manufacture of Coarse Wool, Fisheries, and the Appointment of Commissioners for the Equivalent.)

ARTICLE XVI.

That from and after the Union, the coin shall be of the same standard and value throughout the united kingdom, as now in England, and a mint shall be continued in Scotland, under the same rules as the mint in England, and the present officers of the mint continued, subject to such regulations and alterations as her Majesty, her heirs or successors, or the Parliament of Great Britain shall think fit.

ARTICLE XVII.

That from and after the Union, the same weights and measures shall be used throughout the united kingdom, as are now established in England, and standards of weights and measures shall be kept by those burghs in Scotland, to whom the keeping the standards of weights and measures, now in use there, does of special right belong: All which standards shall be sent down to such respective burghs, from the standards kept in the Exchequer at Westminster, subject nevertheless to such regulations as the Parliament of Great Britain shall think fit.

ARTICLE XVIII.

That the laws concerning regulation of trade, customs, and such excises to which Scotland is, by virtue of this treaty, to be liable, be the same in Scotland, from and after the Union, as in England; and that all other laws in use within the kingdom of Scotland, do after the Union, and notwithstanding thereof, remain in the same force as before (except such as are contrary to, or inconsistent with this treaty), but alterable by the Parliament of Great Britain; with this difference betwixt the laws concerning public right, policy, and civil government, and those which concern private right, that the laws which concern public right, policy, and civil government, may be made the same throughout the whole united kingdom; but that no alteration be made in laws which concern private right, except for evident utility of the subjects within Scotland.

ARTICLE XIX.

(Concerning Courts and the Privy Council.)

ARTICLE XX.

(Concerning Heritable Offices.)

ARTICLE XXI.

(Concerning Royal Burghs.)

ARTICLE XXII.

That, by virtue of this treaty, of the peers of Scotland, at the time of the Union, sixteen shall be the number to sit and vote in the House of Lords, and forty-five the number of representatives of Scotland in the House of Commons of the Parliament of Great Britain; and that when her Majesty, her heirs or successors, shall declare her or their pleasure for holding the first or any other subsequent Parliament of Great Britain, until the Parliament of Great Britain shall make further provision therein, a writ do issue under the great seal of the united kingdom, directed to the privy council of Scotland, commanding them to cause sixteen peers, who are to sit in the House of Lords, to be summoned to Parliament, and forty-five members to be elected to sit in the House of Commons of the Parliament of Great Britain, according to the agreement of this treaty, in such manner as by an Act of this present session of the Parliament of Scotland is or shall be settled; which Act is hereby declared to be as valid as if it were a part of and engrossed in this treaty. And that the names of the persons so summoned and elected shall be returned by the privy council of Scotland into the court from whence the said writ did issue . . . And that every one of the lords of Parliament of Great Britain, and every member of the House of Commons of the Parliament of Great Britain, in the first and all succeeding Parliaments of Great Britain, until the Parliament of Great Britain shall otherwise direct, shall take the respective oaths appointed to be taken instead of the oaths of allegiance and supremacy . . . And it is declared and agreed, That these words, *This Realm*, *The Crown of this Realm*, and *The Queen of this Realm*, mentioned in the oaths and declaration contained in the aforesaid Acts, which were intended to signify the crown and realm of England, shall be understood of the crown and realm of Great Britain; and that in that sense the said oaths and declaration be taken and subscribed by the members of both Houses of the Parliament of Great Britain.

ARTICLE XXIII.

That the aforesaid sixteen peers of Scotland mentioned in the last preceding article, to sit in the House of Lords of the Parliament of Great Britain, shall have all privileges of Parliament, which the peers of England now have, and

which they, or any peers of Great Britain shall have after the Union, and particularly the right of sitting upon the trial of peers: And in case of the trial of any peer, in time of adjournment, or prorogation of Parliament, the said sixteen peers shall be summoned in the same manner, and have the same powers and privileges at such trial, as any other peers of Great Britain. And that in case any trials of peers shall hereafter happen, when there is no Parliament in being, the sixteen peers of Scotland who sat in the last preceding Parliament, shall be summoned in the same manner, and have the same powers and privileges at such trials, as any other peers of Great Britain; and that all peers of Scotland, and their successors to their honours and dignities, shall from and after the Union, be peers of Great Britain, and have rank and precedence next and immediately after the peers of the like orders and degrees in England at the time of the Union, and before all peers of Great Britain of the like orders and degrees, who may be created after the Union, and shall be tried as peers of Great Britain, and shall enjoy all privileges of peers, as fully as the peers of England do now, or as they, or any other peers of Great Britain may hereafter enjoy the same, except the right and privilege of sitting in the House of Lords, and the privileges depending thereon, and particularly the right of sitting upon the trials of peers.

ARTICLE XXIV.

That from and after the Union, there be one great seal for the united kingdom of Great Britain, which shall be different from the great seal now used in either kingdom: And that the quartering the arms, and the rank and precedence of the Lyon King of Arms of the kingdom of Scotland, as may best suit the Union, be left to her Majesty: And that in the mean time, the great seal of England be used as the great seal of the united kingdom, and that the great seal of the united kingdom be used for sealing writs to elect and summon the Parliament of Great Britain, and for sealing all treaties with foreign princes and states, and all public acts, instruments and orders of state, which concern the whole united kingdom, and in all other matters relating to England, as the great seal of England is now used: And that a seal in Scotland after the Union be always kept and made use of in all things relating to private rights or grants, which have usually passed the great seal of Scotland, and which only concern offices, grants, commissions, and private rights within that kingdom; and that until such seal be appointed by her Majesty, the present great seal of Scotland shall be used for such purposes: And that the privy seal, signet, casset, signet of the judiciary court, quarter seal, and seals of court now used in Scotland be continued; but that the said seals be altered and adapted to the state of the Union, as her Majesty shall think fit; and the said seals, and all of them, and the keepers of them, shall be subject to such regulations as the Parliament of Great Britain shall hereafter make. And that the crown, sceptre, and sword of state, the records of Parliament, and all other records, rolls and registers whatsoever, both public and private, general and particular, and warrants thereof,

continue to be kept as they are within that part of the united kingdom now called Scotland; and that they shall so remain in all time coming, notwithstanding the Union.

ARTICLE XXV.

That all laws and statutes in either kingdom, so far as they are contrary to, or inconsistent with the terms of these articles, or any of them, shall, from and after the Union, cease and become void, and shall be so declared to be, by the respective Parliaments of the kingdom.

As by the said articles of Union, ratified and approved by the said Act of Parliament of Scotland, relation being thereunto had, may appear. And the tenor of the aforesaid Act for securing the Protestant religion and Presbyterian church government within the kingdom of Scotland, is as follows:

II. Our sovereign lady, and the estates of Parliament, considering that by the late Act of Parliament, for a treaty with England for an Union of both kingdoms, it is provided, That the commissioners for that treaty shall not treat of or concerning any alteration of the worship, discipline, and government of the church of this kingdom as now by law established: Which treaty being now reported to the Parliament, and it being reasonable and necessary that the true Protestant religion, as presently professed within this kingdom, with the worship, discipline, and government of this church, should be effectually and unalterably secured: Therefore her Majesty, with advice and consent of the said estates of Parliament, doth hereby establish and confirm the said true Protestant religion, and the worship, discipline, and government of this church, to continue without any alteration to the people of this land in all succeeding generations; and more especially her Majesty, with advice and consent aforesaid, ratifies, approves, and for ever confirms the fifth Act of the first Parliament of King William and Queen Mary, entitled, *Act ratifying the Confession of Faith, and settling Presbyterian Church Government*; with all other Acts of Parliament relating thereto, in prosecution of the declaration of the estates of this kingdom, containing the claim of right, bearing date the eleventh of April, one thousand six hundred and eighty-nine: And her Majesty, with advice and consent aforesaid, expressly provides and declares, That the foresaid true Protestant religion, contained in the above-mentioned confession of faith, with the form and purity of worship presently in use within this church, and its Presbyterian church government and discipline (that is to say) the government of the church by kirk sessions, presbyteries, provincial synods, and general assemblies, all established by the foresaid Acts of Parliament, pursuant to the claim of right, shall remain and continue unalterable, and that the said Presbyterian government shall be the only government of the church within the kingdom of Scotland.

III. (Providing for the continuance of Universities and Colleges in Scotland.)

IV. (Scotch subjects not to be liable to any oath inconsistent with said Church Government; Queen's successors to maintain said government.)

V. And it is hereby statute and ordained, That this Act of Parliament, with the establishment therein contained, shall be held and observed in all time coming, as a fundamental and essential condition of any treaty or Union to be concluded betwixt the two kingdoms, without any alteration thereof, or derogation thereto in any sort for ever: As also, That this Act of Parliament, and settlement therein contained, shall be insert and repeated in any Act of Parliament that shall pass for agreeing and concluding the foresaid treaty or Union betwixt the two kingdoms; and that the same shall be therein expressly declared to be a fundamental and essential condition of the said treaty or Union in all time coming: Which articles of Union, and Act immediately above-written, her Majesty, with advice and consent aforesaid, statutes, enacts, and ordains to be and continue, in all time coming, the sure and perpetual foundation of a complete and entire Union of the two kingdoms of Scotland and England, under the express condition and provision, that this approbation and ratification of the foresaid articles and Act shall be no ways binding on this kingdom, until the said articles and Act be ratified, approved, and confirmed by her Majesty, with and by the authority of the Parliament of England, as they are now agreed to, approved, and confirmed by her Majesty, with and by the authority of the Parliament of Scotland; declaring nevertheless, that the Parliament of England may provide for the security of the church of England as they think expedient, to take place within the bounds of the said kingdom of England, and not derogating from the security above provided for establishing of the church of Scotland within the bounds of this kingdom; as also the said Parliament of England may extend the additions and other provisions contained in the articles of Union, as above insert in favours of the subjects of Scotland, to and in favours of the subjects of England; which shall not suspend or derogate from the force and effect of this present ratification, but shall be understood as herein included, without the necessity of any new ratification in the Parliament of Scotland.

VI. (Providing that all laws, etc., inconsistent with Articles of Union, shall cease.)

VII. And whereas an Act hath passed in this present session of Parliament, entitled, *An Act for securing the Church of England as by Law established*; the tenor whereof follows:

Whereas by an Act made in the session of Parliament held in the third and fourth year of her Majesty's reign, whereby her Majesty was empowered to appoint commissioners, under the great seal of England, to treat with commissioners to be authorized by the Parliament of Scotland, concerning an Union of the kingdoms of England and Scotland, it is provided and enacted, That the commissioners to be named in pursuance of the said Act should not treat of or concerning any alteration of the liturgy, rites, ceremonies, discipline, or government of the church as by law established within this realm: And whereas certain commissioners appointed by her Majesty in pursuance of the said Act,

and also other commissioners nominated by her Majesty by the authority of the Parliament of Scotland, have met and agreed upon a treaty of Union of the said kingdoms; which treaty is now under the consideration of this present Parliament; And whereas the said treaty (with some alterations therein made) is ratified and approved by Act of Parliament in Scotland; and the said Act of ratification is by her Majesty's royal command, laid before the Parliament of this kingdom: And whereas it is reasonable and necessary, that the true Protestant religion professed and established by law in the Church of England, and the doctrine, worship, discipline, and government thereof, should be effectually and unalterably secured; be it enacted by the Queen's most excellent Majesty, by and with the advice of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and the Commons, in this present Parliament assembled, and by authority of the same, That an Act made in the thirteenth year of the reign of Queen Elizabeth, of famous memory, entitled, *An Act for the Ministers of the Church to be of sound Religion*; and also another Act made in the thirteenth year of the reign of the late King Charles the Second, entitled, *An Act for the Uniformity of the Public Prayers and Administration of Sacraments, and other Rites and Ceremonies, and for establishing the form of making, ordaining, and consecrating Bishops, Priests and Deacons in the Church of England*, (other than such clauses in the said Acts, or either of them, as have been repealed or altered by any subsequent Act or Acts of Parliament,) and all and singular other Acts of Parliament now in force for the establishment and preservation of the Church of England, and the doctrine, worship, discipline, and government thereof, shall remain and be in full force for ever.

VIII. (Providing that the Queen's successors are to take an oath to maintain the settlement of the Church of England.)

IX. (Providing that this Act is to be an essential part of any treaty between the kingdoms.)

X. (Providing that the Articles of Union, and the Act for the establishment of the Presbyterian Church Government, be ratified and confirmed.)

XI. (Declaring the Acts for settling the Church Governments in both kingdoms essential parts of the Union.)

XII. And whereas since the passing the said Act in the Parliament of Scotland, for ratifying the said articles of Union, one other Act, entitled, *An Act settling the Manner of electing the Sixteen Peers, and Forty-five Members, to represent Scotland in the Parliament of Great Britain*, hath likewise passed in the said Parliament of Scotland at Edinburgh, the fifth day of February, one thousand seven hundred and seven, the tenor whereof follows:

Our sovereign lady considering, That by the twenty-second articles of the treaty of Union, as the same is ratified by an Act passed in this session of Parliament, upon the sixteenth of January last, it is provided, That by virtue of the said treaty, of the Peers of Scotland, at the time of the Union, sixteen shall be of the number to sit and vote in the House of Lords, and forty-five the

number of the representatives of Scotland in the House of Commons of the Parliament of Great Britain; and that the said sixteen peers, and forty-five members in the House of Commons, be named and chosen in such manner as by a subsequent Act in this present session of the Parliament in Scotland, should be settled; which Act is thereby declared to be as valid, as if it were a part of, and engrossed in the said treaty: Therefore her Majesty, with the advice and consent of the estates of Parliament, statutes, enacts and ordains, That the said sixteen peers, who shall have right to sit in the House of Peers in the Parliament of Great Britain, on the part of Scotland, by virtue of this treaty, shall be named by the said peers of Scotland, whom they represent, their heirs or successors to their dignities and honours, out of their own number, and that by open election and plurality of voices of the peers present, and of the proxies for such as shall be absent, the said proxies being peers, and producing a mandate in writing duly signed before witnesses, and both the constituent and proxy being qualified according to law; declaring also, That such peers as are absent, being qualified as aforesaid, may send to all such meetings lists of the peers whom they judge fittest, validly signed by the said absent peers, which shall be reckoned in the same manner as if the parties had been present, and given in the said list; and in case of the death, or legal incapacity of any of the sixteen peers, that the aforesaid peers of Scotland shall nominate another of their own number, in place of the said peer or peers, in manner before and after-mentioned: And that of the said forty-five representatives of Scotland in the House of Commons in the Parliament of Great Britain, thirty shall be chosen by the Shires or Steuartries, and fifteen by the royal borrows, as follows: (The remainder of the Article provides for the methods of election, legal capacities, oaths to be administered to, etc., of those elected to the House of Commons.)

XIII. As by the said Act passed in Scotland, for settling the manner of electing the sixteen peers, and forty-five members, to represent Scotland in the Parliament of Great Britain, may appear; Be it therefore further enacted and declared by the authority aforesaid, That the said last-mentioned Act passed in Scotland for settling the manner of electing the sixteen peers, and forty-five members, to represent Scotland in the Parliament of Great Britain, as aforesaid, shall be, and the same is hereby declared to be as valid as if the same had been part of, and engrossed in the said articles of Union ratified and approved by the said Act of Parliament of Scotland, and by this Act, as aforesaid.

UNION BETWEEN GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.

(JULY 2, 1800.)

An Act for the Union of Great Britain and Ireland.

(PREAMBLE.)

ARTICLE I.

That it be the first article of the Union of the kingdoms of Great Britain and Ireland, that the said kingdoms of Great Britain and Ireland shall, upon the first day of January which shall be in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and one, and for ever after, be united into one kingdom, by the name of *the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland*; and that the royal style and titles appertaining to the imperial crown of the said united kingdom and its dependencies; and also the ensigns, armorial flags, and banners thereof, shall be such as his Majesty, by his royal proclamation under the great seal of the united kingdom, shall be pleased to appoint.

ARTICLE II.

That it be the second article of Union, that the succession to the imperial crown of the said united kingdom, and of the dominions thereunto belonging, shall continue limited and settled in the same manner as the succession to the imperial crown of the said kingdoms of Great Britain and Ireland now stands limited and settled, according to the existing laws, and to the terms of Union between England and Scotland.

ARTICLE III.

That it be the third article of Union, that the said united kingdom be represented in one and the same Parliament, to be styled The Parliament of the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland.

ARTICLE IV.

That it be the fourth article of Union, that four Lords Spiritual of Ireland by rotations of sessions, and twenty-eight Lords Temporal of Ireland elected for life by the peers of Ireland, shall be the numbr to sit and vote on the part of Ireland in the House of Lords of the Parliament of the united kingdom; and one hundred commoners (two for each county of Ireland, two for the city of Dublin, two for the city of Cork, one for the university of Trinity College, and one for each of the thirty-one most considerable cities, towns, and boroughs) be the number to sit and vote on the part of Ireland in the House of Commons of the Parliament of the united kingdom:

'That such Act as shall be passed in the Parliament of Ireland previous to the Union, to regulate the mode by which the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, to serve in the Parliament of the united kingdom on the part of Ireland, shall be summoned and returned to the said Parliament shall be considered as forming part of the treaty of Union and shall be incorporated in the Act of the respective Parliaments by which the said Union shall be ratified and established:

That all questions touching the rotation or election of Lords Spiritual or Temporal of Ireland to sit in the Parliament of the united kingdom, shall be decided by the House of Lords thereof; and whenever, by reason of an equality of votes in the election of any such Lords Temporal, a complete election shall not be made according to the true intent of this article, the names of those peers for whom such equality of votes shall be so given, shall be written on pieces of paper of a similar form, and shall be put into a glass, by the Clerk of the Parliaments at the table of the House of Lords whilst the House is sitting; and the peer or peers whose name or names shall be first drawn out by the Clerk of the Parliaments, shall be deemed the peer or peers elected, as the case may be:

That any person holding any peerage of Ireland now subsisting, or hereafter to be created, shall not thereby be disqualified from being elected to serve, if he shall so think fit, or from serving or continuing to serve, if he shall so think fit, for any county, city, or borough of Great Britain, in the House of Commons of the united kingdom, unless he shall have been previously elected as above, to sit in the House of Lords of the united kingdom; but that so long as such peer of Ireland shall so continue to be a member of the House of Commons, he shall not be entitled to the privilege of peerage, nor be capable of being elected to serve as a peer on the part of Ireland, or of voting at any such election; and that he shall be liable to be sued, indicted, proceeded against, and tried as a commoner, for any offence with which he may be charged:

That it shall be lawful for his Majesty, his heirs and successors, to create peers of that part of the united kingdom called Ireland, and to make promotions in the peerage thereof, after the Union; provided that no new creation of any such peers shall take place after the Union until three of the peerages of Ireland, which shall have been existing at the time of the Union, shall have become extinct; and upon such extinction of three peerages, that it shall be lawful for his Majesty, his heirs and successors, to create one peer of that part of the united kingdom called Ireland; and in like manner as often as three peerages of that part of the united kingdom called Ireland shall become extinct, it shall be lawful for his Majesty, his heirs and successors, to create one other peer of the said part of the united kingdom; and if it shall happen that the peers of that part of the united kingdom called Ireland shall, by extinction of peerages or otherwise, be reduced to the number of one hundred, exclusive of all such peers of that part of the united kingdom called Ireland, as shall hold any peerage of Great Britain subsisting at the time of the Union, or of the united

kingdom, created since the Union, by which such peers shall be entitled to an hereditary seat in the House of Lords of the united kingdom, then and in that case it shall and may be lawful for his Majesty, his heirs and successors, to create one peer of that part of the united kingdom called Ireland, as often as any one of such one hundred peerages shall fail by extinction, or as often as any one peer of that part of the united kingdom called Ireland shall become entitled, by descent or creation, to an hereditary seat in the House of Lords of the united kingdom; it being the true intent and meaning of this article, that at all times after the Union, it shall and may be lawful for his Majesty, his heirs and successors, to keep up the peerage of that part of the united kingdom called Ireland to the number of one hundred, over and above the number of such of the said peers as shall be entitled, by descent or creation, to an hereditary seat in the House of Lords of the united kingdom:

That if any peerage shall at any time be in abeyance, such peerage shall be deemed and taken as an existing peerage; and no peerage shall be deemed extinct, unless on default of claimants to the inheritance of such peerage for the space of one year from the death of the person who shall have been last possessed thereof; and if no claim shall be made to the inheritance of such peerage, in such form and manner as may from time to time be prescribed by the House of Lords of the united kingdom, before the expiration of the said period of a year, then and in that case such peerage shall be deemed extinct; provided that nothing herein shall exclude any person from afterwards putting in a claim to the peerage so deemed extinct; and if such claim shall be allowed as valid, by judgment of the House of Lords of the united kingdom, reported to his Majesty, such peerage shall be considered as revived; and in case any new creation of a peerage of that part of the united kingdom called Ireland, shall have taken place in the interval, in consequence of the supposed extinction of such peerage, then no new right of creation shall accrue to his Majesty, his heirs or successors, in consequence of the next extinction which shall take place of any peerage of that part of the united kingdom called Ireland:

That all questions touching the election of members to sit on the part of Ireland in the House of Commons of the united kingdom shall be heard and decided in the same manner as questions touching such elections in Great Britain now are, or at any time hereafter shall by law be heard and decided; subject nevertheless to such particular regulations in respect of Ireland as, from local circumstances, the Parliament of the united kingdom may from time to time deem expedient.

That the qualifications in respect of property of the members elected on the part of Ireland to sit in the House of Commons of the united kingdom, shall be respectively the same as are now provided by law in the cases of elections for counties and cities and boroughs respectively in that part of Great Britain called England, unless any other provision shall hereafter be made in that respect by Act of Parliament of the united kingdom.

That when his Majesty, his heirs or successors, shall declare his, her, or their pleasure for holding the first or any subsequent Parliament of the united kingdom, a proclamation shall issue, under the great seal of the united kingdom, to cause the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, who are to serve in the Parliament thereof on the part of Ireland, to be returned in such manner as by any Act of this present session of Parliament of Ireland shall be provided; and that the Lords Spiritual and Temporal and Commons of Great Britain shall, together with the Lords Spiritual and Temporal and Commons so returned as aforesaid on the part of Ireland, constitute the two Houses of Parliament of the united kingdom:

(The next clause provides for a temporary personnel of the first Parliament after the Union.)

That the Lords of Parliament on the part of Ireland, in the House of Lords of the united kingdom, shall at all times have the same privileges of Parliament which shall belong to the Lords of Parliament on the part of Great Britain; and the Lords Spiritual and Temporal respectively on the part of Ireland shall at all times have the same rights in respect of their sitting and voting upon the trial of peers, as the Lords Spiritual and Temporal respectively on the part of Great Britain; and that all Lords Spiritual of Ireland shall have rank and precedence next and immediately after the Lords Spiritual of the same rank and degree of Great Britain, and shall enjoy all privileges as fully as the Lord's Spiritual of Great Britain do now or may hereafter enjoy the same (the right and privilege of sitting in the House of Lords, and the privileges depending thereon, and particularly the right of sitting on the trial of peers, excepted); and that the persons holding any temporal peerages of Ireland, existing at the time of the Union, shall, from and after the Union, have rank and precedence next and immediately after all the persons holding peerages of the like orders and degree in Great Britain, subsisting at the time of the Union; and that all peerages of Ireland created after the Union shall have rank and precedence with the peerages of the united kingdom, so created, according to the dates of their creations; and that all peerages both of Great Britain and Ireland, now subsisting or hereafter to be created, shall in all other respects, from the date of the Union, be considered as peerages of the united kingdom; and that the peers of Ireland shall, as peers of the united kingdom, be sued and tried as peers, except as aforesaid, and shall enjoy all privileges of peers as fully as the peers of Great Britain; the right and privilege of sitting in the House of Lords, and the privileges depending thereon, and the right of sitting on the trial of peers, only excepted:

ARTICLE V.

That it be the fifth article of Union, That the churches of England and Ireland, as now by law established, be united into one Protestant Episcopal Church, to be called The United Church of England and Ireland; and that the

doctrine, worship, discipline, and government of the said united church shall be, and shall remain in full force for ever, as the same are now by law established for the church of England; and that the continuance and preservation of the said united church, as the established church of England and Ireland, shall be deemed and taken to be an essential and fundamental part of the Union; and that in like manner the doctrine, worship, discipline, and government of the church of Scotland, shall remain and be preserved as the same are now established by law, and by the Acts for the Union of the two kingdoms of England and Scotland.

ARTICLE VI.

That it be the sixth article of Union, That his Majesty's subjects of Great Britain and Ireland shall, from and after the first day of January one thousand eight hundred and one, be entitled to the same privileges, and be on the same footing, as to encouragements and bounties on the like articles being the growth, produce, or manufacture, of either country respectively, and generally in respect of trade and navigation in all ports and places in the united kingdom and its dependencies; and that in all treaties made by his Majesty, his heirs and successors, with any foreign power, his Majesty's subjects of Ireland shall have the same privileges, and be on the same footing, as his Majesty's subjects of Great Britain:

(The remaining clauses of this article deal with the duties upon articles respectively imported and exported between the kingdoms, two schedules being given.)

ARTICLE VII.

(Provides that the interest and sinking fund for the reduction of the debt of either kingdom shall continue to be separately defrayed. Also provides for the expenditures of the united kingdom.)

ARTICLE VIII.

(Provides that existing laws and courts of jurisdiction within the respective kingdoms may be altered at pleasure of the united Parliament. Also provides for appeal.)

THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.

(PREAMBLE.)

Objects.—We, the People of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to

ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this CONSTITUTION for the United States of America.

ARTICLE I.

LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT.

SECTION I.

Legislative powers.—All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

SECTION II.

House of Representatives.—*1st Clause.*—The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States, and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State Legislature.

Qualifications of Representatives.—*2d Clause.*—No person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

Apportionment of Representatives.—*3d Clause.*—Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of Representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one Representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

Vacancies, how filled.—*4th Clause.*—When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

Speaker, how appointed.—*5th Clause.*—The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SECTION III.

United States Senate.—*1st Clause.*—The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof, for six years; and each Senator shall have one vote.

Classification of Senators.—2d Clause.—Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the Senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the Legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

Qualification of Senators.—3d Clause.—No person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

President of the Senate.—4th Clause.—The Vice-President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

Other officers of the Senate.—5th Clause.—The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president pro tempore, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

The Senate a court for trial of impeachments.—6th Clause.—The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

Judgment in case of conviction.—7th Clause.—Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust or profit under the United States; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment and punishment, according to law.

SECTION IV.

Elections of Senators and Representatives.—1st Clause.—The times, places and manner of holding elections for Senators and Representatives shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing Senators.

Meeting of Congress.—2d Clause.—The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

SECTION V.

Organization of Congress.—1st Clause.—Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of

each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties as each house may provide.

Rules of proceeding.—*2d Clause.*—Each house may determine the rules of its own proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

Journal of Congress.—*3d Clause.*—Each house shall keep a Journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same; excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy, and the yeas and nays of the members of either house on any question shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

Adjournment of Congress.—*4th Clause.*—Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

SECTION VI.

Compensation and privileges of members.—*1st Clause.*—The Senators and Representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall in all cases, except treason, felony and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

Plurality of offices prohibited.—*2d Clause.*—No Senator or Representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

SECTION VII.

Bills, how originated.—*1st Clause.*—All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills.

How bills become laws.—*2d Clause.*—Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States. If he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and, if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But, in all such cases, the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays; and the names of the persons

voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

Approval and veto powers of the President.—3d Clause.—Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and, before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or, being disapproved by him, shall be re-passed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECTION VIII.

Powers vested in Congress.—1st Clause.—The Congress shall have power to lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

2d Clause.—To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

3d Clause.—To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes;

4th Clause.—To establish an uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States;

5th Clause.—To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures;

6th Clause.—To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;

7th Clause.—To establish post-offices and post-roads;

8th Clause.—To promote the progress of science and the useful arts, by securing, for limited times, to authors and inventors, the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries;

9th Clause.—To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court;

10th Clause.—To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations;

11th Clause.—To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water;

12th Clause.—To raise and support armies, but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years;

13th Clause.—To provide and maintain a navy;

14th Clause.—To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces;

15th Clause.—To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections and repel invasions;

16th Clause.—To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;

17th Clause.—To exercise exclusive legislation, in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular State, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the Government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the Legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dockyards, and other needful buildings;—And

18th Clause.—To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the Government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SECTION IX.

Immigrants, how admitted.—1st Clause.—The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

Habeas Corpus.—2d Clause.—The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless, when in cases of rebellion or invasion, the public safety may require it.

Attainder.—3d Clause.—No bill of attainder or ex post facto law shall be passed.

Direct taxes.—4th Clause.—No capitation, or other direct, tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

Export duties.—5th Clause.—No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State.

Regulations regarding duties.—6th Clause.—No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

Money, how drawn.—7th Clause.—No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

Titles of nobility prohibited.—8th Clause.—No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present,

emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

SECTION X.

Powers of States defined.—1st Clause.—No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

2d Clause.—No state shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any impost or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

3d Clause.—No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any duty on tonnage, keep troops, or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE II.

EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT.

SECTION I.

Executive power, in whom vested.—1st Clause.—The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

Presidential Electors.—2d Clause.—Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a number of Electors, equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress; but no Senator or Representative, or person holding any office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an Elector.

President and Vice-President, how elected.—[3d Clause.]—The Electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for two persons, one of whom at least shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the Government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed; and, if there

be more than one who have such majority and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose, by ballot, one of them for President; and if no person have a majority, then, from the five highest on the list, the said house shall, in like manner, choose the President. But, in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the President, the person having the greatest number of votes of the Electors shall be the Vice-President. But, if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them, by ballot, the Vice-President.]*

Time of choosing Electors.—4th Clause.—The Congress may determine the time of choosing the Electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

Qualifications of the President.—5th Clause.—No person except a natural-born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years resident within the United States.

Resort in case of disability.—6th Clause.—In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President, and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what officer shall then act as President, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

Salary of the President.—7th Clause.—The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive, within that period, any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

Oath of office.—8th Clause.—Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation.—“I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States.”

SECTION II.

Duties of the President.—1st Clause.—The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive

* This clause enclosed within brackets has been annulled, the Twelfth Amendment being substituted in its stead.

departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offenses against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

His power to make treaties, appoint ambassadors, judges, etc.—2d Clause.—He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the Senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law; but the Congress may, by law, vest the appointment of such inferior officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

May fill vacancies.—3d Clause.—The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SECTION III.

His power to convene Congress.—He shall, from time to time, give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and, in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SECTION IV.

How officers may be removed.—The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

ARTICLE III.

JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT.

SECTION I.

Judicial power, how vested.—The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the Supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior; and shall, at stated times, receive, for their services, a compensation which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SECTION II.

To what cases it extends.—1st Clause.—The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority;—to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls;—to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction;—to controversies to which the United States shall be a party;—to controversies between two or more States;—between a State and citizens of another State;—between citizens of different States;—between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States;—and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens or subjects.

Jurisdiction of the Supreme Court.—2d Clause.—In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a State shall be a party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

Rules respecting trials.—3d Clause.—The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

SECTION III.

Treason defined.—1st Clause.—Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort.

Conviction for treason.—2d Clause.—No person shall be convicted of treason, unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

How punished.—3d Clause.—The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason; but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

ARTICLE IV.

MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS.

SECTION I.

Rights of States to public faith defined. Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may, by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

SECTION II.

Privileges of citizens.—1st Clause.—The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all the privileges and immunities of citizens of the several States.

Executive requisition.—2d Clause.—A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice and be found in another State, shall, on the demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

Law regarding fugitive slaves.—3d Clause.—No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up, on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

SECTION III.

New States, how formed and admitted.—1st Clause.—New States may be admitted, by the Congress, into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned, as well as of the Congress.

Power of Congress over public lands.—2d Clause.—The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

SECTION IV.

Republican government guaranteed.—The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government; and shall protect each of them against invasion, and, on application of the Legislature, or of the Executive (when the Legislature cannot be convened), against domestic violence.

ARTICLE V.

Constitution, how to be amended.—The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the Legislatures of two-thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid, to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three-fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress; provided that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

ARTICLE VI.

Validity of debts recognized.—*1st Clause.*—All debts contracted and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution as under the Confederation.

Supreme Law of the Land defined.—*2d Clause.*—This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof; and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

Oath, of whom required, and for what.—*3d Clause.*—The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State Legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath, or affirmation, to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

ARTICLE VII.

Ratification.—The ratification of the conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

Done in convention by the unanimous consent of the States present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the independence of the United States of America the twelfth. In witness whereof we have hereunto subscribed our names.

GEORGE WASHINGTON,
President, and Deputy from Virginia.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

John Langdon,
Nicholas Gilman.

MASSACHUSETTS.

Nathaniel Gorham,
Rufus King.

CONNECTICUT.

William Samuel Johnson,
Roger Sherman.

NEW YORK.

Alexander Hamilton.

NEW JERSEY.

William Livingston,
David Brearley,
William Paterson,
Jonathan Dayton.

PENNSYLVANIA.

Benjamin Franklin,
Thomas Mifflin,
Robert Morris,
Thomas Clymer,
Thomas Fitzsimmons,
Jared Ingersoll,
James Wilson,
Gouverneur Morris.

DELAWARE.

George Read,
Gunning Bedford, Jr.,
John Dickinson,
Richard Bassett,
Jacob Broom.

MARYLAND.

James McHenry,
Daniel of St. Thomas Jenifer,
Daniel Carroll.

VIRGINIA.

John Blair,
James Madison, Jr.

NORTH CAROLINA.

William Blount,
Richard Dobbs Spraight,
Hugh Williamson.

SOUTH CAROLINA.

John Rutledge,
Charles C. Pinckney,
Charles Pinckney,
Pierce Butler.

GEORGIA.

William Few,
Abraham Baldwin.

Attest: WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary*.

AMENDMENTS.

*To the Constitution of the United States, Ratified According to the Provisions of the Fifth Article of the Foregoing Constitution.**

ARTICLE I.

Freedom in religion and speech, and of the press.—Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the Government for redress of grievances.

ARTICLE II.

Militia.—A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

ARTICLE III.

Soldiers.—No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner; nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

ARTICLE IV.

Search-warrants.—The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be siezed.

* The first ten Articles of Amendments were ratified in 1791; the 11th in 1798; the 12th in 1804; the 13th in 1865; the 14th in 1868, and the 15th in 1870.

ARTICLE V.

Capital crimes.—No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia when in actual service in time of war and public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offense to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor to be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

ARTICLE VI.

Trial by jury.—In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defense.

ARTICLE VII.

Suits at common law.—In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise reexamined, in any court of the United States, than according to the rules of common law.

ARTICLE VIII.

Bail.—Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

ARTICLE IX.

Certain rights defined.—The enumeration, in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

ARTICLE X.

Rights reserved.—The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

ARTICLE XI.

Judicial power limited.—The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States, by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

ARTICLE XII.

Amendment respecting the election of President and Vice-President.—The Electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President

and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the Government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate;—the President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted;—the person having the greatest number of votes for President shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed; and, if no person have such majority, then, from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed; and, if no person have a majority, then, from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President, shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

ARTICLE XIII.

SECTION I.

Slavery prohibited.—Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

SECTION II.

Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

ARTICLE XIV.

SECTION I.

Citizens and their rights.—All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States,

and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

SECTION II.

Adjustment of representation to the elective franchise.—Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of Electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, Representatives in Congress, the executive or judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

SECTION III.

Disabling conditions.—No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or Elector of President and Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress, by a vote of two-thirds of each house, may remove such disability.

SECTION IV.

Treatment of public debts.—The validity of the public debt of the United States, including debts incurred for the payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States, nor any State, shall assume, or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims, shall be held illegal and void.

SECTION V.

Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

ARTICLE XV. *

SECTION I.

Right to vote secured.—The right of the citizens of the United States to vote

shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

SECTION II.

The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

IN CONGRESS, July 4, 1776.

The Unanimous Declaration of the Thirteen United States of America.

1. When, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature, and of nature's God, entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

2. We hold these truths to be self-evident—that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain inalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundations on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world.

3. He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

4. He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing im-

portance, unless suspended in their operations till his assent should be obtained; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

5. He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the Legislature—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

6. He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the repository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

7. He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

8. He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected, whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the State remaining, in the meantime, exposed to all the dangers of invasions from without, and convulsions within.

9. He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose obstructing the laws for the naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

10. He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

11. He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

12. He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people and eat out their substance.

13. He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our Legislatures.

14. He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

15. He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitutions, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:

16. For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us;

17. For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States;

18. For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world;

19. For imposing taxes on us without our consent;

20. For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefit of trial by jury;

21. For transporting us beyond seas, to be tried for pretended offences;

22. For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies;

23. For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the forms of our governments;

24. For suspending our own Legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever;

25. He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

26. He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burned our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

27. He is at this time transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries, to complete the work of death, desolation, and tyranny already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

28. He has constrained our fellow-citizens taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

29. He has excited domestic insurrection among us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

30. In every stage of these oppressions we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

31. Nor have we been wanting in our attentions to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of a common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them as we hold the rest of mankind—enemies in war—in peace, friends.

32. We, therefore, the Representatives of the United States of America, in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare that these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent States, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and do all other acts and things which independent States may of right do. And for the support of

this Declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

JOHN HANCOCK.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

Josiah Bartlett,
William Whipple,
Matthew Thornton.

MASSACHUSETTS BAY.

Samuel Adams,
John Adams,
Robert Treat Paine,
Elbridge Gerry.

RHODE ISLAND.

Stephen Hopkins,
William Ellery.

CONNECTICUT.

Roger Sherman,
Samuel Huntington,
William Williams,
Oliver Wolcott.

NEW YORK.

William Floyd,
Philip Livingston,
Francis Lewis,
Lewis Morris.

NEW JERSEY.

Richard Stockton,
John Witherspoon,
Francis Hopkinson,
John Hart,
Abraham Clark.

PENNSYLVANIA.

Robert Morris,
Benjamin Rush,
Benjamin Franklin,
John Morton,
George Clymer,

James Smith,
George Taylor,
James Wilson,
George Ross.

DELAWARE.

Cæsar Rodney,
George Read,
Thomas M'Kean.

MARYLAND.

Samuel Chase,
William Paca,
Thomas Stone,
Charles Carroll, of Carrollton.

VIRGINIA.

George Wythe,
Richard Henry Lee,
Thomas Jefferson,
Benjamin Harrison,
Thomas Nelson, Jr.,
Francis Lightfoot Lee,
Carter Braxton.

NORTH CAROLINA.

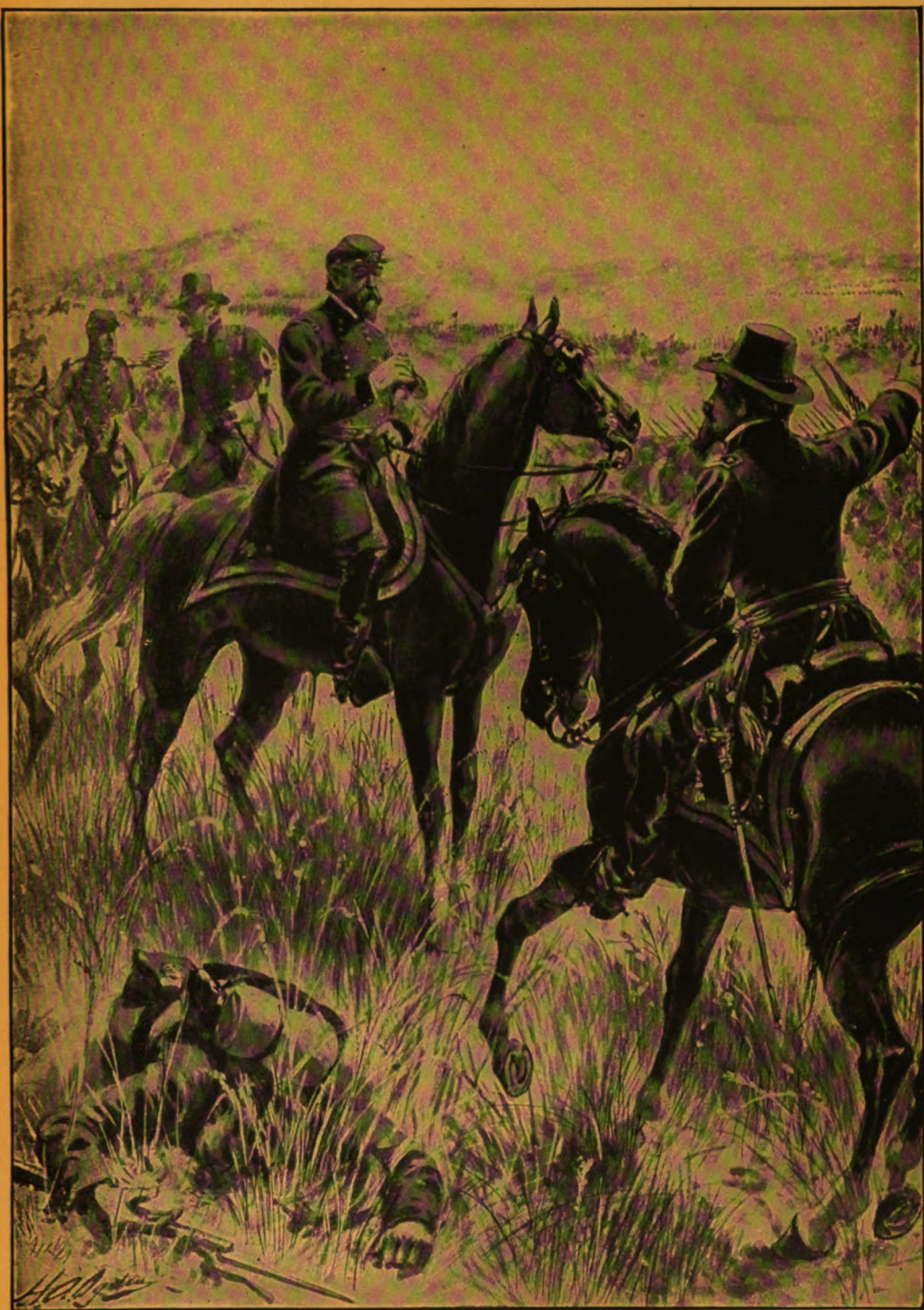
William Hooper,
Joseph Hewes,
John Penn.

SOUTH CAROLINA.

Edward Rutledge,
Thomas Heyward, Jr.,
Thomas Lynch, Jr.,
Arthur Middleton.

GEORGIA.

Button Gwinnett,
Lyman Hall,
George Walton.



Copyright 1897 by Knight & Brown

MEADE AT GETTYSBURG, JULY 2, 1863

Digitized by Google

THE
LIBRARY
OF THE
MUSEUM
OF
COMPARATIVE ZOOLOGY
AND ANATOMY
HARVARD UNIVERSITY
CAMBRIDGE, MASS.

THE PROCLAMATION OF EMANCIPATION.

A PROCLAMATION.

Whereas, on the twenty-second day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and sixty-two, a proclamation was issued by the President of the United States, containing, among other things, the following, to wit:

“That on the first day of January, in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and sixty-three, all persons held as slaves within any State or designated parts of a State, the people whereof shall then be in rebellion against the United States, shall be then, thenceforward, and forever free; and the executive government of the United States, including the military and naval authority thereof, will recognize and maintain the freedom of such persons, and will do no act or acts to repress such persons, or any of them, in any efforts they may make for their actual freedom.

“That the Executive will, on the first day of January aforesaid, by proclamation, designate the States and parts of States, if any, in which the people thereof respectively shall then be in rebellion against the United States; and the fact that any State, or the people thereof, shall on that day be in good faith represented in the Congress of the United States, by members chosen thereto at elections wherein a majority of the qualified voters of such State shall have participated, shall, in the absence of strong countervailing testimony, be deemed conclusive evidence that such State, and the people thereof, are not then in rebellion against the United States.”

Now, therefore, I, Abraham Lincoln, President of the United States, by virtue of the power in me vested as Commander-in-Chief of the Army and Navy of the United States in time of actual armed rebellion against the authority and government of the United States, and as a fit and necessary war measure for suppressing said rebellion, do, on this first day of January, in the year of our Lord one thousand eight hundred and sixty-three, and in accordance with my purpose so to do, publicly proclaimed for the full period of one hundred days, from the day first above mentioned, order and designate as the States and parts of States wherein the people thereof respectively are this day in rebellion against the United States, to wit:

Arkansas, Texas, Louisiana (except the parishes of St. Bernard, Plaquemines, Jefferson, St. John, St. Charles, St. James, Ascension, Assumption, Terre Bonne, Lafourche, Ste. Marie, St. Martin, and Orleans, including the city of New Orleans), Mississippi, Alabama, Florida, Georgia, South Carolina, North Carolina, and Virginia (except the forty-eight counties designated as West Virginia, and also the counties of Berkeley, Accomac, Northampton, Elizabeth City, York, Princess Anne, and Norfolk, including the cities of Norfolk and

Portsmouth), and which excepted parts are for the present left precisely as if this proclamation were not issued.

And by virtue of the power and for the purpose aforesaid, I do order and declare that all persons held as slaves within said designated States and parts of States, are and henceforward shall be free; and that the executive government of the United States, including the military and naval authorities thereof, will recognize and maintain the freedom of said persons.

And I hereby enjoin upon the people so declared to be free, to abstain from all violence, unless in necessary self-defence; and I recommend to them that, in all cases when allowed, they labor faithfully for reasonable wages.

And I further declare and make known that such persons, of suitable condition, will be received into the armed service of the United States to garrison forts, positions, stations, and other places, and to man vessels of all sorts in said service.

And upon this act, sincerely believed to be an act of justice, warranted by the Constitution upon military necessity, I invoke the considerate judgment of mankind, and the gracious favor of Almighty God.

In testimony whereof, I have hereunto set my name, and caused the seal of the United States to be affixed.

Done at the City of Washington, this first day of January, in the year of our [L. s.] Lord one thousand eight hundred and sixty-three, and of the independence of the United States the eighty-seventh.

(Signed)

ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

By the President:

WILLIAM H. SEWARD, *Secretary of State.*

WASHINGTON'S FAREWELL ADDRESS.

FAREWELL ADDRESS TO THE PEOPLE OF THE UNITED STATES.

September 17th, 1796.

FRIENDS AND FELLOW-CITIZENS,—The period for a new election of a citizen, to administer the executive government of the United States, being not far distant, and the time actually arrived, when your thoughts must be employed in designating the person, who is to be clothed with that important trust, it appears to me proper, especially as it may conduce to a more distinct expression of the public voice, that I should now apprise you of the resolution I have formed, to decline being considered among the number of those, out of whom a choice is to be made.

I beg you, at the same time, to do me the justice to be assured, that this

resolution has not been taken without a strict regard to all the considerations appertaining to the relation, which binds a dutiful citizen to his country; and that, in withdrawing the tender of service, which silence in my situation might imply, I am influenced by no diminution of zeal for your future interest; no deficiency of grateful respect for your past kindness; but am supported by a full conviction that the step is compatible with both.

The acceptance of, and continuance hitherto in, the office to which your suffrages have twice called me, have been a uniform sacrifice of inclination to the opinion of duty, and to a deference for what appeared to be your desire. I constantly hoped, that it would have been much earlier in my power, consistently with motives, which I was not at liberty to disregard, to return to that retirement, from which I had been reluctantly drawn. The strength of my inclination to do this, previous to the last election, had even led to the preparation of an address to declare it to you; but mature reflection on the then perplexed and critical posture of our affairs with foreign nations, and the unanimous advice of persons entitled to my confidence, impelled me to abandon the idea.

I rejoice, that the state of your concerns, external as well as internal, no longer renders the pursuit of inclination incompatible with the sentiment of duty, or propriety; and am persuaded, whatever partiality may be retained for my services, that, in the present circumstances of our country, you will not disapprove my determination to retire.

The impressions, with which I first undertook the arduous trust, were explained on the proper occasion. In the discharge of this trust, I will only say, that I have, with good intentions, contributed towards the organization and administration of the government the best exertions of which a very fallible judgment was capable. Not unconscious, in the outset, of the inferiority of my qualifications, experience in my own eyes, perhaps still more in the eyes of others, has strengthened the motives to diffidence of myself; and every day the increasing weight of years admonishes me more and more, that the shade of retirement is as necessary to me as it will be welcome. Satisfied, that, if any circumstances have given peculiar value to my services, they were temporary, I have the consolation to believe, that, while choice and prudence invite me to quit the political scene, patriotism does not forbid it.

In looking forward to the moment, which is intended to terminate the career of my public life, my feelings do not permit me to suspend the deep acknowledgment of that debt of gratitude, which I owe to my beloved country for the many honors it has conferred upon me; still more for the steadfast confidence with which it has supported me; and for the opportunities I have thence enjoyed of manifesting my inviolable attachment, by services faithful and persevering, though in usefulness unequal to my zeal. If benefits have resulted to our country from these services, let it always be remembered to your praise, and as an instructive example in our annals, that, under circumstances in which the passions, agitated in every direction, were liable to mislead, amidst appearances

sometimes dubious, vicissitudes of fortune often discouraging, in situations in which not unfrequently want of success has countenanced the spirit of criticism, the constancy of your support was the essential prop of the efforts, and a guarantee of the plans by which they were effected. Profoundly penetrated with this idea, I shall carry it with me to my grave, as a strong incitement to unceasing vows that Heaven may continue to you the choicest tokens of its beneficence; that your union and brotherly affection may be perpetual; that the free Constitution, which is the work of your hands, may be sacredly maintained; that its administration in every department may be stamped with wisdom and virtue; that, in fine, the happiness of the people of these States, under the auspices of liberty, may be made complete, by so careful a preservation and so prudent a use of this blessing, as will acquire to them the glory of recommending it to the applause, the affection, and adoption of every nation, which is yet a stranger to it.

Here, perhaps, I ought to stop. But a solicitude for your welfare, which cannot end but with my life, and the apprehension of danger, natural to that solicitude, urge me, on an occasion like the present, to offer to your solemn contemplation, and to recommend to your frequent review, some sentiments, which are the result of much reflection, of no inconsiderable observation, and which appear to me all-important to the permanency of your felicity as a People. These will be offered to you with the more freedom, as you can only see in them the disinterested warnings of a parting friend, who can possibly have no personal motive to bias his counsel. Nor can I forget, as an encouragement to it, your indulgent reception of my sentiments on a former and not dissimilar occasion.

Interwoven as is the love of liberty with every ligament of your hearts, no recommendation of mine is necessary to fortify or confirm the attachment.

The unity of Government, which constitutes you one people, is also now dear to you. It is justly so; for it is a main pillar in the edifice of your real independence, the support of your tranquillity at home, your peace abroad; of your safety; of your prosperity; of that very Liberty, which you so highly prize. But as it is easy to foresee, that, from different causes and from different quarters, much pains will be taken, many artifices employed, to weaken in your minds the conviction of this truth; as this is the point in your political fortress against which the batteries of internal and external enemies will be most constantly and actively (though often covertly and insidiously) directed, it is of infinite moment, that you should properly estimate the immense value of your national Union to your collective and individual happiness; that you should cherish a cordial, habitual, and immovable attachment to it; accustoming yourselves to think and speak of it as of the Palladium of your political safety and prosperity; watching for its preservation with jealous anxiety; discountenancing whatever may suggest even a suspicion, that it can in any event be abandoned; and indignantly frowning upon the first dawning of every attempt to

alienate any portion of our country from the rest, or to enfeeble the sacred ties which now link together the various parts.

For this you have every inducement of sympathy and interest. Citizens, by birth or choice, of a common country, that country has a right to concentrate your affections. The name of *AMERICAN*, which belongs to you, in your national capacity, must always exalt the just pride of Patriotism, more than any appellation derived from local discriminations. With slight shades of difference, you have the same religion, manners, habits, and political principles. You have in a common cause fought and triumphed together; the Independence and Liberty you possess are the work of joint counsels, and joint efforts, of common dangers, sufferings, and successes.

But these considerations, however powerfully they address themselves to your sensibility, are greatly outweighed by those, which apply more immediately to your interest. Here every portion of our country finds the most commanding motives for carefully guarding and preserving the Union of the whole.

The *North*, in an unrestrained intercourse with the *South*, protected by the equal laws of a common government, finds, in the productions of the latter, great additional resources of maritime and commercial enterprise and precious materials of manufacturing industry. The *South*, in the same intercourse, benefiting by the agency of the *North*, sees its agriculture grow and its commerce expand. Turning partly into its own channels the seamen of the *North*, it finds its particular navigation invigorated; and, while it contributes, in different ways, to nourish and increase the general mass of the national navigation, it looks forward to the protection of a maritime strength, to which itself is unequally adapted. The *East*, in a like intercourse with the *West*, already finds, and in the progressive improvement of interior communications, by land and water, will more and more find, a valuable vent for the commodities which it brings from abroad, or manufactures at home. The *West* derives from the *East* supplies requisite to its growth and comfort, and, what is perhaps of still greater consequence, it must of necessity owe the *secure* enjoyment of indispensable *outlets* for its own productions to the weight, influence, and the future maritime strength of the Atlantic side of the Union, directed by an indissoluble community of interest as *one nation*. Any other tenure by which the *West* can hold this essential advantage, whether derived from its own separate strength, or from an apostate and unnatural connexion with any foreign power, must be intrinsically precarious.

While, then, every part of our country thus feels an immediate and particular interest in Union, all the parts combined cannot fail to find in the united mass of means and efforts greater strength, greater resource, proportionably greater security from external danger, a less frequent interruption of their peace by foreign nations; and, what is of inestimable value, they must derive from Union an exemption from those broils and wars between themselves, which so frequently afflict neighboring countries not tied together by the same govern-

ments, which their own rivalships alone would be sufficient to produce, but which opposite foreign alliances, attachments, and intrigues would stimulate and im-bitter. Hence, likewise, they will avoid the necessity of those overgrown military establishments, which, under any form of government, are inauspicious to liberty, and which are to be regarded as particularly hostile to Republican Liberty. In this sense it is, that your Union ought to be considered as a main prop of your liberty, and that the love of the one ought to endear to you the preservation of the other.

These considerations speak a persuasive language to every reflecting and virtuous mind, and exhibit the continuance of the UNION as a primary object of Patriotic desire. Is there a doubt, whether a common government can embrace so large a sphere? Let experience solve it. To listen to mere speculation in such a case were criminal. We are authorized to hope, that a proper organization of the whole, with the auxiliary agency of governments for the respective subdivisions, will afford a happy issue to the experiment. It is well worth a fair and full experiment. With such powerful and obvious motives to Union, affecting all parts of our country, while experience shall not have demonstrated its impracticability, there will always be reason to distrust the patriotism of those, who in any quarter may endeavor to weaken its bands.

In contemplating the causes, which may disturb our Union, it occurs as matter of serious concern, that any ground should have been furnished for characterizing parties by *Geographical* discriminations, *Northern* and *Southern*, *Atlantic* and *Western*; whence designing men may endeavor to excite a belief, that there is a real difference of local interests and views. One of the expedients of party to acquire influence, within particular districts, is to misrepresent the opinions and aims of other districts. You cannot shield yourselves too much against the jealousies and heart-burnings, which spring from these misrepresentations; they tend to render alien to each other those, who ought to be bound together by fraternal affection. The inhabitants of our western country have lately had a useful lesson on this head; they have seen, in the negotiation by the Executive, and in the unanimous ratification by the Senate, of the treaty with Spain, and in the universal satisfaction at that event, throughout the United States, a decisive proof how unfounded were the suspicions propagated among them of a policy in the General Government and in the Atlantic States unfriendly to their interests in regard to the Mississippi; they have been witnesses to the formation of two treaties, that with Great Britain, and that with Spain, which secure to them every thing they could desire, in respect to our foreign relations, towards confirming their prosperity. Will it not be their wisdom to rely for the preservation of these advantages on the UNION by which they were procured? Will they not henceforth be deaf to those advisers, if such there are, who would sever them from their brethren, and connect them with aliens?

To the efficacy and permanency of your Union, a Government for the whole is indispensable. No alliances, however strict, between the parts, can be an

adequate substitute; they must inevitably experience the infractions and interruptions, which all alliances in all times have experienced. Sensible of this momentous truth, you have improved upon your first essay, by the adoption of a Constitution of Government better calculated than your former for an intimate Union, and for the efficacious management of your common concerns. This Government, the offspring of our own choice, uninfluenced and unawed, adopted upon full investigation and mature deliberation, completely free in its principles, in the distribution of its powers uniting security with energy, and containing within itself a provision for its own amendment, has a just claim to your confidence and your support. Respect for its authority, compliance with its laws, acquiescence in its measures, are duties enjoined by the fundamental maxims of true Liberty. The basis of our political systems is the right of the people to make and to alter their Constitutions of Government. But the Constitution which at any time exists, till changed by an explicit and authentic act of the whole people, is sacredly obligatory upon all. The very idea of the power and the right of the people to establish Government presupposes the duty of every individual to obey the established Government.

All obstructions to the execution of the Laws, all combinations and associations, under whatever plausible character, with the real design to direct, control, counteract, or awe the regular deliberation and action of the constituted authorities, are destructive of this fundamental principle, and of fatal tendency. They serve to organize faction, to give it an artificial and extraordinary force; to put, in the place of the delegated will of the nation, the will of a party, often a small but artful and enterprising minority of the community; and, according to the alternate triumphs of different parties, to make the public administration the mirror of the ill-concerted and incongruous projects of faction, rather than the organ of consistent and wholesome plans digested by common counsels, and modified by mutual interests.

However combinations or associations of the above description may now and then answer popular ends, they are likely, in the course of time and things, to become potent engines, by which cunning, ambitious, and unprincipled men will be enabled to subvert the power of the people, and to usurp for themselves the reins of government; destroying afterwards the very engines, which have lifted them to unjust dominion.

Towards the preservation of your government, and the permanency of your present happy state, it is requisite, not only that you steadily discountenance irregular oppositions to its acknowledged authority, but also that you resist with care the spirit of innovation upon its principles, however specious the pretxts. One method of assault may be to effect, in the forms of the Constitution, alterations, which will impair the energy of the system, and thus to undermine what cannot be directly overthrown. In all the changes to which you may be invited, remember that time and habit are at least as necessary to fix the true character of governments, as of other human institutions; that experience is the surest

standard, by which to test the real tendency of the existing Constitution of a country; that facility in changes, upon the credit of mere hypothesis and opinion, exposes to perpetual change, from the endless variety of hypothesis and opinion; and remember, especially, that, for the efficient management of your common interests, in a country so extensive as ours, a government of as much vigor as is consistent with the perfect security of liberty, is indispensable. Liberty itself will find in such a government, with powers properly distributed and adjusted, its surest guardian. It is, indeed, little else than a name, where the government is too feeble to withstand the enterprises of faction, to confine each member of the society within the limits prescribed by the laws, and to maintain all in the secure and tranquil enjoyment of the rights of person and property.

I have already intimated to you the danger of parties in the state, with particular reference to the founding of them on geographical discriminations. Let me now take a more comprehensive view, and warn you in the most solemn manner against the baneful effects of the spirit of party, generally.

This spirit, unfortunately, is inseparable from our nature, having its root in the strongest passions of the human mind. It exists under different shapes in all governments, more or less stifled, controlled, or repressed; but, in those of the popular form, it is seen in its greatest rankness, and is truly their worst enemy.

The alternate domination of one faction over another, sharpened by the spirit of revenge, natural to party dissension, which in different ages and countries has perpetrated the most horrid enormities, is itself a frightful despotism. But this leads at length to a more formal and permanent despotism. The disorders and miseries, which result, gradually incline the minds of men to seek security and repose in the absolute power of an individual; and sooner or later the chief of some prevailing faction, more able or more fortunate than his competitors, turns this disposition to the purposes of his own elevation, on the ruins of Public Liberty.

Without looking forward to an extremity of this kind, (which nevertheless ought not to be entirely out of sight,) the common and continual mischiefs of the spirit of party are sufficient to make it the interest and duty of a wise people to discourage and restrain it.

It serves always to distract the Public Councils, and enfeeble the Public Administration. It agitates the Community with ill-founded jealousies and false alarms; kindles the animosity of one part against another; foment, occasionally, riot and insurrection. It opens the door to foreign influence and corruption, which find a facilitated access to the government itself through the channels of party passions. Thus the policy and the will of one country are subjected to the policy and will of another.

There is an opinion, that parties in free countries are useful checks upon the administration of the Government, and serve to keep alive the spirit of

Liberty. This, within certain limits, is probably true; and in Governments of a Monarchical cast, Patriotism may look with indulgence, if not with favor, upon the spirit of party. But in those of the popular character, in Governments purely elective, it is a spirit not to be encouraged. From their natural tendency, it is certain there will always be enough of that spirit for every salutary purpose. And, there being constant danger of excess, the effort ought to be, by force of public opinion, to mitigate and assuage it. A fire not to be quenched, it demands a uniform vigilance to prevent its bursting into a flame, lest, instead of warning, it should consume.

It is important, likewise, that the habits of thinking in a free country should inspire caution, in those intrusted with its administration, to confine themselves within their respective constitutional spheres, avoiding in the exercise of the powers of one department to encroach upon another. The spirit of encroachment tends to consolidate the powers of all the departments in one, and thus to create, whatever the form of government, a real despotism. A just estimate of that love of power, and proneness to abuse it, which predominates in the human heart, is sufficient to satisfy us of the truth of this position. The necessity of reciprocal checks in the exercise of political power, by dividing and distributing it into different depositories, and constituting each the Guardian of the Public Weal against invasions by the others, has been evinced by experiments ancient and modern; some of them in our country and under our own eyes. To preserve them must be as necessary as to institute them. If, in the opinion of the people, the distribution or modification of the constitutional powers be in any particular wrong, let it be corrected by an amendment, in the way which the Constitution designates. But let there be no change by usurpation; for, though this, in one instance, may be the instrument of good, it is the customary weapon by which free governments are destroyed. The precedent must always greatly overbalance in permanent evil any partial or transient benefit, which the use can at any time yield.

Of all the dispositions and habits, which lead to political prosperity, Religion and Morality are indispensable supports. In vain would that man claim the tribute of Patriotism, who should labor to subvert these great pillars of human happiness, these firmest props of the duties of Men and Citizens. The mere Politician, equally with the pious man, ought to respect and to cherish them. A volume could not trace all their connexions with private and public felicity. Let it simply be asked, Where is the security for property, for reputation, for life, if the sense of religious obligation *desert* the oaths, which are the instruments of investigation in Courts of Justice? And let us with caution indulge the supposition, that morality can be maintained without religion. Whatever may be conceded to the influence of refined education on minds of peculiar structure, reason and experience both forbid us to expect, that national morality can prevail in exclusion of religious principle.

It is substantially true, that virtue or morality is a necessary spring of

popular government. The rule, indeed, extends with more or less force to every species of free government. Who, that is a sincere friend to it, can look with indifference upon attempts to shake the foundation of the fabric?

Promote, then, as an object of primary importance, institutions for the general diffusion of knowledge. In proportion as the structure of a government gives force to public opinion, it is essential that public opinion should be enlightened.

As a very important source of strength and security, cherish public credit. One method of preserving it is, to use it as sparingly as possible; avoiding occasions of expense by cultivating peace, but remembering also that timely disbursements to prepare for danger frequently prevent much greater disbursements to repel it; avoiding likewise the accumulation of debt, not only by shunning occasions of expense, but by vigorous exertions in time of peace to discharge the debts, which unavoidable wars may have occasioned, not ungenerously throwing upon posterity the burden, which we ourselves ought to bear. The execution of these maxims belongs to your representatives, but it is necessary that public opinion should co-operate. To facilitate to them the performance of their duty, it is essential that you should practically bear in mind, that towards the payment of debts there must be Revenue; that to have Revenue there must be taxes; that no taxes can be devised, which are not more or less inconvenient and unpleasant; that the intrinsic embarrassment, inseparable from the selection of the proper objects, (which is always a choice of difficulties,) ought to be a decisive motive for a candid construction of the conduct of the government in making it, and for a spirit of acquiescence in the measures for obtaining revenue, which the public exigencies may at any time dictate.

Observe good faith and justice towards all Nations; cultivate peace and harmony with all. Religion and Morality enjoin this conduct; and can it be, that good policy does not equally enjoin it? It will be worthy of a free, enlightened, and, at no distant period, a great Nation, to give to mankind the magnanimous and too novel example of a people always guided by an exalted justice and benevolence. Who can doubt, that, in the course of time and things, the fruits of such a plan would richly repay any temporary advantages, which might be lost by a steady adherence to it? Can it be, that Providence has not connected the permanent felicity of a Nation with its Virtue? The experiment, at least, is recommended by every sentiment which ennobles human nature. Alas! is it rendered impossible by its vices?

In the execution of such a plan, nothing is more essential than that permanent, inveterate antipathies against particular Nations, and passionate attachments for others, should be excluded; and that, in place of them, just and amicable feelings towards all should be cultivated. The Nation, which indulges towards another an habitual hatred, or an habitual fondness, is in some degree a slave. It is a slave to its animosity or to its affection, either of which is sufficient to lead it astray from its duty and its interest. Antipathy in one nation against

another disposes each more readily to offer insult and injury, to lay hold of slight causes of umbrage, and to be haughty and intractable, when accidental or trifling occasions of dispute occur. Hence frequent collisions, obstinate, envenomed, and bloody contests. The Nation, prompted by ill-will and resentment, sometimes impels to war the Government, contrary to the best calculations of policy. The Government sometimes participates in the national propensity, and adopts through passion what reason would reject; at other times, it makes the animosity of the nation subservient to projects of hostility instigated by pride, ambition, and other sinister and pernicious motives. The peace often, sometimes perhaps the liberty, of Nations has been the victim.

So, likewise, a passionate attachment of one Nation for another produces a variety of evils. Sympathy for the favorite Nation, facilitating the illusion of an imaginary common interest, in cases where no real common interest exists, and infusing into one the enmities of the other, betrays the former into a participation in the quarrels and wars of the latter, without adequate inducement or justification. It leads also to concessions to the favorite Nation of privileges denied to others, which is apt doubly to injure the Nation making the concessions; by unnecessarily parting with what ought to have been retained; and by exciting jealousy, ill-will, and a disposition to retaliate, in the parties from whom equal privileges are withheld. And it gives to ambitious, corrupted, or deluded citizens, (who devote themselves to the favorite nation,) facility to betray or sacrifice the interests of their own country, without odium, sometimes even with popularity; gilding, with the appearances of a virtuous sense of obligation, a commendable deference for public opinion, or a laudable zeal for public good, the base or foolish compliances of ambition, corruption, or infatuation.

As avenues to foreign influence in innumerable ways, such attachments are particularly alarming to the truly enlightened and independent Patriot. How many opportunities do they afford to tamper with domestic factions, to practise the arts of seduction, to mislead public opinion, to influence or awe the Public Councils! Such an attachment of a small or weak, towards a great and powerful nation, dooms the former to be the satellite of the latter.

Against the insidious wiles of foreign influence, (I conjure you to believe me, fellow-citizens,) the jealousy of a free people ought to be *constantly* awake; since history and experience prove, that foreign influence is one of the most baneful foes of Republican Government. But that jealousy, to be useful, must be impartial; else it becomes the instrument of the very influence to be avoided, instead of a defence against it. Excessive partiality for one foreign nation, and excessive dislike of another, cause those whom they actuate to see danger only on one side, and serve to veil and even second the arts of influence on the other. Real patriots, who may resist the intrigues of the favorite, are liable to become suspected and odious; while its tools and dupes usurp the applause and confidence of the people, to surrender their interests.

The great rule of conduct for us, in regard to foreign nations, is, in extending our commercial relations, to have with them as little *political* connexion as possible. So far as we have already formed engagements, let them be fulfilled with perfect good faith. Here let us stop.

Europe has a set of primary interests, which to us have none, or a very remote relation. Hence she must be engaged in frequent controversies, the causes of which are essentially foreign to our concerns. Hence, therefore, it must be unwise in us to implicate ourselves, by artificial ties, in the ordinary vicissitudes of her politics, or the ordinary combinations and collisions of her friendships or enmities.

Our detached and distant situation invites and enables us to pursue a different course. If we remain one people, under an efficient government, the period is not far off, when we may defy material injury from external annoyance; when we may take such an attitude as will cause the neutrality, we may at any time resolve upon, to be scrupulously respected; when belligerent nations, under the impossibility of making acquisitions upon us, will not lightly hazard the giving us provocation; when we may choose peace or war, as our interest, guided by justice, shall counsel.

Why forego the advantages of so peculiar a situation? Why quit our own to stand upon foreign ground? Why, by interweaving our destiny with that of any part of Europe, entangle our peace and prosperity in the toils of European ambition, rivalship, interest, humor, or caprice?

It is our true policy to steer clear of permanent alliances with any portion of the foreign world; so far, I mean, as we are now at liberty to do it; for let me not be understood as capable of patronising infidelity to existing engagements. I hold the maxim no less applicable to public than to private affairs, that honesty is always the best policy. I repeat it, therefore, let those engagements be observed in their genuine sense. But, in my opinion, it is unnecessary and would be unwise to extend them.

Taking care always to keep ourselves, by suitable establishments, on a respectable defensive posture, we may safely trust to temporary alliances for extraordinary emergencies.

Harmony, and a liberal intercourse with all nations, are recommended by policy, humanity, and interest. But even our commercial policy should hold an equal and impartial hand; neither seeking nor granting exclusive favors or preferences; consulting the natural course of things; diffusing and diversifying by gentle means the streams of commerce, but forcing nothing; establishing, with powers so disposed, in order to give trade a stable course, to define the rights of our merchants, and to enable the government to support them, conventional rules of intercourse, the best that present circumstances and mutual opinion will permit, but temporary, and liable to be from time to time abandoned or varied, as experience and circumstances shall dictate; constantly keeping in view, that it is folly in one nation to look for disinterested favors from another;

that it must pay with a portion of its independence for whatever it may accept under that character; that, by such acceptance, it may place itself in the condition of having given equivalents for nominal favors, and yet of being reproached with ingratitude for not giving more. There can be no greater error than to expect or calculate upon real favors from nation to nation. It is an illusion, which experience must cure, which a just pride ought to discard.

In offering to you, my countrymen, these counsels of an old and affectionate friend, I dare not hope they will make the strong and lasting impression I could wish; that they will control the usual current of the passions, or prevent our nation from running the course, which has hitherto marked the destiny of nations. But, if I may even flatter myself, that they may be productive of some partial benefit, some occasional good; that they may now and then recur to moderate the fury of party spirit, to warn against the mischiefs of foreign intrigue, to guard against the impostures of pretended patriotism; this hope will be a full recompense for the solicitude for your welfare, by which they have been dictated.

How far, in the discharge of my official duties, I have been guided by the principles which have been delineated, the public records and other evidences of my conduct must witness to you and to the world. To myself, the assurance of my own conscience is, that I have at least believed myself to be guided by them.

In relation to the still subsisting war in Europe, my Proclamation of the 22d of April, 1793, is the index to my Plan. Sanctioned by your approving voice, and by that of your Representatives in both Houses of Congress, the spirit of that measure has continually governed me, uninfluenced by any attempts to deter or divert me from it.

After deliberate examination, with the aid of the best lights I could obtain, I was well satisfied that our country, under all the circumstances of the case, had a right to take, and was bound in duty and interest to take, a neutral position. Having taken it, I determined, as far as should depend upon me, to maintain it, with moderation, perseverance, and firmness.

The considerations, which respect the right to hold this conduct, it is not necessary on this occasion to detail. I will only observe, that, according to my understanding of the matter, that right, so far from being denied by any of the Belligerent Powers, has been virtually admitted by all.

The duty of holding a neutral conduct may be inferred, without any thing more, from the obligation which justice and humanity impose on every nation, in cases in which it is free to act, to maintain inviolate the relations of peace and amity towards other nations.

The inducements of interest for observing that conduct will best be referred to your own reflections and experience. With me, a predominant motive has been to endeavor to gain time to our country to settle and mature its yet recent institutions, and to progress without interruption to that degree of strength and

consistency, which is necessary to give it, humanly speaking, the command of its own fortunes.

Though, in reviewing the incidents of my administration, I am unconscious of intentional error, I am nevertheless too sensible of my defects not to think it probable that I may have committed many errors. Whatever they may be, I fervently beseech the Almighty to avert or mitigate the evils to which they may tend. I shall also carry with me the hope, that my Country will never cease to view them with indulgence; and that, after forty-five years of my life dedicated to its service with an upright zeal, the faults of incompetent abilities will be consigned to oblivion, as myself must soon be to the mansions of rest.

Relying on its kindness in this as in other things, and actuated by that fervent love towards it, which is so natural to a man, who views in it the native soil of himself and his progenitors for several generations; I anticipate with pleasing expectation that retreat, in which I promise myself to realize, without alloy, the sweet enjoyment of partaking, in the midst of my fellow-citizens, the benign influence of good laws under a free government, the ever favorite object of my heart, and the happy reward, as I trust, of our mutual cares, labors, and dangers.

GEORGE WASHINGTON.

United States, September 17th, 1796.

GENERAL CHRONOLOGY.

ANCIENT TIMES.

B. C.

- 2700 Menes first King of Egypt.
- 2500 Supposed founding of the Chaldean Empire by Nimrod.
- 2240 Supposed founding of China by Fohi.
- 2217 Supposed founding of Nineveh by Asshur.
- 2100 Egypt conquered by the Hyksos, or Shepherd Kings.
- 2082 Abraham settled in the Promised Land of Canaan.
- 1867 Jacob and his family settled in Egypt.
- 1856 Supposed founding of Argos, in Greece, by Inachus.
- 1652 Moses led the Israelites out of Egypt.
- 1612 Death of Moses.
- “ The Israelites, led by Joshua, settled in Canaan.
- 1556 Supposed founding of Athens, in Greece, by Cecrops.
- 1525 The Hyksos expelled from Egypt.
- 1520 Supposed founding of Sparta, in Greece, by Lelex.
- “ Supposed founding of Corinth, in Greece.



Copyright, 1897, by Knight & Brown

GRANT IN THE WILDERNESS

From the Painting by H. A. Ogden

THE
LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF
MICHIGAN
ANN ARBOR, MICH.
48106-1500

- 1493 Supposed founding of Thebes, in Greece, by Cadmus.
 1263 Argonautic Expedition.
 1250 The Assyrian Empire founded.
 1245 Overthrow of the Midianites by Gideon.
 1194-1184 The Trojan War.
 1100 Return of the Heraclidæ.
 1095-1055 Saul first King over Israel.
 1068 Death of Codrus, the last King of Athens.
 1055-1015 David King over Israel.
 1050 Tyre became the leading Phœnician state.
 1015-975 Solomon King over Israel.
 1004 Solomon completed the Temple of Jerusalem.
 975 Revolt of the Ten Tribes.
 878 Carthage founded by the Phœnicians under Queen Dido.
 850 Lycurgus established his code at Sparta.
 776 The First Olympiad.
 753 Rome founded by Romulus.
 743-723 The First Messenian War.
 721 The Israelites carried into the Assyrian Captivity.
 716 Disappearance of Romulus.
 708 The Kingdom of Media founded.
 685-668 The Second Messenian War.
 625 Nineveh destroyed and the Assyrian Empire overthrown by the Medes and Babylonians.
 “ The Babylonian Empire founded by Nabopolassar.
 624 Draco framed a code of laws for Athens.
 600 Rise of Buddhism in India.
 594 Solon framed a code for Athens.
 586 The Jews carried into the Babylonian Captivity.
 560 Usurpation of Pisistratus at Athens.
 559 Cyrus the Great founded the Medo-Persian Empire.
 546 Cyrus the Great conquered the Kingdom of Lydia.
 538 Cyrus the Great conquered Babylon.
 536 Cyrus the Great permitted the Jews to return to Palestine.
 530 Cyrus the Great defeated and killed by the Scythians.
 525 Cambyses, King of Persia, conquered Egypt.
 521 Darius Hystaspes became King of Persia.
 510 Hippias expelled from Athens and the Athenian Republic restored.
 509 Tarquin the Proud expelled from Rome.
 “ Rome becomes a Republic.
 495 Revolt of the Greek cities of Asia Minor against Persia.
 494 Plebeian insurrection at Rome.
 “ Tribunes chosen at Rome.

- 490 Banishment of Coriolanus from Rome.
- “ Commencement of the Persian War against Greece.
- “ Persian invasion of Greece.
- “ Battle of Marathon.
- 480 Invasion of Greece by Xerxes, King of Persia.
- “ Battle of Thermopylæ.
- “ Athens burned by the Persians.
- “ Battle of Salamis, } Greek victories over the Persians,
- 479 Battle of Platæa, }
 - “ Battle of Mycalé, }
- 471 Themistocles banished from Athens.
- 469 Battle of Eurymedon.
- 464 Earthquake at Sparta.
- 463 Rebellion of the Spartan Helots and the Messenians.
- 460 Ezra and Nehemiah rebuild Jerusalem.
- 458 Dictatorship of Cincinnatus.
- 450 Decemvirs chosen in Rome.
- 449 Peace made between Greece and Persia.
- 448 Abolition of the Office of Decemvir.
- 431 Commencement of the Peloponnesian War.
- 429 Plague at Athens and death of Pericles.
- 421 Peace of Nicias,
- 415 Athenian Expedition against Syracuse.
- 405 Battle of Ægospotamos.
- 404 Surrender of Athens to the Spartans.
- “ The Thirty Tyrants rule in Athens.
- 403 The Council of Ten in Athens.
- “ Democracy restored in Athens.
- 400 Retreat of the Ten Thousand Greeks from Persia.
- 399 Death of Socrates.
- 395 Conquest of Veii by the Romans under Camillus.
- 387 Peace of Antalcidas.
- “ Italy invaded by the Gauls under Brennus.
- “ Battle on the Allia,—the Romans defeated by the Gauls.
- “ Rome taken and burned by the Gauls.
- 383 Commencement of the Theban War.
- 371 Battle of Leuctra.
- 366 Adoption of the Laws of Caius Licinius Stolo.
- 362 Battle of Mantinea.
- 358 Beginning of the Sacred War in Greece.
- 350 Destruction of Sidon.
- 343 First war between the Romans and Samnites begun.
- 342 War between the Romans and the Latins.

- 338 Battle of Vesuvius,—Patriotic devotion of Decius.
 “ Battle of Chæronea and end of Greek independence.
 336 Assassination of Philip of Macedon.
 335 Thebes, Greece, destroyed by Alexander the Great.
 334 Alexander’s invasion of the Persian Empire.
 “ Battle of the Granicus, } Victories of Alexander the Great.
 333 Battle of the Issus, }
 332 Tyre taken and destroyed by Alexander the Great.
 “ Siege and capture of Gaza by Alexander the Great.
 331 Founding of Alexandria in Egypt.
 “ Battle of Arbela and Gaugamela.
 330 Assassination of Darius Codomannus, King of Persia.
 328 Conquest of Scythia by Alexander the Great.
 327 Alexander’s invasion of India and defeat of Porus.
 324 Death of Alexander the Great at Babylon.
 322 Demosthenes destroys himself by poison.
 321 The Romans defeated by the Samnites and obliged to pass under the yoke
 301 Battle of Ipsus and dismemberment of Alexander’s empire.
 290 Subjugation of the Samnites by the Romans.
 281 Pyrrhus, King of Epirus, engages in a war with Rome.
 280 Invasion of Macedon and Greece by the Gauls under Brennus.
 279 Defeat of the Gauls at Thermopylæ.
 275 Defeat of Pyrrhus by the Romans.
 272 Death of Pyrrhus at Argos.
 “ Conquest of Tarentum by the Romans.
 263 Commencement of the First Punic War.
 255 Defeat of the Romans and captivity of Regulus.
 250 Battle of Panormus—Defeat of the Carthaginians.
 “ Rise of the Achaian League under Aratus of Sicyon.
 “ The Parthian Empire founded.
 240 End of the First Punic War.
 238 Sicily made a Roman province.
 228 Conquest of the Illyrians by the Romans.
 222 Conquest of the Cisalpine Gauls by the Romans.
 221 Death of Cleomenes III. and capture of Sparta by the Macedonians.
 219 Capture of Saguntum, in Spain, by the Carthaginians.
 218 Beginning of the Second Punic War.
 217 Hannibal’s passage of the Alps and invasion of Italy.
 “ Battle of the Ticinus, }
 “ Battle of the Trebia, } Victories of Hannibal.
 “ Battle of Placentia, }
 “ Battle of Trasimenus, }
 216 Battle of Cannæ, }

- 215 Building of the Great Wall in China.
- 212 Syracuse taken and destroyed by the Romans.
- 207 Battle of the Metaurus,—Hasdrubal defeated by the Romans.
- “ Sparta subdued by Philopœmen, the successor of Aratus.
- 202 Battle of Zama and end of the Second Punic War.
- 197 Battle of Cynoscephalæ.
- 191 Battle of Magnesia.
- 183 Death of Hannibal and Scipio Africanus.
- 168 Battle of Pydna and conquest of Macedon by the Romans.
- 149 Beginning of the Third Punic War.
- 146 Carthage taken and destroyed by Scipio Æmilianus.
- “ Destruction of Corinth and conquest of Greece by the Romans.
- 133 Numantia, in Spain, taken and destroyed by Scipio Æmilianus.
- 132 Tiberius Gracchus endeavors to secure the enforcement of the agrarian law, but is defeated and slain.
- 121 Caius Gracchus attempts to secure the enforcement of the agrarian law, but is killed in a tumult.
- 106 Jugurtha, King of Numidia, defeated and captured by the Romans.
- 101 The Cimbri and Teutones annihilated by the Romans.
- 90 The Social War in Italy begun.—It lasted two years.
- 88 First war between Rome and Mithridates, King of Pontus.
- “ The civil war between Marius and Sylla begun.
- 86 Dictatorship and death of Marius.
- 84 Sylla defeats Mithridates.
- 81 Sylla assumes the Dictatorship.
- 78 Resignation and death of Sylla.
- 70 The rebellion of Sertorius in Spain suppressed.
- “ The rebellious slaves in Italy under Spartacus subdued by Crassus.
- 67 The Cilician pirates subdued by Pompey.
- 66 Pompey's victory over Mithridates.
- 65 Pompey overthrows the Syrian Empire of the Seleucidæ.
- 63 Jerusalem taken and destroyed by Pompey.
- “ Mithridates terminates his life by poison.
- “ Catiline's conspiracy at Rome.
- 60 The First Triumvirate at Rome,—Cæsar, Pompey, and Crassus.
- 60 Defeat and death of Crassus in Parthia.
- 58 Julius Cæsar made governor of Gaul.
- 55 Cæsar's first invasion of Britain.
- 54 Cæsar's second invasion of Britain.
- 52 Final conquest of Gaul by Cæsar.
- 49 The civil war between Pompey and Cæsar commenced.
- “ Cæsar crosses the Rubicon and marches to Rome.
- 48 Battle of Pharsalia and assassination of Pompey.

- 47 Cæsar overthrows Ptolemy in Egypt.
- “ Cæsar’s triumph over Pharnaces, the son of Mithridates.
- 46 Battle of Thapsus,—the Roman republicans defeated by Cæsar.
- 45 Battle of Munda,—Pompey’s sons defeated by Cæsar.
- 44 Dictatorship of Cæsar.
- “ Assassination of Cæsar.
- 43 The Second Triumvirate at Rome,—Antony, Octavius, and Lepidus.
- 42 Battle of Philippi and suicide of Brutus and Cassius.
- 31 Battle of Actium and suicide of Mark Antony and Cleopatra.
- 30 Egypt becomes a Roman province.
- “ Octavius becomes Emperor, with the title of Augustus.

A. D.

- 9 Defeat of the Roman legions under Varus by the Germans.
- 14 Death of the Emperor Augustus.
- 51 Caractacus, the British chief, carried a captive to Rome.
- 64 Burning of Rome by order of the Emperor Nero.
- “ Defeat of the British queen, Boadicea, by Suetonius Paulinus.
- 68 Overthrow and death of Nero.
- 70 Jerusalem taken and destroyed by Titus.
- 79 Destruction of Herculaneum and Pompeii.
- 96 Final conquest of Britain by the Romans under Julius Agricola.
- 226 Beginning of the Persian Empire of the Sassanidæ.
- 305 Abdication of the Emperor Diocletian.
- 312 Constantine the Great becomes sole Emperor of Rome.
- 325 Constantine the Great embraces Christianity.
- 336 Constantine makes Constantinople the capital of his empire.
- 357 Death of Constantine the Great at Nicomedia, in Asia Minor.
- 361 Julian the Apostate becomes Emperor of Rome.
- 363 Julian’s unfortunate expedition against the New Persians.
- 364 The Roman Empire divided between Valentinian and Valens.
- 396 Stilicho, the general of Honorius, defeats the Goths in Greece.
- 406 The Romans under Stilicho defeat the barbarians.
- 410 Rome taken and pillaged by Alaric, King of the Goths.
- 451 Attila, King of the Huns, defeated at Chalons by the Romans.
- 452 Attila’s retreat into Pannonia.
- 472 Rome taken and plundered by Genseric, King of the Vandals.
- 476 Downfall of the Roman Empire of the West.

THE MIDDLE AGES.

A. D.

- 486 Clovis, King of the Franks, conquers Gaul.
- 496 Clovis defeats the Alemanni in the battle of Tolbiac and embraces Christianity.

- 507 Clovis puts to death the other chiefs of the Franks.
- 527 Justinian becomes Emperor of the East.
- 535 Belisarius overthrows the Vandal kingdom in Africa.
- 537 Belisarius defends Rome against the attacks of the Goths.
- 554 Tejas, the last Gothic king, slain in battle with Narses.
- 565 Death of the Emperor Justinian.
- 568 The Lombard kingdom in Italy founded by Alboin.
- 622 The Hegira, or Mohammed's flight from Mecca.
- 632 Death of Mohammed.
- 638 Conquest of Syria by the Saracens.
- 640 Conquest of Egypt by the Saracens.
- 651 Conquest of Persia by the Saracens.
- 660 Accession of the Ommiyades.
- 712 Invasion and conquest of Spain by the Saracens.
- 732 Defeat of the Saracens near Tours by Charles Martel.
- 752 The dynasty of the Ommiyades overthrown by the Abbassides.
- “ Beginning of the Pope's temporal power.
- 768 Death of Pepin the Little and division of the Frank kingdom.
- 771 Charlemagne becomes sole monarch of the Franks.
- 772 Charlemagne forces the Saxons to a peace.
- 775 Charlemagne overthrows the Lombard kingdom in Italy.
- 778 Charlemagne's rear-guard cut to pieces in the pass of Roncesvalles.
- 800 Charlemagne crowned at Rome Emperor of the West.
- 804 Final subjugation of the Saxons by Charlemagne.
- 814 Death of Charlemagne.
- 827 Founding of the Kingdom of England by Egbert.
- 841 Battle of Fontenaille.
- 843 Partition Treaty of Verdun.
- 871 Alfred the Great becomes King of England.
- 875 The Kingdom of Norway founded by Harald Fairhair and Denmark by Gorm the Old.
- 898 Charles the Simple becomes King of France.
- 900 The Ynglians found the Kingdom of Sweden.
- 901 Death of Alfred the Great.
- 911 Germany becomes an elective empire.
- 933 Henry the Fowler, Emperor of Germany, defeats the Magyars at Merseberg.
- 973 Otho the Great, Emperor of Germany, defeats the Hungarians at Lechfeld.
- 981 Greenland discovered by an Iclander.
- 987 Hugh Capet ascends the throne of France.
- 997 Death of Hugh Capet.
- 1000 Stephen the Pious assumes the dignity of King of Hungary.

- 1000 Vladimir the Great becomes sovereign of Russia.
- 1002 Greenland colonized by Icelanders.
- “ Massacre of the Danes in England.
- 1016 Canute the Great of Denmark becomes King of England.
- 1025 Conversion of Canute the Great to Christianity.
- 1031 Dissolution of the Saracen Caliphate of Cordova.
- 1060 Robert Guiscard, the Norman duke, conquers Southern Italy.
- 1066 Battle of Hastings and conquest of England by Duke William of Normandy, who then becomes King of England.
- 1077 Henry IV. of Germany humiliated by Pope Gregory VII. (Hildebrand).
- 1081 The Emperor Henry IV. leads an expedition against Hildebrand.
- 1081 Hildebrand deposed and Clement III. made Pope.
- 1085 Pope Urban II., at the Council of Clermont, preaches the First Crusade.
- 1096 The First Crusade undertaken.
- 1097 The Christian army under Godfrey of Bouillon arrives in Palestine.
- “ The Crusaders besiege and take Antioch.
- 1099 Capture of Jerusalem by the Crusaders.
- 1130 Roger II. founds the Kingdom of Naples and Sicily.
- 1147 St. Bernard of Clairvaux originates the Second Crusade.
- 1152 Frederic Barbarossa becomes Emperor of Germany.
- 1154 Henry Plantagenet ascends the throne of England.
- 1170 Assassination of Thomas á Becket, Archbishop of Canterbury.
- 1172 Ireland conquered by King Henry II. of England.
- 1176 Battles of Lignano,—Frederic Barbarossa defeated by the Milanese.
- 1179 Henry the Lion deprived of his territories by Frederic Barbarossa.
- 1180 Philip Augustus ascends the throne of France.
- 1187 Sultan Saladin of Egypt wrests Jerusalem from the Christians.
- 1189 Death of Henry II. of England and accession of Richard the Lion-hearted.
- 1190 The Third Crusade begun,—Death of Frederic Barbarossa.
- 1191 Defeat of Saladin by Richard the Lion-hearted.
- 1192 Richard the Lion-hearted imprisoned in Germany.
- 1199 Death of Richard the Lion-hearted and accession of John.
- 1204 Fourth Crusade and temporary subversion of the Greek Empire.
- 1205 The Pope causes the Cross to be preached against the Albigenes.
- 1213 The Child's Crusade.
- 1215 King John of England forced to sign Magna Charta.
- 1218 Frederic II. becomes Emperor of Germany.
- 1226 Louis IX., or St. Louis, becomes King of France.
- 1227 Zingis-Khan, chief of the Moguls, begins his career of conquest.
- 1228 The Emperor Frederic II. undertakes the Fifth Crusade.
- 1234 King Andrew II. of Hungary grants the Golden Privilege.
- 1237 Russia made tributary to the Khan of the Golden Horde.

- 1244 Defeat of the Christians at Gaza by the Corasmins.
1250 Death of the Emperor Frederic II. of Germany.
“ The Sixth Crusade,—Captivity of St. Louis.
1258 The Moguls overthrow the Caliphate of Bagdad.
1266 The foundations of the English House of Commons laid.
1270 The Seventh Crusade,—Death of St. Louis.
1273 Count Rudolf of Hapsburg elected Emperor of Germany.
1282 The Massacre of the Sicilian Vespers.
1285 Philip the Fair becomes King of France.
1291 Acre, the last Christian stronghold in Palestine, taken by the Turks.
1296 Battle of Dunbar,—John Baliol defeated by Edward I. of England.
“ Battle of Stirling,—the English defeated by William Wallace.
1298 Battle of Falkirk,—William Wallace defeated by Edward I.
1305 Martyrdom of William Wallace, the Scottish patriot.
“ Avignon, in France, becomes the seat of the papacy.
1314 Battle of Bannockburn,—defeat of Edward II. of England.
1315 Battle of Morgarten,—the Austrians defeated by the Swiss.
1328 Philip of Valois ascends the throne of France.
1346 Battle of Crecy,—Edward III. of England defeats the French.
“ Battle of Nevil’s Cross,—David Bruce taken prisoner.
1347 Calais surrendered to Edward III. of England after a long siege.
“ Cola di Rienzi becomes the head of a new Roman Republic.
1354 Assassination of Cola di Rienzi, the Last of the Tribunes.
1356 Battle of Poitiers,—King John of France taken prisoner.
1364 Death of John the Good of France.
1376 Death of the Black Prince.
1377 Death of Edward III. of England.
1381 Wat Tyler’s Insurrection in England.
1386 Battle of Sempach,—Patriotic devotion of Arnold Winkelried.
1397 Union of Calmar,—Denmark, Sweden, and Norway united.
1399 Dethronement of Richard II. of England by Henry of Lancaster.
1402 Battle of Angora,—Sultan Bajazet taken prisoner by Tamerlane.
1403 Battle of Shrewsbury,—Henry IV. of England defeats the barons.
1414 The Council of Constance assembles.
1415 Battle of Agincourt,—Henry V. of England defeats the French.
1417 Martyrdom of John Huss and Jerome of Prague.
1419 Beginning of the Hussite War, which lasts seventeen years.
1422 Treaty of Troyes,—Accession of Henry VI. of England.
1429 Joan of Arc compels the English to raise the siege of Orleans.
1431 Joan of Arc, the Maid of Orleans, perished at the stake.
1453 The English driven out of France.
“ Sultan Mohammed II. captures Constantinople and puts an end to the Byzantine or Greek Empire.

- 1455 Commencement of the Wars of the Roses in England.
- 1461 Edward IV. becomes King of England and Louis XI. of France.
- 1471 Battles of Barnet and Tewksbury,—the Lancastrians overthrown.
- 1476 Battles of Granson and Morat,—defeats of Charles the Bold.
- 1477 Battle of Nancy and death of Charles the Bold of Burgundy.
- 1479 Union of Aragon and Castile under Ferdinand and Isabella.
- 1483 Death of Edward IV. of England and Louis XI. of France.
- 1485 Battle of Bosworth Field and death of Richard III.
- 1486 Bartholomew Diaz discovers the Cape of Good Hope.
- 1492 The Moorish Kingdom of Granda conquered by Ferdinand and Isabella.
 " Discovery of America by Christopher Columbus.
- 1493 Founding of San Domingo by Columbus.
- 1497 Vasco da Gama's voyage to India around the Cape of Good Hope.
 " Discovery of North America by Sebastian Cabot.
- 1498 Discovery of South America by Columbus.
- 1499 The Emperor Maximilian I. of Germany acknowledges the independence
 of Switzerland.

SIXTEENTH CENTURY.

A. D.

- 1501 Discovery of Central America by Columbus.
- 1504 Ferdinand of Spain obtains possession of Naples.
- 1505 Death of Ivan the Great, Grand Duke of Moscow.
- 1506 Death of Christopher Columbus at Valladolid, in Spain.
- 1507 The city of Ormuz, in Persia, conquered by Albuquerque.
- 1508 League of Cambray against Venice.
- 1509 Death of Henry VII. of England and accession of Henry VIII.
- 1510 Albuquerque conquers Goa, which becomes the capital of Portuguese Asia.
- 1512 John Ponce de Leon discovers Florida.
 " Conquest of Navarre by Ferdinand the Catholic of Spain.
- 1513 Balboa discovers the Pacific Ocean.
 " John de Medici becomes Pope with the title of Leo X.
 " Battle of the Spurs, France, }
 " Battle of Flodden Field, England, } September 10th.
- 1515 Death of Louis XII. of France and accession of Francis I.
 " Battle of Marignano, or Battle of the Giants, Italy.
- 1517 Commencement of the Religious Reformation by Martin Luther.
 " Conquest of Egypt by the Turks.
 " Discovery of Mexico by Cordova.
- 1519 Death of the Emperor Maximilian I. and accession of Charles V.
- 1520 Luther excommunicated by the Pope and his writings condemned.
 " Luther burns the papal bull of condemnation.
 " Luther appears before the Diet of Worms.
 " Commencement of the first war between Charles V. and Francis I.

- 1520 The Field of the Cloth of Gold.
“ Massacre of Stockholm.
“ Solymán the Magnificent becomes Sultan of Turkey.
“ Ferdinand Magellan’s circumnavigation of the globe.
- 1521 Conquest of Mexico by the Spaniards under Fernando Cortez.
“ Henry VIII. of England writes a volume against the Reformation.
- 1523 Death of the Chevalier Bayard.
“ Gustavus Vasa liberates Sweden from the Danish yoke.
- 1524 John Verrazzani explores the Atlantic coast of North America.
- 1525 Battle of Pavia,—Francis I. defeated and made prisoner.
“ Establishment of the Mogul Empire in India by Baber.
- 1526 Peace of Madrid and release of Francis I.
“ Battle of Mohacz and death of Louis II. of Hungary.
“ Discovery of the La Plata river by Sebastian Cabot.
- 1527 The Holy League formed against Charles V.
“ Second war between Charles V. and Francis I.
“ Rome taken and pillaged by the Germans and Spaniards.
- 1528 Andria Doria frees Genoa from French supremacy.
- 1529 Ladies’ Peace of Cambray between Charles V. and Francis I.
“ Siege of Vienna by Sultan Solymán the Magnificent.
“ The Protestation of the German Reformers at the Diet of Spire.
“ Discovery of Peru by Francisco Pizarro.
- 1530 Diet of Augsburg,—The Augsburg Confession.
“ The League of Schmalkald formed by the German Protestants.
“ Religious war in Switzerland,—Battle of Kappel and death of Zwingli.
“ Death of Cardinal Wolsey, November 29th.
- 1532 Conquest of Peru by the Spaniards under Francisco Pizarro.
- 1533 Henry VIII. divorces Catharine of Aragon and marries Anne Boleyn.
“ Accession of Ivan the Terrible, Czar of Russia.
- 1534 Henry VIII. created Head of the Church in England.
“ James Cartier discovers the St. Lawrence river.
- 1535 Cartier’s second voyage up the St. Lawrence.
“ First expedition of Charles V. to Africa.
- 1536 Henry VIII. causes Anne Boleyn to be beheaded, and marries Jane Seymour.
“ Third war between Charles V. and Francis I.
- 1538 The Ten Years’ Truce of Nice between Charles V. and Francis I.
- 1540 The Order of Jesuits founded by Ignatius Loyola.
- 1541 Discovery of the Mississippi river by Ferdinand De Soto.
“ Second African expedition of Charles V.
- 1542 Fourth war between Charles V. and Francis I.
“ War between England and Scotland,—Battle of Solway Moss.
- 1543 Bombardment of Nice by the French and Turkish fleets.

- 1544** Battle of Cerisoles.
 “ Peace of Crespy between Charles V. and Francis I.
- 1545** Opening of the Council of Trent.
- 1546** Death of Dr. Martin Luther, February 18th.
- 1547** Beginning of the religious war in Germany.
 “ Death of Henry VIII. of England and accession of Edward VI.
 “ Death of Francis I. of France and accession of Henry II.
 “ English invasion of Scotland.—Battle of Pinkie.
- 1552** Duke Maurice of Saxony makes war on the Emperor Charles V.
 “ Henry II. of France seizes the fortresses in Lorraine.
 “ Religious Peace of Passau.
- 1553** Death of Edward VI. of England and accession of Mary.
- 1554** Unsuccessful siege of Metz by the Emperor Charles V.
 “ Religious Peace of Augsburg.
- 1556** Abdication and retirement of the Emperor Charles V.
 “ Philip II., King of Spain, and Ferdinand I., Emperor of Germany.
- 1557** War of England and Spain against France.
 “ Battle of St. Quentin,—the French defeat the English and Spaniards.
- 1558** The French recover Calais from the English.
 “ Death of Queen Mary of England and accession of Elizabeth.
 “ Death of Charles V.
- 1559** Peace of Cateau-Cambresis between France and Spain.
 “ Death of Henry II. of France and accession of Francis II.
- 1560** Death of Francis II. of France and accession of Charles IX.
- 1562** The first religious war in France.
- 1563** Peace of Amboise between the French Catholics and Huguenots.
 “ Hungary comes under the House of Hapsburg.
- 1564** Death of the Emperor Ferdinand I. and accession of Maximilian II.
- 1565** The Catholic nobles in the Netherlands petition for toleration.
 “ Mary, Queen of Scots, marries Lord Darnley.
- 1566** Murder of Mary’s favorite, David Rizzio.
 “ Death of Sultan Solymán the Magnificent of Turkey.
- 1567** The second religious war in France.
 “ Philip II. appoints the Duke of Alva Governor of the Netherlands.
 “ Murder of Lord Darnley, the husband of Mary, Queen of Scots.
 “ Mary’s marriage with the Earl of Bothwell.
- 1568** The Peace of St. Germain closes the second religious war in France.
 “ Queen Mary of Scots flees to England, where she is kept a prisoner.
- 1571** Battle of Lepanto,—the Turkish navy annihilated.
- 1572** Massacre of St. Bartholomew.
 “ The revolted States of the Netherlands choose William of Orange for their Stadtholder.
- 1574** Death of King Charles IX. of France and accession of Henry III.

1576 The Pacification of Ghent.

“ Death of the Emperor Maximilian II. of Germany and accession of Rudolf II.

1579 The Union of Utrecht.

1580 Portugal united with Spain.

1581 Assassination of William of Orange, Stadtholder of Holland.

1587 Execution of Mary, Queen of Scots, by order of Elizabeth.

1588 The Spanish Armada sent against England.—Destroyed by storms.

“ Rebellion in Paris against King Henry III.

“ Death of the Czar Ivan the Terrible of Russia.

1589 Henry III. besieges Paris.

“ Assassination of Henry III. and accession of Henry IV.

1590 Siege of Paris by King Henry IV.

1593 Henry IV. becomes a Catholic and thus brings about a peace.

1598 Edict of Nantes issued by Henry IV., tolerating Protestantism.

“ Death of Philip II. of Spain and accession of Philip III.

“ The Earl of Tyrone heads a Catholic rebellion in Ireland.

1600 The English East-India Company chartered by Queen Elizabeth.

SEVENTEENTH CENTURY.

A. D.

1601 Execution of the Earl of Essex, Queen Elizabeth's favorite.

1602 Bartholomew Gosnold explores the New England coast.

1603 Death of Queen Elizabeth of England and accession of James I.

“ Martin Pring explores the New England coast.

1605 The French colony of Acadia (now Nova Scotia) founded by De Monts.

“ The Gunpowder Plot in London.

1606 Martin Pring's second visit to the New England coast.

1607 The first permanent English settlement in America at Jamestown.

1608 Quebec, in Canada, founded by Samuel Champlain.

1609 Samuel Champlain discovers Lake Champlain.

“ Henry Hudson discovers and explores the Hudson river.

“ Holland becomes independent of Spain.

1610 Assassination of Henry IV. of France and accession of Louis XIII.

“ Expulsion of 600,000 Moors from Spain.

“ The Starving Time in Virginia.

1612 Death of the Emperor Rudolf II. and accession of Matthias.

“ Capture of Moscow by the Poles.

1613 Michael Romanoff becomes Czar of Russia.

1614 Captain John Smith explores and names New England.

1618 Execution of Sir Walter Raleigh.

“ Beginning of the Thirty Years' War by the Bohemian revolt.

1619 Death of the Emperor Matthias and accession of Ferdinand II.

- 1619 The first legislative assembly in America met at Jamestown, June 28.
 " The Dutch colony of Batavia, in Java, founded.
- 1620 Slavery introduced into Virginia.
 " The Puritan settlement of Plymouth, in New England, December 21.
- 1621 The Virginia House of Burgesses established.
 " Death of Philip III. of Spain and accession of Philip IV.
- 1622 Ormuz wrested from the Portuguese by Shah Abbas of Persia.
 " The first Indian war and massacre in Virginia.
- 1623 The Dutch colony of New Netherland established.
- 1624 Cardinal Richelieu becomes Prime-Minister of France.
 " King James I. of England makes Virginia a royal Province.
- 1625 Death of James I. of England and accession of Charles I.
 " Frederic, King of Bohemia, defeated by the Emperor Ferdinand II.
- 1625 King Christian IV. of Denmark aids the German Protestants.
- 1626 Defeat of Christian IV. at Lutter by Tilly, the imperial general.
- 1628 Validity of the Petition of Right acknowledged by Charles I.
 " Richelieu humbles the Huguenots by the capture of La Rochelle.
 " Salem, Massachusetts, founded by John Endicott.
- 1629 Peace of Lubec between the King of Denmark and the Emperor of Germany.
 " The Edict of Restitution published by the Emperor Ferdinand II.
 " Charles I. of England dissolves his Parliament, which is not again convened for eleven years.
- 1630 Boston, Massachusetts, founded by John Winthrop.
 " King Gustavus Adolphus of Sweden aids the German Protestants.
- 1631 Magdeburg taken and destroyed by Tilly.
 " Battle of Breitenfeld and Leipsic,—Tilly defeated by Gustavus.
- 1632 Battle of Lutzen,—victory and death of Gustavus Adolphus.
- 1633 Alliance of Heilbron between the Swedes and the Germans.
- 1634 Assassination of Wallenstein by order of the Emperor Ferdinand II.
 " Battle of Nordlingen.
 " Settlement of Maryland by English Roman Catholics.
- 1635 Clayborne's first rebellion in Maryland.
 " Peace of Prague between the German Princes and the Emperor.
 " Roger Williams banished from Massachusetts.
- 1636 Founding of Providence, Rhode Island, by Roger Williams.
 " Settlement of Hartford, Connecticut, by Rev. Thomas Hooker.
- 1637 Extermination of the Pequod Indians by the Connecticut settlers.
 " Death of the Emperor Ferdinand II. and accession of Ferdinand III.
 " Presbyterian rebellion in Scotland.
- 1637 Founding of Harvard College at Cambridge, Massachusetts.
- 1638 Founding of New Haven, Connecticut, by Rev. John Davenport.
 " Settlement of Newport, Rhode Island, by William Coddington.

- 1638 Settlement of New Sweden (now Delaware).
 “ Sultan Amurah IV. of Turkey causes a massacre of the inhabitants of Bagdad.
- 1640 Portugal recovers her independence.
 “ Frederic William, the Great Elector of Brandenburg, begins his reign.
- 1641 Catholic rebellion in Ireland.
- 1642 Commencement of the civil war in England between the Cavaliers and the Roundheads.
 “ Battle of Edge Hill, England, October 3d.
 “ Death of Cardinal Richelieu, December.
- 1643 Death of Louis XIII. of France and accession of Louis XIV.
 “ Battle of Rocroi,—the Spaniards defeated by the French.
 “ Battle of Newbury, England.
 “ Union of the New England colonies.
- 1644 Battle of Marston Moor,—Lord Fairfax defeats the royalists, July 9th.
 “ Second Indian war in Virginia.
 “ Union of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations.
 “ The Manchu-Tartar dynasty ascends the throne of China.
- 1645 Clayborne’s second rebellion in Maryland.
 “ Battle of Naseby,—Charles I. overthrow, June 14th.
- 1648 Peace of Westphalia terminates the Thirty Years’ War.
 “ The Civil Wars of the Fronde commence in France.
 “ Colonel Pride’s Purge,—81 Presbyterians expelled from Parliament.
- 1649 Execution of King Charles I. of England, January 30th.
 “ The Commonwealth of England established.
 “ The Toleration Act passed by the Maryland Assembly.
- 1650 Battle of Dunbar,—the Scots defeated by Cromwell, September 3d.
- 1651 Battle of Worcester,—the English royalists defeated by Cromwell, September 3rd.
 “ The Navigation Act passed by the English Parliament.
- 1652 Commencement of a naval war between England and Holland.
- 1653 Cromwell dissolves the Long Parliament, April.
 “ Praise-God Barebone’s Parliament, April to December.
 “ Oliver Cromwell created Lord Protector of England, December.
- 1654 Abdication of Queen Christina of Sweden.
 “ Peace between England and Holland.
- 1655 War between England and Spain.
 “ Conquest of the island of Jamaica by the English Admiral Penn.
 “ Civil war in Maryland between the Catholics and Protestants.
 “ Conquest of New Sweden by Governor Stuyvesant of New Netherland.
- 1656 Persecution of Quakers in Boston, Massachusetts.
 “ Three days’ battle of Warsaw,—the Swedes defeat the Poles.
- 1657 Death of the Emperor Ferdinand III. and accession of Leopold I.

- 1658 Death of Oliver Cromwell, September 3rd.
 “ Richard Cromwell becomes Lord Protector, but soon resigns.
- 1659 Aurungzebe ascends the Mogul throne in India.
 “ The Treaty of the Pyrenees between France and Spain.
- 1660 Restoration of Monarchy in England,—Charles II., King, May 29th.
- 1661 Death of Cardinal Mazarin, Prime-Minister of France.
- 1663 Naval war between England and Holland.
 “ Charter granted to Rhode Island by King Charles II. of England.
 “ Settlement of North Carolina by emigrants from Virginia.
- 1664 Conquest of New Netherland by the English.
 “ Settlement of Elizabethtown, New Jersey, by English Puritans.
- 1665 Connecticut and New Haven united under one charter granted by Charles II.
 “ Great plague in London.
- 1666 Great fire in London.
- 1667 Peace of Breda between England and Holland.
 “ Louis XIV. of France makes conquests in the Spanish Netherlands.
- 1668 Triple Alliance of England, Holland, and Sweden against France.
 “ Peace of Aix la Chapelle,—Louis XIV. restores his conquests.
 “ Peace between Spain and Portugal after 26 years of war.
- 1669 Conquest of Candia (Crete) by the Turks.
- 1670 Settlement of South Carolina by English emigrants.
- 1671 Emmerik Tokeli's insurrection in Hungary.
- 1672 Louis XIV, invades Holland with a powerful army.
- 1673 Louis Joliet and James Marquette explore the Mississippi river.
 “ John Sobieski, King of Poland, defeats 200,000 Turks at Kotzim.
 “ New York taken by a Dutch fleet.
- 1674 New York restored to the English.
 “ Spain and Germany join Holland in the war against France.
- 1675 Battle of Fehrbellin,—the Swedes defeated by the Great Elector.
 “ Beginning of King Philip's War in New England, July 4th.
- 1676 Subjugation of the New England Indians and death of King Philip.
 “ Bacon's Rebellion in Virginia.
- 1678 Peace of Nimeguen between France and the Allies.
 “ The Habeas Corpus Act passed by the English Parliament.
- 1679 Eleven days' battle at Tangier between the English and the Moors.
- 1680 Charleston, South Carolina, founded.
- 1681 Louis XIV. wrests the free city of Strassburg from the German Empire.
- 1682 Philadelphia and Pennsylvania founded by William Penn.
 “ Robert de La Salle explores the Mississippi river.
- 1683 John Sobieski, King of Poland, drives the Turks from Vienna.
 “ Rye House Plot in England.—Execution of Russell and Sidney.
 “ Bombardment of Algiers by a French fleet.

- 1684 Genoa bombarded by the French navy.
- 1685 Death of Charles II. of England and accession of James II.
 " Revocation of the Edict of Nantes and persecution of the Huguenots.
- 1686 League of Augsburg,—Germany, Spain, Holland, and Sweden against France.
- 1687 The Connecticut charter concealed from Sir Edmund Andros.
- 1688 Death of Frederic William, the Great Elector of Brandenburg.
 " Desolation of the Palatinate by the French.
 " Revolution in England and flight of James II.
- 1689 The Bill of Rights passed by the English Parliament.
 " William and Mary created joint sovereigns of England.
 " Sir Edmund Andros deposed and imprisoned in Boston.
 " England joins the Allies in the war against Louis XIV.
 " Rebellion of the Scotch Highlanders against William and Mary.
 " Battle of Killiecrankie and death of Lord Dundee.
 " Catholic rebellion in Ireland in favor of James II.
 " Peter the Great becomes sole Czar of Russia.
 " Dover, New Hampshire, burned by the French and Indians.
- 1690 Schenectady, New York, destroyed by the French and Indians.
 " Battle of the Boyne, Ireland,—James II. defeated by William III.
- 1691 Battle of Aughrim, Ireland, and death of the Irish General St. Ruth.
 " Massacre of Glencoe, Scotland.
 " Acadia seized and plundered by Sir William Phipps.
- 1692 Massachusetts made a royal province.
 " Salem Witchcraft.
 " Naval battle off Cape La Hogue.—Beginning of England's naval superiority.
 " Battle of Neerwinden,—William III. defeated by the French.
- 1695 War of Germany, Russia, Poland and Venice against Turkey.
- 1696 Death of John Sobieski, King of Poland.
- 1697 Peace of Ryswick between France and the Allies.
 " Battle of Zenta,—Prince Eugene defeats the Turks.
 " Charles XII. ascends the throne of Sweden.
 " Governor Fletcher of New York defied at Hartford by Captain Wadsworth.
- 1699 Peace of Carlowitz between Turkey and the Allies.
 " The English erect Fort William at Calcutta, Hindoostan.
- 1700 Death of Charles II. of Spain and accession of Philip of Anjou.
 " Charles XII. of Sweden compels the King of Denmark to make peace.
 " Battle of Narva,—Charles XII. defeats the Czar Peter the Great.

EIGHTEENTH CENTURY.

A. D.

- 1701 Founding of the Kingdom of Prussia.
 " Founding of Yale College in Connecticut.
- 1702 Founding of Mobile in the present Alabama.
 " Death of William III. of England and accession of Queen Anne.
 " Commencement of the War of the Spanish Succession.
 " Charles XII. of Sweden enters Warsaw in triumph.
 " Deerfield, Massachusetts, burned by the French and Indians.
- 1703 St. Petersburg founded by the Czar Peter the Great.
 " Charles XII. of Sweden deposes Augustus II. of Poland.
 " Protestant insurrection in France.
 " Protestant insurrection in Hungary.
- 1704 Stanislaus Leczinski elected King of Poland.
 " Capture of Gibraltar by Sir George Rooke.
 " Battle of Blenheim, August 13th.
- 1705 Death of the Emperor Leopold I. and accession of Joseph I.
- 1706 Battle of Ramillies, May 23d.
 " Battle of Turin, September 6th.
 " Peace of Altranstadt between Charles XII. and the Elector of Saxony.
 " A Franco-Spanish fleet attacks Charleston, South Carolina.
- 1707 Parliamentary Union of England and Scotland.
 " Battle of Almanza, Spain, April 25th.
 " Death of Aurungzebe, the great Mogul Emperor of India.
- 1708 Battle of Oudenarde, July 11th.
 " Charles XII. of Sweden invades Russia.
- 1709 Battle of Pultowa, July 8th.
 " Battle of Malplaquet, September 11th.
- 1710 The French colony of Acadia conquered by the English.
 " Charles XII. of Sweden seeks refuge in Turkey.
- 1711 Unfortunate expedition of Sir Hovenden Walker against Canada.
 " The Tuscarora Indians make war on the North Carolina settlers.
 " Death of the Emperor Joseph II. and accession of Charles VI.
 " The Hungarian insurrection of Count Ragotzky suppressed.
- 1713 Peace of Utrecht.
- 1714 Peace of Rastadt.
 " Death of Queen Anne of England and accession of George I.
- 1715 The Yamasee Indians make war on the South Carolinians.
 " Charles XII. returns to Sweden.
 " Death of Louis XIV. of France and accession of Louis XV.
 " Rebellion in Scotland against the House of Brunswick.
- 1716 Battle of Sheriff Muir, Scotland.
 " Austria joins Venice in a war against the Ottoman Porte.

- 1716 Charles XII. of Sweden invades Norway.
 “ Prince Eugene defeats the Turks near Peterwardein.
- 1717 Prince Eugene annihilates an army of 200,000 Turks at Belgrade.
- 1718 War of the Quadruple Alliance against Spain.
 “ Peace of Passarovitz between Austria and Turkey.
 “ Siege of Frederikshall and death of Charles XII. of Sweden.
 “ Yale College removed from Saybrook to New Haven.
 “ Founding of New Orleans, Louisiana.
- 1721 Peace of Nystadt between Russia and Sweden.
- 1722 Persia overrun and subdued by the Afghans.
- 1725 Death of Peter the Great of Russia and accession of Catharine I.
- 1727 Death of Catharine I. of Russia and accession of Peter II.
 “ Death of George I. of England and accession of George II.
 “ Siege of Gibraltar by the Spaniards.
 “ Conquest of Thibet by the Chinese.
- 1729 North and South Carolina become separate royal provinces.
 “ The Natchez Indians massacre the French settlers at Fort Rosalie.
- 1730 The Empress Anna ascends the throne of Russia.
- 1732 Birth of George Washington, February 22d.
- 1733 Savannah, Georgia, founded by James Edward Oglethorpe.
 “ War of the Polish Succession begins.
- 1734 Battle of Parma, Italy, between the Sardinians and Austrians.
- 1735 Peace between France and Germany.
- 1736 Kouli Khan ascends the throne in Persia with the title of Nadir Shah.
- 1737 Austria joins Russia in a war against the Ottoman Porte.
- 1738 Battle of Krotzky, July 21st,—the Turks defeat the Austrians.
 “ France agrees to the Pragmatic Sanction.
- 1739 Peace of Belgrade between Austria and Turkey.
 “ Nadir Shah of Persia invades India and causes 100,000 of the inhabitants of Delhi to be massacred.
 “ Colonial and maritime war between England and Spain.
 “ Porto Bello, South America, taken by Admiral Vernon's fleet.
- 1740 Admiral Vernon and General Wentworth repulsed in an attack upon Carthagen, South America.
 “ Death of the Emperor Charles VI. of Germany.
 “ Frederic the Great becomes King of Prussia.
 “ Coalition against Maria Theresa and War of the Austrian Succession.
 “ Frederic the Great begins the First Silesian War.
- 1741 Battle of Molvitz,—defeat of the Austrians by the Prussians.
 “ A French army under Marshal Belleisle marches into Bohemia.
 “ Charles VII. elected Emperor of Germany.
 “ Accession of the Empress Elizabeth of Russia.
 “ War between Sweden and Russia.

- 1741 Supposed Negro Plot in New York City.
- 1742 Peace of Breslau between Austria and Prussia.
 " Marshal Belleisle's retreat through Germany to the Rhine.
- 1743 England's alliance with Maria Theresa.
 " Battle of Dettingen,—George II. of England defeats the French.
 " Peace of Abo between Sweden and Russia.
- 1744 The Second Silesian War and Frederic's capture of Prague.
- 1745 Death of Charles VII. of Germany and election of Francis I.
 " Battle of Hohenfriedberg.
 " Battle of Sorr.
 " Battle of Kesselsdorf,
 " Peace of Dresden between Frederic and Maria Theresa.
 " Battle of Fontenoy.
 " Capture of Louisburg, Acadia, by Admiral Warren and General Pepperell.
 " Scotch Rebellion.
 " Battle of Preston Pans, Scotland.
- 1746 Battle of Falkirk, Scotland.
 " Battle of Culloden Moor, Scotland.
- 1747 Assassination of Nadir Shah of Persia.
- 1748 Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle.
- 1749 The Ohio Company obtains a land-grant from King George II.
- 1753 Washington's mission to the French.
- 1754 Washington's expedition against Fort Du Quesne.
 " Battle of the Great Meadows.
 " Washington's capitulation at Fort Necessity, July 4th.
 " Colonial Congress at Albany, New York.
- 1755 Capture of French forts in Acadia by Colonel Monckton, June.
 " Acadia plundered and desolated by the English, June.
 " Battle of the Monongahela and death of Braddock, July 9th.
 " Battle of Lake George,—Colonel Williams defeated by Dieskau.
 " Great earthquake at Lisbon, Portugal, destroys 30,000 houses.
- 1756 Coalition against Frederic the Great and beginning of the Seven Years' War.
 " Sudden invasion of Saxony by Frederic the Great.
 " Battle of Lowositz, Bohemia.
 " Surrender of the Saxon army.
 " The French wrest the island of Minorca from the English.
 " The Marquis de Montcalm captures the English garrison at Oswego.
 " Battle of Kittanning,—Colonel John Armstrong defeats the Indians.
 " Surajah Dowlah confines 146 Englishmen in the Black Hole of Calcutta.
- 1757 Battle of Prague, Bohemia, May 6th.
 " Battle of Kolin, Bohemia, June 18th.
 " Battle of Plassey, India, June 23rd,—Clive defeats Surajah Dowlah.

- 1757 Battle of Rosbach, Saxony, November 5th.
" Battle of Leuthen, Silesia, December 5th.
" Capture of Fort William Henry by Montcalm.
" William Pitt the Elder becomes Prime Minister of England.
- 1758 Battle of Zorndorf, Brandenburg, August 24th.
" Battle of Hochkirchen, Saxony, October 14th.
" Capture of Louisburg, Acadia, by Generals Amherst and Wolfe.
" Capture of Fort Frontenac, Canada, by Colonel Bradstreet.
" Capture of Fort Du Quesne by General John Forbes.
- 1759 Battle of Minden, Havover, August 1st.
" Battle of Kunersdorf, Silesia, August 14th.
" Capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point by General Amherst.
" Capture of Fort Niagara by General William Johnson.
" Defeat of the French at Quebec and death of Wolfe and Montcalm, September 13th.
" Quebec surrendered to General Murray, September 18th.
" The Jesuits expelled from Paraguay.
- 1760 Battle of Liegnitz, August 13th.
" Battle of Torgou, November 3d.
" Battle of Sillery, Canada, April 28th.
" Surrender of Montreal to General Murray, September 8th.
" Death of George II. of England and accession of George III.
- 1761 Battle of Panniput, India, January 7th.
" Family Compact between France and Spain.
" Defeat of the Cherokee Indians in Georgia by Colonel Grant.
" Mason and Dixon's Line established.
" Writs of Assistance tried in the Anglo-American colonies.
- 1762 Capture of Havana, Cuba, by the British navy.
" Death of the Empress Elizabeth of Russia.
" Murder of the Czar Peter III. of Russia and accession of Catharine II.
- 1763 Peace of Paris between England and France, February 10th.
" Peace of Hubertsburg between Austria and Prussia.
" Pontiac's War against the English in North America.
- 1764 Death of Augustus III. of Poland and election of Stanislaus Poniatowski.
- 1765 The Stamp Act passed by the British Parliament.
" The Stamp Act Congress in New York City, October.
" Death of the Emperor Francis I. and election of Joseph II.
- 1766 Repeal of the Stamp Act, March 6th.
" Parliament levies duties on articles imported into America.
- 1767 Civil war in Poland.
" Hyder Ali, Sultan of Mysore, begins a war against the English.
- 1768 War between Russia and Turkey.
" British troops under General Gage sent to Boston.

- 1769 Acquisition of Corsica by the French.
 1770 Bender stormed and taken by the Russians.
 " The Boston Riot and Massacre, March 5th.
 1771 Defeat of the Regulators in North Carolina, May 16th.
 " Gustavus III. ascends the throne of Sweden.
 " Gustavus III. breaks the power of the Swedish aristocracy.
 1772 Destruction of the Gaspé.
 " First Partition of Poland.
 1773 Committees of Correspondence in the Anglo-American colonies.
 " Tea-ships sent to America.
 " Destruction of tea in Boston harbor, December 16th.
 1774 Pugatscheff's rebellion in Russia.
 " Passage of the Boston Port Bill by the British Parliament.
 " The port of Boston closed against all commerce, June 1st.
 " The First Continental Congress assembles in Philadelphia, Sept. 5th.
 " Peace of Kudschuk Kainardji between Russia and Turkey.
 " Death of Louis XV. of France and accession of Louis XVI.
 1775 Pugatscheff, the Don Cossack, beheaded in Moscow.
 " American Revolution begins by the skirmishes at Lexington and Concord, April 19th.
 " The Second Continental Congress assembles at Philadelphia, May 10th.
 " Capture of Ticonderoga by Colonel Ethan Allen, May 10th.
 " Capture of Crown Point by Colonel Seth Warner, May 12th.
 " Mecklenberg Declaration of Independence, May 20th.
 " Washington chosen Commander-in-Chief, June 15th.
 " Battle of Bunker's Hill, June 17th.
 " American invasion of Canada, September.
 " Defeat of Governor Dunmore in Virginia.
 " Capture of Montreal by General Montgomery, November 13th.
 " Defeat of the Americans at Quebec and death of Montgomery, December 31st.
 1776 Lord Dunmore burns Norfolk, Virginia, January 1st.
 " Washington begins the siege of Boston, March 2d.
 " Evacuation of Boston by General Howe, March 17th.
 " The British repulsed at Charleston, South Carolina, June 28th.
 " Declaration of American Independence, July 4th.
 " Battle of Long Island, August 27th.
 " Battle of White Plains, New York, October 28th.
 " Capture of Fort Washington by the British, November 16th.
 " Washington's retreat across New Jersey, December.
 " Battle of Trenton, New Jersey,—1,000 Hessians captured, December 26th.
 1777 Battle of Princeton, New Jersey, January 3d.

- 1777 Skirmish at Ridgefield, Connecticut, April 27th.
- " Siege of Fort Schuyler, New York, August.
 - " Battle of Oriskany, New York, August 6th.
 - " Battle of Bennington, Vermont, August 16th.
 - " Battle of Brandywine, Pennsylvania, September 11th.
 - " Battle of Bemis's Heights, New York, September 19th.
 - " Massacre of Paoli, Pennsylvania, September 20th.
 - " Battle of Germantown, Pennsylvania, October 4th.
 - " Battle of Saratoga, New York, October 7th.
 - " Surrender of Burgoyne, October 17th.
 - " Adoption of the Articles of Confederation, November.
 - " Washington encamps at Valley Forge, December.
- 1778 Franco-American Alliance.—War between England and France.
- " Death of the elder William Pitt.
 - " Battle of Monmouth, New Jersey, June 28th.
 - " Massacre of Wyoming, Pennsylvania, July 3d, 4th, and 5th.
 - " Battle of Quaker Hill, Rhode Island, August 29th.
 - " Massacre of Cherry Valley, New York, November 11th.
 - " The British under Colonel Campbell invade Georgia and capture Savannah, December 29th.
 - " War of the Bavarian Succession.
 - " Discovery of the Sandwich Islands by Captain Cook.
- 1779 Capture of Sunbury, Georgia, by the British, January 9th.
- " Battle of Kettle Creek, Georgia, February 14th.
 - " Battle of Brier Creek, Georgia, March 3d.
 - " Battle of Stono Ferry, South Carolina, June 20th.
 - " Spain declares war against England, June.
 - " Siege of Gibraltar commenced by the Spaniards.
 - " Capture of Stony Point by General Anthony Wayne, July 16th.
 - " Capture of Paulus Hook by Major Henry Lee, July 19th.
 - " General Sullivan's chastisement of the Indians in New York, August.
 - " John Paul Jones's great naval victory off Flamborough Head, Sept. 23d.
 - " Siege of Savannah begun by the French and Americans, Sept. 23d.
 - " Unsuccessful assault on the British at Savannah, October 9th.
- 1780 Sir Henry Clinton lays siege to Charleston, South Carolina, April 9th.
- " Surrender of Charleston to the British, May 12th.
 - " The Gordon or "No Popery" Riots in London, June.
 - " Skirmish at Springfield, New Jersey, June 23d.
 - " Battle of Sanders' Creek, South Carolina, August 16th.
 - " Battle of Fishing Creek, South Carolina, August 18th.
 - " Arnold's treason discovered, September 22d.
 - " Execution of Major André, October 2d.
 - " Battle of King's Mountain, South Carolina, October 7th.

- 1780 Death of the Empress Maria Theresa of Austria.
 “ Hyder Ali defeated in India by Sir Eyre Coote.
 “ Beginning of Tupac Amaru’s insurrection in Peru.
 “ Armed Neutrality against England.
 “ England declares war against Holland, December 20th.
- 1781 Mutiny of Pennsylvania troops at Morristown, New Jersey, Jan. 1st.
 “ Battle of the Cowpens, South Carolina, January 17th.
 “ Mutiny of New Jersey troops at Pompton, New Jersey, January 18th.
 “ Battle of Guilford Court House, North Carolina, March 15th.
 “ Battle of Hobkirk’s Hill, South Carolina, April 25th.
 “ Siege of Fort Ninety-Six, South Carolina, by General Greene, May.
 “ Capture of Augusta, Georgia, by the Americans, June 5th.
 “ Battle between the English and Dutch fleets on the Dogger Bank, June.
 “ Massacre of Fort Griswold, Connecticut, September 6th.
 “ Battle of Eutaw Springs, South Carolina, September 8th.
 “ Siege of Yorktown commenced by Washington, September 28th.
 “ Surrender of Cornwallis at Yorktown, October 19th.
- 1782 End of Lord North’s Administration, March.
 “ The British House of Commons resolves to end the American war, March 4th.
 “ Admiral Rodney defeats Count de Grasse in the West Indies, April 12th.
 “ Grand attack of the French and Spaniards on Gibraltar, Sept. 13th.
 “ Preliminary Peace of Paris between England and the United States, November 30th.
 “ The younger William Pitt becomes Prime Minister of England.
 “ Migration of the Kalmuck Tartars from Russia.
 “ Tupac Amaru conquered and put to a cruel death.
 “ Death of Hyder Ali, Sultan of Mysore, and accession of Tippoo Saib.
- 1783 Preliminary Peace of Paris between England and France, Jan. 20th.
 “ Definitive Peace of Paris.—American independence acknowledged, September 3d.
 “ Evacuation of New York City by the British army, November 25th.
 “ Washington resigns his commission, December 4th.
 “ Conquest of the Crimea by the Russians under Potemkin.
 “ Great earthquake at Messina, Italy.
- 1784 Democratic insurrection in Holland.
- 1786 Shay’s insurrection in Massachusetts.
 “ Death of Frederic the Great at Potsdam, August 17th.
- 1787 An Assembly of Notables convened in France, February.
 “ Assembling of the Constitutional Convention in Philadelphia, May.
 “ The Constitution of the United States framed, September.
 “ War of Austria and Russia against Turkey.
 “ King Frederic William II. of Prussia restores order in Holland.

- 1787 Rebellions in the Austrian Netherlands and Hungary.
 “ Impeachment of Warren Hastings by the House of Commons.
- 1788 Gustavus III. of Sweden makes war on Russia.
 “ Ratification and adoption of the Constitution of the United States.
 “ General Washington elected President of the United States.
 “ Capture of Oczakow by the Russians under Potemkin, December 22d.
- 1789 The Constitution of the United States goes into operation, March 4th.
 “ Inauguration of President Washington, April 30th.
 “ Assembling of the States-General at Versailles, May 5th.
 “ The States-General declares itself a National Assembly, June 17th.
 “ The French Revolution begun by the storming of the Bastile, July 14th.
 “ The Paris mob forces Louis XVI. to remove from Versailles to Paris, October 5th.
 “ Admission of North Carolina into the American Union, Nov. 29th.
- 1790 Death of Joseph II. of Germany and accession of Leopold II., February.
 “ Rhode Island admitted into the American Union, May 29th.
 “ The Ceremony of Federation in Paris, June 17th.
 “ Peace between Gustavus III. of Sweden and Catharine II. of Russia.
 “ Tippoo Saib renews the war against the English East India Company.
 “ General Harmer defeated by the Indians in Ohio, November 4th.
 “ Ismail stormed and taken by the Russians under Suwarrow, December 17th.
- 1791 Vermont admitted as a State of the American Union, February 18th.
 “ Death of Count Mirabeau, April 2d.
 “ A new monarchical constitution adopted in Poland, May 3d.
 “ Siege and capture of Bangalore, India, by Lord Cornwallis.
 “ Unsuccessful attempt of Louis XVI. to escape from France, June.
 “ Peace between Austria and Turkey.
 “ The French Legislative Assembly convenes in Paris, October 1st.
 “ General St. Clair defeated by the Indians in Ohio, November 4th.
- 1792 Peace of Jassy between Russia and Turkey, January.
 “ Death of Leopold II. of Germany and accession of Francis II.
 “ Lord Cornwallis defeats Tippoo Saib at Seringapatam, India.
 “ Assassination of King Gustavus III. of Sweden, March 29th.
 “ France declares war against Austria and Prussia, April 20th.
 “ Poland invaded by Russian troops, May.
 “ Kentucky admitted into the American Union, June 1st.
 “ Insurrection in Paris, June 20th.
 “ Defeat of Kosciuszko at Dubienka by the Russians, July 17th.
 “ Austro-Prussian invasion of France, July.
 “ Insurrection and massacre in Paris, August 10th.
 “ Flight of General Lafayette to the Austrians.
 “ Massacre of the Prisons in Paris, September 2d-5th.
 “ Battle of Valmy, France, September 20th.

- 1792** The French National Convention assembles in Paris and declares France a Republic, September 22d.
- “ Battle of Jemappes, Belgium, November 6th.
- 1793** Execution of King Louis XVI. of France, January 27th.
- “ France declares war against England, Spain, and Holland, February.
 - “ Battle of Neerwinden, Belgium, March 18th.
 - “ Dumouriez seeks refuge among the Austrians, March.
 - “ Second Partition of Poland, April.
 - “ Insurrection of the Jacobins in Paris, May 31st and June 1st.
 - “ The Reign of Terror in France.
 - “ The insurrection of La Vendée.
 - “ Insurrection of Lyons.
 - “ Insurrection of Marseilles.
 - “ Insurrection of Toulon.
 - “ Siege and reduction of Toulon,—Appearance of Napoleon Bonaparte.
 - “ Insurrections in Brittany and Normandy.
 - “ Trial and execution of Marie Antoinette, October 16th.
 - “ Execution of the Girondist leaders, October 31st.
 - “ The French National Convention abolishes the Christian religion, November 10th.
- 1794** Execution of Danton and Camille Desmoulins, April.
- “ Rise of the Poles under Kosciuszko against the Russians, April.
 - “ Execution of Robespierre, St. Just, Couthon, and Henriot, July 28th.
 - “ General Wayne defeats the Indians in Ohio, August 20th.
 - “ Defeat of Kosciuszko by the Russians at Macziewice, October 10th.
 - “ Jay’s Treaty between the United States and Great Britain.
 - “ The Whisky Insurrection in Pennsylvania.
- 1795** Third Partition of Poland, January.
- “ Holland erected into the Batavian Republic, January.
 - “ The French National Convention surrounded by a mob, March 31st, April 1st.
 - “ Peace of Basle between France and Prussia, April 5th.
 - “ The Insurrection of the 1st Prairial in Paris, May 20th.
 - “ The Austrians take Heidelberg and Mannheim by storm, September.
 - “ Insurrection of the Sections in Paris, October 3d–5th.
 - “ Establishment of the Directory in France, October 27th.
- 1796** Battles of Montenotte and Mellesimo, Italy, April.
- “ Battle of Lodi, Italy, May 10th.
 - “ Tennessee admitted into the American Union, June 1st.
 - “ Death of Catharine II. of Russia and accession of Paul.
 - “ Moreau’s masterly retreat through the Black Forest, September.
 - “ Spain declares war against England, October 2d.
 - “ Battles of Arcola, Italy, November 15th, 16th, and 17th.

- 1797 John Adams inaugurated President of the United States, March 4th.
 “ Preliminary Treaty of Leoben between France and Austria, April 18th.
 “ The Venetian Republic subverted by Bonaparte.
 “ The Royalist deputies imprisoned and banished from France, Sept.
 “ Peace of Campo Formio between France and Austria, October 17th.
 “ The Cisalpine and Ligurian Republics established in Italy.
 “ A European Congress assembles at Rastadt, Baden, December.
- 1798 A new Roman Republic established, February.
 “ Switzerland converted into the Helvetic Republic.
 “ Rebellion in Ireland against British authority.
 “ Bonaparte invades Egypt, July 1st.
 “ Capture of Alexandria, Egypt, by Bonaparte, July 1st.
 “ Battle of the Pyramids, Egypt, July 21st.
 “ Battle of the Nile,—Lord Nelson defeats the French fleet, August 1st.
 “ Alien and Sedition Laws passed by the United States Congress.
 “ The Virginia and Kentucky State Rights Resolutions.
 “ Coalition of Austria, Russia, England, and Turkey against France.
- 1799 The Parthenopeian Republic established in Naples, January.
 “ Bonaparte’s invasion of Syria, February.
 “ Siege of Acre, Syria, by Bonaparte, March and April.
 “ Battle of Mount Tabor, Syria, March.
 “ Fall of Seringapatam and death of Tippoo Saib, May 4th.
 “ Battles of Cassano and Trebia, Italy,—French defeats, June.
 “ The Parthenopeian Republic overthrown, June 13th.
 “ Battle of Aboukir, Egypt, July 25th.
 “ Battle of Novi, Italy,—Suwarrow defeats the French, August 5th.
 “ Battle of Zurich, Switzerland,—Russians defeated by the French, September 25th and 26th.
 “ Bonaparte overthrows the Directory in France, November 9th.
 “ Death of General Washington at Mount Vernon, December 14th.
- 1800 Napoleon created First Consul of the French Republic, January.
 “ Napoleon’s passage over the Alps, May and June.
 “ Battle of Montebello, Italy, June 9th.
 “ Battle of Marengo, Italy, June 14th.
 “ Washington City becomes the Capital of the United States.
 “ Macdonald’s passage over the Splugen, November.
 “ Battle of Hohenlinden, Bavaria, December 3d.
 “ Maritime League formed against Great Britain, December 16th.
 “ Attempted assassination of Bonaparte, December 24th.

NINETEENTH CENTURY.

A. D.

- 1801 Legislative Union of Great Britain and Ireland, January 1st.
 " Peace of Luneville between France and Austria, February 9th.
 " Battle of Copenhagen,—Lord Nelson defeats the Danes, March 2d.
 " Inauguration of President Thomas Jefferson, March 4th.
 " Battle of Canopus, Egypt, and death of Sir Ralph Abercrombie, March 21st.
 " Assassination of the Czar Paul and accession of Alexander I., March 24th.
 " War between the United States and Tripoli.
 " War between Spain and Portugal.
- 1802 Peace of Badajoz between Spain and Portugal.
 " Peace of Amiens between England and France, March 27th.
 " Ohio becomes a State of the American Union.
 " Bonaparte elected First Consul of France for life.
 " Revolt of San Domingo against the French.
- 1803 Renewal of the war between England and France.
 " French invasion and conquest of Hanover.
 " Robert Emmett's insurrection in Dublin, Ireland.
 " Purchase of Louisiana from France by the United States.
 " War between Russia and Persia.
 " War between the English and the Mahrattas of India.
 " Battle of Assayé, India,—Sir Arthur Wellesley defeats the Mahrattas.
- 1804 Conspiracy against Bonaparte.
 " Execution of the Duke d' Enghein, May 21st.
 " War between Great Britain and Spain, December.
 " Napoleon crowned "Emperor of the French," December 2d.
- 1805 Napoleon crowned "King of Northern Italy," May 26th.
 " Mehemet Ali becomes Pasha of Egypt.
 " Coalition of England, Austria, Russia, and Sweden against Napoleon.
 " The Austrian general Mack surrenders Ulm to Napoleon, October 20th.
 " Battle of Trafalgar,—victory and death of Lord Nelson, October 21st.
 " Battle of Dirnstein, Austria, November 11th.
 " Napoleon enters Vienna, the Austrian capital, November 13th.
 " Battle of Austerlitz, Austria, December 2d.
 " Peace of Pressburg between France and Austria, December 26th.
- 1806 End of the German Empire and formation of the Confederation of the Rhine.
 " Joseph Bonaparte King of Naples and Louis King of Holland.
 " Death of William Pitt the Younger and Charles James Fox.
 " The English conquer the Cape of Good Hope from the Dutch.
 " Capture of Buenos Ayres, South America, by Sir Home Popham.
 " War breaks out between France and Prussia, August.

- 1806 Battle of Saalfeld,—Prince Louis of Prussia defeated and killed, October 10th.
- “ Battles of Jena and Auerstadt, Prussia, October 14th.
 - “ Napoleon enters Berlin, the capital of Prussia, October 25th.
 - “ Napoleon’s Berlin Decree establishing the Continental System, November 21st.
 - “ Battle of Pultusk, Poland,—the French repulsed, December 26th.
- 1807 Battle of Eylau, Prussia, February 8th.
- “ Dantzic, Prussia, surrendered to the French, May 24th.
 - “ Battle of Hielsberg, Prussia, June 5th.
 - “ Battle of Friedland, Prussia, June 14th.
 - “ Attack of the Leopard on the Chesapeake, June 22d.
 - “ Peace of Tilsit between France, Russia, and Prussia, July 7th.
 - “ Jérôme Bonaparte becomes King of Westphalia.
 - “ War begun between Russia and Turkey.
 - “ A British fleet under Admiral Duckworth repulsed at Constantinople.
 - “ The English under General Fraser take Alexandria in Egypt.
 - “ Buenos Ayres recovered from the English by its inhabitants.
 - “ Robert Fulton’s steam navigation experiments crowned with success.
 - “ Bombardment of Copenhagen by the British navy, September 2d–5th.
 - “ Aaron Burr’s trial for treason and acquittal, November.
 - “ War of Prussia, France, and Denmark against Sweden.
 - “ The royal family of Portugal sails for Rio Janeiro, in Brazil, Nov. 27th.
 - “ The French occupy Lisbon, the capital of Portugal, November 30th.
 - “ Napoleon’s Milan decree forbidding neutrals trading with England, December 17th.
- 1808 Intrigues of Bayonne,—Dethronement of the Bourbons in Spain.
- “ Joseph Bonaparte proclaimed King of Spain.
 - “ Beginning of the Peninsular War.
 - “ Dupont’s capitulation of Baylen.
 - “ Napoleon’s meeting with the Czar Alexander I. at Erfurt, Prussia, July.
 - “ The Portuguese resist the French and are aided by the English, August.
 - “ Battle of Rolicia, Portugal, August 19th.
 - “ Battle of Vimiera, Portugal, August 21st.
 - “ Convention of Cintra,—French evacuation of Portugal.
 - “ Napoleon enters Madrid, the capital of Spain, December 4th.
- 1809 Battle of Corunna, Spain,—victory and death of Sir John Moore, January 16th.
- “ Surrender of Saragossa to the French after a long siege, February 20th.
 - “ James Madison inaugurated President of the United States, March 4th.
 - “ King Gustavus IV. of Sweden deposed by the Swedish Senate, March 13th.
 - “ Sweden cedes Finland to Russia by the Peace of Frederikshamm.
 - “ War breaks out between France and Austria, April.

- 1809** Battles of Abensberg and Eckmühl, Bavaria, April 19th–22d.
 “ Napoleon enters Vienna, May 13th.
 “ Battles of Aspern and Esslingen, Austria, May 21st, 22d.
 “ Eugene Beauharnais defeats the Austrians at Raab, May.
 “ Revolt of the Tyrolese against the Bavarian Government.
 “ Unfortunate expedition of the English to the island of Walcheran.
 “ Pope Pius VII. imprisoned in France, July.
 “ Battle of Wagram, Austria, July 5th and 6th.
 “ Battle of Talavera, Spain, July 28th.
 “ Beginning of the Revolution in Colombia, August.
 “ Peace of Schoenbrunn between France and Austria, October 14th.
 “ Napoleon’s divorce from Josephine.
- 1810** Napoleon’s marriage with the Archduchess Maria Louisa of Austria, January.
 “ General Charles John Bernadotte elected Crown Prince of Sweden.
 “ Holland annexed to the French Empire.
 “ Beginning of the Revolution in Chili, July.
 “ Hidalgo begins the Revolution in Mexico, September 16th.
 “ Battle of Busaca, Spain, September 27th.
 “ Wellington’s retreat to Torres Vedras, October and November.
- 1811** Mehemet Ali, Pasha of Egypt, causes a massacre of the Mamelukes.
 “ Attack of the Little Belt on the President, March 16th.
 “ Battle of Albuera, Spain, May 16th.
 “ Colombian Declaration of Independence, July 5th.
 “ Hidalgo, the Mexican insurgent chief, shot, July 27th.
 “ Battle of Tippecanoe, Indiana, November 7th.
- 1812** Earthquake at Caracas, South America.
 “ Louisiana admitted as a State of the American Union.
 “ Peace of Bucharest between Russia and Turkey.
 “ The United States declares war against England, June 19th.
 “ Napoleon declares war against Russia, June 22d.
 “ Napoleon crosses the Niemen and invades Russia, June 24th.
 “ Battle of Salamanca, Spain, July 22d.
 “ Hull’s surrender of Detroit, Michigan, August 16th.
 “ Battle of Smolensko, Russia, August 17th.
 “ Battle of Borodino, Russia, September 7th.
 “ Napoleon enters Moscow, September 15th.
 “ Conflagration of Moscow, September 16th–19th.
 “ Battle of Queenstown, Canada, October 13th.
 “ Napoleon begins his retreat from Moscow, October 19th.
 “ Battles of Krasnoi, Russia, November 16th, 17th, and 18th.
 “ Terrible passage of the Beresina, December.
- 1813** Massacre of Frenchtown, Michigan, January 22d.

- 1813** Prussia joins Russia and Sweden in the war against Napoleon, Feb. 3d.
 " Capture of York, or Toronto, Canada, by the Americans, April 27th.
 " Battle of Lutzen, Germany, May 2d.
 " First siege of Fort Meigs, Ohio, May 5th–9th.
 " Battle of Bautzen, Germany, May 20th.
 " Battle of Vittoria, Spain, June 21st.
 " European Congress at Prague, Bohemia, July 4th.
 " Second siege of Fort Meigs, Ohio, July 21st.
 " Attack on Fort Stephenson, Ohio, August 2d.
 " Austria joins the allies in the war against Napoleon, August 10th.
 " Battle of Gros-Beeren, Prussia, August 23d.
 " Battle of Katzbach, Prussia, August 26th.
 " Battle of Dresden, Saxony, August 26th, 27th.
 " Battles of Culm and Nollendorf, Bohemia, August 29th, 30th.
 " Battle of Dennewitz, Prussia, September 6th.
 " Perry's victory on Lake Erie, September 10th.
 " Battle of the Thames, Canada, October 5th.
 " Battle of Leipsic, Saxony, October 16th, 17th, and 18th.
 " Napoleon begins his retreat from Leipsic, October 19th.
 " War with the Creek Indians in Alabama, November.
 " Battle of Chrysler's Field, Canada, November 11th.
 " Mexican Declaration of Independence, November 13th.
- 1814** Invasion of France by the allied armies, January 1st.
 " Denmark cedes Norway to Sweden by the Peace of Kiel, January.
 " Pope Pius VII. restored to his authority in Rome, January.
 " Battle of Brienne, France, January 27th.
 " Battle of La Rothiere, France, February 1st.
 " Napoleon's victory at Montereau, February 18th.
 " Battle of Tohopeka, or Great Horse Shoe, Alabama, March 27th.
 " First capitulation of Paris to the allies, March 31st.
 " Treaty of Fontainbleau,—Napoleon's abdication, April 11th.
 " Battle of Toulouse, France,—Wellington defeats Soult, April 11th.
 " Napoleon arrives in Elba, May 4th.
 " Louis XVIII. placed on the throne of France, May 20th.
 " First Peace of Paris between France and the allies, May 30th.
 " Battle of Chippewa, Canada, July 5th.
 " Battle of Lundy's Lane, Canada, July 25th.
 " Battle of Bladensburg, Maryland, August 24th.
 " Washington City captured and burned by the British, August 24th.
 " Battle of Plattsburg, New York, September 11th.
 " Battle of North Point, Maryland, September 12th.
 " British bombardment of Fort McHenry, Maryland, Sept. 12th–14th.
 " A Congress of European Powers meets at Vienna, October 2d.

- 1814 Jackson's invasion of Florida and capture of Pensacola, November.
 " Battle below New Orleans, Louisiana, December 23d.
 " Peace of Ghent between Great Britain and the United States, Dec. 24th.
- 1815 Battle of New Orleans, Louisiana, January 8th.
 " Napoleon returns to France and recovers his throne, March.
 " England, Austria, Russia, and Prussia combine against Napoleon.
 " Napoleon compels the Prussians to evacuate Charleroi, Belgium, June 15th.
 " Battles of Ligny and Quatre-Bras, Belgium, June 16th.
 " Battle of Waterloo, Belgium, June 18th.
 " Commodore Decatur humbles Algiers, June 30th.
 " Second abdication of Napoleon, July 2d.
 " Second capitulation of Paris, July 7th.
 " Louis XVIII. restored to the throne of France, July 8th.
 " Napoleon banished to St. Helena, where he arrives October 2d.
 " The Holy Alliance formed, September 25th.
 " The Germanic Confederation established.
 " Second Peace of Paris between France and the allies, November 20th.
- 1816 Argentine Declaration of Independence, July 9th.
 " Lord Exmouth humbles Algiers, August 27th.
 " Indiana admitted as a State of the American Union, December.
- 1817 Battle of Chacabaco, Chili,—the Spaniards defeated.
 " President James Monroe's inauguration, March 4th.
 " Admission of Mississippi into the American Union.
 " Raids of the Seminole and Creek Indians in Georgia.
 " Republican conspiracy in England.
- 1818 Battle of Maypu and emancipation of Chili, April 5th.
 " The Wahabees of Arabia subdued by Mehemet Ali.
 " General Jackson's second invasion of Florida and seizure of Pensacola.
 " Admission of Illinois as a State of the American Union.
- 1819 Spain cedes Florida to the United States.
 " Popular demonstration at Manchester, England.
 " European Congress at Aix la Chapelle.
 " Alabama admitted into the American Union.
- 1820 Death of George III. of England and accession of George IV., January.
 " Conquest of Nubia and Kordofan by the Pasha of Egypt.
 " Revolution in Spain and reëstablishment of the Cortes Constitution.
 " Revolution in Portugal and establishment of a liberal constitution.
 " Revolution in Naples and establishment of a liberal constitution.
 " The Holy Alliance restores absolute monarchy in Naples.
 " Maine admitted into the American Union.
 " The Missouri Compromise agreed to.
- 1821 Death of Napoleon Bonaparte at St. Helena, May 5th.

- 1821 Revolution in Piedmont crushed by Austrian power.
 " Admission of Missouri as a State of the American Union, August 21st.
 " Alexander Ypsilanti's proclamation to the Greeks.
 " Commencement of the Greek War for Independence.
 " Mexico becomes independent of Spain.
 " San Martin rouses the Peruvians to revolution.
 " War between Turkey and Persia.
- 1822 Don Augustin Iturbide created Emperor of Mexico.
 " Brazil declared an independent empire.
 " Desolation of Scio by the Turks.
- 1823 A French army restores absolutism in Spain.
 " Surrender of Puerto Cabello to the Colombians.
 " Iturbide, Emperor of Mexico, overthrown.
- 1824 Death of Lord Byron at Missolonghi, Greece, April 19th.
 " Death of Louis XVIII. of France and accession of Charles X.
 " General Lafayette's visit to the United States.
 " The East-India Company involved in a war with the Burmese.
 " A Federal Constitution adopted in Mexico.
 " Battle of Junin, Peru, August 6th,—the Spaniards defeated.
 " Battle of Ayacucho and emancipation of Peru, December 9th.
- 1825 General Guadalupe Victoria inaugurated President of Mexico, Jan. 1st.
 " John Quincy Adams inaugurated President of the United States, March 4th.
 " War between Russia and Persia.
 " Death of the Czar Alexander I. and accession of Nicholas.
 " France acknowledges the independence of Hayti.
- 1826 Bloody destruction of the Janissaries at Constantinople.
 " Surrender of Callao, Peru, to the Peruvians.
 " Spanish American Congress at Panama.
 " Capture of Missolonghi, Greece, by the Turks, August.
 " Death of John Adams and Thomas Jefferson, July 4th.
- 1827 Intervention of England, France, and Russia in favor of Greece.
 " Battle of Navarino and annihilation of the Turko-Egyptian fleet, Oct. 20th.
 " First Railroad in the United States built.
- 1828 Revolution in Mexico and flight of General Pedraza, November.
 " War between Russia and Turkey.
 " Abolition of the Test Act by the British Parliament.
 " Establishment of the American System.
- 1829 General Andrew Jackson inaugurated President, March 4th.
 " Catholic Emancipation Act passed by Parliament.
 " Peace of Adrianople between Russia and Turkey.
- 1830 Death of George IV. and accession of William IV., June.

- 1830 The city of Algiers taken by a French fleet, July 4th.
 " Revolution in Paris and dethronement of Charles X., July.
 " Louis Philippe created " King of the French," August 9th.
 " Belgium becomes an independent kingdom.
 " Rebellion in Poland against Russian authority, November.
- 1831 Popular movements in Germany and Italy.
 " Battle of Ostrolenka, Poland, May 20th.
 " Fall of Warsaw and end of the Polish insurrection, September.
 " Assassination of John Capo d' Istria, the Greek President.
 " Abdication of Dom Pedro I. of Brazil and accession of Dom Pedro II.
 " Mehemet Ali's first rebellion against the Ottoman Porte.
 " Dissolution of the Republic of Colombia.
- 1832 Siege and capture of Acre, Syria, by the Egyptians.
 " Battle of Homs, Syria, July 8th,—the Egyptians defeat the Turks.
 " The Russians take the Circassian post of Himry, October 8th.
 " President Bustamente overthrown in Mexico.
 " Santa Anna chosen President of Mexico.
 " Civil war in Portugal between Dom Pedro and Dom Miguel.
 " Passage of the First Reform Bill by the British Parliament.
 " Black Hawk War in Illinois and Wisconsin.
 " President Jackson's collision with the U. S. Supreme Court.
 " Nullification in South Carolina, November.
- 1833 Removal of deposits from the United States Bank.
 " King Otho I. ascends the throne of Greece, March.
 " The Sultan of Turkey cedes Syria to the Pasha of Egypt.
 " The British Parliament abolishes slavery in the British West Indies.
 " Death of King Ferdinand VII. of Spain and accession of Isabella II.
 " Civil war begins in Spain between the Christinos and Carlists.
- 1835 Beginning of the Texan War for Independence, October.
 " Capture of the Alamo by the Mexicans, December 2d.
 " Commencement of the Seminole War in Florida, December 29th.
- 1836 Battle of San Jacinto, Texas, April 21st,—Santa Anna captured.
 " Texas becomes an independent republic.
 " Arkansas admitted into the American Union.
- 1837 Michigan becomes a State of the American Union.
 " Martin Van Buren inaugurated President of the United States, March 4th.
 " Death of William IV. of England and accession of Victoria, June.
 " Rebellion in Canada against British authority.
 " Osceola, the Seminole chief, treacherously made a prisoner, October.
- 1838 General Mexia's rebellion in Mexico.
 " Vera Cruz, Mexico, attacked by a French fleet, November.
- 1839 Revolution in Peru and overthrow of General Santa Cruz.
 " Mehemet Ali's second rebellion against the Sultan of Turkey.

- 1839 Battle of Nisib, Syria—the Egyptians defeat the Turks, June 24th.
“ England’s opium war with China begins.
“ Anglo-Indian invasion of Afghanistan.
- 1840 Acre and Beyreut, Syria, bombarded and taken by the British navy.
“ The remains of the Emperor Napoleon I. brought to Paris.
“ Sanguinary insurrection in the city of Mexico.
- 1841 Disastrous retreat of the British from Cabul, Afghanistan.
“ Canton, China, captured by the British and ransomed by the Chinese.
“ Revolution in Mexico and downfall of Bustamente.
“ General William Henry Harrison inaugurated President, March 4th.
“ Death of President Harrison, April 4th.
“ John Tyler’s inauguration, April 6th.
- 1842 Domestic difficulties in Rhode Island.
“ The Treaty of Washington settles the Maine boundary dispute.
“ Treaty of Nankin between Great Britain and China, August 29th.
- 1843 Battles of Hyderabad, Maharajpore, and Punniar, India.
“ Annexation of Scinde and Gwalior to British India.
“ The Russians take the Circassian fortress of Akulgo by storm.
- 1844 First experiment with the Electro-Magnetic Telegraph.
“ The towns of Tangier and Mogadore, Morocco, bombarded by a French fleet.
“ Revolution in Mexico and overthrow and banishment of Santa Anna.
- 1845 Florida admitted into the American Union, March 3d.
“ Inauguration of President James Knox Polk, March 4th.
“ Annexation of Texas to the United States, July 4th.
“ Battle of Moodkee between the English and the Sikhs, December 6th.
- 1846 Battles of Ferozeshah, Aliwal, and Sobraon, and end of the First Sikh War.
“ The British Parliament repeals the Corn Laws.
“ Commencement of hostilities between the Americans and Mexicans, April 26.
“ Battle of Palo Alto, Texas, May 8th.
“ Battle of Resaca de la Palma, Texas, May 9th.
“ The United States declare war against Mexico, May 11th.
“ Capture of Matamoras, Mexico, by General Taylor, May 18th.
“ Revolution in Mexico and Santa Anna’s restoration to power.
“ Capture of Monterey, Mexico, by General Taylor, September 24th.
“ Conquest of California by Colonel Fremont.
“ Battle of Bracito, Mexico,—the Mexicans defeated by Colonel Doniphan, December 25th.
“ Iowa admitted into the American Union, December.
- 1847 Battle of Buena Vista, Mexico, February 22d and 23d.
“ Battle of Sacramento, Mexico, February 28th.

- 1847 Siege and capture of Vera Cruz by General Scott, March.
- " Battle of Cerro Gordo, Mexico, April 18th and 19th.
 - " Battles of San Antonio, Contreras, and Churubusco, August 20th.
 - " Battle of Molino del Rey, Mexico, September 8th.
 - " Battle of Chapultepec, Mexico, September 13th.
 - " General Scott enters the city of Mexico, September 14th.
 - " The French conquest of Algiers completed by the surrender of Abd el Kader.
 - " Civil war in Switzerland between the Catholics and Protestants.
- 1848 Peace of Guadalupe Hidalgo between Mexico and the United States, February 2d.
- " Revolution in Paris and abdication and flight of Louis Philippe, Feb.
 - " Establishment of the Second French Republic, February.
 - " Popular movements in the German States, March.
 - " The First Revolution in Vienna, March.
 - " Revolution in Milan, Italy, and expulsion of the Austrians, March.
 - " Revolution in Berlin, March.
 - " Sicily's revolt against the King of Naples.
 - " Revolt of Schleswig-Holstein against the King of Denmark.
 - " First Communist rising in Paris, May 15th.
 - " The German National Assembly meets at Frankfort, May 18th.
 - " Archduke John of Austria chosen Regent of Germany.
 - " Wisconsin admitted into the American Union, May.
 - " Slavic insurrection in Prague, Bohemia, June.
 - " Great Communist insurrection in Paris, June.
 - " The old Austrian field-marshal Radetzky defeats the Sardinians, July.
 - " Second Revolution in Vienna, October.
 - " Siege and fall of Vienna, October.
 - " Dissolution of the Prussian National Assembly.
 - " Hungarian rebellion against the Austrian Emperor.
 - " Revolution in Rome and flight of Pope Pius IX., November.
 - " Establishment of a new Roman Republic, November.
 - " Louis Napoleon Bonaparte inaugurated President of France, Dec. 20th.
 - " Abdication of Ferdinand of Austria and accession of Francis Joseph.
- 1849 The Austrians under Prince Windischgratz enter Pesth, Hungary, January 5th.
- " The Magyars lose the strong fortress of Essek, in Slavonia, Jan. 30th.
 - " Battle of Kapolna, Hungary, February 26th and 27th.
 - " The Emperor Francis Joseph proclaims a constitution for Austria, March 4th.
 - " General Zachary Taylor inaugurated President of the United States, March 5th.
 - " Renewal of the Schleswig-Holstein revolt against Denmark, March.

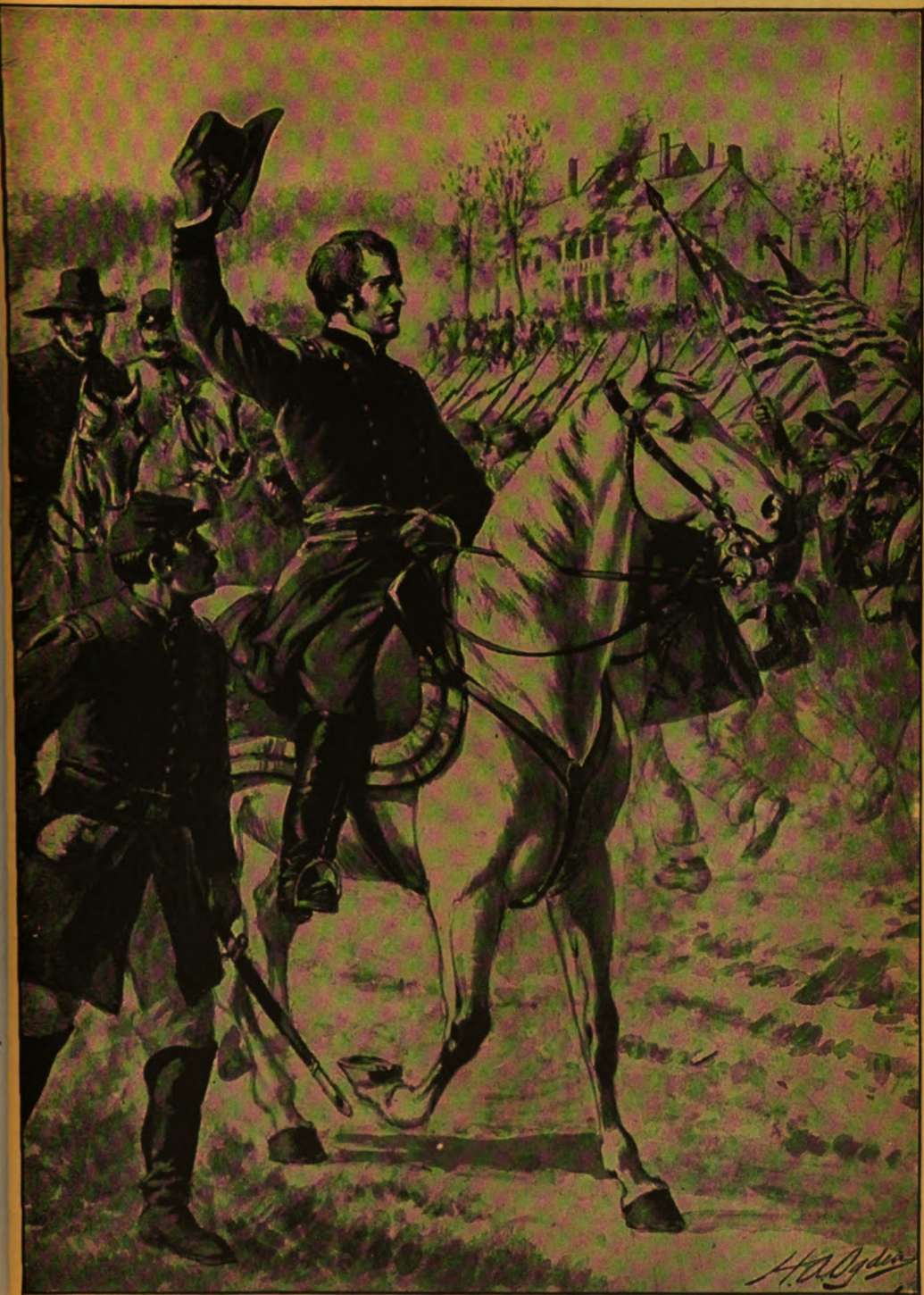
- 1849 Defeat of the Sardinians by Marshal Radetzky and abdication of Charles Albert.
- " Terrific hand-to-hand fighting in Hungary, April.
 - " Hungarian Declaration of Independence, April 14th.
 - " Louis Kossuth created Governor of Hungary, April 14th.
 - " The Magyars under Görgey carry Buda by storm, May 21st.
 - " The Austrian armies expelled from Hungary, May.
 - " Invasion of Hungary by the Austrian and Russian armies, June.
 - " The Magyars under Bem driven from Transylvania.
 - " Surrender of Rome to a French army after a spirited siege, July 3d.
 - " Pope Pius IX. restored to his authority in Rome.
 - " Republican insurrection in Baden.
 - " Battle of Komorn, Hungary, July 11th.
 - " General Klapka's grand sortie from Komorn, August 3d.
 - " Terrific fighting in the Banat, Hungary, August 5th-8th.
 - " Battle of Temeswar,—defeat of the Magyars under Bem, August 9th.
 - " Governor Kossuth appoints Görgey Dictator of Hungary, August 10th.
 - " Görgey's treacherous surrender to the Russians at Villagos, August 13th.
 - " The Austrians under Radetzky reduce Venice after a long siege, August 25th.
 - " Surrender of Komorn to the Austrians, September 29th.
 - " Thirteen Magyar generals and staff-officers executed at Arad, Oct. 6th.
 - " The Punjab annexed to the Anglo-Indian Empire.
- 1850 Prussia becomes a constitutional monarchy, February 6th.
- " Death of President Taylor, July 9th.
 - " Inauguration of Millard Fillmore, July 10th.
 - " Slavery agitation in the United States.
 - " The Compromise Act passed by the United States Congress, September.
 - " Admission of California into the American Union.
- 1851 Louis Kossuth's visit to the United States.
- " War between France and Morocco.
 - " The Coup d' Etat of Louis Napoleon, December 2d.
- 1852 The Rebellion of Tae-ping-Wang in China begins.
- " Second war between the English and the Burmese.
 - " Louis Napoleon proclaimed "Emperor of the French," December 2d.
- 1853 Subjugation of the Kaffirs of South Africa by the English.
- " Marriage of the Emperor Napoleon III. with Eugenie de Montijo.
 - " Franklin Pierce inaugurated President of the United States, March 4th.
 - " Nankin, China, captured by the Tae-ping rebels.
 - " Santa Anna overthrows Arista's Administration in Mexico.
 - " War breaks out between Russia and Turkey, October.
 - " Russian invasion of Turkey.
- 1854 Turkish victories on the Danube.

- 1854 Siege of Silistria by the Russians.
 " Alliance of England, France, and Turkey against Russia.
 " Bombardment of Odessa by the allied fleets, April 22d.
 " Allied expedition to the Crimea.
 " Battle of Alma, September 20th.
 " Siege of Sevastopol commenced, October 17th.
 " Battle of Balaklava, October 25th.
 " Battle of Inkermann, November 5th.
 " Insurrection in Madrid and flight of the queen-mother.
 " Passage of the Kansas-Nebraska Act by the United States Congress.
 " Revolution in Mexico and final overthrow of Santa Anna.
- 1855 Death of the Czar Nicholas of Russia and accession of Alexander II.
 " Sardinia joins the allies in the Crimean War.
 " Sir Charles Napier's attack on Sweaborg, August 9th-14th.
 " Fall of Sevastopol, September 9th.
 " Capture of Kinburn by General Bazaine, October.
 " Omar Pasha's victory over the Russians at the Ingour, November.
 " Surrender of Kars, in Asiatic Turkey, to the Russians, Nov. 28th.
 " Civil war in Kansas.
- 1856 Peace of Paris between Russia and the allies, March 30th.
 " War between England and Persia.
 " War of England and France against China.
 " Bombardment and capture of Canton by the English.
- 1857 James Buchanan inaugurated President of the United States, March 4th.
 " The Dred Scott Decision of the United States Supreme Court, March 6th.
 " Mormon rebellion in Utah.
 " Beginning of the Sepoy Mutiny in British India, April.
 " Massacre of Delhi, India.
 " Massacre of Cawnpore, India.
 " Siege of Lucknow, India.
 " General Havelock's victories over Nena Sahib on the Ganges.
 " Battle of Mungarwar India, September 21st.
 " Siege and fall of Delhi, India, September.
 " Cawnpore attacked by 25,000 rebel Sepoys, December.
- 1858 Capture of Lucknow by Sir Colin Campbell, after a siege, March 17th.
 " Reduction of Gwalior, the last stronghold of the Sepoys, June.
 " War of France and Spain against Anam.
 " Civil war in Mexico between the Liberals and Conservatives.
- 1859 War breaks out between Austria and Sardinia, April.
 " France joins Sardinia against Austria in the Italian War, May.
 " Battle of Montebello, Italy, May 20th.
 " Battle of Magenta, Italy, June 4th.
 " Battle of Melegnano, Italy, June 8th.

- 1859 Battle of Solferino, Italy, June 24th.
“ Peace of Villa Franca between France and Austria, July 11th.
“ Capture of Schamyl, the Circassian chief, by the Russians, August.
“ War breaks out between Spain and Morocco, October.
“ John Brown’s insurrection in Virginia, October 19th.
“ Execution of John Brown by the authorities of Virginia, December 2d.
- 1860 The Spaniards under General Prim defeat 40,000 Moors, January 2d.
“ Peace between Spain and Morocco, April.
“ Capture of Peking, China by the English and French.
“ Treaty of Tien-tsin, between England, France, and China, October.
“ Abraham Lincoln elected President of the United States, November
“ Rebellious movements in the Slave States.
“ Secession of South Carolina from the American Union, Dec. 20th.
“ General Garibaldi overthrows King Francis II. of Naples.
- 1861 Attack on the United States Government steamer “Star of the West,”
January 9th.
“ Secession of Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Mississippi, Louisiana, and
Texas.
“ President Lincoln’s first inauguration, March 4th.
“ Fall of Fort Sumter and beginning of the American Civil War, April 14th.
“ President Lincoln calls for 75,000 militia, April 15th.
“ Secession of Virginia from the American Union, April 17th.
“ Massachusetts troops attacked in Baltimore, April 19th.
“ Secession of North Carolina, Arkansas, and Tennessee.
“ Battle of Big Bethel, Virginia, June 10th.
“ Battle of Carthage, Missouri, July 5th.
“ Battle of Bull’s Run, Virginia, July 21.
“ Battle of Wilson’s Creek, Missouri, August 10th.
“ Capture of Hatteras Inlet, North Carolina, August 29th.
“ Capture of Lexington, Missouri, by the Confederates, September.
“ Battle of Ball’s Bluff, Virginia, October 21st.
“ Battle of Belmont, Missouri, November 7th.
“ Capture of Port Royal, South Carolina, by Admiral Dupont, Nov. 7th.
“ The Czar Alexander II. of Russia promises serf-emancipation, February.
“ Renewal of the Circassian war against the Russians, July.
“ King Victor Emmanuel of Sardinia created King of Italy.
“ Allied English, French, and Spanish expedition against Mexico, December.
- 1862 Battle of Mill Spring, Kentucky, January 19th.
“ Capture of Roanoke Island, North Carolina, February 8th.
“ Capture of Fort Donelson, Tennessee, by General Grant, February 16th.
“ Battle of Pea Ridge, Arkansas, March 6th, 7th, and 8th.
“ Victory of the Monitor over the Merrimac, March 8th.
“ Capture of Newbern, North Carolina, by Burnside, March 14th.

- 1862** Battle of Winchester, Virginia, March 23d.
- " Battle of Shiloh, Tennessee, April 6th and 7th.
 - " Capture of Island No. 10, Mississippi river, April 7th.
 - " Capture of Fort Pulaski, Georgia, by Captain Gillmore, April 11th.
 - " Capture of Huntsville, Alabama, by General Mitchel, April 11th.
 - " Capture of Fort Macon, North Carolina, April 25th.
 - " Capture of New Orleans by General Butler and Admiral Farragut, April 28th.
 - " Evacuation of Yorktown, Virginia, by the Confederates, May 3d.
 - " Battle of Williamsburg, Virginia, May 5th.
 - " Capture of Natchez, Mississippi, by Admiral Farragut, May 12th.
 - " Capture of Vera Cruz, Mexico, by the Spaniards.
 - " Capture of Corinth, Mississippi, by General Halleck, May 29th.
 - " Battle of Fair Oaks, Virginia, May 31st and June 1st.
 - " Capture of Memphis, Tennessee, June 6th.
 - " The Seven Days' Battles near Richmond, Virginia, June 25th,—July 1st.
 - " Battle of Malvern Hill near Richmond, Virginia, July 1st.
 - " Defeat of General Pope's army between Manassas and Washington, August 28d–31st.
 - " Battle of Richmond, Kentucky, August 29th and 30th.
 - " Garibaldi's defeat at Aspromonte, Italy, August 29th.
 - " Battle of South Mountain, Maryland, September 14th.
 - " Surrender of Harper's Ferry, Virginia, September 15th.
 - " Battle of Antietam, Maryland, September 17th.
 - " Battle of Iuka, Mississippi, September 19th.
 - " Battles near Corinth, Mississippi, October 3d, 4th, and 5th.
 - " Battle of Perryville, Kentucky, October 8th.
 - " Revolution in Greece and flight of King Otho, October.
 - " Insurrection in Poland against Russian authority.
 - " War between the whites and the Sioux Indians in Minnesota.
 - " Battle of Prairie Grove, Arkansas, December 7th.
 - " Battle of Fredericksburg, Virginia, December 13th.
 - " Battle of Murfreesborough, Tennessee, Dec. 29th–Jan. 4th, 1863.
 - " Sherman's unsuccessful attack on Vicksburg, December 29th.
- 1863** President Lincoln's Emancipation Proclamation, January 1st.
- " Emancipation of the Russian serfs, February 1st.
 - " Prince George of Denmark becomes King of Greece.
 - " Battle of Port Gibson, Mississippi, April 29th.
 - " Battle of Chancellorsville, Virginia, May 2d, 3d, and 4th.
 - " Battle of Raymond, Mississippi, May 12th.
 - " Battle of Jackson, Mississippi, May 14th.
 - " Battle of Champion Hills, Mississippi, May 16th.
 - " Battle of Big Black River Bridge, Mississippi, May 17th.

- 1863 Capture of Puebla, Mexico, by the French, after a spirited siege, May 18th.
- “ West Virginia becomes a State of the American Union, June 1st.
 - “ Battle of Gettysburg, Pennsylvania, July 1st, 2d, and 3d.
 - “ Surrender of Vicksburg, Mississippi, to General Grant, July 4th.
 - “ Union victory at Helena, Arkansas, July 4th.
 - “ Capture of Port Hudson, Louisiana, by General Banks, July 8th.
 - “ The draft riots in New York City, July 13th, 14th, and 15th.
 - “ Capture of the City of Mexico by General Forey, June.
 - “ Siege of Charleston, South Carolina, by General Gillmore.
 - “ Capture of Little Rock, Arkansas, by General Steele, September 10th.
 - “ Battle of Chickamauga, Tennessee, September 19th and 20th.
 - “ Battle of Chattanooga, Tennessee, November 23d, 24th, and 25th.
 - “ Siege of Knoxville, Tennessee, by General Longstreet, November.
- 1864 War of Prussia and Austria against Denmark, February.
- “ Grant made a Lieutenant-General, February.
 - “ Battle of Olustee, Florida, February 20th.
 - “ Massacre of Fort Pillow, Tennessee, April 12th.
 - “ General Banks's Red River Expedition, Louisiana.
 - “ The Archduke Maximilian of Austria, Emperor of Mexico.
 - “ Capture of Doppel, Holstein, by the Prussians, April 18th.
 - “ Battles of the Wilderness and Spottsylvania, Virginia, May 5th-13th.
 - “ Battle of Cold Harbor, Virginia, June 1st.
 - “ Battle of Allatoona Pass, Georgia, June.
 - “ Battle of Kenesaw Mountain, Georgia, June.
 - “ Siege of Petersburg and Richmond, Virginia, June.
 - “ Fight between the Kearsarge and the Alabama, June 15th.
 - “ Battle of Monocacy, Maryland, July 9th.
 - “ Capture of the island of Alsen by the Prussians, July 9th.
 - “ War of Brazil and the Argentine Confederation against Paraguay.
 - “ War between Spain and Peru.
 - “ War of England, France, and Holland in Japan.
 - “ Russia suppresses the Polish insurrection.
 - “ Peace of Vienna between Austria, Prussia, and Denmark, October.
 - “ Siege of Atlanta, Georgia, commenced by General Sherman, July 20th.
 - “ Burning of Chambersburg, Pennsylvania, July 30th.
 - “ Farragut's victories in Mobile bay, August.
 - “ Capture of Atlanta, Georgia, by Sherman, September 2d.
 - “ Sheridan's victory at Cedar Creek, Virginia, September 22d.
 - “ Sheridan's victory at Fisher's Hill, Virginia, October 19th.
 - “ Nevada admitted into the American Union, October 31st.
 - “ Reëlection of President Lincoln, November 8th.
 - “ Sherman's grand march through Georgia, November and December.



Copyright 1897 by Knight & Brown

HOOKER AT CHANCELLORSVILLE, MAY 3, 1863, by Google

BOX
CONTAINING

- 1864** Hood's army annihilated at Nashville, Tennessee, December 15th.
 " Capture of Savannah, Georgia, by General Sherman, December 21st.
- 1865** Capture of Fort Fisher, North Carolina, by General Terry, January 15th.
 " Capture of Wilmington, North Carolina, by Terry, February 22d.
 " Charleston, South Carolina, evacuated by the Confederates, Feb. 18th.
 " Lee's evacuation of Petersburg and Richmond, April 3d.
 " Surrender of Lee's army at Appomattox, Virginia, April 9th.
 " Capture of Mobile, Alabama, by General Canby, April 12th.
 " Assassination of President Lincoln, April 14th.
 " Andrew Johnson inaugurated President of the United States, April 15th.
 " Surrender of Johnston's army in North Carolina, April 26th.
 " Capture of Jefferson Davis near Irwinsville, Georgia, May 10th.
 " Close of the Rebellion in the United States, May.
 " Adoption of the 13th Amendment of the United States Constitution abolishing slavery.
 " War between Spain and Chili.
 " Russian conquests in Turkestan.
- 1866** Alliance of Peru, Chili, Ecuador, Bolivia, and Venezuela against Spain, January.
 " Readmission of Tennessee into the American Union, June.
 " The Seven Weeks' War of Prussia and Italy against Austria begins, June 14th.
 " Battle of Custoza, Italy, June 24th.
 " Battle of Sadowa, Bohemia, July 3d.
 " Naval battle off the island of Lissa,—Austrian victory.
 " The Atlantic Telegraph Cable successfully laid, June.
 " Peace of Prague between Austria and Prussia, August 23d.
 " The North German Confederation established.
 " Peace of Vienna between Austria and Italy, October 3d.
 " Insurrection in the island of Candia against the Turks.
 " The French forces under Marshal Bazaine evacuate Mexico, December.
- 1867** Nebraska admitted as a State of the American Union, January 15th.
 " The Dominion of Canada established by the British Parliament, Feb.
 " Passage of the Military Reconstruction Bill by the United States Congress, March.
 " Purchase of Alaska from Russia by the United States, March.
 " Siege of Vera Cruz and Mexico by the Liberals of Mexico.
 " Capture and execution of the Emperor Maximilian at Queretaro, June 19th.
 " Passage of the Second Reform Bill by the British Parliament, August.
 " Garibaldi's movement on Rome, September.
 " War between Great Britain and Abyssinia, November.
- 1868** Impeachment of President Johnson, February.

- 1868 King Theodore of Abyssinia defeated and killed by the English, April.
“ Acquittal of President Johnson after a trial of several weeks, May 16th.
“ Revolution in Spain and flight of Queen Isabella II., September.
“ General U. S. Grant elected President of the United States, Nov. 3d.
“ Insurrection in Cuba against Spanish authority, November.
- 1869 Inauguration of President Grant, March 4th.
“ Completion of the Union Pacific Railroad, May.
“ Disestablishment of the Anglican Church in Ireland, August.
“ Carlist insurrection in Spain, August.
“ Republican insurrection in Spain, September.
- 1870 President Lopez of Paraguay defeated and killed by the Brazilians.
“ Adoption of the 15th Amendment of the United States Constitution.
“ Prince Leopold of Hohenzollern a candidate for the crown of Spain.
“ France declares war against Prussia, July 15th.
“ Prussian invasion of France, July 30th.
“ Skirmish at Saarbrücken, August 2d.
“ Battle of Weissenburg, August 4th.
“ Battles of Woerth and Forbach, August 6th.
“ Great battles near Metz, August 14th–18th.
“ Battle of Gravelotte, France, August 18th.
“ Battle of Beaumont, France, August 30th and 31st.
“ Battle of Sedan, France, September 1st.
“ Surrender of McMahon’s army and of Napoleon III., September 2d.
“ Revolution in Paris and establishment of the Third French Republic, September 4th.
“ Siege of Strassburg by the Germans, August and September.
“ Investment and siege of Paris by the Germans, September 16th.
“ Italian military occupation of Rome, September 20th.
“ Surrender of Strassburg to the Germans, September 27th.
“ Bazaine’s surrender of Metz, October 27th.
“ French victories near Orleans, November 9th and 10th.
“ The Duke of Aosta elected King of Spain with title of Amadeus I., November 17th.
- 1871 Bombardment of Paris by the Germans, January.
“ Battle of St. Quentin, France, January.
“ Battle of Vendôme, France, January 6th.
“ Battle of Le Mans, France, January 11th.
“ Battle of Belfort, France, January.
“ King William of Prussia proclaimed Emperor of Germany, Jan. 19th.
“ Capitulation of Paris to the Germans, January 27th.
“ The French National Assembly meets at Bordeaux, February 14th.
“ Peace of Paris between France and Germany, March 2d.
“ Red Republican insurrection breaks out in Paris, March 17th.

- 1871 Battle of Courbevoie, near Paris, April 3d.
 " Siege and bombardment of Paris by the Versaillists, April and May.
 " Terrible fighting in Paris, May 21st-27th.
 " Battle of Pere la Chaise, Paris, May 27th.
 " End of the Paris rebellion, May 28th.
 " Treaty of Washington between the United States and England, May.
 " Victories of the United States navy over the Koreans, June 10th-11th.
 " Revolution and civil war in Mexico, October.
- 1872 Carlist insurrection in Spain, June.
 " Death of President Juarez of Mexico, June 18th.
 " Close of the Mexican civil war and presidency of Lerdo de Tejada.
 " The Alabama Claims Arbitration Tribunal.
 " General Grant reelected President of the United States, November 5th.
 " Death of Horace Greeley, November 29th.
- 1873 Death of the Ex-Emperor Napoleon III., January 9th.
 " Abdication of King Amadeus of Spain and establishment of a Spanish Republic, February 11th.
 " Second inauguration of President Grant, March 4th.
 " Abolition of slavery in the Spanish island of Porto Rico and dissolution of the Spanish National Assembly, March 22d.
 " Carlist insurrection in Spain.
 " War between Russia and Khiva.
 " Domestic difficulties in Louisiana.
 " War with the Modoc Indians in Oregon.
 " Resignation of President Thiers and election of Marshal McMahon as President of France, May 24th.
 " War between the British and the Ashantees.
 " Communist insurrection in Spain.
 " War between the Dutch and the Atcheenese of Sumatra.
 " The Virginius dispute between Spain and the United States.
 " Bombardment of Cartagena, Spain, by the Government forces.
- 1874 Coup d'etat of General Pavia in Spain, January 2d.
 " Passage of a military bill by the German Parliament.
 " Fall of Cartagena, Spain, January 14th.
 " Capture of Coomassie, the Ashantee capital, by the British, February.
 " Fall of Gladstone's Ministry in England, February.
 " Egyptian victories in Darfur.
 " Siege of Bilbao, Spain, by the Carlists, March and April.
 " Relief of Bilbao by Marshal Serrano's army, May 1st.
 " Civil war in Arkansas, April and May.
 " Veto of the currency-inflation bill by President Grant, April.
 " Republican defeat at Estella, Spain, and death of Marshal Concha, June 25th.

- 1874 Capture of Cuenca, Spain, by the Carlists, July 13th.
 " Attempted assassination of Prince Bismarck, July 14th.
 " Iceland's millenium, August.
 " Insurrection in Louisiana, September.
 " Prince Alfonso proclaimed King of Spain, December 31st.
- 1875 Enabling act of Congress for the admission of Colorado, March 4th.
 " Centennial Celebration of Lexington and Concord, April 19th.
 " Centennial Celebration of the capture of Ticonderoga, May 10th.
 " Centennial Celebration of the Mecklenburg Declaration, May 20th.
 " Centennial Celebration of the Battle of Bunker's Hill, June 17th.
 " Insurrection in the Herzegovina against the Turks, July.
 " Capture of Seo de Urgel, Spain, by the Alfonists, August.
 " War between Russia and Khokand, September.
 " General Kaufmann defeats 30,000 Khokand troops, September 4th.
 " Khokand occupied by General Kaufmann, September 16th.
 " War between Egypt and Abyssinia.
 " War between the English and the Malays of Malacca, November.
 " French Constitution completed, December.
- 1876 Suppression of the Carlist insurrection in Spain, March.
 " Centennial International Exposition at Philadelphia May 10–November 10.
 " Centennial Anniversary of American Independence, July 4.
 " Colorado admitted into the American Union, July.
 " Visit of Dom Pedro II., Emperor of Brazil, to the United States.
 " War with the Sioux Indians in Montana.
 " Massacre of General Custer and his detachment, June 25.
 " Turko-Servian War, July, August and September.
 " Disputed Presidential election in the United States.
 " Civil war over the Presidency in Mexico.
- 1877 Queen Victoria proclaimed Empress of India, January 1.
 " European Conference at Constantinople, January.
 " General Porfirio Diaz overthrows his rivals in Mexico.
 " Settlement of the Presidential dispute in the United States, February.
 " President Rutherford Birchard Hayes inaugurated, March 5.
 " War breaks out between Russia and Turkey, April.
 " Russian invasion of Turkey, April.
 " Siege of Kars, April and May.
 " War with the Nez Perce Indians in Idaho, June–September.
 " Railroad labor riots in the United States, July.
 " British annexation of the First Transvaal Republic.
 " Defeat of the Russians in Armenia, June and July.
 " Defeats of the Russians at Plevna, July 19 and 30 and September 12.
 " Battles at the Shipka Pass, Bulgaria, August.

- 1877 Battles of Aladjah Dagh, Armenia, October and November.
 “ Battle of Deve Boyun, Armenia, November.
 “ Capture of Kars by the Russians, November 18.
 “ Capture of Plevna by the Russians, December 10.
- 1878 Death of King Victor Emmanuel of Italy and accession of Humbert, January 9.
 “ Death of Pope Pius IX. and accession of Leo XIII., February 7.
 “ Russian victory at Philippopolis, February.
 “ Russian advance on Constantinople, February.
 “ British fleet approaches Constantinople, February.
 “ Anglo-Russian crisis, February.
 “ Russo-Turkish armistice, February.
 “ Peace of San Stefano between Russia and Turkey, March 2.
 “ Emperor William I. of Germany shot at by Hoedel, May 17.
 “ Emperor William I. wounded by Dr. Nobiling, June 2.
 “ Island of Cyprus ceded by Turkey to Great Britain, June.
 “ Congress of European Powers at Berlin, June 13–July 13.
 “ Treaty of Berlin, July 13.
 “ Austria-Hungary acquires Bosnia and Herzegovina, after a desperate struggle with the Bosnians, August and September.
 “ War with the Bannack Indians in Oregon.
 “ International Exposition at Paris.
 “ Activity of the Socialists of Germany and the Nihilists of Russia.
 “ Passage of a bill by the German Reichstag for the suppression of Socialism.
 “ War between Great Britain and Afghanistan, November and December.
- 1879 Resignation of President MacMahon of France and election of Jules Grevy as President of France, January 30.
 “ Definitive Peace of Constantinople between Russia and Turkey, February 8.
 “ War of Peru and Bolivia against Chili.
 “ War between the British and the Zulus in South Africa.
 “ Czar Alexander II. shot at by a Nihilist, April 14.
 “ Renewal of the Anglo-Afghan war, September.
 “ War with the Ute Indians of Colorado.
 “ Attempt to wreck the Czar’s train near Moscow, December.
- 1880 Dynamite explosion in the Czar’s Winter Palace, February 18.
 “ Lord Beaconsfield’s Conservative Ministry in Great Britain succeeded by a Liberal Ministry under Gladstone, April.
 “ Turkey coerced by the European Powers under Great Britain’s leadership to cede Dulcigno to Montenegro.
 “ General Gonzales elected President of Mexico, July.
 “ British defeat in Afghanistan, July 30.

- 1880** James Abram Garfield elected President of the United States, November 2.
 “ Agrarian agitation in Ireland.
 “ Chilian victories in Bolivia and Peru.
 “ Transvaal revolt against the British in South Africa, December.
- 1881** Boer victory over the British at Majuba Hill, February 27.
 “ Chili victorious over Bolivia and Peru.
 “ Inauguration of President Garfield, March 4.
 “ Assassination of the Czar Alexander II., March 13.
 “ Accession of Alexander III., March 14.
 “ Roumania made a kingdom, May 22.
 “ Russia’s war with the Turkomans.
 “ Death of Lord Beaconsfield, April 19.
 “ French seizure of Tunis, May.
 “ President Garfield shot by Charles Jules Guiteau, July 2.
 “ Passage of the Irish Land Act by the British Parliament, August.
 “ Death of President Garfield, September 19.
 “ Inauguration of President Arthur, September 20.
 “ The Yorktown Centennial, October 19.
- 1882** Servia made a Kingdom, March 6.
 “ Assassination of Lord Frederick Cavendish and Under Secretary Burke, May 6.
 “ Persecution of Russian Jews.
 “ Herzegovinian revolt against Austria-Hungary.
 “ Arabi Pasha’s rebellion against the Khedive of Egypt.
 “ Bombardment of Alexandria, Egypt, by a British fleet under Admiral Seymour, July 11–13.
 “ The Egyptian rebels under Arabi Pasha overthrown by the British under Sir Garnet Wolseley at Tel-el-Kebir, September 13.
- 1883** French war in Madagascar.
 “ French war in Tonquin.
 “ El Mahdi’s victory over the Egyptians at El Obeid, November.
 “ Hicks Pasha defeated and killed by the Egyptian rebels, December 3.
- 1884** Baker Pasha defeated by the Egyptian rebels, February 4.
 “ Sinkat taken and its garrison massacred by the Egyptian rebels, February 11.
 “ Tokar taken by the Egyptian rebels, February 21.
 “ General Graham defeats the Egyptian rebels at Teb, February 29, and at Tamanieb, March 13 and 27.
 “ Massacre of the garrisons of Shendy and Beiber by the Egyptian rebels, April 15 and May 26.
 “ France’s war with China.
 “ Capture of Keelung, China, by the French navy, August 5.
 “ Bombardment of Foochow, China, by the French navy, August 23–25.

- 1884** War between France and China, August.
- " French reoccupation of Keelung and seizure of Formosa, October.
 - " Chinese repulsed by the French at Kep, in Tonquin, October.
 - " French repulsed by the Chinese at Tamsui, Formosa, October 12.
 - " Chinese defeated by the French at Tuyen-Kwang, October 13.
 - " Passage of the Franchise Bill by the British Parliament.
 - " General Porfirio Diaz elected President of Mexico, July.
 - " Grover Cleveland elected President of the United States, November 4.
 - " Kongo Free State established in Central Africa.
 - " World's Fair at New Orleans.
- 1885** French capture the Keelung coal mines, January 25.
- " French occupied Langson, February 14.
 - " Inauguration of President Cleveland, March 4.
 - " Disastrous French defeat at Langson, March.
 - " Peace between France and China, April 3.
 - " Gladstone's resignation and Lord Salisbury's first Ministry, June 22.
 - " French in Anam attacked by Anamites, July 6.
 - " Ex-President Grant's death, July 23.
 - " Grant's funeral pageant in New York City, August 8.
 - " Eastern Roumelia's union with Bulgaria, September 18.
 - " French victory over the Anamites, October 26.
 - " Death of El Mahdi.
 - " British conquest of Burmah.
 - " Servo-Bulgarian War, October, November and December.
 - " Death of King Alfonso XII. of Spain, November 25.
 - " Accession of King Alfonso XIII. of Spain, November 26.
 - " Reëlection of President Grevy, of France, December 28.
- 1886** Gladstone's second Ministry begun, February 1.
- " Chicago Anarchist riot, May 6.
 - " Dispute between the United States and Mexico.
 - " Dispute between the United States and Canada.
 - " Gladstone's Home Rule Bill defeated, June.
 - " Lord Salisbury's second Ministry begun, July 20.
 - " Prince Alexander of Bulgaria deposed by Russia, August.
 - " Earthquake at Charleston, South Carolina, August 31.
 - " Renewal of the Irish agrarian agitation.
 - " Discovery of the Rand gold mines.
 - " Dedication of the Statue of Liberty on Bedloe's Island, October 26.
- 1887** Osman Digma defeated by the Abyssinians.
- " Italians defeated by the Abyssinians, February.
 - " Italy's annexation of Massowah.
 - " New Coercion Bill for Ireland.
 - " Jubilee Anniversary of Queen Victoria's accession, June 20.

- 1887 Prince Ferdinand of Saxe-Coburg elected Prince of Bulgaria, July 7.
- " Centennial Anniversary of the formation of the United States Constitution at Philadelphia, September 15-17.
 - " Execution of the Chicago Anarchists, November 11.
 - " Resignation of President Grevy, December 2.
 - " Sadi-Carnot elected President of France, December 3.
- 1888 Death of Emperor William I. of Germany, March 9.
- " Accession of Emperor Frederick III. in Germany, March 9.
 - " Death of Frederick III., June 15.
 - " Accession of William II., June 15.
 - " British Indian invasion of Thibet.
 - " British Indian conquest of the Black Mountain tribes.
 - " Reëlection of President Diaz in Mexico, July.
 - " Benjamin Harrison elected President of the United States, November 6.
 - " British-Egyptian victories over the Mahdists on the Upper Nile.
 - " British-Egyptian victory over the Mahdists at Suakin, December 20.
- 1889 Dispute between the United States and Germany about Samoa, January.
- " General Boulanger's election to the French National Assembly, January 26.
 - " Admission of Montana, Washington, North Dakota and South Dakota into the Union, February 22.
 - " Inauguration of President Benjamin Harrison, March 4.
 - " King Milan's abdication in Servia and accession of Alexander I., March 6.
 - " Emin Bey's victories over the Mahdists.
 - " King John of Abyssinia killed in battle with the Mahdists at Metemneh, March 10.
 - " Persecution of General Boulanger, April.
 - " Centennial Anniversary of President Washington's inauguration in New York City, April 30.
 - " Johnstown calamity, May 31.
 - " Overwhelming Republican victory in the French elections, September 22.
 - " Overthrow of the Emperor Dom Pedro II. and establishment of the Brazilian Republic, November.
 - " International Exposition in Paris.
 - " Pan-American Congress at Washington.
 - " British-Portuguese dispute.
- 1890 Bismarck's retirement and General von Caprivi as Chancellor, March.
- " French war in Dahomey.
 - " French victories over rebels in Tonquin, April.
 - " Renewal of the persecution of Russian Jews.
 - " Partition of Africa.
 - " British cession of Heligoland to Germany.
 - " Passage of the McKinley Tariff Act by the United States Congress.

- 1890** Passage of the Sherman Silver Act by the United States Congress.
- " Admission of Idaho and Wyoming into the Union.
 - " Liberal rising in the Swiss canton of Ticino, September 11.
 - " Major Panitza's conspiracy in Bulgaria.
 - " Manipur revolt in British India, September 21.
 - " Death of William III., King of Holland, and accession of Queen Wilhelmina, November 23.
 - " War with the Sioux Indians in Nebraska and South Dakota, December.
 - " Sitting Bull shot dead by Indian police, December 15.
- 1891** Subjugation of the Sioux, January.
- " Civil war in Chili begun, January.
 - " Egyptian victory over the Dervishes at Suakin, January 27.
 - " Egyptian capture of Handoub, January 28.
 - " Egyptian capture of Tokar and defeat of the Dervishes, February 19.
 - " New Orleans lynching trouble between the United States and Italy.
 - " Valparaiso incident difficulty between the United States and Chili.
 - " Alaskan seal fisheries dispute between the United States and Great Britain.
 - " Ex-Queen Natalie's expulsion from Servia, May.
 - " Switzerland's six hundredth anniversary, August 12.
 - " Overthrow and suicide of President Balmaceda in Chili, September.
 - " British suppression of the Manipur revolt in India, September 13.
 - " Death of ex-President Grevy, September 9.
 - " Suicide of General Boulanger, September 30.
 - " Death of Charles Stewart Parnell, October 7.
 - " British expansion in South Africa.
 - " Famine in Russia.
 - " Republican revolt at Oporto, Portugal, crushed.
 - " Portuguese troubles in Mozambique and Guinea.
 - " Revolt against the Portuguese in Goa, India.
 - " Anarchist outrages in Spain.
 - " Franco-Russian Alliance.
 - " Civil war in Brazil, November and December.
- 1892** Reëlection of President Porfirio Diaz in Mexico, July.
- " Strike at Homestead, Pa., July.
 - " Anarchist outrages in Paris.
 - " Republican centennial in Paris, September 22.
 - " Gladstone's fourth Ministry begun, August 18.
 - " World's Fair at Madrid in honor of Columbus.
 - " Cleveland's second election as President, November 8.
 - " Panama Canal scandal and investigation in Paris, December.
- 1893** Trial and imprisonment of the Panama Canal directors.
- " Monarchy overthrown and a republic established in Hawaii, January 19.
 - " President Cleveland's second inauguration, March 4.

- 1893 King Alexander's coup d'etat in Servia, April 13.
 " World's Columbian Exposition at Chicago, May 1–October 30.
 " Seal fisheries arbitration between the United States and Great Britain decided, August 15.
 " Anti-silver coinage in British India.
 " Manchester Ship Canal finished, June 1.
 " Matabele revolt against the British in South Africa.
 " Gladstone's Second Home Rule Bill rejected by the House of Lords, September 22.
 " Financial panic and business depression in the United States.
 " Repeal of the Sherman Silver Act.
 " France's quarrel with Siam, July.
 " Final overthrow of the Boulangist war party in France.
 " Continued Anarchist outrages in Spain.
 " Vaillant's bomb in the Chamber of Deputies, December 9.
 " Other Anarchist outrages in Paris.
 " Revolt under Admirals de Mello and da Gama in Brazil.
- 1894 Admiral Benham's bold action in Brazil, January.
 " Siam's cession of territory to France, January.
 " Gladstone's retirement and Lord Rosebery's succession, March.
 " Dispensary troubles in South Carolina, April.
 " Assassination of President Sadi-Carnot, June 24.
 " Casimir-Perier elected President of France, June 27.
 " Great railway strike at Chicago, July.
 " Passage of the Wilson Tariff Act by the United States Congress, August.
 " Admission of Utah.
 " General von Caprivi succeeded by Prince Hohenlohe as Chancellor of Germany, October 26.
 " Death of the Czar Alexander III., November 1.
 " Accession of the Czar Nicholas II., November 2.
 " Turkish massacres in Armenia.
 " Spain's dispute with Morocco.
 " World's Fair at Antwerp, Belgium.
 " Frontier troubles in the North-west of British India.
- 1895 British occupation of Wazaristan and Chitral.
 " Philippine and Cuban rebellions against Spain.
 " Italian victory over the Abyssinians near Antola, January 13, 14.
 " Resignation of President Casimir-Perier, January 16.
 " Felix Faure elected President of France, January 18.
 " Italian victory at Senafa and capture of Adigrat, March 25.
 " Alliance trouble between Spain and the United States, March.
 " Continued Turkish massacres in Armenia.
 " Kongo Free State annexed to Belgium.

- 1895 Opening of the North Sea and Baltic Canal, June.
- " Lord Salisbury's third Ministry begun, June.
 - " Assassination of M. Stamboloff in Bulgaria, July 15.
 - " Coup d'etat of the Crown Prince of Greece.
 - " Cotton States Exposition at Atlanta, September 18–December 18.
 - " French war in Senegambia.
 - " French war in Madagascar.
 - " French capture of Antananarivo, October 21.
 - " French protectorate over Madagascar, October 21.
 - " Pamir delimitation agreement between Great Britain, Afghanistan, Russia and China.
 - " Great Italian defeat by the Abyssinians, December.
 - " President Cleveland's warlike message on the British-Venezuelan boundary dispute, December 17.
 - " Dr. Jameson's raid into the Transvaal, December.
- 1896 Defeat of the Jameson raiders by the Boers, January.
- " Great Italian defeat by the Abyssinians near Adown, March 1.
 - " French annexation of Madagascar.
 - " British-Ashantee war.
 - " British-Egyptian victories under General Kitchener over the Dervishes.
 - " Matabele and Mashona revolt against the British suppressed.
 - " The usurper in Zanzibar overthrown by a British squadron.
 - " Queen Victoria's Diamond Jubilee, June.
 - " British wars in Chitral and Afghanistan.
 - " Massacre of Armenians in Constantinople, September 6.
 - " Peace between Italy and Abyssinia, October 26.
 - " Hungary's millennial anniversary.
 - " William McKinley elected President of the United States, November 3.
- 1897 Inauguration of President McKinley, March 4.
- " Græco-Turkish War, March, April and May.
 - " Passage of the Dingley Tariff Act by the United States Congress.
 - " British wars in West Africa.
 - " Assassination of Canovas del Castillo, Prime Minister of Spain, August 8.
 - " Germany's acquisition of Kiao-Chau Bay in China.
 - " Russia's acquisition of Port Arthur and Talienwan, China.
- 1898 Greater New York organized, January 1.
- " Destruction of the American battleship *Maine* in Havana harbor, February 15.
 - " Opening of the Spanish-American War, April 21.
 - " American blockade of the Cuban coast, April 22.
 - " Bombardment of Matanzas, April 27.
 - " Naval battle of Manila Bay, May 1.
 - " American invasion of Cuba, May.

1898 Fight at Cardenas, May 11.

- “ Fight at Cuenfuegos, May 11.
- “ Bombardment of San Juan, Porto Rico, May 12.
- “ Gladstone's death, May 19.
- “ Bombardment of Santiago harbor forts, May 31.
- “ Hobson's bold exploit, June 3.
- “ Renewed bombardment of Santiago harbor forts, June 7.
- “ Skirmish at Guantanamo, June 10.
- “ General Shafter's invasion of Cuba, June 22-24.
- “ Battle of La Quisanas, June 24.
- “ Land battle of Santiago, July 1-3.
- “ Naval battle of Santiago harbor, July 3.
- “ Surrender of Santiago, July 14.
- “ American occupation of Santiago, July 17.
- “ Capture of Nipe, July 21.
- “ Bismarck's death, July 30.
- “ American conquest of Porto Rico, July and August.
- “ American invasion of the Philippines, May-August.
- “ Spanish repulse at Manila, July 31.
- “ Peace protocol signed at Washington, August 12.
- “ Annexation of Hawaii to the United States, August 12.
- “ Capture of Manila, August 13.
- “ British-Egyptian victory by General Kitchener over the Khalifa at Omdurman, September 2.
- “ Assassination of the Empress Elizabeth of Austria, September 4.
- “ Anglo-French dispute over the Fashoda incident, October-December.
- “ Chippewa Indian rising in Minnesota, October.
- “ The case of Captain Dreyfus agitated in France.
- “ Definitive Peace of Paris between Spain and the United States, December 10.

1899 Spanish retirement from Cuba, January 1.

- “ Filipino rising against the Americans, February 4.
- “ Three days' battle at Manila, February 4-6.
- “ Bombardment and capture of Iloilo, February 11.
- “ Death of President Faure of France, February 16.
- “ Emile Loubet elected President of France, February 17.
- “ Burning of Manila, February 22.
- “ Capture of Malolos, March 31.
- “ British and American bombardment of Samoan villages, March and April.
- “ Capture of Calumpit, in the Philippines, April 27.
- “ Capture of San Fernando, May 5.
- “ Bloemfontein Conference for the settlement of the British-Boer dispute, May.

- 1899** General Lawton's victories in the Philippines, June.
- " Plot against King Alexander of Servia.
 - " Disarmament proposal of the Czar Nicholas II.
 - " The Hague Peace Conference.
 - " Russification of Finland.
 - " Reopening of the Dreyfus case.
 - " Second trial and conviction of Captain Dreyfus.
 - " Boer ultimatum and opening of the British-Boer War, October 9-11.
 - " Boer invasion of Cape Colony and Natal, October 11.
 - " Battle of Glencoe, October 20.
 - " Battle of Elandslaagte, October 21.
 - " Sieges of Kimberley, Mafeking and Ladysmith.
 - " Battle of San Jacinto, in the Philippines, November 4.
 - " Battle of Belmont, South Africa, November 22, 23.
 - " Battle of Graspan, November 25.
 - " Battle of the Modder River, November 28.
 - " Final overthrow of the Khalifa at Gedid by the British, November 29.
 - " Battle of Stormberg Junction, December 10.
 - " Battle of Magersfontein, December 11.
 - " Battle of Colenso, December 15.
 - " Death of General Lawton in the Philippines, December 19.
- 1900** Battles of Colesburg and Sunnyside, South Africa, January 1.
- " Generals Wheaton's and Schwan's successes, January.
 - " Beginning of Guerrilla warfare in the Philippines January.
 - " Boer repulse at Ladysmith, January 6.
 - " British repulse at Spion Kop, January 23, 24.
 - " British repulse at Vaal Krantz, February 5-8.
 - " Relief of Kimberley, February 14.
 - " Battles around Paardeburg, February 18-27.
 - " Conje's surrender to Lord Roberts, February 27.
 - " Capture of Pieter's Hill, February 27.
 - " Relief of Ladysmith, February 28.
 - " Capture of Bloemfontein, March 13.
 - " Siege and relief of Wepener, March and April.
 - " Relief of Mafeking, May 17.
 - " Occupation of Johannesburg by Lord Roberts, May 31.
 - " Occupation of Pretoria by Lord Roberts, June 5.
 - " Boer guerrilla warfare begun, June 15.
 - " Fifth British-Ashantee war.
 - " Boxer outbreak in China and siege of the foreign legations at Peking, June-August.
 - " Murder of Baron von Ketteler, Germany's Minister in Peking, June 20.
 - " German expedition to China.

- 1900** Assassination of King Humbert of Italy, July 29.
- “ Accession of Victor Emmanuel III. as King of Italy, July 30.
 - “ International Exposition at Paris.
 - “ Rescue of the besieged legations by the forces of Great Britain, France, Russian, Japan and the United States, August 14.
 - “ Commonwealth of Australia established.
 - “ British Ministry sustained by the Parliamentary elections, September.
 - “ Russian occupation of Manchuria.
 - “ Prince Hohenlohe succeeded as German Chancellor by Count von Bülow, October.
 - “ Reëlection of President McKinley, November 6.
- 1901** Death of Queen Victoria, January 22.
- “ Accession of Edward VII. as King of Great Britain and Ireland and Emperor of India, January 23.
 - “ Queen Victoria’s funeral, February 2.
 - “ President McKinley’s inauguration, March 4.
 - “ Capture of Aguinaldo, March 23.
 - “ Death of the Dowager Empress Victoria of Germany, August 6.
 - “ Pan-American Exposition at Buffalo, May–October.
 - “ Bellarmino’s surrender, July 4.
 - “ President McKinley shot by Leon Czolgosz, September 6.
 - “ Death of President McKinley, September 14.
 - “ Vice President Roosevelt sworn in as President, September 14.
 - “ Pan-American Congress in the city of Mexico.
 - “ British war with the Mad Mullah of Somaliland.
 - “ Outbreaks in Russian cities.
 - “ Finland’s extinction.
 - “ Servia’s new constitution.
- 1902** Students’ riots in Moscow and St. Petersburg.
- “ Malvar’s surrender, April 16.
 - “ Moro revolt.
 - “ Pacification of the Philippines.
 - “ Exposition at Charleston, South Carolina.
 - “ Cuban Republic established, May 20.
 - “ Volcanic eruptions in the island of Martinique, May.
 - “ Coronation of King Alfonso XIII. of Spain, May 17.
 - “ Isthmian Canal Bill passed by the United States Congress, June.
 - “ Arbitrary rule of King Alexander of Servia.
 - “ Anti-Turkish revolts in Macedonia and Albania, July.
 - “ Lord Salisbury’s retirement and Balfour’s succession, July 13.
 - “ Fall of the Campanile at Venice, July 14.
 - “ British victories over the Mad Mullah of Somaliland.
 - “ Anthracite coal strike in Pennsylvania.

- 1903** Usurpation of King Alexander of Servia.
 “ Assassination of King Alexander and Queen Draga of Servia, June 11.
 “ Death of Pope Leo XIII., July 20.
 “ Election of Pope Pius X., August 4.
- 1904** Russo-Japanese War begun, February 8.
 “ Louisiana Purchase Exposition at St. Louis, April 30-September.
 “ Battle near Port Arthur, July.
 “ British Indian occupation of Lassa, Thibet, August.
 “ Reëlection of President Roosevelt, November 8.
 “ German war in South-west Africa.
- 1905** Fall of Port Arthur, January 2.
 “ President Roosevelt’s second inauguration, March 4.
 “ Great Japanese naval victory in the China Sea, May 27, 28.
 “ Dissolution of the union of Sweden and Norway, June 7.
 “ Peace of Portsmouth, September 5.
 “ Prince Charles of Denmark elected King of Norway as Hakon VII., November.
- 1906** Christian IX. of Denmark died; succeeded by Frederick VIII., January.
 “ San Francisco wrecked by an earthquake, April 18.
 “ Election Disputes in Cuba; United States assumed control, September.
 “ First parliament of Persia opened, September 12.
- 1907** Church and State Separation Law promulgated in France, January.
 “ Emperor of Korea abdicated, July 19.
- 1908** Carlos of Portugal assassinated; succeeded by Manuel II., February.
 “ Constitution of 1876 restored in Turkey and parliament granted, July 24.
 “ William H. Taft elected President of the United States, November 3.
 “ Pu-Yi became Emperor of China under name of Hsuan Tung in December.
- 1909** Commander Robert E. Peary, of the United States Navy, discovered the North Pole, April 6.
 “ Revolution in Turkey in April. Sultan Abdul Hamid deposed. Mehmed V. succeeded.
 “ Albert I. became King of Belgium upon death of King Leopold, December 23.
- 1910** Death of Edward VII., King of Great Britain and Ireland, May 6.
 “ George V. succeeded.
 “ Federation of British Colonies in South Africa proclaimed May 31.
- 1911** Arizona and New Mexico admitted to statehood in August.
 “ Roald Amundsen discovered South Pole in December.
 “ Revolution in China in September.
- 1912** Abdication of Chinese Emperor, Pu Yi, and Manchu dynasty ended February.
 “ Woman suffrage granted in China March 20.
 “ Chinese Republic declared March 29.

- 1912 Frederick VIII., King of Denmark, died May 14. Succeeded by Christian X.
- " Mutsuhito, Emperor of Japan, died July 30. Prince Yoshihito succeeded.
- " Balkan War began October 8.
- " Woodrow Wilson elected President United States, November 5.
- 1913 Parcel Post began in United States, January 1.
- " Peace treaty signed by Turkey and Balkan nations, August 10.
- " Underwood-Simmons Tariff Bill went into effect in United States, October.
- " Panama Canal completed at cost of \$375,000,000, November 17.
- " Currency Bill passed in United States, December.

SOVEREIGNS AND RULERS OF MODERN NATIONS.

THE POPES.

A. D.

- 42 St. Peter (crucified).
 66 St. Clement I.
 78 St. Cletus (martyred).
 91 St. Clement II. (abdicated).
 100 St. Evaristus (martyred).
 109 St. Alexander I. (martyred).
 119 St. Sixtus I. (martyred).
 127 St. Telesphorus (martyred).
 139 St. Hyginus.
 142 St. Pius I. (martyred).
 157 St. Anicetus.
 168 St. Soterus (martyred).
 177 St. Eleutherius.
 193 St. Victor I. (martyred).
 202 St. Zephyrinus.
 219 St. Calixtus I. (martyred).
 222 A Vacancy.
 223 St. Urban I. (beheaded).
 230 St. Pontianus (banished).
 235 St. Anterus (martyred).
 236 St. Fabian (martyred).
 250 A Vacancy.
 251 St. Cornelius.
 252 St. Lucius I. (martyred).
 253 St. Stephen I. (martyred).
 257 St. Sixtus II. (martyred).
 258 A Vacancy.
 259 St. Dionysius.
 269 St. Felix I. (died in prison).
 275 St. Eutychianus.
 283 St. Caius.
 296 St. Marcellinus.
 304 A Vacancy.
 308 St. Marcellus (banished).
 310 St. Eusebius.
 311 St. Milchiades.
 314 St. Sylvester I.

A. D.

- 336 St. Marcus.
 337 St. Julius I.
 352 Liberius (banished).
 355 Felix II., anti-pope.
 358 Liberius restored.
 358 Felix II. again.
 359 Liberius again (martyred).
 366 St. Damasus I.
 367 Ursinus (banished).
 384 Siricius.
 398 St. Anastasius I.
 402 St. Innocent I.
 417 St. Zozimus.
 418 St. Boniface I.
 422 St. Celestine.
 432 Sixtus III.
 440 St. Leo I. the Great.
 461 St. Hilary.
 468 St. Simplicius.
 483 St. Felix III.
 492 St. Gelasius I.
 496 St. Athanasius II.
 498 Symmachus.
 498 Laurentius, anti-pope.
 514 Hormisdas.
 523 John I.
 526 Felix IV.
 530 Boniface II.
 533 John II.
 535 Agapetus I.
 536 St. Silverius (banished).
 537 Vigilius.
 555 Pelagius I.
 560 John III.
 573 A Vacancy.
 574 Benedict I.
 578 Pelagius II.

- 890 St. Gregory I. the Great.
904 Sabinianus.
906 Boniface III.
907 Boniface IV.
914 St. Deusdedit.
917 Boniface V.
925 Honorius I.
939 A Vacancy.
940 Severinus.
940 John IV.
942 Theodorus I.
949 Martin I.
954 Eugenius I.
957 Vitalianus.
979 Adeodatus.
976 Domnus I.
978 St. Agathon.
982 St. Leo II.
983 A Vacancy.
984 Benedict II.
985 John V.
986 Conon.
987 Sergius I.
701 John VI.
705 John VII.
708 Sisinnius.
708 Constantine.
715 St. Gregory II.
731 Gregory III.
741 St. Zacharias.
752 Stephen II. (beginning of Pope's temporal power).
757 Paul I.
768 Stephen III.
772 Adrian I.
795 Leo III. (crowned Charlemagne).
816 Stephen IV.
817 Pascal I.
824 Eugenius II.
827 Valentine.
828 Gregory IV.
844 Sergius II.
847 Leo IV.
855 Benedict III.
855 Athanasius, anti-pope.
858 Nicholas I. the Great.
867 Adrian II.
872 John VIII.
892 Martin II.
894 Adrian III.
895 Stephen V.
891 Formosus (detested, corpse cast into Tiber).
896 Boniface VI. (deposed).
897 Stephen VI. (strangled in prison).
897 Romanus, anti-pope.
898 Theodore II.
898 John IX.
900 Benedict IV.
903 Leo V. (died in prison).
903 Christopher.
904 Sergius III. (immoral).
911 Anastasius III.
913 Landonius, or Lando.
914 John X. (stified to death).
928 Leo VI.
929 Stephen VII.
931 John XI. (died a prisoner in St. Angelo Castle).
936 Leo VII. (zealous and pious).
939 Stephen VIII. (of fierce character).
942 Martin III.
946 Agapetus II. (of holy life).
956 John XII. (infamous, murdered).
963 Leo VIII.
964 Benedict V.
965 John XIII.
972 Benedict VI. (murdered in prison).
974 Domnus II.
974 Boniface VII.
975 Benedict VII.
983 John XIV.
984 John XV.
985 John XVI.
996 Gregory V.
999 Sylvester II.
1003 John XVII.
1003 John XVIII. (abdicated).
1009 Sergius IV.
1012 Benedict VIII.
1024 John XIX. (bought papacy).
1033 Benedict IX. (Pope at 12 years, deposed).
1044 Gregory VI. (abdicated).
1046 Clement II.
1047 Benedict IX. restored.
1048 Damasus II.
1048 St. Leo IX.
1054 A Vacancy.
1055 Victor II.
1057 Stephen IX.
1058 Benedict X.
1058 Nicholas II.
1061 Alexander II.
1073 Gregory VII. (Hildebrand)—ablest Pope.
1085 A Vacancy.
1086 Victor III.
1088 Urban II.
1099 Pascal II.
1118 Gelasius II. (became a monk).
1119 Calixtus II.
1124 Honorius II.
1130 Innocent II.

- 1138 Victor III., (Anacletus II. anti-pope).
 1143 Celestine II.
 1144 Lucius II.
 1145 Eugenius III.
 1163 Anastasius IV.
 1184 Adrian IV. (Nicholas Breakspeare, an Englishman).
 1189 Alexander III.
 1181 Lucius III.
 1185 Urban III.
 1187 Gregory VIII.
 1187 Clement III.
 1191 Celestine III.
 1198 Innocent III. (able Pope).
 1216 Honorius III.
 1227 Gregory IX.
 1241 Celestine IV.
 1241 A Vacancy.
 1243 Innocent IV.
 1254 Alexander IV.
 1261 Urban IV.
 1265 Clement IV.
 1268 A Vacancy.
 1271 Gregory X.
 1276 Innocent V.
 1276 Adrian V.
 1276 Vicedominus (died next day).
 1276 John XX. or XXI.
 1277 Nicholas III.
 1281 Martin IV.
 1285 Honorius IV.
 1288 Nicholas IV.
 1292 A Vacancy.
 1294 St. Celestine V. (resigned).
 1294 Boniface VIII. (able Pope).
 1303 Benedict XI. (poisoned).
 1304 A Vacancy.
 1305 Clement V. (first Pope at Avignon).
 1314 A Vacancy.
 1316 John XXII.
 1334 Benedict XII. (Nicholas V. anti-pope at Rome).
 1342 Clement VI.
 1352 Innocent VI.
 1362 Urban V.
 1370 Gregory XI. (restores papal residence to Rome).
 1378 Urban VI. (His severity caused Robert of Geneva to be elected as Clement VII).
 1378 Clement VII., anti-pope.
 1389 Boniface IX.
 1394 Benedict XIII. (anti-pope at Avignon).
 1404 Innocent VII.
 1406 Gregory XII., anti-pope.
 1409 Alexander V. (poisoned).
 1410 John XXIII. (deposed).
 1417 Martin V.
 1424 Clement VIII. (resigned 1429).
 1431 Eugenius IV. (deposed by Council of Basle).
 1439 Felix V., anti-pope (resigned in 1440).
 1447 Nicholas V.
 1455 Calixtus III.
 1458 Pius II. (Æneas Silvius).
 1464 Paul II.
 1471 Sixtus IV.
 1484 Innocent VIII.
 1492 Alexander VI. (worst of Popes).
 1503 Pius III.
 1503 Julius II. (warlike Pope).
 1513 Leo X. (John de Medici).
 1522 Adrian VI.
 1523 Clement VII. (Julius de Medici).
 1534 Paul III.
 1550 Julius III.
 1555 Marcellus II.
 1555 Paul IV.
 1559 Pius IV. (Cardinal de Medici).
 1566 St. Pius V.
 1572 Gregory XIII. (reformed calendar).
 1585 Sixtus V. (able ruler).
 1590 Urban VII. (died in 12 days).
 1590 Gregory XIV.
 1591 Innocent IX.
 1592 Clement VIII.
 1605 Leo XI.
 1605 Paul V.
 1621 Gregory XV.
 1623 Urban VIII.
 1644 Innocent X.
 1655 Alexander VII.
 1667 Clement IX.
 1670 Clement X.
 1676 Innocent XI.
 1689 Alexander VIII.
 1691 Innocent XII.
 1700 Clement XI.
 1721 Innocent XIII.
 1724 Benedict XIII.
 1730 Clement XII.
 1740 Benedict XIV.
 1758 Clement XIII.
 1769 Clement XIV.
 1775 Pius VI.
 1800 Pius VII.
 1823 Leo XII.
 1829 Pius VIII.
 1831 Gregory XVI.
 1846 Pius IX.
 1878 Leo XIII.
 1903 Pius X.

KINGS AND QUEENS OF ENGLAND.

Anglo-Saxon Kings.

A. D.

- 827 Egbert.
- 838 Ethelwolf.
- 857 Ethelbald.
- 860 Ethelbert.
- 866 Ethelred I.
- 871 Alfred the Great.
- 901 Edward the Elder.
- 925 Athelstan.
- 940 Edmund I.
- 946 Edred.
- 955 Edwy.
- 959 Edgar.
- 975 Edward the Martyr.
- 978 Ethelred II.
- 1016 Edmund Ironside.

Danish Kings.

- 1017 Canute the Great (of Denmark).
- 1036 Harold Harefoot.
- 1039 Hardicanute (of Denmark).

Saxon Kings.

- 1041 Edward the Confessor.
- 1066 Harold.

Norman Kings.

- 1066 William the Conqueror (Duke of Normandy).
- 1067 William Rufus.
- 1100 Henry I. (Beauclerc).
- 1135 Stephen (Count of Blois).

} Dukes of Normandy.

The Plantagenets.

- 1154 Henry II. (Earl of Anjou).
- 1189 Richard the Lion-hearted.
- 1199 John.
- 1216 Henry III.
- 1272 Edward I.

} Dukes of Normandy.

A. D.

- 1307 Edward II.
- 1327 Edward III.
- 1377 Richard II.
- 1399 Henry IV.
- 1413 Henry V.
- 1422 Henry VI.
- 1461 Edward IV.
- 1483 Edward V.
- 1483 Richard III.

} House of Lancaster.

} House of York.

The Tudors.

- 1485 Henry VII.
- 1509 Henry VIII.
- 1547 Edward VI.
- 1553 Mary I.
- 1558 Elizabeth.

The Stuarts.—Kings of England and Scotland.

- 1603 James I. (James VI. of Scotland).
- 1625 Charles I. (beheaded 1649).
- 1649 The Commonwealth (Oliver Cromwell, Lord Protector, 1653; Richard Cromwell, 1658).
- 1660 Charles II.
- 1685 James II. (James VII. of Scotland), deposed 1688.
- 1689 William III. and Mary II. (William of Orange, Stadtholder of the Dutch Republic).
- 1702 Anne (England and Scotland united in 1707).

House of Brunswick.—Kings of Great Britain.

- 1714 George I.
- 1727 George II.
- 1760 George III.
- 1820 George IV.
- 1830 William IV.
- 1837 Victoria. ("Empress of India").
- 1901 Edward VII. ("Emperor of India").
- 1910 George V.

} Electors of Hanover.

} Kings of Hanover.

KINGS AND QUEENS OF SCOTLAND.

Dynasty of Kenneth.

A. D.

- 843 Kenneth MacAlpine (first King of all Scotland).
- 854 Donald V.
- 858 Constantine II.
- 874 Ethus.
- 876 Gregory the Great.
- 883 Donald VI.

A. D.

- 904 Constantine III.
- 944 Malcolm I.
- 953 Induff.
- 961 Duff.
- 965 Cullen.
- 970 Kenneth III.
- 994 Constantine IV.
- 995 Kenneth the Grim.

1008 Malcolm II.
 1038 Duncan I.
 1039 Macbeth.
 1057 Malcolm III., Canmore.
 1093 Donald VII., or Donald Bane (deposed).
 1094 Duncan II.
 1094 Donald VII. (restored and deposed).
 1098 Edgar.
 1107 Alexander I., the Fierce.
 1124 David I.
 1153 Malcolm IV.
 1165 William the Lion.
 1214 Alexander II.
 1249 Alexander III.
 1285 Margaret (the "Maid of Norway").

Houses of Baliol and Bruce.

1292 John Baliol (deposed by Edward I. of England).
 1296 Edward I. of England.
 1306 Robert Bruce.
 1329 David Bruce (driven away).

1323 Edward Baliol.
 1342 David Bruce restored.

House of Stuart.

1371 Robert II.
 1390 Robert III.
 1406 An Interregnum.
 1424 James I. (murdered).
 1437 James II.
 1460 James III. (murdered).
 1488 James IV. (killed at Flodden).
 1513 James V.
 1542 Mary (beheaded in England in 1587).
 1567 James VI. (became James I. of England in 1603).
 1625 Charles I. (also King of England, beheaded in 1649).
 1649 Under Commonwealth of England.
 1660 Charles II. (also King of England).
 1685 James II (James II. of England, deposed in 1689).
 1689 William and Mary.
 1702 Anne.
 1707 Union of Scotland and England.

KINGS, EMPERORS AND PRESIDENTS OF FRANCE.

Merovingian Kings.

A. D.
 481 Clovis.
 511 Childbert I. }
 Clodimir. } Kingdom Divided.
 Thierry I. }
 Clotaire I. }
 534 Theodebert I.
 548 Theodebald.
 558 Clotaire I. sole king.
 561 Charibert. }
 Gontram. } Kingdom Divided.
 Sigebert I. }
 Chilperic I. }
 575 Childbert II.
 584 Clotaire II.
 596 Thierry II. }
 Theodebert II. } Jointly.
 613 Clotaire II. sole king.
 628 Dagobert I., the Great.
 638 Clovis II. }
 Sigebert II. } Jointly.
 656 Clotaire III.
 670 Childeric II.
 670 Thierry III.
 674 Dagobert II.
 691 Clovis III. }
 695 Childbert III., } Pepin d'Heristal,
 the Just. } Mayor of the
 Palace.

A. D.

711 Dagobert III.
 715 Chilperic II. }
 (deposed). } Charles Martel,
 717 Clotaire IV. } Mayor of the
 720 Chilperic II. } Palace.
 restored. }
 720 Thierry IV.
 737 An Interregnum.
 742 Childeric III., the Stupid, (deposed in
 751 by Pepin the Little, son of
 Charles Martel).

Carlovingian Kings.

751 Pepin the Little (son of Charles Martel).
 768 Charlemagne, or Charles the Great (and Carloman until 771).
 814 Louis le Debonnaire.
 840 Charles the Bald.
 877 Louis II., the Stammerer.
 879 Louis III. and Carloman II.
 884 Charles III. (usurper).
 887 Hugh, or Eudes, Count of Paris.
 898 Charles the Simple.
 922 Robert.
 923 Raoul, or Rudolf.
 936 Louis IV., d'Outremer.
 954 Lothaire.

986 Louis V., the Sluggard (deposed in 987 by Hugh Capet).

House of Capet.

987 Hugh Capet.
997 Robert the Pious.
1031 Henry I.
1060 Philip I.
1108 Louis VI., the Fat.
1137 Louis VII.
1180 Philip Augustus.
1223 Louis VIII., the Lion.
1226 Louis IX., or St. Louis.
1270 Philip the Hardy.
1285 Philip the Fair.
1314 Louis X.
1316 Philip the Tall.
1321 Charles the Fair.

House of Valois.

1328 Philip of Valois.
1350 John the Good.
1364 Charles V., the Wise.
1380 Charles VI.
1422 Charles VII., the Victorious.
1461 Louis XI.
1483 Charles VIII., the Affable and Courteous.
1498 Louis XII., the Father of his People.
1515 Francis I.
1547 Henry II.
1559 Francis II.
1560 Charles IX.
1574 Henry III.

House of Bourbon.

1589 Henry IV. (Henry III. of Navarre).
1610 Louis XIII.

1643 Louis XIV.

1715 Louis XV.

1774 Louis XVI. (beheaded 1793).

The First Republic.

1792 National Convention.
1795 Directory.
1799 Napoleon Bonaparte, First Consul.

The First Empire.

1804 Napoleon I. (Bonaparte).
The First Bourbon Restoration.
1814 Louis XVIII.

The Hundred Days.

1815 Napoleon I. restored.

The Second Bourbon Restoration.

1815 Louis XVIII. restored.
1824 Charles X.

House of Orleans.

1830 Louis Philippe.

Second Republic.

1848 Louis Napoleon Bonaparte, President.

Second Empire.

1852 Napoleon III. (Louis Napoleon).

Third Republic.

1870 Provisional Government.
1871 Louis Adolphe Thiers, President.
1873 Maurice MacMahon, President.
1879 Jules Grevy, President.
1888 Sadi Carnot, President.
1894 Casimir Perier, President.
1895 Felix Faure, President.
1899 Emile Loubet, President.
1906 M. Fallieres, President.
1913 Raymond Poincaré, President.

GERMAN KINGS AND EMPERORS.

Carlovingians.

A. D.
800 Charlemagne.
814 Louis le Debonnaire.
840 Lothaire.
855 Louis the German.
875 Charles the Bald (King of France).
877 An Interregnum.
880 Charles the Fat (deposed).
887 Arnulf.
898 Louis the Blind.
898 Louis the Child (deposed).

House of Franconia.

911 Conrad I.

House of Saxony.

919 Henry the Fowler.

A. D.

936 Otho the Great.
973 Otho II.
983 Otho III.
1002 Henry II., the Saint (of Bavaria).

House of Franconia.

1024 Conrad II.
1039 Henry III.
1056 Henry IV.
1106 Henry V.

House of Saxony.

1125 Lothaire.

The Hohenstaufen.

1138 Conrad III.
1152 Frederick Barbarossa.

- 1190 Henry VI.
 1197 Otho IV. and Phillip of Swabia.
 1218 Frederick II.
 1260 An Interregnum of 23 years.

Different Dynasties.

- 1273 Rudolf of Hapsburg.
 1291 Adolf of Nassau.
 1298 Albert I. of Austria (Hapsburg).
 1308 Henry VII. (of the House of Luxemburg).
 1313 Louis of Bavaria and Frederick the Fair of Austria.
 1330 Louis of Bavaria alone.
 1347 Charles IV. } Kings of Bohemia.
 1378 Wenceslas. }
 1400 Rupert of the Palatinate.
 1410 Sigismund (King of Hungary and Bohemia).

Austrian House of Hapsburg.

- 1438 Albert II., of Austria.
 1440 Frederick III.
 1493 Maximilian I. (first Archduke of Austria).
 1519 Charles V. (Charles I. of Spain).

- 1556 Ferdinand I.
 1564 Maximilian II.
 1576 Rudolf II.
 1619 Matthias.
 1619 Ferdinand II.
 1637 Ferdinand III.
 1657 Leopold I.
 1705 Joseph I.
 1711 Charles VI.
 1740 An Interregnum.

Archdukes of Austria, and Kings of Hungary and Bohemia.

House of Bavaria.

- 1741 Charles VII.

Austrian House of Hapsburg-Lorraine.

- 1745 Francis I.
 1765 Joseph II. } Kings of Hungary and Bohemia.
 1790 Leopold II. }
 1792 Francis II. (until 1806). }
 1806 Confederation of the Rhine.
 1815 Germanic Confederation.
 1867 North German Confederation.

House of Hohenzollern.

- 1871 William I. }
 1888 Frederick. } Kings of Prussia.
 1888 William II. }

DUKES, ARCHDUKES AND EMPERORS OF AUSTRIA.

Margraves of Austria.

- A. D.
 928 Leopold I., the Illustrious.
 973 Henry I., the Rebel.
 1018 Albert I., the Victorious.
 1056 Ernest the Valiant.
 1075 Leopold II., the Beautiful.
 1096 Leopold III.
 1136 Albert II.
 1136 Leopold IV., the Saint.
 1140 Leopold V., the Liberal.
 1142 Henry II.

Dukes of Austria.

- 1156 Henry II. (as Duke).
 1177 Leopold VI., the Virtuous.
 1194 Frederick I., the Catholic.
 1198 Leopold VII., the Glorious.
 1230 Frederick II., the Warlike.
 1246 An Interregnum.

Austrian Dukes—House of Hapsburg.

- 1278 Rudolf I. (of Hapsburg).
 1282 Albert I.
 1305 Rudolf II.
 1308 Frederick III., the Fair, and Leopold I.
 1336 Frederick III. alone.

- A. D.
 1330 Albert II. the Wise, and Otho.
 1339 Albert II. alone.
 1358 Rudolf III.
 1366 Albert III. and Leopold III.
 1386 An Interregnum.
 1395 William I. and his brothers and cousin Albert IV., the Wonder.
 1411 Albert V., the Severe.
 1437 Albert VI. (Emperor Albert II. of Germany).
 1439 Ladislas.
 1467 Frederick IV. (Frederick III. of Germany), and Albert VI.

Austrian Archdukes—House of Hapsburg.

- 1493 Maximilian I. (German Emperor).
 1519 Charles I. (Emperor Charles V. of Germany).
 1521 Ferdinand I. } Emperors of Germany.
 1564 Maximilian II. } many.
 1576 Rudolf I. (Emperor Rudolf II).
 1606 Matthias. }
 1619 Ferdinand II. } Emperors of Germany.
 1637 Ferdinand III. }
 1657 Leopold I. }
 1705 Joseph I. }

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1711 Charles II. (Emperor Charles VI. of Germany). | <i>Emperors of Austria—House of Hapsburg-Lorraine.</i> |
| 1740 Maria Theresa. | 1804 Francis I. (Francis II. of Germany from 1792 to 1806). |
| 1780 Joseph II. } | 1835 Ferdinand I. |
| 1790 Leopold II. } | 1848 Francis Joseph. |
| 1792 Francis I. (Francis II. of Germany). | |

ELECTORS OF BRANDENBURG, DUKES AND KINGS OF PRUSSIA.

Margraves of Brandenburg.

- A. D.
- 1134 Albert I., the Bear.
- 1170 Otho I.
- 1184 Otho II.
- 1206 Albert II.
- 1221 John I. and Otho III.
- 1266 John II.
- 1282 Otho IV.
- 1309 Waldemar.
- 1319 Henry I., the Young.
- 1320 An Interregnum.
- 1323 Louis I., of Bavaria.
- 1352 Louis II., the Roman.
- 1365 Otho V., the Sluggard.
- 1373 Wenceslas of Bohemia.
- 1378 Sigismund of Bohemia (deposed).
- 1388 Jossus the Bearded.
- 1411 Sigismund restored.

House of Hohenzollern.

- 1415 Frederick I.
- 1440 Frederick II., Ironside.
- 1470 Albert III., the German Achilles.

Electors of Brandenburg—House of Hohenzollern.

- 1476 John III. (Elector in 1486).

A. D.

- 1499 Joachim I.
- 1535 Joachim II.
- 1571 John George.
- 1598 Joachim Frederick.
- 1608 John Sigismund.

Electors of Brandenburg and Dukes of Prussia—House of Hohenzollern.

- 1618 John Sigismund.
- 1619 George William.
- 1640 Frederick William the Great Elector.
- 1688 Frederick III.

Kings of Prussia—House of Hohenzollern.

- 1701 Frederick I. (Elector Frederick III).
- 1713 Frederick William I.
- 1740 Frederick II., the Great.
- 1786 Frederick William II.
- 1797 Frederick William III.
- 1840 Frederick William IV.
- 1861 William I. (became Emperor of Germany in 1871).
- 1888 Frederick III. } Emperors of
- 1888 William II. } Germany.

RUSSIAN GRAND-DUKES, CZARS AND EMPERORS.

Grand-Dukes of Kiev.

- A. D.
- 875 Rurik.
- 879 Oleg.
- 913 Igor I.
- 945 Olga (widow regent).
- 955 Sviatoslav I.
- 973 Jaropolk I.
- 980 Vladimir the Great.
- 1015 Sviatopolk I.
- 1018 Jaraslav, or Jaroslaw I.
- 1054 Isiaslav I.
- 1073 Sviatoslav II.
- 1078 Wsevolod I.
- 1093 Sviatopolk II.
- 1113 Vladimir II.
- 1126 Mitislav.
- 1132 Jaropolk II.

A. D.

- 1138 Wiatschelav.
- 1139 Wsevolod II.
- 1146 Isiaslav II. and Igor II.
- 1153 Rostislav.
- 1149 Jurie, or George I.

Grand-Duke of Vladimir.

- 1157 Andrew I. }
- 1175 Michael I. }
- 1177 Wsevolod III. }
- 1213 Jurie, or George II. }
- 1217 Constantine. }
- 1238 Jaraslav II.
- 1245 Alexander Nevski.
- 1263 Jaraslav III.
- 1270 Vasil, or Basil I.
- 1275 Demetri I.

- 1281 Andrew II.
 1294 Daniel Alexandrovitch.
 1303 Jurie, or George III. (deposed).
 1305 Michael III.
 1320 Vassili, or Basil II.
 1325 Jurie, or George III. restored.
 1327 Alexander II.

Grand Dukes of Moscow.

- 1328 Ivan, or John I.
 1340 Simeon the Proud.
 1353 Ivan, or John II.
 1359 Demetri II. (Prince of Susdal).
 1362 Demetri III. (Donskoi).
 1389 Vassili, or Basil III. (Temnoi).
 1425 Vassili, or Basil IV.
 1462 Ivan, or John III., the Great.
 1505 Vassili, or Basil V.

Czars of Moscow.

- 1533 Ivan, or John IV., the Terrible.
 1588 Feodor, or Theodore I.
 1598 Demetri.
 1598 Boris Godonoff.
 1605 Feodor, or Theodore II.

- 1606 Demetri (impostor).
 1606 Vassili Zouinski.
 1610 Ladislas VII. of Poland.

Russian Czars, Emperors and Emperesses of the House of Romanoff.

- 1613 Michael Romanoff.
 1645 Alexis.
 1676 Feodor.
 1682 Ivan V. and Peter I.
 1689 Peter I., the Great.
 alone.
 1725 Catharine I.
 1727 Peter II.
 1730 Anna.
 1740 Ivan VI.
 1741 Elizabeth.
 1762 Peter III.
 1762 Catharine II.
 1796 Paul.
 1801 Alexander I.
 1825 Nicholas I.
 1855 Alexander II.
 1881 Alexander III.
 1894 Nicholas II.

Emperors
and
Emperesses.

DUKES OF SAVOY, KINGS OF SARDINIA AND KINGS OF ITALY.

Duke of Savoy.

- A. D.
 1416 Amadeus VIII., the Pacific.
 1440 Ludovic.
 1465 Amadeus IX., the Saint.
 1472 Philibert I., the Hunter.
 1482 Charles I., the Warlike.
 1489 Charles II.
 1496 Philip Lackland.
 1497 Philibert II., the Fair.
 1504 Charles III., the Good.
 1553 Emmanuel Philibert, Iron Hand.
 1580 Charles Emanuel I., the Great.
 1630 Victor Amadeus I.
 1637 Francis Hyacinthus.
 1638 Charles Emmanuel II.
 1675 Victor Amadeus II.

Kings of Sardinia and Dukes of Savoy.

- A. D.
 1720 Victor Amadeus II.
 1730 Charles Emmanuel III.
 1773 Victor Amadeus III.
 1796 Charles Emmanuel IV.
Kings of Sardinia—House of Savoy.
 1802 Victor Emmanuel I.
 1821 Charles Felix.
 1831 Charles Albert.
 1849 Victor Emmanuel II.

Kings of Italy—House of Savoy.

- 1861 Victor Emmanuel II.
 1878 Humbert.
 1900 Victor Emmanuel III.

KINGS OF NAPLES AND SICILY.

Norman Dynasty.

- A. D.
 1131 Roger I.
 1154 William I., the Bad.
 1166 William II., the Good.
 1189 Tancred.
 1194 William III.

Hohenstaufen Dynasty.

- 1197 Emperor Frederick II., of Germany.

- A. D.
 1250 Conrad.
 1254 Conradin.
 1258 Manfred.

House of Anjou.

- 1266 Charles of Anjou.
Kings of Naples—House of Anjou.
 1282 Charles I. of Anjou.
 1285 Charles II.
 1309 Robert the Wise.

- 1343 Joanna I.
- 1382 Charles III.
- 1382 Louis I.
- 1385 Louis II.
- 1386 Ladislas of Hungary.
- 1414 Joanna II. (to 1435).

Kings of Sicily—House of Aragon.

- 1282 Peter I. (III. of Aragon).
- 1285 James I. (II. of Aragon).
- 1295 Frederick II.
- 1337 Peter II.
- 1342 Louis.
- 1355 Frederick III.
- 1376 Maria and Martin.
- 1402 Martin I.
- 1409 Martin II.
- 1410 Ferdinand I.
- 1416 Alfonso I. (to 1435).

King of Naples and Sicily—House of Aragon

- 1435 Alfonso I. (to 1458).

Kings of Naples—House of Aragon.

- 1458 Ferdinand I.
- 1494 Alfonso II.
- 1495 Ferdinand II.
- 1496 Frederick II. (to 1501).

Kings of Sicily—House of Aragon.

- 1458 John of Aragon.
- 1479 Ferdinand the Catholic (to 1503).

- Naples and Sicily under the Kings of Spain.*
- 1503 Ferdinand III. (V. of Spain).
- 1516 Charles I. (of Spain and V. of Germany).
- 1556 Philip I. (II. of Spain).
- 1598 Philip II. (III. of Spain).
- 1621 Philip III. (IV. of Spain).
- 1666 Charles II. (of Spain).
- 1700 Philip IV. (V. of Spain).
- 1707 Charles III. of Austria (VI. of Germany).

King of Naples.

- 1713 Charles III. of Austria.

King of Sicily.

- 1713 Victor Amadeus of Savoy.

Kings of Naples and Sicily.

- 1720 Charles III. of Austria.
- 1735 Charles IV. (III. of Spain).
- 1759 Ferdinand IV.

Kings of Naples.

- 1806 Joseph Bonaparte,
- 1808 Joachim Murat.

King of Sicily.

- 1806 Ferdinand IV. (to 1815).

Kings of Naples and Sicily.

- 1815 Ferdinand IV. restored.
- 1825 Francis I.
- 1830 Ferdinand V.
- 1859 Francis II. (Kingdom annexed to Italy, 1861).

KINGS OF HUNGARY.

Dynasty of Arpad.

- A. D.
- 1000 Stephen the Pius.
- 1038 Peter the German (deposed).
- 1041 Aba, or Owen.
- 1044 Peter the German restored.
- 1047 Andrew I.
- 1061 Bela I.
- 1064 Salamon.
- 1075 Geisa I.
- 1077 Ladislas I., the Pious.
- 1095 Colomon.
- 1114 Stephen II., Thunder.
- 1131 Bela II.
- 1141 Geisa II.
- 1161 Stephen III.
- 1173 Bela III.
- 1196 Emmeric.
- 1204 Ladislas II.
- 1205 Andrew II.
- 1235 Bela IV.

A. D.

- 1270 Stephen IV.
- 1272 Ladislas III.
- 1290 Andrew III.

Elective Kings of Different Dynasties.

- 1301 Wenceslas of Bohemia.
- 1309 Charles Robert of Anjou.
- 1342 Louis the Great (of Anjou, also King of Poland, 1370-1382).
- 1382 Mary ("King Mary").
- 1385 Charles of Durazzo.
- 1387 Sigismund (King of Bohemia and Emperor of Germany).
- 1437 Albert of Austria (Emperor Albert I. of Germany).
- 1439 Elizabeth.
- 1440 Ladislas IV. (King of Poland).
- 1444 An Interregnum.
- 1445 John Hunniyades (regent).
- 1458 Ladislas V.

- 1458 Matthias Corvinus.
 1490 Ladislav VI. (King of Poland).
 1516 Louis II.
 1526 John Zapolya.

Austrian House of Hapsburg.

- 1526 Ferdinand I. (Archduke of Austria, and Emperor of Germany, 1556-1564).
 1563 Maximilian (Maximilian II., Archduke of Austria and Emperor of Germany).
 1572 Rudolf (Archduke of Austria and Emperor Rudolf II. of Germany).
 1608 Matthias II. (Matthias, Archduke of Austria and Emperor of Germany).
 1618 Ferdinand II. } Archdukes of Austria and Emperors of Germany.
 1625 Ferdinand III. }
 1647 Ferdinand IV.

- 1655 Leopold I. } Archdukes of Austria and Emperors of Germany.
 1687 Joseph I. }
 1711 Charles III. (Archduke Charles of Austria, and Emperor Charles VI of Germany).
 1740 Maria Theresa (Archduchess of Austria and wife of Emperor Francis I. of Germany).
 1780 Joseph II. } Archdukes of Austria and Emperors of Germany.
 1790 Leopold II. }
 1792 Francis I. (Archduke Francis of Austria to 1804, and Emperor Francis II. of Germany to 1806, and Emperor Francis I. of Austria, 1804-1835).
 1835 Ferdinand V. (Emperor Ferdinand I. of Austria).
 1848 Francis Joseph (Emperor of Austria).

KINGS OF POLAND.

Dynasty of Piast.

- A. D.
 1000 Boleslas I.
 1025 Micislas II.
 1034 Richsa, queen-regent.
 1037 An Interregnum.
 1041 Casimir I.
 1058 Boleslas II., the Intrepid.
 1081 Ladislav I., the Careless.
 1102 Boleslas III., Wry-mouth.
 1138 Ladislav II.
 1146 Boleslas IV., the Curled.
 1173 Micislas III., the Old (deposed).
 1177 Casimir II., the Just.
 1194 Lesko V., the White (deposed).
 1200 Micislas III. restored.
 1202 Ladislav III.
 1206 Lesko the White restored.
 1227 Boleslas V., the Chaste.
 1279 Lesko VI., the Black.
 1289 An Interregnum.
 1295 Premislas.
 1304 Ladislav IV., the Short.
 1333 Casimir III., the Great.

Elective Kings of Different Dynasties.

- 1370 Louis the Great (King of Hungary).
 1382 Maria.

A. D.

- 1384 Ladislav V. (Jagello).
 1434 Ladislav VI.
 1444 Casimir IV.
 1492 John Albert.
 1501 Alexander.
 1506 Sigismund I., the Great.
 1548 Sigismund II.
 1572 An Interregnum.
 1573 Henry of Valois (afterward Henry III. of France).
 1575 Stephen Bathori.
 1586 An Interregnum.
 1587 Sigismund III.
 1632 Ladislav VII.
 1648 John Casimir.
 1668 An Interregnum.
 1669 Michael Wiasnowski.
 1674 John Sobieski.
 1696 An Interregnum.
 1697 Frederick Augustus I. (Elector of Saxony).
 1704 Stanislas Leczinski.
 1709 Frederick Augustus I. restored.
 1733 Frederick Augustus II. (Elector of Saxony).
 1763 An Interregnum.
 1764 Stanislas Poniatowski (deposed in 1795, when Poland's independence ended).

The
Jagellos.

KINGS OF DENMARK.

Dynasty of Skjold.

- A. D.
 878 Gorm the Old.

A. D.

- 941 Harald Bluetooth.
 991 Sweyn I.

- 1014 Canute the Great (conqueror of Eng-
land, Sweden and Norway).
 1036 Hardicanute.
 1042 Magnus the Good, of Norway.
 1047 Sweyn II.
 1073 An Interregnum.
 1076 Harald the Simple.
 1080 Canute IV.
 1086 Olaf the Hungry.
 1095 Eric the Good.
 1103 An Interregnum.
 1106 Nicholas I.
 1135 Eric Harefoot.
 1137 Eric the Lamb.
 1147 Sweyn III. and Canute V.
 1154 Sweyn III. alone.
 1157 Waldemar the Great.
 1182 Canute the Pious.
 1202 Waldemar the Conqueror.
 1241 Eric IV.
 1250 Abel.
 1252 Christopher I.
 1259 Eric V.
 1296 Eric VI.
 1320 Christopher II.
 1334 An Interregnum.
 1340 Waldemar III.
 1375 An Interregnum.

- 1376 Olaf V.
 1387 Margaret.
 1397 Margaret and Eric VII (Eric XIII. of
Sweden).
 1412 Eric VII. alone.
 1438 An Interregnum.
 1440 Christopher III. of Sweden.

House of Oldenberg.

- 1448 Christian I.
 1481 John.
 1513 Christian II.
 1523 Frederick I.
 1533 Christian III.
 1559 Frederick II.
 1588 Christian IV.
 1648 Frederick III.
 1670 Christian V.
 1699 Frederick IV.
 1730 Christian VI.
 1746 Frederick V.
 1766 Christian VII.
 1806 Frederick VI.
 1839 Christian VIII.
 1848 Frederick VII.
 1863 Christian IX.
 1906 Frederick VIII.
 1912 Christian X.

KINGS OF NORWAY.

A. D.

- 875 Harald Fairhair (Harfager)
 934 Eric I.
 940 Hako the Good.
 963 Harald Graafeld.
 977 Hako Jarl.
 995 Olaf Trygvæson.
 1015 Olaf the Saint.
 1028 Canute the Great of Denmark.
 1036 Magnus the Bastard.
 1047 Harald Hardrada.
 1066 Olaf III. and Magnus II.
 1069 Olaf III. alone.
 1093 Magnus Barefoot.
 1103 Sigurd I., Eystein II. and Olaf IV.
 1122 Sigurd I. alone.
 1130 Magnus IV. and Harald IV.
 1136 Sigurd II.
 1136 Inge I., Eystein III., Hako III., and
Magnus V.

A. D.

- 1162 Magnus V. alone.
 1186 Swerro.
 1202 Hako III.
 1204 Guthrum.
 1205 Inge II.
 1207 Hako IV.
 1280 Magnus VI.
 1286 Eric II.
 1299 Hako V.
 1319 Magnus VII. (Magnus III. of Sweden).
 1343 Hako VI.
 1380 Olaf V. (Olaf II. of Denmark).
 1397 *Norway united to Denmark by the Union
of Calmar.*
 1814 *Norway united with Sweden by the
Peace of Kiel.*
 1905 *Norway independent, under the House of
Oldenburg, of Denmark.*
 1905 Hako VII.

KINGS OF SWEDEN.

A. D.

- 1000 Olaf Skotkonung.
 1026 Edmund Colbrenner.
 1061 Edmund Slemme.
 1066 Stenkil.

A. D.

- 1066 Halstan.
 1090 Ingo I., the Great.
 1112 Philip.
 1118 Inro II

1129 Swerker I.
 1155 Eric IX., the Pious.
 1161 Charles VII.
 1167 Canute.
 1199 Swerker II.
 1210 Eric X.
 1216 John I.
 1222 Eric XI., the Stammerer.
 1250 Berger Jarl, regent.
 1250 Waldemar I.
 1275 Magnus I.
 1290 Berger II.
 1319 Magnus Smæk (deposed).
 1350 Eric XII.
 1359 Magnus Smæk restored.
 1363 Albert of Mecklenburg.
 1397 *Sweden united with Denmark by the
 Union of Calmar.*
 1412 Eric XIII.
 1440 Christopher.
 1448 Charles III.
 1471 An Interregnum.
 1483 John II. (John I. of Denmark).
 1502 An Interregnum.
 1503 Steno Sture I.

House of Burgundy.

A. D.
 1139 Alfonso I. (Son of Henry of Bur-
 gundy).
 1185 Sancho I.
 1212 Alfonso II., the Fat.
 1223 Sancho II., the Idle.
 1248 Alfonso III.
 1279 Denis (the "Father of his Country").
 1325 Alfonso IV., the Brave.
 1357 Pedro the Severe.
 1367 Ferdinand I.
 1385 John I., the Bastard.
 1433 Duarte (Edward).
 1438 Alfonso V., the African.
 1481 John II., the Perfect.
 1495 Manuel the Great.
 1521 John III., the Great.
 1557 Sebastian.

House of Trastamara.

A. D.
 1479 Ferdinand and Isabella.
Austrian House of Hapsburg.
 1516 Charles I. (Emperor Charles V. of Ger-
 many).

1512 Steno Sture II.
 1520 Christian II. of Denmark.

House of Vasa.

1523 Gustavus Vasa.
 1560 Eric XIV.
 1569 John III.
 1592 Sigismund.
 1599 Charles IX.
 1611 Gustavus Adolphus.
 1632 Christina (abdicated).
 1654 Charles X.
 1660 Charles XI.
 1697 Charles XII.
 1718 Ulrica Eleanor.
 1721 Frederick of Hesse Cassel.
 1751 Adolphus Frederick.
 1771 Gustavus III. (murdered).
 1792 Gustavus IV. (deposed).
 1809 Charles XIII.

Kings of Sweden and Norway—House of Bernadotte.

1818 Charles XIV.
 1844 Oscar I.
 1859 Charles XV.
 1872 Oscar II.
 1903 Gustave V.

KINGS OF PORTUGAL.

A. D.

1578 Henry.
 1580 Antonio.
 1580 *Portugal united with Spain for sixty
 years.*

House of Braganza.

1640 John IV.
 1656 Alfonso VI.
 1683 Pedro II.
 1706 John V.
 1750 Joseph.
 1777 Pedro III. and Maria I.
 1786 Maria I., alone.
 1816 John VI.
 1826 Pedro IV.
 1826 Maria II.
 1853 Pedro V.
 1861 Luiz.
 1869 Charles.
 1908 Manuel II.

KINGS OF SPAIN.

A. D.

1556 Philip II.
 1598 Philip III.
 1621 Philip IV.
 1665 Charles II.

House of Bourbon.

- 1700 Philip V. (of Anjou).
- 1746 Ferdinand VI.
- 1759 Charles III.
- 1788 Charles IV.

House of Bonaparte.

- 1808 Joseph Bonaparte.

House of Bourbon.

- 1813 Ferdinand VII.

1833 Isabella II.

1868 An Interregnum.

House of Savoy.

1871 Amadeo.

1873 *Spanish Republic.*

House of Bourbon.

1874 Alfonso XII.

1886 Alfonso XIII.

SULTANS OF TURKEY.

A. D.

- 1299 Othman, Osman, or Ottoman.
- 1326 Orchan.
- 1360 Amurath, or Murad I. (murdered).
- 1389 Bajaset I. (died a prisoner).
- 1403 Solyman I. (dethroned).
- 1410 Musa-Chelebi.
- 1413 Mohammed I.
- 1431 Amurath, or Murad II.
- 1451 Mohammed II.
- 1481 Bajaset II.
- 1512 Selim I.
- 1520 Solyman II., the Magnificent.
- 1566 Selim II.
- 1574 Amurath, or Murad III.
- 1595 Mohammed III.
- 1603 Ahmed, or Achmet I.
- 1617 Mustapha I. (deposed).
- 1618 Othman II. (murdered).
- 1692 Mustapha I. restored and murdered.

A. D.

- 1623 Amurath, or Murad IV.
- 1640 Ibrahim (murdered).
- 1649 Mohammed IV. (deposed).
- 1687 Solyman III.
- 1691 Ahmed, or Achmet II.
- 1695 Mustapha II. (deposed).
- 1703 Ahmed, or Achmet III. (deposed).
- 1730 Mahmoud I., or Mohammed V.
- 1754 Othman III.
- 1757 Mustapha III.
- 1774 Abdul-Hamid I.
- 1789 Selim III. (deposed and murdered).
- 1807 Mustapha IV. (deposed and murdered).
- 1808 Mahmoud II., or Mohammed VI.
- 1839 Abdul-Medjid.
- 1861 Abdul-Azis (murdered).
- 1876 Amurath, or Murad V. (deposed).
- 1876 Abdul-Hamid II.
- 1909 Mehmed V.

DYNASTIES AND LATE EMPERORS OF CHINA.

Ancient Dynasties.

B. C.

- 2207 Hia Dynasty.
- 1767 Shang Dynasty.
- 1122 Chow Dynasty.
- 256 Tsin Dynasty.
- 207 Hang Dynasty.

The Three Kingdoms.

A. D.

- 220 Shohang Dynasty (to 263).
- 220 Goel Dynasty in the North (to 265).
- 220 El Dynasty in the South (to 280).

Medieval Dynasties.

- 256 Tsin Dynasty.
- 420 U-ta Dynasty.
- 560 Sui Dynasty.

A. D.

- 617 Tang Dynasty.
- 907 Hehu-u-ta Dynasty.
- 960 Song Dynasty.
- 1279 Mogul Khans.
- 1368 Ming Dynasty.

Ta-ising, or Manchu-Tartar Dynasty.

- 1644 Shun-chi.
- 1662 Kang-hi.
- 1722 Yung-ching.
- 1735 Kien-lung.
- 1795 Kia-king.
- 1820 Taou-kwang.
- 1850 Hien-fung.
- 1862 Yung-chi.
- 1875 Kwang-su (Dowager Empress rules).
- 1908 Pu-Yi (Prince Chun, regent).

KINGS OF BAVARIA.

A. D.

- 1805 Maximilian Joseph I.
- 1825 Louis I. (abdicated).
- 1846 Maximilian Joseph II.

A. D.

- 1864 Louis II. (drowned himself).
- 1886 Otho.
- 1913 Ludwig III.

KINGS OF WURTEMBERG.

A. D.
1805 Frederick I.
1816 William I.

A. D.
1864 Charles I.
1891 William II.

KINGS OF HANOVER.

A. D.
1814 Geo. William Frederick (George III. of England).
1820 Geo. Augustus Frederick (George IV. of England).
1830 William Henry (William IV. of England).

A. D.
1837 Ernest Augustus (Duke of Cumberland).
1851 George V. (kingdom annexed to Prussia, 1866).

KINGS OF SAXONY.

A. D.
1806 Frederick Augustus I.
1827 Anthony Clement.

A. D.
1836 Frederick Augustus II.
1854 John.
1904 Frederick Augustus III.

KINGS OF HOLLAND.

House of Bonaparte.

A. D.
1806 Louis Bonaparte (till 1810).
1810 *Holland annexed to the French Empire.*

House of Orange, or Nassau.

A. D.
1814 William I.
1840 William II. (abdicated).
1849 William III.
1890 Wilhelmina.

KINGS OF BELGIUM.

House of Saxe-Coburg.

A. D.
1830 Leopold I.

A. D.
1835 Leopold II.
1909 Albert I.

KINGS OF GREECE.

House of Bavaria.

A. D.
1833 Otho (deposed 1862).

House of Denmark.

A. D.
1863 George I.
1913 Constantine I.

KINGS OF ITALY.

House of Savoy.

A. D.
1861 Victor Emmanuel II. (formerly King Victor Emmanuel II. of Sardinia).

A. D.
1878 Humbert.
1900 Victor Emmanuel III.

EMPERORS OF BRAZIL.

House of Braganza.

A. D.
1822 Dom Pedro I. (abdicated).

A. D.
1831 Dom Pedro II. (deposed).
1889 Brazil a Republic.

KINGS OF SERBIA.

A. D.
1882 Milan (abdicated).
1889 Alexander.

A. D.
1903 Peter.

BRITISH GOVERNORS AND VICEROYS OF INDIA

*Governors-General.***A. D.**

1772 Warren Hastings.
 1785 Sir John McPherson.
 1786 Lord Cornwallis.
 1793 Sir John Shore.
 1796 Lord Cornwallis.
 1798 Sir Alured Clarke.
 1798 Lord Mornington.
 1805 Lord Cornwallis.
 1805 Sir George Hilary Barlow.
 1807 Lord Minto.
 1813 Marquis of Hastings.
 1823 Hon. John Adam.
 1823 Right Hon. George Canning.
 1823 Lord Amherst.
 1828 Hon. Wm. Butterworth Bayley.
 1828 Lord Wm. Cavendish Bentinck.
 1835 Sir Charles Theophilus Metcalf.
 1836 Lord Auckland.

A. D.

1842 Lord Ellenborough.
 1844 William Wilberforce Bird.
 1844 Sir Henry Hardinge.
 1848 Lord Dalhousie.
 1856 Lord Canning.

Viceroy.

1858 Lord Elgin.
 1863 Lord Lawrence.
 1868 Lord Mayo (assassinated).
 1872 Lord Northbrook.
 1876 Lord Lytton.
 1881 Marquis of Ripon.
 1884 Lord Dufferin.
 1888 Lord Lansdowne.
 1893 Lord Elgin.
 1899 Lord Curzon.
 1905 Earl of Minto.
 1910 Sir Charles Hardinge.

PRESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES

A. D.

1789 George Washington (of Virginia).
 1797 John Adams (of Massachusetts).
 1801 Thomas Jefferson (of Virginia).
 1809 James Madison (of Virginia).
 1817 James Monroe (of Virginia).
 1825 John Quincy Adams (of Massachusetts).
 1829 Andrew Jackson (of Tennessee).
 1837 Martin Van Buren (of New York).
 1841 Wm. Henry Harrison (of Ohio).
 1841 John Tyler (of Virginia).
 1845 James Knox Polk (of Tennessee).
 1849 Zachary Taylor (of Louisiana).
 1850 Millard Fillmore (of New York).
 1853 Franklin Pierce (of New Hampshire).

A. D.

1857 James Buchanan (of Pennsylvania).
 1861 Abraham Lincoln (of Illinois).
 1865 Andrew Johnson (of Tennessee).
 1869 Ulysses Simpson Grant (of Illinois).
 1877 Rutherford Birchard Hayes (of Ohio).
 1881 James Abram Garfield (of Ohio).
 1881 Chester Allan Arthur (of New York).
 1885 Grover Cleveland (of New York).
 1889 Benjamin Harrison (of Indiana).
 1893 Grover Cleveland (of New York).
 1897 William McKinley (of Ohio).
 1901 Theodore Roosevelt (of New York).
 1909 William Howard Taft (of Ohio).
 1913 Woodrow Wilson (of New Jersey).

PASHAS AND KHEDIVES OF EGYPT.

A. D.

1805 Mehemet Ali.
 1848 Ibrahim Pasha.
 1848 Abbas Pasha.
 1854 Said Pasha.

} Pashas.

A. D.

1863 Ismail Pasha.
 1879 Tewfik Pasha.
 1892 Abbas Pasha.

} Khedives.

EMPERORS AND PRESIDENTS OF MEXICO.

*Emperor.***A. D.**

1822 Don Augustin Iturbide (driven off in 1823
 and shot in 1824).

*Presidents.***A. D.**

1825 Guadalupe Victoria.
 1829 Guerrero.

1830 Bustamente.
1832 Pedraza.
1833 Antonio Lopez de Santa Anna.
1837 Bustamente.
1841 Santa Anna.
1845 Herrera.
1846 Paredes.
1846 Santa Anna.
1848 Herrera.
1851 Arista.
1853 Santa Anna.
1854 Alvarez.
1856 Comonfort.
1858 Zuloaga.
1860 Benito Juarez.

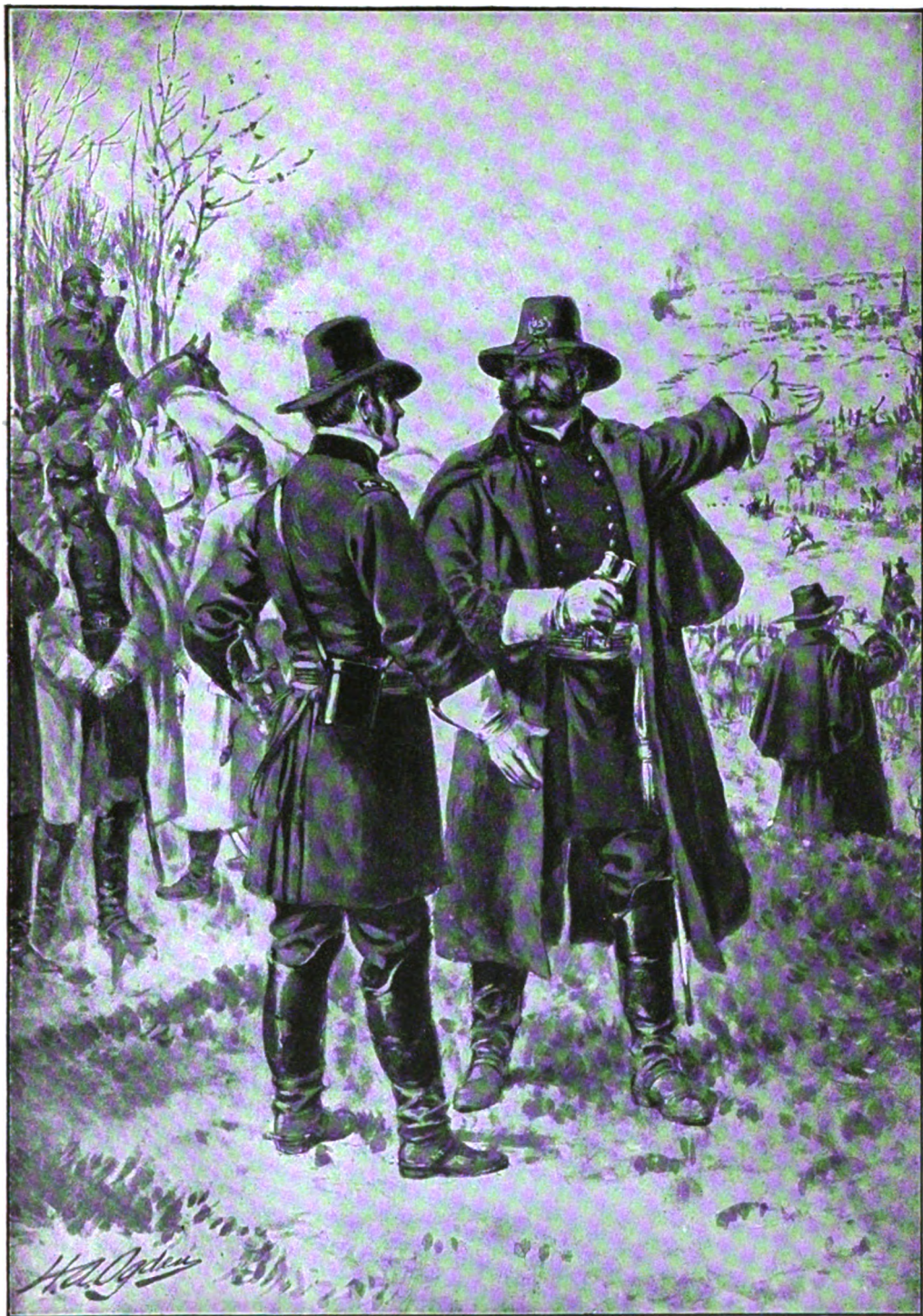
Emperor and Presidents.

1864 Maximilian of Austria, Emperor (deposed and shot in 1867).
1864 Benito Juarez, President.
1872 Sebastian Lerdo de Tejada.
1877 Porfirio Diaz.
1881 Gonzales.
1885 Porfirio Diaz.
1911 Francisco de la Barra.
1912 Francisco Madero.
1913 Victoriano Huerta.
1914 Francisco Carvajal.

PRESIDENTS AND VICE PRESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES

PRESIDENTS	WHEN	HOW LONG	STATE FROM	PARTY	VICE PRESIDENTS
George Washington	1789-1797	8 yrs.	Virginia	Federalist	John Adams
John Adams	1797-1801	4 yrs.	Massachusetts	Federalist	Thomas Jefferson
Thomas Jefferson	1801-1809	8 yrs.	Virginia	Democratic	Aaron Burr—George Clinton
James Madison	1809-1817	8 yrs.	Virginia	Democratic	George Clinton—Elbridge Gerry
James Monroe	1817-1825	8 yrs.	Virginia	Democratic	Daniel D. Tompkins
John Quincy Adams	1825-1829	4 yrs.	Massachusetts	Democratic	John Caldwell Calhoun
Andrew Jackson	1829-1837	8 yrs.	Tennessee	Democratic	John Caldwell Calhoun—Martin Van Buren
Martin Van Buren	1837-1841	4 yrs.	New York	Democratic	Richard Mentor Johnson
William Henry Harrison	1841	1 mo.	Ohio	Whig	John Tyler
John Tyler	1841-1845	3 yrs. 11 mo.	Virginia	Whig	
James Knox Polk	1845-1849	4 yrs.	Tennessee	Democratic	George Mifflin Dallas
Zachary Taylor	1849-1850	1 yr. 4 mo.	Louisiana	Whig	Millard Fillmore
Millard Fillmore	1850-1853	2 yrs. 8 mo.	New York	Whig	
Franklin Pierce	1853-1857	4 yrs.	New Hampshire	Democratic	William Rufus King
James Buchanan	1857-1861	4 yrs.	Pennsylvania	Democratic	John Cabell Breckinridge
Abraham Lincoln	1861-1865	4 yrs. 1½ mo.	Illinois	Republican	Hannibal Hamlin—Andrew Johnson
Andrew Johnson	1865-1869	3 yrs. 10½ mo.	Tennessee	Republican	
Ulysses Simpson Grant	1869-1877	8 yrs.	Illinois	Republican	Schuyler Colfax—Henry Wilson
Rutherford Birchard Hayes	1877-1881	4 yrs.	Ohio	Republican	William Almon Wheeler
James Abram Garfield	1881	6½ mo.	Ohio	Republican	Chester Allan Arthur
Chester Allan Arthur	1881-1885	3 yrs. 5½ mo.	New York	Republican	
Grover Cleveland	1885-1889	4 yrs.	New York	Democratic	Thomas Andrews Hendricks
Benjamin Harrison	1889-1893	4 yrs.	Indiana	Republican	Levi Parsons Morton
Grover Cleveland	1893-1897	4 yrs.	New York	Democratic	Adlai Ewing Stevenson
William McKinley	1897-1901	4 yrs. 6½ mo.	Ohio	Republican	Garrett A. Hobart—Theodore Roosevelt
Theodore Roosevelt	1901-1909	7 yrs. 5½ mo.	New York	Republican	Charles Warren Fairbanks
William Howard Taft	1909-1913	4 yrs.	Ohio	Republican	James Schoolcraft Sherman
Woodrow Wilson	1913		New Jersey	Democratic	Thomas Riley Marshall

STATES.	SETTLED BY	WHERE SETTLED.	WHEN SETTLED	WHEN ADMITTED.
Virginia	English	Jamestown	1607	1788
Massachusetts	English	Plymouth	1620	1788
New York	Dutch	New York	1623	1788
New Hampshire	English	Dover	1623	1788
Connecticut	English	Windsor	1633	1788
Maryland	English	St. Mary's	1634	1788
Rhode Island	English	Providence	1636	1790
Delaware	Swedes	Christina	1638	1787
North Carolina	English	Chowan River	1650	1789
New Jersey	English	Elizabeth	1664	1787
South Carolina	English	Ashley River	1670	1788
Pennsylvania	English	Chester	1681	1787
Georgia	English	Savannah	1733	1788
Vermont	English	Fort Dummer	1724	1791
Kentucky	English	Boonesborough	1775	1792
Tennessee	English	Fort Loudon	1757	1796
Ohio	Americans	Marietta	1788	1802
Louisiana	French	Iberville	1699	1812
Indiana	French	Vincennes	1705	1816
Mississippi	French	Biloxi	1699	1817
Illinois	French	Kaskaskia	1682	1818
Alabama	French	Mobile	1702	1819
Maine	English	Bristol	1625	1820
Missouri	French	St. Genevieve	1755	1821
Arkansas	French	Arkansas Post	1685	1836
Michigan	French	Sault Sta Marie	1668	1837
Florida	Spaniards	St. Augustine	1565	1845
Texas	Spaniards	San Antonio	1692	1845
Iowa	Americans	Burlington	1833	1846
Wisconsin	French	Green Bay	1745	1848
California	Spaniards	San Diego	1769	1850
Minnesota	Americans	St. Paul	1838	1858
Oregon	Americans	Astoria	1811	1859
Kansas	Americans			1861
West Virginia	English			1863
Nevada	Americans			1864
Nebraska	Americans			1867
Colorado	Americans			1876
North Dakota	Americans			1880
South Dakota	Americans			1880
Montana	Americans			1880
Washington	Americans			1880
Idaho	Americans			1890
Wyoming	Americans			1890
Utah	Americans	Salt Lake City	1848	1894
Oklahoma	Americans			1906



Copyright 1897 by Knight & Brown

BURNSIDE AT FREDERICKSBURG, DECEMBER 13, 1862

THE BRITISH EMPIRE.

The British Empire embraces the United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland and all its colonies and dependencies throughout the world, having a population of over four hundred million and an area of more than nine million square miles. The colonies are found in every quarter of the globe—in Europe, Asia, Africa, Oceanica, North America and South America; and are as follows:

IN EUROPE.

Isle of Man, the Channel Isles (Jersey, Guernsey and Alderney), Gibraltar and Malta.

IN ASIA.

Island of Cyprus, British India (consisting of Hindoostan, Burmah, Beloochistan, and Sikkim in Thibet), Ceylon, Straits Settlements (consisting of Singapore, Penang, Wellesley, Malacca and the Dindings), the Andaman and Nicobar Islands, the Laccadive Islands, the Keeling Islands and other smaller groups, Island of Perim, Aden in Arabia and the Island of Hong Kong and the opposite peninsula of Kowloon in China.

IN AFRICA.

Cape Colony, Natal, Kaffraria, Zululand, Basutoland, Bechuanaland, Rhodesia, Vaal River Colony, Orange River Colony, the Colony of Walfish Bay, British Somaliland, Nigeria, British Equatorial Africa, Sierra Leone, Gambia, the Gold Coast, Lagos, Island of Socotra, Island of Mauritius, the Amirante and Seychelle Islands, the Island of Ascension, the Island of St. Helena and the Island of Tristan d'Acunha.

IN OCEANICA

Australia (consisting of the States of Victoria, New South Wales, South Australia, West Australia, Queensland and the Northern Territory), Tasmania, New Zealand, Norfolk Island, the Fiji Islands, Cook's Islands, Chatham Islands, Auckland Island, Lord Howe Island, Fanning Island, Starbuck Island, the eastern part of New Guinea, the northern part of Borneo, and the Island of Labuan.

IN NORTH AMERICA.

Canada (consisting of the Provinces of Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, Prince Edward's Island, Quebec, Ontario, Manitoba and British Columbia, and the Northwest Territories of Saskatchewan, Keewatin, Alberta and Assiniboia, along with Labrador in the east and the region around Hudson's Bay), Newfoundland,

British Honduras, the Bermuda Islands, the Bahama Islands, Jamacia and other West India Islands, such as Trinidad, Barbadoes, the Cayman Islands, and most of the Lesser Antilles including Tobago, Grenada, St. Vincent, St. Lucia, Dominica, Montserrat, Antigua, St. Christopher, Barbrida, Nevis, Anguila, and most of the Virgin Islands.

IN SOUTH AMERICA.

British Guiana and the Falkland Islands.

IN OTHER QUARTERS.

The two small volcanic islands of St. Paul and New Amsterdam, in the Indian Ocean; and Victoria Land, Enderby Land and Graham's Land, near the South Pole.

SEVEN WONDERS OF THE ANCIENT WORLD.

Pyramids of Egypt.

Walls and Hanging Gardens of Babylon.

Mausolæum, or tomb of Mausolus, at Halicarnassus.

Temple of Artemis, or Diana, at Ephesus.

Temple and Statue of Zeus, or Jupiter, at Olympia, in Elis.

Pharos at Alexandria, in Egypt.

Colossus of Rhodes.

HISTORIC LEGENDS.

We will now note the legends of history—stories which were formerly believed to be true, but many of which modern scholars, historians and antiquarians have demonstrated to be pure fables.

Many Grecian and Roman legends are so remarkable and extravagant that their falsity is at once apparent; as the stories of the circumstances which they narrate are so entirely out of the natural order of things that their occurrence could not have been possible. The most remarkable legend of the Middle Ages is that of William Tell and Gesler in Swiss history; and the most famous of modern legends is that of Captain John Smith and Pocahontas in our own history.

GRECIAN LEGENDS.

Inachus, Cecrops, Lelex, Cadmus, Danaus, and Pelops.—The oldest city in Greece was Argos, the capital of Argolis, which was founded in the year 1856 B. C., by Inachus, a Phœnician. In the year 1556 B. C.—three hundred years after the founding of Argos—Cecrops, an Egyptian, founded in Attica a city which he named Athens in honor of the Goddess Athena. The Egyptian, Lelex, is said to have founded Sparta, B. C. 1520. The Phœnician, Cadmus, is said to have founded Thebes and its famous citadel, the Cadméa, B. C. 1498. The Egyptian, Danaus, is said to have arrived at Argos B. C. 1485, with fifty daughters, and to have taught the people to dig wells. The Phrygian prince, Pelops, is said to have landed on the peninsula of Southern Greece, named in his honor Peloponnesus, or Island of Pelops, about 1350 B. C.

Hercules.—A fabulous personage of Greece's Heroic Age was Hercules [*Her'-ku-lees*], celebrated for his wonderful feats of strength. He was reputed to be the son of Zeus and Alcmena, the wife of Amphitryon, king of Thebes. While yet an infant in his cradle, Hercules is said to have strangled two huge serpents which the goddess Hera had sent to destroy him. The twelve labors which Hera exacted of Hercules were the following: 1. He killed the Nemean lion and wore his skin in the remainder of his exploits. 2. He slew the Lernean hydra, whose heads multiplied sevenfold on being severed. 3. He brought to Eurystheus upon his shoulders the Erymanthean boar. 4. He subdued the golden-horned and brazen-hoofed stag of Diana. 5. He destroyed with his arrows the foul Stymphalian birds. 6. He cleansed the Augean stables. 7. He tamed the furious bull of Crete. 8. He gave Diomedes to be devoured by his own horses. 9. He vanquished the Amazons. 10. He killed the three-headed Geryon, king of Gades [now Cadiz], in Spain, and brought his oxen to Greece. 11. He killed the hundred-headed dragon of the Hesperides, and obtained the golden apples of

his garden. 12. He dragged the three-headed dog Cerberus from the gate of Hades, into which he descended twice. Hercules killed the centaur Nessus with an arrow poisoned with the blood of the Lernean hydra, because the centaur had insulted the hero's wife, Dejanira. The dying centaur persuaded Dejanira to give a tunic dipped in his blood to her husband in reconciliation; but as soon as Hercules clothed himself in this garment he was poisoned by it, and perished in the flames of a funeral pile which he built on Mount Ceta. Zeus received him as a god, and gave to him in marriage Hebe, the goddess of youth. Hercules is usually represented as a robust man, leaning on his club, wearing the skin of the Nemean lion on his shoulders, and holding the Hesperian fruit in his hands.

Theseus.—Theseus, a fabulous king of Athens, was another legendary character of early Greece, and was regarded as the civilizer of Attica. He is said to have kidnapped the beautiful Helen, daughter of Tyndarus, king of Sparta; but Helen was rescued by her brothers, Castor and Pollux, who were afterwards deified.

Argonautic Expedition.—In the time of Hercules, Jason, a prince of Thessaly, went on the celebrated Argonautic Expedition, so called from the ship Argo, in which he sailed. The following is the story of the Argonautic Expedition, according to the Greek poets. Phryxus, a Theban prince, and his sister Helle, being obliged to leave their native country to escape the cruelty of their step-mother, mounted the back of a winged ram with a golden fleece, to be conveyed to Colchis, a country on the eastern border of the Euxine, or Black Sea, where an uncle of theirs was king. While passing over the strait now called the Dardanelles, Helle became giddy, fell into the water and was drowned; whence the strait received the name of Hellespont, or Sea of Helle. Phryxus arrived safely in Colchis, and sacrificed his winged ram to Jupiter in acknowledgment of Divine protection, and put the golden fleece into that deity's temple. He was afterwards murdered by his uncle, who wished to obtain the golden fleece. It was to avenge the death of Phryxus and to secure the golden fleece that Jason undertook the Argonautic Expedition. Jason obtained the golden fleece and married Media, a daughter of the king of Colchis.

The Gordian Knot.—While Alexander the Great was conquering Asia Minor, he found in the citadel of Gordium a very ancient chariot with a knot twisted in the most intricate manner, respecting which an oracle had declared that whoever should loosen this knot should conquer Asia. Alexander is said to have cut the knot with his sword, considering that sufficient to make him master of Asia.

Diogenes.—The eccentric philosopher, Diogenes, is said to have lived in a tub and to have worn but a single garment. His only worldly possessions were his tub, a garment, a staff, and a wooden bowl for drinking. One day observing a boy drinking from the hollow of his hand, he dashed his bowl to pieces, saying: "That boy has taught me that I still have something unnecessary." Being seen

at one time with a lighted lantern in mid-day in the streets of Athens, and being asked what he was hunting, he replied: "An honest man." One day, while mending his tub, he is said to have been visited by Alexander the Great, who asked the philosopher what he could do to better his condition. Diogenes replied: "Nothing except to get out of the sunshine." Alexander thereupon remarked: "Were I not Alexander, I would be Diogenes."

ROMAN LEGENDS.

Legend of Æneas.—According to the Roman legend, Æneas, a famous Trojan warrior, left his native country immediately after the fall of Troy, and made his way to the western shores of Italy, where he founded the city of Lavinium. After slaying in battle Latinus, king of Latium, Æneas united the Latins with his own followers; and thereafter the united people were called Latins. Thirty years afterwards, the Latins removed to the Alban Mount, where they built the city of Alba.

Legend of Romulus and Remus.—Several centuries after the events just related, there reigned at Alba a king named Procas, who had two sons, Numitor and Amulius. When Procas died Numitor was to succeed to the throne of Alba; but Amulius seized the throne and made himself king and afterwards caused the son of Numitor to be slain and made his daughter Sylvia become a Vestal Virgin. Sylvia married Mars, the god of war, with whom she had twin sons, Romulus and Remus. Amulius ordered the two infants to be drowned in the Tiber, but the basket which contained them floated to the foot of the Palatine Hill, where they were found by a she-wolf, which carried them to her den and nursed them as her own offspring. Some time afterward the two children were taken to the house of a shepherd on the Palatine Hill, where they were brought up. At length Remus was taken to Alba and brought before Amulius. Romulus and his friends went to Alba and rescued Remus, killing Amulius, and placed Numitor on the throne of Alba.

Founding of Rome by Romulus.—Romulus and Remus prepared to return to the Palatine Hill, where they resolved to build a city, and they inquired of the gods by divination which should give his name to the city. They watched the heavens for one day and one night; and at sunrise Remus saw six vultures, and soon afterward Romulus saw twelve. It was decided that the favor of the gods was on the side of Romulus, who accordingly began to build a city on the Palatine Hill. When Remus, who was mortified and angry, saw the low wall and the ditch which inclosed the space for the new city, he scornfully leaped over and exclaimed, "Will this keep out an enemy?" Upon this insulting conduct, Remus was slain, either by Romulus or by one of his followers. The city, which was named Rome, in honor of Romulus, is thought to have been founded 753 years before Christ. Rome at first contained a thousand dwellings; and its population was rapidly increased by exiles, criminals, fugitives from

justice, and desperate characters of all sorts, who fled to the new city for refuge.

Romulus, first King of Rome.—Seizure of the Sabine women.—Romulus was chosen the first King of Rome, and a Senate, of one hundred members, was established. But the Romans, as the inhabitants of the new city were called, were without wives; and as the neighboring people refused to give their daughters in marriage to such desperate characters, Romulus determined upon securing by stratagem what he could not obtain by force. He therefore arranged some games and shows at Rome and invited the neighboring people to attend. The Sabines and Latins came in great numbers, bringing their wives and daughters with them. When the shows began, Romulus gave a signal, whereupon the Roman youth rushed upon the unsuspecting strangers, seized the most beautiful maidens, and carried them off for wives.

War with the Sabines—Treachery and death of Tarpeia.—The outrage just mentioned led to a war between the Romans and Sabines. A large army under Titus Tatius, the Sabine king, laid siege to Rome. The Romans garrisoned and fortified the Capitoline Hill. Tarpeia, the daughter of the Roman commander, agreed to open the gates of the fortress to the Sabines if they would give her the golden bracelets which they wore on their arms. She accordingly opened the gates; but as soon as the Sabines entered the fortress, they killed the traitress with their brazen shields. Having gained possession of the Capitoline Hill, the Sabines were able to defy the Romans for a long time.

The Temple of Janus.—Many battles were fought between the Romans and the Sabines in the valleys which divide the Capitoline and Palatine Hills. At length, when the Sabines advanced near the city, the Romans retired inside the city walls and shut the gates. As the Sabines were about to enter the city, the gates flew open; the Romans again shut them; but they opened a second time; a mighty stream of water burst forth from the Temple of Janus, and swept away the Sabines who had entered the city. Ever afterward the gates of the Temple of Janus stood open when Rome was at war, that the gods might come out to aid the Romans; but in time of peace the gates were always closed.

Peace between the Romans and the Sabines—Union of the two nations.—The Romans made great efforts to retake the Capitoline Hill. At length, while the two armies were combatting, the Sabine wives of the Romans rushed between the contending forces, and, by their earnest entreaties and supplications, induced both parties to suspend hostilities. A treaty of peace followed, by which the Romans and the Sabines were to be united as one nation and Romulus and Titus Tatius were to reign jointly at Rome. Soon afterward Titus Tatius was killed at Lavinium, and Romulus thereafter reigned alone.

Death of Romulus.—After a reign of thirty-seven years, Romulus came to his death in an unknown manner. The Roman legend states that, while he was present at a public meeting in the Field of Mars, there arose a great tempest

and whirlwind, while at the same time the sun was eclipsed, and it was as dark as night. When the storm was over, and the light of the sun returned, Romulus was not to be found. It was believed by the superstitious Romans that his father, Mars, the god of war, had carried him to heaven in a fiery chariot. The Romans built a temple to Romulus, and worshiped him as a god by the name of Quirinus. (B. C. 716.)

Tullus Hostilius.—Fight between the Horatii and the Curiatii.—The peaceful Numa Pompilius was succeeded as king of Rome by the warlike Tullus Hostilius, during whose reign the Romans engaged in a war with the Albans. Just as the armies of the Romans and the Albans were about to engage in conflict, they agreed to have the contest decided by a combat to be fought by six champions, three from each side; and the defeated nation was to become subject to the victorious one. In the Roman army there were three brothers named Horatii, and in the Alban army there were three brothers named Curiatii. These, being fixed upon as the champions, took their places between the two armies and engaged in combat. After two of the Horatii had fallen, the other Horatius began to flee; but suddenly turning, he fell upon the three wounded Curiatii, and killed them in succession. When the victorious Horatius returned to Rome, he met his sister Horatia, who had been betrothed to one of the Curiatii. Horatia shrieked aloud, and reproached her brother for his bloody deed, which so enraged Horatius that he plunged a knife into his sister's heart, and she fell dead. For this crime Horatius was condemned to death, but he was afterward pardoned, because by his victory over the Curiatii he had saved the Romans from slavery. By the terms of the agreement made just before the combat, the Albans became subject to the Romans.

Expulsion of Tarquin the Proud and Abolition of Monarchy.—While the Romans were besieging the town of Ardea, Tarquin's sons, Sextus, Titus and Aruns, and their cousin Collatinus, got into a dispute about the good qualities of their wives, and all agreed to visit their homes by surprise. They found the wives of Sextus, Titus and Aruns feasting and making merry, while Lucretia, the wife of Collatinus, was found working at her loom. They all agreed that Lucretia was the worthiest lady. Sextus fell into a violent passion for Lucretia, and shortly afterward he behaved toward her in such a manner that she committed suicide. Lucius Junius Brutus, a relative of the royal family, bound himself by an oath to avenge the wicked act of Sextus. The outrage of Sextus roused the indignation of the Roman people; and Brutus, showing them the bloody corpse of Lucretia and haranguing them, induced them to expel the royal family from the throne of Rome, and to abolish monarchy altogether. Tarquin the Proud and his family, finding themselves abandoned, retired into voluntary exile (B. C. 510).

War with Porsenna, King of Clusium.—Horatius Cocles.—Porsenna, King of Clusium, also took the field in favor of the deposed Tarquin the Proud, and advanced against Rome with a large army. The Romans were driven across

the Tiber; but the Roman army was saved by the valor of Horatius Cocles, who alone defended the wooden bridge that crossed the river until the Romans had all crossed, and who then cut down the bridge while the enemy's darts were flying all around him, and at last plunged into the stream and reached the opposite shore in safety.

Mutius Scævola.—At length Porsenna pressed the siege of Rome so closely that the people in the city suffered greatly from famine. But the city was saved by the daring conduct of a young Roman named Mutius Scævola, who penetrated into the enemy's camp for the purpose of assassinating Porsenna, but who, by mistake, killed one of the attendants of the Clusian king. When threatened with torture unless he made a confession, Mutius Scævola thrust his right hand into a fire and kept it there until it was burnt off, to show Porsenna that no torture could induce him to betray the plans of his countrymen. Porsenna, admiring such patriotism and courage, gave Scævola his liberty; when the heroic young Roman warned the Clusian king to raise the siege of Rome and make peace, as three hundred young Romans had sworn to take his life, and that he had been chosen by lot to make the first attempt. Porsenna, alarmed for his life, immediately made peace with the Romans and marched home. So says the Roman legend; but other accounts say that Porsenna reduced Rome, and that the Romans afterwards recovered their independence.

Banishment of Coriolanus—Veturia and Volumnia.—When, during a famine in Rome, a supply of corn arrived from Sicily, the haughty patrician, Caius Marcius Coriolanus, proposed that none should be given to the plebeians until they consented to have the office of Tribunes abolished. This proposal aroused the indignation of the plebeians, and they procured the banishment of Coriolanus. Enraged at this treatment, Coriolanus went to the Volscians; and afterwards he led a Volscian army against Rome, and laid siege to the city, but he was finally induced to retreat from Rome by the entreaties of his wife, Veturia, and his mother, Volumnia, who had gone out of the city at the head of a deputation of Roman ladies to persuade Coriolanus not to be the cause of the ruin of his country. Coriolanus, yielding to the solicitations of his mother, exclaimed: "Mother, you have saved Rome, but you have ruined your son!" It is said that the Volscians, enraged at the retreat of Coriolanus from Rome, put him to death; but a tradition states that he lived to a great age in exile among the Volscians, and that he was often heard to exclaim: "How miserable is the condition of an old man in banishment!"

Dictatorship of Cincinnatus—Mount Algidus.—The Æquians, having broken their peace with Rome, and having formed a camp on Mount Algidus, lured an army of Romans into a narrow defile, where they must have been taken prisoners, had not the patrician Lucius Quintus Cincinnatus, after having been appointed Dictator, come to their relief. The Dictator was an officer superior to the Consuls and the Senate, and he had all power over the laws themselves. When the deputies of the Senate came to inform Cincinnatus that he had been ap-

pointed Dictator, they found him ploughing in the field. He immediately left his plough, took command of the army, and marched against the enemy; and, having surrounded them, compelled them to surrender to the Romans. At the end of sixteen days, Cincinnatus resigned the dictatorship and returned to his plough.

Invasion of Italy by the Gauls.—In 390 B. C., Rome was threatened by a more powerful enemy than she had ever before encountered—namely, the Gauls, who had crossed the Alps into Northern Italy, or Cisalpine Gaul. These barbarians were the inhabitants of the country then called Gaul (now France). According to tradition, a citizen of the Etruscan city of Clusium, having been refused redress from the magistrates of that city for an injury which he had received from one of the chief men of the city, resolved to have revenge on his country. He crossed the Alps into Gaul, taking with him a large quantity of the wines and fruits of Italy. Seeing that the barbarian Gauls were very much pleased with these presents, the injured Clusian invited them to go with him into Italy and take possession of the country which produced these delicacies. Immediately an immense horde of Gauls, taking with them their women and children, crossed the Alps into Italy, and marched to Clusium, to which they laid siege. The people of Clusium applied for aid to the Romans, who thereupon sent ambassadors to induce the Gauls to withdraw from Italy.

March of the Gauls to Rome.—The Roman ambassadors, having failed in the object of their mission, joined the Clusians in an attack on the besieging Gauls, and killed one of the Gallic chiefs. Brennus, the king of the Gauls, demanded satisfaction from the Roman Senate for the conduct of the ambassadors, and when his demand was rejected he took up his march, with 70,000 of his followers, directly for Rome.

Battle on the Allia—Rome Taken and Burned by the Gauls.—On the banks of the river Allia, eleven miles from Rome, a great battle was fought, in which the Roman army, consisting of 40,000 men, was hopelessly annihilated. This defeat rendered it impossible to defend the city, but 1,000 Romans garrisoned the Capitol, which they resolved to defend to the last extremity, while the greater number of the inhabitants of Rome fled for refuge to the neighboring towns. About eighty priests and patricians, resolving never to survive the ruin of their city, clothed themselves in their long robes and awaited death. When the Gauls entered Rome they found the city deserted, and a death-like silence prevailed; but when they entered the Forum, where sat the aged Senators, they were seized with superstitious awe at the sight of those venerable persons, whom they imagined to be divinities. At length, one of the Gauls seized hold of the white beard of Marcus Papirius, one of the Senators. The old man, enraged at this insult, struck the insolent barbarian with his ivory staff; whereupon the Gauls massacred the Senators, and set fire to Rome, which, with the exception of the Capitol and a few houses on the Palatine Hill, was totally reduced to ashes.

Defense of the Capitol.—The Gauls vainly attempted to obtain possession of

the Capitol. They endeavored to climb up the steep ascent in the night, and would have succeeded had not the noise of the sacred geese in the Temple of Juno awoken Marcus Manlius, who immediately hastened to the spot and hurled down the rocky precipice such of the Gauls as attempted to make their way inside the walls of the Capitol.

Departure of the Gauls from Rome.—When famine began to prey upon the Romans who garrisoned the Capitol, and sickness was rapidly reducing the numbers of the Gauls, Brennus, the Gallic chief, agreed to abandon Rome and its territory on condition of receiving a thousand pounds of gold. While the gold was being weighed, the banished patrician Camillus arrived with an army for the relief of the garrison, and ordered the gold to be taken back to the Capitol, saying: "It has ever been the custom of us Romans to ransom our country, not with gold, but with iron." A battle followed, and the Gauls were driven from Rome. The Gallic leader, Brennus, was soon afterward taken prisoner by the Romans and put to death. So says the Roman legend concerning the retreat of the Gauls from Rome; but according to a more probable account, the Gauls were recalled by a sudden invasion of their own country by the Venetians. The fact of the Gallic invasion of Italy and burning of Rome cannot be disputed, but many of alleged incidents and circumstances connected with it are fables.

Death of Regulus.—It is said that after the return of Regulus to Carthage, the Carthaginians, enraged at his conduct in breaking off the negotiations for peace, cruelly tortured him to death. After cutting off his eyelids and putting him into a dark dungeon, they exposed his naked eyes to the burning sun, and then put him into a cask set all around with sharp spikes, where he died in agony. This story is believed to have been invented by the Romans to fire their soldiers with deadly hatred against the Carthaginians; and there are good reasons for believing that Regulus died a natural death.

MEDIEVAL AND MODERN LEGENDS.

William Tell and Gesler.—The best known legend of the Middle Ages is that of William Tell and Gesler. Gesler was one of the tyrannical Austrian governors expelled by the Swiss. He placed the ducal cap of Austria in the market place of Altorf, and ordered all who passed to bow to the cap, in token of submission. William Tell refused to bow to the cap, and was thereupon imprisoned. Being a good archer, Tell was promised his freedom if he would shoot an apple from his son's head. Tell hit the apple and received his freedom, saying to Gesler: "Had I killed my son, I would have killed you." Tell is said to have been at once seized by order of the enraged tyrant, and conveyed across the lake of Lucerne in a boat in which were Gesler and his attendants; but a violent storm having arisen during the passage, Tell, who was a skillful boatman, was released in order that he might conduct the boat in

safety to the shore; and no sooner had the shore been reached than Tell leaped from the boat, and soon afterward dispatched an arrow into the tyrant's heart, killing him instantly.

Captain John Smith and Pocahontas.—Captain John Smith, the old Virginia pioneer, is said to have been taken prisoner by the Indians, whose chief, Powhatan, determined to put him to death; but Pocahontas, the daughter of Powhatan, is said to have interceded for the prisoner, and saved his life; whereupon Smith was released and permitted to return to Jamestown.

INDEX.

GENERAL REFERENCES.

- AARGAU, Landgraviate of, 2111
- Aaron, 361, 363, 369
- Abaff, Michael, 3059
- Abassa, sister of Haroun al Raschid, 1850
- Abbas Pasha, 3574, 3721
- Abbas the Great, 2488-2490
character and government of, 2489
conquers Ormuz, 2489
murders his children, 2489
- Abbas II., 2490
- Abbassides, 1846-1858
court of, at Bagdad, 1847
- Abbott, Rev. John S. C., 3963
- Abdallah, 1766
- Abdallah the Valiant, 2434
- Abdastartus, King of Tyre, 327
- Abd-el-Kader, 3581
- Abd el Wahab, 3519
- Abderrahman I., Khalif of Cordova, 1860-1863
architecture and art under, 1862
character of, 1863
dominions of, 1863
in Spain, 1863
palm trees introduced into Spain by, 1862
works of, 1862
- Abderrahman II., 1864
- Abderrahman III., 1865-1867
- Abderrahman IV., 1872
- Abderrahman V., 1872
- Abdi-Milkut, King of Sidon, 194
- Abdul Aziz, Sultan of Turkey, 3640, 3727
- Abdul Hamid I., Sultan of Turkey, 3166
- Abdul Hamid II., Sultan of Turkey, 3729, 3907
- Abdul Kerim Pasha, 3737
- Abdul Medjid, Sultan of Turkey, 3573, 3617
- Abdur Rahman Khan, 3796
- Abelard, 2052, 2139
- Abel of Denmark, 2412
- Abensberg, battle of, 3470
- Abercrombie, General, 3129
- Abercrombie, Sir Ralph, 3432
- Aberdeen, Earl of, 3571, 3620
- Abergavenny, Earl of, 2898
- Abibaal, King of Tyre, 326
- Abijah, King of Judah, 404
- Abimelech, King of Shechem, 386
- Abingdon, Earl of, 3571
- Ablavius, 1480
- Abo, Peace of, 3101
- Aboukir, battle of, 3426
- Abraha, 1705
- Abraham, 347-353
and Isaac, 352
and Keturah, 353
and Sarah, story of, 350-353
death of, 353
in Beersheba, 352
- Abraham, Plains of, battle of, 3130
- Abram, 347-350
battle of, with Chedorlaomer, 349
in Egypt, 348
migration of, to Canaan, 347
vision of, 349
wanderings of, 347, 348
- Absimarus, 1594
- Abu Bekr, Khalif, 1811-1816
character of, 1816
conquests of, 1813-1816
- Abu Jaafar, or Al Mansur, 1847, 1848
- Abul Abbas al Saffah, 1845, 1846
- Abulfeda, 1879
- Abu Obaidah, 1814-1819
- Abustakeen, 2032
- Abu Taleb, uncle of Mohammed, 1766-1776
- Abydos, 38
- Abyssinia, dervishes of, 3893
English expedition into, 3657
Italians in, 3893
Italian wars in, 3893, 3895

- Acacius, Bishop of Amida, ransoms Persian captives, 1664
 Acadia, in North America, 3017
 Academy, French, founded, 3970, 3996
 Acanthus, 906
 Acarnania, 707
 Achæa, 709, 752, 1028
 Achæans, 713, 722, 755
 Achæan League, 1021-1028
 Achæa Phthiotis, 706
 Achæmenes, King of Persia, 484
 Achæa, 709
 Achilles, 718
 Acholi, capture of, 2777
 Achmet, the astronomer, 1879, 2052
 Achmet I., Sultan of Turkey, 3056
 Achmet II., Sultan of Turkey, 3064
 Achmet III., Sultan of Turkey, 3083
 Achmet Aga, 3457
 Acre, battles of, 2067
 siege of, by Bonaparte, 3425
 siege and capture of, by the British, 3564, 3574
 siege and capture of, by the Egyptians, 3572
 siege and capture of, by the English and French Crusaders, 2067
 siege and capture of, by the Seljuk Turks, 2072
 Acropolis of Athens, 729, 942
 Actium, battle of, 1314
 Adalbert, Bishop of Bremen, 1935
 Adalbert, Count of Tuscany, 1914
 Adaluald, 1540
 Adam, 24
 Adams, Charles Francis, 4092, 4132, 4144, 4145, 4182
 Adams, John, 3203, 3216, 3239, 3973, 3983, 3996-4004
 death of, 4047
 Adams, John Quincy, 4030, 4044, 4045-4049
 Adams, Samuel, 3213, 3229
 Adashef, Alexis, 3047
 Addington, 3351, 3432
 Addison, Joseph, 3509
 Adelaide of Savoy, 3014
 Adhed, Khalif, 1875
 Adherbal, 1247, 1248
 Adiabène, 1437
 Adigrat, battle of, 3894
 Aditi, 622
 Adlercreutz, General, 3460
 Adlersparre, Lieutenant-Colonel, 3460
 Admetus, King of Mollossia, 841
 Admetus, King of Thessaly, 796
 cattle of, 728
 Adolf, Count of Nassau, 2103, 2104
 Adolphus, 1507
 Adolphus Frederick, of Sweden, 3148
 Adonis, 730
 Adorno, Antoniotto, 2580
 Adrapan, city of, 452, 453
 Adrian, 1421-1423
 Adrianople, battle of, 1498, 1499
 capture of, by the Russians, 3541
 Peace of, 3541
 Adrian I., Pope, 1888
 Adrian II., Pope, 1909
 Adrian VI., Pope, character of, 2572-2574
 forms coalition against Francis I., 2573
 reforms of, 2572
 Ediles, 1150
 Ægea, city of, 958
 Ægean Sea, 703
 Ægina, 753, 849
 Ægos-Potamos, battle of, 884
 Ægusa, battle of, 1201
 Ælia Capitolina, 1422
 Æmilianus, 1447
 Æmillius, 1204
 Æmillius Paulus, 1027, 1228
 triumph of, 1368-1370
 Æmilius Paulus, another, 1213, 1214
 Æneas, 1124
 Ænania, 707
 Æolians, 713, 756
 Æolus, 714, 733, 737, 743
 Æqui, 1122
 Æquians, 1122
 Æropus, 959
 Æschines, 999, 1011
 Æschylus, 929
 Æsop, 804
 Ætius, 1508, 1509
 Ætolia, 707
 Ætolian League, 1022-1026, 1224, 1225
 Ætolians, 714
 Afghanistan, dynasties of, in India, 2494
 invasions of Persia, 2490-2493
 civil war in, 3796
 Great Britain's wars with, 3564, 3792, 3794, 3795

- insurrection in, against the British, 3564, 3794
- British invasion of, 3564, 3799
- Affa, Archbishop of Paris, 3592
- Africa, 431, 1197, 1234, 1346
 - development of British territories in, 3909
 - Exarchate of, 1576
 - partition of, 3807
 - proper, 1234
 - recent events in, 3800, 3801, 3807, 3809, 3811, 3812, 3815, 3816, 3818-3831, 3837, 3893-3895
- Africa, East, suppression of slave trade in, 3812
- Africa, North, 431, 432
 - conquest of, by the Saracens, 1036, 1039
 - geography of, 431
 - divisions of, 431, 432
- Africa, South, critical questions in, 4430-4470
 - discovery of gold in, 4455
 - mineral resources of, 4455-4458
- Africa, West, defeat of Sofas in, 3812
 - French campaign in, 3856
- Agag, 392
- Agamemnon, 718, 719
- Aga Mohammed Khan, 2493
- Agana, temple at, 130
- Aganippe, fountain of, 738
- Agassiz, Louis J. R., 3954
- Agatho, 932
- Agathocles, 442, 443, 1188
- Agesilaus, King of Sparta, 528, 895-925
- Agesipolis, 900, 906
- Ages, government in prehistoric, 33
- Agilan, 1529
- Agilulf, 1540
- Agincourt, battle of, 2181, 2182, 2325, 2326
- Agis, I., 865, 894
- Agis II., 998
- Agis III., 1022
- Aglaia, 739
- Agnadello, battle of, 2557
- Agni, 622, 624
- Agobard, Bishop of Lyons, 294
- Agora, the Athenian, 834
- Agra, description of, 2500, 2501
- Agrarian Laws, 1151, 1171, 1239, 1243
- Agricola, Cælius Julius, 1412
- Agriculture, Egyptian, 73-75
 - in Babylonia, 285
 - in England in the 18th century, 3326
 - in Mexico, 2536
 - of the Hebrews, 415
 - of the Saracens, 1876
- Agri Decumates, 1347, 1348
- Agrigentum, siege of, 1196
- Agrippa, 1312, 1314, 1388
- Agrippa, Herod, 1086
- Agrippa, Menenius, 1149, 1401, 1402
- Agrippina, 1394
- Agulrre, 3700
- Ahah, King of Israel, 401
- Ahaz, King of Judah, 407
- Ahaziah, King of Israel, 405
- Ahaziah, King of Judah, 405
- Ahmed, 1874
- Ahmed Eyoub Pasha, 3740, 3744
- Ahmed Shah, 2511
- Ahriman (see Angra-Mainyus), 581-611
- Ahura-Mazda, 581-611
- Aidan, 1560
- Aix-la-Chapelle, Charlemagne's capital, 1895, 1897
 - Congress of, 3524
 - description of, 1897
 - Peace of, in 1668, 2983
 - Peace of, in 1748, 3111, 3112
- Akbar, 1839
- Akbar, 2497-2502
 - government of, 2499, 2500
 - laws of, 2499
 - literature and learning under, 2499
- Akbar Khan, 3564
- Akenside, Mark, 3510
- Ak-Palanka, capture of, 3752
- Akulgo, capture of, 3574
- Alabama, admission of, 4036
 - readmission of, 4237
 - secession of, 4119
- Alabama, Confederate vessel, battle between Kearsarge and, 4205, 4206
- Aladja-Dagh, battles of, 3748
- Alamandarus, 1690, 1699, 1721
- Al Amin, 1851
- Alan, Count of Brittany, 2135
- Alaric the Goth, 1504, 1506
- Alaric II., 1528
- Alaska, description of, 4235, 4236
 - disputes with Great Britain about, 4267
 - purchase of, 4235
- Alba Longa, 1116

- Albania, insurrection in, 3779
 Albany, Duke of, 2376, 2377
 Albany, John, Duke of, 2703, 2704
 Albany, New York, settlement of, 2940
 Albemarle, Duke of, 2877
 Albemarle, Earl of, 3136
 Albemarle, the ram, destruction of, 4192
 Alberic, 1915
 Alberoni, Cardinal, 3083, 3084
 Albert I., of Germany, 2104, 2107, 2112, 2113
 Albert II., of Germany, 2121
 Albert, Archduke of Austria, 2743
 Albert Edward, Prince of Wales, marriage of, 3655
 Albert, Elector, Archbishop of Mayence, 2596
 Albertus Magnus, 2052
 Albert of Saxe-Coburg-Gotha, prince consort of Queen Victoria, 3563
 Albert the Bear, territories of, 2083
 Albert the Uncourteous, 2104
 Albigenses, and Pope Innocent III., 2075
 atrocities of war against the, 2075-2082
 crusade against the, 2074-2082
 end of the war against the, 2082
 heresy of, 2075
 sect of, 2074
 Albinus, Clodius, 1435
 Albion, 1337
 Alboin, 1538, 1539
 Albret, Jeanne d', Queen of Navarre, 2747-2751, 2756, 2757
 Albuquerque, Dom Alfonso, in India, 2523-2525
 Alcæus, 796
 Alcantara, battle of, 2724
 Alcasarquivir, battle of, 2723, 2724
 Alcetas, 959
 Alcibiades, 868-883, 936
 Alcman, 795
 Alcuin, 1899, 2052
 Alderson, Colonel Alfred Hervey, 4504
 Aldrich, Thomas Bailey, 3962
 Alecto, 739
 Alemanni, home of the, 1592
 Alençon, Duke d', 2576
 Alençon, Duchess of, 2577
 Aleppo, conquest of, by the Saracens, 1818
 Alert, war vessel, 4017
 Alexander Balas, 1034, 1035
 Alexander de Medici, 2387
 Alexander, of Bulgaria, 3907
 abdication of, 3616
 Alexander, of Epirus, 1021
 Alexander, of Macedon, 829
 Alexander, of Phœæ, 919-926
 Alexander I., of Russia, 3432
 annexes Georgia to Russia, 3455
 at Frankfort-on-the-Main, 3490
 at Paris, 3494
 meeting between Napoleon and, 3455
 sympathy of, for Greece, 3536
 Alexander II., of Russia, 3621
 anniversary celebration of, 3784
 assassination of, 3785, 3786
 attempted assassinations of, 3781-3783
 declares Russia's position with Turkey, 3730
 government of, 3643
 rejects overtures of peace from allied powers, 3621
 Alexander III., of Russia, accession of, 3786
 rigorous measures of, 3790, 3791
 reforms of, 3791
 Alexander I., of Scotland, 2364
 Alexander II., of Scotland, 2366, 2367
 Alexander III., of Scotland, 2367-2369
 Alexander I., of Servia, 3911
 Alexander Nevski, Grand Duke of Russia, 2428
 Alexander II., Pope, 1937
 Alexander VI., Pope, 2388, 2486, 2548, 2549, 2592, 2595, 2629
 crimes of, 2388
 death of, 2388
 granting of indulgences by, 2595
 Alexander VII., Pope, 2981
 Alexander Severus, 1440-1442
 Alexander, son of Æuropus, 989
 Alexander the Great, 982-1004
 at the battle of Arbela, 995
 career of, 982-1004
 character of, 1003
 conquest of Persia by, 995
 conquests of, 982-1004
 cuts the Gordian Knot, 987, 988
 death of, 1002
 division of empire of, 1009
 dissolution of empire of, 1004-1010
 habits of, 1003
 in Egypt, 993, 994
 in India, 1000
 invasion of Asia by, 985

- marriage of, 997
- second marriage of, 1002
- successors of, 1004-1007
- victory of, at Issus, 990
- victory of, on the Granicus, 985
- Alexandra, Princess, wife of Albert Edward, Prince of Wales, 3655
- Alexandria, capture of, by the Persians, 1735
- capture of, by the British, 3725, 3879, 3880
- description of, 1830
- founding of, 994
- intellectual activity of, 1038-1040
- library and museum of, 1040
- library of, destroyed by the Saracens, 1830
- museum of, founded, 1039
- siege and capture of, by the Saracens, 1830
- the Pharos at, 1040
- Alexandrina Victoria, 3562
- Alexis I., 1602
- Alexis II., 1604
- Alexis III., 1605
- Alexis, Czar of Russia, 3052, 3063
- Alferl, 3512
- Alfonso, Count of Poitiers, 2150
- Alfonso, Don, 3699
- Alfonso I., of Portugal, 2396
- Alfonso II., of Portugal, 2396
- Alfonso III., of Portugal, 2397
- Alfonso IV., of Portugal, 2397
- Alfonso V., of Portugal, 2400, 2401
- Alfonso VI., of Portugal, 3023, 3024
- Alfonso XII., of Spain, 3699, 3897
- Alfonso XIII., of Spain, 3897, 3901
- Alfonso the Wise, 2395
- Alfred the Great, 1996-2007
 - as a fugitive, 2000
 - ascends the English throne, 1999
 - arts and industries under, 2005
 - character of, 2006
 - childhood of, 1998
 - death of, 2005
 - education of, 1998
 - great learning of, 2003, 2004
 - interesting incidents in life of, 1996-2007
 - laws of, 2004, 2005
 - real founder of the English monarchy, 1999
 - triumphs over the Danes, 2001, 2002
- vol. 15-18
- victory over the Danes, 2002
- Algeria, province of, 3582
- Algirdus, Mount, 1155
- Algiers, attack on, by Emperor Charles V., 2587
- battle of, 3555
- capture of, by the French, 3542
- conquest of, by the French, 3581, 3582
- war with, by the United States, 4034
- Algonquin Indians, 2532
- Alhakem I., 1863, 1864
- Alhakem II., 1867, 1868
- Alhambra, 2403
- Ali, the Khalif, 1833-1835
- Ali, Hyder, 3280, 3316, 3318
- Ali, Mehemet, 3564, 3572-3574, 3579
- Ali Pasha, Mehemet, 3772
- Alien Law, 3999
- Allison, Sir Archibald, 3959
- Aliwal, battle of, 3566
- Alix, Princess of Hesse, wife of Nicholas II. of Russia, 3880
- Al Kaymen, Khalif, 2038
- Alkolwalaki, battle of, 3455
- Allen, Ethan, Colonel, 3228, 3232
- seizes Fort Ticonderoga, 3228
- Allia, battle of the, 1165
- Alliança, vessel, 4274
- Alliance, the Holy, 3521-3524, 3532, 3533
- Allston, Washington, 3967
- Allumghire, 2512
- Alma, battle of, 3619
- Al Mamoun, 1851
- circumference of the globe reckoned under, 1852
- learning under, 1852
- patron of literature, 1851, 1852
- Almenara, battle of, 3013
- Al Mansur, Khalif of Bagdad, 1847, 1848
- Al Mansur, Regent of Cordova, 1868
- Almansa, battle of, 3010
- Almeida, in India, 2523
- Almeida, siege of, 3468
- Almeria, 3694
- Almeric, King of Jerusalem, 1874
- Almexial, battle of, 3023
- Almohades, 1869
- Al Mohdi, or Mahadi, brilliant reign of, 1848
- Al Moktador, 1853
- Almondhir, 1864
- Almonte, 4077, 4257

- Almoravides, 1869
 Al Mostasem, Khalif, of Bagdad, 1858
 Al Motassem, 1853, 1854
 Al Mothanna, 1819-1821
 Al Muezzeddin, or Moez, 1857, 1873
 Alompra, 4636
 Alp Arslan, 1601, 2039-2041
 Alphabet, the Phœnician, 334
 Alpheus, 705, 709
 Alsace, annexation of, to France, 2791, 2969
 Alsace-Lorraine, cession of, to Germany, 3677
 Alsen, capture of, 3644
 Altaku, battle of, 184
 Altenheim, battle of, 2987
 Altona, 3071
 Altranstadt, Peace of, 3068
 Alva, Duke of, 2562
 Alva, Duke of, another, 2586
 in Germany, 2617
 in Italy, 2717
 in Portugal, 2724
 in the Netherlands, 2730-2733
 Alvarez, General, 4357
 Alvinzi, Marshal, 3410, 3411
 Alyattes, King of Lydia, 424, 425, 472
 Amadeus I., of Spain, 3683, 3689, 3690
 Amalaric, first Gothic king in Spain, 1529
 Amalekites, 369, 385, 392, 394
 Amasis, 61
 Amasiah, King of Judah, 406
 Amazon river, explored by Orellano, 2529
 Amboise, conspiracy of, 2749
 Peace of, 2753
 Amboise, George d', Archbishop of Rouen, 2230, 2554
 Ambrister, Robert C., 4035
 Ambrose, St., 1490, 1491, 1502
 Ameer Abdur Rahman Khan, 3796
 Ameers of Scinde, 3565
 Amenopheum, 51
 Amenset, 51
 America, Aborigines of, 2530-2533
 America, Central, 4348
 America, Confederate States of, 4190
 arming of slaves, 4211
 end of, 4219
 fall of New Orleans, 4149, 4150
 fall of Petersburg, 4219
 fall of Richmond, 4219
 flight of Jefferson Davis from Richmond, 4219, 4222
 government moved to Richmond, 4135
 governors of, 4131
 invaded by National forces, 4132, 4133
 Jefferson Davis's reply to British protest, 4187
 organize a permanent government, 4145, 4146
 recognised as belligerents by France, Great Britain and Spain, 4131, 4132
 seize National property, 4121
 send Mason and Slidell to Europe, 4143
 surrender of Lee, 4220
 sympathisers of, in Canada, 4206
 vessels built in England for, 4162, 4182, 4186
 America, discoveries and explorations in, 2526-2530
 discovery of, 2526, 2527
 first English settlement in, 2931
 American Revolution, 3197-3292
 American army disbanded, 3284
 Articles of Confederation adopted by the American Congress, 3252
 Boston Massacre, 3215, 3216
 cessation of hostilities proclaimed, 3284
 taxation without representation, 3197-3226
 Declaration of Independence, 3239, 3240
 England and the, 3185-3351
 evacuation of Boston, 3234, 3235
 evacuation of New York city by General Washington, 3243
 first army of, assembled, 3228
 flag adopted, 3252
 General Howe takes possession of Philadelphia, 3249
 independence of the United States acknowledged by Great Britain, 3281, 3282
 independence of the United States recognized by France, 3256
 Indian outrages, 3259
 Massachusetts circular letter, 3213
 Minute-men, 3223
 mutineers march to Philadelphia, 3268
 port of Boston closed, 3218, 3219
 progress in Southern colonies, 3227
 repulse of the British at Charleston, 3235
 Stamp Act Congress, 3209
 excitement about, 3209
 surrender of Burgoyne's army, 3251
 surrender of Lord Cornwallis at Yorktown, 3271

- tea tax, 3316
 treasonable correspondence between
 Arnold and Clinton, 3266
 treaty between Holland and the United
 States, 3267
 triumph of, 3281, 3282
 Valley Forge, 3259, 3253
 Washington takes command of the
 American army, 3230
 Writs of Assistance, 3203, 3204
 America, Portuguese empire in, 2525, 2526
 Spanish empire in, 2538-2546
 Spanish possessions in, 2528-2530, 2538-
 2546
 America, United States of, 3273-4336
 Civil War in the, 4126-4228
 Amerigo Vespucci, 2527
 Amestris, wife of Xerxes, 516
 Amherst, General, 3129
 Amherst, Lord, 3557
 Amida, battles of, 1635-1638
 conquest of, by Kobad, 1685
 Amidas, 2698
 Amiens, battles of, 3673, 3675
 Peace of, 3351, 3433
 Aminidab, 390
 Amish, 3518
 Ammenemes III., 49
 Ammon, Jupiter, 994
 Ammonites, 370, 386, 391, 392
 Amon, King of Judah, 408
 Amoreux, 3688
 Amorites, 370, 377
 Amosis, King of Thebes, 50
 Amoy, capture of, 3565
 Ampère, 1124
 Amphictyon, 748
 Amphictyonic Council, 748, 963, 964
 Amphictyonic States, 982
 Amphion, 742
 Amphipolis, 758, 867, 919, 958, 961
 Amphissa, Locrians of, 976
 Amphitrité, 732, 733
 Ampudia, General, 4081
 Amran, Mound of, 271
 Amru, 1828-1831, 1834, 1835
 Amshaspanda, the seven, 590
 Amsterdam, capture of, by the French, 3401
 Amsterdam, New, 2940
 Amulius, 1125
 Amun, 94
 Amunoph I., 50
 Amunoph II., 51
 Amunoph III., 51, 52
 colossus of the Vocal Memnon, 51, 52
 Twin Colossal of, 51, 52
 Amurath I., Sultan of Turkey, 2477-2479
 Amurath II., Sultan of Turkey, 2482, 2483
 Amurath III., Sultan of Turkey, 2726
 Amurath IV., Sultan of Turkey, 3057
 Amurath V., Sultan of Turkey, 3727, 3729
 Amyntas, 512, 513, 959
 Amyrteus, 517, 518
 Amytis, wife of Nebuchadnezzar, 253
 Amytis, wife of Megybyzus, 516
 Ana, 293
 Anabaptists, in Germany, 2603, 2610, 2611
 Anabasis, of Xenophon, 934
 Anacletus, Antipope, 2084
 Anacreon, 796
 Anakim, extermination of, 381
 Anam, Empire of, 4636
 French territory in, 3636, 3844, 4637
 wars in, 3636, 3844, 4637
 Ananda, 656
 Anarchists, explode bomb in the French
 Chamber of Deputies, 3854
 outrages of, in Belgium, 3903
 in Paris, 3849, 3854, 3855
 in Spain, 3897, 3898
 Anastasius I., 1574, 1687
 Anastasius II., 1595
 Anatolia, 417
 Anat, or Anata, 293
 Anaxagoras, 938, 939
 Anaximander, 799
 Anaximenes, 799
 Ancient History, scope of, 22, 37-1514
 Ancona, seized by France, 3550
 Ancre, Marshal d', 2959-2961
 Ancus Martius, 1130, 1131
 Andelot, Sire d', 2748
 Andersen, Hans Christian, 3966
 Anderson, General Robert, 4118, 4119, 4123,
 4125-4127
 Andrassey, Count, 3726, 3757, 3762, 3768, 3772,
 3888
 André, Major John, 3266
 Andrew, Governor John Albion, 4209
 Andrew, Grand Duke of Russia, 2436
 Andrew I., of Hungary, 2436

- Andrew II., of Hungary, 2070, 2437
 Andrew III., of Hungary, 2437
 Andromeda, 741
 Andronicus, 1603, 1604
 Andros, Sir Edmund, 2935, 2939
 Andrussov, Peace of, 3043, 3053
 Angelo, Michael, 2387, 2804
 Angelus, Isaac, 1604, 2069
 Anglas, Boissy d', 3400
 Angles and Saxons in Britain, 1556-1571
 Angles, home of the, 1521, 1523
 Anglo-Saxon England, amusements in, 2027, 2028
 classes in, 1563, 1569
 dress, 2026
 food and feasts, 2027
 gleemen, 2027
 houses, 2026
 social life, 2026
 women, 2027
 Anglo-Saxons, character of the, 1566
 conversion of the, 1563, 1564
 criminal laws, 1570
 education, 1560
 government, 1568
 Heptarchy, 1559
 king's household, 1569
 ranks or orders, 1568, 1569
 religion, 1560
 serfs, 1569
 Angora, battle of, 2471, 2481
 Angoulême, Duke and Duchess of, 3496, 3524, 3533
 Angra-Mainyus, 585-593
 Angus, Earl of, 2704, 2705
 Anjou, Charles, Duke of, 2099, 2178
 Anjou, Duke of, 2736-2739
 Anjou, Philip, Duke of, 2919, 2929, 3002, 3003, 3014, 3015
 Anjou, Margaret of, wife of Henry VI. of England, 2331-2341
 Anna, Empress of Russia, 3094, 3097, 3100
 Annapolis, Maryland, 3285
 Annapolis, Nova Scotia, 2937, 3017
 Anne Askew, 2656
 Anne Boleyn, wife of Henry VIII., 2641-2651
 Anne, daughter of James II., of England, 2879, 2900, 2902, 2903, 2922-2930
 Anne Hyde, wife of James, Duke of York, 2879
 Anne Neville, wife of Richard III., 2342
 Anne of Austria, wife of Louis XIII., 2794, 2860, 2971-2975
 Anne of Beaujeu, Duchess of Bourbon, 2226, 2227
 Anne of Bohemia, wife of Richard II., 2310, 2312
 Anne of Brittany, 2227-2231, 2563
 Anne of Cleves, fourth wife of Henry VIII., 2586, 2654
 Anne, Queen of England, 2922-2930
 Annesi, Gennaro, 3021
 Annia Faustina, 1424
 Anquetil du Perron, 583
 Anselm, Archbishop of Canterbury, 2062, 2245
 Anselm, General, 3375
 Anseric, Bishop, 1912
 Anson, Commodore, 3098, 3099
 Ansprand, 1541
 Antæopolis, 38
 Antalcidas, 526, 904
 Peace of, 526, 904, 905
 Antietam, battle of, 4159, 4160
 Antigonus Gonatus, 1021-1022
 Antioch, 1029
 as a Persian city, 1697
 battle of, 1451
 city of, 340
 capture of, by Khosrou Nushirvan, 1695
 capture of, by the Crusaders, 2062
 sacked by the Persians, 1734
 youth of, massacred by Khosrou Nushirvan, 1695
 Antiochus Soter, 1030
 Antiochus Theos, 1030
 Antiochus the Great, 1031-1033
 Antiochus Epiphanes, 1033
 Antiochus Eupator, 1034
 Antiochus VI., 1035
 Antiochus Dionysus, 1037
 Antiochus Asiaticus, 1037
 Antiochus Grypus, 1036
 Antiochus Cysicenus, 1036
 Antiochus Sidetes, 1035
 Antipater, 998, 999, 1005, 1006, 1007
 Antiphilus, 1040
 Antiphon, 933
 Antiquity, monuments of, 22, 23
 Antisthenes, 1013
 Antitch, General, 3728

- Antoine de Bourbon, King of Navarre, 2747
 Antoninus, 1635
 Antoninus, Marcus Aurelius, 1425-1427
 Antoninus Pius, 1423, 1424
 Antoninus, Titus Aurelius, 1423
 Antony, Mark, 1298, 1303-1316
 Antwerp, battle of, 2729
 cruelties of the Spaniards in, 2687, 2688
 International Exposition in, 2903
 second siege and fall of, 2734
 Anu, or Ana, 293
 Anubis, 98
 Anundpal, defeated by Mahmoud, 2033
 Anville, Duke d', 3111
 Aosto, Duke of, elected King of Spain, 3663
 Apache Indians, 4237
 Apalachian Indians, 2949
 Apamea, 1064
 destruction of, 1708
 sacked by the Persians, 1734
 Aparanadius, 186
 Apelles, 1017
 Apennines, 1112
 Aphrodité, 730
 Apis, 101
 Apollo, 726
 Apollodorus, 41, 122, 1101
 Apollonia, 739
 Apollonius, the poet, 1100
 Appian, the Greek historian, 1104
 Appian Way, 1191, 1192
 Appius Claudius, the Blind, 1192, 1193
 Appius Claudius, the Decemvir, 1158, 1159
 Appomattox Court House, 4220
 Apraxin, 3121
 Apulia, 1118, 1119
 conquered by the Normans, 1995
 Aquæ Sextiæ, battle of, 1252, 1253
 Aqueducts, Roman, 1192
 Aquia Creek, battle of, 4133
 Aquinas, Thomas, 2052
 Aquitaine, 2131, 2133, 2139, 2141, 2145, 2157
 Aquitania, 1335
 Arabia, Abyssinian power in, 1705
 caravans of, 322
 conquest of, by Asshur-bani-pal, 204
 conquest of, by Sargon, 177
 description of, 1705, 1761
 invasion of, by Esar-haddon, 195
 rise of, 1750
 Arabia Petrea, 1090
 Arabians, arts, 1876
 description, 1762, 1763
 literature, 1876-1879
 marriage laws, 1789, 1790
 religion, 1765
 science, 1876-1879
 system of notation, 1876
 Arabi Pasha, 3724, 3725, 3799, 3800
 Arabic notation, 1876
 Arachosia, 456, 457
 Arachne, 729
 Arago, 3955
 Arago, Emanuel, 3589, 3669
 Aranda, Count d', 3146
 Aratus, 1100
 Aratus of Sicyon, 1022, 1023
 Arbaces, 470
 Arbas, siege of, 1721
 Arbela, battle of, 534, 995
 Arbitration, Court of, at Geneva, 4243
 Arbogastes, 1500
 Arbuthnot, Admiral, 3263
 Arbuthnot, Alexander, 4035
 Arcadia, 709, 710
 confederated cities of, 922
 Arcadians, 922-924
 Arcadius, 1503
 Eastern Roman Empire established under, 1573
 Arcesilas, 1017
 Archæus, 1031
 Archdale, John, 2948, 2949
 Archelaus I., 959
 Archias, 906
 Archidamus, 844, 858
 Archidamus, another, 918, 921
 Archimedes, 1097, 1098, 1216
 Architecture, Assyrian, 240, 241
 decline of, 214
 under Asshur-bani-pal, 206-208
 under Esar-haddon, 198-200
 under Sargon, 180-182
 under Sennacherib, 190-193
 Astec, 2537, 2538
 Babylonian, 274, 275
 Buddhist, 669
 Chaldean, 134-137
 Egyptian, 77
 Early Egyptian, 45-47
 French, 3030
 German, 1621

- Gothic, 9053
 Greek, 348, 349, 954-956
 Indian, under Shah Jehan, 2505
 Median, 483
 Persian, 563-577
 under Darius Hystaspes, 510
 under Xerxes, 517
 Phœnician, 335
 Roman, 1357, 1358
 Saracen, 1878
 under Abderrahman I., 1869
 Archons of Athens, 781, 782
 Arcis-sur-Aube, battle of, 3493
 Arc, Jeanne d', or Joan of, 2186-2208
 Arcola, battle of, 3410
 Arcot, defense of, 3114
 Ardaburius, 1862, 1863
 Ardazanes, 1863
 Ardys, 424
 Areobindus, 1863
 Areopagus, Court of, 782, 786
 Arès, 726
 Argæus, 959
 Argentine Republic, 4346, 4364, 4365
 Argolis, 710
 Argonautic Expedition, 717
 Argos, 714
 founding of, 714
 government of, 751
 plain of, 710
 Argyle, Duke of, 3081, 3082
 Argyle, Earl of, 2381, 2705
 Argyle, Marquis of, 2840, 2875
 Aria, 456
 Arians, 1482, 1496, 1498, 1501
 Ariarathes I. to V., 1058
 Ariarathes VI. to IX., 1059
 Ariaspes, 529
 Aribert I., 1541
 Aribert II., 1541
 Ariobarzanes I., 1054, 1059
 Ariobarnanes II., 1055, 1059
 Ariosto, 2804
 Ariovistus, 1381
 Aristarchus, 1040, 1097
 Aristides, 811-815, 827-830, 835-838
 Aristippus, of Cyrenè, 1016
 Aristobulus I., 1079
 Aristobulus II., 1080
 Aristomenes, 778
 Aristocracy, of France, 3332
 of England, 3331
 Aristophanes, 933
 Aristotle, 1012, 1013
 Aristozanes, 531
 Arius, 1469, 1466
 Arkansas, admission of, 4058
 civil war in, 4248
 guerrillas in, 4177, 4190
 readmission of, 4237
 secession of, 4131
 settlement of, 3119
 Arkansas, ram, 4150
 Arkansas Post, capture of, 4174
 settlement of, 3119
 Arkinholm, battle of, 2379
 Arkwright, Sir Richard, 3325, 3508
 his invention, 3325, 3508
 Arles, 1528
 Arlington, Earl of, 2879
 Arlington Heights, fortification of, 4133
 Armada, Invincible, 2694-2696
 destruction of, 2696
 Armada, second, 2697
 Armagnac, Count Bernard d', 2180
 Armagnac, Count John d', 2218
 Armagnac, James d', Duke of Nemours, 2219
 Armagnacs of France, 2180
 Armenia, 24
 Aryan migration to, 471
 independence of, 1608
 invaded by Persians, 1709
 invaded by Esar-haddon, 194
 invaded by Eastern Romans, 1737
 Kingdom of Greater, 1059-1061
 Kingdom of Lesser, 1061
 massacres in, position of foreign powers
 towards, 3914-3918
 pacification of, 3917
 partition of, between Rome and Persia,
 1656
 persecution of Christians in, 1674
 religious dissensions in, 1628
 religious troubles under Isdigerd II., 1668
 Roman and Persian, united under
 Khosrou, 1657
 scheme for reforms, 3915
 triumph of Christians over Persians in,
 1675
 Turkish atrocities in, 3914-3918
 western annexed to Rome, 1637
 Armenians, against the Turks, 3914-3918

- Arminians, 2745
 Arminius, or Hermann, 1389
 Armistead, General, 4173
 Armistead, Major, 4023
 Armstrong, Colonel John, 3118
 Armstrong, John, 2380
 Arngrim, King of Heligoland, 1963
 Arnold, Abbot of Cîteaux, 2076, 2078
 Arnold, Colonel Benedict, 3228, 3232, 3244, 3251
 treason of, 3256
 Arnold, Sir Edwin, 3958
 Arnold, Matthew, 3960
 Arnold of Brescia, 2084, 2086, 2140
 Arnold, Thomas, 3958
 Arnulf, King of Germany, 1913
 Arpad, 1913, 2436
 Arran, James Hamilton, Earl of, 2706, 2707
 Arras, Treaty of, 2223, 2343
 Arretium, 1183
 Arrian, 1103, 1104
 Arsaces, 519, 521
 Arsaces I., 1065
 Arsaces III., 1066
 Arsaces VI., 1066
 Arsaces the Great, 1068
 Arsacids, Parthian Empire of the, 1062-1073
 Arses, King of Persia, 532
 Art, American, 3967
 Assyrian, 240
 Babylonian, 276
 Chaldean, 134-138
 Egyptian, 83-85
 English, 3966
 Flemish, 3027
 French, 3028
 German, 2805
 Greek, 942-945, 1017
 Hindoo, 621
 Italian, 2804
 Mediæval, 2053
 Persian, 577-580
 Spanish, 3028
 Artabannes, 1652
 Artabanus, 516, 517
 Artabanus I., 1068
 Artabazus, 1284
 Artaphernes, 809
 Artaxata, 1059
 Artaxerxes I., 1606-1614
 art under, 1611
 character, 1607
 conquests, 1608, 1609
 government, 1609, 1610
 religious zeal, 1607, 1611-1614
 sayings, 1607, 1610
 wars with Rome, 1608, 1609
 Artaxerxes II., 1655, 1656
 Artaxerxes Longimanus, 517-519
 character of, 519
 Egyptian revolt against, 517, 518
 Artaxerxes Mnemon, 522-529
 Artaxerxes Ochus, 530-532
 Artemidorus, 1301
 Artemis, 729, 730
 temple of, at Ephesus, 730
 Arthenay, battle of, 3672
 Arthur, Chester Allan, 4258, 4260, 4261
 Arthur, King, 1559
 Arthur, of Brittany, 2144, 2145, 2264, 2265
 Artogerassa, 1652
 Artois, annexed to France, 2969
 Artois, Count of, 3359
 Arundel, Earl of, 22
 Aruns, 1135
 Arval brothers, of Rome, 1137
 Aryana-Vaêjo, 586
 Aryan, or Indo-European race, 26-28
 immigrants into Asia Minor, 420
 language, 26, 27
 migrations, 27
 Aryans, or Indo-Europeans, 26-28
 castes, 26, 27
 description, 26-28
 history, 26-28
 home, 26
 prehistoric, 26-28
 Arsanêné, 1722
 Asa, King of Judah, 404
 Ascalon, battle of, 2068
 Ascham, Roger, 2668
 Asculum, battle of, 1188
 Ashantees, British wars with the, 3557, 3559, 3815, 3830, 3831
 Ashburton, Lord, 4063
 Ashdod, revolt of, 177
 Ashe, General James, 2261
 Asher, tribe of, 381
 Ashruff, 2401
 Ashtoreth, 337
 Asia, compared with Europe, 33
 birthplace of religions, 33

- historical, 29, 30
- home of absolute despotism, 32, 33
- Portuguese empire in, 2522-2526
- proper, 1342, 1343
- Asia Minor, ancient, 417-430
 - conquered by Alexander the Great, 266
 - divisions of ancient, 419, 420
 - extent, 417
 - first Greek settlements in, 755-758
 - geography of, 417-420
 - Ionian cities in, 756, 757
 - islands of, 418
 - kingdoms in, 419-430
 - lakes in, 418
 - minerals of, 418
 - mountains in, 418
 - products of, 417
 - rivers in, 417, 418
- Asiph Jan, 2604
- Askew, Anne, 2656
- Ansnapper, 197
- Asoka, 656
- Asopus, 831
- Asordanes, 186
- Aspadan, 453
- Aspasia, 856, 857
- Aspern, battle of, 3740
- Aspis, 528
- Assassins, fanatical sect of the, in Syria, 9074
- Assayé, battle of, 3361
- Asshur, city of, founding of, 141
 - ruins of, 118
- Asshur, the god, 304, 305
 - favorite emblem of, 305, 306
 - sacred tree of, 306
 - the tutelary deity of the Assyrians, 305
- Asshur, the patriarch, 141
- Asshur-bani-pal, 200-213
 - amusements of, 205, 206
 - architecture and buildings under, 206-208
 - conquers Arabia, 204
 - conquers Egypt, 200, 201
 - conquers Susiana, 204
 - cruelties of, 209
 - greatness of, 208
 - rebellion of Sall Mugina against, 203
 - wars of, 200-204
- Asshur-bil-kala, 184
- Asshur-bil-nisi-su, 149
- Asshur-dayan I., 145
- Asshur-dayan II., 155
- Asshur-dayan III., 170
- Asshur-emid-ilin, or Saracus, 214-217
- Asshur-inadi-su, 186
- Asshur-isir-pal, 155-162
 - amusements of, 158, 159
 - edifices erected by, 159-162
 - military campaigns of, 155-158
 - public works of, 162
 - temples built by, 161
- Asshur-lush, 170
- Asshur-masur, 155
- Asshur-ris-ilim, 145
- Asshur-upallit, 142
- Assisi, Francis of, 2051
- Assyria, 141-243
 - and Egypt compared, 224, 225
 - blank historical period, 155
 - civilisation, 218-242
 - conquered by Cyaxares, 215, 216
 - conquers Chaldæa, 143, 144
 - conquests of, under Sargon, 176-180
 - conquests of, under Sennacherib, 183-190
 - decline of, 211-215
 - divided by the Medes and Babylonians, 216
 - extent of domain, under Shamas-Vul II., 166, 167
 - fall of, 215, 216
 - geography of, 116-119
 - greatness of, 205, 208, 209
 - great dominions of, 169
 - historians' accounts of, 122-125
 - historical periods of, 141
 - invaded by Nebuchadnezzar I., 145
 - invaded by the Medes, 214, 215
 - invaded by the Scythians, 211-213
 - kings of, table of, 217
 - obscure period of history of, 170
 - political history of, 141-217
 - power of, in Syria, 173, 174
 - products of, 116, 117
 - ruins of, 117, 119
 - sphinxes in, 197
 - synchronistic tablet, 154
 - temples and palaces in, 228
 - under Asshur-bani-pal, 200-214
 - under Asshur-isir-pal, 155-162
 - under Esar-haddon, 193-200
 - under Sargon, 176-183
 - under Sennacherib, 183-193

- under Shalmanesar II., 162-166
- under Shalmanesar IV., 173, 176
- under Tiglath-Pileser I., 145-144
- under Tiglath-Pileser II., 172-175
- Assyrian Canon, 22, 123
- Assyrian Empire, 141-217
- Assyrian religion, 304-319
 - character and methods of, 318
 - festivals, 317, 318
 - genii, 314, 315
 - gods, 304-314
 - inferior deities, 314
 - relation to Chaldean, 304
- Assyrians, 141-243
 - architecture, 238, 240, 241
 - armies, 234-238
 - bas-reliefs, 236, 237
 - chief deities, 304-314
 - civilization, 218-243
 - cruel and vindictive spirit, 232, 233, 237
 - cuneiform inscriptions, 123, 225, 226, 229
 - dress and weapons of warriors, 236
 - entertainments, 239
 - government, 238
 - history, sources of, 123-125
 - Kurds as descendants of, 216, 217
 - lion hunt, 232
 - mental and moral characteristics, 221-225
 - metallurgy, 241, 242
 - military genius, 232
 - music, 239
 - obelisks, 236
 - origin, 219, 220
 - physical characteristics, 225
 - practical arts, 241, 242
 - treatment of captives, 237, 238
 - vices, 223, 224
 - warfare, 234
 - war chariots, 234, 235
- Asti, 2086
- Astoph, King of the Lombards, 1542, 1543
- Astrea, 737
- Astronomy, Chaldean, 139, 140
 - Ptolemaic, 1098, 1099
 - modern, 2801, 2802, 3025, 3026, 3507, 3508, 3565
- Asturias, 1840, 1859, 1870, 2390, 2391
- Astyages, 473-478
 - and Cyrus, 475-478, 485
 - character of, 473, 474
 - court of, 473, 474
 - domestic life of, 475
 - establishes Magism in Media, 474
- Atace, 1526
- Atahualpa, Inca of Peru, 2542, 2543
- Ateta, 44
- Athalaric, 1535
- Athaliah, wife of Jehoram, 405
- Athanagild, 1529, 1530
- Atharic, 1497
- Athanasius, St., 1105, 1469, 1489, 1490
- Atharva-Veda, 628
- Atheas, 276
- Athelstan, 2007-2009
- Athènes, 714, 728, 729
 - statues of, 729, 942, 943
 - temple of, 729, 942
- Athenree, battle of, 2289
- Athens, 714, 781-793
 - archons, 781, 782
 - Acropolis, 955
 - Areopagus, 782, 786
 - captured by Xerxes, 824
 - classes in, 781
 - decline of, 886
 - early people of, 781
 - founding of, 714
 - glory of, 833-857
 - as leading state of Greece, 833-857
 - long walls of, 847
 - ostracism, 791
 - Parthenon, 955
 - Piræus, 836
 - plain of, 955
 - political parties, 783
 - port of, 836
 - restored democracy, 886, 889
 - rulers of, 834
 - Spartan invasion, 858
 - supremacy of, 833-857
 - surrender of, 885, 886
 - under Pericles, 845-861
 - under the laws of Solon, 784-783
- Athor, or Hathor, 96
- Athos, Mt., 957
- Athothis, or Thoth, 44
- Atlanta, Georgia, Cotton States' Exposition
 - at, 4274
 - siege and fall of, 4202, 4203
- Atlantic Cable, 4234
- Atlas, 741
- Atradata, 475, 485

- Atropos, 739
 Attalus, 1049
 Attalus Philadelphus, 1051
 Attalus Philometor, 1051
 Attica, 708
 plains of, 704
 Attila, King of the Huns, 1508, 1509
 Attyadæ, 422
 Auber, 3968
 Aubigny, Esmé Stuart, Lord of, 2714
 Auckland, Lord, 3557, 3564
 Audoin, 1538
 Audubon, John James, 3960
 Auersperg, Prince, 3766
 Auerstadt, battle of, 3448
 Auerswald, 3596
 Augereau, General, 3414, 3497
 Auger, General, 4154
 Aughrim, battle of, 2918
 Augsburg, Confession of, 2606, 2607
 Diet at, 2606
 Interim, 2618
 League of, 2994, 2995
 Religious Peace of, 2623
 Augurs of Rome, 1140
 Augusta, siege and fall of, 3270
 Augustan Age, of Rome, 1370-1375
 of England, 2930, 3509
 of France, 2981, 3026
 Augustenburg, Frederick, Duke of, 3644
 Augustin, Emperor of Mexico, 4350
 Austin, or Austin, missionary to the Anglo-Saxons, 1564
 Augustine, St., Christian Father, 1491-1492
 Augustine, St., in Florida, founded, 2546
 Augustulus, Romulus, 1511
 Augustus Cæsar, 1379-1392
 Aulaff, 2008
 Aumale, Duke d', 2621
 Aumale, Dunkel d', another, 3705
 Aurelian, 1450-1452
 Aurelius, Marcus, 1425-1427
 Aurora, 736
 Aurungzebe, 2505-2508
 becomes Emperor, 2505
 court of, 2507
 dominions of, 2506
 Fakir rebellion and, 2507
 government of, 2506, 2507
 Austen, Jane, 3958
 Austin, or Augustin, missionary to Anglo-Saxons, 1564
 Austin, Alfred, 4542
 Austerlitz, battle of, 3443
 Australia, English migration to, 3568
 gold discovered in, 3569
 government of, 3568
 industries in, 3568, 3569
 penal colonies in, 3568
 settlement of, 3568
 South and West, 3569
 Austria, 1893, 1894
 aids the Slavs, 3602
 alliance of, with France, 3118
 wars with France, 2568, 2783, 2983, 2994, 3001, 3099, 3370, 3421, 3440, 3469, 3486, 3627
 and Hungary, 3601-3605
 and Italian independence, 3627-3630
 and Prussia, 3644-3650
 at the close of the Seven Years' War, 3137
 at the close of the War of the Austrian Succession, 3112
 claimants to the throne of Charles VI., 3100
 Duchy of, 2805, 2115
 Dukes, Archdukes and Emperors of, 4980
 invaded and vanquished by Napoleon, 3440-3441, 3469-3471
 Italy and Prussia declare war against, 3646
 joins the coalition against France, 3486
 Peace of Pressburg, 3443
 Peace of Schoenbrunn, 3471
 Pragmatic Sanction, 3089, 3099
 Quadruple Alliance, 3084
 rebellion of Hungary, 3601-3605
 reforms in, 3650
 reforms of Joseph II. in, 3149
 reforms under Maria Theresa in, 3149
 invasion of Silesia, 3122
 treaty with Italy, 3648
 treaties with Napoleon, 3443, 3471
 Austria, Charles, Archduke of, 3002, 3003
 at Barcelona, 3009
 at Naples, 3010
 driven from Spain, 3013
 Austria, Charles, Archduke of, another, 3409, 3410, 3412, 3470, 3471
 Austria-Hungary, affairs of, 3649-3650

- conquest of Bosnia and Herzegovina, 3772
- Germany and, 3650
- and Russia, 3756
- recent events in, 3888-3892
- religious questions in, 3889
- reorganization of, 3650
- Herzegovina revolts against, 3772
- revolutions in, 3600-3605
- Russo-Turkish War and, 3756
- under Francis Joseph, 3602
- Austrian Italy, revolutions in, 3608, 3609
- Austrian Succession, War of the, 3099-3112
- Autharis, 1539
- Autichamp, Count d', 3407
- Auto da fé, in Spain, 2720
- Autophradates, 526, 528
- Avars, or Huns, 1524, 1580
 - conquered by Charlemagne, 1894
 - converted to Christianity, 1894
 - in Thrace, 1581
 - overthrown by the Turks, 1580
- Avatars of Vishnu, 643, 644
- Avaux, Count of, 2912
- Averell, General William Woods, 4192, 4199
- Averrhoes, 1879
- Averysboro', battle of, 4215
- Avicenna, 1879, 2052
- Avidius Cassius, 1425
- Axum, ruins of, 110, 111
- Ayacucho, battle of, 4346, 4347
- Ayesha, 1771
- Ayllon, Vasquez de, 2529
- Ayoob Khan, 3795, 3796
- Azeglio, Massimo d', 3586
- Azerbaijan, 451
- Azermidocht, daughter of Siroes, 1749
- Azov, 3054, 3065
- Astecs, 2535-2540
 - civilization, 2535
 - government, 2535, 2536
 - industries, 2536
 - learning, 2536
 - priests, 2537
 - religion, 2536
 - social customs and civil laws, 2536
- Azuri, King of Ashdod, 177
- BAĀL, 301, 337
- Baġlbec, 1029
- Baġleazar, King of Tyre, 327
- Baġl-Moloch, 337
- Baġsha, 400
- Babel, Tower of, 24, 113
- Babil mound, 269, 270
- Baber, 2495, 2496
- Babœuf, Gracchus, 3407
- Babylon, 116, 251, 255, 256, 265-273, 491, 1002, 1059
 - capture of, by the Assyrians, 153
 - description of, 265-273
 - fall of, 255-257
 - walls of, 250, 251, 268, 269
 - Hanging Gardens at, 251, 268
 - interregnum at, 190
 - Jews led captive to, 250
 - Kings of, 257, 258
 - mounds of, 269-273
 - palaces of, 267, 268
 - remarkable edifices of, 266-268
 - ruins of, 269-273
 - Amran mound, 271
 - Babil mound, 269, 270
 - El Homeira mound, 271, 272
 - The Kasr mound, 270
- Babylonia, 119-122
 - agriculture in, 285
 - annexed to Assyria, 178, 179
 - armies of, 282, 283
 - Birs-i-Nimrod of, 273
 - civilization of, 259-286
 - independence of, 243, 244
 - invaded by Cyrus the Great, 255-257
 - invaded by Sargon, 245, 246
 - invaded by Tiglath-Pileser I., 243
 - music in, 285
 - pretenders to throne of, 183
 - priests and wise men of, 283, 284
 - religious festivals of, 321, 322
 - under Merodach-Baladan, 245, 246
 - under Nabonadius, 254-257
 - under Nabonassar, 244, 245
 - under Nabopolassar, 246-248
 - under Nebuchadnezzar, 248-253
 - wars with Assyria, 243-245
 - women of, 262, 286
- Babylonian Captivity of the Jews, 409, 410
- Babylonian civilization, 259-286
 - advantages over Assyrian, 259
 - cylinders of, 261
- Babylonian Empire, 125-132, 243-257
 - early, 125-132
 - end of, 257

- extent and productions of, 119-122
 - founding of, 246, 247
 - later, 243-257
 - resemblance to Assyrian, 259
- Babylonian religion, 319-323
 - deities, 319, 320
 - identity with Chaldean, 319
 - idols, 320, 321
 - marriage customs, 263, 321, 322
 - priests and temples, 321-323
 - symbolism, 322
- Babylonians, ancient, computation of time, 21
 - architecture, 274-276
 - arms and equipments, 282
 - arts and sciences, 274-281
 - astronomy and astrology, 277-281
 - commerce and manufactures, 284, 285
 - customs and dress, 281, 282
 - food, 285
 - ingenuity, 274
 - intellectual ability, 282
 - luxury, 263
 - mechanical arts, 276
 - physical characteristics, 261
 - political history, 243-257
 - punishments, 264
 - race, 260, 261
 - religion, 319-323
 - social life, 263
- Bacchanates, 735
- Bacchus, 735
- Bach, John Sebastian, 3512
- Bacon, Francis, Lord, 2699, 2819, 3025
- Bacon, General, 4305
- Bacon, Nathaniel, 2932
- Bacon, Roger, 2052, 2978
- Bactra, 457
- Bactria, 457, 458, 489, 1061, 1062
- Bactriana, 997
- Badajoz, 3468.
- Baden-Durlach, George Frederick, Margrave of, 2779
- Baden, Grand Duchy of, 3593, 3598, 3599
- Baden, Louis, Prince of, 3006, 3008, 3064
- Baden-Powell, Colonel Robert Stephenson Smyth, 3227, 3229, 3230, 4474, 4503, 4541-4543
- Bagdad, conquered by Togrul, 2038
 - destroyed by Tamerlane, 2469
 - founding of, 1847
 - siege and capture of, by the Mongols, 2459
- Bagistan, 452
- Bagoas, 531
- Bagration, Prince, 3456, 3481
- Bahadur Shah, 2509
- Bahman-Dsul-hadjib, 1819
- Bahram, 1723-1730
 - coins of, 1730
 - defies Khosrou Parviz, 1723
 - proclaims himself King of Persia, 1728
 - revolts, 1723
- Baie, 1423
- Bailey, Lieutenant-Colonel Joseph, 4190
- Baillie, Joanna, 3987
- Bailly, 3361, 3364, 3385
- Bainbridge, Commodore William, 4007, 4017
- Bajazet I., 2444, 2445, 2469, 2470, 2479-2481
 - and Tamerlane, 2480, 2481
 - at Constantinople, 2480
 - wars of, 2480
- Bajazet II., 2485, 2486
- Baker, Colonel Edward Dickinson, 4137
- Baker Pasha, 3800
- Baker, Sir Samuel, 3953
- Balaam, 370
- Balak, King of Moab, 370
- Balaklava, battle of, 3619, 3620
- Balance of power in Europe, 2547
 - origin of, 2547
 - system of, 2547-2563
- Balas, Alexander, 1034, 1035
- Balas, or Palash, 1678-1680
 - coins of, 1679, 1680
- Balbinus, 1444, 1445
- Balbo, Cesare, 2586
- Balboa, Vasco Nufes de, 2528
- Baldissera, General, 3895
- Baldur, 1355
- Baldwin V., Count of Flanders, 2069, 2070, 2134, 2441, 2442
- Balfour, Arthur James, 3804
- Balfour, Colonel, 2270
- Baliol, John, King of Scotland, 2280, 2281, 2289, 2370
- Balkan states, 3906-3914
- Ball, John, 2305, 2306
- Ball's Bluff, battle of, 4137
- Balmaceda, José Manuel, 4308-4373
- Balmerino, 3108
- Balmerinoch, Lord, 2832

- Baltimore, Cecil Calvert, Lord, 9941, 9942
 Baltimore, British attack on, 4022, 4023
 Massachusetts troops in, 4130
 riot in, in 1812, 4015, 4016
 riot in, in 1877, 4255
 Bancroft, George, 3963
 Bancroft, Hubert Howe, 3963
 Banda Oriental, 4346
 Banner, 2792, 2794
 Bangkok, French fleet at, 3852, 3853
 Banking, origin of, 9054, 9055
 Banks, Nathaniel P., General, 4153, 4155,
 4156, 4158, 4176, 4189, 4190
 Bannockburn, battle of, 2288, 2289, 2373
 Bannack Indians, war with the, 4256
 Bapaume, battle of, 3675
 Baragnon, 3718
 Barak and Deborah, story of, 384
 Baratieri, General, 3894, 3895
 Barbarian monarchies, sovereigns of the, 1571,
 1572
 Barbarossa, Frederick, of Germany, 2066,
 2067, 2085-2091
 conquests in Italy, 2085-2089
 expeditions into Italy, 2085-2089
 government, 2089
 in Palestine, 2090
 in the Third Crusade, 2066, 2067, 2090
 legends of, 2090, 2091
 marriage of, 2087
 Peace of Constance, 2088
 quarrel with Pope Adrian IV., 2086
 receives homage from Poland and Hun-
 gary, 2087
 receives the Lombard crown, 2086
 war with Milan, 2086, 2087
 Barbarossa, Heyraddin, 2584-2586
 Barbaroux, 3368, 3382, 3385
 Barbault, Anna Letitia, 3958
 Barbary States, 3542, 3555, 3986, 3987, 4007,
 4034
 pirates of the, 3555, 3986, 3987, 4007, 4034
 Barbes, 3591
 Barbosa, General, 4372, 4373
 Barbosa, Ruy, 4380
 Barca, Hamilcar, 444, 1901, 1904, 1905
 Barcelona, 2923, 3009
 Bar, Confederation of, 3160, 3161
 Barclay, Commodore, 4019
 Barclay, Robert, 2943
 Barclay de Tolly, 3460, 3481, 3489
 Barebone, "Praise God," 2859
 Barebone's Parliament, 2859
 Barenberg, 2780
 Bari, 1907
 Barksdale, General William, 4172
 Barlaimont, Count, 2728
 Barlow, Arthur, 2698
 Barlow, Sir Hilario, 3557
 Barmecides, massacre of the, 1850
 Barneveldt, Van Olden, 2744, 2745
 Barossa, battle of, 3468
 Barragan, General, 4354
 Barras, General, 3396, 3403, 3414, 3427
 Barrere, 3384, 3388, 3389, 3394, 3399
 Barrington, Admiral, 3274
 Barrot, Odillon, 3588
 Bartholdi, Frederic Auguste, 4262
 Bartholomew, St., Massacre of, 2756-2760
 Barton, Colonel William, 3247
 Barton, General Geoffrey, 4504
 Barton, Mr., Prime Minister of Australia,
 3832
 Bashaw of Tripoli, 4007
 Bashi-Bazouks, 3728, 3737, 3741
 Basil I., 1598, 1599
 Basil II., 1600
 Basil, St., 1466, 1467
 Basle, battle of, 1281
 Council of, 2122
 Peace of, in 1499, 2127
 Peace of, in 1795, 3401, 3402
 Basques, 27, 1524
 Bassianus, 1439
 Bassora, battle of, 1834
 Bastille, destruction of the, 3363
 Batavia, 2745
 Batavian Republic, 3401
 Bath, 2485
 Bathori, Stephen, King of Poland, 3040
 Baths, Roman, 1361
 Bathsheba, 396, 397
 Baton Rouge, battle of, 4150
 Batoum, 3735
 Baudin, Rear-Admiral, 3579
 Baum, Colonel, 3250
 Bautzen, battle of, 3486
 Bavaria, conquered by Charlemagne, 1893
 joins the allies against Napoleon, 3489
 Kings of, 4887
 made a kingdom by Napoleon, 3443
 partition of, by Joseph I., 3153

- under Louis I., 3585
 Bavaria, Charles Albert, Elector of, 3100
 Bavaria, Charles, Prince of, 3647
 Bavaria, Charles Theodore, Elector of, 3153, 3154
 Bavaria, Duchy of, conferred on Otho of Wittelsbach, 2090
 Bavaria, Electoral Prince of, 3002
 Bavaria, Henry, Duke of, 1954
 Bavaria, Maximilian Emanuel, Elector of, 2997
 Bavarian Succession, War of the, 3153
 Bayard, Chevalier, 2565, 2574, 2575
 Bayard, Thomas Francis, 4261, 4269
 Bayeux Tapestry, 2241
 Bayle, 2981, 3027
 Bazaine, Marshal, 3622, 3663-3667, 3672, 3709
 Bazardjik, 3456
 Beachy Head, battle of, 2915, 2997
 Beaconsfield, Earl of, 3661, 3728, 3733, 3768, 3795, 3797, 3798
 brilliant diplomacy of, 3770, 3771
 Beattie, James, 3510
 Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick, 2330
 Beaufort, North Carolina, capture of, 4152
 Beaufort, South Carolina, capture of, 4142
 Beaufort, Cardinal, 2331
 Beaufort, Duke of, 2976
 Beaufort, Edmund, Duke of Somerset, 2332, 2333
 Beaugency, battle of, 3673
 Beauharnais, Eugene, 3437, 3440, 3443, 3471, 3488, 3491
 Beauharnais, General, 3385
 Beauharnais, Hortense, 3437
 Beauharnais, Josephine, 3404
 Beauharnais, Stephanie, 3443
 Beaumont, battle of, 3667
 Beaumont, Francis, 3027
 Beauregard, Fort, 4142
 Beauregard, General Pierre Gustave Toutant, 4126, 4127, 4135, 4147, 4196, 4204, 4215
 Beausajour, Fort, capture of, 3117
 Becket, Thomas à, Archbishop of Canterbury, 2254-2256
 assassination of, 2256
 Beckwith, Lieutenant-General, 3474
 Beecher, Rev. Henry Ward, 3961
 Beecher, Rev. Lyman, 3961
 Beethoven, 3967
 Bede, the "Venerable," 1567, 2052
 Bedford, Duke of, 2184-2186, 2209, 2228-2231
 Bedford, Duke of, another, 3192
 Bedouins, descendants of Ishmael, 1762
 Bedr, battle of, 1782
 Bega, battle of, 3064
 Beggars, of the Netherlands, 2729
 Behistun Inscription, 484, 495, 502, 504, 510
 Behring, Captain Vitus, 3519, 4236
 Bel, or Bel-Nimrod, 293, 294
 Belchite, battle of, 3466
 Belesis, 470
 Belesys, 530
 Belfort, siege of, 3675, 3676
 Belgæ, 1281
 Belgian Revolution, 3545, 3546
 Belgians, oppressions of the, 3545
 Belgica, 1336
 Belgium, Anarchist outrages in, 3903
 annexes Kongo Free State, 3903
 independence of, 3546
 Kings of, 4888
 political crisis in, 3903
 prosperity of, 3546
 revolution in, 3545, 3546
 union with Holland, 3545
 Belgrade, battle of, 3083
 Peace of, 3097
 siege of, 3097
 Belisarius, at Chalcis, 1691
 conquers Sicily, 1577
 conquests in Italy, 1535
 defeats Bulgarians and Slavonians, 1581
 in Persarmenia and Mesopotamia, 1688, 1689
 captures Fort Sisauranôn in Persia, 1696
 old age and death of, 1581, 1582
 Bel-Kudur-uzur, 144
 Bellegarde, 3492
 Belleisle, Marshal, 3101, 3103
 Bellerophon, British frigate, 3500
 Belleville, battles of, 3493, 3688
 Bellini, 3967
 Bell, John, 4114
 Bellona, 726
 Belmont, battle of, in American Civil War, 4140, 4141
 Belmont, battle of, in British-Boer War, 3927, 4482
 Belshazzar, or Bel-shar-uzur, 256, 257
 Beltis, or Mullita, the "Great Mother," 294, 295

- Bem, General, 3603, 3605
 Bender, Field-Marshal, 3406
 Bender, fortress of, 3161
 Benedek, Field-Marshal, 3647
 Benedetti, Count, 3661, 3662, 3664
 Benedict, Henry, Cardinal of York, 3112
 Benedictines, 2050
 Benedict VI., Pope, 1927
 Benedict VII., Pope, 1928
 Benedict, VIII., Pope, 1933
 Benedict IX., Pope, 1934
 Benedict X., Pope, 1937
 Benedict XI., Pope, 2162
 Benedict, XII., Pope, 2110
 Benevento, battle of, 2099
 Benevento, Duke of, 1894
 Beneventum, 1118
 Benevolences, 2443, 2354
 Bengal, 3115
 Ben-hadad I., King of Damascus, 341
 Ben-hadad II., King of Damascus, 341
 Ben-hadad III., King of Damascus, 342
 Benham, Admiral, 4271
 Benitzki, General, 3752
 Benjamin, 357
 Benjamin, Judah Philip, 4115, 4120, 4222
 Benjamin, tribe of, 381
 Benningsen, 3450, 3452, 3489
 Bennington, battle of, 3250, 3251
 Bentham, Jeremy, 3454, 3956
 Bentinck, Lord William Cavendish, 3557
 Bentivoglios, of Bologna, 2559
 Beranger, French poet, 3964
 Beranger, King of Italy, 1913
 Berbers, 1839, 1840
 Berbice, 4274
 Berenice, 1046
 Beresford, Marshal, 3468, 3492, 3531
 Beresina, passage of the, 3484
 Bergen, 2106
 Bergen-op-Zoom, Treaty of, 2744
 Bergerac, Peace of, 2763
 Bergerot, General, 3682, 3688
 Berghen, battle of, 3425
 Berkeley, Lord, 2943
 Berkeley, Sir William, 2932
 Berlin, captured by the Austrians and Russians, 3121, 3128
 Congress of the European Powers at, 3769
 Treaty of, in 1878, 3770, 3771
 Berlioz, 3968
 Bermuda Hundred, 4196, 4197
 Bernadotte, General, 3440, 3442, 3448, 3475, 3478
 as Crown Prince of Sweden, 3478, 3480, 3487-3492, 3582
 Bernard, Francis, Governor, 3214
 Bernard, St., Abbot of Clairvaux, 2064, 2140
 Bernard, St., Mt. Great, Bonaparte's passage of, 3429
 Berosus, 23, 24, 122, 123, 125
 Berry, Duchess de, 3524, 3576
 Berry, Duke of, 3524, 3576
 Berry, General, 4170
 Bertha, wife of Ethelbert, King of Kent, 1563
 Bertha, wife of Philip I., 2135
 Bertharit, 1541
 Berthier, General, 3416, 3417
 Bertrand de Goth, Archbishop of Bordeaux, 2163
 Bertrand, General, 3502
 Berwick, Duke of, 3006, 3008, 3084, 3095
 Berwick, fall of, 2375
 Pacification of, 2834
 Treaty of, 2709
 Bessas, 1700, 1701
 Bessieres, Marshal, 3486
 Bestucheff, 3119
 Beth-horon, battle of, 379
 Bethune, Maximilian de, Duke of Sully, 2953
 Beth-Yakin, 178, 188
 Beust, Baron von, 3650, 3726, 3888
 Beylan, battle of, 3572
 Beza, Theodore, 2751
 Bezabde, capture of, 1638, 1639
 Beziers, massacre of, 2077, 2078
 Bhagavad-Gita, extracts from, 638, 639
 Bias, 804, 807
 Bible, King James's version of, 2813, 2814
 Luther's translation into German, 2602
 Septuagint version, 1040, 1041
 Tyndale's and Coverdale's translations into English, 2648, 2649
 Biddle, Captain, 3255
 Biddulph, General, 2792
 Biela, battle of, 3745
 Bienville, Governor, 3018
 Big Bethel, battle of, 4133
 Big Black River Bridge, battle of, 4174, 4175
 Bilbao, siege of, 3698

- Billaud-Varennes, 3394, 3399
 Billings, William; first American musical composer, 3290
 Bindoes, 1724, 1727, 1731
 Bion, 1100
 Biron, Colombian admiral, 4345
 Biron, French general, 3385
 Biron, French marshal, 2955
 Biron, Russian Chancellor, 3094, 3100
 Birs-i-Nimrud, temple of Nebo at Borsippa, 273, 274
 Bismarck, Count Herbert, 3870
 Bismarck, Prince, 3639, 3640, 3645, 3646, 3661, 3662, 3664, 3670, 3672, 3676-3678, 3726, 3768-3770, 3775-3778, 3868-3870, 3872, 3875
 and North German Confederation, 3648
 appointed Chancellor, 3701
 attempted assassination of, 3704
 death of, 3875
 political policy of, 3639, 3640
 quarrel with Emperor William II., 3870
 reconciliation with William II., 3872
 retirement of, 3870
 Bithynia, 419, 1051-1053, 1343
 Bitonto, battle of, 3096
 Bittenfeld, General von, 3647
 Blackburn's Ford, battle of, 4135
 Black Hawk, 4056
 Black, Jeremiah Sullivan, 4122, 4254
 Black, Joseph, 3507
 Black Prince, 2169-2176, 2294-2299, 2304
 Black Stone at Mecca, 1785
 Blackstone, Rev. William, 2938
 Blackstone, Sir William, 3510
 Bladensburg, battle of, 4022
 Blaine, James Gillespie, 4258, 4265, 4268
 Blair, Austin, Governor, 4209
 Blair, Francis Preston, Sr., 4211
 Blair, General Francis Preston, 4202, 4214
 Blair, Montgomery, 4206
 Blake, Admiral, 2856, 2857, 2862
 Blake, General, 3464
 Blakeley, Captain, 4024
 Blanche, of Castile, 2145, 2149
 Blanc, Louis, 3576, 3591, 3592
 Blancmesnil, 2973
 Blanqui, 3591
 Blenheim, battle of, 2922, 3008
 Block, Adrian, 2938
 Bloemfontein, conference at, 3825, 4468, 4469
 Convention of, 3823, 4439, 4440
 occupation of, 3829, 4517
 Blots, Treaty of, 2558
 Bloomfield, General Joseph, 4014
 Blount, Sir George, 3086
 Blucher, Field-Marshal, 3449, 3487, 3488, 3492, 3498-3500
 Blum, Robert, 3602
 Blunt, General, 4151, 4152, 4177
 Boadicea, 1403
 Boccaccio, 2053, 2385
 Büchh, 43
 Bockhold, John, of Leyden, 2611
 Boerhaave, 3506
 Boeotia, 708, 907-911, 966, 978, 979
 Boeotian League, 911, 1228
 Boëthius, 1535
 Bogota, 4344
 Bohemia, greatest prosperity of, 2114
 Hussite War in, 2120, 2121
 invaded by the Prussians, 3102, 3121, 3647
 Protestant revolt in, 2775-2778
 Protestants banished from, 2778
 Boileau, 2981, 3027
 Boissy d'Anglas, 3400
 Bokhara, 2452
 Bokhara, Khan of, 3720
 Boker, George H., 3962
 Boleslas I., King of Poland, 2433
 Boleyn, Anne, second wife of Henry VIII., 2641-2645, 2650-2651
 Bolingbroke, Lord, 2928-2930, 3013, 3080, 3399
 Bolivia, revolution in, 4347
 treaty of, with Chili, 4368
 wars with Chili, 4365-4368
 Bolivar, General Simon, 4344-4347, 4364
 Bologna, Council of, 2618
 insurrection in, 3550
 Treaty of, 2565
 Bomarsund, fall of, 3619
 Bombay, 2877, 3113
 Bom Jesus, island of, 4383
 Bonaparte, Charles, 3390
 Bonaparte, Charles Joseph, 4334
 Bonaparte, Charles Louis Napoleon, 3578, 3579, 3592, 3593, 3609-3612, 3617, 3627-3632, 3634, 3653, 3654, 3661-3668, 3677, 3678
 at Boulogne, 3578, 3579
 at Strassbourg, 3578

- coup d'etat of, 3610, 3611
 elected President of France, 3592
- Bonaparte, Elise, 3437
- Bonaparte, Jerome, 3443
- Bonaparte, Joseph, 3443, 3463-3469
- Bonaparte, Louis, 3443, 3477
- Bonaparte, Lucien, 3428
- Bonaparte, Napoleon, 3390, 3403-3505
- Bónaparte, Pauline, 3437
- Bonchamps, 3387
- Boniface, 1508
- Boniface, or Winfried, 1886
- Boniface VII., Pope, 1938
- Boniface VIII., Pope, 2160-2169
 celebrated bull of, 2160
- Boniface IX., Pope, 2116
- Bonn, capture of, 2986
- Bonnivet, 2574
- Boddés, 1196
- Book of Common Prayer, compilation of, 2663
- Book of the Dead, Egyptian, 105, 106
- Books, oldest remaining, 24
- Boomplatz, battle of, 3823, 4438
- Boone, Daniel, 3232, 3260
- Booth, John Wilkes, 4220, 4221
- Booth, Major, 4189
- Booth, Sir George, 2867
- Bordeaux, fall of, 2211
 siege and fall of, 2974
- Borel, General, 3716
- Borgia, Cæsar, 2551-2554
- Borgia, family of, 2548
- Borneo, 3570
- Borodino, battle of, 3482
- Borromeo, Charles, Archbishop of Milan, 2629, 2719
- Borsippa, "the wonder of," 274
- Boru, Brian, King of Ireland, 2257
- Boscawen, Admiral, 3126, 3129
- Bosnia, 2440, 2441
 insurrection in, in 1875 and 1876, 3725, 3726
 insurrection in, in 1878, 3772
- Boso, King of Burgundy and Provence, 1911
- Bosrah, captured by the Saracens, 1815
- Bossuet, 2981, 3027
- Boston, Massachusetts, founding of, 2034
 great fire in, 4241
 riot and massacre in, 3215, 3216
- vol. 15-13
- siege of, by Washington, 3230, 3231, 3234, 3235
- Bosworth, battle of, 2348, 2349
- Botany Bay, penal colony at, 3390, 3568
- Botha, General Louis, 4505
- Bothwell, Earl of, 2685, 2711, 2712
- Bothwell Bridge, battle of, 2887
- Boufflers, Marshal, 3011, 3012
- Bouillon, Duke of, 2955
- Bouillon, Godfrey of, 2061, 2063
- Boulanger, General, 3846-3849
- Boulgakoff, M. de, 3171
- Boulogne, siege and fall of, 2580
- Boundbrook, battle of, 3247
- Bourbaki, General, 3675, 3676
- Bourbon, Antoine de, King of Navarre, 2747, 2751
- Bourbon, Cardinal de, 2764, 2768
- Bourbon, Constable de, 2564, 2565, 2573, 2574-2579
- Bourbon courts, alliance of the, 3110
- Bourbon, Duke of, 3068
- Bourbon dynasty, 2767-2771, 2953-3019, 3357-3378, 3405-3505, 3523-3527, 3541-3544
- Bourdaloie, 2981, 3027
- Bourdon de l'Oise, 3394
- Bourmont, General, 3542
- Bousquet, 3688
- Boutwell, George Sewall, 4210
- Bouvines, battle of, 2147
- Bowariyeh, 130
- Bowdoin, James, Governor, 3224
- Boyaca, battle of, 4345
- Boyars, 3050
- Boyd, Lord, 2380
- Boyle, Robert, 2888, 3026
- Boyne, battle of, 2912, 2913, 2927
- Bozrah, 1091
- Boszaris, Marco, 3537, 3538
- Brabant, Duke of, 2184
- Brabant, General, 3829, 4130, 4131
- Braddock, Edward, General, 3117
- Bradford, William, 2933
- Bradlaugh, Charles, 3797
- Bradshaw, John, 2850, 2873
- Bradstreet, Colonel, 3129
- Braganza, Duke of, 3023
- Bragg, General Braxton, 4160, 4161, 4170-4181
- Brahilov, capture of, 3639
- Brahma, or Brahm, 641-645

- Brahmanism, 621-653
 Brahmans, caste of, 619, 620
 Braithwaite, Colonel, 3280
 Bramah, 3508
 Brandenburg, Albert, Margrave of, 2612, 2621, 2622
 Brandenburg and Prussia, 3037, 3038
 Brandenburg-Manteuffel Ministry, 3597
 Brandenburg, Electors of, 4881
 Brandenburg, Frederick William, the Great Elector of, 3034-3038
 Brandenburg, Joachim II. of, 2617
 Brandt, Sebastian, 2804
 Brandywine, battle of, 3249
 Branicki, Count, 3175
 Brandt, Joseph, 3259
 Brasidas, 867
 Bravo, Gonzales, 3652
 Bravo, Nicholas, 4351
 Brazil, a principality, 2526
 civil wars in, 4374-4388
 colonized by Portugal, 2525, 2526
 discovery of, 2525
 elections in, 4376
 Emperors of, 4888
 naval revolt in, 4379-4388
 political separation from Portugal, 3631, 4364
 Portuguese colonies in, 2525, 2526
 republic in, 4374-4388
 republic recognized by the United States of America, 4376
 suffrage in, 4376
 United States of, 4376
 war with the Argentine Republic, 4364
 Bread riot in Paris, 3365
 Breakspear, Nicholas, the only English Pope, 2257
 Breckinridge, John Cabell, 4107, 4108, 4114, 4131, 4150, 4203
 Breda, convention of secret society at, 3155, 3156
 Peace of, 2978, 2982
 Brederode, Count, 2729
 Breed's Hill, redoubt on, 3229
 Breisach, siege and fall of, 2909
 Breitenfeld, battle of, 2785
 Bremer, Frederika, 3966
 Brenneville, battle of, 2249
 Brennus, 1020
 Brennus, another, 1164-1167
 Brescia, fall of, 2560
 Breslau, Peace of, 3102
 Breteuil, siege of, 2171
 Brewster, Sir David, 3955
 Brian Boru, 2257
 Bridport, Lord, 3402
 Brienne, 3360
 Brienne, battle of, 3492
 military school at, 3390
 Brier Creek, battle of, 3261
 Brigade, Charge of the Light, 3619, 3620
 Bright, John, 3658, 3803, 4144, 4145
 Brihtric, 1566
 Brihuega, battle of, 3013
 Brindley, James, 3326, 3508
 Brisson, Henri, 3843, 3846
 Bristol, fall of, 2842
 Britain, 1282, 1283, 1400, 1401, 1403, 1412, 1415, 1416, 1494, 1507, 1556-1559, 1563, 1565
 Angles and Saxons in, 1507, 1556-1570
 Anglo-Saxon Heptarchy in, 1559
 conversion to Christianity, 1563, 1565
 first written code of laws in, 1563
 first Teutonic kingdom in, 1559
 Cæsar's invasions of, 1282, 1283
 Other Roman invasions of, 1400, 1401, 1403, 1412, 1415, 1416
 Roman conquest of, 1416
 ravages of the Picts and Scots in, 1494, 1556-1558
 Roman legions withdrawn from, 1507, 1557
 Roman walls in, 1339
 Saxon migrations into, 1507, 1556-1559
 Britain, Great, empire of, 3312-3331, 3552-3571, 3792-3841
 United Kingdom of 2924-2926
 and Ireland, United Kingdom of, 3347
 Britannia, 1337
 Britannicus, 1402
 British India, 3113-3115, 3132, 3273, 3274, 3280, 3315-3323, 3557-3567, 3623-3627, 3792-3841
 Brito, Richard, 2256
 Brittany, 1558
 conquest of, by Cæsar, 1981
 Duchy of, 2226-2228, 2230
 annexation of, to France, 2563
 Brock, Sir Isaac, 4017
 Broglie, M. de, 3576

Broglie, Duke de, 3708, 3710, 3714, 3718
 Broglio, Duke de, 3128
 Broglio, Marshal, 3362
 Brömsebro, Peace of, 2795, 3031
 Bronté, Charlotte, 3959
 Bronze Age, 22
 Brooke, General John Rutter, 4299, 4304, 4305
 Brooke, James, 3570
 Brooke, Lord, 2938
 Brooklyn Bridge, 4260
 Brougham, Henry, Lord, 3556, 3957
 Brough, Governor John, 4184, 4209
 Broussel, 2973
 Brown, Albert Gallatin, 4115
 Brown, Benjamin Gratz, 4244
 Brown, General, 3120
 Brown, General Jacob, 4019, 4021
 Brown, John, 4112, 4113
 Browne, General, 3792
 Browning, Elizabeth Barrett, 3562, 3958
 Browning, Robert, 3958
 Brownlow, Rev. William Gannaway, 4142
 Bruce, David, King of Scotland, 2292, 2293, 2295, 2296, 2298, 2374-2376
 Bruce, Edward, 2289, 2374
 Bruce, Robert, 2280, 2369
 Bruce, Robert, King of Scotland, 2285, 2286, 2288, 2290, 2372-2374
 at Bannockburn, 2288, 2289, 2373
 excommunicated, 2372
 alliance with France, 2374
 wanderings, 2272, 2273
 Bruges, massacre of the French in, 2159
 Brugsch, Dr., 43
 Brunanburgh, battle of, 2009
 Brundisium, 1119, 1191, 1311
 Brunchaut, 1552, 1553
 Brunel, Sir Mark Isambard, 3953
 Bruno, Archbishop of Cologne, 1925
 Bruno, Bishop of Toul, 1935
 Brunswick, Eric, Duke of, 2616
 Brunswick, Ernest, Duke of, 3155
 Brunswick, Ferdinand, Prince of, 3105, 3124, 3125, 3128, 3133, 3135, 3372, 3447, 3448
 Brunswick, House of, 3079
 Brunswick, William, Duke of, 3472
 Brunswick-Wolfenbüttel, Henry of, 2613
 Brussels, Belgian National Congress at, 3155, 3156
 international anti-slavery conference at, 3902

Peace of, 2566
 Bruttium, 1118
 Brutus, Lucius Junius, 1135, 1143-1146
 Brutus, Marcus Junius, 1301, 1302, 1304, 1306-1309
 Bryan, William Jennings, 4277, 4321, 4326
 Bryant, William Cullen, 3962
 Bryzaccius, 1729
 Bubastis, 52, 57, 58
 Bucephala, 1001
 Bucephalus, 1001
 Buchan, Earl of, 2376
 Buchanan, Franklin, Admiral, 4205
 Buchanan, James, 4103, 4107-4124
 Bucharest, Peace of, 3458, 3480
 Buckersdorf, battle of, 3137
 Buckingham, Duke of, 2345-2347
 Buckingham, another Duke of, 2879
 Buckingham, George Villiers, Duke of, 2817, 2819, 2821, 2824, 2825-2827
 murder of, 2827
 Buckingham, William Alfred, Governor, 4209
 Buckle, Henry Thomas, 3956
 Buckner, General Simon Bolivar, 4147, 4277
 Buda, captured by Solymán the Magnificent, 2582, 2587
 captured by the Duke of Lorraine, 3062
 Buda-Pesth, 3602
 Buddenbrock, Field-Marshal, 3102
 Buddha, or Siddhartha, or Sakya-Muni, or Gautama, 653, 654
 Buddhas, the thirty-five, 664
 Buddhism, 653-672
 and Brahmanism, 670
 architecture of, 669, 670
 difference between Brahmanism and, 659, 660
 fundamental doctrines of, 659, 660
 general councils of, 655, 656
 Grand Llama, 657, 658
 home of, 32
 in China, 690
 in Japan, 696, 4638
 laws of, 667
 metaphysics of, 664, 665
 missionary spirit of, 657
 monks and priests of, 664, 670
 morality of, 668
 Nirvana, 664, 665
 philosophy of, 671, 672
 power of, 658, 659

- rationalism of, 666
- sacred books of, 661, 665
- Buell, Don Carlos, General, 4146, 4147, 4161
- Buena Vista, battle of, 4081, 4356
- Buendia, General, 4366
- Buenos Ayres, 2546, 4336, 4364, 4374, 4388
 - founding of, 2546
 - independence of, 4346
 - revolution in, 4346
- Buffon, 3506
- Bulgaria, early kingdom of, 2439, 2440
 - anarchy in, 3765, 3766
 - atrocities in, 3728
 - division of, 3770, 3771
 - early history of, 2439, 2440
 - invaded by the Russians, 3739, 3740
 - revolt in, 3907
 - war of, with Servia, 3908, 3909
- Bulgaria, Alexander, Prince of, 3907-3910
 - Ferdinand, Prince of, 3910, 3911
 - Major Panitz's plot in, 3911
- Bulgarians, home of the, 1184, 1185
 - outrages of, in the Greek Empire, 1697
- Bullia, 968
- Bull Run, first battle of, 4135, 4136
 - second battle of, 4158
- Buller, General Sir Redvers Henry, 3826, 3828, 3829, 4470, 4485, 4503, 4513-4515
- Bulow, 3488, 3492
- Bulow, Count von, 3876, 3877
- Buluwayo, 3811
 - massacre at, 3816
- Bulwer-Lytton, Sir Edward George, 3958
- Bundesrath of Germany, 3701
- Bunker Hill, battle of, 3229, 3230
- Bunsen, Baron, 3966
- Bunyan, John, 2869, 3027
- Burdett, Sir Frances, 3554, 3559
- Burghers of Germany, founding of the, 1923
- Burgh, Hubert de, 2274
- Burgoyne, General John, 3229, 3250-3252
- Burgundians, home of the, 1522
- Burgundy, early kingdom of, 1522
 - becomes a German province, 1932
 - Circle of, 2127
 - conquered by Clovis, 1546, 1547
 - Duchy of, 2220-2222
 - later kingdom of, 1932
- Burgundy, Dukes of, 2220
- Burial customs, of the Chaldeans, 136, 137
 - of the Egyptians, 86-92
 - of the Medes and Persians, 597
- Burke, Edmund, 3509
 - and the American Revolution, 3212
 - and the French Revolution, 3334-3343, 3379
 - and Warren Hastings, 3323
- Burleigh, Cecil, Lord, 2678, 2685, 2687, 2691, 2699
- Burlingame, Anson, 4237, 4635
- Burmah, Empire of, 4636, 4637
- Burnaby, Colonel, 3801
- Burns, British ambassador, 3564
- Burns, Robert, 3510
- Burnside, General Ambrose Everett, 4152, 4160, 4169, 4181
- Burr, Aaron, 4004, 4008
- Burrrhus, 1402, 1403
- Bury St. Edmunds, 1999
- Bussolongo, battle of, 3606
- Bustamente, 4352, 4354
- Bute, Earl of, 3134-3136, 3186-3189
- Butler, 2790
- Butler, General Benjamin Franklin, 4113, 4230, 4133, 4142, 4149, 4150, 4163, 4196, 4214, 4232, 4236, 4260
- Butler, General Sir William Francis, 4505
- Butler, General William Orlando, 4085, 4091
- Butler, John, 3259
- Butler, Samuel, 3027
- Butler, Zebulon, Colonel, 2947, 3259
- Buxhowden, General, 3458
- Byblus, 849
- Byng, Admiral, 3084, 3119
- Byram, 2497, 2498
- Byram, the Ghiznivide, 2036, 2037
- Byron, 3518
- Byron, Lord, 3504, 3957
 - at Missolonghi, 3538
- Byzacena, 432
- Byzantine Empire, 1494, 1503, 1573-1605, 2069, 2070, 2441-2448
- Byzantium, 759, 834, 853, 881, 926, 966
- CABAL, origin of the, 2879
- Cabet, 3591
- Cable, Atlantic, 4234
- Cabot, John, 2527
- Cabot, Sebastian, 2527, 2528
 - discovers the North American continent, 2527, 2528
- Cabral, Pedro Alvarez, 2525

- Cabrera, 3551, 3700
 Cabul, 3564, 3794
 Cade, Jack, rebellion of, 2339
 Cadesia, battle of, 1761, 1891
 Cadislaus, 1941
 Cadiz, Carthaginian settlement of, 331
 defense of, 3467
 mutiny at, 3531
 storming of, 3533
 Cadmeæ, 714, 907-909
 Cadmus, 714
 Cadorna, General, 3678, 3679
 Cadoudal, George, 3407, 3437
 Cadusia, 456
 Cædicus, 1165
 Cædmon, 1567
 Cæsar, Julius, 1276-1304
 early life, 1276, 1277
 conquest of Gaul, 1280-1284
 rivalry with Pompey, 1287-1289
 civil war with Pompey, 1289-1299
 dictatorship of, 1299
 murder of, 1300-1302
 Cafferel, 3487
 Cairo, or Kahira, founding of, 1857, 1873
 Cairouan, 1836
 Caius Cæsar, 1396
 Caius Flaminius, 1210
 Caius Licinius Stolo, 1171, 1173
 Caius Lutatius Catulus, 1201
 Caius Martius, 1150
 Caius Marius, 1240-1265
 Caius Sempronius Gracchus, 1243-1246
 Calabria, 1119
 Calais, captured by Edward III., 2169, 2170, 2296
 conference at, 2270, 2271
 recovered by the French, 2276, 2718
 Calais Roads, naval battle of, 2695, 2696
 Calcutta, 3113
 Black Hole of, 3114
 Calderon, 3027
 Calderon, Dr. Francisco Garcia, 4368
 Caleb, 369
 Caledonia, 1494, 1507, 1556, 2360
 Calhoun, John Caldwell, 4015, 4044, 4045, 4046, 4050, 4053, 4092-4094, 4098
 California, conquest of, 4081, 4082
 explorations in, 2329, 2330
 gold discovered in, 4066
 made a State of the Union, 4096
 Caligula, 1396-1400
 Calixtines, 2121
 Calixtus II., Pope, 1963
 Callao, bombardment of, 4297
 Callias, Peace of, 518, 850
 Callicratidas, 883, 884
 Callimachus, 1100
 Callinicus, 1306
 Callinicus, discovery of Greek fire by, 1836, 1837
 Calliope, 738
 Calmar, Union of, 2418
 Calonne, 3359, 3360
 Calvert, Cecil, 2941
 Calvert, Leonard, 2941
 Calvin, John, 2627
 character of, 2627
 creed of, 2627
 persecutions by, 2627
 theocracy of, 2627
 Calvinism, 2627
 and Lutheranism, 2625-2628
 in France, 2627, 2628
 in Scotland, 2628, 2682-2684, 2707-2710
 in the Dutch Republic, 2628, 2728-2745
 Camachus, 1040, 1100
 Cambacères, 3429, 3438
 Cambray, Archbishop of, 3026
 Cambray, League of, 2556
 Peace of, or "Ladies Peace," 2581
 Cambridge, Massachusetts, 2934
 Cambridge, University of, founded, 2052
 Cambronne, General, 3499
 Cambyes I., 477, 485
 Cambyes II., 62, 495-498
 character of, 498, 499
 invasion of Egypt by, 62, 495, 496
 persecution of the Egyptians, 62, 497
 Camden, New Jersey, 2943
 Camden, Arkansas, capture of, 4190
 Camden, Lord, 3212
 Camillus, Furius, 1162, 1163, 1167, 1169
 Camiran, 2496
 Camoens, 2803
 Campania, 1116
 Campbell, Colonel, 3261
 Campbell, Sir Colin, 3625, 3626
 Campbell, Thomas, 2430, 3957
 Campeador, the Cid, 2391, 2392
 Campeggio, Cardinal, 2642
 Camperdown, naval battle of, 3343, 3411

- Campero, General, 4367
 Campo Formio, Peace of, 3415
 Campos, General Martinez, 3700, 4407-4416
 Canaan, 347-349, 374-382
 Canaanites, 376, 377
 Canada, British conquest of, 3130, 3131
 Cartier's exploration of, 2529
 early history of, 3017
 Fenian raids in, 4234
 government of, 3656, 3657
 rebellion in, 3663, 4060
 recent events in, 3656, 3657
 Canby, General, 4205, 4216, 4245
 Canclaux, 3387
 Candace, Queen, 110
 Candahar, siege of, 3795, 3796
 Candia, 3057, 3059
 Canmore, Malcolm, 2022, 2362
 Cannæ, battle of, 1213, 1214
 Canning, George, 3324, 3454, 3475, 3539, 3554, 3558
 Canning, Sir Stratford, 3617
 Canon, Assyrian, 22, 123
 Canon of Ptolemy, 22, 23, 123
 Canopus, battle of, 3432
 Canova, Antonio, 3512
 Canovas del Castillo, 3898, 4421
 assassination of, 3899, 4427
 Canrobert, General, 3619, 3621
 Cantacuzene, John, 2443, 2444
 Canton, bombardment and capture of, 3623, 4634
 capture of, in the Opium War, 3564, 4632
 Canute IV., King of Denmark, 2410
 Canute the Great, 2016-2018, 2410, 2414
 becomes King of England, 2016, 2017
 converted to Christianity, 2017
 description, 2017
 laws and customs, 2017
 summons a council in London, 2017
 Canute the Pious, 2411
 Canzaca, palace of, 1744
 Cape Breton Island, 3111, 3129
 Cape Lagos, naval battle of, 3126
 Cape St. Vincent, naval battle of, 3275
 another naval battle of, 3343, 3411
 Capet, House of, 2131-2166
 Capet, Hugh, King of France, 1920, 2131
 Capitolini, Fasti, 23
 Capo d'Istria, Count John, 3540
 assassination of, 3541
 Cappadocia, 420, 988, 1029, 1054, 1056, 1058, 1059, 1343, 1344
 Capponi, Gino, 3586
 Capræ, island of, 1394
 Caprivi, General von, 3870, 3872
 Capua, 1116, 1214, 1216
 Caoutchouc, or Indiarubber, brought to Europe, 3508
 Carabobo, battle of, 4345
 Caracalla, 1438, 1439
 Caracas, earthquake at, 4344
 revolution at, 4343
 Carbo, Papirius, 1251
 Carcassonne, evacuation and fall of, 2078
 Carchemish, 129
 battle of, 61, 248
 Cardigan, Earl of, 3620
 Carew, John, 2873
 Caria, 419
 Carrington, General Sir Frederick, 4504
 Carinus, 1454
 Carlists, of Spain, 3551, 3552, 3589, 3591, 3596, 3598-3700
 Carloman, 1910
 Carloman, another, 1911
 Carloman, son of Pepin the Little, 1887
 Carlos, Don, 3551, 3552
 another, 3689, 3691, 3696, 3698-3700
 Carlos, Don, King of Naples and Sicily, 3085, 3096
 Carlotta, wife of the Emperor Maximilian of Mexico, 3641
 Carolingian dynasty, 1885-1921
 fall of, 1920
 founding of, 1885
 Carolingian kingdoms in Europe, 1905-1920
 Carolingian kings, first of the, 1885-1905
 list of, 1921
 Carlowitz, Peace of, 3065
 Carlstadt, Dr., 2601
 Carlyle, Thomas, 2960
 Carmania, 456
 Carmichael, General, 3474
 Carneades, 1017
 Carnot, 3390, 3404, 3407, 3414
 Carnot, Sadi-, 3848, 3854, 3855
 Carolina, colony of, 2947, 2948
 Carolina, North, 2949
 Carolina, South, 2949
 Caroline Matilda, wife of Christian VII. of Denmark, 3147

- Caroline of Brunswick, wife of George IV. of Great Britain, 3342, 3556, 3557
 Caroline, wife of George II., of Great Britain, 3091
 Caroline, wife of Ferdinand IV., King of Naples, 3421, 3443
 Carrhæ, battle of, 1286
 Carrickfergus, siege and fall of, 2912
 Carrier, 3393, 3399
 Cartagena, 3693, 3694, 3697
 Carteaux, General, 2616
 Carter, Hob, 2305
 Carteret, 3330
 Carteret, Lord, 3102, 3104
 Carteret, Philip, 2943
 Carteret, Sir George, 2943, 2948
 Carthage, Republic of, 431-446
 alliance of, with Xerxes the Great, 438
 as a Roman province, 446, 1234
 attack on, 446, 1231, 1232
 capture and destruction of, 446, 1233, 1234
 class distinctions in, 435, 436
 commerce of, 437, 438
 conquests in Spain, 444
 fertile provinces of, 432
 foreign possessions of, 432
 founding of, 433
 government of, 435
 naval power of, 434, 435
 Punic Wars, 1194-1236
 religion of, 436
 revenues and banking of, 436
 situation and description of, 432
 struggle with Rome, 444-446
 wars of, with the Greeks of Sicily, 438-443
 wealth of, 1194
 Carthage, 445
 Carthusians, 2050
 Cartier, Jacques, 2629
 Carus, 1454
 Carvalho, Marquis of Pombal, 3145, 3146
 Carver, John, 2933
 Carey, Alice, 3969
 Carey, Phoebe, 3962
 Cary, Lucius, Lord Falkland, 2842, 2843
 Casca, 1302
 Casimir IV., King of Poland, 2435
 Casimir the Great, King of Poland, 2435
 Casimir, John, King of Poland, 3042, 3043
 Casimir-Perier, 3544
 Casimir-Perier, President of France, 3854, 3855
 Cassander, 1007-1009
 Cassano, battle of, 3009
 another battle of, 3423
 Cass, Lewis, 4091, 4118, 4122
 Cassel, battle of, 2167
 another battle of, 3124
 Cassini, 3026
 Cassius, Avidius, 1425
 Cassius, Marcus, 1301, 1306-1308
 Cassius, Quintus, 1288
 Cassius, Spurius, 1151
 Castanos, 3464
 Castelar, Emilio, 3652, 3692, 3695-3697
 Castelnau, Peter de, 2075, 2076
 Castillo, Canovas del, 3898, 4421
 assassination of, 3899, 4427
 Castlereagh, Lord, 3350, 3475, 3496, 3521, 3555, 3558
 Castor, 740, 1147
 Castro, Iñez de, 2397-2399
 Caswell, Fort, fall of, 4214
 Catacombs of Egypt, 88
 Catacombs of Rome, 1462
 Catalonia, revolt of, 3020
 Catana, 1120
 Catania, battle of, 3607
 Cateau-Cambresis, Peace of, 2681, 2718, 2747
 Catesby, 2344
 Catesby, Robert, 2812
 Catharine I., Empress of Russia, 3093, 3094
 Catharine II., the Great, Empress of Russia, 3137, 3156-3183
 ambitions of, 3157
 character of, 3157
 incites the Confederation of Targowicz, 3175
 in Taurida and Caucasia, 3170
 deposes Peter III., 3137, 3157
 Poland and, 3156, 3158-3161, 3163-3166, 3174-3183
 political policy of, 3159
 Russia under, 3156-3183
 Catharine Howard, fifth wife of Henry VIII., 2634, 2655
 Catharine of Aragon, first wife of Henry VIII., 2359, 2641-2645
 Catharine of Braganza, wife of Charles II. of England, 2877, 3023

- Catharine Parr, sixth and last wife of Henry VIII., 2656, 2657
 Catharine, wife of Henry V. of England, 2183, 2327
 Catharine, wife of Jerome Bonaparte, 3443
 Cathcart, Earl of, 3454
 Cathelineau, 3387
 Catherine de Medici, 2747, 2749-2760, 2763
 Catholicity, 1534
 under the Lombards, 1541, 1542
 Catholic League of France, 2762-2767, 2770, 2771
 Catholic League of Germany, 2773, 2774, 2777, 2778, 2780-2782, 2785, 2788
 Catholic Church, Roman, foundation of, 1469, 1470
 reformed by Council of Trent, 2628, 2629
 Catholic Emancipation in Ireland, 3559
 Catholics, persecution of, in England, 2646
 Catiline, Lucius Sergius, 1273
 conspiracy of, 1273-1275
 Catinat, Marshal, 2999, 3004
 Cato, Marcus Porcius, the Elder Cato, 446, 1230, 1321, 1322
 Cato the Younger, 1276, 1280, 1283, 1292, 1297
 Catullus, 1322, 1323
 Catulus, 1253
 Catulus, Caius Lutatius, 1201
 Cavaignac, General, 3589, 3591, 3592
 Cavaliers, 2840, 2841
 Cavendish, Henry, 3307
 Cavendish, Lord, 2901
 Cavendish, Lord Frederick, 3799
 Cavendish, Lord John, 3234
 Cavour, Count, 3628, 3630, 3632
 Caucasian race, 25-28
 European divisions of the Aryan branch, 27, 28
 linguistic divisions of the Aryan branch, 25, 26
 table of branches, 36
 Caulaincourt, 3493
 Caunus, 489
 Cawnpore, massacre at, 3625
 relief of, 3626
 Caxton, William, 2521, 2343
 Cecil, Lord Burleigh, 2697
 Cecropia, 955
 Cecrops, 714
 Cecryphalia, battle of, 848
 Cedar Creek, battle of, 4200, 4201
 Cedar Mountain, battle of, 4158
 Celeus, 731
 Celebacy of the clergy, 1943
 Cellesmare, Marquis of, 3084
 Celts, 27, 28
 descendants of the, 27, 28
 original tribes of the, 1521, 1522
 language of the, 1350
 Censorius, 1231
 Censors, 1160, 1161
 Centaurs, 740
 Central America, 4348
 Century, 16th, progress of civilization in the, 2800-2805
 Century, 17th, progress of civilization in the, 3024-3030
 Century, 18th, progress of civilization in the, 3505-3519
 Century, 19th, progress of civilization in the, 3947-3968
 Cephallenia, 711
 Ceraunus, Ptolemy, 1020
 Cerausius, 1457
 Cerberus, 734, 743
 Cerda, Charles de la, Constable of France, 2170, 2171
 Cerdic, 1559
 Cères, 724, 1137
 Ceret, battle of, 3394
 Cerisolles, battle of, 2589
 Cerro Gordo, battle of, 4083, 4356, 4445
 Cervantes, 2803
 Cervera, Admiral, 4292-4297
 Cetywayo, King of the Zulus, 3793, 3794
 Chabrias, 910, 911, 926
 Chacabaco, battle of, 4337
 Chæroneæ, battle of, 978
 Chaja Alass, 2502, 2503
 Chalcedon, 758, 1484, 1735, 1736
 Chalcidice, 689, 958
 Chalcis, 786
 Chaldaea, 125-140
 antiquity of, 125, 126
 arts and industries of, 134-136
 ascendency over Assyria, 142
 civilisation of, 140, 1333
 commerce of, 136, 139
 conquest of, by the Arabs, 120
 conquest of, by the Assyrians, 131

- cosmogony and religion of, 286-304
 cuneiform inscriptions of, 137
 deluge in, 288, 289
 Elamitic dynasty of, 128, 129
 empire of, 125-132
 geography of, 113-116, 119
 history of, 125-132
 kings of, 132
 learning in, 139, 140
 political history of, 125-132
 products of, 114, 115
 temples and ruins of, 135
Chaldeans, antiquity of the, 133, 134
 arms and implements of the, 138
 burial customs of the, 136, 137
 cosmogony and religion of the, 286-304
 gods of the, 292-303
 planetary deities of the, 298-303
 races of the, 133, 134
 sciences of the, 139, 140
 writing of the, 137
 zodiac of the, 139
Chalgrove Field, battle of, 2842
Challer, 3389
Chalons, battle of, 1509
Chamberlain, Daniel H., 4255
Chamberlain, Joseph, 3803, 3840, 4464, 4467, 4469, 4471, 4508
Chambersburg, burning of, 4199
Chambly, capture of, 3933
Chambord, Count de, 3705, 3706, 3708
Champagne, 2131
Champaubert, battle of, 3483
Champ de Mai, 3497
Champ de Mars, 1555
Champeaux, William de, 2139
Champion Hill, battle of, 4174
Championnet, General, 3422
Champlain, Lake, discovery of, 3017
 battle of, 4022
Champlain, Samuel, 3017
Champollion, 23, 3964
Champs Elysées, 3677
Chanaranges, 1693
Chancellorsville, battle of, 4169, 4170
Chandler, Zachariah, 4210, 4232
Chandragupta, 617
Changarnier, General, 3592, 3610
Chang Chi Wau, 4657
Chang-yin-houan, 4661
Chanhou, battle of, 4646
Chanikoff, Admiral, 3459
Channing, William Ellery, 3961
Chantilly, battle of, 4158
Chaos, 723
Chapelier, 3393
Chapman, Walter, 2382
Chapultepec, battle of, 4064, 4086
Charax, city of, 452
Chares, 926, 927, 969, 970
Charette, 3387, 3402, 3407
Charibert, 1552
Chariots, Assyrian, 234, 235
 Egyptian, 71, 72
 Greek, 946
 Roman, 1368
Charlemagne, 1887-1901
 arts, commerce and literature under, 1899
 capture of Pavia by, 1888
 conquest of Bavaria by, 1893
 conquest of the Saxons by, 1896
 crowned Emperor of the Romans, 1895
 description of, 1900
 death of, 1901
 empire of, 1897
 government and laws of, 1897, 1898
 learning under, 1899
 receives the Iron Crown of Lombardy, 1888, 1889
 receives the keys of Jerusalem and the Holy Sepulcher, 1897
 religion under, 1898, 1899
 revival of the Western Empire under, 1895
 tomb of, 1901
Charlemont, Earl of, 3275
Charleroi, capture of, 3498
Charles Albert of Bavaria, 3100-3105
Charles Albert of Sardinia, 3550, 3551, 3586, 3588, 3606, 3607
 abdication of, 3607
 and Austria, 3606, 3607
Charles, Archduke, of Austria, 3002, 3003, 3007-3011, 3013, 3015
Charles, Archduke of Austria, another, 3412, 3423, 3471
Charles Canutesson, 2419
Charles, Count of Anjou, 2151, 2152, 2155, 2156
Charles, Count of Blois, 2168
Charles, Count of Charolois, 2214-2216

- Charles Edward the Pretender, 3106-3109, 3196
- Charles Emmanuel III., of Sardinia, 3005, 3103
- Charles Emmanuel, of Savoy, 2955
- Charles Felix, 3532
- Charles Martel, 1555, 1556, 1842, 1885
- Charles of Durazzo, 2389
- Charles I., of Anjou, 2389
- Charles II., of Anjou, 2389
- Charles I., of England, 2821-2852
 accession of, 2821
 and the House of Commons, 2824-2840
 at Carisbrook Castle, 2848
 at Hurst Castle, 2849
 at Nottingham, 2840
 character of, 2821
 execution of, 2852
 impeachment and trial of, 2849-2851
 in Scotland, 2832-2835
 marriage of, 2822
 new policy of, 2828
 Parliament of, at Oxford, 2843
 Petition of Right Signed by, 2826
- Charles II., of England, 2860-2890
 accession of, 2868, 2869
 character of, 2871, 2889
 children of, 2888
 court of, 2878
 marriage of, 2877
 religion of, 2875
 secret treaty of, with Louis XIV., 2879, 2880
 vengeance on Cromwell and the regicides, 2872-2874
- Charles IV., the Fair, of France, 2165, 2166
- Charles V., the Wise, of France, 2174-2178
- Charles VI., the Well-Beloved, King of France, 2178-2184
- Charles VII., the Victorious, of France, 2184-2212
- Charles VIII., the Courteous, of France, 2226-2230, 2548-2552
- Charles IX., of France, 2750-2760
- Charles X., of France, 3525-3527, 3541-3544
- Charles IV., of Germany, 2111-2115
- Charles V., of Germany, 2566-2625
 abdication of, 2623-2624
 accession of, 2568
 and Martin Luther, 2599
 and Pope Clement VII., 2578-2580
- and the Castilian Junta, 2567
 and the Reformation, 2592-2600
 at Ghent, 2586, 2587
 at San Yuste, 2624, 2625
 character of, 2567
 death of, 2624, 2625
 dominions of, 2568
 election of, 2567, 2568
 edict against Lutheranism, 2607
 edict of Brussels, 2619
 expeditions to Africa, 2584, 2585, 2587, 2588
 in Italy, 2583
 in Spain, 2573
 overthrow of the Protestants by, 2614-2617
 overthrow by Maurice of Saxony, 2619-2621
 peace with Solymán the Magnificent, 2613
 visits Francis I. of France, 2577
 visits Henry VIII. of England, 2569
 wars with Francis I. of France, 2563-2591
 violation of his coronation oath, 2614
- Charles VI. of Germany, 3013, 3015, 3060, 3096, 3097, 3099
- Charles VII., of Germany, 3101-3105
- Charles IV., of Naples, 3096
- Charles of Orleans, 2180
- Charles of Provence, 1907
- Charles of Roumania, 3907
- Charles I., of Spain, same as Charles V. of Germany, 2566
- Charles II., of Spain, 2918, 2919, 3001-3003
- Charles III., of Spain, 3133, 3146
- Charles IV., of Spain, 3146, 3461, 3462
- Charles IX., of Sweden, 2635
- Charles X., of Sweden, 3034-3037
- Charles XI., of Sweden, 3037
- Charles XII., of Sweden, 3066-3071
 ambitions of, 3066-3071
 career of, 3066-3071
 forms alliance with the Turks, 3070
 wanderings of, 3070, 3071
 wars of, 3066-3071
- Charles XIII., of Sweden, 3460, 3478
- Charles XIV., of Sweden and Norway, 3582
- Charles XV., of Sweden and Norway, 3582
- Charles of Valois, 2157
- Charles the Bad, 2171
- Charles the Bald, 1906, 1908-1910

- Charles the Bold, Duke of Burgundy, 2216-2222
- Charles the Fat, 1910-1913
- Charles the Simple, 1915-1917
- Charleston, South Carolina, attack on, in 1776, 3235, 3236
- earthquake at, 4262
- evacuation of, 4215
- founding of, 2948
- siege and capture of, in 1780, 3263
- siege of, in 1863, 4178, 4179
- Charlestown, Massachusetts, burned, 3230
- Charlotte Corday, 3382
- Charlotte of Mecklenburg-Strelitz, wife of George III., 3134
- Charon, 743
- Charton, 2973
- Chartres, Duke of, 3380, 3580
- Chase, Salmon Portland, 4107, 4125, 4206
- Chassé, General, 3546
- Chasseneuil, 2077
- Chateaubriand, 3438, 3964
- Chateaubriand, Countess of, 2571
- Chateaufort de Randeau, surrender of, 2177
- Chateauroux, Duchess de, 3103
- Chateau-Thierry, battle of, 3493
- Chatelherault, Duke of, 2713
- Chatham, Baroness of, 3134
- Chatham, Earl of, 3192
- Châtillon, Jacques de, 2159
- Chattanooga, battle of, 4180, 4181
- siege of, 4180
- Chatterton, Thomas, 3510
- Chaucer, Geoffrey, 2063, 2310, 2311
- Chaumette, 3386
- Chaumont, Treaty of, 3493
- Chauncey, Commodore, 4019
- Cheatham, General, 4140
- Chedorlaomer, 129, 349
- Chelmsford, Lord, 3793
- Chenah, battle of, 3567
- Cheops, 46
- Cherasco, Treaty of, 2967
- Cherbourg, destruction of, 3125
- Cherriside, General Sir Herbert Charles, 4504
- Cherokee Indians, 2533, 3131, 4047, 4056
- removal of, 4047, 4056
- war with, 3131
- Chersonesus, 760
- Cherub, 4024
- Chesapeake, frigate, 4009, 4010, 4020, 4021
- Chester, battle of, 1558
- Chesterfield, Lord, 3513
- Chester, Pennsylvania, founding of, 2943
- Chevaux-de-frise in the Delaware river, 3250
- Chevy Chase, ballad of, 2311, 2376
- Chicago, Anarchist riot in, 4263
- great fire of, 4241
- great railway strike at, in 1894, 4272, 4273
- World's Columbian Exposition at, 4269, 4270
- Chickahominy, 4156, 4157
- Chickamauga, battle of, 4180
- Chickasaw Indians, French war with the, 3018
- Chihuahua, 4083, 4359
- Childebert I., 1549, 1550
- Childebert II., 1553
- Childeric, 1545
- Children's Crusade, 2070
- Chili, civil war in, 4368-4374
- conquest of, by the Spaniards, 2545
- early history of, 2545
- freed by San Martin, 4347
- revolution in, 4347
- under President Balmaceda, 4368-4374
- wars of, with Bolivia and Peru, 4364-4368
- Chillianwallah, battle of, 3567
- Chilo, 804, 806
- Chilpanzingo, Mexican Declaration of Independence at, 4342
- Chilperic, 1552, 1553
- Chilperic III., 1556
- China, aborigines of, 676
- ancient, 674-679
- and France, 4632, 4633, 4635, 4636
- and Great Britain, 3564, 3565, 3635, 3636, 4632, 4633, 4635
- and Japan, 4646-4671
- and Korea, 4646, 4647
- and Russia, 4629
- authentic history of, 676-679, 2451, 2459, 4625-4637, 4646-4694
- Buddhism in, 678
- capture of Canton by the British, 3564, 4632
- capture of Canton and Peking by the British and French, 3623, 3636, 4634
- cession of Formosa to Japan, 4670
- climate of, 673, 674
- character writing invented by Fohi, 676

- chronology of, 675
- commerce of, 4625, 4631-4633
- conquest of, by the Manchus, 4627, 4628
- conquest of, by the Mongol, 679, 2451, 2459
- conquest of Thibet by, 4629
- dynasties and late Emperors of, 4887
- embassy to the United States and Europe, 4635
- first intercourse between Europe and, 4625
- first railway in, 4636
- geography and description of, 673, 674
- government of, 681, 682
- Great Wall of, 677
- humiliation of, by Japan, 4671
- invasion of Korea, 4647
- Japanese invasion of Korea, 4647
- learning in, 681
- manufactures of, 684, 685
- military affairs in, 4646-4694
- Mohammedan insurrection in, 4635
- Opium war of, with Great Britain, 3564, 3565, 4632
- political history of, 674-679, 2451, 2459, 4625-4694
- ports of, opened to foreigners, 3565, 3635, 4632, 4634
- productions of, 674
- provinces of, 674
- rebellions in, 4626, 4627, 4631, 4633, 4635
- recent events in, 4672-4694
- Russian traders in, 4628
- state religion of, 690
- treaties of, with Great Britain and France, 3565, 3635, 4632, 4634
- wars of, 3564, 3565, 3635, 3636, 4632, 4633-4635
- China Sea, 673
- Chindaswind, 1531
- Chin dynasty, 679
- Chinese civilization, 680-685
 - arts and industries, 680
 - coins, 680
 - customs, 680, 681
 - great public works, 680
 - inventions, 680
 - women, 681
- Chino-Japanese War, 4646-4671
 - battle of Ping Yang, 4649, 4650
 - battle of the Yalu River, 4650
 - capture of Port Arthur, 4656
 - civil administration in Liao-tung, 4661
 - Count Ito and peace envoys, 4665
 - fighting in Manchuria, 4648-4668
 - independence of Korea, 4671
 - Japanese at the Pescadore Islands, 4670
 - Japanese victories, 4648-4668
 - Japanese welcomed by Chinese, 4654
 - peace negotiations, 4661-4669
 - Peace of Shimonoseki, 4669, 4670
- Ching-wang, 677, 678
- Chin-nong, 676
- Chintila, 1531
- Chindinus and Porus, 245
- Chios, isle of, 711, 756
- Chippewa Indians, war with the, 4305
- Chiron, the Centaur, 740
- Chiselhurst, 3677
- Chivalry, 2048, 2049
- Chlodwig, or Clovis, 1545-1549
- Chlomaron, siege of, 1722
- Chlopicki, General, 3547, 3548
- Chlorus, Constantius, 1459
- Choiseul, Duke de, 3146
- Cholula, massacre of Aztecs at, 2538, 2539
- Chorasmia, 457
- Chorianses, 1700
- Chosiu, Prince of, 4633, 4644
- Chosröes, of Armenia, 1609
- Chosröes, of Armenia, another, 1656
- Chosröes I., or Khosrou Nushirvan, 1692-1720
 - administration of, 1711, 1712
 - coins of, 1719
 - education under, 1715, 1716
 - government of, 1711, 1712
 - laws of, 1718
 - marriage laws of, 1715
 - religion of, 1716, 1717
 - taxation under, 1712, 1713
 - wars of, 1693-1710
- Chosröes II., or Khosrou Parviz, 1724-1746
 - art under, 1745
 - character of, 1744
 - coins of, 1746
 - conquest of Egypt and Syria by, 1734, 1735
 - flight of, 1726, 1727
 - harem of, 1745
 - religion of, 1731, 1732
 - seals of, 1745

- second reign of, 1730-1744
- Chouans, 2408
- Chow dynasty, 677
- Chow-ain, 677
- Chow-tsung, 679
- Chramnè, 1552
- Christ, Jesus, 1069-1084
 birth of, 1069, 1390
 Church of, 1086-1087
 crucifixion of, 1084, 1395, 1396
 teachings of, 1084, 1463-1465
- Christian I., 2419
- Christian II., 2419, 2633, 2635
- Christian III., 2335
- Christian IV., 2634, 2779-2781, 2795, 3081
- Christian V., 3081
- Christian VI., 3147
- Christian VII., 3147
- Christian VIII., 3582, 3595
- Christian IX., 3644, 3645
- Christianity, civilizing effect of, 1957
 home of, 32
 in Hungary, 2436
 in Mexico, 2541
 in the Spanish colonies, 2541
 introduction of, into Japan, 4640, 4641
 progress of, in England, 1563-1565
 rise and progress of, 1461-1493
- Christians, computation of time by the, 21
 persecutions of, in the Roman Empire, 1461-1463
 in Armenia, 1674
 in Egypt, 1873
 in Japan, 4641
 in Persia, 1659
 release of, from slavery, 2662
- Christina, Queen of Sweden, 2788, 3033, 3034
- Christopher Columbus, 2526, 2527
- Chroniclers of the Middle Ages, 24, 25
- Chronometer, first manufacture of the, 3508
- Chryaler's Field, battle of, 4020
- Chryso Keras, 1474
- Chrysostom, St., 1105, 1490
- Chungho, battle of, 4649
- Chung-Kang, 676
- Church, Christian, beginning of the, 1069-1087, 1395, 1396, 1461-1463
 corruption of the, 1933
 division of, into Eastern and Western, 1895
 Fathers of the, 1488-1492
 use of pictures and images in, 1595
- Church, States of the, 1543
- Churchill, John, Duke of Marlborough, 2901, 2902, 2986, 3005
- Churchill, Lord Randolph, 2903
- Churubusco, battle of, 4084, 4386
- Chusero, 2503
- Chusan, island of, 3564
- Chushan-rishathaim, 384
- Cialdini, General, 3639
- Cicero, Marcus Tullius, 1971, 1974-1976, 1980, 1992, 1994-1996
- Cid Campeador, 2391, 2392
- Cilicia, 420, 969, 1972
- Cimbri, 1250-1253
- Cincinnati, founding of, 2997
- Cimon, 838-841, 843-845
- Cincinnati, Society of the, 2984
- Cincinnatus, 1154-1156
- Cinna, 1964
- Cineas, 1186, 1188
- Cinneladanus, 210
- Cinq-Mars, Marquis of, 2970
- Cintra, Convention of, 3464
- Circassia, 3574
- Circus Maximus, 1132, 1398
- Cisalpine Gaul, 1114, 1115, 1164, 1903, 1904
- Cisalpine Gauls, 1903, 1904
- Cisalpine Republic, 3415
- Cissey, General, 3686
- Cistercians, 2050, 2051
- Cities in the Middle Ages, 2054, 2055
- Citizenship, Roman, 1129-1132, 1191, 1244, 1299, 1351, 1521
- City Cohorts, 1381
- City-states in Greece, importance of the, 750
- Ciudad Real, battle of, 3466
- Ciudad Rodrigo, 3467, 3468
- Civil government, first, in Egypt, 37
- Civilis, 1418
- Civilization, Arabian, 1876-1879
 Assyrian, 218-243
 Aztec, 2535-2538
 Babylonian, 259-286
 Chaldean, 133-140
 Chinese, 680-685
 Egyptian, 65-92
 English, under Alfred the Great, 2003-2007
 Greek, 245-256
 Hebrew, 413-415

- Hindoo, 616-621
 Hungarian, 2436
 Japanese, 4639
 Median, 478-483
 Medo-Persian, 535-581
 New Persian, 1752-1789
 Phœnician, 333-336
 Roman, 1357-1370
 Russian, 2426
 Russian, under Catharine the Great, 3170
 Russian, under Peter the Great, 3053-3056
 cradle of, 37
 diffusion of European, 3619, 3949
 in the North of Europe, 1957
 in the Sixteenth Century, 2800-2805
 in the Seventeenth Century, 3024-3030
 in the Eighteenth Century, 3505-3519
 in the Nineteenth Century, 3947-3968
 in the South of Europe, 1957
 Civilizations, oldest, 31
 Civil War in the United States, 4126-4228
 Clairvaux, 2051, 2064, 2140
 Clarence, George, Duke of, 2339, 2340, 2342
 Clarence, Prince Albert Victor, Duke of, 3810
 Clarence, William Henry, Duke of, 3559
 Clarendon, Constitutions of, 2255
 Clarendon, Edward Hyde, Earl of, 2831, 2832, 2871, 2878, 2879, 2915, 3027
 Clare, Richard de, Earl of Pembroke, 2257, 2258
 Clark, Colonel, 3264
 Clark, Sir Alured, 3344
 Clarke, Lieutenant, 4007, 4074
 Clarke, Fort 4142
 Clarke, Major George Rogers, 3260
 Clarkson, Thomas, 3518, 3561, 3952
 Claude Lorraine, 3028
 Claudian, 1376
 Claudius, Consul, 1195
 Claudius, Emperor, 1400-1402
 Claudius, Appius, the Blind, 1186, 1191-1193
 Claudius, Appius, the Decemvir, 1158, 1159
 Claudius, Marcus Aurelius, 1449, 1450
 Claudius Marcellus, 1252
 Claudius Nero, 1216, 1217
 Claverhouse, John Graham of, 2887, 2900, 2910
 Clayborne, William, 2942
 Clay, Cassius Marcellus, 4107
 Clay, Clement Claiborne, 4207
 Clay, General Green, 4018, 4107
 Clay, Henry, 4015, 4030, 4038, 4039, 4044, 4045, 4052, 4056, 4057, 4073, 4081, 4093-4095, 4098
 Claypole, Mrs., 2864
 Clazomene, 758
 Cleander, 1431
 Cleandrides, 852
 Clement, Jacques, 2767
 Clement of Alexandria, 1105, 1488
 Clement II., Pope, 1934
 Clement III., Pope, 1951
 Clement IV., Pope, 2153
 Clement V., Pope, at Avignon, 2163
 Clement VII., Pope, 2574, 2579, 2580, 2584
 Clement XIII., Pope, 3146
 Clement XIV., Pope, 3146
 Clements, General Ralph Arthur Penryhn, 4504
 Cleobulus, 804, 806, 807
 Cleombrotus, 909, 911, 913
 Cleomenes, 792, 809
 Cleomenes, another, 1092, 1093
 Cleon, 860, 861, 863, 865, 866, 868
 Cleopatra, the last of the Ptolemies, 1047, 1048, 1295, 1296, 1310-1317
 Cleopatra, sister of Ptolemy Philometor, 1044
 Cleopatra, sister of Alexander the Great, 1008
 Cleopatra's Needles, 51
 Cleph, 1539
 Clepsydra, invented by the Babylonians, 279
 Clergy in the Middle Ages, 2050
 Clermont, Count de, 3129
 Clery, General Sir Cornelius Francis, 4503
 Cleveland, Colonel, 3264
 Cleveland, Grover, 4260-4265, 4268-4277
 Cleves, Anne of, fourth wife of Henry VIII, 2654
 Clifford, Sir Thomas, 2879
 Clinclamp, General, 3686
 Clingman, Thomas L., 4115
 Clinton, De Witt, 4018, 4047
 Clinton, George, 4007, 4011
 Clinton, Sir Henry, 3229, 3235, 3236, 3242, 3243, 3257, 3258, 3263, 3265, 3266, 3268, 3271
 Clio, 738
 Clisson, Oliver de, Constable of France, 2178-2180
 Clisthenes, 792, 793

- Cliton, William, Duke Robert of Normandy's son, 2137, 2138
 Clitus, 965, 998
 Clive, Robert, Lord, 3114, 3115, 3132, 3315, 3316
 Cloaca Maxima, 1131
 Clodion, 1544
 Clodius, 1380
 Clodius Albinus, 1430, 1435, 1436
 Clodomir, kingdom of, 1549
 Clontarf, battle of, 9257
 Cloots, Anacharsis, 3386
 Clostergrab, 2775
 Clotaire, 1548-1552
 Clotho, 739
 Clotilda, 1545, 1546, 1550, 1551
 Clovis, 1545-1549
 character of, 1548, 1549
 conquests by, 1545-1547
 conversion of, to Christianity, 1546
 dissensions among children of, 1548, 1549
 kingdom of, 1547, 1548
 marriage of, with Clotilda, 1545, 1546
 religion of, 1546
 Clubs in the Eighteenth Century, 3518
 Clusert, General, 3688
 Clusium, siege of, 1164
 Clypea, 1197
 Clytemnestra, 719
 Cneius Flavius, 1194
 Cneius Pompey, 1270-1273, 1275, 1279, 1287-1295
 Cneius Pompey, the younger, 1299
 Cnidus, 758
 battle of, 902
 Cobb, Howell, 4115, 4118, 4191
 Cobbett, William, 3560
 Cobden, Richard, 3566, 4144
 Cobham, Lord, 2323, 2324
 Coburg, Prince of, 3391
 Coburn, Colonel, 4179
 Cochabamba, 4346
 Cochín China, French wars in, 3636, 3844
 Cochrane, Admiral, 4022, 3474, 3478, 4347
 Cockburn, Admiral, 4021
 Coctiers, Jacques, physician to Louis XI., 2224
 Cod, Cape, discovery of, 2933
 Coddington, William, 2938
 Code Napoleon, 3433
 Code of Julius Cæsar, 1300
 Code of Justinian, 1582-1586
 Codomannus, Darius, 532-534, 984-997
 Codrington, Sir Edward, 3539
 Codrus, 722
 devotion of, 722
 Coffee Calcalli, Ashantee king, 3659
 Coffee, tea and chocolate introduced into England, 2889, 3030
 Coffey, General, 4177
 Coke, Sir Edward, 2816, 2826
 Cola di Rienzi, 2388
 Colbert, Jean Baptiste, 2980, 2991
 Colchia, 459, 717
 Cold Harbor, battle of, 4195
 Coleman, Edward, 2982
 Colenso, battle of, 3823, 4485
 Coleridge, Samuel Taylor, 3957
 Colfax, Schuyler, 4210, 4232, 4237
 Colhuaca, Kingdom of, 2534
 Coligni, Admiral, 2748, 2753-2758
 Colleton, James, 2949
 Collingwood, Admiral, 3442, 3474
 Collins, William, 3509
 Collins, William Wilkie, 3959
 Collot d'Herbois, 3384, 3393, 3394, 3399
 Cologne, Archbishop of, 3703
 Colombia, 4343-4336
 tyranny by Spain in, 4344
 liberation of, by General Simon Bolivar, 4336
 independence of, 4346
 internal dissensions, in 4344, 4345
 Republic of, 4345
 revolution in 4343
 United States of, 4364
 Colonies, Carthaginian, 433-435
 Dutch, 2745, 2746
 English, in North America, 2931-2952
 French, in North America, 3017-3019
 Grecian, 754-768
 Phœnician, 330, 331
 Portuguese, 2522-2526
 Roman, 1191
 Spanish, in America, 2538-2541, 2543-2546
 Colonna, Cardinal, 2879
 Colonna, family of, 2162, 2388
 Colonna, Sciarra, 2162
 Colorado, 4252
 Colosseum, of Rome, 1331
 Colossi, twin, near Thebes, 5152
 Colossus of Rhodes, 1106

- Columba, St., 1560, 2360
 Columbia, capture of, 4214, 4215
 Columbus, Christopher, 2526, 2527
 aided by Queen Isabella of Castile, 2526
 discovers San Salvador and other West
 India Islands, 2526, 2527, 4388
 later discoveries by, 2527
 voyages of, 2526, 2527
 Columbus, Diego, 2528, 4388
 Colville, General Sir Henry Edward, 4504
 Comentiolus, 1727
 Comines, Philippe de, 2053, 2232
 Cominius, Pontius, 1166
 Comitia Centuriata, 1132
 Comitia Curiata, 1129
 Comitia Tributa, 1133
 Comitium, 1327
 Commentaries by Cæsar, 1284, 1324
 Commerce, primitive, 31
 between China and the world, 3565, 4632
 medieval, 2054, 2055
 Assyrian, 239, 240
 Babylonian, 284, 285
 Carthaginian, 437, 438
 Chaldean, 138, 139
 Chinese, 2460
 Egyptian, 83
 English, 2054, 3030
 Florentine, 2385, 2386
 French, 3029, 3653
 German, 1923, 3639
 Hebrew under Solomon, 397, 398
 of the Dutch Republic, 2475, 2476, 3029
 Phœnician, 330-333
 Portuguese, 2522-2526
 Russian, 2428
 Saracen, 1876
 Venetian, 2383-2385
 in the Eighteenth Century, 3519
 in the Nineteenth Century, 3948, 3949
 in the Sixteenth Century, 2800, 2801
 in the Seventeenth Century, 3029-3030
 under the Antonines, 1428-1430
 Commission, Joint High, 4242
 Commodus, 1430-1433
 Commons, House of, in England, origin of,
 2277
 struggles of with Stuarts, 2811-2906
 Commonwealth of England, 2852-2869
 Commune of Paris, in 1848, 3590-3592
 in 1871, 3680-3689
 Communes, enfranchisement of the, 2136
 Communism, 3590-3592, 3680-3689
 Communists of Paris, 3590-3592, 3680-3689
 execution of, 3688
 Comnenus, Isaac, 1601
 Como, 3829
 Comonfort, 4357
 Compass, mariner's, invention of the, 2521
 Compeigne, siege of, 2197
 Compromise Act, 4095, 4096
 Comte, 3286
 Comus, 737
 Comyn, John, of Badenoch, 2285, 2372
 Conal, King of Scotland, 2360
 Concha, Manuel de la, 3698, 3699
 Concobar, 463
 Concord, skirmish at, 3226
 Condé, Prince of, 2960, 2961
 Condé, Prince of, the great general, 2795,
 2796, 2971-2978, 2980, 2983, 2984, 2986, 2987
 Condé, Prince of, the Huguenot leader, 2748,
 2750, 2751, 2753-2755
 Condé, Princess of, 2974
 Condillac, 3142, 3511
 Condorcet, 3142, 3368, 3511
 Confederacy, Southern, 4120
 Confederate States of America, 4190
 Confederation, Helvetic, 2113
 Confederation, North German, 3649
 Confederation of the Rhine, 3445, 3446
 Confians, Admiral, 3126, 3127
 Confians, Treaty of, 2215
 Confucius, 685-692
 and his religion, 685-692
 characteristics of, 690
 disciples of, 686
 life and family of, 685, 686
 sacred books of, 686, 687
 sayings of, 687-689
 teachings of, 691, 692
 writings of, destroyed, 678
 Congress, Colonial, 3116, 3117
 Congress, Continental, first, 3220-3222
 second, 3228, 3231, 3236-3241
 Congress of Berlin, 3768-3771
 Congress of Vienna, 3496, 3521
 Congress of the United States, 3308
 Congress, Stamp Act, 3209, 3210
 Conkling, Roscoe, 4210, 4232, 4258, 4259
 Connecticut, colony of, 2938, 2939
 State of, 3242

- Conner, 4082
 Conon, 901, 902
 Conrad I., of Germany, 1922
 Conrad II., of Germany, 1932, 1933
 Conrad III., of Germany, 9064, 9065, 9083-9085
 Conrad IV., of Germany, 9097, 9099
 Conrad of Lorraine, 1925
 Conradine, 9100, 9389
 Constance, Council of, 9118, 9119
 Peace of, 9088
 Constance, wife of Robert the Pious, 9132, 9133
 Constans, 1478
 Constans II., 1594
 Constantia, 1791
 Constantina, 1481
 Constantine II., 1480
 Constantine III., 1594
 Constantine IV., 1594
 Constantine V., Copronymus, 1595, 1596
 Constantine VI., 1596
 Constantine VII., 1599
 Constantine VIII., 1599
 Constantine IX., 1600
 Constantine X., 1601
 Constantine XI., 1601
 Constantine Palæologus, 2446, 2484
 Constantine the Great, 1459-1461, 1468-1479
 Constantine, Archduke, 3547, 3548
 Constantine, Arch of, 1471
 Constantine I. of Scotland, 9361
 Constantine II. of Scotland, 9361
 Constantinople, capital of the Roman Empire, 1473, 1474
 captured by Sultan Mohammed II., 2446, 2484
 Cathedral of St. Sophia at, 2446, 2484
 dispute between Greek and Roman Churches in, 9617
 massacre of Armenians in, 9916, 9917
 massacre of Janisaries in, 3539
 plundered by the Crusaders, 1605, 9069, 9070
 restored Greek Empire of, 9070, 2442
 Saracen attacks on, 1594, 1595, 1836, 1841
 siege of, by Sultan Bajaset I., 2444, 2460
 siege of, by the Crusaders, 1605, 9069, 9070
 siege of, by Sultan Mohammed II., 2446, 2464
 vol. 15-14
 sieges of, by the Saracens, 1594, 1595, 1836, 1841
 Constantinople, Treaty of, 3774
 Constantius II., 1479-1484, 1626-1639
 Constantius Chlorus, 1459
 Constitution of the United States, birth of, 3292-3311
 Constitution, vessel, 4017, 4025
 Constitutional Convention at Philadelphia, 3301-3311
 Consulate of Napoleon Bonaparte, 3428-3438
 Continental Congress, first, 3290-3292
 second, 3293, 3297, 3296-3241
 Continental System, 3449
 Conti, Prince of, 9974
 Contreras, General, 3693, 3694
 Conway, General, American, 3254
 Conway, General, British, 3281
 Conway Cabal, 3263, 3264
 Cony, Samuel, 4209
 Cook, Captain, 3330, 3518, 3519
 Cook, Eliza, 9957
 Cooke, Jay, 4168, 4169
 Coomassie, 3659, 3815, 3831
 Cooper, General, 4177
 Cooper, James Fenimore, 9961
 Cooper, Peter, 4253
 Cooper, Sir Ashley, 2866, 2879, 2946
 Coote, Sir Eyre, 3132, 3280, 3318
 Copenhagen, battle of, 3431, 3432
 British bombardment of, 3454
 Peace of, 3036
 sieges of, by Charles X. of Sweden, 3035, 3036
 siege of, by Charles XII. of Sweden, 3066
 Copernicus, Nicholas, 2801, 2802
 Cope, Sir John, 3106
 Copley, John Singleton, 3519
 Copp's Hill, 3229
 Coptic Church of Alexandria, 1890
 Copts, 1828
 Corbett, Boston, 4221
 Corbulo, 1406
 Corcyra, 711, 753, 854
 Corday, Charlotte, 3389
 Cordova, discoverer of Mexico, 2528
 Cordova, Gonsalvo de, the Great Captain, 2229, 2405, 2550, 2553
 Cordova, Khalifate of, 1859-1872
 Corfu, 854
 Corinth, in Greece, 709, 781, 782

- battle of, 900
 - destruction of, 1028
- Corinth, in Mississippi, battles of, 4148
- Corinthian architecture, 943, 944
- Coriolanus, 1150, 1151
- Cormartin, 3402
- Cornelle, 2981, 3026
- Cornelia, 1239, 1246
- Cornelius Gallus, 1315
- Cronelius Nepos, 24, 1374
- Cornelius Scipio, 1209
- Cornelius Sulla, 1250, 1260-1269
- Corneto, Cardinal of, 2554
- Cornish, Admiral, 3136
- Corn Laws, 3555
 - repeal of, 3566
- Cornucanius, Tiberius, 1187
- Cornwallis, Lord, 3243-3245, 3249, 3263, 3264, 3270-3272, 3244
- Coro, 4345
- Coronæa, battle of, 851
 - another battle of, 900, 901
- Corps Legislatif, 3429, 3612, 3669
- Corpus Christi, 4079
- Correggio, 2804
- Corsica, 438, 754, 1121, 1202, 3147, 3411
- Corte Nuova, battle of, 2095
- Cortereal, Gaspar, 2528
- Cortes, of Spain, 2393, 2573, 3530, 3652, 3653, 3690-3697
- Cortez, Fernando, 2529, 2538-2541
- Cortina, 4359, 4362
- Corunna, battle of, 3465
- Corupedion, battle of, 1029
- Corvinus, Matthias, 2438
- Corwin, Thomas, 4081
- Cosby, William, 2941
- Cosmo de Medici, 2386
- Cossacks, 2428, 3041-3044, 3483
- Cossacks, Don, rebellion of, 3167
- Cossovo, battle of, 2440, 2441, 2479
- Cotham, Eleanor, 2331
- Cottonwood, battle of the, 4255
- Council, Amphictyonic, 747, 748, 963-965, 973, 976
- Council of Basle, 2122
- Council of Constance, 2118, 2119
- Council of Trent, 2618, 2628, 2629
- Courbevoie, battle of, 3682
- Courland, 3067
- Court of Areopagus, 782, 786
- Courtrai, battle of, 2150
- Courts of Love, 2155
- Cousin, 3956
- Couthon, 3368, 3384, 3391, 3393, 3395, 3396, 3398
- Covenanters, 2682, 2706, 2715, 2832-2835, 2843, 2846, 2847, 2853-2855, 2875, 2876, 2887, 2891
- Coverdale, Miles, 2649
- Cowpens, battle of, 3269
- Cowper, William, 2924
- Cowper, William, the poet, 3510
- Coxinga, 4267
- Crabbe, Rev. George, 3957
- Cracow, 2433, 2435
 - Republic of, 3549
 - University of, 2435
- Cragus, Mt., 418
- Cranmer, Thomas, 2644, 2645, 2646-2651, 2656, 2661, 2663, 2664, 2666, 2670, 2674
- Craonne, battle of, 3493
- Crassus, 1271, 1276, 1279, 1284-1287
- Craterus, 1006
- Craven, 2949
- Crawford, Earl of, 2379
- Creçy, battle of, 2169, 2294, 2295
- Creek Indians, 2533, 4020, 4035
- Crémieux, Emanuel, 3669
- Creoles, 4341, 4342
- Créquy, Marshal de, 2987
- Crescentius, 1929, 1930
- Crespo, General, 4374
- Crespy, Peace of, 2589, 2590
- Crete, or Candia, 711, 753, 754
 - Christians in, 3918
 - conquest of, by the Turks, 3059
 - revolt in, against the Turks, 3650
 - other revolts in, 3796, 3918
- Creusia, 913
- Crichton, William, 2378
- Crim Tartars, 3168, 3169
- Crimea, Russian conquest of the, 3169
- Crimean War, 3617-3623
- Crinan, Abbot of Dunkeld, 2362
- Crispi, 3892-3896
- Critias, 886, 888, 889
- Crito, 890
- Crittenden, George Bibb, 4141, 4146
- Crittenden, John Jordan, 4117, 4141
- Crittenden, Thomas Leonidas, 4141
- Crittenden, Thomas Theodore, 4396

- Crittenden, William Logan, 4099, 4396
 Croatia, 3602, 3603, 3605
 Croats, 3101, 3601
 Croesus, 425-430
 captivity of, 429
 conquests by, 427, 428
 Delphic oracle and, 428
 riches of, 426
 Solan and, 426, 427
 son of, 427
 Cromartie, Earl of, 3108
 Crompton, 3508
 Cromwell, Oliver, 2830, 2831, 2835, 2843-2846,
 2848, 2849, 2851-2855, 2857-2866
 and the Rump Parliament, 2857-2859
 campaigns of, 2843-2845, 2849, 2853-2855
 crown of England offered to, 2863
 daughters of, 2864
 government of, 2860-2866
 Parliaments under, 2852-2854, 2857-2859,
 2860, 2861, 2863
 Lord Protector of England, 2860-2866
 Waldensees and, 2863
 Cromwell, Richard, 2866, 2867
 Cromwell, Sir Thomas, 2644, 2645, 2648, 2650,
 2652-2654
 Cronje, General Piet A., 4505
 surrender of, 3829, 4513
 Cronstadt, 3068
 Crook, General George, 4198, 4199, 4252, 4263
 Cropredy Bridge, battle of, 2843
 Crosby, Lord Mayor, 3196
 Cross and Crescent, struggle between, 1602
 Cross Keys, battle of, 4156
 Croton, 761, 762
 Crotona, battle of, 1929
 Crown Point, Fort, 3117
 capture of, 3190
 seizure of, by Benedict Arnold, 3228
 Crown, Treaty of the, 3003
 Crowat, Anthony, 3018
 Cruger, Lieutenant-Colonel, 3263
 Crusaders, 2057-2062
 Crusades, 2057-2069
 origin of, 2057-2069
 First, 2057-2064
 Second, 2064-2066
 Third, 2066-2069
 Fourth, 2069, 2070
 Fifth, 2070
 Sixth, 2070, 2071
 Seventh, 2071, 2072
 Eighth, 2072
 Children's, 2070
 Results of, 2073, 2074
 against the Albigenses, 2074-2089
 Ctesias, 24, 123-125, 465-469, 485, 490, 491,
 935
 Ctesiphon, 1064, 1067
 captured by the Romans, 1420, 1425, 1622
 captured by the Saracens, 1823, 1824
 description of, 1824
 Cuba, conquest and colonization of, 2528, 4388
 discovery of, 2527, 4388
 insurrection of 1868 in, 4400-4408
 insurrection of 1895 in, 4410-4432
 Cuban Revolution, 4410-4432
 death of General Antonio Maceo, 4424
 leaders of the insurgents, 4412
 General Martinez Campos, 4407-4416
 General Valeriano Weyler, 4416-4428
 American policy, 4413-4432
 General Blanco, 4427
 proposed Spanish reforms, 4425, 4426
 provisional government, 4413
 Spanish forces, 4411
 The Trocha, 4421, 4422
 war in Pinar del Rio province, 4416
 Weyler's cruelties, 4423, 4424
 Destruction of the Maine, 4428
 Spanish-American War in, 4428-4432
 Cucuta, 4345
 Cuddalore, battle of, 3280
 Cuenca, 3699
 Cuesta, General, 3466
 Cuirassiers, French, 3499, 3668
 Culloden Moor, battle of, 3107, 3108
 Culpepper, 4158
 Culpepper, Lord, 2933
 Cumæ, 761, 1139
 Cumberland, 2842
 Cumberland, Army of the, 4179
 Cumberland, Duke of, 3105, 3107, 3108, 3121
 Cumberland, another Duke of, 3569
 Cumberland Gap, 4161
 Cunaxa, battle of, 523, 895, 896
 Cundinamarca, 4344, 4345
 Cuneliform inscriptions, 122, 123
 Behistun, 484, 510
 Cunibert, 1541
 Cunimund, 1539
 Cupid, 731

- Curfew bell established in England, 9249
 Curtatli, 1197, 1128
 Curius Dentatus, 1182, 1189, 1190
 Curtin, Andrew Gregg, 4909
 Curtis, General Samuel Ryan, 4151, 4191
 Curtius, Ernest, 3966
 Curtius, Marcus, 1170, 1171
 Curtius, Quintus, 1378
 Cushing, Caleb, 4113, 4632
 Cushing, Lieutenant William Barker, 4192
 Custer, General George Armstrong, 4193, 4252
 death of, 4252
 Custine, General, 3385
 Custosza, battle of, 3006
 another battle of, 3647
 Cuthbert, 1560
 Cuvier, 3954
 Cyaxares, 424, 425, 466-473
 conquests by, 467-472
 founding of the Median Empire by, 466, 467
 Cybele, 723
 Cyclades, 711, 722, 753, 810
 Cyclops, 723, 727, 741
 Cydnus, 1310
 Cylaces, 1652
 Cylon, 782, 783
 Cynics, 1013
 Cynoscephalæ, battle of, 1025, 1294
 Cyprian, St., 1448, 1489
 Cyprus, 330, 331, 712, 754, 834, 2722
 British acquisition of, 3769, 3770
 captured by the Greeks, 834
 captured by the Turks, 2722
 Phœnician settlement in, 330, 331
 Cyrenaica, 431, 761, 1946
 Cyrene, 431, 761
 Cyric, 2361
 Cyril, 4707
 Cyropædia, 934
 Cyrus the Great, 475-478, 485-495
 at the Median court at Ecbatana, 476
 at Pasargadæ, 485
 character of, 494, 495
 conquests by, 485-491
 edifices erected by, 495
 founding of the Medo-Persian Empire by, 478, 485, 486
 invasion and conquest of Babylon by, 256, 257, 491
 Cyrus the Younger, 522, 523, 895, 896
 Cythera, 711, 731
 Cysicenus, 1086
 Cysicus, 686
 battles of, 861, 1436
 Czara, first, 3045-3056
 table of, 4881
 Csartoryski, Adam, 3547, 3548
 Czaulau, battle of, 3102
 Czerni, George, 3455
 DACIA, 1348, 1420
 Dacians, 1416, 1420
 Dadarses, 503
 Dade, 4058
 Dagithæus, 1700
 Dagobert I., 1553, 1554
 Daguerre, 3954
 Dahlgren, Admiral, 4178
 Dahlgren, Colonel Ulric, 4193
 Dahomey, 3849
 Dakotas, North and South, 4265
 Dalberg, Elector-Archchancellor, 3445
 Dalecarlia, 2633
 D'Alembert, 3142, 3511
 Dalhousie, Earl of, 3567, 3623
 Dallas, battle of, 4201, 4202
 Dallas, George Miffin, 4073
 Dalmatia, 1203, 1455, 2069, 2384, 3415
 Dalmatia, Duke of, 3468
 Dalmatius, 1479
 Dalny, capture of, 4714
 destruction of, 4711
 Dalrymple, General, 3464
 Dalrymple, Sir John, 2909, 2910
 Dalton, 4201
 Dalton, John, 3507
 Damascus, 340, 341
 antiquity of, 340, 341
 captured by the Assyrians, 173, 174
 captured by the Saracens, 1816
 destroyed by Tamerlane, 2469
 fall of, 342
 splendid edifices of, 342
 Damian, 3146
 Damian, Peter, 1940
 Damiatta, 2071, 2151
 Dan, city of, 378, 379
 Dan, tribe of, 381
 Dan river, 2269
 Dana, General, 4176, 4204
 Danby, Earl of, 2281, 2283, 2291, 2292

- Dandolo, Doge of Venice, 2060
 Danegelt, 2015
 abolition of, 2020
 Danes in England, 1997-2020
 defeated by Alfred the Great, 2002
 routed by Athelstan, 2008, 2009
 Danican, General, 3404
 Daniel, 408, 409, 413
 in Babylon, 252, 253, 257, 408, 409
 Dannewirke, capture of the, 3644
 Dante, 2053, 2385
 Danton, 3368, 3372-3374, 3381, 3383, 3386, 3391, 3392
 Dantonists, fall of the, 3391, 3392
 Dantzig, siege and fall of, 3452
 D'Anville, Duke, 3111
 Dara, 2504-2506
 Daras, battle of, 1689, 1690
 captured by the Persians, 1708, 1709
 D'Arblay, Countess, 3958
 Dardanelles, passage of, by the British fleet, 3618
 Darien, Isthmus of, discovery of the, 2528
 Darius Codomannus, 532-534, 984-987
 Darius Hystaspes, 501-515, 809-816
 arts, architecture and literature under, 510
 at Susa, 513
 character of, 514, 515
 coinage of, 509, 510
 government of, 505, 506
 invasion of Scythia by, 511
 satrapies of, 505
 system of posts instituted by, 509
 Darius Nothus, 519-522
 Dark Ages, 1519
 Darling, Fort, 4196
 Darnley, Henry Stuart, Lord, 2984, 2985, 2711, 2712
 Daru, 3611
 Darwin, Charles, 3954
 Darwin, Erasmus, 3954
 Dastagherd, 1742
 Datames, 528
 Datis, 814, 810, 812
 D'Aubigne, 2768
 Daun, Count, 3121, 3124-3126, 3128
 Dauphin, Charles, son of John the Good, 2172
 Dauphins of France, origin of the, 2175
 Dauphiny ravaged by the French armies, 2585
 D'Aurelles, de Paladines, 3672, 3673
 Davenport, Rev. John, 2939
 Daventer, massacre of German Christians at, 1888
 David, King of Israel, 393-396
 and Bathsheba, 396
 and Goliath, 393
 domestic calamities of, 396
 poetry of, 395, 396
 wars of, 393-395
 David I., of Scotland, 2364, 2365
 David II., of Scotland, 2374-2376
 Davidson, General, 4204
 Davis, Commodore Charles Henry, 4140, 4174
 Davis, Henry Winter, 4207, 4210
 Davis, Jefferson, 4081, 4120, 4123, 4126-4222
 Davis, General Jefferson C., 4161, 4202
 Davis, John, 2692
 Davis, John Chandler Bancroft, 4243
 Davitt, Michael, 3795
 Davoust, Marshal, 3417, 3448, 3480, 3486, 3490
 Davy, Sir Humphry, 3955
 Dawes, Henry Laurens, 4210
 Dayton, Jonathan, 3302
 Dayton, William Lewis, 4107, 4108, 4145, 4188
 Dea Dia, festival of, 1137
 Dearborn, General Henry, 4014, 4018, 4019
 Debonnaire, Louis le, 1902-1904
 Deborah, 384, 385
 Decatur, Commodore Stephen, 4007, 4017, 4025, 4034
 Decases, Duke, 3524
 Decases, Duke, another, 3709
 Deccan, 613, 3114
 Decebalus, 1420
 Decemvirs, 1156-1159
 Decian persecution, 1446, 1447
 Decius, Emperor, 1446, 1447
 Decius, Publius, 1176, 1177
 Decius, another, 1181
 Declaration of Independence, 3236-3241
 Decourtrias, 3589
 Deerfield, Massachusetts, destruction of, 2936, 2937
 Defoe, Daniel, 2930, 3509
 De Genlis, Madame, 3511
 De Grasse, Count, 3271, 3272, 3278, 3279
 De Haven, Lieutenant, 4100
 De Heister, 3243
 Deloos, 465, 466
 Dejanira, 716
 De Kalb, Baron, 2945, 2946

- Delarey, General J. H., 4505
 Delaunay, 3363
 Delaware, 2942, 3310
 Delaware, Lord, 2931
 Delawares, 2532
 D'Elbee, 3387
 Delescluse, 3686
 Delft, 2738
 Delhi, 2468, 2494, 2510, 3625, 3626, 3661, 3638, 3839
 captured by Nadir Shah, 2510
 captured by Tamerlane, 2468, 2494
 massacre of the English at, 3625
 siege and fall of, 3625, 3626
 Delibaba Pass, battle of, 3736
 Delium, battle of, 867, 869
 De Long, 3953
 Delos, 711, 753
 Confederacy of, 837, 838
 Delphi, 726, 746, 747
 oracle of, 726, 746, 747
 Demerara, 4274
 Démêtêr, 731, 732
 temples of, 732
 festival of, at Eleusis, 732
 Demetrius I., 1034
 Demetrius II., 1022
 Demetrius Bulgaris, 3642
 Demetrius Nicator, 1035
 Demetrius Phalerius, 1020, 1021
 Demetrius Poliorcetes, 1008, 1009, 1019
 Democedes, 511
 Democracy, in Athens, 792, 793, 834
 in Rome, 1193
 in the Eighteenth Century, 3505, 3506
 in the Nineteenth Century, 3947, 3948
 Democratic party, 3978-4333
 Democritus, 937
 De Monts, 3017
 Demosthenes, 967-970, 972-975, 999, 1011, 1012
 Denain, battle of, 3014
 D'Enghien, Duke, execution of, 3437, 3438
 Denmark, Christianity in, 2409, 2410
 decline of, 2412
 power of, 2412
 Indian trade of, 2929
 kings of, table of, 4884
 laws in, 2412
 Lutheranism in, 2635
 municipal privileges in, 2412
 Peace of Siorod, 3031
 prosperity under Waldemar the Great, 2410
 revival of, 2411
 under Queen Margaret, 2413
 under Struensee, 3147, 3148
 under the descendants of Sweyn II., 2410, 2411
 wars with Norway, 2410
 wars with Sweden, 3031-3038, 3066, 3067, 3070, 3071
 wars about Schleswig-Holstein, 3595, 3596, 3600, 3609, 3644, 3645
 Denmark and Norway under Frederick II., 2636
 Denis, St., battle of, 2754
 cathedral of, 2770
 Dennewitz, battle of, 3489
 Dentatus, Curius, 1182, 1189, 1190
 D'Epremenil, 3393
 De Quincey, Thomas, 3957
 Derbices, 493
 Derby, Earl of, 3571, 3656, 3657
 Derby, Earl of, another, 3729, 3734, 3739, 3755, 3758, 3763
 De Retz, Cardinal, 2973, 2976
 Dermot Macmorrough, 2257, 2258
 De Ruyter, Admiral, 2857, 2878, 2880, 2987
 Dervishes of Upper Egypt, 3816, 3893
 Dervish Pasha, 3728
 Derwentwater, Earl of, 3082
 Desaix, General, 3417, 3425, 3430
 Descartes, 3025
 Desese, 3377
 Desiderius, 1543, 1544, 1888
 Desmoulins, Camille, 3366, 3368, 3384, 3391, 3392
 De Soto, Ferdinand, 2529
 Despotovich, General, 3737
 Dessau, Prince Leopold of, 3100, 3105
 D'Estaing, Count, 3258, 3262
 De Thou, 2970
 Detroit, capture of, 4017
 founding of, 3018
 Dettingen, battle of, 3103
 Deucalion, 741
 Deve-Boyun, battle of, 3749
 Devereux, Robert, Earl of Essex, 2699-2703
 Devonshire, Courteney, Earl of, 2671
 Devonshire, Duke of, 3186
 Devonshire, Earl of, 2901

- Dewey, Admiral George, 4288, 4289
 De Wet, General Christian R., 4505
 De Witt, Cornelius and John, 2985
 Dey of Algiers, 2862, 3542, 3555, 3556, 3986, 4034
 Dhu, Donald, 2381
 Dialogues, Plato's, 939
 Diana, 794
 Diaz, Bartholomew, 2402, 2522
 Diaz, Porfirio, 4360, 4362, 4363
 Mexico under, 4362, 4363
 Diaz, Rodrigo, the Cid, 2391, 2392
 D'Iberville, Lemoine, 3018
 Dickens, Charles, 2958
 Dickinson, John, 3213, 3238, 3302, 3310
 Dictator, the first, in Rome, 1147
 Diderot, 3142, 3511
 Didius Julianus, 1434, 1435
 Dido, or Elissar, Queen and founder of Carthage, 328, 433
 Diebitsch, Marshal, 3485, 3540, 3546
 Dieskau, Baron, 3117
 Diet, Hungarian, 2439
 of Augsburg, 2128, 2606
 of Frankfort, 3101, 3521, 3550, 3608, 3646
 of Nuremberg, 2602
 of Ratisbon, or Regensburg, 3151
 of Spire, 2605
 of Worms, 2599, 2600
 Polish, 2436
 Swedish, 2633
 Danish, 2635
 Diesman, 2104
 Dijon, battle of, 3676
 capture of, 3672
 Dilamee, dynasty of, 2031
 Dillon, John, 3795, 3804
 Dimitri I., of Russia, 3050, 3051
 Dimitri II., of Russia, 3051
 Dinnois, 2397
 Dinwiddie, Governor, 3116
 Dinwiddie Court House, 4218
 Dioclea, 1455
 Diocletian, 1454-1459
 Diodorus Siculus, 24, 1101, 1102
 Diogenes, 1013-1015
 Diogenes Laertius, 1104
 Diogenes, Romanus, 1601, 2039, 2040
 Dionysius I., 440, 441, 766
 Dionysius II., 441, 766
 Dionysius Halicarnassus, 1102
 Dionysus, 735
 worship of, 735
 Diopithes, 975
 Directory, French, 3405-3428
 Dirnstein, battle of, 3442
 Dismal Swamp, battle of, 3233
 Disraeli, Benjamin, 3656-3658, 3660, 3661, 3728, 3729, 3733, 3756, 3768-3771 3792, 3795-3798
 created Earl of Beaconsfield, 3661
 Dissenters and Nonconformists, 2679
 Dissidents, 3159, 3160
 D'Issy, Fort, 3674, 3683, 3685
 Dium, 958
 Dix, John Adams, 4122
 Dixon, Jeremiah, 2947
 Dizabul, 706
 Dodono, 706
 oracle of Zeus at, 746
 Doges of Venice, 2384
 Dogger Bank, naval battle of, 3278
 Dolet, Stephen, 2591
 Dolgorouki, Prince, 3162
 Dolgorouki, Princess, 3785
 Dolopes, 705, 706, 713
 Dolopia, 705, 706
 Dolores, 4342
 Dom Antonio, 2724
 Dombrowski, 3180, 3450
 Dombrowski, another, 3688
 Domentiolus, 1733
 Domesday Book, 2241, 2242
 Domingo, San, 2527, 3434, 4348, 4349
 Dominicans, 2051
 Dominicus, 2051
 Domitia, 1417
 Domitian, 1415-1417
 Dom Miguel, 3534
 Dom Pedro, Duke of Coimbra, 2400
 Dom Pedro I., of Brazil, 3531, 4364
 Dom Pedro II., of Brazil, 4251, 4252, 4364, 4374-4378
 Domremy, 2186, 2207, 2229
 Donald Bane, 2363
 Donald Dhu, 2381
 Don Alfonso, 2699
 Don Augustin Iturbide, 3535, 4343, 4350
 Don Carlos, 2726
 Don Carlos, another, 3096, 3097
 Don Carlos, a third, 3551, 3552
 Don Carlos, a fourth, 3652, 3689, 3696, 3700

- Don Cossacks, 3047, 3052, 3053, 3167
 Donelson, Andrew Jackson, 4107, 4108
 Donelson, Fort, capture of, 4146, 4147
 Dongola, 3572
 Doniphan, Colonel, 4083
 Donizetti, 3967
 Don John, or Don Juan, of Austria, 2722, 2735, 2736
 Donna Maria da Gloria, 3534
 Donop, Count, 3250
 Dorchester, Massachusetts, 2934
 Doré, Gustave, 3967
 Dorfelden, 3180
 Doria, Andrea, 2385, 2580, 2588, 2589
 Dorians, 713, 714
 Doric architecture, 913
 Doris, 707
 Dorus, 714
 Dorr, Thomas Wilson, 4063
 Dorregaray, General, 3691, 3696, 3700
 Dorset, Earl of, 2898
 Dort, Synod of, 2628, 2745
 D'Orvilliers, 3273
 Dorylæum, battle of, 2061
 Dost Mohammed, 3564
 Douai, Merlin de, 3415
 Douay, General, 3665
 Douglas, Archibald, 2375
 Douglas, Archibald, Earl of, 2376, 2378, 2379
 Douglas, Earl of, 2376
 Douglas, Earl of Angus, 2379, 2380
 Douglas, Lord James, the Black Douglas, 2373
 Douglas, Lord William, 2379
 Douglas, Stephen Arnold, 4102, 4111-4114, 4124
 Dover, naval battle of, 2274
 Treaty of, 2879, 2880
 Dover, New Hampshire, founding of, 2937
 destruction of, 2936
 Dow, Neal, 4258
 Dowlah, Surajah, 3114, 3115
 Dowlat Gueray, Khan, 3168
 Downie, Commodore, 4022
 Downshire, Lord, 3313
 Draco, laws of, 782
 Dragaschan, battle of, 3536
 Dragnnades, 2992
 Drainsville, battle of, 4137
 Drake, Joseph Rodman, 3960
 Drake, Sir Francis, 2693-2696
 Dramatists, Athenian, 796, 797, 929-933
 English, 2802, 3027
 French, 3026
 Spanish, 3027
 Draper, General, 3136
 Draper, John W., 3963, 3964
 Drepana, 1200
 Dresden, battle of, 3468
 Peace of, 3105
 siege of, 3125
 Dress, Assyrian, 239
 Babylonian, 281, 282
 Egyptian, 82
 Grecian, 250
 Median, 481, 482
 Persian, 557
 Phœnician, 336
 English Paritan, 2841
 Roman, 1360, 1361
 of the Eighteenth Century, 3518
 Dreux, battle of, 2753
 Drogheda, massacre of, 2653
 Drouet, 3367
 Druids, 1280, 1336, 1338, 1339
 Drummond, Lieutenant-General, 4021
 Drummond, William, 2948
 Druses, establishment of, at Mt. Lebanon, 1874
 Drusus, Marcus Livius, 1057
 Dryads, 738
 Dryden, John, 3027
 Dryope, 736
 Dryopes, 713
 Duarte, 2400
 Du Barri, Madame, 3357, 3386
 Dubienka, battle of, 3176
 Dublin, 2258
 Dubois, Abbé, 3063, 3068
 Duchâtel, Tanneguy, 2183
 Duckworth, Admiral, 3451
 Duclerc, 2844
 Ducrot, General, 2673
 Dudley, William, 2358, 2360
 Dudley, Earl of Warwick, 2664-2667, 2669
 Dudley, Lord Guilford, 2667, 2669-2671
 Dudley, Robert, Earl of Leicester, 2667, 2667, 2696
 Dufaure, 3715, 3717, 3718
 Dufferin, Lord, 3902
 Dufour, General, 3586
 Dullius, 1197

- Dulcigno, 3796, 3797
 Dumas, Alexandre, 3965
 Dumas, Alexander, son of preceding, 3965
 Dumouriez, General, 3375, 3380
 Duna, battle of, 3067
 Dunbar, first battle of, 2281, 2371
 second battle of, 2855
 Duncan, Admiral, 3343, 3411
 Duncan, King of Scotland, 2363
 Duncker, 43
 Dundalk, battle of, 2289, 2374
 Dundonald, Lord, 4504
 Dunkards, 3518
 Dunkirk, cession of, to England, 2862, 2977
 sale of, to France, 2887
 siege and fall of, 2977
 Dunmore, Lord, 2947, 2927, 3232, 3233
 Dunning, 3275, 3276
 Duns Scotus, 2052
 Dunstan, St., 2009-2013
 Duphot, General, 3416
 Dupont, Admiral Samuel Francis, 4142
 Dupont, General, 3464
 Dupont de l'Eure, 3589
 Düppel, capture of, 3644
 Duprat, Chancellor, 2564, 2571
 Duquesne, Admiral, 2987
 Duquesne, Fort, 3116, 3117
 capture of, 3129
 Duquesne, Governor of Canada, 3116
 Dura, Treaty of, 1648-1650, 1653
 Duras, Marshal, 2995
 Durazzo, battle of, 1996
 Dürer, Albert, 2805
 Durlach, Baden, George Frederick of, 2779
 Duroc, Marshal, 3486
 Dur Sargina, 180, 181
 Dusseldorf, 2773, 3598
 Dutch East India Company, 3029
 Dutch Republic, 2727-2746
 alliance of Queen Elizabeth with, 2735, 2736
 colonial possessions of, 2745, 2746
 founding of, 2734
 government of, 2745
 prosperity of, 2745
 religious disputes in, 2745
 rise of the, 2737-2746
 Spanish acknowledgment of independence of, 2744, 2798
 war of, with the English Commonwealth, 2856-2860
 other wars with England, 2877, 2878, 2880, 2881
 Dutch traders in China, 4625
 Dwight, Timothy, 3961
 Dynasties, Abbassides at Bagdad, 1846-1858
 Anglo-Saxon in England, 1997-2028
 Arsacide in Parthia, 1062-1073
 Bonaparte in France, 3438-3505, 3609, 3617-3669
 Bourbon in France, 2767-2771, 2953-3017, 3079-3156, 3857-3378, 3523-3527, 3541-3544
 Bourbon in Spain, 3001
 Brunswick in Great Britain, 3079
 Capet in France, 2131-2166
 Carlovingian in France, in Germany and Italy, 1885-1921
 Danish in England, 2015-2019
 Fatimites in Egypt, 1873-1876
 Frankish in Germany, 1932-1954
 Hapsburg in Germany and Austria, 2002-2007, 2021-2029
 Hohenstaufen in Germany, 2083-2101
 Luxemburg in Germany, 2107-2121
 Maccabees in Judæa, 1077-1081
 Merovingian in France, 1544-1556
 Norman in England, 2237-2252
 Norman in Lower Italy, 1995, 1996
 Ommiyades at Damascus, 1836-1845
 Ommiyades in Spain, 1859-1872
 Plantagenets in England, 2252-2352
 Ptolemies in Egypt, 1037-1048
 Sassanidæ in Persia, 1606-1760
 Saxon in Germany, 1922-1931
 Seleucidæ in Syria, 1028-1037
 Stuart in England, 2811-2930
 Stuart in Scotland, 2376-2382, 2811-2930
 Tudor in England, 2352-2360, 2636-2703
 Valois in France, 2166-2232, 2547-2591, 2746-2767
 EADBURGA, 1566
 Early, General Judal, 4129, 4171, 4198-4201, 4217
 East Anglia, 1559
 Eastern Question, 3572-3574, 3617, 3725-3774
 Eastern Roman Empire, 1502, 1573-1605, 2069, 2070, 2441-2448, 2484
 circus factions in, 1575

- commercial prosperity of, 1597
 Emperors purchase peace from the Saracens, 1849
 end of the, 2448, 2484
 government of the, 1573
 invasion of the, 1581, 1597, 1601
 loss of dominions in Asia and Africa, 1735, 1736
 Nika riots in, 1575, 1576
 revenue by taxation in, 1596
 wars with the New Persian Empire, 1578, 1592, 1593
- East Haven, 3261
- East India Company, English, 2815, 3029
 chartering of the, 2815
 conquests by the, 3113-3115, 3132, 3280, 3333, 3344, 3351
 territory ceded to, by the Mahrattas, 3351
 wars with Hyder Ali and Tippoo Saib, 3280, 3333, 3334
- East India Company, Danish, 3029
- East India Company, Dutch, 3029
- East India Company, French, 3029
- East Indies, discovery of the sea passage to the, 2522
 first European settlement in the, 2522, 2523
- Eastport, 4022
- Eaton, Theophilus, 2939
- Ebbesen, Niels, 2412, 2413
- Eberhard the Grumbler, 2115
- Ebersberg, battle of, 3470
- Ebersdorf, battle of, 3470
- Eboracum, 1337
- Ecbatana, Northern, 451
- Ecbatana, Southern, 450
- Ecbatana, court of, 475
- Ecija, 3695
- Eck, John von, 2598
- Eckmühl, battle of, 3470
- Ecnomus, naval battle of, 1197
- Ecuador, freed by General Simon Bolivar, 4345
 revolution in, 4343
- Edda, the elder, or poetic, 1968
- Edda, the younger, or prose, 1968
- Eddystone Lighthouse, construction of the, 3508
- Edenton, 2948
- Edessa, 958
- Edgar, King of Scotland, 2363, 2364
- Edgar the Atheling, 2022, 2362
- Edgar the Peaceable, 2012, 2013
 division of Northumbria by, 2013
 Sunday laws of, 2012
- Edge Hill, battle of, 2842
- Edgeworth, Abbé, 3378
- Edgeworth, Maria, 3958
- Edham Pasha, 3733
- Edict of Cyrus the Great, 411
- Edict of Milan, 1463
- Edict of Nantes, 2771
- Edinburg, founding of, 2361
 Treaty of, 2682, 2709
- Edison, Thomas Alva, 3954
- Edith, wife of Henry I. of England, 2247
- Edmund Ironside, 2016, 2017
- Edmund, King of East Anglia, 1999
- Edmund I., of England, 2009
- Edom, or Idumæa, 1069-1097
 conquered by Esar-haddon, 195
- Edred, 2009
- Education, among the Anglo-Saxons, 1566, 1567
 among the Jesuits, 2631
 during the Middle Ages, 2052, 2053
 in China, 681-684
 in England, 2003, 2357, 3514, 3659
 in Florence, 2386
 in France, 2148
 in Japan, 4645
 in England's North American colonies, 2950
 in the new German Empire, 3702
 in Persia, 559
 in Russia, 2425
 in the Netherlands, 2727
 in the Sixteenth Century, 2800
 in the Nineteenth Century, 3949
 in the United States during the Revolution, 3289
 in the Saracen dominions, 1867, 1876
 in Charlemagne's Empire, 1899
 in ancient Greece, 952, 953
 in ancient Rome, 1363, 1364
- Edward, Fort, 3250
- Edward I., of England, 2279-2286
 in France, 2282
 in Scotland, 2281
 conquest of Wales by, 2279, 2284, 2286
 laws of, 2283
 marriage of, 2158

- Edward II., of England, 2286-2291
 deposition and death of, 2290, 2291
 flight of, 2290
 marriage of, 2287
 revolts against, 2288-2291
- Edward III., of England, 2291-2304
 chivalry under, 2299
 campaigns of in France, 2293-2299
 government by, 2301, 2302
 character of, 2291
 victories of, 2293-2299
- Edward IV., of England, 2336-2343
 character of, 2337
- Edward V., of England, 2343-2346
- Edward VI., of England, 2661-2667
- Edward VII., of Great Britain and Ireland, 3843-3841
- Edward the Black Prince, 2169, 2171-2173, 2175, 2176, 2298-2299, 3002, 3004
- Edward the Confessor, 2019-2023
 death of, 2023
 dress of, 2020
- Edward the Elder, 2007
- Edward the Martyr, 2013, 2014
- Edwards, Jonathan, 3508
- Edwy, 2011, 2012
- Effingham, Lord Howard of, 2695
- Egalité, Philippe, 3377, 3378, 3386
- Egan, Patrick, 4373
- Egbert, 1566, 1597
- Egeria, 1127
- Egesta, 871
- Egica, 1532
- Eglantine, Fabre d', 3392
- Eglon, 384
- Egmont, Count, 2728, 2730, 2731
- Egypt, 37-107
 ancient, 37-107
 antiquity of, 37
 Assyrian conquests in, 58, 59
 Assyrians driven from, 59
 Assyrian yoke cast off, 59
 celebrated cities of, 38
 civil and political institutions in, 37
 climate and productions of, 39
 comparison of, with Assyria, 224, 225
 conquest of, by Alexander the Great, 993, 994
 conquest of, by Esar-haddon, 58
 conquest of, by the Ethiopians, 57, 58
 conquest of Libya by, 44
 decline of, during the twentieth dynasty, 56
 described by Amru, 1829, 1830
 distinctive periods of history of, 43, 44
 dynasties of, 62-65
 first knowledge of, 40, 41
 geographical divisions of, 38
 industries of, 73, 78, 83
 invasion of, by Cambyses, 62
 invasion of, by Nebuchadnezzar, 61
 invasion of, by Sennacherib, 58
 literature and art of, under Ptolemy Soter, 1039, 1040
 Medo-Persians and, 521, 531
 Memphite dynasty of, 45
 Moslem kingdom in, 1857
 New Empire in, 50-62
 obelisks of, 77, 78
 Old and Middle Empires of, 43-50
 Persian dynasty in, 62
 political history of, 43-62
 population of, 39, 73
 prosperity of, 1041
 Pyramids of, 45-47
 rock temples of, 53, 111
 Saracen libraries in, 1877
 subjection of, to foreign nations, 62
 sources of history of, 40-43
 Ten Plagues of, 363, 364
 tribes of, 66
 under Rameses the Great, 52-54
 under the Saracen dominion, 1828-1831
 under the Fatimites, 1873-1876
 under the Hyksos, or Shepherd Kings, 49, 50
 under the Ptolemies, 1037-1048
- Egypt, modern, beginning of, 2487
 civil war in, 3455
 conquest of, by the Turks, 2487
 conquest of, by Bonaparte, 3417, 3420, 3426
 independence of, partly established, 3723, 3724
 national party in, 3724
 Pashas and Khedives of, table of, 4889
 prosperity of, under Ismail Pasha, 3724
 struggle with Dervishes, 3806, 3815, 3816, 3819, 3820
 treaties with Turkey, 3574
 Turkey and, 3572-3574, 3721-3725
 under Mehemet Ali, 3572-3574

- Egyptians, agriculture of the, 73-75
 animal worship by the, 100, 101
 armies of the, 71, 72
 art and architecture of the, 77, 78
 beliefs of the early, 40
 castes of the, 68, 69, 70
 catacombs of the, 49
 chronology of the, 41
 civilization of the, 65-92
 descriptions of the, 65-67
 domestic animals of the, 76
 domestic life of the, 80, 81
 dress of the, 82
 embalming of the dead of the, 90-92
 feasts and games of the, 81, 82
 gods of the, 93-97
 government of the, 67, 68
 Great Sphinx of the, 84
 habits and character of the, 40, 67
 industries of the, 47, 48
 inscriptions and hieroglyphics of the, 42, 43
 intellectual development of the, 66, 67
 Labyrinth of Faïoum, 49
 language of the, 78
 laws of the, 71
 learning of the, 45
 monuments, records and literature of the, 37
 mysteries of the, 65
 noted works of *Rameses the Great*, 53
 origin of the, 65
 religion and mythology of the, 92-107
 religious festivals of the, 102
 sacred animals of the, 100-102
 sacred books of the, 93
 sciences of the, 78
 sculpture of the, 83, 84
 social life of the, 66, 67
 temples and palaces of the, 103, 104
 tombs of the, 86-90
 writing of the, 78, 79
 Egyptologists, list of, 43
 Ehud, 384
 Eidgenossen, 2113
 Eiffel, 3850, 3851
 Eiffel Tower, 3850
 Eisleben, 2592, 2613
 Ekron, 378
 Elah, 401
 Elandslaagte, battle of, 3897, 4476
 Elatea, 977
 Elba, 3494, 3496
 Napoleon's exile to, 3494
 Elberfeld, 3598
 Elbing, 2073
 El Boweib, battle of, 1751, 1820
 Elchingen, battle of, 3441
 Eldon, Lord, 3558
 Eleanor of Aquitaine, 2139, 2141, 2251
 Eleanor of Castile, 2277
 Eleanor of Provence, 2274
 Eleanor, wife of *Francis I. of France*, 2577
 Elector, the Great, of Brandenburg, 3033-3038
 Electoral College in the United States, formation of the, 3306
 Electors of Germany, 2105
 Elena, battle of, 3751
 Elephanta, island of, rock temples of, 111
 Elephantine, island of, 37, 38
 Eleusis, 745
 plain of, 708
 Eleusinian Mysteries, 745, 746
 Elfrida, 2013, 2014
 Elgin, Lord, 3623
 Elgin, Lord, 3812
 Elgiva, 2011, 2012
 El Homeira, mound of, 271, 272
 Eli, 387
 Elijah, 401, 413
 Elio, General, 3700
 Eliot, George, 3958
 Eliot, Sir John, 2825, 2826, 2828, 2831
 Elis, 709, 721, 752, 894, 923
 Elisha, 413
 Elissar, or Dido, 327, 328, 433
 Elizabeth, Madame, sister of *Louis XVI.*, 3393
 Elizabeth, of England, 2677-2703
 bull of *Pope Pius V.* against, 2686
 Roman Catholic subjects of, 2686-2689
 character and disposition of, 2677, 2703
 conspiracies against, 2687, 2689, 2690
 death of, 2702
 favorites of, 2697-2702
 government of, 2678
 learning under, 2699
 Philip II. of Spain and, 2678, 2681, 2683-2697
 "Progresses" of, 2697
 prosperity of England under, 2678
 Elizabeth, of Russia, 3101, 3118, 3121, 3136

Elizabeth of York, wife of Henry VII. of England, 2352
 Elisabethan poets, 2699, 2802, 2803
 El Kasr, mound of, 270, 271
 Ellenborough, Lord, 3564, 3565
 Elliot, General, 3278, 3279
 Elliott, Admiral, 3564
 Elliott, Captain, 3564
 Elliott, Sir Henry George, 3729
 Ellis, Colonel, 3812
 Ellsworth, Colonel Ephraim Elmer, 4133
 Ellsworth, Oliver, 3302
 El Mahdi, 3725, 3800, 3801
 Elmo, St., fortress of, at Malta, 2721
 El Obeid, battle of, 3800
 Elphinstone, Rear-Admiral, 3162
 Elswitha, wife of Alfred the Great, 2001
 Elulæus, 245
 Elyma, 258
 Elysian Fields, 731
 Elysium, 744
 Emancipation Proclamation, 4164-4166
 Embalming in Egypt, 90-92
 Emerson, Ralph Waldo, 3963
 Emessa, 340
 Emilio Castelar, 3652, 3689, 3692, 3694, 3695-3697
 Emin Pasha, 3870
 Emmanuel I., Victor, 3532
 Emmanuel II., Victor, 3607, 3628, 3630-3634, 3705
 Emmanuel III., Victor, 3896
 Emmerik Tekeli, 3060
 Emmett, Robert, 3351
 Emory, General, 4190
 Empedocles, 938
 Emperors, Five Good, 1417-1427
 Ems, 3664
 Encyclopedists, 3142, 3359, 3511
 Endicott, John, 2934
 Endymion, 730
 Enghien, Count d', 2589
 Enghien, Duke d', the Great Condé, 2795, 2796
 Enghien, another Duke d', trial and execution of, 3437, 3438
 England, Act of Indemnity, 3091
 Act of Settlement, 2905
 Act of Settlement, another, 2919
 and Napoleon Bonaparte, 3428-3505
 and Revolutionary France, 3331-3351

and the Suez Canal, 3660
 assemblies of the Witenagemote in, 1568
 Augustan Age of Literature in, 2930, 3509
 Bank of, 2918, 3343
 becomes a papal fief, 2266, 2267
 Black Plague in, 2296
 Catholicism in, 2896
 Christianization of, 1563-1565
 civilization of, in the Nineteenth Century, 3950
 civil war in, 2840-2852
 commerce and industries of, 2692, 2693, 3030, 3325
 Confederation of North American provinces, 3656, 3657
 conquest of, by Canute the Great, 2016
 conquest of, by William of Normandy, 2025, 2026
 conquest of India by, 3113-3115, 3132, 3280, 3318, 3333, 3344, 3351
 conquest of Ireland by, 2256-2259
 conquest of Wales, 2279, 2280
 Constitutions of Clarendon, 2265
 Corn Laws of, 3555, 3556
 Crimean War, 3617-3623
 Danes and Normans in, 1997-2028
 Declarations of Indulgence in, 2880, 2897
 development of Australia by, 3568, 3569
 discoveries and adventurers of, 2692, 2693
 distress in, during the reign of Edward VI., 2665
 Dominions of, in the East, 3568-3570
 downfall of Puritanism in, 2868, 2869
 East India Company of, 2815, 3029
 effects of the Anglo-Turkish treaty in, 3369, 3770
 excise duties in, 3091
 Feejee Islands, acquisition of the, 3659
 feudal, 2237-2260
 first written laws of, 1563
 founding of, 1566
 Franchise Act of 1884, 3802
 freedom of the press in, 3185-3197
 French Revolution and, 3331-3351
 House of Brunswick in, 3079
 House of Commons in, 2277, 2301
 House of Lords in, 2301
 Houses of Parliament in, 2301
 India bills, 3320-3322
 Indian appointments, 3315

- in the Russo-Turkish War, 3731-3774
 in the Sixteenth Century, 2636-2703
 introduction of printing into, 2343
 invasion of, by the Danes, 1997-2019
 invasion of, by the French, 2273
 invasion of, by the Scots, 2295, 2296
 Irish bills, 3811, 3813
 Irish Land Act of 1870, 3658
 Irish Land Act of 1881, 3798
 Jacobite revolt of 1715, 3081, 3089
 Jacobite revolt of 1745, 3106-3109
 Jews admitted to Parliament, 3655
 joins the coalition against the French Republic, 3340, 3379
 Joint High Commission with the United States of America, 4242
 kings and queens, table of, 4877
 learning and literature under Queen Elizabeth, 2699
 losses of, in France, 2265
 Luddite riots in, 3555
 Magna Charta, 2268-2273
 maritime discoveries of, 3330
 Merchant Shipping Bill, 3660
 national debt of, 2918, 3552
 naval and military reforms in, 3658
 navigators of, in the Sixteenth Century, 2692
 navigators of, in the Eighteenth Century, 3330, 3518, 3519
 Norman conquest of, 2025, 2026
 Norman dynasty in, 2237-2252
 Parliamentary reform in, 3553-3561, 3556, 3802
 Parliamentary Union with Scotland, 2924-2926
 Parliamentary Union with Ireland, 3347
 Peace of Paris, in 1763, 3137
 Peace of Paris, in 1783, 3281, 3282
 Peace of Paris, in 1814, 3484
 Peace of Paris, in 1815, 3501
 Peace of Paris, in 1856, 3622, 3623
 peasant revolts in, 2302, 2305-2309
 Peter's Pence in, 1565
 plague and fire in London, 2877, 2878
 Plantagenet dynasty in, 2252-2252
 present form of English language, origin of, 2300
 progress of civilisation in the Eighteenth Century in, 3505-3519
 prosperity of, under Elizabeth, 2678
 purchase and annexation of dominions by, 3659
 Puritans in, origin of, 2679-2681
 recent affairs in, 3792-3841
 recent wars of, 3792-3841
 reconciliation of, with the Vatican, 2672
 Reformation in, 2636-2703
 Reforms in, 3553-3561, 3556-3558, 3798, 3802
 religious laws of, 2678, 2679
 Revolution of 1688 in, 2900-2906
 Riot Act in, 3080, 3081
 riots in, 3080, 3081
 "rotten boroughs" in, 3187-3189
 Secret Ballot Act, 3659
 Sepoy mutiny in India, 3623-3627
 Septennial Act, 3082
 slave trade, 2692, 3329
 South Africa under, 3792-3841
 Statute of Laborers in, 2302
 survey of, under William the Conqueror, 2241-2242
 Tartan dress forbidden in Scotland, 3106
 Tyrone's rebellion, 2700, 2701
 under the papal ban, 2265, 2266
 under Queen Mary, 2668-2677
 under the Stuarts, 2811-2930
 under the Tudors, 2352-2360, 2636-2703
 under William the Conqueror, 2237-2244
 Whigs and Tories in, 2884
 England and the American Revolution, 3185-3292
 benefit of, to England, 3282
 Boston Port Bill, 3218, 3219
 colonial taxation, 3197-3226
 Declaration of Independence, 3236-3241
 Declaratory Act, 3212
 peace negotiations, 3281, 3282
 Stamp Act, 3206
 tea tax, 3216
 Writs of Assistance, 3203
 England's North American Colonies, 2931-2952
 education in, 2950
 government in, 2950, 2951
 Indian warfare in, 2951
 London and Plymouth Companies in, 2931
 persecution of Quakers in, 2934
 religious exiles in, 2950
 England, Revolutions in, 2811-2906
 Act of Oblivion and Indemnity, 2872

- Acts of Settlement, 2905-2919
 Bill of Rights, 2907
 Bloody Assize, 2892
 Cabal Ministry, 2879
 Cavaliers and Roundheads, 2840
 Cavalier Parliament, 2874
 Commonwealth, 2852-2869
 constitutional change in, 2916, 2921
 Declaration of Rights, 2905
 dethronement of James II., 2901-2906
 execution of regicides of Charles I., 2872, 2873
 Glorious Revolution of 1688, 2901-2906
 Habeas Corpus Act, 2883
 House of Commons, 2811-2906
 Long Parliament, 2835-2859
 Oliver Cromwell and the Protectorate, 2852-2869
 Petition of Right, 2826
 Popish Plot, 2881
 religious dissensions, 2846
 Rump Parliament, 2840
 Rye House Plot, 2885
 Ship Money, 2831
 Solemn League and Covenant, 2843
 Second Stuart Tyranny, 2887
 Treaty of Ripon, 2835
 trial and execution of Charles I., 2850-2852
 Triennial Act, 2917
 under Charles I., 2821-2852
 under Charles II., 2869-2890
 under James I., 2811-2821
 under James II., 2890-2906
 under William and Mary, 2907-2922
 under Anne, 2922-2930
 Ennius, 1320
 Enquest, Admiral, 4730
 Enzersdorf, battle of, 3471
 Ensio, 2095
 Eos, 736
 Epaminondas, 908, 910, 912, 913, 916-918, 920, 923-925
 Epernon, Duke d', 2768
 Epervier, 4024
 Ephesus, 421, 756
 battle of, 513
 temple of Artemis at, 730
 Ephori, of Sparta, 770
 Ephraim, tribe of, 380, 381
 Ephthalites, 1665, 1666, 1668, 1670, 1672-1674, 1676-1678, 1683, 1687, 1704
 Epicharmus, 932, 933
 Epidamnus, 854, 958
 Epidaurus, 3537
 Epimetheus, 727
 Epirus, 706, 1021, 1184
 Episcopal Church, 2664, 2678, 2679
 Era, Christian, true beginning of the, 1390
 Erasmus, Desiderius, 2521, 2658, 2659, 2800
 Erato, 738
 Eratosthenes, 41, 1040, 1098
 Erebus, 734
 Erech, 116, 126
 Erechtheum, 853
 Eresburg, fall of, 1888
 Ericsson, Captain John, 3954, 4153
 Erie Canal, 4047
 Erie, Fort, assault on, 4021
 siege of, 4021, 4022
 Erie, Lake, battle of, 4018, 4019
 Eries, 2533
 Erik IV., of Denmark, 2412
 Erik Glipping, 2412
 Erik Graafel, 2414
 Erik Harefoot, 2411
 Erik Menved, 2412
 Erik of Pomerania, 2418
 Erik XIV., of Sweden, 2634
 Erik the Cruel, 2413
 Erik the Good, 2411
 Erik the Lamb, 2411
 Erik the Saint, or the Pious, 2416
 Erivan, battle of, 2488
 Ernest, Archduke of Austria, 2742
 Ernest Picard, 3669
 Ernest, Prince of Bavaria, 2725
 Ernest von Mansfeld, 2775, 2778, 2780
 Eros, 731
 Errol, Earl of, 2705
 Erskine, 4011
 Ervigius, 1532
 Erythræ, battle of, 831
 Erythræan Sea, 1028
 Erzeroum, battle of, in 1807, 3456
 battles near, in 1877, 3749
 Esar-haddon, 193-200
 architecture and buildings under, 198-200
 conquests by, 193-197
 Esau, 353, 354, 356, 357, 1090
 Eschenbach, Wolfram von, 2107

- Escocce, 4351
 Esculapius, 726, 741
 temple of, at Carthage, 1233
 Escorial, 2725
 Esdracón, plain of, 375
 Eski-Saghra, battle of, 3741
 Espartero, General, 3551, 3552, 3636
 Essek, battle of, 3064
 fall of, 3603
 Essences, 1074, 1463
 Essequibo, 4274
 Essex, Earl of, 2699-2709
 Essex, Earl of, another, 2841, 2842, 2844
 Essex, Saxon Kingdom of, 1559
 Essex, vessel, 4024
 Essling, battle of, 3470
 Estaing, Count d', 3258, 3259, 3262
 Estanislao Figueras, 3652, 3690, 3692
 Estella, 3699
 Esther, 412
 Esthonia, 3066, 3072
 Estrées, Marshal d', 3121
 Eth-baal, 327
 Ethelbald, 1999
 Ethelbert, 1999
 Ethelfleda, 2007
 Ethelred I., 1999
 Ethelred II., the Unready, 2014-2016
 Ethelwolf, 1998
 Etheridge, Emerson, 4142
 Ethiopia, ancient, 107-112
 migration of Egyptians to, 60, 100
 priests of, 110
 religion of, 110
 sovereigns of, 110
 Ethnological tables, 36
 Ethnology, 25-28
 Etna, Mt., 1120
 Etruria, 1115
 Etruscans, 1122, 1123
 divinations of the, 1123
 Etschmiazin, battle of, 3455
 Eubœa, 711, 753
 Euclid, 1040, 1097
 Eudamidas, 906
 Eudes, Count of Blois, 2133
 Eudes, Count of Paris, 1912-1914, 1915
 Eudocia, Empress, 1601
 Eudoxia, Empress, 1503, 1510
 Eugene, Prince, 2922, 3004, 3006, 3008-3012,
 3014, 3064, 3065, 3083, 3095
 Eugene Beauharnais, 3437, 3440, 3471, 3482,
 3491
 Eugene Pelletan, 3669
 Engenie de Montijo, 3612, 3623, 3669
 Eugenius, 1500
 Eugenius IV., Pope, 2122, 2123,
 Eulenberg, Count von, 3777, 3871, 3872
 Euler, 3507
 Eumenes I., 1049
 Eumenes II., 1050, 1051
 Eumenides, 739
 Eumolpidae, 882
 Enomius, 1663
 Eupator, 1034
 Eupatrids, 781
 Euphrates, 113, 114
 Euphrosyne, 739
 Eupompus, 1017
 Eure, Dupont de l', 3575, 3589
 Euric, conquests by, 1528
 expulsion of the Romans from Spain by,
 1528
 Euripides, 929, 931
 Euripus, 822
 Europe, compared with Asia, 33
 development of political institutions in,
 33
 Five Great Powers of, 3521
 from 1714 to 1740, 3079-3099
 Holy Alliance in, 3521-3523
 new races in, 1520-1526
 reforms and innovations of the Eighteenth
 Century, 3139-3156
 States-System in, 2547-2591
 States-System in North and East, 3081-
 3073
 New States-System in, 3521-3523
 Eurotas, 768, 769
 Eurybiades, 821, 822, 825, 829
 Eurydice, 742
 Eurymedon, battle of, 516, 639
 Eurynome, 739
 Eusebia, 1483
 Eusebius, 42, 1105, 1468, 1480, 1493
 Eustace, St. Pierre, 2169, 2170, 2296
 Eustathius, 1635
 Eutaw Springs, battle of, 3270
 Euterpe, 738
 Euxine Sea, 717, 759
 Evagoras, 527, 901, 903

- Evarts, William Maxwell, 4237, 4243, 4252, 4254, 4256
 Eve, 24
 Everett, Edward, 4099, 4114, 4186, 3961
 Evesham, battle of, 2377
 Evil-Merodach, 253
 Ewell, General Richard Stoddard, 4129, 4168, 4171, 4194, 4219
 Ewing, General, 4191
 Exarchate of Africa, 1576
 Exarchate of Ravenna, 1538, 1580
 Exarchs of Ravenna, 1538, 1580
 Exchequer Chamber, 2831
 Exclusion Bill, 2882, 2883, 2884
 Excommunication, papal, 2060
 Exeter, England, 2845, 2903
 Exeter, New Hampshire, 2937
 Exmouth, Lord, 3555, 3556
 Exodus of the Israelites, 364-374
 Explorations, in America, 2526-2530
 of the Sixteenth Century, 2800
 of the Eighteenth Century, 3518, 3519
 of the Nineteenth Century, 3953
 Portuguese, 2402, 2522-2526
 Eylau, battle of, 3451
 Eyre, Major, 3625
 Eyre Coote, Sir, 3132, 3280, 3318
 Ezekiel, 413
 Ezra, 412
 Ezzelino, 2097, 2098

FABIUS BUTO, 1201
 Fabius Maximus, 1211-1213
 Fabius Pictor, 1214
 Fabius, Quintus, 1206
 Fabricius, 1187, 1188
 Fahrenheit, 3508
 Faidherbe, General, 3675
 Faloom, Labyrinth in the, 49
 Fairbanks, Charles Warren, 4333
 Fairfax, Lord, 2841, 2843-2845, 2849, 2850, 2864
 Fairfax Court House, 4135
 Fair Oaks, battle of, 4154, 4155
 Falkenstein, General von, 3647
 Falkirk, battle of, 2984, 2971
 another battle of, 3107
 Faneuil Hall, 3217
 Faraday, Michael, 3955
 Farias, Gomez, 4352, 4384
 VOL. 15-16
 Farnese, Alexander, of Parma, 2736, 2737, 2739, 2740, 2743
 Faron, General, 3681
 Farragut, Admiral David Glasgow, 4149, 4150, 4174, 4205
 Farrar, Canon Frederick William, 3960
 Fashoda incident, 3820-3822
 Fasti Capitolini, 23, 1124
 Fastrade, 1894, 1896
 Fates, 739
 Fathers of the Christian Church, 1488-1493
 Fauchet, 3991
 Faulfisch, Jerome, of Prague, 2118, 2119
 Fauna, 733
 Faunus, oracle of, 1139
 Faure, Felix, 3855, 3857, 3861
 Faust, 2521
 Fausta, 1473, 1479
 Faustina, 1424
 Faustina, Annia, 1424
 Faustrecht, 2114, 2115
 Favre, Jules, 3654, 3669, 3670, 3676-3678
 Fawkes, Guy, 2813
 Febronius, 3144
 Federalists, 3978-4040
 Feejee Islands, under British protection, 3659
 Fehrbellin, battle of, 3036
 Fenelon, 2981, 3026
 Feng-huang-tcheng, capture of, by the Japanese, 4654
 Fenian Brotherhood, 3657
 Fenton, Reuben Eaton, 4210
 Feodor I., of Russia, 3049, 3050
 Feodor II., of Russia, 3050
 Feodor III., of Russia, 3053
 Ferdinand I., of Austria and Germany, 2568, 2582, 2620, 2624, 2716, 2720, 2771
 Ferdinand II., of Austria and Germany, 2772, 2774-2792
 Ferdinand III., of Austria and Germany, 2792-2800, 2978
 Ferdinand II., of Naples, 2549, 2550
 Ferdinand IV., of Naples, 3421, 3424, 3443, 3531, 3532
 Ferdinand V., of Naples, 3532, 3587, 3606, 3607
 Ferdinand I., of Portugal, 3399
 Ferdinand V., the Catholic, of Spain, 2396, 2403-2405, 2547, 2550, 2553, 2555, 2558, 2560-2563, 2565
 Ferdinand VI., of Spain, 3110, 3133

- Ferdinand VII., of Spain, 3462-3469, 3530-3534, 3551
 Ferdinand, Archduke, of Styria, 2772
 Ferdinand, Emperor of Austria, 3583, 3600, 3602
 Ferdinand De Soto, 2529
 Ferdinand Magellan, 2529
 Ferghana, 3720
 Ferguson, Patrick, 3264
 Fermor, 3124
 Fernando Cortez, 2529, 2538-2541
 Ferokhsir, 2509
 Ferozeshah, battle of, 3566
 Ferrara, Duke of, 2558
 Ferry, Harper's, John Brown's 'Insurrection at, 4112
 seizure of arsenal at, 4129
 surrender of, 4159
 Ferry, Stono, battle of, 3261
 Ferry, Jules, 3669, 3843-3845
 Fersen, Baron de, 3180
 Fessenden, William Pitt, 4206, 4237
 Festus, Porcius, 1087
 Fête of the Federation, 3366
 Feudalism, rise of, 2047
 Feudal System and Chivalry, 2047-2049
 decadence of, 2522
 establishment in the Carolingian dominions, 1910, 1911
 in England, 2239
 in France, 1910, 1911
 in Japan, 4640
 in Lombardy, 1539, 1540
 in Scotland, 2368
 oppressions and abuses of the, 2048
 Feuerbach, 3956
 Feuillants, 3368
 Fichte, 3956
 Fiefs, feudal, 2047
 Field, Cyrus West, 4234, 3954
 Fielding, Henry, 3509
 Field of the Cloth of Gold, 2569, 2640
 Fieschi, 3577
 Fiesco, 2385
 Fiesole, 1115
 Figueras, Estanislao, 3652, 3689, 3690, 3692
 Figuieras, capture of, 3400
 Fillmore, Fort, surrender of, 4141
 Fillmore, Millard, 4091, 4095, 4107
 Fimbria, 1265
 Finch, Sir John, 2928
 Finland, 3101, 3458, 3460
 Finlanders, 1886
 Finnegan, General, 4192
 Finns, 27, 1524
 Firdusi, 2052
 Fischart, Johann, 2804,
 Fish, Hamilton, 4238
 Fisher, Fort, capture of, 4213, 4214
 Fishing Creek, battle of, 3264
 Five Forks, battle of, 4218, 4219
 Fitz-Alan, Walter, 2376
 Fitz-Gerald, Maurice, 2258
 Fitzgerald, Warin, 2269
 Fitzherbert, Peter, 2269
 Fitzherbert, Matthew, 2269
 Fitzhugh, John, 2269
 Fitzpatrick, James A., 4114
 Fitz-Stephen, Robert, 2258
 Fitz-Urse, Reginald, 2256
 Fitz-Walter, Robert, 2268
 Fitzwilliam, Lord, 3340
 Flaccus, 1265
 Flaccus, Fulvius, 1245
 Flag, American, origin of the, 3252
 Flamborough Head, naval battle of, 3262, 3263
 Flaminian Way, 1204
 Flaminus, Caius, 1210
 Flaminus, Titus Quinctius, 1224
 Flanders, 2131, 2158, 2159, 2178, 2179
 Flavio Gioja, 2521
 Flavius, Cneius, 1194
 Flavius Josephus, 1102
 Flaxman, 3325
 Fleetwood, General, 2864
 Fleetwood, Mrs. 2864
 Flemings, 2158, 2159, 2178
 Flemish, 2158, 2159, 2178
 Fletcher, John, 3027
 Fletcher, Governor of New York, 2939
 Fletcher, Thomas C., Governor of Missouri, 4209
 Fleuriot, 3396
 Fleurus, battle of, 2998
 another battle of, 3394, 3400
 Fleury, Cardinal, 3089, 3090, 3103
 Fleury, historian, 3026, 3027
 Flocon, 3591
 Flodden Field, battle of, 2562, 2563, 2632
 Flood, Henry, 3314
 Floquet, 3717

- Flora**, 737
Florence, Republic of, 2385-2387.
 greatness of, 2386
 industries of, 2385
 under the Medici, 2386, 2387
Florian, 1453
Florida, admission of, as a State of the Union, 4074
 cession of, to the United States, 4035
 discovery of, 2528
 erection of, into a Territory, 4035
 readmission of, 4237
 secession of, 4119
Florus, Gecius, 1087
Florus, Lucius Annæus, 1378
Flourens, Gustave, 3682, 3683
Floyd, John Buchanan, 4118, 4121, 4147
Focsani, battle of, 3172
 negotiations at, 3166
Fo-hi, 676
 invention of character writing by, 676
Foix, Andrew de, 2569, 2570
Foix, Gaston de, 2560
Fontainebleau, Treaty of, 3155
 another Treaty of, 3494
Fontaine, Marius, 3850, 3851
Fontenay, battle of, 1905
Fontenoy, battle of, 3103, 3106
Fonseca, Deodora da, 4376-4378
Foote, Commodore Andrew Hull, 4146, 4148
Forbach, battle of, 3665
Forbes, General John, 3129
Forde, Colonel, 3132
Forey, General, 3641
Formosa island, 695
 cession of, to Japan, 4670
 occupation of, by the Japanese, 4671
Fornovo, battle of, 2229, 2550
Forrest, General Nathan Bedford, 4161, 4188, 4189, 4203
Forster, William E., 3797, 3798
Fortress Monroe, 4121, 4129
Forum, of Rome, 1330
Forum, Trajan's, 1419
Foster, George, 3380
Foster, General John Gray, 4178, 4204
Foster, John W., 4661
Fouché, 3394, 3429, 3500, 3501
Foulques V., Count of Anjou, 2138, 2139
Fouquet, General, 3128
Fouquet, Nicholas, 2980
Fouquier-Tinville, 3384, 3393, 3399
Fourrier, 3577
Fox, Charles James, 3269, 3281, 3319, 3320, 3323, 3324, 3331-3334, 3336, 3337, 3341, 3445
Fox, George, 2861, 3028
 actions of, 3028
 doctrines of, 3028
Fox Indians, 4056
France, a new modern nation, 1905
 Act of Amnesty, 3433, 3434
 Act of Mediation, 3435
 Age of Louis XIV., 2979-3017
 as an autocracy, 2980, 3357-3361
 aristocracy of, 3357, 3358
 assassination of the Guises, 2766
 Augustan Age of Literature in, 2981, 3026
 banishment of Napoleon's family and adherents, 3600, 3601
 Black Plague in, 2170
 Cesarism and Liberalism in, 3653, 3654
 Catholic League of, 2762-2771
 Civil Wars of Religion in, 2746-2771
 colonies of, 3017-3019
 commerce and industries of, under Henry IV. and Louis XIV., 3029, 3030
 communes, enfranchisement of the, 2136
 Courts of Reunion in, 2989
 Cuirassiers of, in battle of Sedan, 3668
 Cuirassiers of, in battle of Waterloo, 3499
 Day of the Barricades, 2763
 demand for Rhine frontier from Prussia, 3661, 3662
 demand for Savoy and Nice from Italy, 3631
 during the Hundred Years' War, 2166-2212
 during the Wars of Charles VIII. and Louis XII., 2547-2563
 during the Wars with Charles V., 2563-2591
 during the Wars with Philip II. of Spain, 2716-2719
 during the Civil Wars of Religion, 2746-2771
 during the Early Bourbons and Richelieu, 2953-2970
 during the time of Mazarin, 2970-2979
 during the early part of Louis XIV.'s reign, 2979-2981

during the War of Louis XIV. with Spain, 2981-2983
 during the War of Louis XIV. with Holland, 2983-2990
 during the Persecutions of the Huguenots, 2990-2994
 during the War with the Grand Alliance, 2994-3001
 during the War of the Spanish-Succession, 3001-3017
 during the early years of Louis XV., 3082-3099
 during the War of the Austrian Succession, 3099-3112
 during the Seven Years' War, 3113-3138
 during the later years of Louis XV., 3138-3156
 during the Great Revolution, 3357-3426
 during Napoleon's Time, 3428-3505
 during the Bourbon Restoration and Reaction, 3523-3527
 during the Revolution of 1830, 3541-3844
 during Louis Philippe's Reign, 3574-3582
 during the Revolution of 1848, 3588-3593
 during Louis Napoleon's Rule, 3609-3612, 3617-3623, 3627-3644, 3653, 3654, 3661-3669
 during the Third Republic, 3669-3689, 3705-3719, 3842-3868
 East India Company of, 3029
 Edict of Nantes, 2771
 effect of American Revolution upon, 3359
 English driven from, 2910
 expulsion of Jesuits from, 3146
 Family Compact of the Bourbons, 3133
 feudal, 2131-2232
 finances of, under Louis XVI., 3350, 3360
 founding of, 1905
 Hundred Day's, 3495-3505
 Hundred Years' War, 2166-2212
 under Louis XIV., 2979-3017
 Inquisition in, 2748
 in the Sixteenth Century, 2547-2581, 2746-2771
 intimacy with Russia, 3849, 3865
 kings and emperors of, table of, 4878
 laws of St. Louis, 2152
 Legion of Honor instituted, 3433
 Legitimists, Orleanists, Bonapartists, Republicans, 3609, 3610

Louis Napoleon becomes Emperor of, 3612
 Louis Philippe becomes King of, 3544
 Mayors of the Palace in, 1554
 Mexico and, 3579, 3640, 3641, 4358-4360
 Napoleon Bonaparte and, 3403-3505
 Normans settle in, 1916
 Parliament of Paris, 2152
 peasant revolt in, 2172, 2173
 persecutions of Huguenots in, 2749, 2750, 2990-2994
 philosophical writers of, 3139-3143
 political changes under Philip Augustus, 2148
 political divisions of, 3365
 Pragmatic Sanction revoked, 2913, 2914
 principalities of, 2131
 prosperity of, under Henry IV., 2953, 2954
 recent events in, 3842-3868
 reform banquets in, 3588
 recovery of Calais, 2676, 2718, 2746
 religious toleration in, 2751
 religious wars in, 2746-2771
 part of, in Thirty Years' War, 2969, 2972
 royal power in, under Philip the Fair, 2157
 Salic Law in, 1548
 settlement of Normans in, 1916
 separation of Church and State in, 3842, 3865
 Spanish marriages, 3580, 3581
 supremacy of French crown over its vassals established, 2150
 "Day of Dupes," 2968
 Treaty of Senlis, 2228
 Treaty of Troyes, 2183, 2237
 under the Duke de Choiseuil, 3146
 under the ban of Pope Innocent III, 2144
 under the Bourbons, 2767-2771, 2953-3017, 3082-3156, 3357-3378
 under the Capets, 2131-2166
 under the Carolingians, 1885-1921
 under the Directory, 3405-3428
 under Louis Napoleon, 3609-3612, 3617-3623, 3627-3644, 3653, 3654, 3661-3669
 under the Merovingians, 1544-1556
 under Napoleon Bonaparte, 3428-3505
 under the National Convention, 3374-3405

- under the regency of the Duke of Burgundy, 3178
- under the restored Bourbons, 3523-3527, 3541-3544
- White Jacobins, 3523
- Franche-Comté, 2223, 2572, 2982, 2983, 2986
- Francia, Dr., 4364, 4365
- Francis, Duke of Guise, 2621, 2676, 2617, 2746-2753
- Francis of Assisi, 2051
- Francis I. of Austria, 3438
- Francis I. of Germany, 3105
- Francis I. of France, 2563-2591
 - alliances of, 2565
 - captivity of, 2576, 2577
 - character of, 2591
 - persecution of the Vaudois under, 2590
 - wars of, with Charles V., 2563-2590
- Francis II. of France, 2749, 2750
- Francis II. of Germany, 3156
- Francis I. of Naples, 3532
- Francis II. of Naples, 3631
- Francis Joseph, of Austria, 3602
 - liberal reforms of, 3650
 - reactionary policy of, 3638
- Franciscans, 2051
- Franco-German War, 3661-3678
- Franco-Siamese dispute, 3851-3854
- Franconberg, Lady, 2864
- Franconia, 1922
- Frangipani, Count, 3059
- Frankfort-on-the Main, Diet of, 3521, 3600
 - League of, 3104
 - Treaty of, 3678
- Franklin, Dr. Benjamin, 3117, 3220, 3239, 3256, 3302, 3304, 3305, 3308
- Franklin, General William Buel, 4157, 4176
- Franklin, Sir John, Arctic expedition of, 3953, 4100
- Franks, rise of the, 1544
 - conquest of the Lombards by the, 1543, 1888, 1889
 - home of the, 1544
 - in Gaul, 1545-1547
 - and Gauls, amalgamation of, 1911
- Fredegonda, 1552, 1553
- Frederick, Duke of Austria, 2119
- Frederick, Emperor of Germany, 3869
- Frederick, Landgrave of Hohensobern, 2121
- Frederick of Bohemia, 2776-2778
- Frederick I., of Denmark and Norway, 2636
- Frederick II., of Denmark and Norway, 2636
- Frederick III., of Denmark and Norway, 3031
- Frederick IV., of Denmark and Norway, 3031, 3032, 3066
- Frederick V., of Denmark and Norway, 3147
- Frederick VI., of Denmark and Norway, 3458, 3582
- Frederick VII., of Denmark and Norway, 3582, 3644
- Frederick II., of Germany, 2092-2099
 - accession of, 2092
 - as a Crusader, 2070, 2093, 2094
 - coronation of, as King of Jerusalem, 2070, 2093, 2094
 - death of, 2098, 2099
 - description of, 2099
 - education of, 2099
 - excommunication of, 2070, 2093, 2094, 2096
 - in the Holy Land, 2070, 2093, 2094
 - in Italy, 2092-2099
 - laws of, 2094, 2095
- Frederick III., of Germany, 2122-2125
- Frederick I., of Prussia, 3004, 3038
- Frederick II., the Great, of Prussia, 3092, 3093, 3099-3128, 3151-3154
- Frederick Augustus I., of Poland, 3045, 3066-3068, 3070, 3094
- Frederick Augustus II., of Poland, 3094, 3159
- Frederick Augustus III., of Saxony, 3094
- Frederick Barbarossa, 2085-2091
 - accession of, 2085
 - as a Crusader, 2066, 2067, 2090
 - death of, 2090
 - chivalrous character of, 2085, 2089, 2090
 - expeditions of, to Italy, 2085-2088
 - in the battle of Lignano, 2088
 - Peace of Constance, 2088
 - struggle of, with Henry the Lion, 2089, 2090
- Frederick Charles, Prince, 3640, 3647, 3664, 3666-3668, 3672-3675
- Frederick the Great, 3092, 3093, 3099-3128, 3151-3154
 - accession of, 3099
 - campaigns of, 3100-3105, 3190-3136
 - character and occupations of, 3093
 - foreign tastes of, 3152, 3153
 - friendship of, with Peter III. of Russia, 3136

- government of, 3151, 3152
 imprisonment of, 3092, 3093
 in the Seven Years' War, 3120-3138
 in the War of the Austrian Succession, 3100-3105
 in the First Partition of Poland, 3163-3165
 Prussia under, 3151-3153
 Frederick William, Crown Prince of Germany and Prussia, 3647, 3664-3668, 3671, 3689
 Frederick William I., of Prussia, 3016, 3091, 3092, 3099
 Frederick William II., of Prussia, 3154, 3155, 3369, 3401, 3402, 3584
 Frederick William III., of Prussia, 3402, 3442, 3447-3453, 3584
 Frederick William IV., of Prussia, 3584, 3594, 3597-3599, 3639
 Frederick William, the Great Elector of Brandenburg's, 2985, 3038
 Fredericksburg, battle of, 4160
 capture of, 4169
 Fredericktown, 4021
 Fredericksödde, siege and fall of, 3035
 Frederikshall, siege of, 3071
 Frederickschamm, Peace of, 3460, 3461
 Free Companies, of the Black Prince, 2175
 Freiburg, battle of, 3137
 siege of, 2794
 Fremont, General John Charles, 4082, 4107, 4108, 4139, 4140, 4156, 4228, 4229
 French Academy, founding of the, 2970, 3026
 French authors, 2053, 2803, 3026, 3027, 3511, 3964, 3965
 French and Indian War, 3116-3118, 3129-3132
 French Consulate, 3428-3440
 court of the, 3437
 government of the, 3428, 3429
 religion restored under the, 3433
 French Empire, First, 3438-3505
 abdications of Napoleon Bonaparte, 3494, 3500
 Bourbon Restorations, 3494-3497, 3500, 3501
 coronation of Napoleon, 3438
 Hundred Days, 3497-3500
 invasion of, by the allies, 3492-3495
 overthrow of, 3494
 Peninsular War, 3461-3469
 War of German Liberation, 3484-3494
 war with Austria, 3469-3471
 war with Austria and Russia, 3440-3446
 war with Prussia and Russia, 3447-3453
 war with Russia, 3479-3484
 French Empire, Second, 3612, 3617-3623, 3627-3661, 3653, 3654, 3661-3669
 accession of Napoleon III., 3612
 Crimean War, 3617-3623
 Franco-German War, 3661-3678
 Italian War, 3627-3631
 Mexican expedition, 3640, 3641, 4358-4360
 prosperity under, 3612, 3653
 reforms under, 3654
 French Republic, First, 3374-3438
 under the National Convention, 3374-3405
 under the Directory, 3405-3428
 under Bonaparte's Consulate, 3428-3438
 French Republic, Second, 3589-3593, 3609-3612
 proclamation of, 3589
 Communist rebellions against the, 3590-3592
 Louis Napoleon as President of, 3592, 3593, 3609-3612
 Coup d'Etat of Louis Napoleon, 3611, 3612
 French Republic, Third, 3669-3689, 3705-3719, 3842-3868
 Anarchist outrages in, 3844, 3849, 3858, 3854
 assassination of President Sadi-Carnot, 3854, 3855
 Boulanger and, 3846-3848
 closing of religious houses in, 3842, 3865
 dissenting parties in, 3705-3719
 election of 1877, 3713, 3714
 election of 1878 and 1879, 3716
 election of 1886 in, 346
 election of 1889 in, 3848
 expulsion of French princes from, 3846
 Germany and the, 3847
 political parties in, 3705, 3706
 President Sadi-Carnot, 3848, 3854, 3855
 President Casimir-Perier, 3855
 President Fallieres, 4879
 President Felix Faure, 3855
 President Jules Grevy, 3717, 3718, 3846, 3847
 President MacMahon, 3706-3717

- President Thiers, 3677, 3680-3689, 3705-3708
 proposed alliance of Great Britain and China against, 3863
 trial, imprisonment and escape of Marshal Bazaine, 3709
 wars in Anam, 3844
 war with China, 3844, 3845
 war in Senegambia, 3856
 war in Siam, 3851-3854
 wars in Madagascar, 3844, 3856, 3857
 war in Tunis, 3843
- French Revolution of 1789-1799, 3357-3428
 abolition of the Christian religion, 3386
 abolition of the Gregorian calendar, 3386
 abolition of titles and privileges, 3364, 3365
 adoption of the tricolor, 3362, 3363
 assembling of the States-General, 3360, 3361
 assignats, 3399
 Bread riots, 3365, 3366
 Committee of Public Safety, 3381
 Constitution of the Year III., 3403
 Constitution of the Year VIII., 3428, 3429
 Council of Ancients, 3403
 Council of Five Hundred, 3403
 Directory established, 3403-3405
 Emigrants of the, 3364
 First Coalition against the, 3379
 Gironde and Mountain, 3368, 3375
 Insurrection of La Vendée, 3387-3389
 Jacobins and San-Culottes, 3375
 Legislative Assembly, 3368-3374
 National Assembly, 3361-3367
 National Convention, 3374-3405
 National Guard, 3362
 Parliament of Paris, 3360
 political clubs, 3366
 recognition of a Supreme Being, 3393
 Reign of Terror, 3384, 3385
 Revolution of the Eighteenth Brumaire, 3427, 3428
 Revolution of the Eighteenth Fructidor, 3414, 3415
 Revolutionary Tribunal, 3381
 Second Coalition against the, 3421
 six sister republics, established, 3421
 storming of the Bastille, 3363
 storming of the Tuilleries, 3472, 3473
- suspension of royal authority, 3373
 trial and execution of Louis XVI., 3376-3378
 wars during the, 3370-3428
 "white terror" of the, 3389
- French, General William Henry, 4173
 French General J. D. P., 3827, 3829, 4476, 4489, 4503, 4506-4508, 4510
 Frenchtown, Md., attack on, 4021
 Frenchtown, Mich., battle of, 4018
 Freneau, Philip, 3290
 Frere, Sir Bartle, 3793
 Fréron, 3394, 3398
 Fretteval, battle of, 2144
 Freya, or Frigga, 1561
 Freycinet, de, 3842, 3844, 3846
 Friedland, battle of, 3452
 Friedland, Duke of, 2780
 Friends, or Quakers, 2861, 3028, 3029
 Frigga, or Freya, 1561
 Frobisher, Martin, 2692, 2695
 Froebel, 3966
 Froissart, Jean, 2053, 2177, 2178
 Fronde, Civil Wars of the, 2973-2976
 Frontenac, Fort, capture of, 3129
 Froschwiller, battle of, 3665
 Frossard, 3665
 Froude, James Anthony, 3959
 Fructidor, Eighteenth, 3414, 3415
 Frundsberg, George, 2579, 2600
 Fulda, 1893
 Fulton, Robert, 3953, 4008
 steamboat of, 4008, 4009
 Fulvia, 1311
 Furies, 739
 Furius Camillus, 1162, 1163, 1167, 1168
 Furst, Walther, 2112
 Füssen, Treaty of, 3105
 Futch Ali Shah, 2493
- GABRIELLE D'ESTREES, Duchess of Beaufort, 2954
 Gad, tribe of, 381
 Gades, 331, 716
 Gadesbusch, battle of, 3071
 Gæa, or Earth, 723
 Gage, General Thomas, 3219, 3220, 3223, 3226, 3229, 3230
 Gaines, Fort, surrender of, 4205
 Gaines, General, 4158
 Gaines' Mill, battle of, 4156, 4157

- Gainesborough, Thomas, 3612
 Galatia, 420, 1020, 1040, 1343
 Galba, Servius Sulpicius, 1406-1408
 Galen, 1099
 Galerius, 1459, 1460
 Galeswintha, 1552
 Galigai, Leonora, 2959
 Galilee, 1081, 1083, 1084
 Galileo, 2700, 3025
 Galitsin, Prince Alexander, 3161
 Gall, Dr. Franz Josef, 3956
 Gallia Cisalpina, 1114, 1115
 Gallicia, in Poland, 3164
 Gallicia, in Spain, 1527, 1528
 Gallienus, 1449
 Gallus, 1447
 Galvani, 3507
 Galveston, capture of, 4176
 Galvez, 3697
 Galway, Lord, 3010
 Gama, Admiral da, 4381-4388
 Gama, Vasco da, 2402, 2522, 2523
 Gambetta, Leon, 3669, 3705, 3707, 3710-3713, 3715, 3716, 3743, 3744
 Gambier, Admiral Lord, 3454, 3474
 Games, Greek national, 748, 749
 Isthmian, 749
 Nemean, 749
 Olympic, 748, 749
 Pythian, 749
 Gandaria, 457
 Ganelon, 1890, 1891
 Ganges, 613, 614
 Nana Sahib's defeat on the banks of the, 3625
 Ganymede, 798
 Garcia, Calixto, 4412, 4422
 Garde Mobile, 3663
 Garde Nationale, 3663
 Gardiner, 2656, 2657, 2669, 2670, 2673, 2674
 Gardner, General Frank, 4176
 Garfield, General James Abram, 4146, 4180, 4258, 4259
 assassination of, 4259
 elected and inaugurated President, 4258
 in the Civil War, 4146
 Garibaldi, Joseph, 3607, 3608, 3629, 3631-3634, 3647, 3671
 Garigliano, battle of, 2555
 Garnier Pages, 3590, 3669
 Garrick, David, 3509
 Garrison, William Lloyd, 4054, 4055, 4096, 4298
 Garter, Knights of the, founding of the, 2301
 Gascoigne, Lord Chief Justice, 2322
 Gascony, 2131
 Gaslights, first use of, 3508
 Gaspé, 3216, 3244
 Gaspereau, Fort, capture of, 3117
 Gatacre, General Sir William Forbes, 3626, 4484
 Gates, General Horatio, 3261, 3263, 3264
 Gath, 378, 393
 Gaugamela, 534, 995
 Gaul, 1164, 1335-1337
 Cæsar's conquest of, 1280-1284
 Gaul, Cisalpine, 1114, 1115, 1180, 1181, 1203, 1204, 1209
 Gauls, ancient, 1163, 1336
 and Franks, 1911
 Bonian, 1183
 Cisalpine, 1114, 1115, 1180, 1181, 1203, 1204, 1209
 Insubrian, 1209
 invasion of Greece and settlement in Asia Minor, 1020
 invasion of Italy and burning of Rome, 1163-1168
 Papius and the, 1166
 Rome plundered and burned by the, 1166
 Senonian, 1183, 1203
 Transalpine, 1203
 Gautama, the Buddha, 653-672
 Gauthier, General, 3423
 Gaveston, Piers, 2287, 2288
 Gaza, 378, 388, 993
 Geary, Colonel John White, 4136, 4137
 Geber, 1877, 1879, 2052
 Ged, William, 3508
 Gedrosia, 457, 1001
 Gefion, 3600
 Geisa I., 2436
 Geisa II., 2437
 Geismar, General, 3539
 Gelasius II., Pope, 1953
 Gelimer, 1576
 Gelo, 439
 Gemblours, battle of, 2736
 Genabum, 1509
 Genet, 3990, 3991
 Geneva, Arbitration Tribunal at, 4241-4243
 under John Calvin, 2227

- Genlis, Madame de**, 3511
Genoa, Republic of, 2385, 2580
Gensaleic, 1539
Genseric, 1508, 1510, 1511
Geoffrey, Count of Brittany, 1993
Geoffrey Plantagenet, 2138-2140, 2249
Geographical explorations, 2402, 2521, 2528, 3017, 3330, 3953
 in the Fifteenth Century, 2402, 2521-2528
 in the Sixteenth Century, 2528-2530, 2692
 in the Seventeenth Century, 3017, 3018
 in the Eighteenth Century, 3330, 3518, 3519
 in the Nineteenth Century, 3953
George, Duke of Clarence, 2339, 2341, 2342
George I., of Great Britain, 3079-3082, 3090
George II., of Great Britain, 3090, 3091, 3103, 3132
George III., of Great Britain, 3132, 3135, 3185-3351, 3478, 3556
George IV., of Great Britain, 3556, 3559
George I., of Greece, 3642
George Cadoudal, 3407, 3437
Georgetown, D. C., 4016
Georgetown, Md., 4021
Georgia, colony of, 2949, 2950
 readmission of, 4237
 secession of, 4119
 State of, 3310
Geok-Tepe, assault on, 3720
Gepideæ, 1509
Gerard, 3546, 3577
Gerard, Balthazar, of Franche-Comte, 2739, 2740
Gerbert, Archbishop of Rheims, 1929
Gerhard, Count of Holstein, 2412
German Empire, New, 3673-3674, 3700-3704, 3774-3778, 3868-3879
 army of the, 3704, 3869, 3871
 African colonies of the, 3870, 3873, 3878
 elections in the, 3869-3871, 3873, 3878
 establishment of the, 3673, 3674
 expedition to China, 3877
 footing obtained in China, 3874, 3875
 government of the, 3700, 3701
 labor questions in the, 3781
 recent events in the, 3868-3879
 religious disturbances in the, 3701-3704
 result of the Franco-German War to the, 3677, 3678
 Socialism in the, 3774-3778, 3878
 tariff war of the, with Russia, 3872
Germania, Statue of, on the Niederwald, 3701
Germanic Confederation, 3521, 3527, 3609, 3648, 3649
Germanicus, 1391-1393
German Liberation, War of, 3484-3495
Germano-Roman Empire, 1922-1954, 2083-2129, 2547-2625, 2716-2727, 2771-2800, 2983-3017, 3083-3156, 3370-3446
Germantown, battle of, 3249
Germanus, 1733
Germans, or Teutons, 28, 1351-1356
 origin of name of the, 1351
 religion of, 1355
Germany, ancient, 1351-1356
 Absolutism and Liberalism in, 3527-3530, 3549, 3583, 3593-3602
 Alsace-Lorraine recovered from France, 3677
 architecture in, 2106, 2107
 Asiatic hordes in, 2095
 at the close of the Seven Years' War, 3138
 Charles I. of Spain as Emperor Charles V., 2567, 2568
 Christian missionaries in, 1886, 1887
 Circles of, 2127, 2128
 civil wars in, 2083-2101
 concessions granted to the people in, 3593
 customs-parliament of, 3649
 customs-union of, 3583
 during the Carolingians dynasty, 1885-1921
 during the reigns of the Saxon dynasty, 1921-1931
 during the reigns of the Frankish dynasty, 1932-1954
 during the reigns of the Hohenstaufen dynasty, 2083-2101
 during the Interregnum, 2101, 2102
 during the reigns of the Hapsburg and Luxemburg dynasties, 2102-2129
 during the Reformation and under Charles V., 2563-2625
 during the Thirty Years' War, 2771-2800
 during the Seventeenth Century, 2983-3017, 3056-3065
 during the Eighteenth Century, 3084, 3089, 3091-3097, 3099-3156
 during the French Revolution and Napoleon's time, 3370-3505

- during the Germanic Confederation, 3521, 3527-3530, 3549, 3583, 3593, 3644-3650
- during the North German Confederation, 3649, 3661-3673
- during the new German Empire, 3673, 3700, 3774, 3868
- Edict of Restitution, 2782
- end of the Holy Roman Empire of, 3446
- establishment of the Holy Roman Empire of, 1925, 1926
- Fehmgerichte in, 2106
- Franco-German War, 3661-3680
- German union, 3599
- hostile parties in, in 1850, 3608, 3609
- indulgences in, sale of, 2593-2598
- kings and emperors of, table of the, 4879
- laws of, 2106, 2114
- Lutheranism in, 2598-2625
- Martin Luther, 2592-2607, 2609-2613
- Margraviates in, 1898
- Meistersingers in, 2804
- minnesingers in, 2053, 2107
- national church of, 1953
- North German Confederation, 3649, 3661-3673
- Old League of High Germany in, 2113
- papal power in, 1932-1954
- peasant revolt in, 2603-2605
- prosperity in, after 1848, 3639
- Protestants, origin of name of, 2606
- recent events in, 3868-3879
- Reformation in, 2592-2609
- regeneration of, under Frederick the Great, 3127
- religious wars in, 2609-2625
- Revolutions of 1830 in, 3549, 3550
- Revolutions of 1848 in, 3593-3602, 3608, 3609
- Roman invasions of, 1282, 1388-1390
- Schleswig-Holstein Wars, 3595, 3596, 3600, 3644, 3645
- Seven Weeks' War, 3645-3649
- Seven Years' War, 3113-3138
- Socialism in, 3774-3778
- Thirty Years' War in, 2771-2800
- War of Religion in, 2609-2625
- wars with Francis I. of France, 2563-2591
- wars with Louis XIV. of France, 2963-3017
- War of the Austrian Succession, 3099-3112
- wars of the French Revolution and Napoleon, 3370-3505
- wars with the Turks, 2581-2583, 2585, 2587, 2589, 2725, 2726, 3056-3065
- Zollverein in, 3585
- Geronimo, Apache Indian chief, 4264, 4311, 4312
- Geronimo, Filipino chief, 4311, 4312
- Gerry, Elbridge, 3302, 3305, 3308, 4017
- Gesler, 2112
- Gessius Florus, 1087
- Geta, 1438
- Gettysburg, battle of, 4171-4173
- Ghent, 2216
 - Pacification of, 2735
 - Peace of, 4032
- Ghibellines and Guefts, civil war of the, 2083-2111
- Ghizeh, Pyramids of, 45, 46
- Ghizni, 2032
 - capture of, 2037
 - magnificence of, 2034
- Ghiznivide empire, 2032-2037
 - dismemberment of the, 2037
 - fall of the dynasty of the, 2037
 - origin of the, 2032
 - Persia and the, 2029-2037
- Gholam Khadur, 2513-2515
- Giafar, 1849, 1850
- Gibbon, Edward, 3510
- Gibbon, General John Oliver, 4172, 4252, 4256
- Gibel al Tarik, 1840
- Gibraltar, capture of, by the English, 2923, 3008
 - origin of name of, 1840
 - siege of, 3278-3280
 - straits of, 1840
- Gideon, 385, 386
- Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 2698
- Gilboa, Mt., battle of, 394
- Gildas, "the Wise," 1568
- Gillmore, General Quincy Adams, 4152, 417, 4178, 4191
- Gioberti, Abate, 3586
- Gloja, Flavio, 2521
- Girgasites, 377
- Girondists, 3368, 3375-3377, 3381-3385, 3387, 3389
- Gischala, John of, 1087

- Gitschin, battle of, 3647
 Giurgevo, battle of, 3619
 Giusti, Giuseppe, 3586
 Gladiatorial combats in Rome, 1361, 1369
 Gladstone, William Ewart, 3657-3660, 3755, 3762, 3795, 3798, 3802, 3803, 3811, 3813, 3819
 Glais Bixoin, 3669
 Glaucia, 1254-1257
 Glencoe, Scotland, Massacre of, 2909, 2910
 Glencoe, South Africa, battle of, 3827, 4475, 4476
 Glendower, Owen, 2317
 Gliniski, of Russia, 3046, 3047
 Gloucester, Duke of, 2311-2313
 Gloucester, Duke of, another, 2328, 2331, 2332
 Gloucester, Richard, Duke of, 2342-2346
 Glycerius, 1511
 Goa, 2523
 Gobbo, Godfrey, 1949
 Goblet, 3846
 Gobryas, 504, 505
 Godebert, 1541
 Goderich, Lord, 3558
 Godfrey of Bouillon, 2061, 2063
 Godfrey, Sir Edmundsbury, 2882
 Godolphin, Lord, 2926, 2928
 Godoy, Don Manuel, 3461, 3462
 God Save the King, song and origin of, 3100
 Godunof, Boris, 3049, 3050
 Godwin, Earl, 1994, 1995, 2018-2022
 Goethe, 3154, 3512
 Gog and Magog, Rampart of, 1582
 Golconda, Prince of, 2505
 Gold, Field of the Cloth of, 2569, 2640
 Golden Fleece, 717
 Golden Horn, 1474
 Golden House of Nero, 1405
 Goldsborough, Commodore Louis Malesherbes, 4182
 Goldsmith, Oliver, 3510
 Goliad, 4070, 4353
 Goliath, 393
 Gomes Farias, 4352, 4354
 Gomez, General Maximo, 4412-4416, 4420, 4426
 Gomez, Stephen, 2529
 Gomorrah, 351
 Gonatus, Antigonus, 1021, 1022
 Gonsalvo de Cordova, 2229, 2550, 2553, 2555
 Gontram, 1552, 1553
 Gonzales, battle of, 4070, 4353
 Gonzales, Mexican General and President, 4363
 Gonzales, Spanish General, 3691
 Good Hope, Cape of, discovery of, 2402, 2522
 Goodwin Sands, battle of, 2856
 Goodyear, Charles, 2948
 Goojerat, battle of, 3567
 Goold-Adams, Colonel, 3811
 Gordian I., 1444
 Gordian II., 1444
 Gordian III., 1445
 Gordian Knot, cutting of the, 987, 988
 Gordias, 421
 Gordium, 421, 988
 Gordon, British General, 3801
 Gordon, Colonel James Henry, 4505
 Gordon, Lieutenant-Colonel Hon. Frederick, 4505
 Gordon, General John Brown, 4171
 Gordon, Lady Catharine, 2355
 Gordon, Lord George, 3276
 Gordon Pasha, 3801
 Gorges, Sir Ferdinando, 2937
 Gorgey, 3603-3605
 Gorgons, 730, 740
 Gorm the Old, 2409
 Gortschakoff, Prince, 3619, 3680, 3726, 3729, 3739, 3752, 3161, 3768, 3769
 Görtz, Baron von, 3071
 Goshen, land of, 54, 359
 Goslin, Bishop, 1912
 Gosnold, Bartholomew, 2933
 Gospels, origin of the, 1488
 Gotha, 1447, 1449, 1450, 1496, 1504-1509, 1521
 conversion of the, 1521
 invasions of Roman Empire by the, 1447, 1449, 1450, 1496, 1504-1509
 primitive home of the, 1521
 Gottenburg, siege of, 3172
 Gottfried, Duke of Lower Lorraine, 1933
 Gough, John Bartholomew, 4068
 Gough, Lord, 3566
 Gounod, 3968
 Gourgues, Dominic de, 2754
 Gourko, General, 3740, 3741, 3743, 3746, 3782, 3783
 Governments, various forms of, 33, 34
 Gower, John, 2053, 2311
 Gowrie, Earl of, 2714
 Gracchi, reforms and fall of the, 1239-1246
 Gracchus, the Æquian leader, 1155

- Gracchus, Caius Sempronius, 1243-1246
 Gracchus, Tiberius Sempronius, 1239-1243
 Graces, 739
 Græco-Latins, 1519, 1520
 Græco-Turkish War, 3918-3923
 Grafton, Duke of, 3192, 3314
 Graham, General, 3800, 3801
 Graham of Claverhouse, John, 2887, 2900
 Graham, William Alexander, 4100
 Grammont, Duke de, 3663
 Gran, siege and fall of, 2456
 Granada, Moorish kingdom of, 1872, 2392, 2393
 conquest of, by Spain, 1872, 2403
 Granada, New, 4343, 4345, 4364
 Granby, Marquis of, 3135
 Granger, General Gordon, 4205, 4216
 Granicus, 418
 battle of the, 533, 985
 Granson, battle of, 2291
 Grant, General Ulysses Simpson, 4140-4261
 at battle of Belmont, 4140
 at the siege and capture of Fort Donelson, 4147
 at the battle of Shiloh, 4147, 4148
 at the siege and capture of Vicksburg, 4174-4175
 at the battle of Chattanooga, 4180, 4181
 at the battles of the Wilderness and Spottsylvania, 4193-4196
 at the siege of Richmond and Petersburg, 4197, 4198
 at the fall of Richmond and Petersburg, 4218-4220
 at Lee's surrender at Appomattox, 4220
 election of, as President, 4237, 4238
 farewell address to the armies of the United States, 4233
 presidency of, 4238-4254
 reflection of, 4243, 4244
 travels of, around the world, and last years of, 4258, 4261, 4262
 Grant, Major and Colonel, 3129, 3131
 Grant, Lieutenant, 3809
 Graspan, battle of, 3827, 4482, 4483
 Granvelle, Bishop of Arras, 2728
 Grasse, Count de, 3271, 3278, 3279
 Gratian, 1498, 1499, 1501
 Gratian, John, 1934
 Grattan, Henry, 3314
 Gravelotte, battle of, 3666, 3667
 Gravina, 3441
 Gray, Lady Elizabeth, 2339
 Gray, Lord, 2343, 2344
 Gray, Thomas, 3510
 Great Britain, establishment of the United Kingdom of,
 during the reign of Queen Anne, 2924-2926
 during the early years of the House of Brunswick, 3079-3084, 3086-3088, 3090, 3091, 3097-3099
 during the War of the Austrian Succession, 3099-3112
 during the Seven Years' War, 3113-3138
 during the period of the American Revolution, 3185-3331
 during the French Revolution and Napoleon's time, 3331-3351, 3379-3505
 during the Nineteenth Century, 3552-3571, 3617-3627, 3635-3644, 3655-3661, 3728-3774, 3792-3841
 recent events of, 3792-3841
 Great British-Boer War, 4470-4623
 Great Civil War in England, 2840-2852
 Great Horse Shoe, battle of, 4020
 Great Latin War, 1175-1177
 Great Meadows, battle of the, 3116
 Great Northern War, 3065-3073
 Great St. Bernard, Bonaparte's passage of the, 3429
 Great Wall of China, 677
 Greble, Lieutenant John T., 4133
 Grecia, Magna, 761-767
 Greece, ancient, 703-1106
 armies of, 945-948
 civilisation of, 945-956
 classes in, 719, 720
 coined money introduced into, 751
 colonies of, 754-768
 decline of, 886-897
 early history and traditions of, 712-722
 early poetry and philosophy, 793-807
 education in, 952, 953
 family relations in, 720, 950, 851
 funeral customs of, 953, 954
 Gallic invasion of, 1020
 geography and description of, 703-712
 growth of the city in, 750
 Heteræ of, 951
 industries of, 952
 invasions of, by the Gauls, 1020

- invasions of, by the Persians, 809-833
 islands of, 711, 712, 753, 754
 later science and literature of, 1097-1106
 leagues of, 1031, 1032
 literature, philosophy and art of, 927-945
 Macedon and, 1019-1028
 manners and customs in, 720, 949-954
 marriage customs in, 953
 mythology and religion of, 723-749
 oldest historical documents of, 715
 Olympiads, 748
 Olympic Games, 748, 749, 752
 oratory, philosophy and art of, 1010-1017
 origin of the name of, 713
 other national games, 749
 Peloponesian War in, 857-886
 Persian invasion of, 809-833
 Persian War, 809-833
 private dwellings of, 948, 949
 public edifices of, 948
 religious rites, 954
 republican governments in, 748
 rise of, 703-807
 Sacred War in, 963-974
 Seven Wise Men of, 804-807
 slaves of, 951
 smaller states of, 749-752
 supremacy of Athens, 833-857
 supremacies of Sparta and Thebes, 886-927
 supremacy of Macedon, 957-1028
 table of kings, 1028
 temples of, 744, 745
 theaters of, 796, 797
 under Philip of Macedon, 957-982
 under Alexander the Great, 982-1004
 under Alexander's successors, 1004-1028
 under the Roman dominion, 1028, 1230
 war vessels of, 947, 948
 women of, 950, 951
 Greece, modern, 2485, 3536-3541, 3641, 3642, 3650, 3906, 3918-3922
 conquest of, by the Turks, 2485
 Hæteria of, 3536
 independence of, 3541
 revolt against Turkey, 3536
 War of Greek Independence, 3536-3541
 Sacred Band of, 3536
 table of kings, 4688
 under King Otho and revolution of 1862, 3641, 3642
 under King George, 3642
 war with Turkey in 1897, 3918-3922
 Greek Church, 1595, 1596, 1598, 1895
 Greek Empire, or Eastern Roman Empire, 1573-1606
 early history of, 1573-1575
 table of emperors of, 2447, 2448
 under Justinian, 1575-1591
 under later emperors, 1591-1605
 wars with the New Persians, 1578, 1592, 1593
 wars with the Saracens, 1594, 1598, 1599, 1600
 wars with the Seljuk Turks, 1601
 wars with the Ottoman Turks and end of, 2441-2446
 Greeks, ancient, classes of the, 719, 951, 952
 computation of time by, 748
 customs of, 949-954
 festivals of, 748, 749
 language of, 1349
 migrations of the, 721, 722
 origin of the, 712-714
 sculpture of the, 944, 1017
 Greek fire, description and discovery of, 1836, 1837
 Greeley, Horace, 4107, 4206, 4244
 Greely, Lieutenant, 3953
 Green, John Richard, 3959
 Greene, Colonel Christopher, 3250
 Greene, Conyngham, 3826, 4470
 Greene, General Nathaniel, 3258, 3265, 3269, 3270
 Greene, General Francis Vinton, 4299
 Greenland, discovery and settlement of, 1965
 Grenville, George, 3190-3192, 3208, 3211
 Grenville, Lord, 3445, 3454
 Grenville, Sir Richard, 2698
 Gregory II., Pope, 1541, 1542
 Gregory III., Pope, 1542
 Gregory IV., Pope, 1903
 Gregory VI., Pope, 1934
 Gregory VII., Pope (Hildebrand), 1942-1951
 character of, 1951
 early career of, 1936-1942
 election of, as Pope, 1942
 political power of, 1942-1951
 reforms of, 1942-1947
 struggle of, with Henry IV. of Germany, 1942-1951
 Gregory XI., Pope, 2117

- Gregory XIII., Pope, 2723, 2760
 calendar of, 2723
 Gregory XVI., Pope, 3586
 Gregory of Tours, 1548
 Gregory the Great, Pope, 1540
 Gresham, Sir Thomas, 2697
 Gresham, Walter Quinton, 4269, 4274
 Grévy, Albert, 3714
 Grévy, Jules, 3712, 3714, 3716-3719, 3842, 3846-3848
 Grey, Earl, 3560, 3561
 Grey, Lady Jane, 2666-2671
 Grierson, General Benjamin Henry, 4175, 4204, 4205
 Grimm, Jacob, 3583, 3965
 Grimm, William, 3583, 3965
 Grimvald, 1541
 Grinnell, Moses Hicks, 4100
 Gripenborg, capture of, 3460
 Griswold, Fort, massacre of, 3721
 Groningen, battle of, 2731
 Gross-Beeren, battle of, 3488
 Gross-Jägerndorf, battle of, 3121
 Grote, George, 3959
 Grotius, Hugo, 2745
 Groveton, battle of, 4158
 Grow, Galusha Aaron, 4210
 Grumbates, King of the Chionites, 1636
 Grünberg, battle of, 3133
 Guadaloupe, naval battle of, 3278, 3279
 Guadalupe Hidalgo, Peace of, 4087, 4357
 Guadalupe Victoria, 4343, 4350, 4351
 Guanahani, 2526, 2527
 Guastalla, battle of, 3095
 Guatemozin, 2540
 Gubazes, King of Lazica, 1697
 Guelders, capture of, 3006
 Guelf, 1935
 Guelfs and Ghibellines, civil wars of the, 2063-2111
 Guericke, Otto, 3026
 Guerra, 4361
 Guerrero, 4342, 4351, 4352
 Guerrière, 4017
 Guiana, 2745
 Guibert, Archbishop of Ravenna, 1950
 Guienne, 2157, 2171, 2218, 2298
 Guienne, Duke of, 2157
 Guilds, of the Middle Ages, 2055, 2129
 Guilford Court House, battle of, 3969
 Guilleminot, General, 3456
 Guillotine, origin of the, 3374
 Guinea, 2745
 Guipuzcoa, 3002
 Guiscard, Robert, 1995, 1996, 2388
 Guise, Count of, 2576
 Guise, Francis, Duke of, 2621, 2676, 2711, 2718, 2746, 2747, 2751-2753
 assassination of, 2753
 Guise, Henry of, 2761, 2762, 2764-2766
 assassination of, 2766
 Guise, Louis of, Cardinal of Lorraine, 2747, 2766
 assassination of, 2766
 Guise, Mary of, 2707-2709, 2747, 2750
 Guises, power and cruelty of the, 2749, 2750
 Guiteau, Charles Jules, 4259, 4260
 Guizot, 3577, 3579-3581, 3588, 3589, 3964
 Gula, the sun-goddess, 310
 Gundemar, 1531
 Gunderic, 1536
 Gundumir, 1549
 Gunilda, 2015, 2016
 Gunnar, 1962, 1963
 Gunpowder, invention of, 2521
 Gunpowder Plot, 2612, 2613
 Guntown, battle of, 4889
 Gustave Doré, 3967
 Gustavus Adolphus, 2783-2788, 3032, 3033
 in the Thirty Years' War, 2783-2788
 victory and death of, at Lutzen, 2787, 2788
 Gustavus III., 3148, 3149
 assassination of, 3149
 Gustavus IV., 3149, 3453, 3454, 3458-3460
 eccentricities and dethronement of, 3460
 Gustavus Vasa, 2419, 2633, 2634
 Gutenberg, John, 2521
 Guthrie, James, 2875
 Guthrum, 2002
 Guy, Count of Flanders, 2158
 Guy of Lusignan, 2066
 Guy Fawkes, 2813
 Gwalior, 3565
 Gwynn, Nell, 2888
 Gyges, 422, 423
 HAARLEM, siege and fall of, 2732, 2733
 Habeas Corpus Act, 2883
 Hadad, King of Damascus, 341
 Hadad, the Edomite, 1092
 Hadadesar, King of Zobah, 341
 Hades, 733, 744

- Hadib, 1660
 Hadrumetum, 434
 Haeckel, 3954
 Hafiz Pasha, 3573
 Hafiz Pasha, another, 3726, 3753
 Hagar, 349, 350, 352
 Hague, Peace of The, 3024
 Peace Conference at The, 3922-3932
 Hahnemann, Dr. Samuel, 3956
 Hainan, island of, 673
 Hai-tcheng, battles of, 4664, 4667
 Hakon Jarl, 2015
 Hakon the Good, 2413
 Hakon II., 2415
 Hakon III., 2415
 Hakon IV., 2415
 Hakon V., 2415
 Hakon VI., 2415
 Hakon VII., 4885
 Hale, Captain Nathan, 3943, 3944
 Hale, John Parker, 4100, 4210
 Hale, Sir Matthew, 3027
 Hale, Eugene, 4321
 Hales, Sir James, 2666
 Haliartus, battle of, 899
 Halicarnasseus, Dionysius, 1109
 Halicarnassus, 419, 757
 mausoleum at, 1106
 siege and fall of, 986
 Halidon Hill, battle of, 2293, 2375
 Halifax, Lord, 2905, 2906, 2908
 Halifax, Nova Scotia, 3235
 Hall, Dr., 3953
 Hallam, Henry, 3958
 Halle, 3449
 Haller, 3528, 3529
 Halleck, Fitz-Greene, 4045, 3960
 Halleck, General Henry Wager, 4140, 4146,
 4148, 4149, 4157
 Haller, 3506
 Halley, Edmund, 2888, 3026
 Halmstadt, battle of, 3037
 Halys river, 417
 Ham, 24
 Ham, fortress of, 3579
 Hamadryads, 738
 Haman, 412
 Hamathites, 341
 Hamburg, 1908, 1964, 2106, 3485, 3496
 Treaty of, 3137
 Hamid bin Thwain, 3816
 Hamilcar, 439, 441
 Hamilcar Barca, 444, 1201, 1204, 1205
 Hamilton, Alexander, 3302, 3303, 3306, 3310,
 3975, 3977, 3979, 3980, 3983, 3992, 4008
 Hamilton, Andrew, 2941
 Hamilton, Duke of, 2850
 Hamilton, General Sir Bruce Meade, 4504
 Hamilton, General Sir Ian Standish Monteith,
 4504
 Hamilton, James, 2713
 Hamilton, Lady, 3421, 3424
 Hamilton, Marquis of, 2833, 2834
 Hamilton, Sir James, 2379
 Hamilton, Sir William, 3956
 Hamitic nations, 26, 28, 36
 Hamlin, Hannibal, 4114
 Hammond, Colonel, 2848
 Hammond, John Hays, 3825, 4463, 4465
 Hampden, John, 2825, 2831, 2832, 2835, 2839,
 2841, 2842
 Hampshire, 2849, 2937
 Hampshire, New, 2937
 Hampton Road, peace conference at, 4211,
 4212
 Hampton, Wade, American general, 4014,
 4018, 4020
 Hampton, Wade, Confederate general, 4215
 Hamza, 1873, 1874
 Hanau, battle of, 3490
 Hancock, John, 3213, 3229
 Hancock, General Winfield Scott, 4172, 4193,
 4197, 4258
 Handel, 3512
 Han dynasty, 678
 Hang dynasty, 679
 Hanging Gardens of Babylon, 251, 268
 Hanging Rock, battle of, 3263, 3264
 Hannibal, 440, 441
 Hannibal, another, 1195
 Hannibal, the great general, 445, 1205-1220,
 1225-1227
 conquests of, in Spain, 445, 1206
 crossing of the Alps, into Italy, 1208
 exile of, 1225
 persecution of, 1225
 recalled to Africa, 1219
 stratagem of, 1212
 suicide of, 1225, 1226
 victories of, in Italy, 1209-1214
 Hannibalianus, 1478
 Hanno, Archbishop of Cologne, 1935

- Hanno, Carthaginian leader, 440, 442
 Hanno, another Carthaginian leader, 1196
 Hanover, Electorate of, creation of, 9003
 Ernest Augustus, King of, 3583
 George, Elector of, 3079
 House of, 3079
 Kingdom of, 3549
 table of kings of, 4688
 Hanover, Pennsylvania, skirmish at, 4171
 Hanover Court House, battle of, 4154
 Hanseatic League, 2054, 2106
 Hapsburg, Count Rudolf of, 2102
 Hapsburgs, Counts of, 2111, 2112
 Hapsburg, House of, 1929, 2103, 2548, 3058, 3100
 Hapsburg-Austrian dynasty, 2121
 Hapsburg-Lorraine, House of, 3105
 Harald Bluetooth, 2409
 Harald Fairhair, or Harald Harfager, 1965, 2409, 2413
 Harald Hardrada, 2024, 2410
 Harald Harefoot, 2019, 2410
 Harald II., 2410
 Harald the Simple, 2410
 Harold, 2022-2025
 Harcourt, Count, 2793
 Harcourt, Sir William Vernon, 3658
 Hardee, General, 4203, 4204
 Hardicanute, 2019, 2410
 Hardin, Colonel, 3985
 Hardinge, Sir Henry, 3499, 3500, 3565, 3567
 Hardy, 3342
 Hardy, Commodore, 4022
 Hardy, Gathorne, 3764
 Harfleur, capture of, 2181, 2225
 Hargreaves, James, 3225, 3508
 Harlem Heights, 3243
 Harlem Plains, skirmish on, 3243
 Harley, Robert, 2923, 2926, 2928
 Harlow, battle of, 2377
 Harmer, General, 3985
 Harmodius, 790, 791
 Haroun al Raschid, 1848-1851
 brilliant reign of, 1851
 court of, 1849
 learning under, 1848, 1849
 Harpagus, 488
 Harper's Ferry, John Brown's insurrection at, 4112, 4113
 siege of, 4129
 surrender of, 4159
 Harpies, 739, 740
 Harrington, Sir James, 2338
 Harrison, English general, 2849, 2858, 2872
 Harrison, Benjamin, President, 4265, 4268
 Harrison, Fort, capture of, 4198
 Harrison, John, 3508
 Harrison, William Henry, General and President, 4018, 4019, 4058, 4061, 4062
 Harrison's Landing, 4157
 Hart, General Arthur Fitz-Roy, 4504
 Harte, Francis Bret, 3962
 Hartford, 2938, 2939
 Hartford Convention, 4026-4028
 Hartmann, 3956
 Hartranft, General John Frederick, 4218
 Harvard College, founding of, 2950
 Harvard, Rev. John, 2950
 Harvey, William, 3026
 Hasdrubal, 444, 445
 Hasdrubal, another, 1204, 1216-1218
 Hasdrubal, a third, 1231, 1233
 Hashem, 1825
 Hashimites, 1775
 Haslerig, Sir Arthur, 2835, 2839, 2867
 Hassan, 2074
 Hassan Bey, 3727
 Hasselmann, Herr, 3777
 Hastenbeck, battle of, 3121
 Hastings, battle of, 2025
 Hastings, Danish Sea King, 1912, 1964
 Hastings, John, Lord of Abergavenny, 2200
 Hastings, Warren, impeachment of, 3323
 in India, 3316-3319, 3322, 3323
 Hatcher's Run, first battle of, 4198
 second battle of, 4218
 Hatchie, battle of the, 4148
 Hatfield, England, 2677
 Hatfield, Massachusetts, 2935
 Hathor, or Athor, 96
 Hatra, 1421
 Hatteras, Fort, capture of, 4142
 Hatteras Inlet, capture of, 4142
 Hatzfeld, 2793
 Haugwitz, 3442, 3444
 Havana, capture of, by the British, 3126, 4201, 4392
 founding of, 4388
 Havelock, General, 3623, 3625, 3626
 Haverstraw, 3966
 Havre, bombardment of, 3126
 Havre de Grace, 4021

- Hawaiian, or Sandwich Islands, 3330, 3518,**
 3519, 4268, 4271, 4303
 annexation of, to the United States, 4303
 discovery of, 3330, 3518, 3519
 Republic of, 4271
 Territory of, 4303
 revolution in, 4268
Hawke, Admiral Sir Edward, 3125, 3126
Hawkins, John Henry Willis, 4069
Hawkins, Sir John, 2692, 2695, 2699
Hawley, General, 3107
Hawthorne, Julian, 3964
Hawthorne, Nathaniel, 3961
Haydn, 3512
Hayes, Rutherford Birchard, 4253, 4254
Hayes, Dr., 3953
Hayman, Baron, 3604, 3605
Hayne, Colonel Isaac, 3270
Hayne, Paul Hamilton, 3962
Hayne, Robert Young, 4050, 4052
Hayraddin Barbarossa, 2584-2586
Hayti, 2527, 4348, 4349
Hazael, 342
Hasen, General William Babcock, 4204
Haslitt, William, 3958
Hea, or Hoa, 295
Hebe, 716, 728
Hebert, 3381, 3386, 3392
Hebrew Scriptures, 24, 113
 translation of, into Greek, 1040, 1041
Hebrews, or Israelites, 347-415
 agriculture of the, 415
 Babylonian captivity, 411
 bondage in Egypt, 360
 civilization of the, 413-415
 exodus and wanderings of the, 360-374
 kingdom and empire of the, 390-400
 Levites, 414
 literature of the, 413
 patriarchs of the, 347-360
 prophets of the, 413
 religion of the, 413-415
 sacred rites, 414
 sacred seasons and feasts of the, 414
 sacred writings of the, 413
 scapegoat of the, 414
 social life of the, 415
 table of kings of the, 410
Hebron, 394, 1095
Hecate, 799
Hecatomnus, 526
Hecatomphonsa, 779
Hecatompilos, 1064, 1067
Hecatonesi, 756
Hecker, 3394
Heckewelder, John, 2946, 3986
Hector, 718, 793, 993
Heemakirk, Admiral, 2744
Heeren, 3965
Hegel, 3956
Hegira, 21, 1779
Hegyes, 3604
Heidelberg, captures of, 2779, 2926, 3406
 library of, destroyed by Tilly, 2779
Heidelberg Catechism, 2626, 2627
Heilbronn, Germany, congress, at, 2788
Heilbronn, South Africa, occupation of, 4538
Heine, Heinrich, 3965
Heinrich, Otto, 2613
Heinsius, 3005
Heintzelman, General Samuel Peter, 4135,
 4155
Helen, 718, 730
Helena, St., Napoleon's exile to, 3500, 3502
Helena, "True Cross" of, 1735
Helice, 757
Helicon, 704, 738, 794
Heliogabalus, 1439-1441
Heliopolis, Egypt, 38
Heliopolis, Syria, 340, 1029
Helios, 95, 96
Hellas, 703, 713
 civilization of, 715, 749
Hellenes, 713
Hellenica, 935
Hellespont, 717
Helmichis, 1539
Heloise, 2139
 Abelard and, 2139
Helos, 775
Helots, 769, 770, 775
 liberation of the, 866, 867
 rebellions of the, 843-845, 849
Helsingfors, capture of, 3101
 occupation of, 3458
Helvetia, 2111
Helvetic Confederation, 2111, 2113
Helvetic Republic, 3417, 3421, 3435
Helvetii, 1936
Helvetius, 3142, 3511

- Henderson, Lieutenant-Colonel David, 4304
- Hennessy, David C., 4267
- Hennessy, Sir John Pope, 3808
- Henrietta Maria, 2821, 2822
- Henriette d'Entragues, Marchioness of Verneuil, 2954
- Henriot, 3381, 3395-3398
- Henry, Bishop of Winchester, 2250
- Henry, Duke of Anjou, 2754, 2755, 2762, 2763
- Henry, Duke of Bavaria, 1929
- Henry, Duke of Guise, 2757-2760, 2762, 2764-2766
- Henry, Fort, capture of, 4146, 4147
- Henry, Margrave of Austria, 2085
- Henry I., of England, 2246-2250
- Henry II., of England, or Henry Plantagenet, 2241, 2149, 2252-2260
 accession of, 2252, 2253
 conquest of Ireland by, 2256-2259
 laws of, 2259
 penance of, 2259, 2260
 quarrel of, with Becket, 2254-2256
 rebellions of his sons, 2259, 2260
 reforms of, 2259
- Henry III., of England, 2273-2278
 accession of, 2273, 2274
 civil wars of, with his barons, 2275-2277
 origin of the House of Commons, 2277
- Henry IV., of England, 2316-2322
 accession of, 2316
 persecution of the Lollards, 2320, 2321
 rebellions of the Percies, 2318, 2319
 revolt of Owen Glendower, 2317
- Henry V., of England, 2322-2328
 accession of, 2322
 invasion of France by, 2324-2328
 reformation of character of, 2322
 suppression of the First Reformation, 2323, 2324
- Henry VI., of England, 2328-2341
 infancy and accession of, 2328
 regency under, 2328
 dissensions under, 2331-2334
 Jack Cade's rebellion, 2332
 Civil Wars of the Roses, 2334-2340
 imprisonment of, 2338
 dethronement of, 2336
 fate of, 2341
- Henry VII., of England, 2340-2360
 accession of, 2349, 2352, 2353
- character of, 2353
 importance of the reign of, 2357
 fall of feudalism under, 2357
 rebellions against, 2353-2357
- Henry VIII., of England, 2636-2661
 accession of, 2636
 ambitions of, 2637, 2638
 and Cardinal Wolsey, 2637-2643
 at the Field of the Cloth of Gold, 2640
 battles of the Spurs and of Flodden Field, 2638
 early character of, 2636
 early stand against the Reformation, 2641
 his wife troubles and quarrel with the Pope, 2641-2657
 made Head of the English Church, 2646
 religious persecutions, 2649
 suppression of the religious houses, 2651-2652
 wars with France and Scotland, 2638, 2655
 later character of, 2661
 death of, 2661
- Henry I., of France, 2133, 2134
- Henry II., of France, 2616, 2617, 2620, 2644-2649
- Henry III., of France, 2760-2767
 alliance with Henry of Navarre, 2766
 assassination of, 2767
 assassination of the Guises, 2766
 Edict of Nemours, 2764
 Edict of Union and, 2765, 2766
 Wars of the League, 2762-2771
 War of the Three Henries, 2764, 2765
- Henry IV., of France, 2767-2771, 2953-2958
 accession of, 2767
 and the Duke of Sully, 2953, 2958
 and House of Hapsburg, 2956, 2957
 assassination of, 2957, 2958
 Catholics and, 2767-2771
 character of, 2958
 Christian union, plan of, 2956
 close of Civil Wars of Religion under, 2771
 conversion to Catholicism, 2770
 Edict of Nantes, 2771
 government of, 2953
 prosperity of France under, 2953, 2954
- Henry I., the Fowler, of Germany, 1922, 1923
- Henry II., the Saint, of Germany, 1931
- Henry III., of Germany, 1933-1935

- struggles with the Pope, 1933-1935
 Henry IV., of Germany, 1935-1952
 struggles of, with Hildebrand, 1936-1952
 humiliation and death of, 1947-1952
 Henry V., of Germany, 1953, 1954
 Henry VI., of Germany, 2091
 Henry VII., of Germany, 2107, 2108
 Henry of Lancaster (Henry IV. of England), 2313-2316
 Henry of Navarre (Henry IV. of France), 2755, 2756, 2759, 2765
 Henry of Valois (Henry III. of France), 3040
 Henry, Patrick, 3208, 3209, 3225, 3226, 3309
 Henry, Prince, of Portugal, discoveries under, 2522
 Henry Raspe, 2097
 Henry the Lion of Brunswick, 2085, 2088-2090
 Henry the Proud, 1954, 2063, 2085
 Henry the Wrangler, 1928
 Hephæstion, 1002
 Hephaistos, 726, 727
 Heptanomis, 38, 76
 Heraclea, battle of, 1185
 Heracles, or Hercules, 716, 717
 Heraclidæ, Return of the, 721, 722
 Heraclitus, 937, 938
 Herat, capture of, 3796
 Herbert, Admiral, 2901, 2915, 2997
 Herbois, Collet d', 3384, 3393, 3394, 3399
 Herculanæum, 1116
 destruction of, 1414
 Hercules, labors of, 716
 Hercules, Pillars of, 60, 432, 433, 716, 757
 Herder, 3154, 3512
 Hère, 728
 Heretics, Statue of, 2320
 Hereward, 2239
 Heristal, Pepin d', 1554, 1555
 Herkimer, General, death of, 3251
 Hermann, or Arminius, 1389
 Hermanric, 1497
 Hermanstadt, 3603
 Hermeric, 1526
 Hermes, 727, 728
 Hermionis, 711
 Hermopolis, siege and fall of, 57
 Hermus river, 418
 Hernandez, General, 4362
 Hernani, 3696
 Herod Agrippa, 1086
 Herod Antipas, 1084
 Herod the Great, 1061-1063, 1390
 Herodian, 1104
 Herodias, 1084
 Herodotus, 23, 24, 41, 78, 93, 114, 122-124, 286, 321, 322, 484, 536, 537, 539, 556-558, 561, 933
 Herrera, 4355-4357
 Herrera, another, 4361
 Herrings, battle of the, 2185
 Herrnhausen, League of, 3089
 Herron, General Francis J., 4151
 Herschel, Caroline, 3507
 Herschel, Sir John, 3507
 Herschel, Sir William, 3507
 Hereford, Duke of, 2313, 2314
 Hertford, Earl of, 2662, 2706
 Heruli, 1511
 Herz, Dr. Cornelius, 3850
 Herzgovina, insurrection in, 3725, 3726
 Herzegovinians, 3726
 Hesiod, 794, 795
 Hesse, 3528, 3549
 Hesse, Prince Alexander of, 3647
 Hesse, Landgrave Philip of, 2602, 2617
 Hesse-Cassel, 3547, 3593, 3609, 3648
 Hesse-Cassel, Landgrave of, 3234
 Hesse-Darmstadt, 3648, 3673
 Hessians, 3234, 3243, 3245, 3250
 Hestia, 732
 Hexapolis, Dorian, 722, 737
 Heyden, Admiral, 3539
 Heyking, Baron, assassination of, 3779
 Heymann, General, 3748, 3749
 Heytesbury, Lord, 3540
 Hezekiah, 183-187, 407
 Hia dynasty, 676, 677
 Hicks, Thomas Holliday, 4130, 4131
 Hicks Pasha, 3800
 Hidalgo, 4342
 Hielsberg, battle of, 3452
 Hiempsal, 1247
 Hein-fung, 4633, 4635
 Hiero I., 765, 766
 Hiero II., 443, 767, 1195
 Hieroglyphics, Egyptian, 23, 42, 43, 78, 79, 81
 Hieropolis, 340
 Hifsi Pasha, 3746
 Highlands, 2362, 2378, 2381, 3061, 3106-3108

- Highlanders, 2370, 2377, 2381, 2909, 2910,
 3081, 3106-3108
 Highways and Canals of England, 3325, 3326
 Hilda, Abbess, 1567
 Hildebrand, 1934-1951
 at the papal court, 1934-1942
 elected Pope Gregory VII., 1942
 policy of, 1942-1951
 quarrel with Henry IV. of Germany,
 1942-1951
 reforms of, 1942-1947
 Hildegard, 1894
 Hildreth, Richard, 3963
 Hildyard, General Sir Henry John Thorn-
 ton, 4504
 Hill, General Ambrose Powell, 4129, 4171,
 4194, 4197, 4219
 Hill, General Daniel Harvey, 4129, 4178
 Hiller, General, 3470, 3487, 3488, 3491
 Himera, 439, 440
 Himilco, 440
 Himri, capture of 3674
 Hindman, General Thomas Carmichael, 4151
 Hindoos, Sanskritic, 613-697
 castes of the, 619, 620
 gods of the, 621-645
 language of the, 621
 obscurity of history of the, 616, 617
 origin and civilization of the, 616-621
 philosophy and literature of the, 635-645
 religious festivals of the, 648-650
 sacred books of the, 620-635
 Hindoostan, description of, 613-616
 invasion of, by Alexander the Great, 1000,
 1001
 invasion of, by the Persians, 490, 510, 511
 products, 615
 petty kingdoms of, 615, 616
 Hinterland, 3870
 Hipparchus, the astronomer, 1098, 1099
 Hipparchus, the Tyrant, or usurper, of
 Athens, 790, 791
 Hippias, 790, 791, 809, 812
 Hippocrates, 1099
 Hippocrène, fountain of, 738, 739
 Hira, Saracen conquest of, 1813
 Hiram, 326, 327, 397, 398
 Hiram II., 328
 Hispalis, 1418
 Historians, ancient and modern, 24, 25
 History, beginning of, 21
 divisions of, 21, 22
 sources of, 22, 23
 Hittites, Northern and Southern, 341, 377
 Hivites, 377
 Hixem I., the Good, 1863
 Hixem II., 1868
 Hixem III., 1868, 1869
 Hlangwana Hill, capture of, 4514
 Hoa, 295
 Hobart, Garrett Augustus, 4277, 4278
 Hobart Pasha, 3737
 Hobbes, Thomas, 2888, 3025
 Hobkirk's Hill, battle of, 3269
 Hoboken, 2940
 Hoche, General, 3391
 Hochkirchen, battle of, 3124, 3125
 Höchst, battle of, 3406
 Hochstädt, battle of, 3007
 Hodgson, General, 3124
 Hoedel, 3775
 Hofer, Andreas, 3471, 3472
 Hogarth, William, 3512
 Hogg, James, 3957
 Hogue, Cape La, battle of, 2916, 2998
 Hoke, General, 4192
 Hohenfriedberg, battle of, 3105
 Hohenlinden, battle of, 3430
 Hohenlohe, Prince, 3448, 3449
 Hohenlohe, Prince, another, 3873, 3877
 Hohenstaufen dynasty, 2083-2101
 Hohenstaufen, Frederick of, 2147
 Hohenzollern, Charles of, 3640, 3907
 Hohenzollern, Frederick, Landgrave of, 2121
 Hohenzollern, House of, 2121, 2612, 2625,
 3038, 3664, 3672
 Hohenzollern-Sigmaringen, Prince Leopold
 of, 3662-3664
 Holbach, Baron d', 3142
 Holbein, Hans, 2659, 2660, 2805
 Holly Springs, 4151
 Holland, or Netherlands, rise of, 2727-2746
 Batavian Republic in, 3401
 colonies of, 2745, 2746
 greatness of, 2745
 prosperity of, 2745
 table of kings of, 4888
 union of Belgium with, 3521, 3545
 wars of, with England, 2856, 2857, 2900,
 2877, 2878, 2880, 2881, 3266, 3267, 3277
 wars of, with France, 2983-2990, 2994-
 3017, 3165-3112, 3379-3401

- wars of, in Sumatra, 3902
 Holland, Count William of, 9097, 9100
 Holland, J. G., 3969
 Holland, province of, 2797, 2799, 2794
 Hollins, Captain, 4105, 4142, 4149
 Hollis, 2939
 Holmes, Captain, 2938
 Holmes, General Theophilus Hunter, 4177
 Holmes, Oliver Wendell, 3969
 Holstein, 3595, 3596, 3600, 3609, 3644-3646, 3648
 Holstein, Duke of, 3066
 Holstein-Augustenburg, Prince Christian Augustus of, 3460
 Holt, Joseph, 4192
 Holy Alliance, 3591-3594, 3592, 3593, 3595, 3544, 4040
 Holy League, 2578
 Holy League, another, 3062
 Holy Roman Empire of the German Nation, 1926
 Holyrood Palace, 2365, 3544
 Homer, 712, 718-790, 755, 793, 794
 Homestead riots, 4267, 4268
 Homildon Hill, battle of, 2318, 2376
 Honey Springs, battle of, 4177
 Hong Kong, island of, 3565, 4632
 Honorius, 1502-1507
 Hontheim of Treves, 3144
 Hood, Admiral, 3390
 Hood, General John Bell, 4194, 4202, 4208
 Hood, Thomas, 3957
 Hoogly, capture of, 3115
 Hooker, General Joseph, 4146, 4156-4158, 4169, 4170, 4173, 4180, 4181, 4202
 Hooker, Rev. Thomas, 2938
 Hooker, Richard, 2939
 Hooper, John, Bishop of Gloucester, 2973
 Hoosan, battle of, 4653
 Hopkins, Admiral Essek, 3255
 Hopkinson, Francis, 3390, 3310
 Hopkinson, Judge Joseph, 3960
 Hoptal, Michel de l', Chancellor, 2750
 Hor, Mt., 1090, 1091
 Horace, 1372, 1373
 Horatia, 1128
 Horatii, 1128
 Horatius, 1128
 Horatius Cocles, 1146
 Hormisdas I., 1621
 Hormisdas II., 1624-1626
 Hormisdas III., 1670, 1671
 Hormisdas IV., 1790-1794
 Hormusan, 1826
 Horn, Count, 2790, 2791
 Horn, General, 2789, 2790
 Hornby, Admiral, 3756, 3758
 Horne Tooke, 3342
 Horner, 3554
 Hornet, 4090
 Horsa, 1558
 Hortense Beauharnais, 3437
 Hortensian Laws, 1182
 Hortensius, 1182
 Horus, 52
 Horvatovich, General, 3728
 Hoshea, 403
 Ho-shung, 678
 Hospitaliers, or Knights of St. John, 2063, 2073
 Hossein, 1837-1839
 Hostilianus, 1447
 Hotham, Admiral, 4370
 Hotel des Invalides, 3505, 3580
 Hotel de Ville, 3030, 3396, 3397, 3543, 3688
 Ho-ti, 678
 Hottentots, 2523
 Hougoumont, chateau of, 3499
 Houston, General Sam, 4070, 4131, 4353
 Howard, Catharine, 2654, 2655
 Howard, Henry, Earl of Surrey, 2660
 Howard, John, 3512, 3518
 Howard, John Eager, 3269
 Howard, General Oliver Otis, 4172, 4202, 4203, 4255, 4256
 Howard, Lord, 2885, 2886
 Howard, Lord, of Effingham, 2695
 Howe, Admiral Lord, 3242, 3258, 3290
 Howe, Colonel Robert, 3261
 Howe, Elias, 3954
 Howe, General Sir William, 3229, 3234, 3235, 3242-3245, 3248-3250, 3252, 3257
 Hubbardton, battle of, 3250
 Hubertsburg, Peace of, 3137, 3138
 Hudson, Henry, 2940
 Hudson river, discovery of the, 2940
 Hudson's Bay, discovery of, 2940
 Huger, Colonel, 3263
 Hugh Capet, 1920, 2131
 Hugh of Provence, 1914, 1915
 Hugh of Vermandois, 2061
 Hugh the Great, Count of Paris, 1918, 1919

- Hughes, Admiral, 3280
 Hughes, Thomas, 3959
 Hugo, Victor, 3611, 3718, 3965
 Hugo Grotius, 2745
 Huguenots, 2746-2771
 aided by Queen Elisabeth, 2753
 exiled from France, 2993
 faith of the, 2747
 in England, in Holland and Germany, 2994
 massacre of, at Vassy, 2752
 Massacre of St. Bartholomew, 2757-2760
 persecutions of the, 2746-2750
 persecutions of the, by Louis XIV., 2990-2994
 pursuits and character of the, 2991
 revocation of the Edict of Nantes, 2993
 revolt of the, 2752
 toleration granted to the, 2751
 toleration by the Edict of Nantes, 2771
 Hull, Captain Isaac, 4017
 Hull, General William, 4014, 4016, 4017
 Hulseman, Chevalier, 4100, 4101
 Humann, Admiral, 3852
 Human race, beginning of its history, 25
 Humayan, 2495, 2497
 Humbert, King of Italy, 3705, 3892
 assassination of, 3896
 Humbert of Vienne, 2170
 Humboldt, Alexander von, 3954
 Humboldt, William von, 3965
 Hume, David, 3510
 Humphrey, Duke of Gloucester, 2328
 Hun River, battle of, 3886, 4725
 Hundred Days, the 3495-3505
 Hundred Years' War, the 2166-2212, 2291-2330
 Hungarians, or Magyars, 1524, 1913, 1914, 1922, 1923, 1925
 defeat of, at Lechfeld, 1925
 defeat of, at Merseberg, 1922, 1923
 incursions of, into Germany, 1913, 1914, 1922, 1923, 1925
 migration of the, 1913, 1914
 Hungary, 2436-2439, 2583, 2722, 3060-3065, 3601-3606
 amnesty granted to, 3638
 beginnings of, 2436
 Christianity in, 2436
 conquest of, by Austria, 2439
 decline of, 2439
 elective monarchy of, established, 2437
 elective monarchy of, abolished, 3063
 Golden Privilege, 2437
 government of, 2437
 in the Middle Ages, 2436-2439
 invasions of, by the Turks, 2438, 2589-2599, 2722, 2726, 3058-3065
 kings of, table of the, 4863
 oppressions of Leopold I. in, 3059
 reforms in, 3601
 Revolution of 1848 in, 3601-3606
 under Louis the Great, 2437, 2438
 under Matthias Corvinus, 2438
 under Stephen the Pious, 2436
 under the House of Hapsburg, 2439
 Hunniyades, John, 2438
 Huns, or Avars, 1496, 1497, 1506, 1509, 1524, 1893, 1894, 1906
 invasion of Europe by the, 1496, 1506, 1509
 overthrow in the battle of Chalons, 1509
 ravages in Germany by the, 1524, 1893, 1894, 1906
 Huns, White, 1665
 Hunter, General David, 4135, 4140, 4152, 4198, 4199
 Hunter, General Sir Archibald, 4504
 Hunter, John, 3506
 Hunter, Robert Mercer Taliaferro, 4115
 Hunter, William, 3506
 Huntingdon, David, Earl of, 2369
 Huntingdon, Honor of, 2364-2366
 Huntly, Earl of, 2710, 2711, 2713, 2715
 Hurlburt, General, 4148
 Huron Indians, 2532, 2533
 Huskisson, 3558
 Huss, John, 2118-2120
 martyrdom of, 2118, 2119
 Hussein Avni Pasha, 3727
 Hussein Pasha, 3540
 Hussein, Shah of Persia, 2490, 2491
 Hussite War, 2120, 2121
 Hutchinson, Ann, 2934
 Hutchinson, Governor, 3215, 3217
 Hutchinson, Lord, 3345
 Hutton, General, 4505
 Huxley, Thomas Henry, 3954
 Huyghens, 3026
 Hwae-tsung, 4625, 4626
 Hwang-ti, 676

- Hydarnes, 503
 Hydaspes, 1000, 1001
 Hyde, Anne, 2879
 Hyde, Edward, Earl of Clarendon, 2878, 2879
 Hyde, Sir Edward, Lord Cornbury, 3200
 Hyder Ali, 3280, 3316, 3318
 Hydeyoshi, 4639
 Hydraulic press, invention of the, 3506
 Hygeia, 741
 Hydrabad, battle of, 3565
 Hyksos, or Shepherd Kings, 48
 Hypatius, 1875
 Hyperides, 1010
 Hyrcania, 456
 Hyrcanus, John, I., 1079
 Hyrcanus, John II., 1080, 1273
 Hytaspes, Darius, 452, 412, 484, 500-515, 809, 810, 816, 850
 IAPYGIANS, 1122
 Iberia, along the Caspian, 459
 Iberia, or ancient Spain, 1334
 Iberus, 1334
 Ibrahim, 3057
 Ibrahim Pasha, 3538-3540, 3572-3574
 Ibsan, 386
 Iceland, 1965
 Icenl, 1403
 Iconium, 2044, 2061
 Iconoclasm, War of, 1595, 1596
 Iconoclasts, 1541, 1595
 Iconoduli, 1595
 Ida, Mt., 418
 Ides of March, 1301
 Idrieus, 530
 Idumæa, or Edom, 1089-1097
 Iglesias, 4362-4363
 Iglestrom, General, 3177, 3179
 Ignatieff, General, 3730, 3731, 3733, 3763
 Ignatius Loyola, 2629, 2630
 Ignatius, St., 1421
 Igor, 2430
 Iliad, 712, 718, 793, 794
 Ilium, 718
 Illinois, admission of, 4096
 Illinois Indians, 2532
 Illo, 2790
 Illuminati, 3147
 Illyria, 961, 1203
 Illyrian Provinces, 3471
 Illyrians, 721, 958-960, 1203
 Illyricum, 1341, 1342
 Ilva, 1121
 Imbros, 711, 971
 Immanuel Kant, 3154, 3506, 3509
 Imperator, or Emperor, 1379
 Impney, Sir Elijah, 3322, 3323
 Inachus, 714
 Inarus, 517, 518
 Incas of Peru, 2541-2545
 Incitatus, 1398
 Independence, Declaration of, 3236-3241
 Independence Hall, 3240, 4251
 Independents, or Separatists, 2679-2681, 2812, 2813, 2830, 2840-2844, 2853, 2868, 2869
 India, 613-672, 1000, 2032, 2494-2515
 Afghans in, 2494, 2511-2513
 geography of, 613-616
 Mogul Emperors of, table of the, 2515
 Mogul Empire in, 2494-2515
 Moslem invasion of, 2032
 products of, 615
 rock temples of, 621
 Sanskrit literature, 620, 621
 sea-passage to, discovery of the, 2402, 2522
 Tamerlane's conquest of, 2468, 2469, 2494
 temples and palaces of, 621
 India, British, 3113-3119, 3122, 3123, 3132, 3173, 3280, 3316, 3318, 3333, 3334, 3357, 3371, 3802, 3564, 3565, 3792, 3794, 3795, 3802
 Empire in, rise of the, 3113-3115
 conquest of Burmah, 3802
 East India Company in, 3113
 free coinage of silver stopped in, 3812
 Governors-General and Viceroy of, table of, 4889
 Mohammedans in, 3624
 Sepoy Rebellion in, 3623-3627
 under Lord Clive, 3315, 3316
 under Warren Hastings, 3316-3319, 3322, 3323
 wars with the French in, 3113, 3114, 3132, 3273
 war with Surajah Dowlah in, 3114, 3115
 wars with Hyder Ali and Tippoo Saib in, 3280, 3316, 3318, 3333, 3344
 wars with the Burmese, 3557, 3571, 3802
 wars with the Afghans, 3564, 3565, 3792, 3794, 3795
 wars with the Mahrattas, 3318, 3351

- wars with the Sikhs, 3566, 3567
- wars with Scinde and Gwalior, 3565
- wars with the Ghoorkes, 3557
- wars with the Pindarries, 3557
- Indiana, admission of, 4034
- Indians, or Hindoos, 26, 27, 616-621
- Indians, American, 2530-2533
- India-rubber, or caoutchouc, brought to Europe, 3508
- Indo-Europeans, or Aryans, 26, 27
- Indra, 622, 624
- Indulgences, sale of, doctrine of, 2593, 2594
 - by Tetzel, 2596
 - form of absolution used in, '596
 - in Germany, 2595, 2596
 - traffic in, 2594
- Indus, 614
- Industries, Assyrian, 240-242
 - Australian, 3568, 3569
 - Babylonian, 284
 - Chinese, 684
 - Egyptian, 83
 - English, 2054, 2801, 3030, 3325, 3326,, 3950
 - French, 2054, 2961, 3029, 3080, 3439, 3653
 - German, 3639
 - Irish, 3329
 - Japanese, 4645
 - Mexican, 4363
 - of the Netherlands, 2727
 - of the English North American colonies, 2951
 - Persian, 560
 - Phœnician, 333, 334
 - Russian, 3055
 - in the Sixteenth Century, 2800, 2801
 - in the United States after the Revolution, 3290
- Inge Baardsen, 2415
- Ingelberga, 2144
- Ingelow, Jean, 3958
- Ingogo river, battle of, 4449
- Ingolstadt, seat of Catholic learning in Germany, 2598
- Ingour, battle of the, 3622
- Ingria, 3072
- Ingraham, Captain, 4101
- Inigo Jones, 3028
- Inkermann, battle of, 3620
- Innocent II., Pope, 1954, 2084
- Innocent III., Pope, 2075-2077, 2079, 2080, 2091, 2092, 2144, 2146, 2147, 2265-2268, 2273
- Innocent IV., Pope, 2096
- Innovations and reforms in Europe in the Eighteenth Century, 3139-3156
- Innsbruck, 2620
- Inquisition, the, 2051
 - abolition of the, 3143, 3144
 - in France, 2748
 - in Portugal, 2402
 - in Spain, 2403, 2567, 2720, 2985, 3144, 3530
 - in Toulouse, 2076, 2150
 - in the Netherlands, 2619, 2729
 - introduction of the 2076
 - under Pius V., 2720
 - work of the, 2079
- Insurgente, L', vessel, 3998
- Interdict, 2050
- International Exhibitions, at London, 3948, 3571
 - at New York, 4104
 - at Paris, 3949, 3621, 3864
 - at Philadelphia, 3949, 4250, 4251
 - at Chicago, 3949, 4269, 4270
 - at St. Louis, 3949, 4332
 - at Vienna, 3949
- Interim, Augsburg, 2618, 2619
- Interim, Lelpsic, 2619
- Interregnum, the Great, in Germany, 2101
- Intransigentes, 3963-3966
- Inventions, 2521
 - of gunpowder, 2521
 - of printing, 2521
 - of the mariner's compass, 2521
 - in the Seventeenth Century, 3026
 - in the Eighteenth Century, 3508
 - in the Nineteenth Century, 3952, 3953, 3954
 - of the electric telegraph, 4064, 3952
 - of the steamboat and steamship, 4065, 4009, 3952
 - of the steam engine, 3952, 3954
 - of sewing machines, 3954
 - in electrical appliances, 3954
- Inverness, 2377, 2381, 3107
- Investitures, Wars of, 1947
- Invincible Armada, 2694-2696
 - destruction of the, 2696, 2697
- Inules, 440
- Ion, 714
- Iona, founding of the monastery of, 1560
 - school of theology at, 2300

- Ionia, 419, 756
 Ionian Confederacy, 757
 Ionian Islands, 2642
 Ionians, 713, 714, 722, 756, 757
 Ionic architecture, 943, 944
 Ionic races in the Peloponnesus, 722
 Iowa, admission of, 4074
 Iphicrates, 527
 Ipsambul, rock-temples of, 53, 111
 Ipsus, battle of, 1009, 1019, 1029, 1039, 1049
 Iquique, battle of, 4365, 4366
 Iran, plateau of, 447-458
 Ireland, Catholics disfranchised and op-
 pressed in, 3312, 3313
 Catholic Emancipation, 3559
 Brian Boru as king of, 2257
 coercion in, 3797, 3798, 3803, 3804
 Cromwell's conquest of, 2253, 2254
 Daniel O'Connell in, 3559, 3565
 early history of, 1560, 2256, 2257
 English conquest of, 2256-2258
 evictions in, 3795, 3797, 3804, 3805
 famines in, 3795
 Fenian Brotherhood in, 3557
 from its conquest by William III., 3312
 government of, 3312-3315, 3328, 3329, 3344
 great famine in, 3566, 3567
 Home Rule Bills for, 3803, 3811
 Land Act of 1870 for, 3658
 Land Act of 1881 for, 3798
 Land Act of 1887 for, 3804
 Land League in, 3795
 Parliament of, 3312-3315, 3344
 Phoenix Park assassinations, 3798, 3799
 piety and learning in, 1560
 rebellion of 1598 in, 2700, 2701
 rebellion of 1641 in, 2837, 2838
 rebellion of 1689 in, 2910-2914
 rebellion of 1798 in, 3346
 rebellion of 1848 in, 3567
 reforms demanded for, 3797
 riots in, 3797, 3798
 Tyrone's Rebellion in, 2700, 2701
 Union of, with Great Britain, 3347
 Irene, 1596, 1896, 2854
 Ireton, General, 2845, 2848, 2854, 2855, 2864
 Iris, 737
 Iris river, 417
 Iron Crown of Lombardy, 1888, 1889, 3439, 3440
 Ironside, Edmund, 2016, 2017
 Ironsides, Cromwell's, 2843
 Iran, siege of, 3699
 Irving, Washington, 3961
 Isaac, 352-354, 357
 Isaac, Armenian Patriarch, 1664, 1665
 Isaac, King of Cyprus, 2262
 Isaac Angelus, 1604, 1605, 2069
 Isæus, 936
 Isaiah, 413
 Isabella, of Angouleme, 2264, 2265
 Isabella of Hainault, 2144
 Isabella, wife of Edward II., of England, 2287, 2289, 2290
 Isabella, wife of Charles VI. of France, 2179
 Isabella I., of Spain, 2394-2396, 2403-2405, 2526, 2547
 Isabella II., of Spain, 3551, 3552, 3651, 3636, 3637, 3651-3653
 accession of, 3551
 character of, 3651
 insurrections against, 3551, 3552, 3636, 3637
 overthrow of, by Revolution of 1868, 3651-3653
 Isabel, Point, 4079
 Iscariot, Judas, 1084
 Isdigerd I., 1657-1661
 Isdigerd II., 1667-1670
 Isdigard III., 1750, 1751, 1820, 1821, 1823-1826, 1828
 assassination of, 1751, 1828
 Ishbosheth, 394
 Ishmael, 350, 352, 1762
 Ishtar, 300-302
 Isis, 97-99
 Islam, rise of, 1765-1790
 Island No. 10, capture of, 4148, 4149
 Isle of Man, 1338
 naval battle of, 3127
 Isly, battle of, 3581
 Ismail, capture of, 3172
 Ismail Bey, 3457
 Ismail Pasha, 3722-3724
 Ismail Suffee, 2488
 Ismenias, 528, 907
 Ismi-Dagon, 130
 Isocrates, 968, 969, 1011
 Isola della Scala, battle of, 2560
 Ispahan, 2489
 siege and fall of, 2401

- Israel, Children of, 347-415
 Israel, Kingdom of, 400-403
 Assyrian Captivity, 403
 Kings of, table of the, 410
 idolatry in, 400-403
 overthrow of, 403
 Israelites, history of the, 347-415
 Ark of the Covenant among the, 389
 bondage of, in Egypt, 360-364
 civil wars among the, 393, 394
 conquest of Canaan by the, 374-382
 David's conquests, 395
 exodus and wanderings of the, 364-374
 Heroic Age of the, 382-390
 greatness and commerce of, under Solomon, 397-399
 Judges of the, 382-390
 Kings of the, 410
 Phœnician idolatry introduced among the, 400
 patriarchs of the, 347-360
 power and glory of the, 394-399
 Revolt of the Ten Tribes, 399, 400
 wars of the, 374-410
 Issachar, 381
 Issus, battle of, Alexander's victory, 533, 990, 991
 another battle of, 436
 a third battle of, 1593, 1737
 Issy, Fort d', 3671, 3674, 3681
 capture of, 3685
 Isthmian Games, 749
 Istria, 759
 Istria, John Capo d', 3541
 assassination of, 3541
 Iswara-Krishna, 636
 Italia, 1258
 Italica, 1258
 Italian confederation, 3630
 Italian League, 1180
 Italian League, another, 1258
 Italian Nationality, War of, 3697-3631
 Italy, ancient, 1111-1123
 geography of, 1111-1123
 races of, 1122, 1123
 Italy, mediæval, 1533-1544, 1906, 1907, 1995, 1996, 2383-2390
 Kingdom of the Heruli in, 1533
 Kingdom of the Ostrogoths in, 1533-1538
 Kingdom of the Lombards in, 1538-1544
 Normans in, 1995, 1996
 Saracens in, 1906, 1907, 1995
 Republic of Venice in, 2383-2385
 Republic of Genoa in, 2385
 Republic of Pisa in, 2385
 Republic of Florence in, 2385-2387
 Rome, or the Papal State in, 2388
 Kingdom of Naples and Sicily in, 2388-2390
 Duchy of Milan in, 2387
 Duchy of Savoy in, 2387
 Italy, modern, 2547-2591, 2716-2718, 3091, 3091, 2994, 3017, 3095-3112, 3370-3305, 3531, 3532, 3550, 3551, 3606-3608, 3627-3635, 3646-3648, 3678, 3679, 3892, 3997
 Wars of Charles VIII. and Louis XII. of France in, 2547-2563
 Wars of Francis I. of France and Charles V. of Germany in, 2563-2591
 Wars of Philip II. of Spain and Henry II., of France in, 2716-2718
 Insurrection of Masaniello in, 3020, 3021
 Wars of Louis XIV. of France in, 2994-3017
 War of the Polish and Austrian Successions in, 3095-3112
 Wars of the French Revolution and Napoleon in, 3370-3505
 Revolutions of 1820-21 in, 3531, 3532
 Revolutions of 1830-31 in, 3550, 3551
 Revolutions of 1848-49 in, 3606-3608
 War of Italian Nationality in, 3627-3631
 Rise of the Kingdom of Italy in, 3631-3635
 Seven Weeks' War in, 3646-3648
 Rome made the capital of Italy in, 3678, 3679
 quarrel of Church and State in, 3704, 3705
 table of kings of, 4888
 King Humbert's assassination in, 3996
 diplomatic rupture with the United States, 3893, 3994
 wars with Abyssinia and the Dervishes in Africa, 3893-3895
 recent events in, 3892-3897
 recent Popes, 3705, 3897
 Ithaca, 711, 718
 Ithome, 777, 844, 849, 917
 Ito, Count, 4646, 4657
 Iturbide, Don Augustin, 4343, 4350
 Iuka, battle of, 4148

- Ivan I., 2429
 Ivan II., 2429
 Ivan III., the Great, 2431-2433
 arts and industries under, 2432
 assumes the title of Autocrat of all the
 Russias, 2432
 character of, 2432
 conquests of, 2431, 2432
 reforms of, 2432
 Ivan IV., the Terrible, 3045-3049
 assumes the title of Czar, 3047
 character of, 3047, 3048
 commerce under, 3047
 conquests of, 3047
 tyranny of, 3047-3049
 Ivry, battle of, 2769
 Ixion, 742, 744
 Izard, General, 4022
- JABAN, 1819
 Jabin, King of Hazor, 380
 Jabin, King of Hazor, another, 384
 Jackson, Andrew, 3997, 4020, 4023, 4024, 4035,
 4045, 4049-4059, 4070
 Jackson, battle of, 4174
 Jackson, Clalborne Fox, 4131, 4138, 4139
 Jackson, Fort, surrender of, 4149
 Jackson, General Thomas Jonathan ("Stone-
 wall Jackson"), 4129, 4134, 4135, 4153,
 4155-4159, 4170
 Jacksonville, capture of, 4191, 4192
 Jacob, 353-360
 and Esau, story of, 353-360
 in Egypt, 359
 sons of, 355
 trials of, 353-360
 Jacobins, or the Mountain, 3368-3405
 Jacobins, White, 3523
 Jacobites, 3015, 3061, 3082, 3106
 Jacquard, 3508
 Jacqueline, Countess of Hainault and Hol-
 land, 2184
 Jacques, Insurrection of the, 2173
 Jacques Bonhomme, 2173
 Jael, 385
 Jaffa, capture of, 3425
 Jagger, 2435
 Jaggios, 2435, 2436, 3039
 Jakush, 3044
 Jalenus, 1819, 1823
 Jalula, battle of, 1751, 1825
- James, Duke of York, 2877, 2879, 2880, 2881,
 2883, 2885, 2887, 2890, 2941
 James, Earl of Douglas, 2291
 James I. of England, 2715, 2716, 2811-2821
 character and religion of, 2811, 2812
 colonization under, 2814, 2815
 favorites of, 2816, 2817
 foreign policy of, 2812, 2817-2819
 government of, 2812, 2813, 2815, 2816
 House of Commons and, 2815, 2816, 2819,
 2820
 laws of, 2816
 James II. of England, 2890-2905
 Catholicism and, 2891-2900
 Declarations of Indulgence by, 2897, 2898
 dethronement of, 2900-2906
 in France, 2904
 Jeffries' campaign under, 2892
 Parliament and, 2890
 James the Conqueror, of Aragon, 2395
 James I. of Scotland, 2377, 2378
 James II. of Scotland, 2378-2380
 James III. of Scotland, 2380, 2381
 James IV. of Scotland, 2381, 2382, 2562, 2563,
 2638, 2703
 James V. of Scotland, 2638, 2655, 2703-2705
 James VI. of Scotland, 2685, 2692, 2712-2716
 becomes King James I. of England, 2715,
 2716, 2811
 James, St., 1086
 James, St., the Less, 1086
 Jameson, Dr., 3825, 1463, 1464
 trial and imprisonment of, 3825, 4463
 Jamestown, founding of, 2814, 2931
 destruction of, 2932
 Jane Grey, Lady, 2666-2671
 Jane Seymour, 2651
 Janiculum, Mt., 1131, 1146, 1328
 Janizaries, founding of the, 2478, 2479
 massacre of the, 3539
 power of the, 3056
 Janiszewski, Bishop of Posen, 3703
 Jankowitz battle of, 2795
 Jansenists, persecution of the, 3116
 Janus, 1138
 temple of, gates of the, 1138
 Japan, 694-697, 4637-4732
 arts and industries in, 4638
 Buddhism introduced into, 697, 4638
 cession of Sakhalin to Russia, 4645
 Christianity introduced into, 4640, 4641

- civil war in, 4638, 4643, 4644
- civilization of, 4639, 4643, 4646
- Commodore Perry's expedition to, 4642
- conquest of Korea, 4638
- early history of, 4637
- feudal system in, 4640
- geography and antiquity of, 694-697
- government of, 4637-4646
- opening of ports to foreign commerce, 4644
- peace envoys of China in, 4664, 4668
- Peace of Shimonoseki with China, 4669, 4670
- Peace of Portsmouth with Russia, 4731, 4732
- power of Mikado in, 4642-4645
- protectorate over Korea by, 4671
- rivalry with China, 4645, 4646
- Shintoism in, 4638
- Shoguns of, 4638-4644
- war with the Western powers, 4643
- war with China, 4646-4671
- War with the Chinese Boxers, 4672-4694
- war with Russia, 4694-4732
- Japan Sea, battle of, 3886, 4729, 4730
- Japheth, 24, 26
- Jargeau, battle of, 2194
- Jarir, 1820
- Jarnac, battle of, 2754, 2755
- Jason, 717
- Jason of Phæræ, 914-916
- Jason, the Jewish leader, 1075, 1076
- Jassy, battle of, 3041
 - Peace of, 3173, 3174
- Java, 2745, 2746
- Jay, John, his articles in the "Federalist," 3310
 - as Chief Justice, 3975
 - his Treaty, 3992-3996
- Jeanne d'Arc, 2186-2208
 - childhood of, 2186
 - commencement of her mission, 2187-2191
 - given her command, 2191
 - her visions, 2197
 - her victories, 2191-2197
 - her capture, 2197
 - her trial and execution, 2198-2206
 - her place in history, 2206-2208
- Jebus, the, 3810
- Jebus, 377, 394, 395
- Jebusites, 377, 394, 395
- Jefferson, Thomas, 3238, 3229, 3292, 327, 3309, 3975, 3978, 3979, 3982, 3983, 3984, 3998-4000, 4003-4011, 4042, 4043, 4047
- Jefferies, Lord Chief Justice, 2892, 2893
- Jeffrey, Lord, 3554, 3958
- Jehander Shah, 2509
- Jehanghire, 2502-2504
- Jehoash, 402
- Jehoahaz, King of Israel, 408
- Jehoahaz, King of Judah, 408
- Jehoiachin, 408
- Jehoiakim, 408, 409
- Jehol, rebellion in, 4657, 4659
- Jehoram, 405
- Jehoshaphat, 405
- Jehu, 402
- Jelaleddin, 2452
- Jellachich, 3602-3604
- Jellal-u-Deen, 2044
- Jemappes, battle of, 3375
- Jeni-Saghra, battle of, 3741
- Jenkinson, Anthony, 2486
- Jenner, Edward, 3506
- Jephthah, 386
- Jericho, 379
 - capture of, 379
- Jeroboam, 399, 400
- Jerome, St., 1472, 1491
- Jerome of Prague, 2118-2120
- Jerrold, Douglas, 3968
- Jersey, 2265
- Jersey, New, colony of, 2243
- Jervia, Admiral Sir John, 3343, 3411
- Jerusalem, captured by David, 394, 395
 - captured by the Babylonians, 250, 409
 - captured by the Egyptians, 57, 404
 - captured by Pompey, 1273
 - captured by the New Persians, 1592, 1734, 1735
 - captured by the Saracens, 1817, 1818
 - captured by the Seljuk Turks, 2028
 - captured by the Crusaders, 2062
 - captured by Saladin, 2066
 - destroyed by Titus, 1088, 1089, 1412
 - destruction of churches in, 1735
 - Temple of, built by Solomon, 396
 - Temple of, destroyed by Titus, 1089
 - Temple of, polluted by John of Gischala, 1067
 - Temple of, rebuilt by Ezra and Nehemiah, 411

- Jesup, General**, 4059
- Jesuits, Catholic Church and the**, 2628-2628
 chief object of the, 2631
 classes of the, 2630
 government of, 2630
 habits of, 2630, 2631
 in America, 2632, 3145
 in China and Japan, 2632, 4629, 4639, 4641
 in England, 2687, 2894, 2895
 in France, 2955, 2991
 in Switzerland, 3585
 missionaries of the, 2632
 expelled from France, 2771, 3842
 expelled from Portugal, Spain, France,
 Naples and Austria, 3145, 3146
 expelled from Rome, 3705
 expelled from Germany, 3702
 expelled from Switzerland, 3586
 opposed by Catholics, 2632, 3144
 Order of, abolished, 3144, 3146
 protected in Russia and Prussia, 3146,
 3147
 Reformation and the, 2631
 success of the, 2631
- Jesus Christ**, 1082-1084, 1390, 1395
 birth of, 1082, 1390
 crucifixion of, 1084, 1395
- Jethro**, 361
- Jews, Babylonian Captivity of the**, 400-411
 colonisation of, in Chaldea, 409
 dispersion of the, 1089, 1412
 return of, to Jerusalem, 411
 sacred things of the, 414
 sacred seasons, or feasts, 414
 Tabernacle, the, 413, 414
 worship of Jehovah by the, 414, 415
- Jews, persecutions of the**, by Antiochus
 Epiphanes, 1076
 in Egypt, 1873
 in England, 2261, 2262, 2280
 in France, 2132, 2142
 in Germany, 2114
 in Portugal, 2404, 2405
 in Russia, 3879, 3880, 3883, 3884
 in Spain, 1531, 1532, 2404
- Jezebel**, 402
- Jezreel**, 402
- Jimena**, 3695
- Jimmu Tenno**, 696, 697, 4637
- Joab**, 396
- Joan of Arc, or Jeanne d'Arc**, 2186-2208
- Joanna I., Queen of Naples**, 2389
- Joanna II., Queen of Naples**, 2390
- Joanna Beaufort**, 2377
- Joanna**, second wife of John II. of Aragon,
 2395, 2396
- Joanna**, daughter of Ferdinand and Isabella,
 2405, 2525, 2526
- Joash**, 406
- Johannesburg**, founding of, 3825, 4445
 growth of, 3825, 4445, 4446
 occupation of, 3830, 4544, 4545
 revolt in, 3825, 4463, 4464
- John I.**, 1600
- John II.**, 1602, 1603
- John III.**, 2447
- John IV.**, 2443
- John V.**, 2444
- John VI.**, 2444
- John II. of Aragon**, 2395, 2396
- John of Abyssinia**, 3893
- John of Bohemia**, 2169, 2295
- John of England**, 2144-2148, 2263-2273
 accession of, 2264
 character of, 2264
 death of, 2273
 loss of French possessions, 2265
 quarrel of, with Pope Innocent III., 2265-
 2267
 signing of Magna Charta by, 2268-2272
- John of Gaunt, Duke of Lancaster**, 2299,
 2303, 2304
- John Cantacuzene**, 2443, 2444
- John Palaeologus I.**, 2444
- John Palaeologus II.**, 2445
- John Frederick of Saxony**, 2612, 2614-2616,
 2620
- John of Leyden**, 2611
- John von Eck**, 2598
- John the Baptist**, 1083, 1084
- John the Fearless**, 2180-2183
- John the Steadfast**, 2612
- John the Good**, 2170-2174, 2296-2303
- John the Grammarian**, 1830
- John the Merciful**, 1735
- John I., the Bastard, of Portugal**, 2399, 2400
- John II., the Perfect, of Portugal**, 2401, 2402
- John III., the Great, of Portugal**, 2402
- John IV. of Portugal**, 3020, 3023
- John V. of Portugal**, 3010, 3024, 3145
- John VI. of Portugal**, 3631, 3634
- John XII., Pope**, 1925

- John XV., Pope, 1929
 John XIX., Pope, 1932
 John XXII., Pope, 2109, 2110
 John XXIII., Pope, 2118, 2119, 2592
 Johnson, Andrew, 4142, 4167
 as Military Governor of Tennessee, 4167
 as Vice President, 4208, 4209, 4221
 as President, 4221-4238
 impeachment of, 4236, 4237
 Johnson, General Edward, 4172
 Johnson, Herschel Vespasian, 4114
 Johnson, Richard Mentor, 4058, 4062
 Johnson, Samuel, 3509
 Johnson, Sir William, 3117
 Johnston, General Albert Sidney, 4109, 4147
 Johnston, General Joseph Eccleston, 4129,
 4135, 4136, 4155, 4174, 4175, 4180, 4193,
 4201, 4202, 4215, 4216, 4221
 Johnstown, disaster at, 4265, 4266
 Johnville, Prince de, 3580
 Joliet, Louis, 3017
 Jonah, the prophet, 171
 at Nineveh, 171
 Jonathan, 393, 394
 Jones, Inigo, 3028
 Jones, John Paul, 3262, 3263
 Jones, Sir William, 3510
 Jonesboro', battle of, 4203
 Jonkoping, Peace of, 3461
 Jonson, Ben, 3027
 Joppa, 2068, 2425
 Jordan river, 376
 Joseph, the patriarch, 355, 357-360
 in Egypt, 358-360
 Joseph, the Indian chief, 4255, 4256
 Joseph, King of Portugal, 3144, 3145
 Joseph I. of Germany, 3009, 3013
 Joseph II. of Germany, 3149-3156, 3162-3164
 Josephine, widow of General Beauharnais,
 3404
 marriage of, with Napoleon, 3404
 social gifts of, 3437
 divorce of, 3475, 3476
 Josephus, Flavius, 1088, 1102
 Joshua, 379-382
 Josiah, 406
 Jotaplanus, 1446
 Jotham, 406, 407
 Joubert, Boer general, 3828, 4449, 4477, 4505
 Joubert, French general, 3424
 Jourdan, General and Marshal, 3391, 3394,
 3400, 3406, 3409, 3410, 3423, 3466, 3469
 Jove, 724
 Jovellar, General, 3700
 Jovian, 1487, 1488
 Joyeuse, Villaret, Admiral, 3394
 Juarez, Benito, 4357-4361
 Juarista, 4359
 Judæa, 410, 413
 Judah, tribe of, 380, 400
 Judah, Kingdom of, 399, 400, 403-410
 idolatry of, 403-410
 worship of Ashtoreth introduced into, 405
 worship of Jehovah restored by Hezekiah,
 407
 wars of, 403-410
 Babylonian Captivity of, 409
 Judaism, 28, 34
 Judas Iscariot, 1064
 Judas Maccabeus, 1077, 1078
 Judges, of the Hebrews, 382-390
 Juggernaut, 648, 649
 Jugurtha, 1247-1250
 Jugurthine War, 1247-1250
 Julia, Cæsar's daughter, 1279
 Julia, daughter of Augustus, 1390
 Julian Calendar, 1296, 1299
 Julian Law, 1259, 1260
 Julian the Apostate, 1484-1487, 1639-1646
 Julian, George Washington, 4098, 4210
 Julianus, Didius, 1434, 1435
 Jülich, surrender of, 2773
 Julius, 1259
 Julius Africanus, 42
 Julius Agricola, 1415, 1416
 Julius Cæsar, 1276-1304
 rise of, 1276
 conquests of, in Gaul, Germany and
 Britain, 1280-1284
 civil war of, with Pompey, 1287-1299
 triumphs of, 1298
 Dictatorship of, 1299, 1300
 assassination of, 1300-1304
 Julius Nepos, 1511
 Julius Vindex, 1406
 Julius II., Pope, 2554, 2556-2561
 conquests of, 2558, 2554-2556, 2561
 warlike character of, 2558, 2559
 July, origin of name of month, 1299
 July Revolution in Paris, 3541-3544
 Jumonville, 3116

- Junin, battle of, 4347
 Junius, Letters of, 3195
 Juno, 724
 Junot, General, 3417, 3426, 3463
 Junta, Castilian, 2570
 Junta of Seville, 3463
 Juntas of Spain, 3463
 Juntas of South America, 4342-4348
 Jupiter, 794, 1137
 Jury, origin of trial of, 2259
 Justin I., 1574, 1575
 Justin II., 1591
 Justin Martyr, 1427, 1488
 Justinian, 1575-1591
 accession of, 1575
 conquests under, 1534-1538, 1576-1578
 wars with the New Persian Empire under,
 1575, 1578, 1684-1704
 code, or Civil Law of, 1582-1586
 "Endless Peace," 1575, 1693
 silk manufacture introduced into Europe
 by, 1586-1591
 Justinian II., 1594, 1595
 Jutes, 1558, 1559, 1956
 Jutland, 1956, 2781, 3644
 Juvenal, 1376
 Juxon, Bishop, 2852
 Jypaul, 2032, 2033

 KAABA, 1763-1765, 1771, 1773-1775, 1785
 Kadesh, 384
 Kadish, 51
 Kadjar dynasty, 2493, 2494
 Kaduklar, battle of, 4743
 Kæso, Fabius, 1152
 Kahlenberg, 3061
 Kahlira, or Cairo, founding of, 1887, 1873
 Kaichow, evacuation of, 4715
 Kaiomarts, 591
 Kaiphing, battle of, 4663
 Kairwan, or Cairouan, founding of, 1836
 Kalb, Baron de, 3248, 3264
 Kalka, battle of, 2127
 Kalkreuth, 3452
 Kalmuck Tartars, migration of, 3168
 Kaluga, 2426
 Kaminiec, 3044, 3059, 3065
 Kammurabi, 130, 131
 Kang-hi, 4648, 4649
 Kansas, admission of, as a Free State, 4110
 civil war in Territory of, 4105, 4106
 organization of Territory of, 4102, 4103
 Kaöses, 1692
 Kant, Immanuel, 3154, 3508, 3509
 Kapila, 636
 Kapila-vestu, 653
 Kapolna, battle of, 3603
 Karabunar, battle of, 3741
 Karahassankoi, battle of, 3744
 Kara-in-das, 131
 Kara-kar-das, 131
 Karakorum, 2458
 Karasu, 1784
 Kara Mustapha, 3060-3062
 Karageorgevitch, Prince, 3913
 Karnak, 38, 51, 52
 Hall of Columns at, 52
 palaces at, 51
 temples at, 51
 ruins of, 38
 Kars, siege and fall of, in 1855, 3622
 siege and fall of, in 1877, 3748, 3749
 Kartova, battle of, 3742
 Kaskaskia, founding of, 3018
 Kasr, mound of, 270, 271
 Kasson, John Adams, 4210
 Kasyapa, 656
 Katsura, General, 4660
 Katte, Lieutenant von, 3093
 Katsbach, battle of, 3488
 Kaulbach, Wilhelm von, 3967
 Kaulbars, General, 3910
 Kaunits, 3118, 3149, 3150
 Kayuk, 2457
 Kazan, 2427, 2431
 Russian conquest of, 3047
 Kazanlik, capture of, 3741
 Keane, General, 4023
 Keane, Sir John, 3564
 Kearny, General Philip, 4157, 4158
 Kearny, General Stephen Watts, 4080-4082
 Kearsarge, battle between the Alabama and
 the, 4205, 4206
 foundering of the, 4206
 Keats, John, 3957
 Keiki, 4644
 Kekewich, Colonel, 4508
 Kien-lung, 4630, 4631
 Kellerman, 3375, 3389, 3391, 3430
 Kelley, General Benjamin Franklin, 4137,
 4146
 Kelley, William Darragh, 4210

- Kelly-Kenny, General Sir Thomas, 4611
 Kelly's Ford, skirmish at, 4173
 Kelta, or Celts, 37, 1560
 Kemeny, John, 3068
 Kempen, battle of, 3794
 Kempis, Thomas à, 3053
 Kenkenes, 44
 Kenmuir, Lord, 3083
 Kent, Judge James, 3961
 Kent, Kingdom of, 1559
 Kentucky, admission of, 3978
 in the Civil War, 4141
 Kepler, 3025
 Keppel, Admiral, 3134, 3273
 Keresstes, battle of, 3796
 Kerim Khan, 2403
 Kerim Pasha, 3728
 Kesseldorf, battle of, 3105
 Kettle Creek, battle of, 3261
 Kettle Run, battle of, 4158
 Ketteler, Baron von, murder of, 4081, 4082
 Key, David McKendree, 4254
 Key, Francis Scott, 3960, 4023
 Keyes, General Erasmus Darwin, 4155
 Khaled, the "Sword of God," 1785, 1811,
 1813-1818
 Khadijah, 1767, 1771, 1776
 Khalbar, 1784
 Khalifate of Bagdad, 1846-1858
 Khalifate of Cairo, 1873-1876
 Khalifate of Cordova, 1859-1872
 Khalifate of Damascus, 1836-1845
 Khalifa, First Four, 1811-1835
 Khalifa, overthrow of the, 3819, 3820, 3822
 Khanun, King of Gaza, 177
 Khartoum, attack on, 3801
 massacre at, 3801
 siege of, 3801
 Khazars, 1680, 1704, 1737, 1740, 2421, 2422
 Khem, 95
 Kheta tribes, 51
 Khevenhüller, 3101
 Khiva, 3720
 Khokand, 3719, 3720
 Khorassan, 1062
 Khorsabad, 118, 180, 233
 Khosr-su, 231
 Khosrou Nushirvan, 1578, 1692-1720
 Khosrou Parviz, 1592, 1593, 1724-1746
 Khouli Khan, 2492
 Khush-Newaz, 1683
 Khyber Pass, battle of, 3792
 Kiaking, 4681
 Kieft, Sir William, 2940
 Kiel, Peace of, 3491
 Kiev, 2420-2426, 2431, 3779-3782, 3791
 Kilch-Shergat, 118, 228
 Killiecrankie, battle of, 2909
 Kilmarnock, Earl of, 3108
 Kilpatrick, General Judson, 4171, 4192, 4214
 Kilwarden, Lord, 3351
 Kimberley, siege of, 3827, 4474
 relief of, 3829, 4507
 Kinburn, capture of, 3622
 Kinchou, battle of, 3884, 4714
 King, Samuel W., 4063
 King, Rufus, 4034
 King, William Rufus, 4100
 Kinglake, Alexander William, 3959
 Kings, divine right of, 2812, 2840, 2852, 2906
 King's Evil, 2023
 King's Mountain, battle of, 3264
 Kingsley, Rev. Charles, 3959
 Kinhuaha, battle of, 4658
 Kinlinchang, battle of, 4709
 Kioto, 4637
 Kipsak Empire, 2462
 Kipsah, Golden Horde of, 2427, 2430, 2432,
 2462
 Kirghiz, 3719
 Kisheneff, massacre of Jews at, 3883, 3884
 Kishon, battle of, 325
 Kitchener, General Lord Horatio Herbert,
 4503
 Kittanning, battle of, 3118
 Kin-lien-tcheng, battle of, 4668
 Klapka, General, 3605
 Kleber, General, 3417, 3426, 3432
 Klinspor, Field-Marshal, 3549
 Klopstock, 3154, 3511
 Klosterseven, convention of, 3121
 Kneph, or Knubis, or Num, 94
 Knight, Charles, 3959
 Knight Commander, sinking of the, 4417
 Knighthood, ceremonies of, 2048, 2049
 Knights, dress and arms of, 2049
 Knights-errant, 2049
 Knights of St. John, 2063, 2064, 2073
 Knights of the Round Table, 1559, 2053
 Knights-Templars, 2063, 2064, 2073, 2163, 2164
 Knights, Teutonic, 2073
 Knorring, General, 3460

- Knowles, James Sheridan, 3937**
Knowlton, Colonel, 3243
Knox, General Sir Charles Edmond, 4504
Knox, General Sir William George, 4504
Knox, Henry, 3975
Knox, John, 2628, 2682-2684, 3707, 3710
Knoxville, siege of, 4181
Knyphausen, General, 3249
Kobad, 1680-1692
Kobad II., or Sroes, 1746-1748
Koh-e-noor, 2511
Kokome, Pyramid of, 44
Kolin, battle of, 3121
Komatsu, Prince, 4668
Koneih, battle of, 3573
Kongo Free State, 3163
Königgratz, 3647
Königsburg, 3073, 3004, 3450, 3452, 3509
Königseg, Field-Marshal, 3102
Koodoesberg Drift, battle of, 4496
Kootub, 3624
Köproli, Achmet, 3056
Köproli, Mustapha, 3064
Koran, 1790-1811
 teachings of the, 1791-1809
 writing of the, 1790, 1791
Korasmian Empire, conquest of, by Zingis Khan, 2451, 2452
Korasmians, incursions of, in Palestine, 3071
Kodorfan, Egyptian conquest of, 3572
Korea, civil war in, 4647
 independence of, 4669
 invasion of, by the Chinese and Japanese, 4647
 revolt in, 4647
 Russia and, 4671, 4697, 4698
Korish, 1772, 1774, 1775, 1778, 1781-1783
Korosten, 2422
Korsakoff, General, 3425
Kosciusko, Thaddeus, 3176, 3178-3180, 3182, 3246
 in the American Revolution, 3248
 in the Polish rising against Russia and Prussia, 3176, 3178-3180
 defeated, wounded and captured, 3180
 exile and death of, 3182
Kossuth, Francis, 3891, 3892
Kossuth, Louis, as leader of the Hungarian rebellion in 1848, 3601-3605
 visit of to the United States, 4100
 vol. 15-17
- Koster, Laurence, 2521**
Kossta, Martin, 4101
Kotze, Chief Justice, 4466, 4467
Kotzebue, Augustus von, 3522, 3945
Kotsim, battle of, 3044
 fortress of, 3161, 3172
Kowshing, 4648
Kow-tsung, 679
Koyunjik, mound of, 230, 231
Kranach, Lucas, 2805
Krapotkine, Prince, 3844
Krasnoi, battles of, 3484
Krefeld, battle of, 3124
Kremlin, 3483
Krishna, 643, 646, 649, 650, 653
Kronenberg, siege and fall of, 3036
Kroonstad, 4519
Kronos, 723, 724, 739
Kronstadt, 3603
Kronstadt, Vice-Admiral, 3458
Krotska, battle of, 3097
Krudener, General, 3741
Krüger, Paul, 3815, 3822, 3824, 3825, 3829, 3830, 4444-4622
Krukowiecki, 3548
Kublai Khan, 2459-2461, 4639
Kudschuk-Kainardji, Peace of, 3167
Kudur-Lagamer, 129
Kudur-Mabuk, 129
Kudur-Nakhunta, 129
Kukuli, battle of, 3161
Kulm, battle of, 3488, 3489
Kulmann, 3704
Kunersdorf, battle of, 3125, 3126
Kungwasal, battle of, 4660
Kurdistan, 116, 216, 1710, 1721, 2496
Kurds, 216, 217
 as descendants of the Assyrians, 216
Kuroki, General, 3884, 3886, 4700-4719
Kuropatkin, General, 3885, 3886, 4703-4726
Kurs, 1709
Kurschumlje, battle of, 3754
Kuruk-Dara, battle of, 3743
Kuruman, capture of, 4490
Kustendje, battle of, 3742
Kutais, 3622
Kutusoff, General, 3457, 3461-3463
Kwang-su, 4636, 4675
- LABADIEVILLE, battle of, 4150, 4181**
Labarum, 1466

- Labedoyère, Colonel, 3497, 3501
 La Boeuf, Fort, 3116
 Laborosoarchod, 254
 Labrador, discovery of, 2527
 Labyrinth, 49, 77
 Lacedæmon, 710, 772, 775
 Lacedæmonians, 903
 Lachasse, General, 3577
 Lachesis, 739
 Laconia, in Greece, 710, 775, 790
 Laconia, or New Hampshire, 2937
 La Corona, battle of, 3606
 Lacrates, 531
 Lactantius, 1489
 Ladislas I. of Hungary, 2437
 Ladislas II. of Hungary, 2437
 Ladislas III. of Hungary, 2437
 Ladislas IV. of Hungary, 2438
 Ladislas V. of Hungary, 2438
 Ladislas VI. of Hungary, 2438, 2439
 Ladislas I. of Poland, 2434
 Ladislas II. of Poland, 2434
 Ladislas III. of Poland, 2434
 Ladislas IV. of Poland, 2434, 2435
 Ladislas V. of Poland, 2435
 Ladislas VI. of Poland, 2435
 Ladislas VII. of Poland, 3041, 3042
 L'Admirault, General, 3686
 Ladysmith, siege of, 3827, 4447
 relief of, 3829, 4515
 Laertius, Diogenes, 1104
 Lævinus, 1185
 Lafayette, General, 3247-3249, 3255, 3258,
 3259, 3270, 3364, 3366, 3370, 3373, 3543,
 3544, 4045
 Lafayette, Oscar de, 4263
 Laffeld, battle of, 3111
 Lafitte, 3544
 Lafon, General, 3404
 La Fontaine, 2981, 3026
 Laggards, home of, 1521
 Lagos Bay, battle of, 2999
 La Haye Sainte, farmhouse of, 3409
 La Hogue, Cape, battle of, 2916, 2998
 Laing's Nek, battle of, 4449
 Laird, 4186
 Lake-dwellers of Switzerland, 22
 Lake George, battle of, 3117
 Lake Scutari, battle of, 3754
 L'Allemand, Vice-Admiral, 3474
 Lally, 3132, 3280
 Lamachus, 872, 873
 Lamartine, 3589, 3592, 3964
 Lamb, Charles, 3958
 Lamballe, Princess de, murder of, 3374
 Lamberg, murder of, 3602
 Lambert, General, 2867, 2868
 Lambert Simnel, 2353, 2354
 Lamia, 1005
 Lamiar War, 1005
 Lamoricière, General, 3589, 3592, 3610
 Lampsacus, 759, 884
 Lancaster, Earl of, Thomas Plantagenet, 2300
 Lancaster, Duke of, John of Gaunt, 2300,
 2303, 2304, 2311, 2313
 Lancaster, Henry of, 2313-2316
 Lancaster, House of, 2316-2336
 Lancaster, Pennsylvania, Continental Con-
 gress at, 3249
 General Reynolds interred at, 4171
 home of Buchanan and Stevens, 4232
 Laincourt, Duke de, 3363
 Landau, fall of, 3007
 Lander, General Frederick William, 4153
 Land League, Irish, 3795
 Landon, Letitia E., 3957
 Lahd Peace, 2126
 Landseer, Sir Edwin, 3966
 Landshut, battle of, 3128
 Lane, Henry S., 4210
 Lane, Joseph, 4114
 Lanfranc, 2239, 2244
 Langara, Admiral, 3390
 Langdale, Sir Marmaduke, 2845
 Langensalza, battle of, 3647
 Langeron, Count, 3456, 3488
 Langland, William, 2053, 2310, 2311
 Langres, surrender of, 3492
 Langside, battle of, 2685, 2712
 Langson, battle of, 3845, 4636
 Languages, Aryan, 26, 27
 Assyrian, 219, 220
 beginnings of modern, 1525
 Egyptian, 56, 78
 Greek, 1349
 Hamitic, 26
 Latin, 1349, 1526
 Oriental, 1350
 Semitic, 26
 Turanian, 26
 Langue d'oc, 2155

- Languedoc, Albigenes in, 2077, 2080, 2149, 2150
 Canal of, 2981
 Langue d'oui, 2155
 Lannes, Marshal, 3429, 3448, 3470
 La Quisina, battle of, 4294, 4295
 Lansdowne, Lord, 3806
 Laodicea, 1029
 Laon, battle of, 3493
 Laon, Cardinal Bishop of, 2179
 Lao-tse and Taoism, 692-694
 La Paz, revolt of, 4346
 Laplace, 3507, 3508
 La Plata, revolution in, 4346
 La Puerta, battle of, 4344
 Lapps, 26, 1524
 Lares, 739, 740, 1139
 Lareveillère-Lepaux, 3414
 La Rochefoucauld, 3026
 Larochejacquelin, 3387
 La Rochelle, siege and fall of, 2966
 La Romana, General, 3459, 3462, 3467
 La Rothière, battle of, 3492
 Lars Porsena, 1145, 1146
 La Salle, Robert, 3017, 3018
 Lassalle, Ferdinand, 3684, 3774
 Latimer, Bishop of Worcester, martyrdom of, 2673, 2674
 Latin Church, 1895, 1954
 Empire, 1605, 2070
 franchise, 1191
 language, 1349, 1526
 League, 1177
 literature, Augustin Age of, 1370
 literature, glory and decay of, 1370-1378
 literature, rise of, 1318-1325
 races, 27, 1520, 1526
 Latins, 1192
 Roman war with the, 1175-1177
 Latium, 1115, 1116
 Latona, 726, 729, 734, 735
 Latopolis, 38
 Latour, Count, murder of, 3609
 Laud, William, Archbishop of Canterbury, 2829, 2830, 2836
 Lauderdale, Earl of, 2879
 Laudon, 3125, 3126, 3128, 3133
 Lauenburg, 3477
 La Union, General, 3394
 Laurens, Henry, 3266, 3277
 Laurentum, 1116
 Lauth, 43
 Lautrec, General, 2571, 2580
 Lautulæ, battle of, 1179
 La Valette, 2721
 Lavater, 3425, 3512
 Lavaur, battle of, 2080
 La Vega, General, 4079, 4080
 La Vendée, insurrection of, 3387-3389
 Lavinium, 1116
 Lavoisier, 3393, 3506
 Law, John, 3085, 3086
 Lawrence, Captain James, 4020, 4021
 Lawrence, Lord, 3660
 Lawrence, Sir Henry, 3567, 3625
 Lawrence, St., Gulf of, 2529
 Lawrence, St., River, 2529
 Laws, Agrarian, 1151, 1239, 1243
 Alien and Sedition, 3999
 Egyptian, 71
 in the Eighteenth Century, 3143, 3144
 Licinian, 1171
 Lombard, 1540
 of Draco, 782
 of Justinian, 1582-1586
 of Lycurgus, 770-777
 of Manu, 628-635
 of Solon, 784-789
 of the Twelve Tables, 1156, 1157
 of the Medes and Persians, 561, 562
 of Taiko, 4639
 Prussian, 3152
 Publilian, 1153
 Ripuarian, 1548
 Russian, 2425
 Salic, 1548
 Scotch, 2378
 Terentilian, 1154
 the Code, Pandects and Institutes of Justinian, 1582-1586
 Laws in England, Elizabeth's religious, 2678, 2679
 first written code of, 1563
 of the Anglo-Saxons, 1570
 of Alfred the Great, 2004, 2005
 of Canute the Great, 2017
 of Edward I., 2279
 of Henry I., 2247
 of Henry II., 2259
 of William III., 2219-2221
 Laws in France, Code Napoleon, 3433
 of Charlemagne, 1896

- of St. Louis, 2152
- of the French Revolution, 3364, 3365
- Riparian, 1548
- Salic, 1548
- under Louis XV., 3358
- Laws in Germany, 2106, 2114
 - of Conrad II., 1932, 1933
- Lawton, General Henry Wade, 4294, 4311, 4312
- Layard, 23, 3953
- Laybach, 3471, 3532
- Laynez, Peter, 2630
- Lazi, 1578, 1697, 1699, 1700, 1702, 1703
- Lasic War, 1578, 1699, 1702
- Lasica, 1697, 1699-1701, 1703, 1704
- Lazzaroni, 3422, 3424
- Leagues, of Augsburg, 2994
 - of Cambray, 2127, 2331, 2385, 2556, 2557, 2566
 - of Frankfort, 3104
 - of Herrnhausen, 3089
 - of Nymphenburg, 3100
 - of Schmalkald, 2907, 2909, 2910, 2914, 2915, 2919
 - of the Rhine, 2105
 - of the Six Nations, 2948
 - of Vienna, 3089
 - Old League of High Germany, 2113
 - the Æthian, 1021-1023, 1224, 1229
 - the Ætolian, 1022, 1224, 1225
 - the Catholic, of France, 2762-2771
 - the Catholic, of Germany, 2773-2785
 - the Hanseatic, 2054, 2105
 - the Rhenish, 2978
 - the Suabian, 2115
- Leah, 355
- Leake, Sir John, Admiral, 3011
- Lear, 4007
- Learning, in Assyria, 206
 - in Babylonia, 277-281
 - in Chaldea, 139, 140
 - in China, 681-684
 - in Egypt, 78
 - in England under Elizabeth, 2699-2700
 - in England under Henry III., 2278
 - in England under Henry VIII., 2657-2660
 - in Germany, 2601, 2600
 - in Greece, 252, 253
 - in India, 690
 - in Italy, 2600
 - in Japan, 4630
 - in Phœnicia, 335
 - in Rome, 1363, 1364
 - in Russia under Peter the Great, 2072
 - in Scotland under James I., 2378
 - in Sweden, 2419
 - in Tartary, 2457
 - medieval, 2052
 - modern, 2800, 3025, 3949
 - of the Aztecs, 2536
 - revival of, in Europe, 2521, 2522
 - seats of, in Europe, 2052
 - under Charlemagne, 1899, 1900
 - under Malek Shah, 2042, 2043
- Leavensworth, Fort, 4080
- Lebanon, mountains of, 325, 340
- Lebas, 3397
- Lebon, 3399
- Lebrun, the painter, 3028
- Lebrun, the statesman, 3429
- Lech, battle of the, 2786
- Lechaum, 292
- Lechfeld, battle of, 1925
- Leclerc, 3434
- Lecompte, General, 3681
- Leczinski, Marie, 3069
- Leczinski, Stanislas, 3068, 3070, 3089, 3091-3096
- Leda, 740
- Ledochowski, Archbishop, 3703
- Ledru-Rollin, 3589, 3590, 3592
- Ledyard, Colonel, 3271
- Lee, Admiral, 4196
- Lee, Colonel Henry, 3262, 3270, 3984, 4015, 4016
- Lee, Fitzhugh, 4169, 4280-4282, 4285, 4287, 4304
- Lee, General Charles, 3135, 3235, 3247, 3934, 3258
- Lee, General Robert Edward, 4112, 4123, 4138, 4155-4160, 4169-4173, 4193-4198, 4216-4220
- Lee, General William Henry Fitzhugh, 4169
- Lee, Richard Henry, 3238, 4251
- Lee, Richard Henry, another, 4251
- Lefevre, Marshal, 3452, 3472
- Legendre, the mathematician, 3508
- Legendre, the revolutionist, 3371, 3394
- Leger, St., Colonel, 3251
- Legion of Honor, founding of the, 3433
- Legitimists, 3574-3576, 3609, 3676, 3689, 3706, 3714

- Legnano, battle of, 2088, 2387
 Lehwald, 3131
 Leicester, Robert Dudley, Earl of, 2667, 2668, 2689, 2698
 Leicester, Simon de Montfort, Earl of, 2276, 2277
 Leipsic, battles of, in 1631, 2785
 in 1641, 2794
 in 1813, 3489, 3490
 Leipsic Interim, 2619
 Leis, Yakoob, ben, 2029-2031
 Leisler, Jacob, 2941
 Leitch, Major, 3243
 Lelex, 714
 Le Mans, battle of, 3675
 Lemberg, Treaty of, 3045
 Lemoine d'Iberville, 3018
 Lemnos, 711, 813
 Lennox, Earl of, 2713
 Lens, battle of, 2796
 Lentulus, 1189
 Leo I., Emperor, 1574
 Leo II., Emperor, 1574
 Leo III., the Isaurian, 1595
 edicts of, 1595
 reforms of, 1595
 Leo IV., Emperor, 1596
 Leo V., the Armenian, 1597
 Leo VI., the Philosopher, 1599
 Leo the Great, Pope, 1492, 1493
 Leo IV., Pope, 1907
 Leo VIII., Pope, 1927
 Leo IX., Pope, 1935-1938, 1995
 reforms of, 1935
 Leo X., Pope, 2388, 2561, 2562
 character of, 2561, 2562
 Martin Luther and, 2592-2600
 policy of, 2562
 sale of indulgences by, 2596-2599
 Leo XIII., Pope, 3705, 3778, 3897
 Leoben, Peace of, 3412, 3413
 Leonardo da Vinci, 2552, 2804
 Leonidas, 515, 817-821
 Leontades, 907-909
 Leontius, 1594
 Leontius, another, 1733
 Leopold, Duke of Austria, 2113
 Leopold, Duke of Austria, another, 2115, 2116
 Leopold I. of Belgium, 3546
 Leopold II. of Belgium, 3546
 Leopold I. of Germany, 2978, 2984, 2985, 2986, 2989, 2994, 2996, 3000-3005, 3007, 3009, 3034, 3035, 3037, 3042, 3054, 3058-3060, 3062-3064
 Leopold II. of Germany, 3156, 3368-3370
 Leopold of Hohenzollern-Sigmaringen, 3662-3664
 Leopold of Styria, Bishop of Passau, 2772
 Leosthenes, 1005
 Leovigild, 1530
 Lepanto, battle of, 2722, 2723
 Lepidus, 1303, 1305, 1311, 1312
 Lepidus, another, 1044
 Lepsius, 43
 Leptis, 433
 Lerdo de Tejada, Sebastian, 4360-4363
 Lermontoff, 3966
 Lernean hydra, 716
 Le Sage, 3510
 Lesbos, 711, 732, 756
 Leschjanin, General, 3728, 3752
 Leadigulères, Marshal, 2963
 Lesseps, Charles de, 3850, 3851
 Lesseps, Ferdinand de, 3722, 3850, 3851, 3949
 Lessing, 3154, 3511, 3512
 Leto, 734, 735
 Letourneur, 3404
 Letters, Phœnician invention of, 334
 Lettres de Cachet, 3358
 Leucippus, 937
 Leuctra, battle of, 913, 914
 Leuthen, battle of, 3122
 Leverrier, 3955
 Levi, French general, 3131
 Levi, 355
 Levites, 380
 Lewes, battle of, 2276, 2277
 Lewinsville, 4136
 Lewis, Sir George Cornwall, 1124
 Lewistown, 4021
 Lexington, Kentucky, settlement of, 3232
 Lexington, Massachusetts, skirmish at, 2226
 Lexington, Missouri, capture of, 4140
 Leyden, siege and relief of, 2733, 2734
 university of, founding of the, 2734
 Leyden, John of, 2611
 Leyds, Dr. Willem Johannes, 4505
 Leyva, Antonio de, 2575
 Liberation, War of German, 3484-3485
 Liao-tung peninsula, 4670, 4695
 Liao-Yang, battle of, 3985, 4718, 4719
 Liberia, Republic of, 3953

- Liberty, Statue of, in New York harbor, dedication of, 4262, 4263
- Libnah, 1093
- Library of Alexandria, founding of, 1039, 1040
 destroyed by Cæsar, 1295, 1296
 destroyed by the Saracens, 1830
- Libyan desert, 38
- Lichnowsky, 3596
- Licinian Laws, 1171
- Licinius, 1460, 1461, 1473
- Licinius Stolo, Caius, 1171
- Lictors, 1143
- Liebig, 3955
- Liebknecht, 3778
- Liège, capture of, 3006
- Liegelords and Liegemen, 3047
- Liegnitz, battle of, 2456
 another battle of, 3128
- Ligny, battle of, 3498
- Liguria, 1114
- Ligurian Republic, 3415, 3421
- Li Hung Chang, 4647-4652, 4657, 4659, 4661, 4666, 4668, 4669, 4672, 4685, 4686, 4693
- Lille, siege and capture of, 3011
- Lilly, William, 2658
- Lilybæum, battle of, 1189
 seizure of, 1201
- Lima, founding of, 2543
 capture of, 4367, 4368
- Limburg, 3006
- Limerick, Pacification of, 2913, 2914
 siege and fall of, 2913
- Lincoln, Abraham, 4111, 4114-4221
 Address of, at Gettysburg, 4185
 Amnesty Proclamation of, 4184
 assassination of, 4220, 4221
 at the Peace Conference at Fortress Monroe, 4211, 4212
 Cabinet of, 4125
 conference of, with Grant, Sherman and Meade, 4215
 debate of, with Senator Douglas, 4111
 first call for troops, 4127, 4128
 first election of, 4114
 first inauguration of, 4124, 4125
 freeing of slaves in the District of Columbia, 4164
 in Richmond, 4219
 Proclamations of Emancipation, 4164-4166
 renomination and reelection, 4207-4209
 second inauguration and inaugural address, 4212, 4213
 speech to a workingmen's committee, 4186
- Lincoln, General Benjamin, 3247, 3251, 3261-3263, 3271
- Lincoln, Robert Todd, 4259
- Lind, Jenny, 3968
- Lindisfarne, 1560
- Linevitch, General, 3886, 4728
- Lingard, John, 3958
- Linneus, 3506
- L' Insurgente, 3998
- Lippe-Schaumburg, Count of, 3135
- Lisbon, great earthquake at, 3145
 French occupation of, 3462
 Peace of, 3024
- Lisle, Lady Alice, 2893
- Lissa, battle of, 3647
- Literature, Arabic, 1876-1879
 Assyrian, 206
 Chinese, 680-684
 Danish, 3966
 English, Augustan Age of, 3509
 English, Elizabethan Age of, 2802, 2803
 English, mediæval, 2052, 2053
 English modern, 2802, 2803, 3027, 3308, 3510, 3956-3960
 Florentine, 2053
 French, Augustan Age of, 3026, 3027
 French, mediæval, 2052, 2053
 French, modern, 2803, 3026, 3027, 3139, 3143, 3510, 3511, 3964, 3965
 French, philosophical, 3139-3143
 German, mediæval, 2053
 German, modern, 2804, 3511, 3512, 3963, 3966
 Greek, 793-798, 927-935, 1097-1106
 Italian, mediæval, 2052, 2053
 Italian, modern, 2804, 3512
 Japanese, 4642
 Hebrew, 413
 Hindoo, 617, 621-665
 Latin, 1318-1325, 1370-1378
 Medo-Persian, 604-611
 Norwegian, 3966
 Phœnician, 335
 Portuguese, 2803
 Russian, 3512, 3966
 Spanish, 2803, 3027
 Swedish, 3508, 3966

- influence of French, 3139-3156
- in the Sixteenth Century, 2802-2804
- in the Seventeenth Century, 3026, 3027
- in the Eighteenth Century, 3508-3512
- in the Nineteenth Century, 3954-3966
- in the United States during the Revolution, 3289, 3290, 3310
- in the United States since the Revolution, 3960-3964
- Lithography, invention of, 3508
- Lithuania, 2435, 3039, 3034, 3042
- Li-tse-ching, 4626, 4627
- Little Big Horn River, massacre of, 4252
- Little Crow, Indian chief, 4162
- Little Rock, capture of, 4177
- Liverpool, Earl of, 3479, 3558
- Livia, 1390, 1391
- Livingston, Robert R., 2239
- Livingstone, Archibald, 2378
- Livingstone, Dr. David, 3983
- Livilla, 1393-1395
- Livius Andronicus, 1319
- Livius Drusus, 1244
- Livius, Marcus, 1918
- Livonia, 3066, 3072
- Livy, or Titus Livius, 1373, 1374, 1386
- Li-wang, 677
- Llewellyn, 2279
- Lobengula, 3811, 3812
- Lobos, Admiral, 3696
- Lochlevin, 2685, 2712
- Locke, John, 2888, 3025
- Locri, 1189
- Locrians, 714
- Locri-Epizephyrii, 763, 764
- Locris, Eastern and Western, 707, 708, 752
- Lodbrog, Ragnar, 1908, 1964
- Lodi, battle of, 3408
- Logan, General John Alexander, 4202, 4232, 4236
- Logan, John A., Jr., 4311
- Loire, Army of the, 3671, 3675
- Lollards, 2310
 - persecution of the, 2320, 2321, 2323, 2324
- Lollius Urbicus, 1423
- Loma, General, 3698
- Lombard, Peter, 2052
- Lombard League, 2087, 2088, 2387
- Lombards, or Longobards, 1352, 1522, 1538-1544
- Lombardy, 1539-1544, 1888, 1889, 2085-2088, 2387
 - conquest of, by the Lombards, 1539
 - conquest of, by Charlemagne, 1888, 1889
 - feudal system in, 1539, 1540
 - iron crown of, 1540
 - laws of, 1540
 - medieval, 1539-1540, 1888, 1889, 2085-2088, 2387
 - modern, 2556, 2564, 2565, 2571, 2575, 3408-3412, 3606-3608, 3629, 3630, 3646-3648
- Lombardy, Austrian, 3095
- Lomonosoff, 3512
- London, ancient ruins under, 1556
 - burned by the Britons, 1403
 - great fire of, 2877, 2878
 - great plague of, 2877
 - international exhibitions in, 3571, 3949
 - Queen Victoria's Jubilees in, 3805, 3816, 3817
- Londonderry, Marquis of, 3558
- Londonderry, siege of, 2911
- Longchamp, William, Bishop of Ely, 2362
- Longfellow, Henry Wadsworth, 3962
- Longimanus, Artaxerxes, 517-519, 839, 842
- Longinus, Exarch of Ravenna, 1539
- Longinus, Lucius Cassius, 1251
- Longinus, the critic, 1105
- Long Island, battle of, 3243
- Longobards, 1352, 1522, 1538-1544
- Long Parliament, 2835, 2836, 2838-2859, 2867
 - dissolution of, 2858-2859
- Longstreet, General James, 4129, 4157, 4171-4173, 4180, 4181, 4194, 4195, 4238, 4249
- Longueville, Duke de and Duchess de, 2974
- Loo, Treaty of, 3155
- Loo Choo Islands, 695
- Lookout Mountain, battle of, 4180, 4181
- Lope de Vega, 3027
- Lopez, Cuban general, 4099, 4396
- Lopez, Francisco, 4365
- Lopez, Mexican general, 3641
- Lorenzo the Magnificent, 2386
- Lorraine, 1905
 - acquired by France, 3096
 - restored to Germany, 3677
- Lorraine, Charles, Duke of, 2131
- Lorraine, Charles, Duke of, another, 3061, 3062
- Lorraine, Claude, 3028

- Lorraine, Francis Stephen, Duke of, 3006, 3105
- Lossing, Benson John, 3063
- Lot, 129, 347-349, 351
- Lothaire I., 1905-1907
- Lothaire II., 1907-1909
- Lothaire, Duke of Saxony, 1984
- Loubet, Emile, President, 3861
- Loudon, Lord, 3117
- Louis Adolphe Thiers, 3577-3579, 3610, 3677, 3681-3682, 3688, 3706-3708, 3711, 3964
- Louisa of Savoy, 2571, 2573, 2574
- Louisa, Maria, 3476
- Louisa, Queen of Prussia, 3440, 3452, 3453
- Louisburg, siege and capture of, 3111
second siege and capture of, 3129
- Louis Bonaparte, 3443, 3449, 3477
- Louis, Count of Anjou, 2174, 2389
- Louis, Count of Flanders, 2178
- Louis d'Outremer, 1918, 1919
- Louis, Duke of Bavaria, 2108-2111
- Louis, Duke of Orleans, 2224
- Louise de Vaudemont, 2761
- Louisiana, settlement of, by the French, 3018
cession of, to Spain, 3137, 4005
restoration of, to France, 4005
purchase of, by the United States, 4005
admission of, into the Union, 4013
secession of, 4119
readmission of, 4237
insurrections in, 4245, 4249, 4250
- Louis Kossuth, 3601-3605, 4100
- Louis le Debonnaire, 1902-1904
- Louis le Fainéant, 1920
- Louis Napoleon Bonaparte, 3578, 3579, 3592, 3593, 3609-3612
insurrections of, 3578, 3579
as President, 3592, 3593, 3609-3612
Coup d'Etat of, 3610, 3611
as Emperor Napoleon III., 3612
marriage of, 3612
reign of, 3612
wars of, 3617-3623, 3627-3631, 3635, 3636, 3640, 3641, 3653-3669, 3677
surrender of, 3668
deposition of, 3669
death of, 3677
- Louis I. of Bavaria, 3585
- Louis VI. of France, 2136-2139
dominions of, 2138, 2139
reforms of, 2136, 2137
wars of, 2137, 2138
- Louis VII. of France, 2139-2142
in the Second Crusade, 2140
war with Henry II. of England, 214, 2142
- Louis VIII. of France, 2148, 2149
- Louis IX. of France, or St. Louis, 2149-2153
character of, 2151-2153
court of, 2152
government of, 2151, 2152
laws of, 2152
leads the Sixth and Seventh Crusades, 2151, 2153
- Louis X. of France, 2165
- Louis XI. of France, 2212-2226
amusements of, 2225
at Plessis les Tours, 2224-2226
character of, 2213, 2226
imprisonment at Peronne, 2217
tyranny of, 2213, 2214
wars with Duke Charles the Bold of Burgundy, 2214-2220
- Louis XII. of France, 2230-2232
character of, 2230
his marriages, 2230, 2231
wars of, in Italy, 2231, 2252-2253
- Louis XIII. of France, 2258-2271
and Cardinal Richelieu, 2260-2270
- Louis XIV. of France, 2271-3017
accession of, 2271
assumption of government by, 2272, 2280
Augustan Age of French literature, 2261
characteristics of, 2272, 2280
marriage of, with Madame de Maintenon, 2292, 2293
persecution of the Huguenots by, 2294-2294
political policy of, 2281
revocation of the Edict of Nantes, 2283
royal power under, 2280
war of, with Spain, 2282, 2283
war of, with Holland and her allies, 2283-2290
war of, with the Grand Alliance, 2294-3001
War of the Spanish Succession, 3001-3017
death of, 3017
- Louis XV. of France, 3017, 3022-3156
accession of, 3022, 3063
character of, 3057
corrupt court of, 3357

- war of the Quadruple Alliance with Spain, 3084
 War of the Polish Succession, 3095, 3096
 War of the Austrian Succession, 3099-3119
 Seven Years' War, 3119-3138
 philosophical literature of France, 3139-3143
 reforms of French Ministers, 3146
 Louis XVI. of France, 3358-3378
 accession of, 3358, 3359
 alliance with the United States, 3359
 and Marie Antoinette, 3359
 character of, 3359
 court of, 3359
 financial troubles of, 3359-3361
 meeting of the States-General, 3361, 3362
 storming of the Bastille, 3363
 the French Revolution begun, 3363
 the king's attempted escape, 3367
 the fall of the monarchy, 3373
 the First French Republic, 3374-3438
 the king's execution, 3377, 3378
 Louis XVII. of France, 3379
 Louis XVIII. of France, 3494-3497, 3500, 3523-3525
 Louis II. of Hungary, 2439, 2582
 Louis of Nassau, 2731, 2733
 Louis Philippe, 3544, 3574-3582, 3588, 3589
 accession of, 3544
 attempted assassination of, 3575-3577
 conquest of Algeria, 3581, 3582
 his Ministers, 3577-3580
 parties under, 3574-3576
 peaceful foreign policy, 3580
 reform banquets forbidden, 3588
 Revolution of 1848, and overthrow of, 3588, 3589
 Second French Republic, 3589-3593, 3609-3612
 Louis the Child, 1913, 1914
 Louis the German, 1905, 1906
 Louis the Great of Hungary and Poland, 2435, 2437, 2438
 Louis the Stammerer, 1911
 Louvain, or Löwen, battle of, 1913
 University of, 3155
 L'Ouverture, Toussaint, 3434, 4340
 Louvois, 2981, 2996, 2998
 Louvre, 2905, 2981
 Lovat, Lord, 3108
 Lovats, battle of, 3744
 Lovejoy, Owen, 4096
 Lovejoy, Rev. Elijah Parish, murder of, 4060, 4096
 Lovelace, Francis, 2941
 Lovelace, Lord, 2903
 Lovell, Mansfield, General, 4150
 Lowe, Robert, 3658, 3659
 Lowe, Sir Hudson, 3509
 Lowell, James Russell, 3962
 Löwen, or Louvain, battle of, 1913
 Löwenhaupt, General, 3069
 Lowositz, battle of, 3190
 Loyola, Ignatius, 2629, 2630
 education of, 2629
 pilgrimage of, to Jerusalem, 2629
 Society of Jesuits founded by, 2630
 Lübeck, 2106
 battle of, 3449
 Peace of, 2781
 Lucan, 1375, 1376, 1405
 Lucania, 1118
 Lucian, 1104
 Lucius Æmilius Paulus, 1027, 1228
 Lucius Ælius Verus, 1425, 1426
 Lucius Annæus Florus, 1378
 Lucius Fulvius, 1180
 Lucius Junius Brutus, 1135, 1143-1146
 Lucius Tarquinius Collatinus, 1135, 1143
 Lucius Tarquinius Priscus, 1131, 1132
 Lucius Tarquinius Superbus, 1135, 1136
 Luckner, 3370
 Lucknow, 3625, 3626
 siege and relief of, 3625, 3626
 second siege and relief of, 3626
 Lucretia, 1135, 1143
 Lucretius, 1322, 1323
 Lucullus, 1265, 1266, 1272
 Ludolph of Suabia
 Lugdunensis, 1335, 1336
 Lugdunum, 1335, 1336
 battle of, 1436
 Luidprand, 1541, 1542
 laws of, 1542
 Luines, Sieur de, 2961
 Luitbert, 1541
 Lumley, Lord, 2902
 Lumphanan, battle of, 2362
 Luna, capture of, 1914
 Lund, Peace of, 3037
 Lunden, battle of, 3037

- Lunéville, Peace of, 3344, 3431
 Lundy's Lane, battle of, 4021
 Lupercalia, festival of, 1137, 1301
 Lusignan, Hugh de, Count de la Marche, 2145
 Lusignan, Guy of, 2066
 Lusitania, 1235, 1236, 1334
 Lusitanians, 1235
 Luther, Dr. Martin, 2592-2619
 birth, childhood and education of, 2592
 experience of, as a monk, 2592, 2593
 marriage of, 2605
 opposition of, to indulgences, 2598
 Ninety-five theses, 2598
 excommunication of, by Pope Leo X., 2599
 at the Diet of Worms, 2599, 2600
 at the Wartberg castle, 2600, 2601
 translation of Bible into German, 2602
 hymn of the Reformation, 2602
 opposition to the rebel peasants, 2604
 death of, 2613
 Lutheranism and Calvinism, 2625-2628
 definite organization of, 2625-2628
 Hussites converted to, 2626
 in the Scandinavian kingdoms, 2633-2635
 spread of Lutheranism, 2625, 2626
 John Calvin at Geneva, 2627
 spread of Calvinism, 2627, 2628
 Lutzen, battle of, in 1632, 2787, 2788
 battle of, in 1813, 3486
 Luxembourg, Marshal, 2980, 2998-3000
 Luxembourg palace, 3395, 3396, 3687, 3688
 Luxemburg, Duke of, 2985, 2987, 2988
 Luxemburg, Grand Duke of, 3662, 3909
 Luxemburg, siege of, 2989
 Luxemburg dynasty, 2107-2121
 Luxor, 38
 palace of, 52
 temple at, 53
 Luzara, battle of, 3006
 Lycidas, 830
 Lycomedes, 918, 919
 Lycophron, 1100
 Lycopolis, 38
 Lycurgus, the orator, 1010
 Lycurgus, the Spartan lawgiver, 768-777
 Lydenburg, siege and capture of, 4558, 4559
 Lydia, Kingdom of, 421-430
 alliance with Media and Babylonia, 425
 conquest of, by Cyrus the Great, 427-430
 dynasties of, 422
 invasion of, by Cyaxares, 424, 425
 invasion of, by the Cimmerians, 423, 424
 kings of, table of the, 430
 territorial extent of, 421
 traditions of, 422
 under Gyges, 422, 423
 Lydians, characteristics and pursuits of, 424, 425
 religion of, 422
 wealth and culture of, 422
 Lydus, 422
 Lyell, Sir Charles, 3955
 Lynde, Major Isaac, 4141
 Lynn, Massachusetts, 2934
 Lyon, General Nathaniel, 4138, 4139
 Lyons, Lord, 4144, 4165, 4186
 Lyons, revolt, siege and fall of, 3389, 3390
 Lysander, 882-888, 899
 Lysias, 936
 Lysimachia, 1030
 Lysimachus, 1004, 1008, 1009, 1019, 1021, 1029, 1030
 Lysippus, 1017
 Lyttleton, General Hon. Sir Neville Gerald, 4504
 Lytton, Lord, 3661

 MAC ALPINE, Kenneth, 2361
 Macartney, Lord, 4631
 Macaulay, Thomas Babington, 3959
 Macbeth, 2022, 2362
 Maccabæus, Jonathan, 1078
 Maccabæus, Judas, 1078
 Maccabæus, Simon, 1078, 1079
 Maccabees, 1077-1081
 the Jews under the, 1074-1081
 Machiavelli, 2387, 2804
 Macclesfield, Lord, 2909
 MacDonald, General Hector A., 4504
 Macdonald, Marshal, 3423, 3424, 3430, 3471, 3485, 3488, 3497
 Macdonald, Miss Flora, 3108
 Macdonalds, clan of the, 2909, 2910
 Macdonough, Commodore, 4022
 Macedon, 937-1028
 and Greece, 1019-1028
 description of, 957, 958
 early history of, 958, 959
 founding of, 958
 invasion of, by the Gauls, 1020
 kings of, table of the, 1028

- later history of, 959-1028
 people of, 958
 Roman conquest of, 1027, 1228, 1239
 under Philip the Great, 957-982
 under Alexander the Great, 982-1004
 under Alexander's successors, 1004, 1106
Macedonia, 957
Macedonian Empire, 957-1010
 dissolution of, 1004-1010
Maceo, General Antonio, 4412, 4413, 4416,
 4420-4424
 his death, 4424
Machias, 4022
Mack, General, 3422, 3441
Mackay, Charles, 3958
Mackenzie, William Lyon, 3563
Mackinaw, Fort, capture of, 4016
Mackintosh, Sir James, 3436
Mackintosh, the lawyer, 3554
MacLauchlan, Margaret, 2891
MacMahon, Marshal and President, 3630,
 3663-3668, 3683, 3686, 3688, 3706-3717
MacMorrough, Dermont, 2257, 2258
MacNaghton, 3564
Macomb, General, 4022
Macon, Georgia, 4217
Macon, Fort, capture of, 4152
Macoudi, 1879
Macquarie, Governor, 3568
Macrinus, 1439
Maclewice, battle of, 3180
Madalinski, 3178
Madeleine, Church of the, 3588
Madeira Islands, discovery of, 2522
Madagascar, French wars in, 3844, 3856, 3857
 conquest of, 3857
Madison, James, 3302, 3310, 3999, 4000, 4011-
 4034, 4043
Madras, 3113, 3114, 3132, 3273
Madrid, international exposition at, 3898
 Peace of, 2577
 Treaty of, 3112
Madyes, 468
Mælius, Spurius, 1161
Mestricht, capture of, by the French, 3111
 siege and fall of, 2737
Mafeking, siege of, 3927, 4477
 relief of, 3829, 3830, 4540-4543
Magaw, Colonel, 3244
Magdeburg, fall of, 2784, 2785
 siege of, 2620
Magellan, Ferdinand, 2529
Magenta, battle of, 3630
Magersfontein, battle of, 3828, 4484, 4485
Magi, 595, 596
 Saracen persecution of the, 1828
Magism, 595
Zoroastrianism and, 581-611
Magna Charta, 2267-2273
Magna Græcia, 761
Magnano, battle of, 3423
Magnentius, 1481, 1482
Magnesia, 710
Magnesia, city of, 843
 battle of, 1033, 1225
Magnus, Albertus, 2052
Magnus Barefoot, 2414
Magnus Barnlock, 2417
Magnus of Saxony, 1935, 1936
Magnus Smek, 2417
Magnus the Bastard, 2414
Magnus the Good, 2410
Mago, family of, 438, 439, 441
Magoffin, Beriah, 4141
Magruder, General John B., 4154
Magyars, or Hungarians, 1524, 1525
 migration of the, 1524, 1525, 1913
 ravages of, in Germany, 1913, 1914, 1922,
 1925
 ravages of, in Italy, 1914
 settlement and conversion of, 2436
Mahabharatta, 641, 645
Maha-Deva, 641
Maharajpoor, battle of, 3565
Mahmoud Ghiljee, 2490, 2491
 invasion of Persia by, 2490, 2491
 massacres by, 2491
 madness and death of, 2491
Mahmoud of Ghisni, 2032-2036
 arts and sciences under, 2036
 conquest of Persia and India by, 2032-
 2035
 court of, 2036
 dominions of, 2035
 literature under, 2036
 religious war in India under, 2032-2035
 zeal and avarice of, 2032-2035
Mahmoud II. of Turkey, 3456, 3539, 3573
Mahomet, or Mohammed, 1765-1790
 first appearance of, 1765, 1766
Mahrattas of India, 2510-2515, 3318, 3351,
 3436, 3565

- Maine, Duchess of, 3084
 Duke of, 3017
 Maine, French province of, 2141, 2145, 2365
 Maine, State of, admission of, 4036
 Maine, battleship, destruction of, 4283, 3899, 4428
 Maintenon, Madame de, 2090-2092
 Maitland, Captain, 3500
 Majuba Hill, battle of, 3797, 3824, 4440, 4450
 Makaroff, Admiral, 4704-4708
 Malacca, 2523
 Malaga, 3692, 3693
 Malakoff, 3621, 3622
 Malcolm I., 2361
 Malcolm II., 2361
 Malcolm III., Canmore, 2022, 2362, 2363
 Malcolm IV., 2365
 Malden, Fort, 4019
 Malek Kamel, 2070
 Malek Sala, 1875
 Malek Shah, 2041-2043
 character of, 2041-2043
 glory and power of, 2041-2043
 learning under, 2043
 travels of, 2043
 Malesherbes, 3377, 3393
 Malls, 707
 Malmesburg, Lord, 3411
 Malmö, Truce of, 3596
 Malo Yaraslevetz, battle of, 3483
 Malplaquet, battle of, 2923, 3012
 Malta, capture of, by Bonaparte, 3418
 presented to Knights of St. John, 2581
 siege of, by Solymán the Magnificent, 2721
 Malthus, Thomas Robert, 3956
 Malvern Hill, battle of, 4157
 Mamelon, 3621
 Mamelukes in Egypt, 1875, 1876
 Circassian, 1876
 Turkish, 1876
 massacre of the, by Selim I., 2487
 massacre of the, by Mehemet Ali, 3479
 Mamertines, 444, 1195
 Man, prehistoric, 22
 Manassas Junction, 4134, 4135
 Manasseh, 196, 197, 407, 408
 Manchester, Earl of, 2843
 Manchester, cotton trade in, 3325
 riot at, 3555
 Manchester ship canal, 3813
 Mancini, Maria, 2978
 Mandeville, 3805
 Mandeville, Sir John, 2053, 2300
 Maneptha, 54, 55
 Manes, the, 739, 740
 Manetho, 23, 24, 41
 calculations of, 41, 42
 Egyptian dynasties of, 62-65
 history by, 41
 story of the Israelites by, 55
 Manfred, 2098, 2099
 Manhattan Island, first settlements on, 2840
 Man-headed bulls and lions of Assyria, 312
 Mannheim, 2779, 2995, 3406, 3529
 Mani, or Manes, 1619, 1620
 Manila, burning of, 4301
 battles at, 4301
 capture of, by the British, 3229
 capture of, by the Americans, 4261
 Manila Bay, battle of, 4269
 Manini, 3608
 Manitoba, 3657
 Manisen, or El Hadhr, 1614
 Mankind, dispersion of, 25
 races and types of, 25-28
 religions of, 34, 35
 Manlius, 1175
 Manlius, another, 1197, 1198
 Manlius, a third, 1972
 Manlius, Marcus, 1165-1167, 1169, 1170
 Manlius, Titus, 1175, 1176
 Manners and customs, Greek, 248-254
 medieval, 2055
 Roman, 1358-1365
 Mann, Horace, 3964
 Manning, Cardinal Edward, 3810
 Mans, battle of, 3398
 Mansfeld, Agnes von, 2725, 2772
 Mansfeld, Count Ernest von, 2775, 2776, 2779, 2780
 Mansfield, General Joseph King Fenno, 4159
 Mansfield, Lord, 3276
 Manchuria, 674, 4625, 4627, 4646-4671, 4694-4732
 Manchus, 4626, 4627
 Manchu Tartar dynasty, 4627-4637
 Mantes, 2243
 Manteuffel, General, 3645, 3647, 3675, 3676, 4646-4671
 Mantinea, battle of, 924
 Spartan conquest of, 905

- Mantua, siege and fall of, 3409-3411
 Manu, Laws of, 628
 extracts from, 628-634
 of the Brahmana, 628
 of the Vedas, 628
 Manuel the Great, 2402
 Manuel I., 1603, 1604
 Manuel II., 2444, 2445
 Manufactures, Assyrian, 241, 242
 Babylonian, 276, 277
 Egyptian, 83
 English, 2054, 2292, 2801, 3030, 3325,
 3552-3555, 3950
 French, 3039, 3330, 3653
 Florentine, 2386
 in the United States, 4034, 4048
 Phœnician, 333, 334
 Saracen, 1878
 Mansoni, Alessandro, 3586
 Maoris, 3570
 Mar, Earl of, 3061, 3062
 Maranga, battle of, 1646
 Marat, 3366, 3368, 3372, 3374, 3381, 3382
 assassination of, 3382
 Marathon, 708, 709
 battle of, 814, 811, 812
 plain of, 704
 Marble, Parian, 22
 Marburg, University of, 2002
 Marca Hispanica, 1893
 Marcell, 4387
 Marcell, Etienne, 2172
 Marcellus, Marcus Claudius, 1216
 Marcellus II., Pope, 2622, 2623
 Marcellus Ulpianus, 1430
 Marchfeld, battle of, 2102, 2103
 Marco Bossaris, 3537, 3538, 4045
 Marcomanni, 1426
 Marco Polo, 2074, 2384, 4640
 Marcus Antonius, 1256
 Marcus Aquilius, 1254
 Marcus Aurelius Antoninus, 1425-1427
 Marcus Aurelius Claudius, 1440, 1450
 Marcus Aurelius Probus, 1453-1454
 Marcus Aurelius Scaurus, 1261
 Marcus Cassius, 1301, 1304-1306
 Marcus Claudius Marcellus, 1216
 Marcus Claudius Tacitus, 1452, 1453
 Marcus Cocceius Nerva, 1417, 1418
 Marcus Crassus, 1271, 1276, 1279, 1282, 1284-
 1287
 Marcus Curius, 1191
 Marcus Curtius, 1170, 1171
 Marcus Junius, 1214
 Marcus Junius Brutus, 1301, 1302, 1304-1309
 Marcus Livius, 1218
 Marcus Livius Drusus, 1257
 Marcus Manlius, 1165-1167, 1169, 1170
 Marcus Papirius, 1166
 Marcus Portius Cato, 1230, 1260, 1321, 1322
 Marcus Tullius Cicero, 1271, 1272, 1274-1276,
 1295, 1302, 1304-1306, 1323, 1324
 Marcus Ulpianus Trajanus, 1418
 Marcus Valerius, 1215
 Mardonius, 514, 515, 810, 816, 827-828
 Marengo, battle of, 3429, 3430
 Mareschah, battle of, 57
 Margall Pi y, 3652, 3692, 3694
 Margaret, Duchess of Parma, 2728
 Margaret, Maid of Norway, 2280, 2369
 Margaret of Anjou, 2210, 2331, 2332, 2334-
 2341
 Margaret of Valois, 2756
 Margaret, Queen of Denmark, Norway and
 Sweden, 2413, 2415, 2417, 2418
 Margaret, regent of the Netherlands, 2556,
 2562
 Margarita, 3001
 Margravates, or Margravates, of Germany,
 1898
 Marguerite, 2283
 Maria Christina, 3551, 3552, 3636
 Maria da Gloria, Donna, 3534
 Maria Louisa, 3476, 3493, 3587
 Mariamne, 1082
 Maria I., 3145, 3145, 3531
 Maria II., 3534, 3552, 3636
 Maria Theresa, of Austria, 3099-3138, 3140,
 3164
 accession of, 3099
 before the Hungarian Diet, 3101
 in the War of the Austrian Succession,
 3099-3112
 in the Seven Years' War, 3113-3138
 in the Partition of Poland, 3164
 later years of her reign, 3149
 her death, 3140
 Maria Theresa, first wife of Louis XIV.,
 2278, 2279, 2282, 2291
 Marie, 3591
 Marie Antoinette, 3359, 3378
 trial and execution of, 3365

- Mariette, 23, 43, 3964
 Marignano, battle of, 2387, 2564, 2565
 Marinus, 1446
 Marion, General Francis, 3263, 3264
 Maritime discoveries, 2402, 2522-2530
 Marius, 1249-1256, 1259, 1261-1265
 Marius, the younger, 1267
 Marjorian, 1510
 Mark Antony, 1288, 1303-1316
 Markoff, General, 3456
 Marks, or Marches, of Germany, 1896
 Mark, St., Cathedral of and Place of, 2383
 Marlborough, Duchess of, 2927
 Marlborough, John Churchill, Duke of, 2893,
 2901, 2916, 2922-2930, 3005-3014
 as a great general, 2922-2928, 3005-3014
 as a politician and statesman, 2923-2929,
 3006-3014
 character of, 2928, 2929, 3014
 disgrace of, 2928, 3014
 victories of, 2922, 2923, 3006-3014
 Marmarica, 431
 Marmont, Marshal, 3440, 3467, 3468, 3489,
 3494, 3497, 3543
 Marmora, Sea of, 759, 1474
 Maroto, General, 3551
 Marozia, 1914, 1915
 Marquette, Jacques, 2529
 Marquez, 4357
 Marrast, Armand, 3576, 3593
 Marriage customs, Arabic, 1789, 1790
 Babylonian, 263, 286
 German, 1353, 1354
 Hebrew, 415
 Median, 482, 483
 Persian, 558
 Scandinavian, 1963
 Mars, 724, 1126, 1127, 1137, 1300
 Marsaglia, battle of, 2999
 Marseilles, founding of, 438
 revolt of, 3389
 Marseillaise hymn, 3371, 3372, 3511
 Marsh, George Perkins, 3964
 Marshall, John, 3960, 3997, 3998, 4006
 Marsians, 1258, 1259
 Marsiles, 1890, 1891
 Marsin, Marshal, 3006-3008
 Marston Moor, battle of, 2843
 Marte, José, 4411, 4412
 Martel, Charles, 1855, 1856, 1842, 1843, 1885
 Martha's Vineyard, discovery of, 2933
 Martial, 1376
 Martin, 1720
 Martin V., Pope, 2119, 2122
 Martin, Henri, 3965
 Martineau, Harriet, 2890, 3960
 Martineau, James, 2890, 3960
 Martinesti, battle of, 3172
 Martinique, capture of, 3136
 naval battle of, 3278, 3279
 Martinitz, 2775
 Martin Luther, 2592-2613
 Martin, Luther, of Maryland, 3302, 3304,
 3307, 3310
 Martin, San, 4347
 Martinsburg, capture of, 4170
 Martins, Silveira, 4387
 Martinuzzi, 2621
 Martos, 3690
 Martyn, 2858
 Martyropolis, capture of, 1722
 Martyrs, Era of, 1458, 1459
 Maruts, 647
 Maruzas, 1722
 Mary de Medici, 2954, 2957-2963, 2967, 2968
 Mary of Burgundy, 2125, 2222, 2223, 2568
 Mary I. of England, 2667-2677
 accession of, 2668
 character and education of, 2668, 2674,
 2677
 cruelties of, 2668-2677
 marriage of, with Philip II. of Spain,
 2671
 religious zeal and persecutions of, 2668-
 2675
 death of, 2676
 Mary II. of England, 2900-2902, 2905-2918
 Mary of Guise, 2706-2709
 Mary Stuart, Queen of Scots, 2655, 2662,
 2663, 2682-2692, 2705-2715
 childhood and education of, in France,
 2663, 2682, 2683, 2606-2609
 return to Scotland and accession of,
 2683, 2709
 struggle of, with the Scotch Reformers,
 2684, 2685, 2709-2713
 marriage with Darnley and murder of
 Rizzio, 2684, 2711
 marriage with Bothwell, 2685, 2712
 overthrow of, and flight to England, 2684,
 2712
 captivity in England and plots against

- Elizabeth, 2685-2690, 2712-2715
 execution of, 2690, 2715
 character of, 2690, 2691
- Maryland, colony of, 2941, 2942
 founding and settlement of, 2941, 2942
 Toleration Act, 2942
 persecution of Catholics in, 2942
 civil war in, 2942
 Church of England in, 2942
- Masaniello, 3020, 3021
- Mascezel, 1504
- Masham, Mrs., 2927
- Mashonaland, 3809, 3811
- Mashonas, 3811
- Masistius, 831
- Mason, Captain John, 2939
- Mason, Charles, 2947
- Mason, John, 2937
- Mason, James Murray, 4007, 4113, 4115, 4143, 4144
- Mason and Dixon's Line, 2946, 2947
- Massachusetts, colony of, 2933-2937
 settlement of, 2933, 2934
 religious dissensions in, 2934
 persecutions in, 2934
 King Philip's War in, 2935
 Salem Witchcraft in, 2936
 King William's War in, 2936
 Queen Anne's War in, 2936, 2937
 King George's War in, 2937
- Massacre of Scio, 3537
- Massacre of St. Bartholomew, 2756-2760
- Massacre of the Janizaries, 3539
- Massacres of the Mamelukes in Egypt, by
 Selim I., 2487
 by Mehemet Ali, 3479
- Massacre of the Sicilian Vespers, 2156, 2389
- Massacres of the Jews, at Kischeneff, in
 Russia, 3883, 3884
 at London and York, England, 2261, 2262
- Massacre of Boston, 3215, 3216
- Massacre of the River Raisin, 4018
- Massacres of Wyoming, First, 2947
 Second, 3259
- Massacre of Fort Pillow, 4180
- Massacre of Fort Griswold, 3271
- Massacre of Cherry Valley, 3259
- Massacre of Vassy, 2752
- Massacres of Alexandria, Egypt, in 1882,
 3724, 3725
- Massacre by the Crusaders at Jerusalem, 2062
- Massacres in China by the Boxers, 4676, 4677, 4680, 4681
- Massacre at Southampton, Virginia, 4054
- Massacre of Paoli, 3249
- Massacre of the 10th of August, 1792, in
 Paris, 3372, 3373
- Massacres of September, 1792, in Paris, 3373, 3374
- Massagetae, 493
- Massasoit, 2933, 2935
- Masena, Marshal, 3425, 3429, 3467, 3468
- Massey, Gerald, 3958
- Massilia, founding of, 438
 capture of, 1291
- Massillon, 2981, 3027
- Massinger, Phillip, 3027
- Massinissa, 445, 1219, 1221, 1247
- Maso, Bartolomé, 4413
- Massoud, 2036, 2037
- Massowah, 3893, 3895
- Mastai Ferretti, 3586
- Matabele, 3811, 3812, 3816
- Matamoras, capture of, 4081
- Matanzas, bombardment of, 4275
- Matchin, capture of, 3739, 3740
- Maternus, 1431
- Matgen, 327
- Matthews, General, 3265
- Matilda, Countess, 1942, 1947, 1950, 1953, 2086, 2088, 2102
- Matilda, Queen of England, 2249-2251
- Mattathias, 1077
- Mathias, Emperor 2773-2776
- Mathias Corvinus, 2438
- Matthys, Jan, 2611
- Maumee City, 3985
- Maurice, Emperor, 1591, 1592, 1710, 1720, 1721
- Maurice of Orange, 2740, 2741, 2743, 2745, 2746
- Maurice of Saxony, 2612, 2614-2617, 2619-2622
- Mauritania, 432, 1250, 1347
- Maury, General Daniel Herndon, 4216
- Mavrocordato, Alexander, 3537
- Mawhood, Colonel, 3245
- Maxen, battle of, 3126
- Maxentius, 1459, 1460, 1468
- Maximian, 1455-1457, 1459, 1460
- Maximin, 1459-1461
- Maximilian, Crown Prince of Bavaria, 3593

- Maximilian, Duke of Bavaria, 2773, 2776, 2777, 2779, 2780, 2782, 2786, 2787, 2789
 Maximilian, Emperor of Mexico, 3641, 4369, 4360
 Maximilian I. of Germany, 2125-2129, 2546-2566
 as Archduke of Austria, 2125, 2547, 2548
 accession of, 2125
 characteristics of his reign, 2128, 2129
 marriage of, 2125
 reforms of, 2126-2128
 reign of, 2125-2129
 wars of, 2126, 2127, 2547-2566
 death of, 2128
 Maximilian II. of Germany, 2720, 2723, 2771
 religious toleration of, 2723
 Maximilian Joseph, 3105, 3153
 Maximus, 1499-1501
 Maximus, Petronius, 1510
 Maximus, Quintus Fabius, 1211-1213
 Max Müller, 621, 3960
 Maxwell, General Sir John Grenfell, 4504
 May, Captain, 4079, 4080
 May, Samuel Joseph, 4098
 Mayence, Diet at, 2094
 capture of, in 1631, 2785
 capture and recapture of, in 1792-93, 3375, 3385
 Mayenne, Duke of, 2766, 2768, 2769, 2771
 Mayflower, 2814, 2933
 Maynard, Horace, 4142
 Mayo, Lord, 3660
 Mayo, Mayor, 4219
 Maypu, battle of, 4347
 Maysville, battle of, 4151
 Mazares, 488
 Mazarin, Cardinal, 2794, 2862, 2970-2979
 Anne of Austria and, 2970-2979
 Prince of Conde and, 2971-2978
 Civil Wars of the Fronde, 2973-2976
 Thirty Years' War and war with Spain, 2794-2798, 2970-2978
 Peace of the Pyrenees, 2978
 death of, 2979
 Mazdak, 1680-1682
 religious teachings of, 1681
 Mazeppa, 3069
 Mazinni, Joseph, 3550, 3551, 3607, 3608
 McAllister, Fort, capture of, 4204
 McCall, General George Archibald, 4156, 4157
 McCarthy, Justin, 3807, 3969
 McClellan, General George Brinton, 413, 4138, 4143, 4154-4160, 4208, 4209
 McClelland, General John Alexander, 4174
 McClure, General George, 4020
 McCook, General Alexander McDowell, 413, 4161
 McCosh, James, 3964
 McCullough, General Ben, 4139, 4151
 McDowell, Colonel, 3964
 McDowell, General Irwin, 4135, 4154-4156
 McIntosh, General James McQueen, 4151
 McKinley, William, Tariff Act by, 4266
 as President, 4277-4329
 assassination of, 4328, 4329
 McNeil, General, 4217
 McNeill, General, 4177
 McPherson, General James Birdseye, 413, 4194, 4202
 McRae, Fort, bombardment of, 4142
 Meade, General George Gordon, 4170, 4171, 4173, 4179, 4193, 4194, 4218
 Meander river, 418
 Mebodes, 1691, 1692
 Mecca, 1763, 1764
 the Kaaba, or temple of, 1763
 Mechanicsville, battle of, 4156
 Mechlin, pillage and massacre of, 2722
 Treaty of, 2562
 Mecklenburg, Duke of, 2781
 Mecklenburg, Grand Duke of, 3673
 Mecklenburg-Schwerin, Duke of, 3671
 Medelin, battle of, 3466
 Medes, 478-483
 architecture of the, 483
 arms and equipments of the, 481
 civilization of the, 478-483
 court ceremonial of the, 482
 description of the, 478-480
 habits and dress of the, 480, 481
 marriage customs of the, 482, 483
 relation of the, to the Persians, 478, 479
 religion of the, 581-611
 zodiac of the, 589
 Media, Aryan migration to, 463-466
 civilization of, 478-483
 Empire of, 463-478
 extension and development of, 466, 467
 geography and description of, 448-453
 invasions and wars of, 467-478
 national power of, 466, 467
 origin of, 463

- political history of, 463-478
table of kings of, 466
- Media and Andromeda, 464
- Media Magna and Media Atropatene, 450
- Medieval history, 1519-2487
- Medieval learning and literature, 2052, 2053
- Medici, Alexander de, 2387
- Medici, Cardinal John de, 2561
- Medici, Catharine de, 2747, 2749-2760, 2763, 2766
- Medici, Cosmo de, 2386
- Medici, Julian de, 2561
- Medici, Lorenzo de, the Magnificent, 2386
- Medici, Lorenzo de, II., 2562
- Medici, Mary de, 2954, 2957-2963, 2967, 2968
- Medici, Piero de, 2548
- Medici, family of, expelled from Florence, 2387
- Medina Sidonia, Duke of, 2695, 2696
- Medinet-Abu, palace of, 55, 56
- Meditations of Marcus Aurelius, 1497
- Medon, 781
- Medo-Persian civilization, 535-581
customs and warfare, 538-548
early annals, 535
king and court, 548-557
laws, 561, 562
the people, 535-538, 557-561
- Medo-Persian Empire, 483-535
civilization of, 535-581
early history of, 483-485
conquests of, 485-512
decline and disorganization of, 517-535
extent and productions of, 447-463
political history of, 483-535
Retreat of the Ten Thousand, 524, 525
satrapies of, 505
under the early Achæmenian kings, 483-485
under the first Cambyses, 485
under Cyrus the Great, 485-495
under the second Cambyses, 495-499
under the Pseudo Smerdis, 499, 501
under Darius Hystaspes, 501-515
under Xerxes the Great, 515-517
under Artaxerxes Longimanus, 517-519
under Xerxes II., 519
under Sogdianus, 519
under Darius Nothus, 519-522
under Artaxerxes Mnemon, 522-529
- under Artaxerxes Ochus, 530-532
under Arses, 532
under Darius Codomannus, 532-534
overthrow of the Empire by Alexander the Great, 532-534
table of the Medo-Persian kings, 536
- Medusa, 729, 741
- Meerut, 3624
- Megabyzus, 512, 516, 519
- Megacles, 783
- Megalopolis, 917
- Megara, 709
revolt of, 852
- Megaris, 709
- Megiddo, battle of, 51
another battle of, 408
- Mehemet Ali, 3479, 3538, 3564, 3572-3574, 3579
- Mehemet Ali Pasha, 3728, 3737, 3740, 3741, 3743-3745, 3772
- Mehemet Pasha, 3736
- Meigs, Colonel, 3247
- Meigs, Fort, sieges of, 4018
- Meissen, battle of, 3126
- Meistersingers, 2804
- Meistersong, 2804
- Mejia, 4360
- Melampus, 4009
- Melanchthon, Philip, 2601, 2605-2607, 2619, 2626, 2600
- Melas, General, 3429
- Melasso, battle of, 3631, 3632
- Melbourne, city of, 3569
- Melbourne, Lord, 3561, 3563, 3564
- Melcampo, Señor, 3690
- Melchital, Arnold, 2112
- Melegnano, battle of, 3630
- Melikoff, General Loris, 3735, 3747, 3749, 3784, 3785, 3788
- Melkarth, temple of, 338, 339
- Mello, Admiral Custodio de, 4379-4385, 4387, 4388
- Mello, Dr. Ferreira de, 4387
- Melpomene, 738
- Memnon, colossal statues of, 51, 52
- Memnon of Rhodes, 985, 988
- Memorabilia, 934
- Memphis, Egypt, 36
capture of, by Esar-haddon, 196
capture of, by the Saracens, 1929

- siege and fall of, 57, 58
 Memphis, Tennessee, capture of, 4140
 yellow fever at, 4256
 Menander, 1099
 Mendelssohn, 3967
 Menebould, St., 3367
 Menelaüs, 718
 Menelek, 3895
 Menenius Agrippa, 1149
 Menes, 43, 44
 Menilmontant, battle of, 3688
 Mennonites, 3612
 Menno Simon, 3612
 Menschikoff, General and Prince, 3070, 3073,
 3093, 3094
 Menschikoff, Prince, 3617, 3619
 Mentor, of Rhodes, 985, 986
 Méran, Agnes de, 2144
 Mercedes, 3897
 Mercer, Fort, 3280
 Mercer, General Hugh, 3245
 Mercia, Angle kingdom of, 1559, 1560
 Mercury, 724
 Merida, capture of, by the Saracens, 1840
 Merivale, Rev. Charles, 3959
 Mermerots, 1700, 1701
 Mermnadæ, 422
 Merodach, 252, 292, 299, 312, 319, 320
 Merodach-Baladan, 178, 183, 186, 244-246
 Merodach-belatzu-ikhi, 244
 Merodach-iddin-akhi, 243
 Merodach-shapik-ziri, 243
 Merodach-sum-adin, 244
 Meroe, island of, 108
 Meroe, pyramids of, 110
 Meroveus, or Merowig, 1544, 1545
 Merovingian dynasty, 1544-1556
 Merseberg, battle of, 1922, 1923
 Mers-el-Kebir, 3697
 Merv, battle of, 1666
 Mesembria, capture of, 3540
 Mesmer, 3506
 Mesna, 1877
 Mesopotamia, 113, 114, 120, 122, 1698
 Meshra, or Hatasu, or Amenset, 51
 Messalina, 1400, 1401
 Messana, 764, 778, 1120
 Messapia, 1118
 Messéné, 710, 919
 Messenia, 710, 919, 990
 Messenians, 777, 778, 779, 844, 917, 1096
 Messenian Wars, First, 777, 778
 Second, 778, 779
 Third, 844
 Mesilla Valley, 4101
 Messina, 1120
 Metabele wars, 3811, 3816
 Metacomet, or King Philip, 2935
 Metastasio, 3512
 Metaurus, battle of the, 1218
 Metellus, 1199
 Metellus, Quintus, 1249, 1250, 1254, 1256
 Metemneh, battle of, 3893
 Metempsychosis, doctrine of, 635-637, 651
 Methodism, 3512-3518
 Methodists, 3514-3517
 Methuen, Lord, 3927, 3928, 4482-4485, 4502,
 4608, 4611
 Metternich, Prince, 3496, 3521, 3528, 3532,
 3536, 3583, 3600
 Metz, seizure of, by Henry II. of France,
 2620
 siege of, by Charles V., 2621
 siege and capture of, by the Germans,
 3672
 restoration of, to Germany, 3677
 Metaler, George, 2603
 Meung, battle of, 3673
 Mexicans, 2534-2541, 4342, 4343, 4350-4358
 Mexico, Aztecs of, 2534-2540
 conquest of, by Cortez, 2528, 2529, 2539-
 2540
 discovery of, by Cordova, 2528, 2538
 fate of the natives of, 2540, 2541
 history and traditions of, 2534-2541
 independence of, achieved, 4343
 powerful tribes of, 2534, 2535
 revolution and war of independence in,
 2542, 2543
 First Empire and Republic of, 4350-4357
 Iturbide's Empire, 4350
 First republic established, 4350
 revolutions and civil wars in, 4351-4357
 Texan War of Independence, 4353
 war with the United States, 4355-4357
 subsequent revolutions and civil wars in,
 4357
 Second Empire and Republic of, 4358-
 4363
 war with France and Maximilian's Em-
 pire, 4358-4360
 revolutions and civil wars in, 4360-4363

- recent history of, 4363
 Mexico's prosperity under President Diaz, 4363
 table of Emperors and Presidents of, 4889
Meyerbeer, 3967
Mi-ammon-Nut, 59
Michael I., the Armorian, 1597
Michael II., 1597
Michael III., the Drunkard, 1596
Michael IV., 1601
Michael V., 1601
Michael VI., 1601
Michael VII. (Palæologus), 2070, 2442
Michael Abaffi, 3059
Michael Angelo, 2387, 2804
Michael, archangel, 1792
Michael de la Pole, 2311, 2312
Michael, Grand Duke, 3735
Michael Palæologus, 2070, 2442
Michael Romanoff, 3052
Michel, Louise, 3844
Michelet, 3965
Michigan, Territory of, 4016, 4017
 State of, admission of, 4058
Michmash, battle of, 392
Micipsa, 1247
Micislas, 2433
Micislas II., 2433
Midas, 421, 735
Middle Ages, 1519
 chroniclers of the, 24, 25, 2053
 duration of the, 1519
 education during the, 2052, 2053
 the two European powers of the, 2083
Middlebrook, 3258
Middlesex, 3193, 3194
Midhat Pasha, 3732, 3733
Midianites, 385
 their overthrow by Gideon, 385, 386
Mierolawski, 3599
Miffin, Fort, 3250
Miffin, General Thomas, 3254, 3285
Mignet, 3526, 3965
Miguel, Dom, 3634
Mihr-Hasis, 1748
Milan, Duchy of, 2387
 liberation from Frederick Barbarossa, 2387
 conquest of, by the French, 2387
 conquest of, by the Spaniards, 2387
 Edict of, 1463
 later history of, 2387
Milan, King of Servia, 3727, 3752, 3907-3909, 3911
 abdication of, 3911
Milborne, 2941
Miles, Colonel Herbert Scott Gould, 4504
Miles, Colonel D. H., 4159
Miles, General Nelson Appleton, 4222, 4256, 4266, 4273, 4298
Miletus, 488, 533, 756, 757, 986
Mill, James, 3956
Mill, John Stuart, 3956
Milledgeville, capture of, 4204
Miller, Hugh, 3955
Miller, Joaquin, 3962
Miller, Tom, 2305
Millissimo, battle of, 3408
Milliken's Bend, battle of, 4175
Mill Spring, battle of, 4146
Milman, Henry Hart, 3959
Milroy, General Robert Huston, 4170
Miltiades, 514, 811-813
Milton, John, 2863, 2869, 3027
Milvian Bridge, battle of the, 1460
Mimms, Fort, massacre of, 4020
Mimmermus, 796
Mindarus, 881
Minden, battle of, 3125
Minerva, 724
Ming dynasty, 2461, 2462, 4625-4627
Ming-ti, 678
Minnesingers, 2053, 2107
Minnesota, admission of, 4110
 Sioux Indian war in, 4162, 4163
 Chippewa Indian war in, 4305
Minorca, island of, 2929, 3015
 capture of, by the French, 3119
 siege and capture of, by the Spaniards, 3278
Minos, the Cretan lawgiver, 715, 753, 770
Minos, the god, 744
Minto, Lord, 3478, 3557
Minuit, Peter, 2940
Minute-men, 3223, 3226
Mirabeau, Count de, 3361, 3362, 3366, 3367
Mir-aduris, 1728
Miramón, 4357, 4360
Miriam, 361
Mirsky, Prince, 3751
Misraim, 44

- Missionary Ridge, battle of, 4181
 Mississippi, Territory of, 4001
 State of, admission of, 4036
 secession of, 4119
 readmission of, 4238
 Mississippi river, discovery of the, by De Soto, 2529
 exploration of the, by Joliet, Marquette and La Salle, 3017, 3018
 Mississippi Company and Mississippi Scheme, 3018, 3065, 3086
 Missolonghi, siege and fall of, 3538
 Missouri, Territory of, 4013
 State of, admission of, 4039
 in the Civil War, 4138-4141, 4151, 4152, 4177, 4191
 slavery in, 4039
 Missouri Compromise, 4036-4039
 Mitchel, John, 3567, 3660, 4222, 4223
 Mitchel, Ormsby MacKnight, 3955, 4148
 Mitford, Mary Russell, 3958
 Mitford, William, 3958
 Mithra, emblems of, 599, 600
 worship of, 599, 603
 Mithridates I., 1055
 Mithridates II., 1055
 Mithridates III., 1055
 Mithridates IV., 1055
 Mithridates V., the Great, 1055-1061, 1960, 1961, 1265, 1272
 Mitra, 622
 Mitylene, 756, 883, 884, 1276
 revolt of, 862, 863
 Mnemon, Artaxerxes, 522-529
 Mnemosyne, 738
 Moab, 351, 372
 Moabites, 351, 384
 Moawiyah, 1833-1837
 Mobeds of Persia, 1676, 1682
 Mobile, founding of, 3018
 siege and fall of, 4216
 Mobile Bay, battle of, 4205
 Modder River, battle of, 3827, 4483
 Modena, revolt in, 3550
 Modena, Duke of, 3587
 Modern History, period of, 22, 1519
 Modoc Indians, 2533
 Modoc War, 4245, 4246
 Mœris, Lake, 49
 Mœsia, 1341
 Moez, or Muezzeddin, 1857, 1873
 Mogul Empire in India, 2404-2515
 Mohabet, 2503, 2504
 Mohacs, battle of, 2439, 2582
 Mohammed, or Mahomet, 1765-1788
 character of, 1766, 1767, 1769, 1788-1789
 conquest of Mecca by, 1785
 conquest of all Arabia by, 1785
 doctrines of, 1768, 1770, 1777
 extinction of the family of, 1766, 1776
 life of, 1766-1792
 final illness and death of, 1787, 1788
 Hegira, or flight from Mecca, 1779
 marriages of, 1767, 1771
 religious experiences of, 1766-1785
 revelations of, 1768
 trials of, 1766-1785
 triumph of, 1786
 visions of, 1768
 wars of, with idolatrous Arabs, 1781-1785
 Mohammed Achmet, or El Mahdi, 3725, 3801, 3801
 Mohammed Al Mehdi, 1856, 1857
 Mohammed, Dost, 3564
 Mohammed Mauzun, 2509
 Mohammed Shah, 2509, 2510
 Mohammed I., Sultan of Turkey, 2481, 2482
 Mohammed II., Sultan of Turkey, 2446, 2482-2485
 Mohammed III., Sultan of Turkey, 2726
 Mohammed IV., Sultan of Turkey, 3058, 3060, 3062
 Mohammedans, 1761-1879
 brilliant period of conquests by, 1811-1845
 computation of time by, 1879
 in India, 2032-2035
 religious beliefs of the, 1790-1811
 Hohawk Indians, 2533
 Mohegan Indians, 2532
 Molay, Jacques de, 2164
 Moldavia, 3162, 3174, 3455, 3456, 3458, 3524, 3518, 3640
 Molé, Count, 3578, 3589
 Molière, 2981, 3026
 Molino del Rey, battle of, 4084, 4356
 Moloch, 337
 Moltke, Count von, 3664, 3665, 3670
 Molucca Islands, 2524
 Molwitz, battle of, 3100
 Mommsen, Theodore, 3966
 Momoro, 3386, 3391

- Momus, 737
 Monachism, or Monasticism, history of, 2050, 2051
 Monaco, founding of, 767
 Monarchs, different titles of, 34
 Monasticism, or Monachism, history of, 2050, 2051
 Monastir, battle of, 3740
 Moncey, General and Marshal, 3400, 3429, 3464
 Monckton, Colonel, 3117, 3130, 3258
 Moncontour, battle of, 2755
 Mondovi, battle of, 3408
 Money, as a scientific lever, 3144
 first coinage of, 422
 Mongolia, 674
 Mongolian race, 25
 Mongols, or Moguls, 1525, 2427, 2449-2463
 description of, 2449, 2450
 Mongol-Persian Empire, 2462, 2463
 Monitor and Merrimac, battle between the, 4153
 Monk, General, 2855, 2867, 2868, 2877
 Monk's Corner, battle of, 3263
 Monks in the Middle Ages, 2050, 2051
 Monmouth, Duke of, 2885, 2888, 2891, 2892, 2894
 Monmouth Court House, battle of, 3258
 Monocacy, battle of, 4199
 Monongahela river, 3116
 Monotheism, 34, 35
 Monroe, Colonel, 3118
 Monroe, Fortress, 4121, 4154
 Monroe, James, 4034, 4036, 4040, 4045
 Monroe, John T., 4150
 Monroe Doctrine, origin of the, 3535, 3558, 4040-4045
 relating to Maximilian in Mexico, 4187, 4188, 4233
 relating to Venezuelan boundary dispute, 4274-4276
 Mons, surrender of, 2732
 Monsieur, Peace of, 2762
 Montague, Chancellor, 2917
 Montague, Edward, 2648
 Montague, Edward, another, 2883, 2917
 Montague, Lord, 2653
 Montaigne, Michel de, 2803
 Montana, admission of, 4265
 Montauban, siege and fall of, 2963, 2967
 Montcalm, Marquis de, 3118, 3130, 3131
 Mont Cenis, capture of, by the French, 3401
 Montebello, first battle of, 3429
 second battle of, 3629
 Montecuculi, General, 2796, 2985-2987, 3058, 3059
 Montenegro, 3617, 3727-3730, 3757, 3771, 3772
 Montenegrins, 3796, 3797
 Monte Nero, battle of, 3400
 Montenotte, battle of, 3408
 Monterey, battle of, 3493
 Monterey, siege and fall of, 4061
 Monte Rotondo, battle of, 3651
 Montespan, Marchioness de, 2990
 Montesquieu, General, 3375
 Montesquieu, the philosopher, 3139, 3140, 3359, 3511
 Montevideo, 4346
 Montez, Lola, 3585
 Montezuma II., 2538-2540
 his submission to Cortez, 2539
 his murder by his subjects, 2540
 Montfort, Simon de, the Albigenian Crusader, 2078-2082, 2146
 Montfort, Simon de, founder of the House of Commons, 2276, 2277
 Montgomery, Alabama, as the Confederate capital, 4120
 capture of, 4217
 Montgomery, Count of, 2748
 Montgomery, General Richard, 3232
 Montgomery, James, 3957
 Montgomery, Robert, 3957
 Months, Anglo-Saxon origin of names of the, 1563
 Monticello, 4047
 Montijo, Eugenie de, 3612
 Montjau, Madler de, 3717
 Mont l' Hery, battle of, 2214
 Montmartre, first battle of, 3493
 second battle of, 3686
 Montmorenci, battle of, 3130
 Montmorenci, Constable de, 2585, 2746, 2751, 2753
 Montmorenci, Henry, Duke de, 2969
 Montpellier, Peace of, 2963
 surrender of, 2963
 Montpensier, Duchess of, 2767
 Montpensier, Duchess of, another, 3652
 Montpensier, Duke of, 3581, 3652
 Montreal, English expedition against, 2986, 3115

- capture of, by Montgomery, 3232
- siege and fall of, 3131
- Montreal, France, 2080
- Montrose, Marquis of, 2846, 2854
- Montrouge, Fort, 3671, 3674, 3681, 3685
- Montserrat, capture of, 3468
- Montt, Admiral Jorge, 4373, 4374
- Monuments of antiquity, 22-24
- Moodkee, battle of, 3566
- Moore, Sir John, 3459, 3465, 3466
 - death of, 3465, 3466
- Moore, Thomas, 3957
- Moorish Kingdom of Granada, 1872, 2392-2396, 2403, 2404
- Moors, 1839, 1840
 - in Spain, 1840, 1859-1872, 2390-2396, 2403, 2404
 - persecution of the, in Spain, 2721
 - banishment of, from Spain, 3019
- Morad, 2504, 2506
- Morad de Galles, Admiral, 3411
- Moraea, Prudente de, 4385
- Morales, General, 4345
- Moravia, 2103, 2773, 2776, 2794, 3442
- Moravian Town, battle of, 4019
- Mordecai, 412
- More, Hannah, 3510, 3513
- More, Sir Thomas, 2643, 2646, 2647, 2650
 - execution of, 2646, 2647
 - writings of, 2647
- Morea, 705, 3063, 3065, 3083, 3536
- Moreau, General, 3394, 3407, 3409, 3410, 3423, 3424, 3430, 3437, 3468
- Morelos, 3535, 4342
- Moreville, Hugh de, 2256
- Morgan, General Daniel, 3269
- Morgan, Governor Edwin Dennison, 4209
- Morgan, Fort, capture of, 4205
- Morgan, General John Hunt, 4161, 4178, 4179, 4191
- Morgan, John Pierpont, 3269
- Morgan, John Tyler, 4321
- Morgarten, battle of, 2113
- Morillo, General, 4340
- Moriones, General, 3696
- Moriscoes, in Spain, persecution of, 2721
 - their banishment from Spain, 3019
- Morley, John, 3814
- Mormons, 4088, 4089
 - rebellion of the, 4109
- Mornington, Earl of, 3344
- Moro, Louis, 2387
- Morocco, 2404, 3636, 3637, 3668, 3679
- Morosini, General, 3063
- Morpheus, 734
- Morris, Gouverneur, 3302
- Morris, Lewis, 2943
- Morris, Robert, 3269, 3293, 3294, 3302
- Morris, William, 3958
- Morristown, 3268
- Morse, Professor Samuel Finley Breese, 465, 3954
- Mortier, Marshal, 3434, 3466, 3483, 3494, 357
- Mortimer, Edmund, Earl of March, 2314, 2318, 2322
- Mortimer, Roger, Earl of March, 2229-2232
- Morton, Earl of, 2712-2714
- Morton, Levi Parsons, 4264
- Morton, Oliver Perry, Governor, 4209
- Mosby, Colonel John Singleton, 4169, 421, 4222, 4238
- Moschus, 1100
- Moscow, founding of, 2426
 - burning of, in 1812, 3482
 - capture and burning of, in 1612, 36, 3052
 - massacre of, 3052
 - retreat of the French from, 3482-3484
- Mosellama, 1811
- Moses, 361-374
- Mosheim, 3511
- Moskwa, 3482, 3484
- Moslems, 1177
 - religious beliefs of, 1790-1811
 - warfare of, 1775-1786, 1811-1876
- Most, Johann, 3776
- Mosul, 117, 118
- Motazalites, 1804, 1833
- Mo-thien-ling, battle of, 4656
- Motley, John Lothrop, 3963
- Mott, Lucretia, 4055, 4098
- Moukden, 3886, 4561, 4722
 - battle of, 3886, 4726, 4727
- Moultrie, Colonel William, 3235
- Moultrie, Fort, battle of, 3235, 3236
- Mound-builders, 22
- Mount Ætna, 727, 1190
- Mount Algidus, 1155
- Mount Ararat, Noah's ark on, 24
- Mounteagle, Lord, 2813
- Mount Gilboa, battle of, 394
- Mount Helicon, 738, 794

- Mount Hor, 1090, 1091
 Mount Ida, 418
 Mount Idaho, massacre at, 4255
 Mount Moriah, Solomon's Temple on, 398
 Mount Nebo, death of Moses on, 371-374
 Mount Olympus, 706
 Grecian deities on, 724
 Mount Oeta, 704
 Mount Ossa, 704
 Mount Othrys, 704
 Mount Parnassus, 726, 738, 746
 Mount Pelicon, 704
 Mount Pindus, 703, 705, 738, 957
 Mount Seir, 1090, 1091
 Mount Seleucus, battle of, 1482
 Mount Sinai, 1090
 Decalogue delivered on, 366
 Mount Sipylus, 418
 Mount Tabor, battle of, 3426
 Mount Taygetus, 703, 768
 Mount Tmolus, 421, 422
 Mount Vernon, Washington's home at, 3285,
 3287, 3973, 4002
 Mount Vesuvius, 1176, 1414
 battle of, 1176
 eruption of, in A. D. 79, 1414
 Mount Zion, capture of, by David, 394, 395
 Mourad Bey, 3418
 Moyer, 2860
 Mozart, 3512
 Mucius Scaevola, 1146, 1147
 Mühlberg, battle of, 2616
 Mühlendorf, battle of, 2109
 Mukhtar Pasha, 3735, 3736, 3743, 3747-3750
 Mukhtar Pasha, another, 3457
 Muley Abderrahman, 3581
 Muley Ali, 2404
 Mulita, or Mylitta, or Beltis, 294, 295, 306,
 309, 319, 320
 Müller, Hans, 2603
 Müller, Max, 631, 3960
 Mulligan, Colonel James A., 4140
 Mumford, 4150
 Mummius, 1098, 1299
 Munda, battle of, 1299
 Mungarwar, battle of, 3626
 Mungo Park, 3953
 Munich, founding of, 2089
 Münnich, Field-Marshal, 3094, 3097
 Münster, Count von, 3847
 Münster, Bishop of, 2982
 Münster, Peace of, 2797
 Munzer, Thomas, 2603, 2604, 2610
 Murad, or Amruth V., 3727
 Murat, Marshal Joachim, 3417, 3428, 3440,
 3443, 3449, 3462, 3463, 3483, 3491, 3498,
 3501
 Murcia, 3693, 3694
 Murdoch, 3508
 Muret, battle of, 2081
 Murfreesboro', battle of, 4161, 4162
 Murillo, 3028
 Murray, Earl of, 2685, 2712, 2713
 Murray, General, 3131
 Mursa, battles of, 1482
 Murviedro, battle of, 3468
 Muscovy, 2420-2433
 Muses, 738, 739
 Music, Assyrian, 239
 Babylonian, 285, 286
 Lydian, 422
 Saracen, 1876
 Musical composers, Eighteenth Century, 3512
 Nineteenth Century, 3967, 3968
 Mussa Pasha, 3619
 Mussulmans, 1777, 1811
 Mustacon, 1721
 Mustapha, Kara, 3060-3062
 Mustapha I., 3056, 3057
 Mustapha II., 3064, 3065, 3063
 Mustapha III., 3161, 3166
 Mustapha IV., 3455, 3456
 Mustapha Pasha, 3455, 3456
 Mut, 95
 Mutaggil-Nebo, 145
 Mutsuhito, 4645
 Muza, 1532, 1840
 Mycalé, battle of, 515, 516, 833
 Mycenæ, ruins of, 721
 Mycia, 456
 Myla, naval battle of, 1197
 Myndus, 757
 Myronides, 848, 849
 Mysia, 419
 Mysore, 3280, 3316, 3333, 3344
 Mystics, 2053
 Mythology, Egyptian, 92-107
 Grecian, 723-749
 Scandinavian, 1966-1969
 NAARDEN, siege and fall of, 2986
 Nabathæans, 1094, 1095

- Nabonadius, 254-257
 Nabonassar, 171, 244, 245
 Era of, 21, 171, 244
 Nabopolassar, 215, 243, 245-248
 Nachod, battle of, 3647
 Nadab, 400
 Nadaschdi, Count, 3059
 Nadina, 244
 Nadir Shah, 2492, 2493, 2510, 2511
 at Delhi, 2492, 2510, 2511
 conquest of the Mogul Empire by, 2492, 2511
 Nadius, 245
 Nævius, 1319, 1330
 Nagasaki, 4641-4643
 Nagy Sarlo, battle of, 3604
 Nahid-Marduk, 194
 Nahor, 347
 Naiads, 738
 Naimes, Duke, 1890
 Namquan Pass, battle of, 4655
 Namur, capture of, 2998, 2999
 recapture of, 2918, 3000
 Nana, 300-302
 Nana Sahib, 3625
 Nancy, battle of, 2221
 evacuation of, 3666
 Nankin, 674
 Treaty of, 3565, 4632
 Nansen, Fridjof, 3953
 Nantes, 3387, 3389
 Edicts of, 2771
 revocation of the Edict of, 2993
 Nantucket island, discovery of, 2933
 Naphtali, tribe of, 381
 Napier, Lord, 3026
 Napier, Sir Charles, 3565, 3619
 Napier, General Robert, 3657
 Naples, 2388-2390, 2547-2563, 3020, 3021, 3095, 3096, 3421, 3422, 3424, 3443, 3463, 3491, 3501, 3521, 3531, 3532, 3606, 3607, 3631-3633, 4882
 and Sicily, 2388-2390
 Kingdom of, 2388-2390
 in the Middle Ages, 2388-2390
 under the Spaniards, 2390, 2547-2563, 3020, 3021
 under the Bourbon dynasty, 3015, 3095, 3096, 3421
 Parthenopean Republic in, 3422, 3424
 Bourbons restored in, 3422
 under Joseph Bonaparte, 3443
 under Joachim Murat, 3463
 under the restored Bourbons, 3491, 3501, 3521
 Revolution of 1820 in, 3531, 3532
 Revolution of 1848 in, 3606, 3607
 annexation of, to Italy, 3631-3633
 table of the kings of, 4882
 Napoleon Bonaparte, birth of, 3390
 at the military school of Brienne, 3390
 at the siege of Toulon, 3390
 on the Day of the Sections, 3403, 3404
 marriage of, with Josephine Beauharnais, 3404
 first Italian campaign of, 3407-3413
 Peace of Campo Formio negotiated by, 3415
 expedition of, to Egypt, 3417-3421
 invasion of Syria by, 3425, 3426
 return of, to France, 3426
 on the Eighteenth Brumaire, 3427, 3428
 becomes First Consul, 3428, 3429
 passage of the Alps by, 3429
 battle of Marengo won by, 3429, 3430
 Peace of Luneville and of Amiens made by, 3431, 3433
 Concordat, 3433
 Legion of Honor, 3433
 Code Napoleon, 3433
 Polytechnic School, 3433
 reforms by, 3433, 3434
 First Consul for life, 3433
 war renewed with Great Britain, 3434
 created Emperor of the French, 3438
 created King of Italy, 3439, 3440
 coalition of Great Britain, Austria, Russia and Sweden against, 3440
 battle of Austerlitz won by, 3442, 3443
 Peace of Pressburg with Austria, 3443
 dissolution of the old German Empire by, 3446
 establishment of the Confederation of the Rhine, 3445, 3446
 Joseph Bonaparte made King of Naples and Louis Bonaparte King of Holland, 3443, 3444
 French generals created marshals, 3488
 war with Prussia, 3447-3453
 battles of Jena and Auerstadt won by, 3448

battles of Eylau and Friedland won by, 3451, 3452
 Peace of Tilsit negotiated by, 3453
 meeting with Czar Alexander I. at Erfurt, 3455
 occupation of Portugal and Spain, 3461-3469
 dethronement of the House of Braganza in Portugal and the House of Bourbon in Spain, 3461-3463
 Joseph Bonaparte made King of Spain and Joachim Murat King of Naples, 3463
 The Peninsular War, 3461-3469
 war with Austria in 1809, 3469-3471
 battles of Eckmühl, Essling and Wagram won by Napoleon, 3470, 3471
 Peace of Schoenbrunn negotiated by, 3471
 Tyrolese revolt crushed, 3471, 3472
 divorce from Josephine, 3475, 3476
 marriage with Maria Louisa, 3476
 quarrel with Pope Pius VII., 3473, 3774
 Holland annexed to the French Empire, 3477
 birth of an heir to Napoleon's Empire, 3478, 3479
 rupture with Russia, 3479, 3480
 war against Russia, 3479-3484
 invasion of Russia, 3481
 battles of Smolensk and Borodino won, 3481, 3482
 occupation of Moscow, 3482
 burning of Moscow, 3482
 Napoleon's retreat from Moscow, 3482-3484
 destruction of the Grand Army, 3484
 War of German Liberation, 3484-3495
 battles of Lutzen and Bautzen, 3485, 3486
 Congress at Prague, 3486
 battle of Dresden, 3488
 defeats of French marshals, 3488, 3489
 great battle of Leipsic, 3489
 Napoleon's retreat from Germany, 3490, 3491
 allied invasion of France and capture of Paris, 3492-3494
 overthrow of Napoleon, 3494
 his first abdication, 3494
 his exile to Elba, 3494
 First Peace of Paris, 3494

First Bourbon Restoration, 3494, 3495
 impolitic conduct of the Bourbons, 3495, 3496
 Napoleon's return to France, 3496, 3497
 The Hundred Days, 3495-3505
 new coalition against Napoleon, 3498
 battles of Ligny, Quatre Bras and Waterloo, 3498-3500
 Napoleon's second abdication, 3500
 his surrender to the British, 3500
 his exile to St. Helena, 3500
 Second Bourbon Restoration, 3500
 Second Peace of Paris, 3501
 Napoleon's life at St. Helena, 3502
 his death there, 3502, 3503
 views of his great career, 3503-3505
 his remains brought to Paris, 3505, 3580
 Napoleon II., 3578
 Napoleon III. (Louis Napoleon), 3578, 3579, 3592, 3593, 3609-3612
 early career of, 3578, 3579
 election of, as President, 3592, 3593
 his administration, 3609-3612
 his coup d'état, 3610
 his elevation as Emperor of the French, 3612
 marriage of, with Eugenie de Montijo, 3612
 his reign, 3612, 3617-3623, 3627-3644, 3653, 3654, 3661-3669
 Crimean War, 3617-3623
 War of Italian Nationality, 3627-3631
 wars in Anam and China, 3635, 3636
 war with Mexico and Maximilian's Empire there, 3640, 3641, 4358-4360
 Caesarism and Liberalism, 3653, 3654
 rupture with Prussia, 3661-3664
 Franco-German War, 3661-3678
 battles of Weissenbourg, Woerth and Forbach, 3665
 battles of Courcelles, Vionville and Gravelotte, 3666, 3667
 siege of Metz, 3666, 3667
 battles of Beaumont and Sedan, 3667, 3668
 surrender of MacMahon's army, and of Napoleon III., 3668
 dethronement of Napoleon III. and establishment of the Third French Republic, 3668, 3669
 death of Napoleon III., 3677

- Napoleon, Prince Jerome, 3846
 Napoleon, Prince Louis, 3846
 Napoleon, Prince Louis, son of Napoleon III.,
 death of, 3793
 Napoleon, Prince Victor, 3846
 Napoli di Romania, surrender of, 3637
 Naram-Sin, 130
 Narbonensis, 1336
 Narbonne, Viscount of, 2078
 Narragansett Indians, 2532, 2935
 Narses, Eastern Roman general, 1537, 1538,
 1579, 1580
 Narses, King of Persia, 1623, 1624
 Narva, battle of, 3067
 Narva, siege of, 3067
 Narvaex, General, 3552
 Narvaex, Pamphilo de, 2529
 Naseby, battle of, 2844, 2845
 Nashville, battle of, 4203
 capture of, 4147
 Nasr-ed-Din, 2493, 2494
 Nassau, 3648
 Nassau, Adolf of, 2103, 2104
 Adolf of, another, 2731
 Louis of, 2731, 2732
 Natalie, 3911
 Natchez, founding of, 3018
 capture of, 4150
 Natchez Indians, 2533, 3018
 National Assembly, of France, in 1789, 3361-
 3367
 in 1848, 3590-3593, 3609-3612
 since 1871, 3676-3689, 3705, 3842
 of Germany, in 1848, 3595-3599
 of Prussia, in 1848, 3594-3597
 of Rome, in 1848, 3607, 3608
 National Convention in France, in 1792, 3374-
 3405
 Nations, civilized and uncivilized, 29
 origin of, 25, 26
 Naturalists, 3506, 3954
 Naucides, 1017
 Nauplia, 3541
 siege and fall of, 3641, 3642
 Navajo Indians, 2533, 4083
 Naval battles in Egypt under Rameses III.,
 55, 56
 Navarette, battle of, 2175, 2299, 2394
 Navarino, battle of, 3639
 capture of, 3536
 recapture of, 3638
 Navarre, Henry of, 2756, 2757, 2758, 2761-
 2767
 Navarre, Kingdom of, founding of, 2391
 conquered by Ferdinand the Catholic,
 2405, 2562
 conquered by the French, 2569, 2570
 vengeance of Ximenes in, 2566
 Navarro, Pedro, 2564
 Navas de Tolosa, battle of, 2392
 Naxos, 711, 757, 839
 Nazareth, Jesus of, 1083, 1463
 battle of, 3426
 Neander, 3965
 Neapolis, 761, 1116
 Nearchus, 1001
 Nebbi-Yunus mound, 117, 230, 231
 Nebo, Mt., death and burial of Moses on,
 371-374
 Nebo, the god, 303, 313, 320
 Nebogatoft, Admiral, 3886, 4729
 Nebo-sallim, 195
 Nebo-zirzi-sidi, 194
 Nebraska, Territory of, organization of, 4102,
 4103
 State of, admission of, 4235
 Nebuchadnezzar, 248-253
 as crown prince, 248
 accession of, 248
 character and habits of, 252, 253
 conquests by, 248-250
 deportations of populations by, 250
 edifices and public works of, 250, 251
 empire of, 250
 madness, recovery and death, 253
 restoration of temples by, 319
 Necessity, Fort, erection of, 3116
 surrender of, 3116
 Necherophes, 44
 Necker, 3359, 3360, 3363, 3366
 Nectanabis, 925
 Nectanebo, 530
 Neerwinden, first battle of, 2916, 2999
 second battle of, 3380
 Nefruari, 50
 Negapatam, capture of, 3280
 cession of, 3282
 Nehavend, battle of, 1751, 1827, 1899
 Nehemiah, 412
 Neith, or Net, 94
 Neko, 60, 61, 247, 248
 Nelson, General William, 4147, 4161

- Nelson, Admiral Lord Horatio**, 3343, 3418,
 3419, 3422, 3424, 3431, 3432, 3440-3442
 death of, 3441, 3442
Nemean Games, 749
Nemean Lion, 716
Nemesis, 738
 statue of, 738
Nemours, Duke of, 2919
Nemours, Edict of, 2764
Neph, 97
Nephthys, 97
Nepomuk, Vicar, 2115
Nepos, Cornelius, 1374
Nepos, Julius, 1511
Neptune, 724
Nerac, Peace of, 2763
Nereides, 733, 738
Nereus, 733
Nergal, 299, 300, 312, 320
Neriglissar, or Nergal-sar-usur, 283, 284
Nero, reign of, 1401-1408
 overthrow and death of, 1406-1408
Nero, Caius Claudius, 1216-1218
Nerva, Marcus Cocceius, 1417, 1418
Nesle, 2219
Nesle, Raoul de, 2170
Nessus, 716
Nestorius, 1492
Netherlands, 2220, 2568, 2727-2746
 arts, commerce and industries in the, 2727
 education in the, 2727
 government of the, 2727
 possessions of the, 2745, 2746
 prosperity of the, 2727
 reformation in the, 2728
 revolt of the, against Spain, 2729-2746
 Pacification of Ghent, 2735
 Union of Brussels, 2735
 Union of Utrecht, 2737
 Act of Abjuration in the, 2738
 independence of the, 2744
Netherlands, Austrian, 2745
 revolt in the, 3155, 3156
Netherlands, New, Dutch colony of, 2940,
 2941
Netherlands, Spanish, 2744
Neuburg, Count-Palatine of, 2773
Neufchateau, François de, 3145
Neuhäusel, capture of, by the Turks, 3068
Neuilly, battles of, 3682, 3683
Neustria, 1552, 1553, 1556
Nevada, admission of, 4207
Nevers, Duke de, 2757
Nevers, Duke de, another, 2967
Neveaich, battle of, 3751
Neville, Anne, 2342
Neville, Earl of Warwick, 2335-2340
Neville's Cross, battle of, 2295, 2296, 2375
Nevski, Alexander, 2428
New Amsterdam, founding of, 2940
 capture of, 2941
Newark, England, 2273, 2245
Newark, New Jersey, 2244
Newbern, capture of, 4152
Newbury, first battle of, 2842, 2843
 second battle of, 2843
Newcastle, England, coal discovered at, 2296
Newcastle, Duke of, 3119, 3123, 3186
Newcastle, Marquis of, 2841
New England, Captain John Smith in, 2933
 Puritan colonists in, 2933, 2934
 history of, 2933-2940
Newfoundland, discovery of, 2527, 2528
New France, 2529
Newgate, 2276
New Granada, 2546, 4343, 4345, 4364
 revolution in, 4343-4345
 independence of, 4345
New Hampshire, colony of, 2937
New Haven, founding of, 2939
New Jersey, colony of, 2943
 settlement of Quakers in, 2943
New London, burning of, 3271
Newmarket, battle of, 4196
New Netherlands, Dutch colony of, 2745, 2877,
 2940, 2941
New Orleans, founding of, 3018
 battle of, 4023, 4024
 capture of, 4149, 4150
 insurrections in, 4245, 4249
 lynching of Italians in, 3893, 4267
 World's Fair in, 4260, 4261
Newport, founding of, 2938
 old tower at, 1963, 1966, 2226
New Scotland, 2937
New South Wales, 3569
New Spain, 2540, 4341, 4342
Newton, Sir Isaac, 2868, 3025, 3026
New Ulm, massacre of, 4162
New York, colony of, 2941
 city of, 2941
 riot in the city of, 4183

- New Zealand, 3569, 3570
 Ney, Marshal, 3440, 3441, 3449, 3465-3467, 3484, 3489, 3497, 3498, 3499, 3501
 Nez Perce Indians, war with the, 4255, 4256
 Niagara, Fort, capture of, 3130
 Nibelungenlied, 1968, 2053
 Nicæa, in Asia Minor, 1343
 Nicæa, in Central Asia, 1001
 Nicæa, in Gaul, 767
 Nicaragua, 4348
 illbustering raids in, 4104, 4105
 Nicaragua Canal, 4327
 Nice, Asia Minor, Council of, 1460
 another Council of, 1586
 Nice, France, founding of, 767
 Nicephorus I., 1596, 1597
 Nicephorus II., 1599, 1600
 Nicephorus III., 1601, 1602
 Nicetas, 1735
 Nicetas, another, 1749
 Nicholas I. of Russia, 3538-3541, 3547-3549, 3604, 3605, 3617-3619
 and the Greek revolutionists, 3538
 and the war with Turkey, 3539-3541
 revolt of Poland against, 3547-3549
 aid to Austria against Hungary, 3604, 3605
 and the Crimean War, 3617-3619
 death of, 3621
 Nicholas II. of Russia, 3880-3883, 3887
 accession and coronation of, 3880, 3881
 and the revolutionists, 3887, 3888, 3932-3947
 and the war with Japan, 3884-3887, 4004-4732
 Nicholas, Grand Duke, 3734
 Nicholas II., Pope, 1937, 1939, 1940
 Nicholas V., Pope, 2123
 Nicholas, Prince of Montenegro, 3727
 Nicholas the Great, Pope, 1909
 Nicholsburg, armistice of, 3648
 Nicholson's Nek, battle of, 3827, 4477
 Nicias, 866, 868, 870, 872-878
 Peace of, 868
 Nicolai, 3154
 Nicolls, Colonel Richard, 2041
 Nicomedes, 848
 Nicomedia, 1478
 Nicopolis, battle of, 2480
 surrender of, 3740
 Nicostratus of Argos, 531
 Niebuhr, 1124, 3965
 Niederwald, statue of Germania on the, 370
 Niel, Marshal, 3630
 Nieuport, battle of, 2743
 Niger, Pescennius, 1430, 1435, 1436
 Nightingale, Florence, 3620, 3621
 Nihilism in Russia, 3779-3791
 Nihilists, 3779-3791
 activity of the, 3783, 3789, 3790
 arrests of, 3790, 3791
 exile of, to Siberia, 3785
 punishments of, 3787, 3788
 trial of, 3790
 Nile, battle of the, 3343, 3418-3420
 Nilsson, Christine, 3968
 Nimeguen, battle of, 3401
 Peace of, 2988
 Nimrod, 126
 Nimrud, 117, 118, 126, 228
 Nin, or Ninip, 228, 229, 311, 312
 Ninety-six, Fort, siege of, 3969, 3970
 Nineveh, greatness of, 118, 231-234
 great palace of Asshur-bani-pal at, 206, 207
 luxury and refinement of, 171
 palaces and temples of, 228, 229, 230
 ruins of, 118, 230, 231
 siege and fall of, 215, 246, 247, 470
 walls of, 231, 232
 battle near site of, 1593, 1741, 1742
 Ningpo, capture of, 3565, 4632
 Nin-pala, sira, 144, 145
 Niobe, 736
 Nipur, or Nibur, 188
 Nipur, or Niffer, or Calneh, 24, 116, 119
 Nirvana, 654, 664
 Nisibis, battle of, 3673
 sieges of, 1481, 1629, 1630-1632
 Nismes, 3523
 Nissa, battle of, 3063
 capture of, 3753
 Nithsdale, Lord, 3062
 Niu-Chwang, capture of, 4667
 battle of, 4363
 Nivelle, battle of the, 3469
 Nizam ul Mulk, 2041, 2042
 Noah, 24
 Noailles, Duke of, 2999
 Noailles, Marshal de, 3103, 3293
 Nobill, Robert de, 2632
 Nobiling, Dr., 3775, 3776

- Nobunaga, 4639, 4641
 Nodzu, General, 4667, 4710
 Nogaret, William de, 2162
 Nogi, General, 3884-3886, 4363, 4717, 4723-4725, 4726
 Noisseville, battle of, 3668
 Noissy, Fort, 3671, 3674
 Noman, 1827, 1828
 Nonconformists, or Dissenters, 2679-2681
 Noor Mahl, 2502-2504
 Nordlingen, first battle of, 2790, 2909
 second battle of, 2795, 2971
 Norfolk, Duke of, 2313, 2314
 Norfolk, another Duke of, 2660
 Norfolk, a third Duke of, 2686
 Norfolk, a fourth Duke of, 2903
 Norfolk, Virginia, burning of, 3233
 capture of, 4154
 Noricum, 1340
 Norman Conquest of England, 1994, 1995, 2022-2026
 Norman conquest of Southern Italy, 1995, 1996
 Normandy, Duchy of, 1989-1996
 Dukes of, table of the, 1996
 Normans, or Northmen, or Norsemen, 1896, 1904, 1908, 1912, 1913, 1914, 1915, 1955-1966
 their settlement in France, 1916, 1964
 North, Lord, 3192, 3216, 3217, 3224, 3225, 3257, 3272, 3280, 3281
 North America, discovered by Northmen, 1965, 1966, 2526
 discovered by Sebastian Cabot, 2527, 2528
 English colonies in, 2931-2952
 French colonies in, 3017-3019
 Northampton, battle of 2335
 Treaty of, 2291, 2374
 Northampton, Earl of, 2898
 Northamptonshire, 2844
 Northbrook, Lord, 3661
 North Carolina, colony of, 2947-2949
 Northcote, Sir Stafford, 3756-3758
 North Dakota, admission of, 4265
 Northern War, 3065-3072
 North Foreland, battle of, 2878
 Northmen, or Normans, or Norsemen, 1896, 1904, 1908, 1912, 1913, 1914, 1916, 1955-1966
 marauding expeditions of the, 1955-1966
 religion of the, 1966-1969
 raids of the, in Germany, France, England, Ireland, Spain, Italy and Greece, 1955-1966
 North Point, battle of, 4022
 Northumberland, Duke of, 2666, 2667, 2669
 Northumberland, Earl of, 2318, 2319
 Northumberland, Earl of, another, 2686
 Northumbria, Angle kingdom of, 1559
 Northwest Territory, organisation of, 3297
 settlement of, 3297, 3977
 Norwalk, burning of, 3261
 Norway, Kingdom of, founding of, 1965, 2409, 2413
 Christianity established in, 2414
 conquest of, by Canute the Great, 2414
 decline of, 2416
 government of, 3521, 3582
 kings of, table of the, 4885
 Lutheranism in, 2635
 under Margaret of Denmark, 2417
 under the Kings of Denmark, 3031
 under the Kings of Sweden, 3582
 transfer to Sweden, 3491, 3521
 separation from Sweden, 3905, 3906
 Nothus, Darius, 519-522
 Notre Dame, Cathedral of, 3386, 3543, 3611, 3612
 Nottingham, battle of, 1999
 riots at, 3560
 Nottingham, Countess of, 2702
 Nottingham, Earl of, 2923
 Nouredin, 1874, 1875
 Novillas, General, 3691
 Novara, first battle of, 2552
 second battle of, 3532
 third battle of, 3607
 Nova Scotia, or New Scotland, 2937
 Novgorod, 2420
 republic of, 2420, 2428, 2431
 Novi, battle of, 3424
 Novi-Bazaar, 3752, 3753, 3771
 Nox, 734
 Nubia, 107
 Egyptian conquest of, 3572
 Nujuffhur, battle of, 3625
 Numancia, vessel, 3697
 Numantia, conquest and destruction of, 1235, 1236
 Numa Pompilius, 1127
 Numerian, 1254
 Numidia, 432

- Roman conquest of, 1248-1250
 Roman province of, 1347
 Numitor, 1125
 Nuna, 2051
 Nuremberg, Peace of, 2907, 2910
 siege of, 2787
 Nursia, Benedict of, 2050
 Nutpe, or Nut, 97
 Nyaya philosophy, 636, 641
 Nymphenburg, League of, 3100
 Nystadt, Peace, 3071, 3072

 OAK GROVE, battle of, 4156
 Oan, 287
 Oates, Titus, 2881, 2882
 Oaxaca, 4361, 4362
 Obeldollah, 1838
 Obelisks, of Assyria, 226
 of Egypt, 51, 77
 of Shalmaneser II., 165, 166
 of Shamas-Vul II., 167, 168
 Obolla, conquest of, by the Saracens, 1751,
 1813, 1814
 O'Brien, William, 3805, 3807
 O'Brien, William Smith, rebellion of, 3567
 Ocana, battle of, 3467
 Oceanus, 733
 Ochus, Artaxerxes, 530-533
 O'Connell, Daniel, 3559, 3561
 O'Connor, Roderic, 2258
 Octavia, first wife of Nero, 1403
 Octovia, second wife of Mark Antony, 1311-
 1313
 Octavius Cæsar, 1304-1318, 1379
 Oczakoff, capture of, 3097
 siege and fall of, 3172
 Odenatus, 1449, 1616, 1617
 Odessa, bombardment of, 3619
 founding of, 3174
 Odessus, 759
 Odillon Barrot, 3588
 Odin, or Woden, 1355, 1561, 1966, 1969, 1972,
 1974, 1978, 1981, 1982, 1985, 1986
 Odo, Archbishop of Canterbury, 2011
 Odo, Bishop of Bayeux, 2239, 2244
 Odoacer, 1511, 1512, 1533
 O'Dogherty, 2814
 O'Donnell, General, 3552, 3636, 3637
 Odyssey, Homer's, 712, 793, 794
 Œcumenical Council at Rome, 3653, 3704
 Oeland, naval battle at, 3071

 Œnotrians, 1192
 Oersted, 3955
 Offa, 1565
 Offa's Dyke, 1565
 Og, King of Bashan, 370
 Ogdensburg, 4020
 Oglethorpe, James Edward, 2949
 Ogrea, 2475
 Ogunian Law, 1193
 Ogus, 2475
 O'Higgins, 4347
 Ohio, admission of, 4005
 Ohio Company, 3116
 Oigurs, 2475
 Okechobee, Lake, battle of, 4060
 Oktai Khan, 2455, 2457
 conquest of Russia by, 2455, 2456
 Oku, General, 4710, 4718, 4726, 4727
 Olaf the Lap-King, 2416
 Olaf the Saint, 2414
 Olaf Trygvæson, 2414
 Olaf III., 2414
 Olaf IV., 2414
 Olaf V., 2415
 Oldcastle, Sir John, Lord Cobham, 2323, 2324
 Olden, Governor Charles Smith, 4209
 Oldenburg, House of, accession of, 2419
 Oleg, 2420, 2421
 Oleg, another, 2422
 Olga, 2422
 Oliver and Roland, story of, 1889-1892
 Oliver Clissons, 2178-2180
 Oliver Cromwell, 2835, 2841, 2843-2845, 2848,
 2849, 2851-2855, 2857-2869
 Ollivier, Emile, 3654, 3663, 3666
 Ollo, 3696
 Olmütz, 3373, 3648
 Olney, Richard, 4274
 Olo Ho Pu, 4657
 Olopen, 679
 Olozaga, 3663
 Oltenitza, battle of, 3618
 Olustee, battle of, 4192
 Olya-Tepe, capture of, 3748
 Olybrius, 1511
 Olympia, 709, 722, 742, 922
 Olympiad, first, 748
 the one hundred and fourth, 922
 Olympias, 1007
 Olympic Festival, 748
 Olympic Games, 748, 749

- Olympics, General, 3738
 Olympius, 1505
 Olympus, Mt., 723, 724, 957
 Olynthian War, 906, 907
 Olynthus, 758, 906, 907, 958, 966, 969-971
 Omar Pasha, 3618, 3622
 Omar, the Khalif, 1816-1831
 at Jerusalem, 1817, 1818
 character of, 1816, 1817, 1831, 1832
 conquests by, 1816-1831
 edict of, concerning the Alexandrian
 library, 1830
 mosque of, at Jerusalem, 1818
 soldiers paid and pensioned by, 1832
 Ombos, 38
 Ommiyades, dynasty of the, 1836-1845, 1850-
 1872
 Omorka, 287
 Omri, 401
 O'Neill, clan of, 2289
 O'Neill, Hugh, 2700
 Onomarchus, 965, 966
 Opechancanough, 2932
 Ophellas, 443
 Ophir, 397
 Opimius, 1245
 Opium War, 3564, 3565
 Oporto, 2396, 3464, 3531
 Oppède, Baron d', 2580
 Optatus, 1480
 Oracles, Grecian, 746, 747
 Oran, 3697
 Orange, William the Silent, Prince of, 2728-
 2733, 2735, 2737-2740
 assassination of, 2739, 2740
 Orange, William, Prince of, afterward Wil-
 liam III. of England, 2901-2920, 2965,
 2987-2989, 2994-2997, 2999, 3000, 3002,
 3005
 Orchard Knob, battle of, 4180, 4181
 Ord, General Edward Odo Cresap, 4137, 4218
 Oread, 738
 Oregon, Territory of, disputed boundary of,
 4074-4077
 State of, admission of, 4110
 Indian war in, in 1855-56, 4105
 Modoc War in, 4245, 4246
 Bannack War in, 4256
 Oregon, battleship, voyage of, 4292, 4293
 disabled in Chinese waters, 4678
 Orellana, 2529
 Orense, 3692
 Orestes, 1511
 Orford, Earl of, 3109
 Orient, L', battle of, 3402
 Orient, L', vessel, 3419
 Orientalists, modern, 23
 Orientals, general characteristics of, 32
 Oriflamme, 2138
 Origen, 1489
 Orinoco, 2527
 Oriskany, battle of, 3251
 Orissa, 3315
 Orizaba, 4358
 Orkhan, 2477
 Orkney, Earl of, 2319
 Orkney Isles, 2363
 Orleanists, 3610, 3676, 3689, 3705, 3706
 Orleans, battles of, 3671-3672
 capture of, 3671
 Edict of, 2750
 siege of, in 1429, 2185, 2186, 2329
 siege of, in 1563, 2753
 relief of, 2191, 2329
 Orleans, Duke of, 2180
 Orleans, Duke of, Philippe Egalité, 3362,
 3368, 3377, 3378, 3380, 3386
 Orleans, Gaston, Duke of, 2968, 2969, 2971,
 2976
 Orleans, House of, 3544
 Orleans, Louis, Duke of, 2230
 Orleans, Louis Philippe, Duke of, 3380, 3544
 Orleans, Philip, Duke of, 3016, 3082-3084,
 3088
 Orleans, Jeanne d'Arc, the Maid of, 2186-
 2208, 2329
 Orloff, Alexis, 3457, 3161, 3162
 Orloff, General, 4719
 Ormazd, or Ahura Mazda, 581-611
 Ormazd and Ahriman, myth of, 585-593
 Ormazd, Fravishas of, 581, 592
 Ormond, Duke of, 2928, 3080
 Ormond, Marquis of, 2853, 2854
 Ormuz, Portuguese possession of, 2489, 2424,
 2425
 Orontes, 528
 Orpheus, 742
 Orsini, family of, 2388
 Orsini, the would-be-regicide, 3687
 Ortega, General, 4358
 Orthez, battle of, 3493
 Orthogrul, 3475, 3476

- Osako, General, 4658, 4659
 Osborne, Sir Thomas, Earl of Danby, 2981
 Oscans, 1122
 Oscar I., 3852
 Oscar II., 3852
 Osceola, 4058, 4060
 Oshima, General, 4660
 Osiris, 96-99
 Osman Digma, 3800, 3893
 Osman Pasha, 3728, 3737, 3740, 3746, 3751, 3752
 Osnabrück, 2796, 2797
 Osorkon I., 57
 Osorkon II., 57
 Ossa, Mt., 704
 Ostend, siege and fall of, 2743, 2744
 Ostend Manifesto, 4103, 4104
 Ostia, 1131
 Ostracism in Athens, origin of the, 791
 Ostrogothic Kingdom in Italy, 1533-1538
 Ostrogoths, 1497, 1498, 1501, 1509, 1521, 1522, 1533-1538
 home of the, 1521, 1522
 Ostrolenka, battle of, 3548
 Oswald, General, 3474
 Oswego, British capture of, 3729
 French capture of, 3118
 Othman, founder of the Ottoman Empire, 2476
 Othman II., 3057
 Othman III., 3161
 Othman, the Khalif, 1833
 Othniel, 384
 Otho, Duke of Bavaria, 1935
 Otho I., the Great, of Germany, 1923-1928
 Otho II., of Germany, 1928, 1929
 Otho III., of Germany, 1929-1931
 Otho IV., of Germany, 2091, 2092
 Otho, of Greece, 3541
 overthrow of, 3541, 3542
 Otho of Rome, 1408, 1409
 overthrow of, 1409
 Orthys, Mt., 707, 723
 Otis, James, 3203, 3208, 3209
 Ottawa, capital of Canada, 3657
 Ottawa Indians, 2632
 Otterburn, battle of, 2311, 2376
 Ottocar, 2102, 2103
 Ottoman Empire, rise of the, 2475-2487
 conquests by the, 2475-2487
 civil wars in the, 2481
 decline of the, 2723, 3065
 government of the, 2479
 Ottoman Turks, 2444-2446, 2475-2487, 2581-2589, 2721-2723, 2725, 2726, 3056-3065, 3071, 3063, 3097, 3161, 3162, 3167, 3168-3171, 3417-3424, 3425, 3426, 3451, 3455-3458, 3536-3541, 3563, 3564, 3572-3574, 3579, 3617-3621, 3650, 3721-3774, 3796, 3797, 3906, 3907, 3911-3922
 Oude, Kingdom of, 3317, 3624
 Oudenarde, battle of, 2926, 3011
 Oudinot, General, 3608
 Oudinot, Marshal, 3488
 Ouled Riabs, extermination of the, 3551, 3552
 Ouray, 4257
 Ouwaroff, General, 3457
 Overbury, Sir Thomas, 2817
 Ovid, 1124, 1341, 1373
 Oxenstiern, Axel, 2788, 2790, 2791, 2909, 3022, 3033
 Oxford, 2673, 2843, 2845
 University of, 2003, 2006, 2052, 2278, 2282, 2896
 Oxford, Earl of, 2928-2930, 3060
 Oyama, Field-Marshal, 4560, 4561, 4658, 4661, 4717, 4718, 4723, 4727, 4730
 PAARDEBERG, battles of, 3289, 4511-4515
 Pachomius, 2050
 Pacific Ocean, discovery of, by Balboa, 2225
 Pactolus river, 418, 421
 Pactyas, 488
 Paderborn, Peace of, 1869
 Paducah, attack on, 4189
 Padus, 1113
 Pæonia, 961
 Pæonians, 960, 961
 Pagasean Gulf, 706
 Pages, Garnier, 3589, 3590, 3669
 Paine, Thomas, 3237, 3341, 3374, 3378, 3385, 3510
 Painters, the great, of ancient Greece, 944, 945, 1017
 of the Sixteenth Century, 2804, 2805
 of the Seventeenth Century, 3027, 3028
 of the Eighteenth Century, 3512
 of the Nineteenth Century, 3966, 3967
 Pakenham, General Sir Edward, 4023, 4028
 Palace, Mayors of the, 1554, 1555
 Paladines, General d'Aureilles de, 3672, 3673
 Paladins of Charlemagne, 1890

- Palæologi**, dynasty of the, 2442-2446
Palæologus, Constantine, 2446, 2484
Palæologus, John, 2445, 2480
Palæologus, Manuel, 2444, 2445, 2480
Palæologus, Michael, 2070, 2442
Palafox, 3464, 3466
Palais de Justice, 3681
Palais de la Quai d'Orsey, 3687, 3688
Palais Royal, 3362, 3687, 3688
Palatinate, 2116, 2124, 2603, 2779, 2986, 2996
 desolations of the, 2986, 2996
 War of the, 2124
Palatine Games, 1399
Palatine Hill, 1125
Palermo, 1119, 1199, 2156, 3096, 3587, 3607, 3631
 insurrection in, 3587, 3607
Pales, 1137
Palestine, ancient, 347-415
 description of, 374-379
 under the Hebrews, 347-415
 under the Babylonians, 249, 250, 409
 under the Medo-Persians, 458
 under the Greeks, 993
 under the Seleucids, 1028-1037
 under the Maccabees and the Herods, 1074-1089
 under the Romans, 1273, 1345
 under the Saracens, 1817, 1818
 under the Seljuk Turks, 2058
 under the Crusaders, 2063-2072
 under the Mamelukes, 1875, 1876
 under the Ottoman Turks, 2486, 2487
Palestro, battle of, 3629, 3630
Pallalore, battle of, 3280
Pallas, 724
Palm, bookseller of Nuremberg, 3446
Palma, Tomas Estrada, 4432
Palmer, General Innes Newton, 4192
Palmer, General John McCauley, 4202
Palmerston, Lord, 3563, 3620, 3655, 3656
Palmyra, city of, 340, 397
 Kingdom of, 1449
 fall of, 1451
Palo Alto, battle of, 4079
Palos, 2526
Palus Maotus, 755
Pamphilus, 1017
Pamphylia, 420, 987, 1343
Pan, the god, 736
Panama, Pan-American Congress at, 4046, 4364
 Isthmus of, 2528
 Republic of, 4330, 4331
Panama Canal, 3850, 4327, 4330
Pan-American Congress at Panama, 4046, 4364
Pan-American Congress at Washington, 4266
Pan-American Exposition at Buffalo, 4328
Pandects of Justinian, 1582, 1584, 1585
Pandolf, 2267, 2269
Pandora, 727
Pandulf Ironhead, 1929
Panin, Count, 3161
Panitz, Major, 3911
Panniput, battle of, 2513
Pannonia, 1340, 1341
Panormus, battle of, 1199
Pantheism, 34
Pantheon of Paris, 3593
Pantheon of Rome, 1331
Panticapæum, 760
Pantín, battle of, 3687
Paoli, massacre of, 3249
Paoli, Pascal, 3147
Papacy, Hierarchy and Monachism, 2049-2051
Papal Power in the Middle Ages, 2049-2050
Papal States, origin of the, 1886
 invasion of, by Desiderius, 1888, 1889
 invasion of, by the French, 3416
 invasion of, by the Piedmontese, 3632
 bandits and convicts in the, 3550
 revolution in, 3607, 3608
 annexation of, to Italy, 3679
Paphlagonia, 419, 988, 1054
Paphos, 731
Papineau, Louis Joseph, 3563, 4060
Papinian, 1438
Papirius Carbo, 1261
Papirius, Marcus, 1166
Pappenheim, 2788
Paprenis, battle of, 517, 518
Papyrus plant, 78, 79
Para, revolt of, 4382
Paraguay, 2546, 2632, 4346, 4364, 4365
 conquest of, by the Spaniards, 2546
 Jesuit missions in, 2632
 Republic of, 4346, 4364, 4365
Paredes, General, 4354-4356
Parepa Rosa, 3968

- Paretonium, 1315
 Pariahs, 620
 Parian Marble, 22
 Paris, anarchist outrages in, 3480, 3854
 barricades of 1830 in, 3543, 3544
 barricades of 1848 in, 3588, 3589
 barricades of 1851 in, 3611
 barricades of 1871 in, 3680, 3681
 bomb explosion in the Chamber of Deputies in, 3854
 Cathedral of Notre Dame in, 3386, 3543, 3611, 3612
 fortification of, in 1840, 3579
 International Expositions in, 3949
 made the capital of France, 1549
 massacre of Orleanists in, 2182
 Massacre of St. Bartholomew in, 2759
 Revolution of 1789 in, 3357-3428
 Revolution of 1830 in, 3541-3544
 Revolution of 1848 in, 3588-3593
 Revolution of 1870 in, 3669
 Reign of Terror in, 3384, 3385
 sieges of, by the Northmen, 1908, 1912, 1964
 siege of, by King Henry III., 2767
 siege of, by King Henry IV., 2769
 siege and fall of, in 1870-71, 3670, 3671, 3673, 3674, 3676
 siege and fall of, in 1871, 3680-3689
 bombardments of, 3674, 3684, 3685
 Commune of 1871 in, 3680-3689
 vandalism in, 3687
 Paris, Count de, 3580, 3705, 3846
 Paris, Peace of, in 1763, 3137
 in 1783, 3281, 3282
 in 1810, 3461
 in 1814, 3494
 in 1815, 3501
 in 1856, 3622, 3623
 Paris, son of Priam, 718
 Park, Mungo, 3953
 Parker, Alton Brooks, 4333
 Parker, Dr. Matthew, 2679
 Parker, Admiral Sir Hyde, 3431
 Parker, Admiral Sir Peter, 3235
 Parker, Theodore, 3963
 Parkman, Francis, 3963
 Parliament, of England, origin of, 2277
 division of, 2301
 struggles of, with the Stuarts, 2811-2906
 reforms of, 3560, 3561
 the Good, 2303
 the Long, 2835-2859, 2867
 the Rump, 2849-2859, 2867
 Barebones, 2859, 2860
 Parliament, of Ireland, independence of, 3274, 3275, 3314, 3315
 abolition of, 3347
 Parliament, of Paris, 2152, 3358, 3360
 Parliament, of Scotland, 2374
 abolition of, 2924-2926
 Parliament, of Canada, 3658
 Parliament, of Australia, 3832
 Parma, outbreak in, 3550
 battle of, 3095
 Parmenides, 936, 937
 Parmenia, 985
 Parnassus, Mt., 704, 706, 726, 738, 746
 Parnell, Charles Stewart, 3795, 3798, 3804-3808
 Paros, 711, 813
 Parr, Catharine, 2656, 2657, 2664
 Parrhasius, 944
 Parry, Captain, 3953
 Parsees, 582, 583, 586
 Parthamaspatas, 1421
 Parthenon of Athens, 729, 942, 944
 destruction of, by the Turks, 3063
 Parthia, 456, 1062-1073
 description of, 456, 1062, 1063
 history of, 1062-1073
 Roman wars with, 1068-1072
 Salt Desert of, 1063
 soldiers of, 1066, 1067
 Parthian Empire of the Arsacidæ, 1062-1073
 Parthians, 1064, 1065
 characteristics of the, 1064-1065
 Parton, James, 3963
 Parysatis, 519, 521
 Pasargadæ, 454
 battles of, 476-478, 485
 ruins of, 454, 573, 574
 Pascal, 3026
 Pascal Paoli, 3147
 Paschal II., Pope, 1952, 1963
 Paschal III., Pope, 2087
 Pasht, or Bubastia, 52, 96
 Paskiewitsch, General, 3539, 3540, 3546, 3547, 3619
 Pasque de Flores, 2528
 Passarovits, Peace of, 3083
 Passau, Religious Peace of, 2620, 2621

- 'assover, Feast of the, 414
 'asteur, Louis, 3955
 'aswan, Oglou, Pasha, 3455
 'atena, 341
 'aterson, founder of Bank of England, 3918
 'aterson, William, 3302-3304
 'atriarchs, Hebrew, 347-360
 'atricians of Rome, 1139, 1143-1193
 'atricians of the Middle Ages, 9055
 'atrick Henry, 3308, 3309, 3325, 3309
 'atrick, St., 2256
 'atterson, General Robert, 4134, 4135
 'atti, Adelina, 3968
 'aul, Czar of Russia, 3182, 3421, 3425, 3431, 3433
 'aul III., Pope, 2585, 2613, 2617, 2619, 2630
 'aul IV., Pope, 2622, 2623, 2717, 2719, 2730
 'aul, St., 1085-1087, 1396, 1404, 1461
 'auline Bonaparte, 3437
 'aulinus, first Archbishop of York, 1564, 1565
 'aulinus, Suetonius, 1403
 'aulovich, General, 3728
 'aulucci, 3455
 'aulus, Æmilius, 1213, 1214
 'aulus, Lucius Æmilius, 1097, 1228
 'aulius' Hook (now Jersey City), capture of, 3263
 'ausanias, the Spartan traitor, 831, 832, 834, 836-838
 'ausanias, the Macedonian assassin, 980
 'ausanias, the Greek geographer, 712
 'avia, 3606
 battle of, 2575, 2576
 capture of, by Charlemagne, 1888
 capture of, by Lautrec, 2580
 'avia, General, Coup d'Etat of, 3696, 3697
 'axos, 711
 'ayne, John Howard, 3960
 'each Orchard Station, battle of, 4157
 'each-tree Creek, battle of, 4203
 'eacock, vessel, 4024
 'earce, General, 4133
 'ea Ridge, battle of, 4151
 'earson, Colonel, 3793
 'easant War in Germany, 2603-2605
 'echt, 96
 'eck, General John James, 4175
 'edro I., Dom, of Brazil, 3531, 3534, 4364
 'edro II., Dom, of Brazil, 4364, 4374, 4375
 deposition of, 4375
 visit of, to the United States, 4252
 Pedro I., the Severe, 2398, 2399
 Pedro II., of Portugal, 3024
 Pedro III., of Aragon, 2395
 Pedro the Cruel, 2394
 Peel, Sir Robert, 3565, 3566
 and repeal of the Corn Laws, 3566
 reforms instituted by, 3565
 Pegasus, 739
 Pegu, Kingdom of, 4636
 Peitsang, battle of, 4690
 Peixoto, Floriano, 4378-4385
 Pekah, 402
 Pekahiah, 402
 Peking, capture of, in 1860, 3636, 4634, 4635
 capture of, in 1900, 4690
 great earthquake at, 4630
 siege of legations in, 4682, 4683
 Pelagius, 1491, 1492
 Pelasgians of Greece, 713
 Pelasgiotis, 706
 Peleus, 730
 Pelham, Henry, 3104, 3105
 Pelican, vessel, 4021
 Pelion, Mt., 704
 Pelissier, General, 3581, 3582, 3621
 Pelistat, battle of, 3744
 Pella, 958
 Pelletan, Eugene, 3669
 Pelopidas, 908, 910, 913, 918-921
 Peloponnesian War, 857-886
 Peloponnesus, 705, 709, 714, 721, 722
 Dorian conquest of the, 721, 722
 Pelops, 714
 Pelusium, 38
 battle of, 62, 496
 destruction of Sennacherib's army at, 187, 188
 capture of, 1829
 Pemberton, General John Clifford, 4174, 4175
 Pembroke, Richard de Clare, Earl of, 2257, 2258
 Pembroke, William Marescall, Earl of, 2209, 2274
 Pembroke, Earl of, another, 2298
 Penates, 739, 740
 Pendergast, Maurice, 2258
 Pendleton, George Hunt, 4208, 4209
 Peninsular War, 3461-3469
 Penn, Admiral Sir William, 2862, 2868, 4349
 Penn, D. B., 4240

- Penn, William, 2862, 2866, 2893, 2944
 grants of land to, 2943
 treaty of, with the Indians, 2943, 2944
- Pennsylvania, colony of, 2943-2947
 Confederate raids into, 4160, 4170-4173, 4199
 Homestead riots in, 4267, 4268
 railroad riots at Pittsburg, 4255
- Pensacola, 4121
 capture of, 4093
- Pentland, battle of, 2876
- Pepin d'Heristal, 1554, 1555
- Pepin the Little, 1556, 1885-1887
- Pepperell, General William, 2937, 3111
- Pequigny, Treaty of, 2223
- Pequod Indians, 2532, 2938
- Pequod War, 2938, 2939
- Peræa, 1345, 1346
- Perceval, Spencer, 3475, 3478
 assassination of, 3479
- Percy, Henry, surnamed Hotspur, 2318, 2319
- Percy, Lord, 2371
- Perdiccas, the regent, 1004, 1006
- Perdiccas I., 958, 959
- Perdiccas II., 959
- Perdiccas III., 959
- Père Duchesne, 3381
- Père la Chaise, the Jesuit, 2991
- Père la Chaise, battles of, 3688
- Père la Chaise, cemetery of, 3683, 3688
- Perennis, 1431
- Pergamus, 1049, 1343
 Kingdom of, 1049-1053, 1236
- Periander, 752, 804, 806
- Pericles, 845-861
 power and popularity of, 846, 847
- Peripatetics, 1012
- Perinthus, siege of, 975
- Perisabor, conquest of, by Julian, 1642, 1643
- Perisaites, 377
- Perkin Warbeck, 2354-2357
- Pernambuco, siege of, 4381
- Peronne, 2217
- Peroté, capture of, 4083, 4084
- Perovsky, Fort, 3719
- Peroses, 1671-1678
 coins of, 1677, 1678
- Perpetual Peace, 2585
- Perpignan, capture of, 2794
 siege of, 2588
- Perron, Anquetil du, 583
- Perry, Commodore, Matthew Calbraith, 4100
- Perry, Commodore Oliver Hazard, 4018, 4019
- Perryville, battle of, 4161
- Persarmenia, 1698, 1710
- Persecutions of the early Christians, 1404-1463
 first, 1404
 second, 1416
 third, 1421
 fourth, 1423
 fifth, 1427
 sixth, 1443
 seventh, 1447
 eighth, 1447
 ninth, 1448
 tenth, 1458, 1459
 the ten great, 1461-1463
- Persephone, 733, 734
 temple of, at Eleusia, 943
- Persepolis, 454, 564-573
 edifices and ruins at, 454, 564-573
 inscription at, 566
 ruins of, 564-573
- Perseus, King of Macedon, 1026, 1027, 127, 1228
- Perseus, the demi-god, 740, 741
- Persia, ancient and mediæval, 447-611, 1004-1760
 Achaemenian Kings of, 1535
 and the Ghiznivide Empire, 2029-2037
 as a Macedonian dependency, 534
 description of, 453, 454
 kings of, table of the, 535, 1760
 Mohammedan conquest of, 1750, 1751
 under the Sassanidæ, 1606-1760
- Persia, modern, 2488-2494
 civil wars in, 2499
 friendly intercourse with England, 2499
- Nassr-ed-Din, Shah of, assassination of, 2493, 2494
 rebellions in, 2493
 rise of, 2488
 shahs of, table of the, 2494
 Suffeean dynasty of, 2488-2491
 under Abbas the Great, 2488-2490
 under Nadir Shah, 2492, 2493
 under the Kadjar dynasty, 2493, 2494
 war with Great Britain, 2494, 2623
- Persian Empire, Medo-, 483-535
- Persian Empire of the Sassanidæ, New, 1004-1760

- rise of, under Ardshir Babigan, or Artaxerxes, 1606, 1607
- civilization of the, 1752
- classes in the, 1759
- court and court officials of the, 1756, 1757
- gold mines of the, 1661
- prosperity in the, 1671
- subjugation of the, by the Saracens, 1759, 1751
- Wars, conquests and invasions of the, 1606-1760
- Persians, architecture and art of the, 563-580
 - burial customs of the, 597
 - coins and gems of the, 580
 - commerce, trade and industries of the, 560, 561
 - dress and habits of the, 557, 558
 - education and characteristics of the, king and court of the, 548-556
 - marriage customs of the, 558
 - migrations of the, 535
 - religion of the, 581-611
 - taxation of the, 507, 508
 - warfare and army of the, 538-548
 - writing of the, 555, 556
- Persius, 1376
- Pertinax, 1433, 1434
- Peru, conquest of, by Pizarro, 2542, 2543
 - early history of, 2541-2545
 - fate of the natives of, 2544, 2545
 - government and civilization of, 2541, 2543
 - Incas of, 2541, 2542
 - liberated by San Martin, 4347
 - independence of, 4347, 4348
 - revolution in, 4347
 - Tupac Amarus revolt in, 4341
 - Wars of, with Chili, 4364-4368
- Peru-Bolivian Confederation, 4365
- Perusia, 1311
- Pescennius Niger, 1431, 1435, 1436
- Peschiera, battle of, 3606
- Pestalomi, 3666
- Pesth, 3603, 3604, 3650
 - siege of, 3587
- Peter Lombard, 2052
- Peter II. of Aragon, 2078-2081
- Peter II. of Russia, 3094
- Peter III. of Russia, 3136, 3137, 3157
- Peter, St., 1065, 1066, 1404
- Peter the Great, 3053-3056, 3065, 3073
 - education of, 3054
 - reforms and government by, 3054-3056, 3072, 3073
 - travels of, 3054
 - Wars of, 3065-3072
- Peter the Hermit, 2060
- Peterborough, Earl of, 2923, 3009
- Petersburg, siege of, 4197, 4198, 4218, 4219
- Petersburg, St., founding of, 3068
- Peterswaldau, Treaty of, 3487
- Peterwardein, 3065
 - battle of, 3083
- Petition, 3371, 3382, 3385
- Petition of Right, 2826
- Petra, in Edom, 1091, 1096
- Petra, in Lasica, siege and fall of, 1697, 1698
- Petrarch, 2053, 2385
- Petri, Laurentius, 2634
- Petri, Olaus, 2634
- Petronius Maximus, 1510
- Petrowski, imperial castle of, 3482
- Pfalsburg, surrender of, 3673
- Phædrus, 1375
- Phalereus, Demetrius, 1008
- Phalerum, 847
- Phanagoria, 760
- Pharamond, 1544
- Pharaoh Menephtah, 54, 55
- Pharaoh Neko, 60, 61, 249, 250
- Pharaohs, 43-65
- Pharax, 901
- Pharisees, 1074
- Pharnabazus, 520, 881, 883, 902
- Pharnaces, 1296
- Pharos, island of, lighthouse at, 1040
- Pharsala, 3991
- Pharsalia, battle of, 1292-1294
- Phayllus, 971
- Pheldon, 751
- Pherochanes, 1723
- Phidias, 813, 853, 942, 943
- Philadelphia, founding of, 2944
 - Continental Congress at, 3220-3311
 - capture of, 3249
 - Constitutional Convention at, 3300-3311
 - Centennial Exposition at, 4250, 4251
- Philadelphus, Ptolemy, 1040-1042
- Philhellenic Society, 3538
- Philanthropy in England in the Eighteenth Century, 3517, 3518

- Philetas, 1040
 Philibert, Emanuel, 2622
 Philip Arrhidaeus, 1004
 Philip Augustus, 2066-2068, 2142-2148, 2262-2265
 character of, 2148
 conquests by, 2142-2148
 in Palestine, 2066-2068, 2143, 2144
 marriages of, 2142, 2144
 policy of, 2142-2148
 Philip Egalité, 3362, 3368, 3377, 3378, 3386
 Philip, King, or Metacomet, 2935
 Philip of Austria, 2405, 2553, 2555
 Philip I. of France, 2134-2136
 Philip I. of Macedon, 959
 Philip IV. of Macedon, 1019
 Philip VI. of France, 2166-2170
 Philip V. of Macedon, 1022-1026, 1223, 1224, 1225
 Philip II. of Spain, 2624, 2671, 2672, 2675, 2676
 accession of, 2624, 2675, 2716
 character and religion of, 2720
 Elizabeth of England and, 2678, 2681, 2693-2697
 England and, 2678-2697, 2719
 marriage of, with Queen Mary of England, 2671
 Spain under, 2716-2727
 disastrous reign of, 2726
 death of, 2726
 Philip III. of Spain, 2726, 2727, 2777, 2955, 3019
 Philip IV. of Spain, 2979, 2981, 3019-3022
 Philip V. of Spain, 3003-3015, 3084, 3085, 3088, 3090, 3095, 3100, 3110
 Philip of Suabia, 2091
 Philip, Prince of Asturias, 2959
 Philip the Bold of Burgundy, 2174
 Philip the Bold of France, 2155, 2156
 Philip the Fair, 2107, 2157-2165
 accession of, 2157
 character of, 2165
 excommunication of, 2161
 Knights Templars destroyed by, 2163, 2164
 Bertrand de Goth made Pope by, 2163
 wars of, 2157-2159
 Philip the Good of Burgundy, 2214
 Philip the Great of Macedon, 959-982
 accession of, 960
 character of, 980-982
 conquests by, 960-980
 dominions of, 963
 marriage of, 962
 policy of, 960-981
 Philip the Long, 2165
 Philippa of Hainault, 2170, 2177, 2225, 2226
 Philippa, wife of John of Portugal, 2300
 Philippe, Louis, 3544, 3574-3582, 3588, 3589
 Philippi, in Macedonia, battles of, 1307-1308
 Philippi, in West Virginia, battle of, 4137
 Philippics, of Demosthenes, 968, 1019
 of Cicero, 1304
 Philippicus, 1595, 1721, 1722
 Philippine Islands, discovery of, by Magda-
 2529
 acquisition of, by Spain, 2546
 revolts in, against Spain, 3896
 American conquest of, 4299-4301
 revolt against Americans in, 4306-4307
 Philippopolis, battle of, 3753
 Philippus, 908
 Philipsburg, siege of, 3095
 Philistia, 378
 Philistines, 378, 387-390, 392-395
 and the Israelites, 387-395
 established in Philistia, 378
 nomadic life of the, 378
 Phillips, General, 3269, 3270
 Phillips, Wendell, 4098, 4228
 Philomelus, 964, 965
 Philopater, 1033
 Philopœmen, 1024, 1026, 1227
 Philo, Publius, 1193
 Philosophers, French, of the Eighteenth Cen-
 tury, 3139-3142
 Philosophy, Buddhist, 660-668
 English, 3925, 3956, 3957
 French, 3925, 3139-3142, 3511, 3956
 German, 3508, 3956
 Grecian, 798-807, 936-940, 1012-1017
 Hindoo, 635-645
 of Confucius, 685-692
 of Taoism, 692-694
 Scholastic, 2052, 2053
 Scotch, 3508
 Philotas, 997, 998
 Phipps, Captain, 3330
 Phipps, Sir William, 2936, 3118
 Philus, republic of, 905
 Phœcea, 756

Phocæans, 759

Massilia founded by the, 767

Phocas, 1592, 1733**Phocas, Nicephorus, 1599****Phocians, 714, 911, 964-966****Phocion, 969, 1010, 1006, 1007****Phocis, 708, 913, 963, 966, 973****Phoebe, 4024****Phoebidas, 906, 910, 963-965****Phoenicia, 325-339**

commerce and colonies of, 330-333

description of, 325

arts and civilization, 333-336

under foreign yokes, 326

supremacy of Egypt in, 329

under Babylon, 329

under Assyria, 329

under the Medo-Persian Empire, 330

Tyre and Sidon, 326-330

Phœnicians, alphabet of the, 334

art and architecture of the, 333-335

government of the, 326

manufactures of the, 333, 334

race of the, 325, 326, 334

religion of the, 336-339

Phormio, 862**Phraortes, 467****Phrygia, 419-421, 987, 1029, 1236****Phrygians, description of the, 420, 421****Phryxus, 717****Phthah, 44, 95****Phthah-Sokari-Osiris, chapel of, 59****Phthasuarsas, 1687****Phyllus, 966, 971****Phyllace, 958****Phyllidas, 908****Physicists, Great, 3026, 3506, 3507, 3953-3955****Piacenza, battle of, 3110****Piankhi, 57, 58****Piano-forte, invention of, 3508****Piar, General, 4345****Plast, 2433****Piat, 3688****Picard, Ernest, 3669****Piccolomini, General, 2789****Picenum, 1115, 1117, 1190****Pichegru, General, 3391, 3394, 3400, 3401, 3407, 3437****Pickens, Colonel Andrew, 3263, 3264, 3270****Pickens, Fort, 4121, 4142****Pickens, Governor, 4125, 4127, 4128****Pickett, General George Edward, 4172****Picton, Sir Thomas, 3499****Picts, 1422, 1437, 1494, 1507, 1556-1558, 2360****Piedmont, in Italy, 2589, 3412, 3531, 3532, 3586, 3608**

revolution in, 3531, 3532

Piedmont, in Virginia, battle of, 4198**Pioffsky, Sophie, 3787, 3788****Pierce, Franklin, 1400-1408****Pierola, Nicolas, 4366, 4367****Pierre, St., 3116****Pierre, St., Eustace, 2170, 2296****Pierri, 3627****Pieter's Hill, capture of, 3829, 4515****Piggott, Richard, 3805, 3806****Pignerol, siege and fall of, 2967****Pigot, General, 3229****Pike, Albert, 4151****Pike, General Zebulon Montgomery, 4019, 1395****Pilate, Pontius, 1083-1086****Pilcher, Colonel Thomas David, 4504****Pilgrim Fathers, 2814, 2933****Pillow, Fort, fall of, 4149**

massacre of, 4189

Pillow, General Gideon Johnson, 4147**Pilsen, capture of, 2775****Pinchincha, battle of, 4345****Pinckney, Charles, 3302****Pinckney, Charles Cotesworth, 3302, 3307, 3997, 4004, 4007****Pindar, 928, 929, 983, 984****Pindus, Mt., 703, 738****Ping Yang, battle of, 4649, 4650****Pinkie, battle of, 2662, 2706****Piræus, 836, 847, 902, 910**

fortifications of, destroyed, 885

Pirates, Moslem, 2584-2588**Pirmasens, battle of, 3391****Pirna, 3120****Pisa, Greece, 709****Pisa, Italy, 1115****Pisa, Republic of, 2054, 2385****Pisander, 879, 880****Pisidia, 419, 420****Pisistratus, usurpation of, 788-790****Piso, Cneius, 1405****Pissuthnes, 519, 520****Pitcairn, Major, 3226, 3230****Pitt, William, the elder, the "Great Commoner," 3102, 3119, 3123, 3257**

his statesmanship, 3119, 3123, 3257

- his friendship for Frederick the Great, 3123
- his championship of the American colonists, 3206, 3212, 3223, 3257
- his Parliamentary reforms, 3192, 3195
- his death, 3257
- Pitt, William, the younger, 3319, 3321
- character and youth of, 3319
- his appearance in Parliament, 3319
- his Ministry, 3321-3351, 3432, 3437
- his home policy, 3323-3328, 3347-3349
- his policy toward India, 3321-3323
- his policy toward the French Revolution, 3331-3351, 3379
- his policy toward Ireland, 3328, 3329, 3344-3347
- his death, 3444, 3445
- Pittacus, 804, 807
- Pittsburg, 3129
- Pittsburg Landing, 4147
- Pius II., Pope, 2388
- Pius III., Pope, 2554
- Pius IV., Pope, 2719, 2720
- Pius V., Pope, 2720, 2722
- Pius VI., Pope, 3150, 3416, 3424
- Pius VII., Pope, 3424, 3473, 3474, 3491
- captivity of, in France, 3473, 3474, 3491
- Pius IX., Pope, 3586, 3587, 3607, 3608
- accession of, 3586
- reforms of, 3586, 3587
- revolution against, 3607
- flight of, to Gaëta, 3607
- restoration of, by a French army, 3608
- protection of, by Napoleon III., 3634
- loss of his temporal power, 3678, 3679
- annexation of Rome to Italy, 3679
- death of, 3705
- Pi y Margall, 3692, 3694
- Pizarro, Francisco, 2541-2544
- conquest of Peru by, 2543
- assassination of, 2544
- Place de la Bastille, 3591
- Place de la Concorde, 3669, 3686, 3687
- Place de la Revolution, 3378
- Placentia, battle of, 1210
- Place Vendome, destruction of column in, 3686
- Placidia, 1506, 1508, 1526
- Placilla, battle of, 4372
- Plague, in Athens, 859
- in London, in 1665, 2877
- the Black, in Europe, in 1347-1350, 217, 2296
- Plagues, the Ten, of Egypt, 363, 364
- Plantagenet dynasty, 2252-2352
- Plantagenet, Edmund, Earl of Lancaster, 2282
- Plantagenet, Edward, Earl of Warwick, 233
- Plantagenet, Geoffrey, Count of Anjou, 212, 2139, 2140, 2249
- Plantagenet, Henry, Duke of Hereford, 235
- Plantagenet, Henry, King of England, 214, 2141, 2249, 2251-2260
- Plantagenet, Richard, Duke of York, 233
- Plantagenet, Thomas, Earl of Lancaster, 2288
- Plassey, battle of, 3114, 3115
- Plataea, 855, 856
- battle of, 832
- capture and destruction of, 861, 862
- rebuilding of, 905
- Plataeans, 810, 811, 856
- Plato, 939, 940
- doctrines of, 940
- Platoff, 3483
- Plattsburg, battles of, 4022
- Plautius, Aulus, 1400
- Plautus, 1320
- Pleasant Grove, battle of, 4190
- Pleasant Hill, battle of, 4190
- Pleasanton, General Alfred, 4191
- Plebeians of Rome, 1130, 1131, 1143, 1146-1172, 1193
- Plessis-les-Tours, 2224
- Plessis-Fraslin, Marshal du, 2975
- Plevna, first battle of, 3741
- second battle of, 3741
- third battle of, 3744, 3745
- siege and fall of, 3746, 3747, 3751, 3752
- Plimsoll, 3660
- Pliny the Elder, 1377, 1414
- Pliny the Younger, 1377
- Plistoanax, 852
- Plumer, Colonel Herbert Charles Onslow, 4504
- Plutarch, 24, 98, 99, 582, 583, 1102, 1103
- Pluto, 733
- Plutus, 734
- Plymouth Company, 2931, 2933
- Plymouth, Council of, 2933
- Plymouth, England, 2695, 3274
- Plymouth, Massachusetts, founding of, 2914, 2933, 2934

- Po river, 1113
 Pocohontas, 2931
 Pococke, Admiral, 3132, 3136
 Podiebrad, George, 3124
 Podolia, 3059, 3063, 3177
 Poe, Edgar Allan, 3960
 Point, Crown, 3117, 3130, 3228
 Point Isabel, 4079
 Point, Stony, capture of, 3261, 3269
 Point, Verplanck's 3261
 Point, West, 3266
 Poitiers, 1842
 battle of, 2171, 2172, 2296, 2297
 Poitiers, Diana of, 2747
 Poland, 2433-2436
 early history of, 2433
 under Boleslas I., 2433
 under Casimir the Great, 2435
 under Louis the Great of Hungary, 2435
 under Casimir IV., 2435
 under the Jagellos, 2435, 3040, 3041
 elective Kings of, 2435
 under Sigismund the Great, 3039
 under Sigismund Augustus, 3039
 under John Casimir, 3042-3044
 under John Sobieski, 3044, 3045
 wars of, with Sweden, Poland, Russia,
 Turkey and the Tartars, 3038-3045
 dissensions and decline of, 3040-3045
 under Frederick Augustus I., 3045
 invasion and conquest of, by Charles XII.
 of Sweden, 3067, 3068
 War of the Polish Succession, 3094-3096
 under Frederick Augustus II., 3094
 under Stanislas Poniatowski, 3156-3182
 civil war in, 3160, 3161
 Partitions of, and Russo-Turkish Wars,
 3156-3183
 First Partition of, 3164, 3165
 war of, with Russia and Prussia, 3174-
 3177
 Kosciusko's defeat, 3180
 Second Partition of, 3177
 war of, with Russia and Prussia, 3178-
 3181
 Kosciusko's overthrow, 3176
 Third Partition of, 3181, 3182
 Kingdom of, under the Czar of Russia,
 3251, 3246
 revolt of, in 1830-31, 3247-3249
 revolt of, in 1863-64, 3242, 3243
 Pole, Cardinal Reginald, 2672, 2674, 2076
 Pole, William de la, Duke of Suffolk, 2331
 Pole-Carew, General Sir Reginald, 4504
 Poles, origin of the name, 2433
 Polignac, Cardinal de, 3084
 Polignac, Prince Jules de, 3527, 3541, 3542
 Poliorcetes, Demetrius, 1008, 1009, 1019, 1020
 Polish Succession, War of the, 3094-3096
 Political institutions, development of, in Eu-
 rope, 33
 Polk, General Leonidas, 4141, 4161, 4188,
 4194, 4202
 Polk, James Knox, 4073-4092
 Pollentia, battle of, 1504, 1505
 Pollock, General, 3364, 3365
 Pollok, Robert, 3957
 Pollux, 740, 1147
 Polo, Marco, 2074, 2384, 2460
 Polybiades, 906
 Polybius, 24, 1101, 1229, 1234
 Polycarp, St., 1427, 1488
 Polycletus, 1017
 Polydectes, 770
 Polygnotus, 944
 Polyhemus, 727
 Polyhistor, 1101
 Polyhymnia, 738
 Polysperchon, 1006, 1007
 Polytheism, 34
 Pombal, Marquis of, 3144-3146
 Pomerania, 2411, 2781, 2798, 3038, 3071, 3121
 Pomœrium, 1227, 1228
 Pomona, 737
 Pompadour, Madame de, 3118, 3357
 Pompeii, destruction of, 1414
 Pompey, Cneius, 1299
 Pompey, Sextus, 1299, 1311, 1312
 Pompey the Great, 1270-1273, 1275, 1276, 1279,
 1287-1295
 Pompton, 3268
 Ponce de Leon, General, 4083
 Ponce de Leon, Juan, discovery of Florida,
 2528
 Pondicherry, 3113, 3132
 capture of, 3132
 siege and fall of, 3273, 3274
 Poniatowski, Joseph, 3180
 Poniatowski, Prince, 3490
 Poniatowski, Stanislas, 3156-3182
 character and government of, 3159
 Ponsonby, family of, 3313

- Pontiac, conspiracy of, 3131
 Pontifex Maximus, 1141
 Pontiffs of Rome, 1141
 Pontius Cominius, 1166
 Pontius Pilate, 1083-1086, 1395, 1404
 Pontius, the Samnite general, 1178-1181
 Pontoise, burning of, 1912
 Pontus, 419
 Kingdom of, 1054-1057
 Popyan, 4344
 Pope, Alexander, 3590, 3599
 Pope, General John, 4139, 4148, 4149, 4157-4159, 4162
 Popes at Avignon, 2017, 2160-2163
 Popes of Rome, 2049, 2050
 early history of the, 2049, 2050
 crimes and vices of the, 2592
 power of the, 2049, 2050
 punishments by the, 2050
 supremacy of the, 2049, 2050
 table of the, 4874
 temporal power, origin of the, 1886
 temporal power, end of the, 3679
 Popham, Sir Home, 3451
 Poppæa Sabina, 1402, 1405
 Porcius Festus, 1087
 Porphyry, 1493
 Porsena, Lars, 1145, 1146
 Portalis, 3527
 Port Arthur, blockade of, 4654, 4655
 capture of, in 1894, 4656
 siege and fall of, in 1904, 4724, 4725
 Porter, Admiral David Dixon, 4149, 4150, 4174, 4189, 4214
 Porter, Captain David, 4017, 4024
 Porter, General Fitz-John, 4154, 4156, 4158, 4159
 Port Gibson, battle of, 4174
 Port Hudson, battle at, 4150
 capture of, 4176
 Portland, battle of, 3856, 3857
 Portland, Duke of, 3340, 3454, 3475
 Porto Bello, capture of, 3098
 Porto Novo, battle of, 3318
 Porto Rico, abolition of slavery in, 3690
 conquest of, by the Americans, 4298, 4299
 under the United States, 4224
 Port Royal, capture of, 4142, 4143
 Portsmouth, New Hampshire, founded, 2937
 Peace of, 3886, 3887, 4731, 4732
 Portsmouth, Rhode Island, founded, 2938
 Portsmouth, Duchess of, 2886
 Portugal, early history of, 2396
 rise of the Kingdom of, 2396-2403
 colonies of, 2522-2526
 commerce and factories of, in India, 252
 maritime discoveries of, 2522-2526
 conquest and annexation of, by Spain, 2724
 sixty years' union of, with Spain, 2724, 3022
 independence of, restored, 3023
 under the House of Braganza, 3023
 inquisition in, 2402
 wars with Spain, 2023, 2024
 reforms of Pombal in, 3144-3146
 wars with Revolutionary France and Napoleon, 3379, 3461-3469
 revolutions of 1821-34 in, 3531, 3534
 recent history of, 3552, 3638
 Portuguese, colonial empire of the, 2522-2525
 discoveries of wealth in Brazil, 2525
 maritime enterprises of the, 2402
 Porus, defeat and capture of, 1000, 1001
 Posen, 3068, 3703
 Poseidon, 724-726
 Posts, system of, established by Darius Hystaspes, 509
 by the Saracens, 1836
 Potemkin, Paul, 3157, 3169-3172
 Potidæa, revolt of, 855
 siege and fall of, 861, 862
 Potiphar, or Petephra, 358
 Potochi, Count Felix, 3175
 Potomac river, battles along the, 4136
 Potomac, Army of the, 4136, 4154, 4158, 4160, 4193
 Potosi, San Luis, 4061, 4359, 4361
 Potsdam, 3154
 Pottery in England, 3325
 Pottinger, Sir Henry, 3565
 Poussin, 3028
 Pouyer-Quertier, 3678
 Powell, Colonel Baden-, 4503
 Power, balance of, in Europe, 2347
 Powhatan, 2931
 Prætor, office of, 1171
 Prætorian Guards, 1381
 Praga, fall of, 3181
 Pragmatic Sanction, 2213
 Pragmatic Sanction, another, 3069, 3097, 3099
 Prague, battle of, 3121

- European congress at, 3486
- Peace of, in 1635, 2791
- Peace of, in 1866, 3604
- Reformers of, 2118-2120
- Slavic congress at, 3601
- siege and fall of, in 1744, 3104
- siege and fall of, in 1848, 3601
- University of, founded, 2114
- Prague, Jerome of, 2118-2120
- Prairial, First, insurrection of the, 3400
- Prairie Grove, battle of, 4151, 4152
- Praxitas, 903
- Praxiteles, 1017
- Prayer, Book of Common, compilation of the, 2663
- Preble, Commodore, 4007
- Prehistoric man, 29
- Premonstrants, 2050
- Prenntiss, General Benjamin Mayberry, 4177
- Prenselow, surrender of Prince Hohenlobe at, 3449
- Pressburg, Hungarian Diet at, 3058, 3062, 3063, 3101
 - Peace of, 3443
- Presbyterianism, 2715, 2812
- Presbyterians, 2628, 2715, 2840, 2844, 2846
- Presbyters, 2627, 2628
- Prescott, Colonel William, 3229
- Prescott, General, 3247
- Prescott, William Hickling, 3962
- President, vessel, 4112
- Presidents, of France, table of the, 4879
 - of Mexico, table of the, 4889
 - of the United States, table of the, 4889
- Presque Isle, 3116
- Press, freedom of the, in Austria, 3600
 - in England, 2917, 3185-3197
 - in France, 3523, 3542
 - in Germany, 3549, 3550
 - in Prussia, 3584
- Preston, first battle of, 2849
 - second battle of, 3082
- Preston, Captain, 3215, 3216
- Prestonburg, battle of, 4146
- Preston Pans, battle of, 3106
- Pretender, Charles Edward Stuart, the Young, 3106-3109, 3126, 3127
- Pretender, James Stuart, the, 3061, 3062
- Pretoria, occupation of, 3830, 4545
 - Peace of, 4614, 4615
- Pretzman, General George Tindal, 4505
- Prevost, General, 3261
- Prevost, Sir George, 4022
- Prexaspas, 496
- Priam, 718
- Price, General Stirling, 4083, 4085, 4139, 4140, 4148, 4151, 4180, 4191
- Prideaux, General, 3129, 3130
- Pride, Colonel, 2849
- Pride's Purge, 2849
- Prie, Madame de, 3088, 3089
- Priene, Bias of, 804, 807
- Priestley, Joseph, 3332, 3506
- Priests, in Egypt, 68, 69, 102
 - in India, 619, 628-653
- Prim, General, 3637, 3652, 3653
- Primo de Rivera, General, 3698
- Princeton, battle of, 3245
- Princeton College, founding of, 2950
- Pring, Martin, 2933
- Prinsloo, General, surrender of, 4554
- Printing, invention of, 2521
 - introduction of, into England, 2343, 2521
 - into Poland, 3069
 - into Scotland, 2382
- Privateers, in the War of the American Revolution, 3255
 - in the American Civil War, 4128
- Probus, Marcus Aurelius, 1453, 1454
- Procas, 1125
- Procida, John di, 2156
- Procopius, 2120
- Procopius the Great, 2121
- Procopius the Little, 2121
- Procter, Adelaide A., 3958
- Procter, Bryan Waller, 3958
- Proctor, General, 4018, 4019
- Proctor, Richard Anthony, 3955
- Prometheus, 727, 741
- Propertius, 1373
- Propontis, 739
- Propylæa, 853
- Proserpine, 731-734
- Proscopitis, battle of, 518, 849
- Prospect Hill, 3230
- Protestantism, rise of, 2592-2609
 - establishment of, in Germany, 2606-2625
- Protestant Union, of Germany, 2772, 2773
- Protestants in England, persecutions of, 2649, 2653, 2656, 2672, 2673
 - in France, persecutions of, 2748, 2749, 2759

- in Germany aided by Gustavus Adolphus, 2783-2788
- origin of the name, 2606
- war of, with Charles V., 2609-2625
- Proudhon, 3576
- Provence, 2585
- Provence, Count of, 3359, 3494
- Providence, Rhode Island, founding of, 2938
- Provitá, battle of, 3751
- Prudentius, 1472
- Prussia, early history of, 3038
 - under the House of Hohenzollern, 3038, 3091, 3092
 - under Frederick the Great, 3399-3154
 - in the War of the Austrian Succession, 3099-3112
 - in the Seven Years' War, 3118-3138
 - after the Seven Years' War, 3151-3154
 - in the Partitions of Poland, 3164, 3177, 3181
 - War of the Bavarian Succession, 3153
 - war with Revolutionary France, 3070-3402
 - war with Napoleon, 3447-3453
 - War of German Liberation, 3484-3495
 - in the last war against Napoleon, 3498-3501
 - reaction in, under Frederick William III. and Frederick William IV., 3583, 3584
 - zollverein, 3583
 - Revolutions of 1848-49 in, 2594-2599
 - rivalry with Austria, 3608, 3609
 - Schleswig-Holstein War of 1848-49, 3595, 3600
 - Schleswig-Holstein War of 1864, 3644, 3645
 - Seven Weeks' War with Austria, 3645-3648
 - rivalry with France under Napoleon III., 3661, 3662
 - Franco-German War, 3661-3678
 - Church and State, 3700-3704
 - Socialism in, 3774-3778
 - table of the kings of, 4881
- Pruth, battle of the, 3070
- Prynne, 2830
- Psammenitus, 62, 496
- Psammetichus, 59, 60
- Psammis, 61
- Pseudo-Smerdis, the, 499, 500
- Pteria, battle of, 255
- Ptolemies in Egypt, 1037-1048
- Ptolemy Alexander, 1046
- Ptolemy Auletes, 1047
- Ptolemy, Canon of, 22, 23, 123
- Ptolemy Ceraunus, 1020, 1021
- Ptolemy Epiphanes, 1044
- Ptolemy Euergetes, 1042, 1043
- Ptolemy Eupator, 1045
- Ptolemy Lagi, or Soter, 1038-1040
- Ptolemy Lathyrus, 1046
- Ptolemy Philadelphus, 1040-1042
 - Alexandrian library, 1040
 - science and literature under, 1040
 - marriages of, 1042
 - personal character of, 1042
 - Septuagint Bible translation, 1040, 1041
 - wars of, 1041, 1042
- Ptolemy Philometor, 1044, 1045
- Ptolemy Philopator, 1043, 1044
- Ptolemy Physcon, 1045, 1046
- Ptolemy, the astronomer, 1098, 1099
- Publilius Philo, 1193
- Publius Claudius Pulcher, 1900
- Publius Cornelius Scipio, 1207, 1208, 1217
- Publius Cornelius Scipio, the younger, 1217, 1220
- Publius Decius, 1176, 1177
- Publius Helvius Pertinax, 1433, 1434
- Publius Sulpicius Rufus, 1261
- Puebla, siege and fall of, 4358
- Puerto Cabello, surrender of, 4346
- Pugatscheff, rebellion of, 3166
- Puigcerda, 3699
- Pulaski, Count, 3248, 3262
- Pulaski, Fort, capture of, 4152
- Pulcheria, 1573, 1574
- Pultowa, battle of, 3069, 3070
 - siege of, 3069
- Pultusk, first battle of, 3068
 - second battle of, 3451
- Punic Wars, 444-446, 1194-1234
 - First, 1194-1201
 - Second, 1204-1221
 - Third, 1230-1234
- Punjab, 614, 1000, 3566, 3567
- Punniar, battle of, 3565
- Pupienus, 1444, 1445
- Puranas, 645-647
- Purandocht, 1749
- Puritan England, 2811-2830

- Puritanism, rise of, 2679-2681
- Puritans, in England, 2679-2681
 - Calvinistic form of worship, 2679, 2680
- Cromwell's army of, 2844, 2868, 2869
 - downfall of the, 2828, 2869
 - devotion and bigotry of the, 2680
 - persecutions of the, 2681
 - in New England, 2814, 2830
- Pushkin, 3966
- Puthod, General, 3488
- Putnam, General Israel, 3136, 3243, 3261
- Putnam, General Rufus, 3297
- Pydna, 958
 - battle of, 1097, 1228
- Pygmalion, 327, 328
- Pylos, 866
- Pym, John, 2835, 2836, 2839, 2841
- Pyramids of Egypt, 45-47, 77
 - building of the, 45
 - construction and use of the, 47
 - of Ghizeh, 45
 - of Cheops and Menkaura, 46, 47
 - the Great, 46
 - battle of the, 3418
 - of Meroë, 110
- Pyrrho, 1016, 1017
- Pyrrhus, 1019, 1091
 - his wars with Rome, 1184-1190
 - death of, 1091
- Pythagoras, 761, 762, 790-804
- Pythagoreans, 761, 762, 800-804
- Pythian games, 749
- Python, 734
- Pythoness, 746, 747
- QUADI, 1352, 1496
- Quæstors, 1192
- Quaker Hill, battle of, 3258
- Quakers, or Friends, 2861, 2875, 3028
 - doctrines of, 3028
 - imprisonment of, 2875
 - origin of, 2861
 - persecutions of, in England, 3029
 - persecutions of, in Massachusetts, 2934
 - settlement of, in New Jersey, 2943
 - settlement of, in Pennsylvania, 2943, 2944
- Quantrell, 4177
- Quatre-Bras, battle of, 3498, 3499
- Quebec, attacked by the Americans, 3232
 - capture of, by the British, 3130, 3131
 - founding of, 3017
- Queensland, 3568
- Queenstown, battle of, 4017
- Quentin, St., battle of, in 1857, 2676, 2717
 - battle of, in 1870, 3675
- Queretaro, 4360
- Quertier, Pouyer, 3678
- Quiberon Bay, naval battle of, 3126, 3127
- Quinctius Fabius Maximus, 1025, 1224
- Quintilian, 1377
- Quintillius, 1450
- Quintius Servilius, 1258
- Quintus Cassius, 1288
- Quintus Cicero, 1283
- Quintus Curtius, 1378
- Quintus Fabius, 1206
- Quintus Fabius Flaccus, 1242
- Quintus Metellus, 1249, 1250
- Quintus Pedius, 1305
- Quintus Pompeius Rufus, 1261
- Quirinal Hill, 1134, 1328
- Quirinus, 1127, 1141
- Quiroga, Spanish Liberal, 3533
- Quiroga, Mexican General, 4362
- Quito, 4343
- RA, or Phrah, 94-96
- Rabbah, siege of, 396
- Rabelais, Francois, 2803
- Race, human, cradle of, 25
 - knowledge concerning the, 22
- Rachel, 355
- Rachis, 1542
- Racine, 2981, 3026
- Radagaisus, 1505
- Radcliffe, Charles, 3108
- Radetzky, Austrian general, 3606-3608
- Radetzky, Russian general, 3743, 3753
- Radom, Confederation of, 3160
- Radzivil, Prince, 3160
- Radzivil, Prince, another, 3547
- Ragimbert, 1541
- Raglan, Lord, 3619, 3621
- Ragotsky, Count George, 3007
- Ragusa, Duke of, 3468
- Ragusa, Republic of, 3065
- Rahl, Colonel, 3245
- Ralke, Robert, 3518
- Railroads, beginning of, in England, 3561
 - first in China, 4636
 - first in the United States, 4047

- Railroad labor troubles, in 1877, 4255
in 1894, 4272, 4273
- Raisin River, massacre of, 4018
- Raleigh, North Carolina, occupation of, 4221
- Raleigh, Sir Walter, 2698, 2803, 2812, 2818
execution of, 2818
- Ramayana, 645
- Ramesis I., 52
- Ramesis II., the Great, 52-54
conquests of, 53
noted works of, 53
- Ramesis III., 55, 56
- Ramezeum at Thebes, 53
- Ramillics, battle of, 2923, 3009
- Ramonsta, battle of, 3829, 4497
- Ramoth-Gilead, battle of, 405
- Ramsay, Dr. David, 3960
- Randall, Governor Alexander William, 4209
- Randolph, Edmund, 3302-3305, 3308, 3973,
3975, 3977, 3983
- Randolph, Fort, fall of, 4149
- Randolph, Peyton, 3221
- Ranke, Leopold von, 3966
- Raouf Pasha, 3745
- Raphael, 2388, 2904
- Raphia, battle of, 58, 177
- Rapp, General, 3473
- Raslavice, battle of, 3178, 3179
- Raspail, 3591, 3592
- Raspe, Henry, 2097
- Rastadt, Peace of, 2929, 3015
- Ratcliffe, Sir Thomas, 2344
- Rathenow, battle of, 3036
- Rationalists, 3154
- Ratisbon, battle of, 3470
German Imperial Diet at, 3151
- Ratscharnik, battle of, 3754
- Rattazzi, 3634, 3651
- Raucoux, battle of, 3111
- Ravaillac, François, 2957, 2958
- Ravenna, battle of, 2231, 2560
Cæsar's camp at, 1289
Exarchs of, 1538
Exarchate of, 1538, 1580
siege and capture of, 1536
- Rawdon, Lord, 3264, 3269, 3270
- Rawlinson, George, 25, 3959
- Rawlinson, Sir Henry, 22, 123, 3959
- Raymond, battle of, 4172
- Raymond VI., Count of Toulouse, 2075-2082,
2146, 2148
excommunications of, 2076, 2079, 2080
- Raymond VII., Count of Toulouse, another,
2081, 2082, 2148-2150
- Raymond, Henry Jarvis, 4107
- Rayon, 4342
- Raxis, 1877
- Read, Thomas Buchanan, 3963
- Reade, Charles, 3959
- Reagan, John Henninger, 4222
- Reason, Goddess of, 3386
- Rebekah, 353
- Rebellion, Bacon's, 2932
in the United States, 4126-4228
of Spartacus, 1270-1271
of the Spartan Helots, 843-844
of Wat Tyler, 2305-2309
the great English, 2840-2852
- Recared I., 1530, 1531
- Recared II., 1531
- Receswind, 1531
- Redan, 3621, 3622
- Redcliffe, Lord Stratford de, 3617, 3618
- Red Republicans of Paris, 3590, 3610, 3622-
3682
- Red River Expedition, 4189, 4190
- Red Sea, Israelites crossing the, 364, 365
- Reed, General Joseph, 3257
- Reformation, 2592-2805
Charles V. and the German, 2592-2600
Martin Luther and the, 2592-2613
origin of the, 2596-2606
Indulgences, sale of, 2593-2598
Luther's Ninety-five Theses, 2598
Luther and Pope Leo X., 2598-2600
excommunication of Luther, 2600
Luther at the Diet of Worms, 2598,
2600
Luther at the Wartburg, 2600
progress of Lutheranism, 2602
Luther's marriage, 2605
Luther's German Bible, 2602
Luther's Battle Hymn, 2602
Peasant revolt, 2603-2605
The Protestation, 2606
The Augsburg Confession, 2606, 2607
The League of Schmalkald, 2607, 2609
The Peace of Nuremberg, 2607, 2610
The Anabaptists, 2610, 2611
The War of Religion in Germany, 2608-
2625
Defection of Maurice of Saxony, 2614

- captivity of Protestant princes, 2616, 2617
 Maurice of Saxony deserts Charles V.,
 2619, 2620
 Peace of Passau, 2620
 Peace of Augsburg, 2621
 Lutheranism and Calvinism, 2625-2628
 Lutheranism in Scandinavia, 2633-2636
 Catholic Church and Society of Jesus,
 2628-2633
 Henry VIII. and the Church of Eng-
 land, 2636-2661
 Edward VI. and the Church of England,
 2661-2667
 Mary and the Catholic Reaction in Eng-
 land, 2668-2677
 Elizabeth and the Protestant triumph in
 England, 2677-2703
 Mary Stuart and Calvinism in Scotland,
 2703-2716
 Philip II. of Spain and the House of
 Austria, 2716-2727
 Phillip II. and Rise of the Dutch Re-
 public, 2727-2746
 Civil Wars of Religion in France, 2746-
 2771
 The Thirty Years' War, 2771-2800
 Reform Bills, in England, of 1832, 3560,
 3561
 of 1867, 3656
 of 1884, 3802
 Reforms and innovations of Princes and
 Ministers in Europe, 3139-3156
 Regilianus, 1449
 Regio Syrtica, 431
 Regulators, 3216
 Regulus, 1197-1200
 Rehoboam, 399, 404
 Reichenbach, Peace of, 3173
 Treaties of, 3487
 Reichsrath, Austrian, 3638, 3650
 Reichstadt, Duke of, 3578
 Reichstag, German, 3700
 Reid, Thomas, 3508
 Reid, Whitelaw, 4268
 Reign of Terror in France, 3384, 3386
 Reigns of Terror in England, First, 2683
 Second, 2892
 Reinach, Baron, 3850
 Reitfontein, battle of, 3827, 4476, 4477
 Reitz, Francois Willem, 4505
 Religion, account of the varieties of, 34, 35
 Arabian, 1764, 1765
 Aztec, 2636, 2637
 Brahmanism, 621-653
 Buddhism, 653-672
 Chaldee-Assyro-Babylonian, 286-323
 Christianity, 1082-1087, 1390, 1395, 1396,
 1461-1493
 Confucianism, 685-692
 Egyptian, 92-107
 Ethiopian, 110
 Grecian, 723-749
 Judaism, 347-415
 Mohammedanism, or Islam, 1761-1879
 Phœnician and Carthaginian, 336-339
 Roman, 1136-1142
 Scandinavian, 1966-1989
 Shintoism, 696
 Taoism, 692-694
 Zoroastrianism and Magism, 581-611
 Religions, birthplace of, 32
 Religious development in Semitic races, 28
 Religious Wars, in France, 2746-2771
 in Germany, 2609-2625
 in Switzerland, 2607-2609
 Rembrandt, 3028
 Remus, 1125
 Renan, Ernest, 3965
 Reno, General Jesse Lee, 4159
 Reno, Major, 4253
 Rensburg, battles of, 3827, 4490
 Renshaw, Commander, 4152
 Repnin, Prince, 3160
 Republics, Batavian, 3401, 3421, 3435
 Cisalpine, 3415, 3421, 3424, 3435
 Commonwealth of England, 2852-2869
 Dutch, rise of the, 2727-2746
 French, First, 3374-3438
 French, Second, 3688-3693, 3609-3612
 French, Third, 3669-3689, 3705-3719,
 3842-3868
 Helvetic, 3417, 3421
 Ligurian, 3415, 3421
 Parthenopean, 3421, 3422, 3424
 Roman, ancient, 1143-1325
 Roman, under Rienzi, 2388
 Roman, of 1796, 3416, 3421, 3426
 Roman, of 1848, 3607, 3608
 of Athens, 722, 781-793, 809-978
 of Andorre, 4335
 of San Marino, 3633, 4335
 of Ragusa, 3065

- of Novgorod, 2420, 2428, 2431
- of Poland, 2435
- of Switzerland, 2111-2113, 2115, 2116, 2607-2609, 2798, 3585, 3586, 3903-3905
- of Florence, 2383-2385
- of Genoa, 2383, 2385, 3415
- of Pisa, 2383, 2385
- of Venice, 2383-2385, 3415
- of the United States of America, 3239-3311, 3973-4335
- of the United States of Mexico, 4350-4363
- of the United States of Brazil, 4374-4388
- of Liberia, 3953
- of Cuba, 4328, 4349, 4350, 4432
- of Hayti, 4349
- of Dominica, 4349
- of Guatemala, 4348
- of Honduras, 4348
- of Salvador, 4348
- of Nicaragua, 4348
- of Costa Rica, 4348
- of Columbia, 4343-4346, 4364, 4388
- of Venezuela, 4343-4346, 4374, 4388
- of Ecuador, 4343-4346, 4388
- of Peru, 4347, 4348, 4364-4368, 4388
- of Bolivia, 4346, 4347, 4365-4368
- of Chili, 4347, 4365-4374
- of Argentina, 4346, 4364, 4374, 4388
- of Paraguay, 4364, 4365
- of Uruguay, 4364, 4365
- South African, or the Transvaal, 3823-3830, 4439-4623
- Orange Free State, 3823, 4439-4623
- of Texas, 4070-4074, 4353, 4354
- of Hawaii, 4268, 4269, 4303
- of Spain, 3689-3700
- Requesens, Don Louis de, 2733-2735
- Resaca, battle of, 4201, 4202
- Resaca de la Palma, battle of, 4079, 4080
- Restoration, Stuart, in England, 2869-2906
- Restorations, Bourbon, in France, 3404, 3405-3505
- Resumption of specie payments in the United States, 4257
- Retreat of the Ten Thousand, 524, 525, 896-898
- Retz, Cardinal de, 2973, 2976
- Retz, Count of, 2757
- Reuben, 355
 - tribe of, 361
- Reuchlin, John, 2591
- Reuss, Prince of, 3487
- Revolutions, American, 3185-3351
 - the English, 2811-2952
 - the European, 3521-3612
 - French (see French Revolution), 3257-3428
 - the Greek, 3536-3541
 - the Spanish, of 1868, 3650-3654
 - of 1873, 3689-3700
 - of 1875, 3699, 3700
 - the Spanish American, 3534, 3535, 4341-4348
 - the Texan, 4069, 4070, 4353
- Revolutions, age of, in Europe, 3139-3183
- Rewbell, 3404, 3414
- Reynolds, John F., General, 4171
- Reynolds, Sir Joshua, 3512
- Resin, King of Damascus, 341, 402, 407
- Rezon, King of Damascus, 341, 399
- Rhadamanthus, 744
- Rhætia, 1340
- Rhages, 452
- Rhea, 723
- Rhelms, Jeanne d'Arc's entry into, 2195
 - evacuation of, 3493
- Rheinfeld, battle of, 2793
- Rhenish Bavaria, 3598
- Rhenish Confederation, 3445, 3446
- Rhenish League, 2978
- Rhenish Prussia, 3598
- Rheomithras, 528
- Rhetel, battle of, 2975
- Rhine, Confederation of the, 3445, 3446
- Rhode Island, 2977
 - colony of, 2938
- Rhodes, 711, 722, 757, 1224, 1833, 2073, 2074
 - siege and capture of, 2581
- Rhodes, Cecil, 4464, 4508
- Rhodes, Colossus at, 1106
 - destroyed, 1833
- Rhosesaces, 531
- Riall, 4021
- Rialto, 2383, 2384
- Ricardo, David, 3956
- Ricasoli, Baron Bettino, 3586
- Rich, Lady, 2804
- Richard, Duke of Gloucester, afterwards
 - Richard III., 2336, 2339, 2342-2349
- Richard, Earl of Cornwall, 2101, 2275

- Richard II., of England, 2304-2316
 abdication of, 2315
 abolishes Parliament, 2313
 character of, 2304
 imprisonment of, 2315
- Richard III., of England, 2336-2349
 and the Princes of the Tower, 2346
 death of, 2349
- Richard the Fearless, 1919, 1991
- Richard the Good, 1993
- Richard the Lion-hearted, 2066-2068, 2282-2264
 character of, 2067
 death of, 2264
 imprisonment of, 2068, 2091, 2263
 in the third Crusade, 2066
- Richardson, General, 4159
- Richardson, Samuel, 3509
- Richelieu, Cardinal, 2783, 2785, 2790, 2794, 2960-2970
 alliance of with Sweden, 2790
 conspiracies against, 2968
 death of, 2794
 in Italy, 2968
 subdues La Rochelle, 2965
- Richelieu, Duke de, 3119-3121, 3124
- Richelieu, Duke de, another, 3524
- Richmond, Duke of, 3284, 3287, 3297
- Richmond, Earl of, 2346
- Richmond, Virginia, 3208, 3226, 3269
 siege of, 4197, 4198, 4218, 4219
 fall of, 4219,
- Richmond, Kentucky, Battle of, 4160, 4161
- Rich Mountain, battle of, 4137
- Richter, 3965
- Ricimer, 1510, 1511
- Ridgefield, battle of, 3247
- Ridley, Bishop of London, 2673, 2674
- Ried, treaty of, 3469
- Riego, Colonel, 3531
- Rienst, Cola de, 2388
- Riga, siege of, 3066, 3067
- Rigault, 3688
- Rights, Petition of, 2926
- Rights, Bill of, 2907
 declaration of, 2905
- Rig-Veda, extracts from, 623-626
- Ringgold, Major, 4079
- Rio de la Hacha, 4345
- Rio de la Plata, 2526
 vol. 15-20
- Rio Grande do Sul, revolt in, 4387, 4388
- Rio Janeiro, bombardment of, 4380-4386
 during naval revolt, 4378-4388
 martial law in, 4385
 revolt in, 4378
- Riot Act, passed in England, 3080-3081
- Ripley, General, 4021
- Ripon, Marquis of, 2795
- Ripon, treaty of, 2835
- Riparian Franks, 1544
- Riparian laws, 1548
- Rise of the Dutch Republic, 2727-2746
- Ristitch, 3911
- Rivera, General Primo de, 3698
- Rivero, Mexican general, 4360
- Rivero, Spanish statesman, 3690
- River Raisin, 4018
- Rivers, Lord, 2343, 2344
- Rivoll, battle of, 2411
 capture of, 3306
- Rizzo, David, 2684, 2711
- Roanoke Island, capture of, 4152
- Robber Barons, 2252
- Robert, Count of Artois, 2159, 2167, 2293
- Robert I. of Normandy, 1916, 1989, 1990
- Robert Guiscard, 1950, 1965, 1995, 1996, 2388
- Robert I. (Bruce), 2371-2374
- Robert II. of Scotland, 2376
- Robert III. of Scotland, 2319, 2376, 2377
- Roberts, General Lord, 2792, 2794, 2795, 3828-3830, 4503, 4506-4623
- Robertson, William, 3510
- Robert II., the Devil, Duke of Normandy, 1994, 2133
 death of, 1994, 2134
 government of, 1994
 pilgrimage to Palestine of, 1994, 2134
- Robert the Pious, of France, 1993, 2132, 2133
 churches erected by, 2132
 death of, 2133
 marriage of, 2132
- Robert the Strong, 1908
- Robespierre, 3368, 3372, 3374, 3376, 3381, 3383, 3384, 3386-3391, 3392-3398, 3400
- Robinson, Rev. John, 2814, 2933
- Rochambeau, Count de, 2965, 3271, 3270
- Rochambeau, Count de, another, 4251
- Rocheport, Henri, 3669, 3688
- Rockingham, Marquis of, 3190, 3192, 3193,

- 3211, 3261, 3314, 3319
 Rock-temples, of Elephanta, 111
 of Ipsambul, 111
 of India, 670
 Rocky Mount, battle of, 3263
 Rocroi, battle of, 2795, 2971
 Roderic, King of the Visigoths, 1532, 1640
 Rodgers, Captain, 4012
 Rodgers, Captain John, 4182, 4241
 Rodman, General, 4159
 Rodney, Sir George, Admiral, 3126, 3275, 3277, 3278
 Rudolph of Burgundy, 1914
 Rodrigo Diaz, "The Cid," 2391, 2392
 Roduald, 1541
 Roebuck, 3620
 Roemer, 326
 Roger I. of Sicily, 1996
 Roger II. of Sicily, 1996, 2064, 2388
 Roger-Ducos, 3427, 3429
 Roger, Raymond, Viscount of Abbey, 2076
 Rogers, John, 2673
 Rogers, Samuel, 2957
 Rohan, Duke de, 2963
 Rohillas, 3318, 3322
 Rojstvensky, Admiral, 3885, 3886, 4722, 4729, 4730
 Roland and Oliver, story of, 1889-1893
 Roland, Madame, 3371, 3385, 3511
 Roland, the Girondist leader, 3368, 3370, 3373, 3385
 Rolfe, John, 2931
 Rolica, battle of, 3464
 Rollin, Ledru, 3589, 3590, 3592
 Rollin, the historian, 3510
 Rollo, Duke of Normandy, 1912, 1916, 1964, 1989-1991
 Roman Catholic Church, origin of, 1469-1479
 Roman Empire, 1327-1514
 classes in, 1350
 converted to Christianity, 1461-1493
 decline of, 1430-1461
 fall of, 1494-1514
 final division of, 1502, 1503
 flourishing period, 1379-1430
 provinces of, 1327-1357
 reorganized by Constantine, 1474-1478
 revenues of, 1382-1383
 Roman Empire, Eastern, 1573-1605, 2069, 2070, 2441-2448
 Roman Empire, Western, 1494-1514
 Romano, Eszelino da, 2095
 Romanoff, Michael, of Russia, 3052
 Romance dialects, 2154, 2155
 Romans, amusements of, 1361-1363
 arts of the, 1357, 1358
 computation of time by, 21
 dress of the, 1360, 1361
 festivals of, 1359, 1360
 food of, 1358, 1359
 industries of, 1385, 1386
 literature of the, 1318-1325, 1370-1378
 marriage and funeral customs, 1364, 1365
 public baths, 1361
 religion of, 1136-1142
 social life of, 1357-1365
 triumphs of the, 1368-1370
 wealth and luxury of the, 1337-1338, 1332, 1358, 1359
 Romanus, Governor of Bosrah, converted to Mohammedanism, 1815
 Romanus I., 1599
 Romanus II., 1599
 Romanus III., 1601
 Romanus IV. (Diogenes), 1601, 2032, 2066
 Romanzoff, General, 3161, 3166, 3167
 Rome, 1111-1514
 Ædiles of, 1133, 1150
 aqueducts of, 1192, 1331, 1332
 Augurs of, 1140, 1141
 captured and burned by the Gauls, 116, 1166
 captured and plundered by the Catholic soldiers of Charles V., 2579
 captured by Vandals, 1510
 Carthage and, 444-446, 1194-1236
 catacombs in, 1462, 1472
 city cohorts of, 1381
 city of, 1327-1333
 civil wars of, 1327-1318
 classes in, 1350
 colonies of, 1191
 conquered by the Gauls, 1165, 1166
 constitutional growth of, 1124-1136, 1145-1179
 Decemvirs of, 1156-1159
 early legends and traditions of, 1124-1130, 1143-1168
 Flamens, 1141
 foreign cities under, 1192
 founding of, 1125
 laws of the twelve tables, 1, 1156, 1157

- military despotism in, 1430-1461
 Pestilences in, 1153, 1431
 pontiffs of, 1140, 1141
 Prætorian Guards of, 1381, 1434, 1435
 Punic wars and foreign conquests, 444-446, 1194-1236
 right of suffrage in, 1193
 roads of, 1191, 1192, 1332, 1383, 1384
 sacked by the Byzantines, 1579, 1580
 sacred colleges, 1140, 1141
 Samnite wars and conquests of Italy by, 1173-1194
 Senate of, 1129, 1143, 1144, 1164-1167, 1174, 1187, 1211, 1214, 1241, 1245-1248, 1257, 1265, 1266, 1269, 1272, 1289, 1301-1305, 1380, 1456, 1457, 1511
 seven hills of, 1134, 1328
 siege of capitol, 1166
 soldiers of, 1133, 1365-1368
 struggle for existence of, 1143-1172
 table of emperors of, 1514
 tribunes of, 1133, 1150
 under emperors, 1379-1514
 under the Kings, 1124-1136
 war vessels of, 1196, 1197, 1367, 1368
 Rome, Ancient landmarks in, Campus Martius, 1331
 Capitol, 1329
 Circus Maximus, 1328, 1329
 Comitium, 1330, 1331
 Flavian Amphitheater, or Colosseum, 1331
 Forum, 1330
 Pantheon, 1331
 Quirinal, 1329, 1330
 Senate House, 1330
 Tarpeian Rock, 1329
 Temple of Jupiter Capitolinus, 1329
 Temple of Janus, 1330
 Trajan's Column, 1330
 Rome, Georgia, capture of, 4202
 Rome, King of (Napoleon's son), 3478, 3479
 Rome, modern, annexed to kingdom of Italy, 3679
 Rome, Œcumenical Council of, 3653
 Rome, Papal, duration of, 2388
 Rome, Ancient, Republic of, 1143-1325
 fall of, 1317, 1318
 government of, 1143, 1144
 Romilly, Sir Samuel, 3512, 3518
 Romish Church, in England, 2301
 in Germany, 3144
 great schisms of, 2117-2119
 Romney, battle of, 4137
 Romorantin, edict of, 2750
 Romulus, 1125, 1127
 Romulus Augustulus, 1511, 1512
 Roncaglia, diet at, 2085
 Roncevalles, battle of, 1889-1893
 Ronsin, 3387
 Rooke, Sir George, 2923, 2999, 3008
 Roosevelt, Theodore, 4295, 4325, 4329, 4333
 Rosa, Parepa, 3968
 Rosa, Salvator, 3028
 Rosalie, Fort, massacre of, 3018
 Rosamond, 1639
 Rosas, General, 4364
 Roselin, 2139
 Roscebeque, battle of, 2178
 Rosebery, Lord, 3813, 3814, 3821
 Rosecrans, William S., General, 4137, 4146, 4148, 4161, 4162, 4173, 4179, 4180, 4191
 Roses, Wars of the, 2334-2352, 2811-2930
 Rosetta Stone, 23, 42, 43
 Roskild, peace of, 3031, 3035, 3036
 Rosny, Fort, 3671, 3674
 Ross, Captain, 3953
 Ross, Earl of, 2379, 2381
 Ross, General, 4022
 Rossbach, battle of, 3122
 Rossi, 3607
 Rossignol, 3387
 Rossini, 3967
 Rostopschin, 3482
 Rotharis, 1540
 Rothchild, Nathan Lionel, 3655
 Rotteck, 3965
 Rotterdam, 2521, 2727
 Rouen, siege of, 2327
 siege of, another, 2754
 Rouget de l'Isle, 3371, 3511
 Roum, Seljuks of, 2044
 Roumania, 3640, 3907
 independence of, 3738
 Russia and, 3551, 3760, 3763-3765
 table of kings of, 4889
 Roumania, Charles, Prince of, 3640, 3907
 Roundheads, 2840
 Round table, knights of the, 1529, 2028
 Roundway Down, battle of, 2842
 Rouse, 2860

- Rousseau, American general, 4141, 4161, 4162, 4202
 Rousseau, French philosopher, 3139-3141, 3359, 3511
 Rousseau, Waldeck, statesman, 3862, 3864, 3865
 Roussillon, 1893, 2979
 Roxana, wife of Alexander the Great, 997, 1004
 Roxbury, Massachusetts, 2934
 Roxolani, 1422
 Royal Society in England, founding of the, 2886, 3026
 Rubens, Peter Paul, 3027
 Rubinstein, 3968
 Rudiger, General, 3605
 Rudiger von Stahremberg, 3013, 3060
 Rudini, Marquis di, 3893, 3895
 Rudolf II. of Germany, 2723, 2725, 2726
 education and religion of, 2725
 in the Castle of Prague, 2771-2774
 Rudolf, of Hapsburg, 2102-2104
 Rudolf, of Suabia, 1936, 1949
 Rudra, 622, 641
 Ruell, Treaty of, 2970
 Ruffo, Cardinal, 3424
 Rufinus, 1503
 Rugen Island, 2798, 3454
 Rule, Britannia, song of, 3109, 3110
 Rump Parliament, 2849, 2852, 2857, 2867
 Rundle, General Sir Henry Macloed Leslie, 4504
 Runes of the Scandinavians, 1972
 Runic alphabet, 1972
 Runnymede, 2268, 2269
 Rupert, of Germany, 2116, 2117
 Rupert, Prince of the Palatinate, 2793, 2841-2845, 2856, 2877, 2880
 Ruremonde, battle of, 2732, 2400
 Ruric, of Russia, 1965, 2420
 Ruskin, John, 3960
 Russakoff, Nicolai, 3785, 3787, 3798
 Russell, Admiral, 2916, 2917, 2998
 Russell, Edward, 2902
 Russell, Lord John, 3560, 3566, 3571, 3555, 3556, 3620
 Russell, Lord William, 2885, 2886
 Russell, Odo, 3768
 Russey, Fort de, capture of, 2189
 Russia, 2420-2433, 2548, 3065, 3072, 3156-3183
 assassination of Alexander II., 3785, 3786
 Christianity in, 2424
 coronation of Nicholas II., 3980, 3981
 Crimea annexed to, 3169
 Crimean war, 3617-3623
 emancipation of serfs in, 3643
 first money coined in, 2430
 Grand-Dukes, Czars and Emperors, table of, 4881
 Greek Christian Church established in, 2424
 improvements under Peter the Great, 3053-3056, 3072, 3073
 insurrection of Daghestan, 3747
 internal dissensions of, 2427, 2428
 invaded by Napoleon Bonaparte, 317-3484
 invaded by the Tartars, 2427
 laws of, 2425
 Nihilism in, 3779-3791
 persecution of Jews in, 3879, 3880, 3881, 3884
 Poland partitioned by, 3164, 3177, 3181
 Polish insurrection of 1830-1831, 354-3549
 printing in, 3047
 recent events in, 3879-3888, 3932-3947
 reforms of Alexander II., 3643
 reign of terror in, 3782
 revolt of the Strelitz, 3055
 serfdom in, 3050
 Trans-Siberian railroad of, 4705
 under Catharine the Great, 3156-3183
 under Demetri, 3050
 under Feodor III., 3053
 under Ivan I., 2429
 under Ivan II., 2429
 under Ivan the Great, 2431-2433
 under Ivan the Terrible, 3045-3049
 under Michael Romanoff, 3052
 under Peter the Great, 3053-3056, 3063-3073
 under Ruric, 2420
 under Tartar supremacy, 2427-2429
 under Vladimir the Great, 2423, 2424
 Russo-Japanese War, 3884-3887, 4694-4729
 battle of Liao Yang, 3885, 4718
 battle of the Sahke river, 3885, 4720
 battle of the Hun river, 3886, 4725
 battle of Moukden, 3886, 4726
 siege and fall of Port Arthur, 3886, 4726

- battle of the Sea of Japan, 3886, 4729
 Peace of Portsmouth, 3886, 3887, 4731, 4732
 Russo-Turkish War of, 1877-1878, 3725-3774
 Bulgaria, and, 3728, 3765, 3766
 cruelties of the, 3742
 defeats of Russians in Armenia, 3736, 3737
 fall of Plevna, 3751-3752
 first campaign, 3736-3737
 second campaign, 3737-3747
 third campaign, 3747-3755
 neutrality of European Powers towards, 3732
 peace of San Stefano, 3760, 3761
 peace negotiations, 3755-3760
 protocol of, 3733, 3734
 Roumania and, 3763-3765
 Russian victories of, 3749-3752
 Servia and, 3727, 3728, 3752-3754
 Rust, the god, 1137
 Rustchuk, bombardment of, 3741, 3742, 3745
 evacuation and destruction of, 3487
 Rut-ammon, 59
 Rutilius, 1259
 Rutland, Earl of, 2898
 Rutledge, John, 3302, 3307
 Rutli, League of, 2112
 Rutowski, General, 3105
 Rye House Plot, 2885
 Rymenants, 2736
 Ryswick, peace of, 2918, 2936, 3000, 3001
 Rzewuski, Count, 3175

 SA'AD IBN WAKAS, 1823, 1824, 1826
 Saalfeld, battle of, 3448
 Saarbrücken, skirmish at, 3665
 Sabaco, or Shabak, or Shabatok, 58, 109, 177, 178
 Sabanieff, General, 3456
 Sabine Cross Roads, battle of, 4190
 Sabines, 1116, 1117
 seizure of their women, 1126
 war of the, with Rome, 1126
 Saccæ, 480
 Sacans, 489
 Sacaséné, 213
 Sacastane, 1063
 Sacheverell, Dr. Henry, 2927, 2928
 Sachs, Hans, 2804
 Sac Indiana, 2632, 4056

 Sackett's Harbor, battle of, 4019
 Sackville, Lord, 4264
 Sacramento, battle of, 4083
 Sadducees, 1074
 Sadi-Carnot, 3846
 assassination of, 3854, 3855
 Sadowa, battle of, 3647, 3648
 Sadyattes, 424
 Safvet Pasha, 3732
 Sagartia, 456
 Sagas, 1960
 Saguntum, 768
 siege and capture of, 445, 1206
 Sahib, Nana, 3625
 Sahin Gueray, 3168, 3169
 Sahke, battle of, 3885, 4720, 4721
 Saib, Tipproo, 3280, 3333, 3344
 Said Kalid Barghash, 3816
 Said Pasha, Viceroy of Egypt, 3721, 3722
 Saif, son of Dsu-Yam, 1705, 1706
 Saintes, battle of, 2150
 Sakhalin, Japanese conquest of, 4730
 Sakuntalah, 647
 Sakyi-muni, 653-655, 671, 672
 Saladin, 1875, 2045, 2066, 2067
 conquests in Palestine, 1875
 grants truce to Christians in Palestine, 2066, 2067
 Salamanca, battle of, 3468
 Salamanca, University of, 2052
 Salamis, 518, 754, 850, 1008
 Salamis, another, 823, 887
 battle of, 515, 826-827, 887, 929, 1039
 Salankemen, battle of, 3064
 Salem, Massachusetts, founding of, 2934
 witchcraft in, 2936
 Salerno, city of, saved by Normans, 1995
 Sallian Franks, 1544
 Salic Law, in France, 1548, 2165, 2166, 2223, 2224
 Salli, 1137
 Salisbury, Countess of, 2653
 Salisbury, England, 2903
 Salisbury, Marquis of, 3731, 3732, 3764, 3768, 3771, 3802-3804, 3810, 3814, 3818, 3820, 3821, 3832, 3838
 Salisbury, North Carolina, Union raid into, 4217
 Salisbury, Robert Cecil, Earl of, 2813
 Salle, Robert de La, 3017, 3018
 Sallust, 24, 1323

- Salameron, Francisco, 3652
 Salameron, Nicholas, 3694-3696
 *Salonica, riot in, 3726
 Saltillo, 4081, 4083
 Salt Lake City, 4089
 Salvator Rosa, 3028
 Salvador, republic of, 4346
 Salzbach, 2987
 Samanee, dynasty of, 9031
 Samanee, Ismail, 9031
 Samarcand, fall of, 2452
 Samaria, city of, 400
 conquered by Sargon, 176, 177, 403
 siege of, by Shalmaneser IV., 175
 Samaria, province of, 1345
 Samaritans, 403
 Sama-Veda, 637
 Sammuramit, 170
 Samnites, 1192, 1173-1194
 Samnite wars, 1173-1194
 Samoan islands, civil wars in, 4264, 4265,
 4322, 4323
 Samos, 711, 722, 728, 756, 853, 979
 Samothrace, 711
 Sampson, Admiral William Thomas, 4290,
 4291, 4293
 Samson, story of, 387, 388
 Samuel, 387-390
 San, or Sansi, 296, 297, 309, 310
 San Antonio, battle of, 4084
 San Antonio de Bexar, 4080
 Sanchoniathon, 23, 24, 335
 Sancourt, battle of, 1912
 Sancroft, William, Archbishop of Canter-
 bury, 2898, 2899, 2901, 2905
 Sanders Creek, battle of, 3264
 San Domingo, or Hayti, insurrection in, 3434,
 4349
 San Domingo, city of, founded, 2527
 Sandwich, Lord, 3274, 3330
 Sandwich, Lord, naval commander, 2880
 Sandwich Islands, 3330, 3518, 3519, 4104, 4271,
 4303
 San Fernando, capture of, 4306, 4309
 Sangarius river, 418
 Sanhedrim, 1041
 San Ildefonso, treaty of, 3410, 3411
 San Jacinto, Philippines, battle of, 4311
 San Jacinto, Texas, battle of, 4070, 4363
 San Jacinto, vessel, 4143
 Sanjar, 2043
 San Juan, Porto Rico, bombardment of, 429,
 4292
 San Juan Hill, capture of, 4295, 4296
 San Juan de Ulloa, 4063
 San Julian, Fort, 3697
 Shankhya-Karika, 636
 Sankhya Philosophy, 636, 637
 San Luis Potosi, 4081, 4359, 4361
 San Marino, 3633, 4335
 San Martin, 4347
 Sanna's Post, battle of, 4522
 San Salvador, 2526, 2527
 Sans-Culottes, 3382, 3384, 3390, 3393
 San Sebastian, 3400, 3469, 3652
 Sanskrit language in ancient India, 620, 621
 Sanskrit Hindoos, 613-672
 San Stefano, 3760, 3761
 Santa Anna, General, 4070, 4081, 4082-4085,
 4101, 4351-4357
 Santa Cruz, battle of, 2862
 Santa Cruz, General, 4365
 Santa Fé, 2546, 4081, 4083
 Santa Martha, 4344
 Santerre, 3371, 3378
 Santiago, Chili, 4347, 4369, 4372-4374
 Santiago de Cuba, 3900, 4247, 4294-4295,
 4388, 4405, 4330
 land and naval battles of, 4295-4297
 Santo, Cesario, 3855
 Sapor I., 1448, 1614-1620
 bas-reliefs and rock inspections of, 1611,
 1618
 public works of, 1617
 religion of, 1619
 wars of, 1614-1617
 Sapor II., 1481-1484, 1486, 1487, 1626-1655
 cruelties of, 1627
 military genius of, 1626, 1650
 wars of, 1628, 1629, 1632, 1640, 1650
 Sapor III., 1656
 Sappho, 795, 796
 Sarablagas, 1738
 Saracen and Moorish rulers in Spain, table
 of, 1872, 2406
 Saracen Empire, 1519, 1811-1858
 attacks Rome, 1813
 conquests and wars of, 1811-1843
 conquest of Spain, 1840, 1841
 ernervation of, 1853
 extent of, under Yezid I., 1843

- fleets of, destroyed by Greek fire, 1836, 1837
 - greatest period of, 1853
 - invasion of France, 1841-1843
 - learning in, 1853-1855
- Saracen Khalifs, table of, 1858
- Saracen Khalifate of Cordova, 1854, 1859-1872
 - Augustan age of, 1867
 - brilliant period of, 1865-1867
 - extent of, 1869, 1870
 - fall of, 1869-1872
 - government of, 1856, 1871
 - learning in, 1876-1879
 - manufactures and industries of, 1870, 1876, 1877
 - marriage customs in, 1870
- Saracens invited into Spain by Julian, 1840
- origin of name, 1815
- Saracus, 214-215
 - legends of, 214
 - palace of, 214
- Saragossa, battle of, 3013
 - conquered by Charlemagne, 1889
 - siege and fall of, 3466
- Sarah, or Sarai, story of, 347-348
- Saraiva, General, 4387
- Sarangia, 457
- Saratoga, battle of, 3251
- Sardanapalus, tomb of, 210
- Sardinia, island of, 1111, 1190, 1191, 1203
- Sardinia, Kingdom of, 2387, 3084, 3591, 3631, 3532, 3550, 3551, 3586, 3606-3608, 3621
 - annexations to, 3632, 3633
 - invaded by Austria, 3628-3633
 - table of kings of, 4682
- Sardia, 421, 429, 895
 - battle of, 429, 487
 - capture of, 513, 809
- Sargon, king of Assyria, 58, 176-183
 - architectural works of, 180-183
 - court of, at Babylon, 179
 - deportation of populations, by Sargon, 180
 - usurpation of, 176
- Sarsfield, Patrick, 2913, 2914
- Sarmatia, 1351
- Sarmatians, 1478
- Sarum, Old, 3187
- Sassacus, 2939
- Sassanids, New Persian Empire of the (see Persian Empire), 1606-1700
- Sassulitch, Vera, 3779
- Sasychia, of Egypt, 45
- Satrapa, Persian, 505
- Sattagydia, 457
- Saturn, 723
- Saturnalia, 1137
- Saturninus, 1255
- Satyra, 738
- Sauchieburn, battle of, 2381
- Saul, King of Israel, 390-394
 - and Samuel, 391
 - anger and jealousy of, 393, 394
 - death of, 394
 - melancholy of, 393
 - wars with the Amelekites, 392
- Saül-Mugina, 202
- Saul, of Tarsus, 1085
- Saumarez, Sir James, 3459, 3474
- Saumur, battle of, 3387
- Sauromaces, 1652
- Savage Station, battle of, 4157
- Savannah, 2949
 - capture of, 3261
 - evacuation of, 3281
 - siege of, 3262
 - occupations of, 4204
- Savannah, vessel, 4143
- Savenay, battle of, 3388
- Savitri, 622
- Savona, 2575
- Savonarola, 2387, 2548, 2551, 2592
- Savoy, Duchy of, 2387, 2585, 4882
- Savoy, Eugene, Prince of, 2922, 3006, 3008-3012, 3014, 3064, 3063, 3095, 3097
- Savoy, Victor Amadeus, Duke of, 2967
- Saxe-Coburg-Gotha, Albert, Prince of, 3563
 - death of, 3655
- Saxe-Coburg-Gotha, Ferdinand, Prince of, 3910, 3911
- Saxe-Coburg, Leopold, Prince of, 3546, 3580
- Saxe, John Godfrey, 3962
- Saxe, Marshal, 3104, 3106, 3110, 3111
- Saxe-Weimar, Bernhard, Duke of, 2789, 2790, 2792, 2793, 2969
- Saxon Heptarchy in Britain, 1559
- Saxon Kings and Emperors of Germany, 1929-1931
- Saxons, 1351, 1352, 1494, 1507, 1521, 1886, 1889, 1893, 1896
 - meaning of names of, 1523

- migration to, and conquest of Britain by, 1556-1571
 Saxony, conquest of, by Charlemagne, 1896
 forfeited to Barbarossa, 2090
 invaded by Frederick the Great, 3190
 made a kingdom, 3453, 3521
 table of kings of, 4888
 Saxony, Augustus III., elector of, 2622
 Saxony, Frederick Augustus II. of, 3066, 3068, 3094
 Saxony, Frederick Augustus III., elector of, 3094, 3159
 Saxony, John, elector of, 2605, 2606, 2612
 Saxony, John Frederick, elector of, 2586, 2612, 2614-2616
 Saxony, John George, elector of, 2784, 2785, 2791
 Saxony, Maurice, Count of, 3104-3106, 3110, 3111
 Saxony, Maurice, Duke of, 2612, 2614-2617, 2619, 2620, 2622
 Say and Seal, Lord, 2333
 Say and Seal, Lord, another, 2936
 Saybrook, 2938
 Sayle, William, 2948
 Scævola, Mucius, 1146, 1147
 Schalk-Burger, General, 4505
 Scanderbeg, 2485
 Scandinavia, description of, 1955, 1956
 reformation in, 2633-2636
 sagas, or songs, 1960
 skalds, or bards of, 1959
 Vikings of, 1955-1966
 Scandinavian Kingdoms, 2409-2419, 3582, 3583
 Scandinavians, 1521, 1523, 1955-1969
 alphabet of, 1972
 berserker rage of, 1963
 characteristics of, 1960-1962
 classes of, 1958
 converted to Christianity, 1966-1969
 conquests of, 1959-1966
 cosmogony of, 1966-1984
 customs of, 1959-1963
 maritime boldness of, 1959-1966
 origin of, 1955, 1956
 patriarchal institutions of, 1966-1969
 religion of, 1966-1969
 settlements of in V. Century, 1957
 Zoroastrianism compared with religion of, 1967, 1968
 Scarron, the poet, 2990
 Schackoskoy, Prince, 3741
 Schamyl, 3574, 3618
 Scharnhorst, Marshal, 3496
 Schellenberg, battle of, 3008
 Schelling, 3956
 Schenck, Robert C., 4210
 Schenectady, New York, destroyed, 2936
 Schill, Ferdinand von, 3472
 Schiller, 3154, 3512
 Schlegel, Augustus and Frederick William, 3965
 Schleiermacher, 3956
 Schleits, battle of, 3448
 Schleswig-Holstein, 3595
 Schleswig-Holstein war of 1848-49, 3559, 3600
 Schleswig-Holstein war of 1864, 3644, 3645
 Schley, Commodore Winfield Scott, 4293, 4296, 4297
 Schliemann, Dr., 23, 719
 Schlosser, 3966
 Schlusberg, 3068
 Schmalkald, league of, 2607, 2608, 2610, 2611, 2621
 Schoeffler, 2521
 Schofield, General John McA., 4151, 4294, 4292, 4293, 4212, 4214, 4215, 4245
 Schoharie, Valley, 3259
 Scholasticism, 2052, 2063
 Schomberg, Duke of, 2912, 2913
 Schomberg, Marshal, 2993, 2994
 Schombergk Line, in Venezuela, 4275
 Schombergk, Sir R., 4275
 Schönbrunn, peace of, 3471
 Schoolmen, 2052, 2063
 Schopenhauer, 3956
 Schouvaloff, Count, 3460
 Schouvaloff, Count, another, 3734, 3738, 3761, 3768
 Schreiner family of South Africa, 4501
 Schreiner, Olive, 4501
 Schreiner, Theophilus, 4502, 4503
 Schreiner, W. P., 4501, 4502
 Schubert, 3967
 Schultz, 3769
 Schumann, 3967
 Schuyler, Fort, siege of, 3251
 Schuyler, Philip, General, 3282, 3280, 3281
 Schwarz, Berthold, 2521

- hwartzenberg, Prince, 3476, 3481, 3487-3489, 3492, 3493
 hwegler, 1124
 hweidnitz, 3133
 capture of, 3137
 seige of, 3131
 hwerin, Marshal, 3100, 3121
 hwyz, Canton of, 2111, 2112
 ience, among the Arabs, 1876-1879
 discovery of Argon and the Roentgen Rays, 2963
 in Alexandria, 1039, 1040
 in Babylonia, 277-281
 in Chaldea, 139-140
 in China, 680-685
 in early Egypt, 78
 in England under Charles II., 2688, 3025, 3026
 in Germany in the Eighteenth Century, 3154 3306, 3507
 modern, 2801, 2802, 3025, 3026, 3506-3508, 3953-3956
 of the Eighteenth Century, 3506, 3508
 of the Nineteenth Century, 3953, 3956
 of the Saracens, 1876-1879
 rapid strides of, 2963
 Royal Society of, founded, 2888, 3026
 iences, French Academy of, 2970, 3026
 cinde, 3565
 cindia, 2515
 clo, Massacre of, 3537
 naval battle of, 3161, 3162
 cione, revolt of, 868
 icpio Æmilianus, 1232-1234, 1236, 1242
 icpio Africanus, 1217, 1219-1222, 1225, 1226
 icpio Asiaticus, 1225
 icpio, Cneius, 1216
 icpio Nasica, 1241
 icpio, Publius Cornelius, 1207, 1209, 1216, 1217
 icone, 2281, 2285, 2370, 2372
 icotland, 2300-2382, 2703-2716
 acquires the Orkney and Shetland Islands, 2380
 as an English fief, 2370
 Act of Settlement of, 2924
 border warfare of, 2374, 2376
 Christianity introduced into, 2360
 Church of, 2366
 civil war in, 2704, 2708, 2709, 2711-2714
 covenant of, first, 2708
 Drunken Parliament of, 2875
 English customs and laws in, 2367, 2368
 feudalism in, 2368
 government of, 2368
 Highlanders and Lowlanders of, 2397
 independence of, 2374
 invaded by the English,
 linen trade in, 3325
 national covenant of, 2823
 Parliament of, 2369
 parliamentary union of England and, 2924, 2926
 ravaged by the Norwegians, 2367
 Reformation in, 2703-2716
 social progress in, 2368
 table of kings and queens of, 4877
 union of crowns of England and, 2716, 2811
 wars with England, 2361, 2362, 2365, 2370-2377, 2380-2582, 2704-2706
 Scotists, 2052
 Scots, 1356, 1422, 1437, 1494, 1556, 1557, 2360-2382, 2703-2716
 Scots, Mary Queen of, 2655, 2662, 2681-2686, 2689-2692, 2703-2716
 Scott, Dred, 4108, 4109
 Scott, General Winfield, 4017, 4021, 4056, 4061, 4080, 4083-4085, 4100, 4101, 4130, 4143
 Scott, Sir Walter, 3957
 Scotus, Duns, 2052
 Scriptures, Hebrew, 24
 Scrope, Archbishop of York, 2319
 Sculpture, Assyrian, 154, 160, 161, 169, 170, 180, 182, 226-229, 240, 241
 Egyptian, 83, 84
 Greek, 94, 1017
 Phœnician, 335, 336
 Roman, 1351
 Scurcola, battle of, 2100
 Scythia, 1351
 invaded by the Persians, 511-512
 Scythians, 1449
 characteristics of, 211, 212
 invade Assyria, 211-213
 invade Media, 467
 religion of, 312
 Scythians, Zarina, Queen of the, 409
 Scythopolis, 213
 Sea-Beggars, 2730-2732, 2744
 Sea Islands, 4143

- Seater, the god, 1562
 Seg, 96, 97
 Seballs, 3696
 Sebastian, King of Portugal, 2402, 2723, 2724
 Sebastian Cabot, 2527, 2528
 Sebastini, General, 3451, 3455, 3466, 3467
 Seckenheim, battle of, 2124
 Secret Societies in the Eighteenth Century, 3143
 Sedan, battle of, 3667, 3668
 Sedgemoor, battle of, 2892
 Sedgwick, General John,
 Sedition Law, 3999
 Sejanus, 1393-1395
 Seleucia, 1029, 1420
 conquered by the Romans, 1425, 1622
 Seleucidæ, Syrian empire of the, 1028-1037
 Seleucidæ of Syria, table of, 1037
 Seleucus, Nicator, 1028-1030
 Seleucus II., Callinicus, 1030, 1031
 Seleucus III., Ceraunus, 1031
 Seleucus IV., Philopator, 1033, 1034
 Seleucus V., 1036
 Selem Gueray, 3168
 Selim I., Sultan of Turkey, 2486, 2487, 2488-2581
 Selim II., Sultan of Turkey, 2722, 2723
 Selinuntines, 439
 Selinus, 1421
 Seljuk, Turkish chief, 2037
 Seljuk Turks, 1601, 1602, 2037-2045, 2058
 Selkirk, battle of, 2846
 Selma, capture of, 4216
 Semblançai, minister of France, 2571, 2572
 Semendria, 3063
 Seminole Indians, 2533, 4035, 4058
 Seminole War, 4058-4060
 Simiramis, 170, 245
 at Bagistan, 462
 Semitic races, 26, 28
 religious development in, 28
 Semmes, Raphael, 4205, 4206
 Sempach, battle of, 2116
 Sempronius, Tiberius, 1209
 Senate, United States, formation of, 3305, 3306
 Seneca, the Roman philosopher, 1376, 1377, 1405
 Senlac, battle of, 2025
 Seneffe, battle of, 2886
 Senlis, Count de, 1919
 Senlis, treaty of, 2226
 Sennacherib, King of Assyria, 58, 183-190
 at Tyre, 183, 184
 conquests of, 183-190
 disastrous campaign of, 187, 188
 forced labor under, 192, 193
 palaces of, 190-192
 Phœnician fleet of, 186, 189
 Sentinum, battle of, 1181
 Seoul, Japanese at palace of, 4647
 Sepoy mutiny in British India, 3623-3627
 Sepoys of India, 3114
 Septennial Act, 3082
 Septimania, 1841, 1887
 Septimius, 1294, 1295
 Septimius Severus, 1435, 1436
 Serapeium, library of, 1040
 Serapis, Egyptian god, 98
 temple of, 1040
 Serapis, vessel, 3963
 Seraskier Abdulrahman, 3540
 Seraskier Tchauban-Oglou, 3457
 Serfdom, abolition of, in Austria, 2150
 in Russia, 3643
 Sergius Cataline, 1273-1275
 Sergius, Russian Grand Duke, assassination of, 3940, 3941
 Seringpatam, siege and fall of, 3344, 3426
 Serrano, Marshal, 3652, 3662, 3697-3699
 Sertorius, 1270
 Serbia, 2439-2441
 assassination of King Alexandria and Queen Draga of, 3913
 Bulgaria and, 3906, 3909
 erected into a kingdom, 3907
 kings of, table of, 4888
 Turkey and, 3727, 3728, 3752-3754
 Serrvius Tullius, 1132-1135
 Serzedello, 4380
 Sesostris, 52-54
 Sesostris, "Peaceful," of Egypt, 44, 45
 Sestos, siege and capture of, 834
 Seti, the God, 95
 Seti, or Sethos, 41, 52
 Setnekht, 55, 56
 Sevastopol, siege and fall of, 3619-3622
 Seven Days' Battles, 4156, 4157
 Seven Pines, battle of, 4154, 4155
 Seven Weeks' War between Austria and Prussia, 3644-3650
 Seven Wise Men of Greece, 804, 807

- Seven Wonders of the World, 4994**
Seven Years' War, 3113-3138
Severus, 1459
Severus, Alexander, 1441-1449
Severus, Libius, 1510
Severus, Septimius, 1994, 1995
Sevier, Colonel, 3264
Seville, burning of, 3694
Seville, treaty of, 3090
Sewall, Arthur, 4277
Seward, Frederick W., 4290
Seward, William Henry, 4094, 4107, 4112, 4125, 4143, 4144, 4290, 4291
Sewing machine, invention of, 3954
Sextius Lateranus, 1171
Sextus, 1135
Sextus Pompey, 1399, 1311, 1312
Seymour, Admiral, 3725, 3796, 3799, 3831, 4677, 4680
Seymour, Horatio, 4170, 4183, 4208, 4237
Seymour, Jane, wife of Henry VIII., 2651
Seymour, Lord, 2664, 2665
Seymour, Truman, General, 4191, 4192
Sforza, family of, 2387
Sforza, Francisco, Duke of Milan, 2387
Sforza, Ludovico, Duke of Milan, 2548, 2552
Sforza, Maximilian, Duke of Milan, 2561
Shabak, 57
Shabatok, 58
Shakelford, General, 4178
Shafra, 46
Shafter, General William Rufus, 4294-4298
Shaftesbury, Earl of, 2882, 2883, 2885, 2948
Shah, Ahmed, 2511, 2512
Shah Abbas the Great, 2488-2490
Shah Allum, 2509
Shah Allum II., 2513-2515
Shah, Futeh Ali, 2493
Shah, Jehander, 2509
Shah Hussein, 2490, 2491
Shah Jehan, 2504, 2505
Shah, Mohammed (of India), 2509-2511
Shah, Mohammed, of Persia, 2493
Shah, Nadir, 2492, 2493, 2510, 2511
Shah Soojah, 3564
Shahr-Barz, 1734, 1735, 1737-1741, 1743, 1747-1749
Shakespeare, William, 2989, 2992
Shalmaneser I., 141, 142
Shalmaneser II., 169-166
 architecture and monuments of, 165, 166
 conquests and wars of, 162-165
Shalmaneser III., 170
Shalmaneser IV., 175, 176
 in Tyre, 175, 176, 328
 military enterprises of, 175, 176
Shamas, the Sun-god, 296, 309, 310
Shamas-Vul I., 154, 155
Shamas-Vul II., 166-168
 campaigns of, 167, 168
 obelisks of, 167, 168
Shang, or Yin, 676
Shankhai, capture of, 3565, 4632
Shannon, 4020, 4021
Sharp, James, 2887
Shawnee Indians, 2532, 4012
Shays, Daniel, 3294
Shay's Rebellion, 3294, 3295
Sheba, Queen of, 398, 399
Shechem, 400
Sheikh-ul-Islam, 3727
Shelburne, Earl of, 3234, 3281, 3319, 3320
Shelby, Colonel, 3264
Shelby, General, 4177
Shelley, Percy Bysshe, 3957
Shem, 24
Shenandoah Valley, 4134, 4135, 4153-4156, 4160, 4170, 4173, 4198-4201, 4217
Shere Afkun, 2562
Shere Ali, 3792
Shere Shah, 2495, 2496
Sheridan, Philip H., General, 4179, 4193, 4196, 4217, 4218
 famous ride of, 4200, 4201
 in the Shenandoah valley, 4199-4201
Sheridan, Richard Brinsley, 3323, 3335, 3509
Sheriff-Muir, battle of, 3061
Sherif-Khan, palace of, 200
Sherman, Roger, 3239, 3302, 4252
Sherman, Senator John, 4111, 4210, 4232, 4254
Sherman, Thomas W., General, 4142, 4146
Sherman, William Tecumseh, General, 4141, 4175, 4180, 4181, 4194
 at Vicksburg, 4151, 4174
 march through the Carolinas, 4214-4216
 march to the sea, 4201, 4205
 surrender of Johnson, at Hillsboro, to, 4221
Sheshonk I., King of Egypt, 56, 57, 404
Shields, General, 4153, 4154
Shiloh, Palestine, 389
Shiloh, Tennessee, battle of, 4147, 4148

- Shimonoseki, Peace of, 4669, 4670
 Shinar, Land of, 113, 114, 116, 126
 Shintoism, in Japan, 696, 4638
 Shipka Pass, battles at, 3743
 bombardment of, 3747
 captures of, 3741, 3753
 Shiraz, battle of, 2466, 2467
 Shirley, Governor, 3111, 3117
 Shirpur, 3794
 Shishak, King of Egypt, 56, 404
 Shi-tsung, 4625
 Shore, Jane, 2345
 Shore, Sir John, 3344
 Shoshee Chunder Dutt, 636
 Shoshone Indians, 4256
 Shovel, Sir Cloudesley, 3010
 Shreveport, 4189, 4190
 Shrewsbury, Earl of, 2690
 Shrewsbury, Earl of, another, 2906, 2902, 2917
 Shubrick, Commodore, 4062, 4109
 Shuiski family of Russia, 3046
 Shuiski, Andrew, 3046
 Shumla, battle of, 3540
 Shun-Chi, 4627, 4628
 Shuster, dyke at, 1618
 Shyites, 1434, 1435
 Siam, Empire of, 4636
 French war in, 3851-3854
 Siberia, cruelty to prisoners in, 3879
 great railroad of, 4703
 Sibley, General Henry H., 4169
 Sibyl, 1130
 Sibylline books, 1139, 1140, 1329
 Sicilian vespers, 2156, 2389
 Sicily, 764-767, 1119, 1120, 1121, 1189, 1199, 1222
 as a Roman province, 1202
 Greek colonies in, 764-767
 Phœnician colonies in, 331
 wars of Carthage in, 432
 Sicily and Naples, kingdom of, 2388-2390
 Sicily conquered by the Normans, 1965, 1996
 Sicily, modern, new form of government in, 3896, 3897
 rebellion in, 3894
 revolt against Francis II. in, 3631, 3632
 revolt against Naples, 3587, 3606, 3607
 Sickingen, Franz von, 2602, 2603
 Sickles, General Daniel E., 4172
 Siculus, Diodorus, 24, 41, 712, 1101, 1102
 Sicyon, 709, 902, 918
 Siddārtha, story of, 653-655, 671, 672
 Siddim, battle of, 129, 349
 Sidney, Algernon, 2866-2867
 Sidney, Sir Philip, 2689, 2690, 2741, 2821
 2803
 Sidon, city of, 325-330, 991
 destroyed by Esar-haddon, 194
 fall of, 530
 Sierra Leone, colony of, founded, 3853
 Sieyès, Abbé, 3361, 3404, 3426, 3428, 3429
 Sigel, General Franz, 4139, 4194, 4196
 Sigeric, 1526
 Sigismund, King of Hungary, 2117-212, 2438, 2480
 Sigismund Augustus II., of Poland, 323, 3040
 Sigismund III., of Poland, 3040, 3041
 Sigismund the Great, King of Poland, 323
 Sigurd I., of Norway, 2414, 2415
 Sigurd II., 2415
 Sijun, Mikado, 697, 4638
 Sikhs of the Punjab, 3318
 wars with England, 3566, 3567
 Silesia, 3100, 3102, 3104, 3105, 3112, 3118, 312, 3137
 Sillistria, capture of, 3456
 siege and fall of, 3540
 Silk, introduced into Europe, 1266-1291
 Sillery, battle of, 3131
 Silliman, General, 3247
 Simeon, 355
 tribe, 381
 Simeoni, Cardinal, 3810
 Simnel, Lambert, 2363, 2364
 Simon, Jules, 3669, 3710
 Simon, Menno, 2612
 Simon de Montfort, 2078-2082, 2146
 Simon de Montfort, another, 2276, 2277
 Simonides, 790, 927, 928
 Simon, governor of the Temple, 1075
 Simon Maccabeus, 1078, 1079
 Simpson, General, 3621
 Sin, or Hurki, the moon-god, 295, 296, 329
 Sinai, Mt., Moses delivered Decalogue on, 36, 1090
 Singara, battle of, 1481, 1630
 Single combat, origin of, 2242
 Sinjar, battle of (see Singara),
 Sinope, 760
 battle of, 3618

- lorod, peace of, 3089
- loux Indians, 2538
- loux War, first, 4162, 4163
 - second, 4252, 4253
 - third, 4266, 4267
- lypylus, Mt., 418
- lira, or Shirin, wife of Chosroës II., 1732
- lrens, 739
- lrmium, 1341
- lroës, or Kobad II., 1593, 1743, 1744, 1746
 - character of, 1748
 - coins of, 1748
- lscbert, 1531
- lsenand, 1531
- lsiera, 384, 385
- lsimondi, 25, 3964
- lstova, battle of, 3740
- lstova, peace of, 3173
- lsisyphus, 744
- litting Bull, Indian chief, 4252, 4253, 4266
- lštatorok, peace of, 2726, 3056
- lſuen-ti, 678
- lšiv, 641-653
- lšivershausen, battle of, 2622
- lšiwah, 496, 497, 994
- lšeward, Earl of Northumberland, 2022, 2362
- lšix Nations, League of the, 2532, 2533
 - Sullivan's campaign against the, 3262
- lšixtus V., Pope, character and education of, 2694
 - Rome under, 2724, 2725
- lškalds, or bards, 1959
- lškalits, battle of, 3647
- lškandersborg, battle of, 2413
- lškeptics of Greece, 1016, 1017
- lškioldebrand, Colonel, 3460
- lškippon, 2845
- lškobleff, General, 3720, 3721, 3744, 3747
- lškupstina, 3913
- lškrydloff, Admiral, 4707
- lškrynecki, 3548
- lšlavery in the United States, 4102
 - beginning of, 2931, 2932
 - contentions about, 4083-4087
 - division in churches about, 4088, 4089
 - end of, 4910, 4911, 4931
 - in the Eighteenth Century, 2951, 3291, 3297, 3299, 3306
- lšlavery abolished in British colonies, 3561
- lšlaves, African, in Spanish-American Colonies, 3097, 3098
 - Anglo-Saxon, 1569
 - emancipation of, in Porto Rico, 3690
 - Greek, 951, 952
 - Roman, 1364
- lšSlave States of America, secession plans in, 4115
- lšSlave Trade of England, 3330
 - abolition of, in colonies, 3454
- lšSlavonia, 3065
- lšSlavs or Slavonians, 27, 36, 1908, 1922, 2420, 2433
 - home of, 1520, 1523, 1524
- lšSlemmer, Lieutenant Adam J., 4121
- lšSlidell, John, 4115, 4143, 4144
- lšSloat, Commodore, 4082
- lšSlocum, General Henry W., 4172, 4204, 4214
- lšSlougher, Colonel Henry, 2941
- lšSluys, naval battle of, 2168, 2294
- lšSmeaton, John, 3508
- lšSmerdis, 499-501
- lšSmith, Adam, 3326, 3327, 3508
- lšSmith, Captain John, 2931, 2933
- lšSmith, Fort, Capture of, 4177
- lšSmith, General Andrew J., 4189, 4190
- lšSmith, General E. Kirby, 4160, 4161, 4190, 4222
- lšSmith, Gerrit, 4098
- lšSmith, Joseph, 4088, 4089
- lšSmith, Lieutenant-Colonel, British, 3263
- lšSmith, Lieutenant-Colonel, American, 3250
- lšSmith, Sir Sidney, 3426
- lšSmith, Spencer, 3455
- lšSmith, Sydney, 3958
- lšSmith, William F., General, 4136, 4196
- lšSmith-Dorrieu, Gen. Horace Lockwood, 4304
- lšSmolensk, 3043, 3045, 3052
 - battle and destruction of, 3481
- lšSmollett, Tobias George, 3059
- lšSmyrna, 419, 756, 4101
- lšSobieski, John, of Poland, 3044, 3045
 - raises the siege of Vienna, 3060, 3061
- lšSobota, battle of, 3034
- lšSobranje, 3910
- lšSobraon, battle of, 3566
- lšSobrier, 3591
- lšSocialism, 3576, 3577, 3590-3592
 - in Germany, 3774-3778, 3871, 3878
 - in Italy and Spain, 3778
- lšSocial life, Babylonian, 262, 263, 285, 286
 - Egyptian, 67, 81, 82
 - English, in the Eighteenth Century,

- English under Charles II., 2889
 European, in Eighteenth Century, 3518
 Greek, 948-954
 in Anglo-Saxon England, 1568-1570, 2026-2028
 in the United States in the Eighteenth Century, 3288-3291
 mediæval, 2055
 Roman, 1358, 1365
 Social war in Greece, 926, 927
 Social war in Italy, 1258-1260
 Socrates, 869, 889-894
 belief of, 743
 death of, 894
 last days of, 892, 893
 Sodom, 129, 349, 351
 Sofia Charlotte, wife of Frederick I., of Prussia, 3004
 Sofia, wife of Ivan the Great, 2432
 Sofia, sister of Peter the Great, 3053
 Softas, 3727
 Sogdiana, 457, 997
 Soissons, battles of, 1545, 1917, 3493
 capture of, 3671, 3672
 Solebay, battle of, 2880
 Solferino, battle of, 3630
 Solomon, King, 57, 396-400
 building temple by, 398
 luxury of, 399
 magnificent reign of, 397
 proverbs of, 397, 398
 visit of Queen of Sheba to, 398, 399
 wisdom, 398
 harem, 399
 idolatry, 399
 death, 399, 400
 Solomon, Temple of, at Jerusalem, 398
 Solon, death of, 789
 in Lydia, 426, 427, 788
 laws of, 781-793
 Solovieff, Alexander, 3781
 Soltikoff, 3125, 3126
 Solway Moss, battle of, 2655, 2705
 Solyman, Sultan, 2044
 Solyman I., 2472, 2475
 Solyman III., Sultan of Turkey, 3062-3064
 Solyman the Magnificent, Sultan of Turkey, 2487, 2581
 Hayraddin Barbarossa and, 2584
 conquests of, in Europe, 2581-2583, 2587-2588
 peace between Germano-Roman Empire and, 2590
 Soma, 629
 Somers, Lord, 2905, 2944
 Somerset, Duke of, 2332-2334
 Somerset, Duke of, another, 2662-2663
 Somerset, Duke of, a third, 2897
 Somerset, Robert Carr, Earl of, 2817
 Sömmering Pass, battle of, 2583
 Somnauth, battle of, 2034, 2035
 Somnus, 734
 Somorrostro, 3698
 Sonderburg-Glucksburg, 3644
 Sophia, of Zell, wife of George I., of England, 3079
 Sophia, St., Church of, 1582, 2446, 2484
 Sophia, wife of Justin II., 1591
 Sophists of Athens, 891, 892
 Sophocles, the admiral, 865
 Sophocles, the poet, 930
 Saphronius, Patriarch of Jerusalem, 1817, 1818
 Sophie Pieoffsky, 3787, 3788
 Sorel, Agnes, 2185, 2211
 Sorr, battle of, 3105
 Sothel, Seth, 2948, 2949
 Soubise, Duke of, 2965
 Soubise, Prince of, 3120, 3122
 Soudan, wars in the, 3725, 3800, 3801, 3804, 3815, 3816, 3819-3822, 3893
 Soult, Marshal, 3440, 3448, 3465, 3467, 3468, 3469, 3493, 3494, 3499
 South African Republic, 4441-4447, 4458-4623
 Emperor William and the, 4463, 4464
 revolt at Johannesburg, 4463-4465
 South African Republics, 4441-4447, 4458-4623
 South Carolina, colony of, 2948, 2949
 state of, 3310
 Dispensary Act in, 4271, 4272
 domestic troubles in, 4254, 4255
 Nullification in, 4050-4052
 secession of, 4117
 readmission of, 4237
 South Dakota, 4265
 Southern States of America at close of civil war, 4223
 Southey, Robert, 3957
 South Mountain, battle of, 4159
 South Sea Scheme, 3086-3087

- Southwell, Robert, 3687
 Souza, Thomé de, 2526
 Sovereigns and Rulers, tables of, 4874-4880
 Spain, Anarchists in, 3897-3899
 and Portugal, 2724, 3020
 and the Central American Republics, 4348
 and the Dutch Republic, 2727-2746
 as a Roman province, 1334, 1335
 Bourbons restored in, 3491, 3521
 Charlemagne in, 1889-1893
 civil war of 1833-1839, 3551, 3552
 conquered by Carthage, 444, 445, 1204, 1205
 conquered by the Visigoths, 1506, 1507, 1526
 decline of, 2726, 2727, 3019, 3024
 inquisition in, 2403, 2720
 kings of, table of, 4886
 Moriscos in, 2721, 3019
 persecution of Jews in, 2404
 Phoenician colonies in, 331
 recent affairs in, 3897-3901
 revolt in Philippine islands against, 3898
 revolutions in, 3530-3535, 3551, 3552, 3650, 3651-3653, 3689-3700
 rise of modern kingdom, 2403-2405
 Saracen conquests in, 1532, 1533, 1840, 1841
 Saracenic libraries in, 1867
 Mediæval kings, table of, 1571, 1872, 2406, 2407
 under Charles V., 2566-2591, 2623-2625
 under Ferdinand and Isabella, 2403-2405, 2547-2563
 under Isabella II., 3551, 3552, 3637, 3651-3653
 under Philip II., and Germany, 2716-2727
 Philip III., 2726, 2727, 3019
 under Philip IV., 3019-3022
 universal suffrage in, 3693
 usurpation of Napoleon in, 3462, 3463
 Spain, Republic of, 3689-3700
 Carlists and Alfonsists of, 3691, 3696, 3698-3700
 communists of, 3693-3696, 3697, 3698
 recognized by European powers, 3699
 revolts against, 3691-3700
 war of Carlists and Republicans, 3691, 3696, 3698-3700
 Spain, Revolution in Cuba, against, cost of, 4400-4432
 policy of, 4388-4432
 reforms proposed by, 4411, 4425, 4426
 Spanish army in Cuba, 4400-4432
 Weyler's administration, 4416-4427
 Spanish-American Peace Treaty, 4431
 Spanish-American Republics, 4341-4432
 Spanish-American Revolutions, 4341-4348
 Spanish Armada, 2693-2697
 Spanish Bourbons in Naples and Sicily, 3095, 3096
 Spanish Empire in America, 2534-2546
 Spanish Succession, war of, 3001-3017
 Sparks, Jared, 3963
 Sparta, 710, 768-780
 civil and political institutions of, 771, 772
 earthquake in, 843, 844
 founding of, 714
 Peloponnesian war, 857-886
 Messenian wars of, 717-779, 844
 supremacy of, 886-927
 "Tearless Battle" of, 918
 territory of, 710, 768, 769
 under the laws of Lycurgus, 768-780
 war with Athens, 844, 845
 war with Argus and Acadia, 779, 780
 war with Olynthus, 906, 907
 wars with Persia, 809-833, 898-904
 war with Thebes, 907-925
 Spartacus,
 Spartans, at Thermopylæ, 818-821
 classes of, 769, 770
 customs of the, 772-774
 dress of the, 774
 education of the, 774
 food of the, 773
 helots, 775
 money of the, 772
 women of the, 775, 776
 Spencer, Earl, 3798
 Spencer, Herbert, 3957
 Spencer, Lord, 3340
 Spenser, Edmund, 2699, 2802
 Spenser, Hugh, 2288, 2290
 Sphacteria, siege and fall of, 865, 866
 Sphinx, 51, 84
 Sphodrias, 909
 Spice Islands, 2524, 2745
 Spinoza, 3025
 Spion Kop, battle of, 3828, 4491, 4492

- Spirea, diet at, 2606
 protesting princes at, 2606
 Spiritoft, Admiral, 3162
 Spirit of the age, the New, 3139-3156
 Splügen, passage of the, 3430
 Sporades, 711
 Spottsylvania Court House, Virginia, battle of, 4195
 Sprague, Governor William, 4209
 Springfield, Massachusetts, 3394
 Springfield, New Jersey, skirmish at, 3365
 Spurgeon, Rev. Charles H., 3960
 Spurius Cassius, 1151
 Spurius, Mælius, 1161
 Spurs, battle of the, 2231, 3562, 2638
 Spursheim, Dr. John Gaspar, 3956
 St. Albans, England, first battle, 2334
 second battle of, 2336
 St. Albans, Vermont, 4206
 St. Ambrose, 1490, 1491, 1502
 St. André, Marshal, 2751
 St. Angelo, Castle of, 2759
 St. Arnaud, Marshal, 3619
 St. Athanasius, 1105, 1469, 1469, 1490
 St. Aubin, battle of, 2227
 St. Augustine, Florida, siege of, 2949
 St. Augustine, the Christian Father, 1491, 1492
 St. Augustine, the missionary, 1563, 1564
 St. Bartholomew, massacre of, 2057-2060
 St. Bernard, 2064, 2140
 St. Bernard, Little, Hannibal crosses, 1908
 St. Bernard, Great, Bonaparte's passage of the, 3429
 St. Chrysostem, 1105, 1490, 1573
 St. Clair, Arthur, General, 3250, 3254, 3965
 St. Cloud, 3427
 St. Columba, 2360
 St. Cyprian, 1448, 1489
 St. Cyr, Marshal, 3467, 3490
 St. Denis, battle of, 2754
 St. Denis, church of, 2770
 St. Dunstan, 2009-2013
 St. Elmo, Castle of, at Naples, 3091
 St. Elmo, Fortress of, at Malta, 2721
 St. Eustatia, island of, surrender to the English, 3277, 3278
 St. Francis Xavier, 2632
 St. Germain, Count de, 3128
 St. Germain-en-Laye, peace of, 3037
 St. Germain l'Auxerrois, church of, 2758
 St. Germain, peace of, 2755
 St. Gothard, battle of, 2069
 St. Helena, Napoleon's exile in, 3500
 St. Ignatius, 1421
 St. James, 1086
 St. James the Less, 1086
 St. Jerome, 1472, 1491
 St. John, 1427, 1488
 St. John, Henry, Viscount Bolingbroke, 2226-2228
 St. John, Knights of, 2063, 2073, 2412, 2421, 2721, 3421
 St. Just, 3368, 3377, 3384, 3391-3393, 3398
 St. Lawrence, 2725
 St. Lawrence River, discovery of, by Jasp Cartier, 2539
 St. Leger, Colonel, 3251
 St. Louis, of France, 2071-2072, 2048-205
 St. Mark, 2384, 3413
 St. Mark's, 4035
 St. Mary's, 2941, 2942
 St. Menchould, 3367
 St. Paul, 1085-1087, 1105, 1396, 1404, 1461
 St. Paul, Cathedral of, in London, 1564, 2228, 2878, 3028
 St. Peter, 1086, 1404
 St. Peter, church of, in London, 1564
 St. Peter, church of, in Rome, 2388, 2226
 St. Petersburg, founding of, 3068
 student demonstrations in, 3068
 St. Petersburg, Treaty of, 3164
 St. Philip, Fort, surrender of, 4149
 St. Pierre, 3116
 St. Pierre, Eustace, of Calais, 2170, 2226
 St. Pol, Constable of France, 2219, 2220
 St. Polycarp, 1427, 1489
 St. Quentin, first battle of, 2676, 2717, 2746
 second battle of, 3675
 St. Ruth, 2913
 St. Salvador, 2527
 St. Sophia, Cathedral of, 1582, 2446, 2484
 St. Sophia, Mosque of, at Constantinople, 2446, 2484
 St. Stephen, persecution and death of, 1085
 St. Thomas, 678
 Stackleburg, Count, 3013, 3745
 Stadtholders, 2732, 2745, 2746
 Stael, Madame de, 3437, 3511
 Staffarda, battle of, 2297
 Stafford, Lord, 2882

- Stahremberg, Count Rudiger von, 3060
 Stair, Earl of, 3103, 3107
 Stair, Sir John Dalrymple, Master of, 2909, 2910
 Stamboloff, 3911
 murder of, 3911, 3912
 Stamford Bridge, battle of, 2024, 2414
 Stamp Act, passage of the, 3028-3911
 repealed, 3911, 3912
 Stamp Act Congress, 3909
 Standard, battle of the, 2250, 2364
 Stanhope, Lord, 3082
 Stanislaus, Lecinski, 3068, 3070, 3088, 3094-3096
 Stanley, Henry M., 3870, 3893, 3953, 4227
 Stanley, Lord, 2348, 2349
 Stanley, Sir William, 2349, 2355
 Stanton, Edwin M., 4122, 4145, 4236
 Star Chamber of England, founding of the, 2358, 2359
 Stark, Colonel John, 3251
 States-General, of France, 2157, 2161, 2172, 2751, 2763, 2960, 3360, 3361
 of Holland, 2745
 Statira, 1002, 1004
 Statute of Allegiance, 2357
 Statute of Heretics, 2390
 Statute of Laborers, 2302
 Statute of Liveries, 2358
 Statute of Præmunire, 2312
 Statute of Treasons, 2301
 Stauffacher, Werner, 2112
 Stauracius, 1597
 Steadman, Fort, capture and recapture of, 4218
 Steam engine, first, 3226, 3508
 Stedman, Edmund C., 3962
 Steele, General Frederick, 4177, 4189, 4190, 4216
 Steele, Sir Richard, 2930, 3509
 Steinbock, General, 3071
 Stein, Baron von, 3473
 Steinkirk, battle of, 2916, 2999
 Steinmetz, General von, 3647, 3665, 3666, 3667
 Stenography, introduction of improved system, 3506
 Steno Sture I., King of Sweden, 2419
 Steno Sture II., King of Sweden, 2419
 Stephen, Count of Blois, 2139, 2140, 2248-2252
 Stephen, Greek emperor, 1599
 Stephen II., Pope, 1542, 1886
 Stephen IX., Pope, 1937, 1939
 Stephen, of England, 2250-2252
 Stephen the Pius, King of Hungary, 2436
 Stephens, Alexander Hamilton, 4115, 4116, 4120, 4121, 4123, 4128, 4129, 4146, 4212, 4222
 Stephenson, Fort, siege of, 4018
 Stephenson, George, 3861, 3954
 Stereotyping, first use of, 3508
 Sterling, Lord, 3243
 Sterne, Laurence, 3509, 3510
 Sternhold, Thomas, 2663
 Steuben, Baron de, 2948, 3260, 3270
 Stevens, General, 4158
 Stevens, Thaddeus, 4220, 4232, 4236
 Stewart, Commodore, 4025
 Stewart, Dugald, 3956
 Stewart, Colonel, 3801
 Stewart, General, 3801
 Stewart, or Steward, or Stuart, Robert, 2375, 2376
 Steyn, Martinus Theunis, 4505
 Stikkestadt, battle of, 2414
 Stilicho, 1503, 1503-1505
 Stirling, battle of, 2284, 2371
 Stirling, Sir James, 4642
 Stockoch, battle of, 3423
 Stockholm, massacre of, 2419, 2633
 Stockholm, peace of, 3071, 3072
 Stockton, Commodore, 4062
 Stoessel, General, 3885, 3886, 4704, 4721, 4724, 4725
 Stofflet, 3387, 3402
 Stoics, 1015, 1016
 Stoke-upon-Trent, battle of, 2354
 Stolbova, peace of, between Russia and Sweden, 3032, 3052
 Stollhoffen, battle of, 3011
 Stone, General Charles P., 4136, 4137
 Stone of Destiny, 2281, 2370
 Stone River, battle of, 4161, 4162
 Stone, Rosetta, 23, 42, 43, 79
 Stoneman, General George, 4169, 4202, 4203
 Stono Ferry, battle of, 3261
 Stony Point, battle of, 3262
 Story, Judge Joseph, 3961
 Stormberg, battle of, 3828, 4484
 Stowe, Mrs. Harriet Beecher, 4098, 3961
 Strabo, 1102

- Strachan, Sir Richard, 3474
 Strafford, Thomas Wentworth, Earl of, 2829,
 2831, 2835, 2836
 execution of, 2835, 2836
 Stralsund, siege of, 2781
 siege and fall of, 3071
 Strassburg, siezed by Louis XIV., of France,
 2989
 siege and fall of, 3670
 Strassburg, Gottfreid von, 2107
 Stratton Hill, battle of, 2842
 Strauss, 3956
 Straw Jack, 2305, 2306
 Strelitz, 3047, 3055
 Strelnikoff, General, 2791
 Stricker, General, 4022
 Strickland, Miss Agnes, 3959
 Strigova, battle of, 3062
 Strikes, railroad, 4255, 4272, 4273
 Stringham, Silas H., Commodore, 4142
 Strode, 2838, 2839
 Strongbow, Earl of Pembroke, 2257-2259
 Struve, 3594
 Stuart, Charles Edward, the Young Pretender,
 3106-3109, 3126
 at the battle of Culloden Moor, 3107, 3108
 wanderings of, 3108, 3109
 Stuart, Colonel, 3270
 Stuart, Gilbert, 3967
 Stuart, James, the Pretender, 2930, 3081, 3082,
 3083, 3090
 Stuart, J. E. B., General, 4129, 4136, 4160,
 4171, 4196
 Stuart, Lady Arabella, 2812
 Stuart, William, Earl of Bute, 3134, 3186,
 3187
 Student Riots, in Germany, 3528, 3530
 Sturgis, General, 4189
 Sturleson, Snorro, 1968
 Stuyvesant, Peter, Governor of New Nether-
 land, 2940, 2941
 Styria, Duke of, 2548
 Styrum, Count, 3007
 Styx, 743
 Suabia, 1922, 2107, 2115
 Suabia, John of, 2107
 Suabian League, 2115, 2124
 Suakim, 3800, 3801, 3806, 3893
 Subuctageen, in India, 2032
 Suchet, Marshal, 3466, 3467
 Sucre, General, 3535, 4347
 Suda, 3536
 Sudbury, Archbishop of Canterbury, 2606
 Sudermania, Duke of, 2635
 Sudermania, Duke of, another, 3460
 Sudras, 620
 Suetonius Paulinas, 1403
 Suetonius, the historian, 1378
 Sueves, 1505, 1507, 1522, 1526-1528
 Suez, founding of, 1041, 1091
 Suez Canal, 3660, 3732
 siezed by the English, 3799, 3800
 Suffee, Ismail, Shah of Persia, 2488
 Suffeean dynasty, 2488-2492
 Suffolk, Duke of, 2331, 2332
 Suffrein, Bailli de, 3277-3280
 Suger, Abbè, 2136, 2137, 2141
 Sul, Prince of, 679
 Suiko, Empress of Japan, 4638
 Sujah, 2504
 Sukhanoff, Nicholas, 3790
 Suleiman, 1868
 Suleiman Pasha, 3728, 3737, 3741, 3743, 3745,
 3751, 3753
 Sulliot, 3537
 Sulla, Cornelius, 1250, 1253, 1260-1269
 Sullivan, General John, 3243, 3249, 3258, 3262
 Sullivan's Island, 3235
 Sully, Duke of, 2759, 2953, 2954, 2957-2959
 Sumatra, War in, 3902
 Sumner, Charles, 3961, 4106, 4210, 4232, 4241
 Sumner, General, 4155, 4157
 Sumter, Fort, 4118, 4119, 4123, 4125
 fall of, 4126, 4127
 rising stars and stripes over, 4220
 Sumter, Thomas, 3263, 3264
 Sunbury, capture of, 3261
 Sunderland, Robert, Lord, 2898, 2902, 2903,
 2916, 2917, 2924, 2926
 Sun-dials, invention of, by the Babylonians,
 279
 Sunnites, 1835, 1839
 Sunnyside, battle of, 3828, 4489
 Supernaturalists, sect of, 3154
 Superstition in the Middle Ages, 2055
 Supremacy, Act of, 2646
 Supremacy Act, another, 2678
 Surajah Dowlah, 3114, 3115
 Surat, 3113
 Surrey, Earl of, 2382, 2563, 2638
 Surrey, Earl of, another, 2660
 Susa, 114, 459, 510, 513, 563, 564

- Susiana, conquest of, 202-204
- Sussex, Saxon kingdom of, 1559
- Susub, 186, 189
- Susurion, 932
- Sutruk-Nakhunta, King of Susiana, 178
- Suwarrow, Field-Marshal, 3161, 3168, 3172, 3180, 3181, 3423-3425
- Suzerains, feudal, 2047
- Sverker I., King of Sweden, 2416
- Sverker II., 2416
- Sviatoslaf of Russia, 2422, 2423
- Swansea, 229
- Swanzy, 2935
- Swaziland, 3462, 3809
- Sweaborg, attack on, 3622
 - capture of, 3458
- Sweden, 1965, 2409, 2416-2419
 - Christianity in, 2416
 - "Hats and Caps" of, 3101, 3148
 - Independence of, 2419, 2633
 - invaded by the Danes, 2419
 - kings of, table of, 4885
 - Lutheranism in, 2634
 - Norway ceded to, 3491, 3521
 - under Bernadotte, 3478, 3582
 - under Gustavus Adolphus, 3032, 3033
 - under Gustavus Vasa, 2633, 2634
 - under Queen Christina, 3033
 - under Charles X., 3034-3036
 - under Charles XI., 3036-3037
 - under Charles XII., 3037, 3065-3073
- Sweden, New, 2940, 2942
- Swedenborg, Emanuel, 3508
- Swedenborgian, or New Christian Church, 3518
- Sweyn I., King of Denmark, conquest of England by, 2016, 2409, 2410
- Sweyn II., King of Denmark, 2410
- Sweyn III., 2411
- Swift, Jonathan, 2930, 3509
- Swinburne, Algernon Charles, 3958
- Swintila, 1531
- Switzerland, cantons of, 2111-2113
 - civil war in, 3585, 3586
 - Independence of, 2116, 2127, 2798
 - lake dwellers in, 22
 - radicals of, 3585, 3586
 - referendum in, 3904, 3905
 - reformation and religious war in, 2507, 2609
 - Republic of, restored, 3521
 - revolutionized by the French, 3416, 3417
 - Sonderbund of, 3585, 3586
- Syagrius, 1545
- Sybaris, 762
- Sybarites, 762
- Sydney, Australia, 3569
- Sylvester II., Pope, genius and learning of, 1930
- Sylvia, 1125
- Symmachus, 1535
- Symons, General Sir William Penn, 3827, 4476, 4504, 4505
- Syncellus, 42
- Syra, 3642
- Syracuse, 438-443, 764-767, 872-878
 - Athenian expedition against, 872-878
 - Roman capture of, 1216
 - Wars of Carthage with, 438-443
- Syria, 325-342
 - conquest of, by the Saracens, 1813-1818
 - conquest of, by the Egyptians, 51, 52
 - geography and description of, 339, 340
 - government of, 340, 341
 - invaded by Mehemet Ali, 3572, 3574
 - invaded by Persians, 1734
 - invaded by Tamerlane, 2469, 2470
- Syrian Empire of the Selucidæ, 1028-1037
- Syrian Gate, 989
- Syrinx, 736
- Szeklers, 3423, 3603
- Szigeth, siege of, 2722
- Szolnok, battle of, 3603
- Szonz, battle of, 3604
- TABARI, 1879
- Tabernacle of the Israelites, 367
- Table of branches of the Caucasian race, 36
- Tabor, Mt., battle of, 3426
- Taborites, 2121
- Tab-rimmon, King of Damascus, 341
- Tabriz, battle of, 2488
- Tachos, King of Egypt, 528
- Tacitus, Roman historian, 24, 1378, 1404, 1419
- Tacitus, Marcus Claudius, Emperor of Rome, 1452, 1453
- Tacna, battle of, 4367
- Tacubaya, plan of, 4354
- Tagina, battle of, 1537
- Tai-tsu, 679
- Tai-tsung, 679
- Takelot II., 57

- Taght-i-Khosrou, royal palace of, 1894
 Talavera, battle of, 3466
 Talbot, Richard, 2895
 Tallard, Marshal, 3006, 3008
 Tallerand, 3373, 3417, 3439, 3496, 3531
 Tallien, 3389, 3395, 3398
 Talmage, Thomas De Witt, 3961
 Tamasp, Shah of Persia, 2488
 Tamasp II., Shah of Persia, 2491, 2492
 Tamaulipas, 4081
 Tamerlane, or Timour the Lame, 616, 2463-
 2474, 2480
 and Bajazet I., 2481
 character and habits of, 2465, 2473, 2474
 conquests of, 2464
 death of, 2473
 in India, 2468
 marriage of grandsons of, 2472, 2473
 Tamarit, 203, 204
 Tanagra, 848, 849
 Tancred, 2091
 Taney, Roger B., 4057, 4108, 4206
 Tanjore, 3318
 Tantalus, 742
 Tanucci, Bernardo, 3096
 Tao-ism, Lao-tse and, 692-694
 philosophy of, 693
 selfishness of, 693
 Taou-Kwang, 4631-4633
 Tarapaca, 4306
 battle of, 4370
 Tarbisa, ruins of, 118
 Tarentinea, 1183-1185
 Tarentum, 761, 1119, 1182, 1183, 1185, 1190
 Targowicz, 3175, 3176
 Tariff Acts, 4048, 4266, 4272
 Tarik, 1832, 1840, 1850
 Tarleton, 3263, 3269
 Tarpeia, 1196
 Tarpelan Rock, 1170
 Tarquin the Elder, 1131, 1132, 1367
 Tarquin the Proud, 1135, 1136, 1143-1145,
 1367
 Tarraconensis, 1334, 1335
 Tarragona, capture of, 3468
 Tarsus, founding of, 190, 420
 Tartaritsa, battle of, 3456
 Tartar Empire, conquests under Oktai, 2455,
 2456
 in China, 2451, 2459
 of Zingis Khan, 2448-2463
 religious work in, 2554
 Tamerlane's, 2463-2474
 under Kayuk, 2457
 Tartars, 2449-2474, 3047, 4625, 4627, 4628,
 2929, 3001-3017
 independence of, established, 679
 Tartars, Kalmuck, 3168, 4630
 Tartars, Mantchoo, 4625-4627
 Tartarus, 729, 744
 Tartary, Little, 3169
 Tashkend, 2463, 2465
 Tasmania, 3569
 Tasso, 2804
 Ta-tsing, or Mantchoo dynasty, 4627
 Tattenbach, Count, 3059, 3060
 Tavaannes, Marshal de, 2757
 Taygetus, 843
 Taylor, Bayard, 3962, 4252
 Taylor, Jeremy, 3027
 Taylor, Richard, General, 4176, 4190, 4222
 Taylor, Rowland, Dr., 2673
 Taylor, Zachary, 4060, 4079-4081, 4081-4082
 Tchamtchira, battle of, 3737
 Tchernaya, battle of, 3621, 3622
 Tchernayeff, General, 3719, 3726
 Tea, coffee and chocolate introduced into by
 land, 2069
 Tea Tax, of the American Revolution, 322,
 3218
 Teck, Princess Victoria May, of, 3810
 Tecumseh, Indian Chief, 4012, 4013, 4014, 4015
 Tegea, 922, 923
 Tegethoff, Admiral, 3647
 Tehuacan, 4358
 Teias, 1537, 1538
 Teispes, King of Persia, 484
 Tejada, Lerdo de, 4361-4363
 Tekeli, Count Emmerik, 3060
 Tekke-Turkomans, 3720, 3721
 Telamon, battle of, 1904
 Telegraph, electro-magnetic, first use of, 400
 Tel-el-Kebir, battle of, 3725, 3800
 Telemachus, 1505
 Teliche, battle of, 3746
 Telissu, battle of, 3884, 4713
 Tell, William, 2112
 Telles, 1137
 Temesvar, 3805
 Temple, Vale of, 706
 Temple of Solomon, at Jerusalem, 327, 328

- temporal power of the popes, foundation of,
1885, 1886
- Ten, Council of, in Athens, 888, 889
- in Venice, 9384
- Ten great persecutions of the Christians (see
Persecutions of the Christians), 1404, 1416,
1421, 1423, 1427, 1443, 1446, 1447, 1448, 1458,
1461, 1462
- Tennessee, admission of, 3978
- guerilla raids in, 4191
- secession of, 4131
- Unionists in, 4141, 4142
- war in, 4146, 4147, 4161, 4162, 4179-4181,
4189, 4903
- Tennis court, 3361, 3362
- Tennyson, Alfred, Lord, 3858
- Ten Thousand, retreat of the, 524, 525, 896-
898
- Teran, 4342
- Terence, 1320, 1321
- Terentius Varro, 1913, 1914
- Tergukassoff, General, 3736, 3748, 3749
- Terminalia, 1137
- Terminus, 737, 738
- Ternay, Admiral de, 3265
- Terouenne, siege and fall of, 2562, 2638
- siege and capture of, by Charles V., 2622
- Terpander, 795
- Terpsichore, 738
- Territory, Northwest, of the United States,
laws and government of, 3297
- settling of, 3297
- Terror, reign of, in France, 3384, 3385
- Terry, General Alfred H., 4197, 4214, 4252
- Terska, 2790
- Tertullian, 1488-1489
- Teschen, treaty of, 3183
- Tesse, Marshal, 3010
- Testre, battle of, 1554
- Tetzels, John, 2596-2598
- Teuta, Queen of Illyria, 1903
- Teutberga, wife of Lothaire II., 1909
- Teutonic Knights, 2073
- Teutons, or Germans, 1250-1254, 1519, 1522
- growth of race, 1521-1523
- invade Italy, 1250-1254
- migrations of, 1521, 1522
- Tewfik Pasha, Khedive of Egypt, 3724, 3725
- Tewkesbury, battle of, 2340
- Texan revolution, 4069, 4070, 4353
- Texas, 4074
- annexed to the United States, 4070-4074,
4353
- Thabanchu, battles of, 3829, 4535
- Thackeray, William Makepeace, 3958
- Thaddeus Kosciuszko (see Kosciuszko, Thad-
deus), 3176, 3178-3180, 3182, 3248
- Thales, 488, 798, 799, 804, 805
- Thalia, 738
- Thames, battle of the, 4019
- Thanet, Earl of, 2898
- Thankmar, 1924
- Thapsus, battle of, 1397
- Thasos, destruction of, 843
- Thassilio, Duke of Bavaria, 1893
- Thatcher, Rear-Admiral, 4216
- Thayer, General, 4190
- Theatins, founding of, 2623
- Thebais, 38, 77
- Thebans, 855, 856
- Theban war, 907-914
- Thebes, in Egypt, 38
- Colossi at, 51-52
- conquered by Esar-haddon, 196, 197
- magnificence of, 54
- rise of, 48
- ruins of, 38
- Thebes, in Greece, 708, 714, 717, 718, 751, 855,
856, 907-925, 963-966
- alliance of Persia with, 919, 920
- capture of, 751
- founding of, 714
- rise and fall of, 925
- Sacred Band of, 910, 918, 978
- supremacy of, 886-927
- Thelwall, 3342
- Themis, 737
- Themiscyra, 417
- Themistocles, 814, 815, 822, 824-830, 835, 836,
841
- death of, 842-843
- Theocrites, 1099-1100
- Theodatus, 1536
- Theodebald, 1552
- Theodebert, 1536, 1551, 1552
- Theodolinda, 1540
- Theodora, 1575
- Theodore, 1740
- Theodore, King of Abyssinia, 3657
- Theodoric, the Eastern Roman General, 1720
- Theodoric, the Ostrogoth, 1533-1535
- education of, 1534

- laws of, 1534
 Theodoric, the Visigoth, 1509
 humbles Rome in Gaul, 1527
 Theodoric II., 1510, 1528
 Theodosiopolis, siege and fall of, 1662, 1663, 1685
 Theodosius II., 1507, 1573, 1574
 Theodosius the Great, 1494, 1495, 1499-1503, 1573
 Theogony, Grecian, 723, 724, 794
 Theophilus, Greek emperor, 1597, 1598
 Theophilus Eaton, 2939
 Theramenes, 886, 887
 Theresa, Maria, 2978, 2979, 2991
 Theresa, Maria, Empress of Austria, 3089, 3096, 3099-3105, 3112, 3118, 3119, 3138, 3146, 3149, 3153, 3164
 Thermia, battle of, 3642
 Thermidor, 9th and 10th, 3395, 3398
 Thermodas, river of, 417
 Thermopylæ, 708
 battle of, 515
 pass of, 818-821, 969, 971, 973
 Theseus, 715
 Thespians, 819-821
 Thespis, 796-798
 Thessalonians, massacre of the, 1491, 1502
 Thessalonica, 958
 Thessalonica, half-sister of Alexander, 1007, 1019
 Thessaly, 704-706, 915, 916, 918, 919, 921
 plain of, 704, 705
 Thetis, 733
 Theudis, 1529
 Theudisad, 1529
 Thibault, Count of Champagne, 2141
 Thibet, Grand Lama of, 657, 658
 Thierry, the brothers, 3964
 Thiers, Louis Adolphe, 3577-3579, 3677, 3680-3682, 3688, 3706-3708, 3711, 3964
 Thimbron, 903
 Thionville, siege and fall of, 2795
 surrender of, 3672
 Thirwall, Connop, 3959
 Thirty Tyrants, of Athens, 886-889
 of the Roman Empire, 1449
 Thirty Years' War, 2771-2800
 Thistlewood, Arthur, 3556
 Thomas, French General, 3681
 Thomas, General George H., 4146, 4162, 4180, 4194, 4202, 4203, 4216, 4217
 Thomas, General John, 3234
 Thomas, General Lozenzo, 4236
 Thomas, St., 678
 Thomists, 2052
 Thompson, General, 4058
 Thompson, Jeff., 4140, 4149, 4177
 Thompson, Charles, 3921
 Thompson, James, 3509
 Thomyris, Queen of the Massagetæ, 493
 Thor, or Donnar, 1355, 1356, 1561, 1976, 1977
 Thoreau, 3963
 Thoreux, Captain, 3852
 Thornton, Captain, 4079, 4356
 Thornton, Sir Edward, 4251
 Thorismund, 1527
 Thorwaldsen, 3967
 Thoth, or Athothis, 44
 Thoth, the god, 96
 Thothmes, 50
 Thothmes II., 51
 Thothmes III., 51
 Thothmes IV., 51
 Thourct, 3393
 Thrace, 756, 758, 759, 882, 1048, 1342
 devastated by barbarians, 1740
 Thrasybulus, 887-889, 903
 Three Emperors' Battle, 3442, 3443
 Thucydides, 24, 712, 867, 933, 934
 Thumen, 1581
 Thundering Legion, 1426
 Thuringians, home of, 1522
 Thurn, Count, 2775, 2776
 Thurrot, Commodore, 2430
 Thymbra, battle of, 429
 Tiber, 1113
 Tiberias, lake, 376
 Tiberius, 1388, 1390-1396
 Tiberius II., 1591, 1709
 Tiberius Cornucanius, 1187
 Tiberius Sempronius, 1209
 Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, 1215
 Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, the reformer, 1239-1241
 Tibullus, 1373
 Tichu, 676-677
 Ticinus, battle of, 1209
 Ticonderoga, Fort, 3117
 capture of, 3130
 sieved by Colonel Ethan Allen, 3228
 seized by the British, 3250
 Tien-tsin, treaty of, 3636, 4635

- Tiers Etat, 3360
 Tiflis, battle of, 3618, 2493
 Tiglath-Nin I., 143, 144
 Tiglath-Nin II., 155
 Tiglath-Pileser I., 145-154
 buildings erected by, 148, 149
 conquests of, 145-148
 dominions of, 152, 153
 religious zeal of, 149-151
 temples restored by, 149
 Tiglath-Pileser II., Assyria under, 172-175
 edifices of, 174-175
 wars and conquests of, 173, 174
 Tigranes, the Armenian king, 1037, 1060, 1272
 Tigranes, the Persian admiral, 833
 Tigranocerta, battle of, 1272
 founding of, 1060
 Tigris-Euphrates, valley of the, 113-122
 Tigurinians, 1251
 Tiku, 676
 Tilden, Governor Samuel J., 4253, 4254
 Tilly, Count, 2777-2781, 2783-2786
 Tilsit, peace of, 3453, 3456, 3479
 Timæus, 712
 Timanthus, 1017
 Timesithus, 1445
 Timoleon, 441
 Timotheus, 911, 926, 927
 Timotheus, the musician, 932
 Timour the Lame, Khan of Tartary, 2463-2487
 Tinicum Island, 2943
 Tinville, Fouquier-, 3384, 3393, 3399
 Tippecanoe, battle of, 4013
 Tippoo Saib, 3280, 3333, 3344
 Tirhakah, King of Ethiopia, 3426
 Tiribazus, 904
 Tiridates, 1457, 1458, 1623, 1624
 Tiryns, ruins of, 721
 Tisiphone, 739
 Tissaphernes, 520, 878, 879, 896-899
 Tisza, 3766, 3888
 Titans, 723
 Tithonus, 736
 Titian, 2804
 Titsing, 4631
 Titus, 1086, 1412-1415
 Titus Manlius, 1175, 1176
 Titus Quinctius Flaminius, 1025, 1224, 1225
 Titus Tatius, 1126
 Tobago, Island of, surrender of, 3278
 Tocqueville, Alexis de, 3965
 Todleben, Colonel, 3619, 3745, 3766
 Togo, Admiral, 3886, 4729, 4730
 Togrul, 2038, 2039
 Togrul III., 2044
 Tohopeka, battle of, 4020
 Tokar, capture of, 3800
 Tokay, battle of, 2582
 Tokugawa Iyeyasu, Shogun, 4640
 Tola, 386
 Tolbiac, battle of, 1546
 Toledo, peace of, 2585
 Tolentino, battle of, 3498
 peace of, 3412
 Toleration, Edict of, 2751
 Tolly, Count Barclay de, 3460, 3481, 3488, 3489
 Tolmides, 851
 Tolosa, Navas de, battle of, 2392
 Tolstoi, Count Ostermann, 3488
 Tolstoi, Count, 3791
 Tolstoi, Count Leo, 3882, 3966
 Toltecs, 2534
 Tombs of the Persian Kings, 574-576
 Tomochichi, 2949
 Tompkins, Daniel D., 4034, 4040
 Tonnère, Clermont, 3363
 Tonquin, 3349, 4636, 4637
 war in, 3844, 3845
 Toombs, Robert, 4115
 Toplitz, treaty of, 3487
 Torfou, battle of, 3397, 3398
 Torgau, battle of, 3128
 Tories and Whigs, in America, 3217
 in England, 2884
 Torres, 4342
 Torres Vedras, 3467
 Torricelli, 3026
 Torrington, Herbert, Earl of, 2915, 2916
 Torstenson, General, 2794-2796
 Tortona, destruction of, 2086
 Tortosa, capture of, 3468
 Tosothrus, 44
 Tostig, Earl of Northumberland, 2024
 Totila, 1536, 1537, 1579
 Toul, 2620
 Toulon, insurrection of, 3390
 siege of, 3010
 Turks at, 2589
 Toulouse, battle of, 3494
 Count Raymond VI. of, 2075-2081
 Touraine, 2145, 2252, 2441

- Tournaments of chivalry, 3040
 Tours, battle of, 1555, 1842
 Tourville, Admiral, 2915, 2998
 Toussaint L'Ouverture, 3434, 4349
 Tower of London, building of, 2246
 Tower, the little Princes in the, 2346
 Townshend, Lord, 3080, 3082
 Towton, battle of, 2337
 Traci, William de, 2256
 Trafalgar, battle of, 3441, 3442
 Trajan, 1071, 1095, 1096, 1418-1421
 triumph of, 1420
 Trajanus, Marcus Ulpian, 1418
 Transmigration of the soul, doctrine of, 87,
 635, 637, 651
 Transubstantiation, doctrine of, 1949
 Transvaal, republic of, annexed to British
 dominions, 3793, 4445-4447
 Uitlanders of, 3825, 4455-4470
 Transsylvania, 2437, 3603
 Turkish rule in, 3058, 3065
 Trasimenes, battle of, 1210, 1211
 Trastámara, Henry of, 2175, 2176, 2299, 2394
 Traun, Field Marshal, 3105
 Travendal, peace of, 3067
 Treaties of—
 Aix la Chapelle, in 1668, 2983
 Aix la Chapelle, 1648, 3111, 3112
 Amiens, 3351, 3433
 Arras, 2223, 2343
 Bergen-op-Zoom, 2744
 Berlin, 3770, 3771
 Berwick, 2709
 Cateau-Cambresis, 2681, 2718, 2747
 Chaumont, 3493
 Cherasco, 2967
 Constantinople, 3774
 Dover, 2879-2881
 Edinburgh, 2682, 2709, 2750
 Fontainebleau, in 1785, 3155
 Fontainebleau, in 1814, 3494
 Frankfort-on-the-Main, 3678
 Füssen, 3105
 Guadalupe Hidalgo, 4087, 4357
 Halle, 2773
 Hamburg, 3137
 Hubertsburg, 3137, 3138
 Jassy, 3173, 3174
 Lemberg, 3045
 Loo, 3155
 Lunéville, 3431
 Madrid, 2577
 Nankin, 3565, 4632
 Paris, in 1763, 3137
 Paris, in 1783, 3281, 3282
 Paris, in 1810, 3461
 Paris, in 1814, 3494
 Paris, in 1815, 3501
 Paris, in 1856, 3622, 3623
 Paris, in 1898, 4303, 4304
 Peterswaldau, 3487
 Prague, in 1635, 2791
 Prague, in 1866, 3648
 Pressburg, 3443
 Rastadt, 2929, 3015, 3016
 Reichenbach, in 1790, 3173
 Reichenbach, in 1813, 3487
 Ried, 3489
 Ripon, 2835
 Rueil, 2970
 San Ildefonso, 3410, 3411
 San Stefano, 3760, 3761
 Seville, 3090
 St. Petersburg, 3164
 Teschén, 3153
 the Crown, 3003, 3004
 the Pyrenees, 2978, 2979
 Toplitz, 3487
 Troyes, 2183, 2327
 Turkomanshee, 3539
 Union, 2924-2926
 Utrecht, 2929, 2937, 3014, 3015
 Versailles, in 1782, 3281
 Versailles, in 1871, 3677
 Vienna, in 1738, 3096
 Vienna, in 1864, 3645
 Vienna, in 1866, 3648
 Villa Franca, 3630
 Washington, in 1842, 4063, 4064
 Washington, in 1871, 4242, 4243
 Wela, 3038
 Westphalia, 2798, 2799
 Trebia, battle of, 1209
 second battle of, 3424
 Trebizond, 2442, 2485
 Trencavel, Raymond, 2079
 Trent affair, 4143, 4144
 Trent, Council of, 2613, 2618, 2620, 2628, 2629,
 2719, 2720
 Trenton, battle of, 3245
 Trepoff, General, 3779
 Treves, Bishop of, 3703

- Trevino, General, 4361, 4362
 Trial by Jury, origin of, 1958, 2004, 2005, 2259
 Tribonian, 1583, 1584
 Tribunal, of France, 3429, 3438
 Tribunes, of Rome, 1133, 1150
 Tribur, Diet at, 1947
 Trichinopoly, siege of, 3114
 Triennial Act, 2917
 Trifels, castle of, 2068, 2263
 Tripoli, 4007, 4034
 Tripolisza, siege of, 3536
 Triptolemus, 731, 732
 Tristany, General, 3691, 3696
 Triton, 726, 733
 Triumvirate, First, 1279
 Triumvirate, Second, 1305
 Triumvirs, 1279, 1305, 1310
 Troad, 419, 719
 Trochu, 3671, 3673, 3674, 3676
 Troezen, 711
 Troezenia, 711
 Trojan War, 718, 719
 Trollope, Anthony, 3959
 Tromp, Van, 2856, 2857, 2971
 Tronchet, 3377
 Troppau, 3532
 Troubadours, 2053, 2154
 Trouveres, 2154, 2155
 Troy, destruction of, 718
 siege and capture of, 718
 Troyes, battle of, 2195
 bombardment of, 3493
 treaty of, 2183, 2227
 Truce of God, 2133
 Trumbull, John, 3290
 Trumbull, Lyman, 4107, 4210, 4232, 4237
 Trussell, Sir William, 2290
 Truxtun, Commodore, 3998, 1771
 Tryon, Governor, 3216, 3247, 3261
 Tryon, Sir George, 3811
 Trypho, 1254
 Tsa Paok Woi, General, 4650
 Tse dynasty, 679
 Tso Fonk Wai, General, 4650
 Tsong-ti, 4627
 Tübingen, University of, 2610
 Tucki, 2511
 Tucker, General Sir Charles, 4504
 Tudor, Henry, Earl of Richmond, afterwards,
 Henry VII., 2346-2349, 2352-2360
 Tudor, Owen, 2328, 2346
 Tulleries, 2981, 3366, 3437, 3497, 3543, 3589,
 3610-3612, 3669, 3684, 3687, 3688
 storming of, 3372, 3373
 Tulsca, 1561
 Tulga, 1531
 Tullia, 1135
 Tullus Hostilius, 1127-1130
 Tunis, 2072, 2153, 2584, 2682, 2843, 4034
 Tupac Amaru, 4341
 Tupelo, battle of, 4189
 Turanian tribes, 26, 471, 1522
 Turenne, Marshal, 2795, 2971, 2972, 2974-2977,
 2982, 2984-2987
 Turgeneff, Alexei, 3966
 Turgeneff, Ivan, 3966
 Turgot, 3359
 Turin, battle of 3009, 3010
 siege and fall of, 2793
 Turkestan, 3719-3721
 Turkey, assassination of Abdul Aziz, 3727
 admitted into European States-System,
 3622
 and Egypt, 3572-3574, 3521-3525
 and Modern Greece, 3536-3541, 3918-3922
 Armenian massacres in, 3914-3918
 atrocities in, 3728
 European Powers and, 3915
 framing of constitution for, 3731
 insolvency of, 3726
 Kurds of, 3914
 persecution of Christians in, 3914-3918
 reforms in, 3915, 3916
 Russian War of 1806-1812 in, 3454-3458
 Russian War of 1828-1829 in, 3539-3541
 Russian War of 1877-1878 (see Russo-
 Turkish War), 3725-3774
 sultans of, table of, 4887
 Turkomans, 2493, 3720, 3721
 Turkomanshee, treaty of, 3539
 Turka, first appearance of in history, 1580,
 1581
 conquests by, 1580
 their iron manufactures, 1581
 Turks, Ottoman, empire of the, 2475-2487
 enter Europe, 2444, 2477
 modern, 2581-2591, 2721-2723, 2725, 2726,
 3056-3065, 3083, 3037, 3056-3183, 3554-
 3558, 3536-3541, 3572-3574, 3617-3623,
 3721-3774, 3906-3922
 Turks, Seljuk, empire of the, 2037-2045
 adopt the Mohammedan religion, 2038

- end of dynasty of, 2045
 greatest prosperity of, 2042
 in Western Asia, 2037, 2045
 Jellalean established, 2043
 Turner, Joseph M. W., 3966
 Turnhout, battle of, 2743
 Tuscans, 1122, 1123
 Tuscany, 1115, 2385, 3096, 3586, 3631
 Tuscarora Indians, 2533, 2948
 Twelve Tables, laws of the, 1156, 1157
 Twiggs, General, David Emanuel, 4121, 4141
 Tycho Brahe, 2725, 2802
 Tynnesis, King of Cilicia, 421
 Tyler, John, 4061-4063, 4122, 4123
 Tyler, Wat, 2305-2309
 Tyndale, William, 2649
 Tyndall, John, 3955
 Typhon, or Seth, 96-99
 Tyr, the God, 1981
 Tyrconnel, Richard Talbot, Earl of, 2895
 Tyre, 325-330
 captured by the Assyrians, 184, 329
 subjection to Egypt and Babylon, 329
 siege and capture of, by Nebuchadnezzar, 350, 329
 siege and capture of, by Alexander the Great, 330, 992, 993
 siege of, by the Assyrians, 176, 328
 Tyrol, 2103, 2110
 invasion of the, 3007
 restored to Austria, 3521
 revolt in the, 3471, 3472
 Tyroleans, Andreas Hofer and the, 3471, 3472
 Tyrone, Hugh O'Neil, Earl of, 2700, 2701
 Tyrone's rebellion, 2700-2702
 Tyrtaeus, 778, 795

 UAHABRA, 61
 Uaphris, King of Egypt, 249
 Uenephes, 44
 Uewanukif, ruins of, 452
 Uganda, 3809
 Uitlanders, 3825, 3826, 4455-4473
 Uhrich, General, 3670
 Ukraine, 3039, 3041, 3042, 3044, 3045, 3053, 4065, 3177
 Uland, Ludwig, 3965
 Ulflas, 1498
 Ulloa, San Juan de, castle of, 4063
 Ulm, peace of, 2777
 surrender of, 3441

 Ulpien Library, 1419
 Ulpius, Marcellus, 1490
 Ulrica Eleanora, Queen of Sweden, 3071, 314
 Ulrich, Duke of Württemberg, 2610, 2615
 Ulrich Zwingli, 2607-2609
 Ulster, Germany, battle of, 1950
 Ulster, Ireland, Scotch settlers of, 2814, 2815
 Ultramontane party, of Belgium, 3545
 of Switzerland, 3585
 of Germany, 3073, 3074
 Ultramontanes, 3702, 3649
 Ulysses, 718, 719, 727, 737, 793
 Umbria, 1116, 1117
 Umbrians, 1122
 Uncle Tom's Cabin, romance, 4098, 4111, 396
 Union, Parliamentary, of England and Scotland, 2924-2926
 of Great Britain and Ireland, 3347
 Union, treaty of, 2925
 Union Pacific and Central Pacific Railroad, completion of, 4238
 Unitarians, 3518
 United States of America, Abolitionists of, 4053-4056, 4060, 4065-4068, 4098, 4099
 African slave trade, 4111
 Alaska, purchase of, 4235, 4236
 Alaskan seal fisheries dispute, 4267
 Alien and Sedition Laws of, 3999, 4000
 ambassadors sent abroad, 4269
 American System, 4048
 and Revolutionary France, 3989-3991
 annexation of Hawaii, 4303
 annexation of Texas, 4069-4074
 arbitration for Bering Sea dispute, at Paris, 4270
 Arctic expeditions of, 4100
 assassination of Garfield, 4259
 at the close of the American Revolution, 3288-3301
 Bank of North America founded, 3393
 border troubles of, in Maine, 4061
 Canadian boundary line fixed, 4036
 centennial celebration in, 4250-4252
 centennial of Washington's inauguration, 4265
 cession of Florida, 4035
 cession of California and New Mexico, 4087
 Chilian difficulties, 4267
 civil troubles in Rhode Island, 4062, 4063
 civil war in Kansas, 4105, 4106

- civil war in (see United States, civil war in), 4126-4228
- Clayton-Bulwer Treaty, 4095
- commercial treaty with Japan, 4104
- Compromise Act, provisions of, 4095, 4096
- constitutional convention at Philadelphia of 1787, 3301-3311
- constitutional centennial, 4263
- Credit Mobilier of, 4244, 4245
- Gadsden purchase, 4101
- Cuban revolution and, 4279-4286
- demand the withdrawal of Emperor Maximilian from Mexico, 4233, 4234
- Democratic party formed in, 3978, 3979
- difficulties with France, 3980-3991, 3997-3999
- difficulty with Germany concerning Samoa, 4264, 4265
- Dred Scott decision, 4108, 4109
- effects of the decrees of Berlin and Milan in, 4009, 4010
- end of civil war in, 4220-4228
- financial difficulties of, 4057-4059
- first congress of, 3974, 3975
- formation of Southern Confederacy, 4120
- formation of the electoral college, 3306
- fourteenth constitutional amendment adopted, 4237
- Free Soil party, 4091
- fugitive slave law, 4097
- government of, moved to Washington, 4003
- Hawaiian question, 4268, 4271
- Hayti and, 4264
- impeachment of President Johnson, 4236, 4237
- Indians removed beyond the Mississippi, 4046, 4047, 4056
- Indian war of 1790 in, 3984, 3985
- Indian war of 1811 in, 4012, 4013
- Indians under Black Hawk, war with, 4056
- industries in the Eighteenth Century, 3290, 3291
- internal improvements in, 4047
- issue of greenbacks, 4168
- Jay's Treaty, 3993-3995
- Johnstown disaster, 4265, 4266
- Georgia controversy, 4046
- joint high commission with Great Britain, 4242, 4283
- Kansas-Nebraska bill, 4102, 4103
- Know-Nothing party of, 4104
- Mafia riots in New Orleans, 4267
- Maine boundary line settled, 4061
- McKinley tariff act, 4266
- Mexican purchase, 4101
- Mexican war, 4077-4087
- Missouri compromise, 4036, 4039
- Monroe doctrine, 4040-4045
- Mormons in, 4088, 4089
- national constitution of, 3292-3311
- national mint established at Philadelphia, 3277
- Northwest territory of, 3277
- Oregon boundary, 4074-4777
- Ostend Manifesto, 4103, 4104
- Pan-American congress, 4266
- panic of 1837, 4059
- panic of 1857, 4110
- panic of 1873, 4247
- panic of 1893, 4270, 4271
- peace convention of, 4122, 4123
- peace of Ghent, with Great Britain, 4032
- peace of Guadalupe Hidalgo, 4087
- Philippine insurrection, 4305-4320
- platforms of Presidential nominees of 1860, 4113, 4114
- proclamation of amnesty to Confederates, 4230, 4231
- proposed arbitration treaty with Great Britain, 4276
- purchase of Alaska, 4235, 4236
- purchase of Louisiana, 4005, 4006
- railroad riots of 1877, 4255
- railroad strikes of 1894, 4272, 4273
- reciprocity treaty with Great Britain, 4104
- reconstruction policy of Congress, 4232, 4233
- Republican party formed, 4106, 4107
- seceded states restored to the Union, 4233, 4237, 4238
- secession of slave states, 4115-4126
- Shays' insurrection, 3294, 3295
- Sherman Silver Act, 4266
- Specie Circular, 4058
- Specie Resumption Act, 4257
- state ratification of the national constitution in Eighteenth Century, 3310

- "States' Rights" and "Nullification," 4046-4053
 tariff law of 1828, 4048
 Tariff compromise, 4052, 4053
 territory claimed by states, Eighteenth Century, 3295-3297
 Thirteenth Amendment adopted, 4210, 4211
 Venezuela boundary dispute, 4274-4277
 Virginian difficulty with Spain, 4247, 4248
 enfranchisement of negroes in, 4238, 4239
 War of 1812, Great Britain, 4014-4033
 war with Algiers, 4034
 war with France, 3998, 3999
 war with the Nez Percés, 4255, 4256
 war with Mexico, 4077-4087
 war with Modocs, 4245, 4246
 war with Spain, 4279-4305
 war with the Seminoles, 4058-4060
 wars with the Sioux, 4162, 4163, 4252, 4253, 4266, 4267
 with Tripoli, 4007
 war with the Utes, 4257
 Washington's administration attacked, 3996
 Whiskey Insurrection in, 3984
 Wilson Tariff Act, 4272
 Wilmot Proviso, 4086
 United States of America, Civil War in, 4126-4228
 amnesty proclamation, 4184
 Army of the Cumberland, 4179-4181
 assassination of Abraham Lincoln, 4220, 4221
 attitude of foreign powers in, 4131, 4132, 4143-4145
 battles of Bull Run, 4135, 4136, 4158
 battle of Gettysburg, 4170-4174
 battle of the Wilderness, 4194, 4195
 beginning of, 4226, 4227
 blockade of Southern ports, 4143
 campaign of 1861, 4132-4145
 campaign of 1862, 4145-4169
 campaign of 1863, 4169-4185
 campaign of 1864, 4185-4211
 campaign of 1865, 4211-4222
 capture of New Orleans, 4149, 4150
 charitable organizations of, 4225, 4226
 Confederate privateers, 4182, 4183
 conference of Lincoln with Grant, Sherman and Meade, 4215
 Copperheads of, 4167
 Emancipation Proclamation issued, 4164-4166
 end of, 4218-4228
 England protests against building ship for the confederacy, 4186, 4187
 enlistment of colored troops, 4183, 4185
 fall of Richmond, 4218, 4219
 Lee's surrender, 4220
 national armies at close of, 4223
 national navy of, 4181, 4182
 naval operations of 1863, 4181-4183
 New York riots, 4183
 opening of the Mississippi, 4174-4176
 outlook at end of 1863, 4167
 peace conference at Fortress Monroe, 4211, 4212
 Red River expedition, 4189, 4190
 Sherman's, W. T., march to the sea, 4202, 4204
 slavery abolished in the, 4210, 4211
 Trent Affair, 4143-4145
 victories of Sheridan in the Shenandoah Valley, 4199-4201
 prisons of, 4224, 4225
 United States of America, Presidential elections in, 3973-4336
 Adams (John) and Jefferson, 3996
 Adams (John Quincy) and Calhoun, 4045
 Buchanan and Breckenridge, 4107, 4108
 Cleveland and Hendricks, 4260
 Cleveland and Stevenson, 4268
 Garfield and Arthur, 4258
 Grant and Colfax, 4237, 4238
 Grant and Wilson, 4243, 4244
 Harrison (Benjamin) and Morton, 4264
 Harrison (William Henry) and Tyler, 4061, 4062
 Hayes and Wheeler, 4253, 4254
 Jackson and Calhoun, 4049
 Jackson and Van Buren, 4056
 Jefferson and Burr, 4004
 Lincoln and Hamlin, 4113, 4114
 Lincoln and Johnson, 4207-4209
 Madison and Clinton, 4011
 Madison and Gerry, 4017, 4018
 McKinley and Hobart, 4277, 4278
 McKinley and Roosevelt, 4225-4227
 Monroe and Tompkins, 4034, 4040
 Pierce and King, 4100, 4101

- Polk and Dallas, 4073
 Roosevelt and Fairbanks, 4333
 Taylor and Fillmore, 4091, 4092
 VanBuren and Johnson, 4058
 Washington and John Adams, 3973, 3983
 United States, Presidents of, table of, 4889
 Universalists, 3518
 Universities, Arabian, 1852, 1870, 1876, 1877, 2052
 medieval European, 2052
 Unstruth, battle of, 1936
 Nnterwalden, canton of, 2111, 2112, 2116
 Upanishada, extracts from, 638
 Upir, King of Asmun, 179
 Upsala, university of, 2419
 Ur, or Hur, 116, 127, 128
 temple of, 127, 128
 Urania, 738
 Uranos, 723
 Urban II., Pope, 1951, 1952, 2059, 2126
 organizes the First Crusade, 2059
 Urbicus, Lollius, 1423
 Urdamane, 201
 Uri, canton of, 2111, 2112
 Uriah, 296
 Urrea, General, 4353, 4354
 Urtaki, King of Susiana, 202
 Uruguay, 4364, 4365
 Uruk, 127, 128
 Ushant, naval battle of, 3273
 Usurtasen I., 49
 Usurtasen II., 49
 Usurtasen III., 49
 Utah, territory of, settled by Mormons, 4088, 4089
 rebellion in, 4109
 State of, admission of, 4272
 Ute Indians, war with the, 4257
 Utica, Ancient,
 Utopia, by Sir Thomas More, 2647
 Utraquists, 2121
 Utrecht, peace of, 2929, 2937, 3014, 3016
 Union of, 2737
 Uziah, King of Judah, 406

 VAAL KRANTZ, battle of, 3223, 4427
 Vadier, 3394, 3399
 Vafangow, first battle of, 3284, 4713
 second battle of 3284, 4715
 Vagabanta, battle of, 1653, 1654
 Vahan, the Mamigonian, 1682
 Vaillant, 3284
 Valais, canton of, 3435
 Valakhash, or Volagases, 1680
 Valdivia, Pedro de, 2545
 Valençay, 3463, 3491
 Valencia, province of, 3009, 3010
 Valencia, city of, capture of, 3468
 repulse at, 3464
 siege and bombardment of, 3694
 Valenciennes, capture of, 3995
 siege and fall of, 2987
 siege of, 2977
 Valens, 1494-1498
 Valente, Dr., 4376
 Valentinian I., 1494, 1495
 Valentinian II., 1495-1500
 Valentinian III., 1507-1510
 Valerian, 1447, 1448
 Valerien, Fort, 3671, 3674, 3682, 3683
 Valerius, 1180
 Valerius, another, 1174
 Valerius, Marcus, 1215
 Valhalla, 1275
 Valladolid, 2527, 3469
 Vallandigham, Clement Laird, 4113, 4184, 4208
 Valle, Adolfo, 4362
 Valles, 3687
 Valley Forge, 3252-3254
 Valmy, battle of, 3375
 Valois, dynasty of, 2166-2232, 2547-2609, 2746-2767
 Valois, Philip of, 2166-2170
 Valparaiso, naval battles of, 4371
 riot at, 4267, 4373, 4374
 siege and fall of, 4372
 Valverde, battle of, 4182
 Valverde, the priest, 2543
 Van Artevelde, James, or Jaques, 2293, 2667
 Van Artevelde, Philip, 2178
 Vandals, 1452, 1505-1508, 1510, 1521, 1522, 1576
 capture of Rome by, 1510
 home of, 1522
 Kingdom of, in Africa, founded, 1508
 Kingdom of, in Africa, conquered by Eastern Romans, 1576
 Vandamme, 3488, 3489
 Van Diemen's Land, 3569
 Van Dorn, General Earl, 4148, 4151, 4179
 Van Dyke, 3027

- Vane, Sir Henry, 2841, 2857, 2858, 2873
 Van Horne, Major, 4017
 Van Olden Barneveldt, 2745
 Van Tromp, Admiral, 2856, 2857, 2971
 Van Twiller, Wouter, 2940
 Vanvres, Fort, 3671, 3674, 3681, 3683-3685
 Varahan I., 1621, 1622
 Varahan II., 1622, 1623
 Varahan III., 1623, 1624
 Varahan IV., 1657
 Varahan V., 1661-1667
 Varanes, 1592
 Varangians, 1965, 2420, 2423
 Varennes, arrest of Louis XVI at, 3367
 Varennes, Billand, 3384, 3394, 3399
 Varese, capture of, 3629
 Varna, battle of, 2435, 2438, 2446, 2463
 capture of, 3539
 Varro, 1325
 Varro, Tarentius, 1213, 1214
 Varuna, 622, 624, 625
 Varus, Quintilius, 1388, 1389
 Vasa, Gustavus, 2419, 2633, 2634
 Vasco da Gama, 2402, 2522, 2523
 Vasco Nuñez de Balboa, 2528
 Vassals, 2047, 2048
 Vassili III., Grand Duke of Russia, 2430
 Vassili IV., Grand Duke of Russia, 2430, 2431
 Vassili V., Autocrat of all the Russias, 3045
 Vassili VI., Czar of Russia, 3051, 3052
 Vasvar, truce of, 3059
 Vatican, in Rome, building of, 1907
 Vauban, the engineer, 2981, 2984, 2989, 2995, 2997, 2998
 Vauchambps, battle of, 3493
 Vaud, canton of, 3416, 3417
 Vaudois, or Waldenses, 2590, 2591, 2704
 persecutions of the, 2590, 2591
 Vedanta philosophy, 636-640
 Veda, of the Hindoos, 620-628
 extracts from, 623-628
 religion of the, 622-628
 theology of the, 622-628
 Vedic age, 621-628
 Vega, Lope de, 3027
 Veli, Roman conquest of, 1161-1163
 Velarde, 3693
 Velasquez, 3028
 Venables, Admiral, 2862, 4349
 Vendeans, 3387-3389, 3402, 3403
 Vendée, La, revolt in, 3387-3389, 3402, 3404
 Vendemiaire 11th and 13th, insurrection of, 3403, 3404
 Vendidad, 585, 586
 Vendome, battle of, 3674
 Vendome, Duke of, 3006, 3009, 3010, 1011, 3013
 Vendome column, destruction of, 3686
 Venerable Bede, 1567, 2052
 Veneti, 2383
 Venetia, ancient, 1114
 modern, 3608, 3630, 3648
 Venezia, 2383
 Venezuela,
 boundary dispute of, with Great Britain, 4274-4277
 conquest of, by the Spaniards, 2545, 2546
 conspiracy in, 4344
 earthquake in, 4344
 freed by Simon Bolivar, 4344, 4345
 revolutionary attempts in, 4374, 4388
 war of independence in, 4342-4346
 Venice, Republic of, 2380-2385, 2722, 2723, 3059, 3062, 3065, 3083, 3415
 ceremony of Wedding the Adriatic, 2384
 commerce and naval power of, 2383, 2384
 conquests of, 2383, 2384
 Council of Ten in, 2384
 decline of, 2385
 dissensions and corruption in, 2384
 end of, 3415
 Doges of, 2384
 founding of, 1509, 2383
 in the Crusades, 2384
 Rialto bridge, 2384
 St. Mark as patron saint, 2384
 territories of, 2384
 wars of Turks against, 2385, 2722, 2723, 3062, 3065, 3083
 wealth and power of, 2383, 2384
 Venus, 724
 Venusia, 1189
 Vera Cruz, attack on, 3579, 4354
 occupation of, 4358
 siege and fall of, 4083, 4356
 Vera Sassulitch, 2779
 Verazanni, John, 2529
 Vercellæ, battle of, 1253
 Vercingetorix, King of Arverni, 1283, 1284
 surrenders Gaul to Cæsar, 1283, 1284

- Verde Islands, Cape de, discovery of, 2522
 Verdi, 3967
 Verdun, partition treaty of, 1905
 Vergesack, General, 3459
 Vergniaud, 3377
 Vermandois, Count Hugh of, 2061
 Vermont, 3250, 3295
 admission of, 3978
 Vernet, Horace, 3967
 Vernon, Admiral, 3098, 3287
 Vernon, Mount, 3285, 3287, 3973, 4002
 Verona, 3629
 Veronese, Paul, 2805
 Verplanck's Point, capture of, 3261
 Versailles, palace of, 2981
 Versailles, peace of, in 1782, 3281
 in 1871, 3677
 Verus, Lucius, 1424-1426
 Vervins, peace of, 2743, 2771
 Vespasian, 1087, 1088, 1410-1413
 Vespucci, Amerigo, 2527
 Vesta, 724, 1138
 Vestal fire, 1138
 Vestal Virgins, 1138, 1139
 Vesuvius, battle of, 1176
 eruption of, in A. D., 79, 1414
 Vetrano, 1481, 1482
 Vettius Scatto, 1259
 Vetruria, 1151
 Vezelai, council of, 2140
 Vicksburg, siege and capture of, 4174, 4175
 Victor, Marshal, 3464, 3666, 3667
 Victor II., Pope, 1937, 1938
 Victor III., Pope, 1951
 Victor Amadeus II., Duke of Savoy, 2996,
 2999, 3000, 3007, 3010, 3084
 Victor Emmanuel I., 3532
 Victor Emmanuel II., 3607
 and Garibaldi, 3631-3635
 at Solferino, 3630
 in Naples, 3632
 petitioned to occupy Rome, 3678
 proclaimed King of Italy, 3633
 proclamation of, to the Romans, 3679
 Victoria, General Guadalupe, of Mexico, 4343,
 4350, 4351
 Victoria Land, discovery of, 3953
 Victoria, Queen, accession of, 3562, 3563
 American civil war and, 4145
 greatness of her reign, 3836, 3837
 Jubilees of, 3804, 3816, 3817
 long reign of, 3833, 3836
 made Empress of India, 3661
 marriage of, 3563
 death of 3833-3837
 receives the Koh-i-noor diamond, 3567
 Victoria, wife of Emperor Frederick of Ger-
 many, 3870
 death of, 3877, 3878
 Victorio, Indian Chief, 4257
 Vienna, Concordat of, 2123
 congress of, 3496, 3521
 first siege of, by the Turks, 2583
 International Exhibition at, 3949
 League of, 3089
 Peace of, in 1864, 3645
 Peace of, in 1866, 3648
 second siege of, by the Turks, 3060, 3061
 Third Treaty of, in 1738, 3096
 Vienne, battle of, 1549
 Vigo Bay, battle of, 3006
 Viglius, 2728
 Vikings, 1959-1966
 Villa Franca, Peace of, 3630
 Villagos, Görgey's surrender at, 3605
 Villars, Marshal, 3006, 3007, 3012, 3014, 3095
 Villaumes, Vice-Admiral, 3474
 Villaviciosa, first battle of, 3023
 second battle of, 3013
 Villele, 3525-3527
 Villemur, burning of, 2077
 Viller Excels, capture of, 3675
 Villeroi, Marshal, 3000, 3004, 3006, 3009
 Villiers, George, 2817
 Vimiera, battle of, 3464
 Vincennes, France, 2152, 3438
 Vincennes, Indiana, 3018
 Vinci, Leonardo da, 2804
 Vindex, Julius, 1406
 Vindelicia, 1340
 Vindya mountains, 613
 Vinca, Peter de, 2098
 Vinegar Hill, battle of, 3346
 Vinoy, General, 3682, 3688
 Vionville, battle of, 3666
 Virgil, 1100, 1372, 1386
 Virginia, colony of, 2931-2933
 Bacon's Rebellion in, 2932
 House of Burgesses in, 2932
 naming and first settlement in, 2931
 slavery introduced into, 2932
 under Governor Berkeley, 2932, 2933

- Virginia, State of, 3310
 secession of, 4129
 readmission of, 4238
 Virginia, Roman maiden, 1158, 1159
 death of, 1158, 1159
 Virginius, Roman plebeian, 1158, 1159
 Viriathus, 1235
 Visconti, family of, 2937
 Vishnu, the God, 642-646
 Avatars of, 643, 644
 Visigoths, 1497, 1498, 1501, 1506, 1507, 1509,
 1522, 1526-1533
 Kingdom of, in Spain, 1526-1533
 Vitellius, 1409-1411
 Vitiges, 1536, 1577
 Vitry, castle of, burning of the, 2141
 Vitry-le-Francaise, capture of, 3667
 Vittoria, battle of, 3469
 Vladetsky, 3784
 Vladivostok, 4695
 bombardment of, 4705
 Vladimir I., the Great, 2423, 2424
 Vladimir II., 2426
 Voelkersham, Admiral, 3886, 4730
 Vogelweide, Walther von der, 2107
 Voillé, battle of, 1547
 Vollaterra, battle of, 1180
 Volcanalia, 1138
 Volney, 3511
 Volscians, 1122, 1150, 1151, 1163
 Volta, 3507
 Voltaire, 3139-3141
 visit of, to Frederick the Great, 3093
 Volumnia, 1151
 Volusianus, 1447
 Vomises, 503
 Von Bülow, Count, 3877
 Von Caprivi, General, 3870, 3872
 Von Der Tann, General, 3671, 3672
 Von Dorenberg, Colonel, 3472
 Von Hardenberg, Chancellor, 3401, 3473
 Von Moltke, Field Marshal, 3664, 3665
 Von Schill, Major, 3472
 Von Stein, Baron, 3473
 Voulant, 3394
 Vratsa, capture of, 3747
 Vul, or Iva, the Air-god, 297, 298, 310, 311
 Vulcan, 724, 1138
 Val-lush I., 142, 143
 Val-lush II., 155
 Val-lush III., 168-171
 WADE, BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, 4187,
 4210, 4232
 Waddington, 3719, 3842
 Wadsworth, Captain, 2939
 Wadsworth, General James Samuel, 4194
 Wagner, 3967
 Wagner, Fort, capture of, 4178
 Wagram, battle of, 3471
 Wahabes, or Wahabites, 3455, 3519, 3572
 Waiblingen, 2084
 Waite, Morrison Remick, 4243, 4244
 Waitzen, capture of, 3603
 Wakefield, battle of, 2335, 2336
 Walcheren expedition, 3474, 3475
 Walcourt, battle of, 2997
 Waldeck, Heinrich von, 2107
 Waldeck, Prince of, 2998
 Waldemar Atterdag, King of Denmark, 2413
 Waldemar the Conqueror, King of Denmark,
 2411, 2412
 Waldemar the Great, King of Denmark, 2411
 Waldemar of Schleswig, 2412
 Waldenses, or Vaudois, persecutions of the,
 2590, 2591, 2863
 Waldo, Peter, 2704
 Wales, conquest of, 2279
 inhabitants of, 1558, 1559
 Wales, first Prince of, 2279, 2280
 Wales, New South, 3568
 Walker, Leroy Pope, 4128
 Walker, Sir Hovenden, 2937, 3115
 Walker, General Sir Frederick William Ed-
 ward Forestier, 4504
 Wall of Antonine, 1423
 Wallace, General Lewis, 4137, 4199
 Wallace, General William Harvey Lamb,
 4147
 Wallace, William, 2283-2285, 2370, 2371
 Wallachia, 2438, 2482, 3039, 3041, 3161, 3162,
 3166, 3167, 3171, 3174, 3455-3457, 3539-
 3541, 3618, 3619, 3640
 Wallacha, 3603
 Waller, Sir William, 2483
 Wallenstein, Albert von, 2740-2783, 2786-2790
 assassination of, 2789, 2790
 barbarous conduct of, 2780, 2782
 education of, 2780
 infamous bargain of, with Ferdinand II.,
 2780
 military career of, 2740-2782, 2786-2790
 Wallia, 1526, 1527

- Wallis, 3330, 3515**
Wallis, Sir Provo, 3310
Walpole, Horace, 3197, 3510
Walpole, Sir Robert, 3082, 3086, 3087, 3088,
 3091, 3097-3100, 3102, 3119, 3186, 3208,
 3513
 political weapons of, 3088
Walsingham, Sir Francis, 2678, 2697, 2699
Walter the Penniless, 2060
Waltheof, Earl of Northumberland, 2240
Wamba, 1531, 1532
 banishes the Jews, 1531
 trance of, 1531, 1532
Wampanoag Indians, 2532, 2933, 2935
Wandewash, battle of, 3132
Wang Seng Tsao, 4632
Warbeck, Perkin, 2354-2357
Ward, General Artemas, 3229
Warfare, Assyrian, 234-238
 Babylonian, 282, 283
 during the Middle Ages, 2047-2049
 during the XV. and XVI. centuries, 2521
 Egyptian, 71-73
 Greek, 720, 791, 945-948
 Persian, 538-548
 Roman, 1138, 1365-1370
Warner, Colonel Seth, 3251
Warren, General Gouverneur Kemble, 4193,
 4195, 4218
Warren, General Joseph, 3223, 3227, 3229,
 3230
Warren, General Sir Charles, 4503
Warrene, Earl of, 2284, 2370, 2371
Warrington, Captain, 4024
Warsaw, battles and captures of, 3034, 3042
 Grand Duchy of, 3453
 siege and fall of, in 1794, 3180, 3181
 siege and fall of, in 1831, 3548
Wartburg castle, Luther at the, 2600-2602
Warwick, Dudley, Earl of, 2664-2667, 2669
Warwick, Edward Plantagenet, Earl of, 2356,
 2357
Warwick, Neville, Earl of, 2335-2340
Warwick, Earl of, another, 2938
Warwickshire, 2842
Washburne, Elihu Benjamin, 4210
Washington City, capital of the United States,
 4003
 Pan-American congress at, 4266
 vol. 15-22
Washington, Fort, captured by the Hessians,
 3244
Washington, General George, in the French
 and Indian War, 3116, 3117, 3129
 assaults on the administration of, 3996,
 3997
 and the National Constitutional Conven-
 tion, 3301
 at Boston, 3230, 3231, 3234, 3235
 at Brandywine, 3249
 at Germantown, 3249
 at Mt. Vernon, 3287
 at White Plains, 3244
 at Trenton and Princeton, 3245
 at Valley Forge, 3252-3254
 at Yorktown, 3271, 3272
 character and description of, 3286, 3287
 chosen commander-in-chief, 3228, 3229
 chosen first President of the United
 States, 3973
 death of, 4002, 4003
 family and descent of, 3287, 3288
 farewell address of, 3996
 inauguration of, 3973, 3974
 in the War of the Revolution, 3228-3285
 in Virginia, 3237
 journey from Mt. Vernon to New York,
 3973
 neutrality proclamation of, 3989-3991
 resigns his commission as commander-in-
 chief, 3285
 retreat of, before Cornwallis, 3244
Washington Monument, at Washington, D. C.,
 4261
Washington, State of, admission of, 4265
Washington, First Treaty of, 4063
 Second Treaty of, 4242
Washington, William A., Colonel, 3269
Wasp, vessel, 4017, 4024
Waterford, Ireland, capture of, 2258
Waterloo, battle of, 3499, 3500
Watertown, Massachusetts, 2934
Watling street, Roman military road, 2003
Watson, Thomas E., 4277
Wat Tyler, rebellion of, 2305-2309
Wattegnies, battle of, 3391
Watt, James, inventions of, 3326, 3508
Watts, Isaac, 3509
Wauchope, General, 4505
Waxaw Creek, battle of, 3263

- Wayland, Francis, 3964
 Wayne, Fort, 3985
 Wayne, General Anthony, 3249, 3262, 3370, 3985
 Waziristan, British expedition into, 3813
 Wealth of Nations, by Adam Smith, 3326, 3508
 Webb, General, 3118
 Webb, General Alexander Stewart, 4195
 Weber, 3967
 Webster, Daniel, 4015, 4044, 4049, 4050, 4057, 4062, 4063, 4064, 4077, 4094, 4098, 4099
 Webster, Noah, 3961
 Wedgwood, Josiah, 3325, 3508
 Week, Anglo-Saxon origin of names of days of the, 1561, 1562
 Wei-hai-wei, capture of, 4664, 4665
 Wei-jink-woi, General, 4650
 Weinsberg, siege and capture of, 2084
 Weishaupt, Adam, 3147
 Welsembourg, first battle of, 3391
 second battle of, 3665
 Weissenberg, battle of, 2778
 Weitzel, General Godfrey, 4150, 4151, 4219
 Welau, peace of, 3035, 3038
 Welden, Baron, 3604
 Weldon railway, seizure of the, 4197, 4198
 Welf, or Guelf, Count, 2084
 Wellesley, Sir Arthur, 3324, 3351, 3436, 3464, 3466, 3467
 created Duke of Wellington, 3467
 Wellesley, Marquis, 3475
 Wellington, Duke of, 3467-3469
 at Albuera, 3464
 at Madrid, 3468
 at Orthez, 3493
 at Salamanca, 3468
 at Talavera, 3466
 at Toulouse, 3494
 at Victoria, 3469
 at Waterloo, 3499, 3500
 retreat of, to Torres Vedras, 3467
 death of, 3571
 Wenceslas, King of Germany, 2115, 2116
 Wenti, 678
 Wentworth, General, 3098
 Wentworth, Thomas, Earl of Strafford, 2929, 2931, 2935, 2936
 Wepener, siege and relief of, 3829, 4527-4530
 Werder, General von, 3666, 3670, 3675
 Werela, peace of, 3172
 Werner, 3506
 Werther, Baron von, 3663
 Wesley, Charles, 3512-3517
 Wesley, John, 3512-3517
 Wesselini, Count Francis, 3060
 Wessells, General Henry Walton, 4192
 Wessex, Saxon kingdom of, 1559
 West, Benjamin, 3512
 West, Cornwallis, Lord Sackville, 4294
 West, Doctor, 4387
 Westermann, 3387
 Western Empire, 1494-1514
 fall of the, 1511-1513
 restoration of the, 1885-1954
 West Indies, 2327, 4348-4350
 Westminster Abbey, 1564, 2023
 Westminster, peace of, 2860
 Westmoreland, Earl of, 2318
 Westphalia, Kingdom of, 3453, 3490
 peace of, 2798, 2799, 2972
 results of peace in Germany, 2799, 2800
 West Point, Benedict Arnold at, 3266
 West Virginia, admitted as a State, 4181
 declared independent, 4137
 guerilla raid in, 4217
 railroad riots in, 4255
 Wetzlar, Imperial chamber of, 3151
 Wexford, capture and massacre of, 2853, 2854
 Weyler, General, Cuban campaign of, 4416-4427
 Weymouth, Lord, 3194
 Wheeler, General Joseph, 4214, 4215, 4294-4297
 Wheeler, Sir Hugh, British general, in Indian mutiny, 3625
 Wheeler, William Almon, 4250, 4253, 4254
 Wheelwright, Rev. John, 2934, 2937
 Whigs and Tories, in England, 2864
 in America, 3217
 White, Colonel, 2860
 White, Major, 4140
 White, General Sir George Stuart, 4503
 White, Montague, 4505
 Whitefield, George, 3513-3517
 Whitehall, palace of, 2852, 2857-2859
 Whitelocke, General, 3451
 White Oak Swamp, battle of, 4157
 White Plains, battle of, 3244
 White Sulphur Springs, battle of, 4174
 Whitney, Eli, 3508
 Whitney, Professor William Dwight, 3964

- Whipple, General, 4170
 Whittier, John Greenleaf, 3962, 4055
 Whitworth, Lord, 3434
 Vialopolski, Count, 3642
 Viasma, peace of, 3041
 Vickliffe, John, 2053, 2118, 2119, 2301, 2309, 2310, 2320, 2323
 Widdin, battle of, 3063
 capture of, 3064
 Wieland, 3154, 3512
 Wieseloch, battle of, 2729
 Wieszowski, Michael, King of Poland, 3044
 Wigfall, Louis T., 4115
 Wight, Isle of, escape of Charles I. to the, 2848
 Wilberforce, William, 3330, 3454, 3518, 3561, 3952
 Wilderness, Virginia, battle in the, 4194, 4195
 Wilderness, wanderings of the Israelites in the, 365-374
 Wilhelmina, Queen of Holland, 3902
 Wilhelmshöhe, castle of, 3668, 3677
 Wilkes, Captain Charles, 4064, 4143, 4144
 Wilkes, John, 3189-3196, 3212
 elected to the House of Commons, 3193, 3194
 expelled from the House of Commons, 3191
 outlawed, 3191
 Wilkinson, General James, 4014, 4019, 4020
 Wilkinson, Sir Gardner, 43
 William and Mary College, founding of, 2980
 William X., Duke of Aquitaine, 2139
 William, Duke of Jülich, 2772
 William II., Duke of Normandy (William the Conqueror), 1994, 1995, 2021, 2023-2026, 2134, 2135, 2237-2244
 William III., of England, 2901-2922
 campaigns of, 2912-2918
 partition treaties of, 2918, 2919
 power of, in Europe, 2908
 proclaims a general amnesty, 2915
 William IV., of Great Britain, 3559-3562
 William Henry, Fort, capture of, 3118
 William I., of Holland, 3546
 William II., of Holland, 3546
 William III., of Holland, 3546, 3902
 William, Long-sword, Duke of Normandy, 1918, 1991
 William I., Prince of Orange, 2728-2733, 2735, 2737-2740
 assassination of, 2739, 2740
 defies Philip II., 2738
 elected Stadtholder, 2732
 outlawed by Philip II., 2734, 2735
 William III., Prince of Orange (William III. of England), 2901-2922
 enmity between Louis XIV. and, 2985-2989, 2994-3000, 3002, 3005
 marriage of, 2987, 2988
 William I., of Prussia and Germany, 3639, 3640
 attempts to assassinate, 3775, 3776
 becomes Emperor of Germany, 3673, 3674
 chamber of Deputies and, 3640
 death of, 3869
 marches to Paris, 3670, 3671
 surrender of Napoleon III. to, 3668
 triumphal entry into Paris, 3677
 William II., of Prussia and Germany, 3870
 policy of, 3870
 quarrel and reconciliation with Bismarck, 3870, 3872
 William II., of Württemberg, 3871
 William Rufus, of England, 2244-2246
 obtains Normandy, 2246
 William IV., Stadtholder of Holland, 3111
 William the Conqueror, 1994, 1995, 2021, 2023-2026, 2134, 2135, 2237-2244
 character of, 2244
 conquest of England by, 1994, 1995, 2025, 2026, 2134
 cruelties of, 2238, 2240, 2241
 coronation of, at Westminster Abbey, 2026, 2237
 curfew bell introduced, 2242
 death of, 2243
 Domesday Book compiled, 2241, 2242
 Feudal System introduced, 2239
 government of, 2237, 2239, 2242
 last years of, 2243
 New Forest made by, 2242
 Norman-French language in England, 2239
 survey of England under, 2241
 Wager of Battle introduced, 2242
 William the Lion, of Scotland, 2260, 2264, 2266
 captivity of, 2260, 2265, 2266
 invades England, 2260, 2265, 2266
 Williams, Colonel, 3264
 Williams, British general, 3622

- Williams, Roger, 2934, 2938
 banished from Massachusetts, 2934
 Rhode Island founded by, 2938
 Williams, Thomas, American general, 4150
 Williamsburg, battle of, 4154
 Willibrord, St., 1555
 Willoughby, Lieutenant, 3625
 Wilmanstrand, battle of, 3101
 Wilmington, Delaware, 2942
 Wilmington, North Carolina, 3269, 3270, 3273, 4213
 capture of, 4214
 Wilmot, David, 4086, 4210
 Wilmot Proviso, 4086
 Wilson, Alexander, 3961
 Wilson, British general, 3626
 Wilson, General James Harrison, 4196, 4197, 4217, 4287
 Wilson, Henry, 4107, 4210, 4232, 4244, 3963
 Wilson, Margaret, 2891
 Wilson Tariff Act, 4272
 Wilson's Creek, battle of, 4139, 4140
 Wimpfen, battle of, 2779
 Wimpffen, French general, 3382
 Wimpffen, French general, another, 3668
 Winchester, England, 1559, 2005
 battle of, 2365
 Treaty of, 2251
 Winchester, Marquis of, 2902
 Winchester, Virginia, 4134
 battles of, 4153, 4156, 4170, 4199
 capture of, 4170
 Winchester, General, 4018
 Winkelmann, 3154, 3511
 Winder, General, 4019, 4022
 Windhorst, Herr, 3704
 Windeschrätz, Prince, 3601-3603
 Windom, William, 4258, 4265
 Windsor Castle, building of, 2242
 Windsor, Connecticut, 2938
 Winfried, or Boniface, 1886
 Winkelried, Arnold von, 2116
 death of, 2116
 Winnebago Indians, 4056
 Winslow, General, 3117
 Winslow, John Ancrum, 4205
 Winston, Colonel, 3264
 Winthrop, John, 2934
 Winthrop, Major Theodore, 4133
 Winthrop, Robert Charles, 4076, 4260, 4261
 Winsingerode, 3942, 3943
 Wirt, William, 4056
 Wirs, Captain, trial and execution of, 4225
 Wisconsin, admission of, 4089
 Wise, Governor Henry Alexander, 4112, 4113, 4238, 4238
 Wishart, George, 2707
 Witchcraft, in Salem, 2936
 Witenagemote, assemblies of, 1568, 2006
 Witeric, 1831
 Withlachoochee, battle of, 4058
 Witikind, 1889, 1893
 Witiza, 1532
 Wittelsbachs, 2090, 3153
 Wittelsbach, Otho of, 2090
 Wittenberg, university of, Luther's professorship at, 2593
 Martin Luther burns the Pope's bull of excommunication and the Roman Church canon at, 2599
 Wittgenstein, Count, 3483, 3539, 3540
 Witu, 678
 Woden, or Odin, 1355, 1560, 1561, 1967, 1968, 1972, 1974, 1975, 1979, 1982, 1985
 Wohlgenuth, 3604
 Wolfe, Charles, 3465
 Wolfe, General James, 3129-3131
 Wolff, 3092
 Wolseley, Sir Garnet, 3659, 3725, 3770, 3900, 3801
 Wolsey, Cardinal Thomas, 2569, 2637-2644
 ambitions of, 2640
 and the divorce of Henry VIII., 2642, 2642
 education of, 2637
 genius and versatility of, 2639
 disgrace and fall of, 2643
 retinue of, 2639
 rupture with Henry VIII., 2642
 unpopularity with the English people, 2640, 2641
 Women, Babylonian, 262, 263, 286, 321, 322
 Chinese, 681
 Egyptian, 65, 66
 Greek, 260, 261
 Median, 479
 of Anglo-Saxon England, 2027
 Wood, Benjamin, 4232
 Wood, Fernando, 4232
 Wood, General Leonard, 4294, 4295, 4296
 Wood, General Sir Elliott, 4604
 Woodgate, General Sir Edward, 4605

- of Saracenic Spain, 1871
- Persian, 551-553, 558
- Scandinavian, 1959
- enfranchisement of, in Australia, 3883
- ool, General John Ellis, 4017, 4080, 4154
- oo-san-kee, 4636, 4637
- ooster, General, 3247
- orcester, battle of, 3855
- orcester, Joseph, 3961
- orden, Lieutenant John Lorimer, 4183, 4189
- ordsworth, William, 3957
- orld, Seven Wonders of the, 4894
- orld's Columbian Exposition at Chicago, 4269, 4270
- orld's Fairs, 3949
- orld's Parliament of Religions at Chicago, 69, 4270
- orms, Diet of, Luther at the, 2599, 2600
- oronzooff, Prince, 3674, 3618
- örth, battle of, 3665
- rangel, Swedish general, 2796
- rangel, Prussian general, 3644
- rede, Austrian general, 3490
- ren, Sir Christopher, 2978, 3028
- right, General Horatio Gouverneur, 4195, 4200
- urmser, Marshal, 3409-3411
- ürtemberg, Eugene of, 3449
- ürtemberg, Ferdinand, Duke of, 3487
- ürtemberg, kings of, table of, 4988
 - Lutheranism established in, 2610
 - made a kingdom, 3443, 3521
- ürtemberg, Ulrich, Duke of, 2610, 2615
- ursburg, battle of, 3409
- uti, 678
- 'u-wang, 677
- 'yatt, Sir Francis, 2932
- 'yatt, Sir Thomas, 2670
- 'yndham, 3437
- 'yndham, George, 4494, 4495
- 'yoming valley, Pennamite and Yankee War
 - in, 2947, 3295, 3296
 - first massacre of, 2947
 - second massacre of, 3295
- 'yoming, State of, admission of, 4266
- ANTIPPE, 890, 893
- anthippus, 1198, 1199
- anthippus, another, 845
- anthus, 489
- athritis, 503
- Xavier, St. Francis, 2639
- Xenophanes, 936
- Xenophon, 885, 897, 934, 935
 - Retreat of the Ten Thousand under, 524, 525, 895, 897
 - works of, 934, 935
- Xeres de la Frontera, battle of, 1840
 - disorders at, 3897, 3898
- Xerxes the Great, 515-517
 - architecture of, 517
 - army of, 515, 816
 - at the Hellespont, 816
 - at Thermopylæ, 515, 818-821
 - character of, 516, 517
 - invasion of Greece by, 515, 816
 - retreat from Greece by, 516, 827, 828
- Xerxes II., 519
- Ximenes, Cardinal, 2566, 2567
- Xisuthrus, 288, 289
- X-Rays, discovery of, 3953
- Xuthus, 714
- YAHIA BEN KALED, 1849
- Yakin, 244
- Yakoob ben Leis, 2029-2031
- Yakoob Khan, 4635
- Yale College, founding of, 2950
- Yale, Elihu, 2950
- Yalu River, naval battle of, 4650
- Yama, 647
- Yamagata, Field-Marshal, 4649, 4653-4656
- Yamasee Indians, war with the, 2949
- Yancey, William Lowndes, 4115
- Yanilar, Great, battles of, 3743, 3747
- Yaqui Indians, 4363
- Yaropolk, 2423
- Yaroslav, 2425
- Yatreb, 1776-1779
- Yates, Richard, 4209
- Yau, 676
- Yeamans, Sir John, 2948
- Yelu, 2460
- Yermuk, battle of, 1815, 1816
- Yezid I., 1836-1839
- Yezidjerd III., 1750
- Yinkow, capture of, 4667
- Ynglingar, 2409
- Yoritomo, 4638, 4639
- York, General, 3485
- York, Henry Benedict, Cardinal of, 3112
- York, House of, 2334-2352

- York, James, Duke of, 2880-2883, 2885-2886, 2890, 2941
 York, Prince George, Duke of, 3810
 Yorkinos, 4351
 Yorkists, 2334-2349
 Yorktown, siege and evacuation of, 4154
 siege and capture of, with Cornwallis, 3271
 Young, Brigham, 4089
 Young, Dr., 79
 Young, Edward, 3509
 Ypress, fall of, 2972
 Ypsilanti, Alexander, 3536
 Ypsilanti, Demetrius, 3536
 Yriarte, Chevalier, 3402
 Yucatan, 4354
 Yule, General James Herbert, 4504
 Yungay, battle of, 4365
 Yung-chi, 4635
 Yung-ching, 4629, 4630
 Yussuf Pasha, 3456, 3457
 Yu the Great, 676

ZABALA, 3699
 Zacatecas, 4361
 Zachariah, 402
 Zachary, Pope, 1885
 Zacynthos, 711
 Zadesprates, 1728
 Zagatal, Empire of, 2462
 Zagonyi, Major, 4140
 Zagros, 449
 battle of, 1729
 Zahrigen, Dukes of, 2111
 Zama, battle of, 1220
 Zama, Saracen general, 1841
 Zamasp, 1682, 1683
 Zanzibar, British war in, 3816
 Zapolya, John, 2582, 2587
 Zaporog, Cossacks, 3043
 Zarathustra, or Zoroaster, 581-611
 Zarina, or Zarinæa, 469
 Zarowna, Peace of, 3044
 Zasseltch, General, 4709
 Zealand, island of, 3035, 3066
 Zealand, province of, 2727, 2737
 Zealand, New, 3569, 3670
 Zebulun, 355
 tribe of, 381
 Zedekiah, 249, 409
 Zehra, or Ashara, 1865

 Zeid, 1771, 1785
 Zeidikan, battle of, 3736
 Zeisberger, David, 2946, 3986
 Zell, Sophia of, 3079
 Zemstvoes, 3887, 3933, 3934
 Zend races and languages, 604
 Zend-Avesta, 581-611
 age of the, 584
 analysis of, by modern Orientalists, 584
 books of the, 583, 584
 extracts from the, 605-611
 Gâthâs of the, 605, 606
 language of the, 604
 published by Artaxerxes I., 1613
 teachings of the, 581
 Zenger, John Peter, 2941
 Zeno, the Eleatic, 937
 Zeno, the Isaurian, 1574
 Zeno, the Stoic, 1015
 Zenta, battle of, 3064, 3065
 Zephyr, 737
 Zephyrs, 733
 Zerah, 109
 Zerâna-Akerana, 588
 Zerubbabel, 411
 Zeugitana, 432, 433
 Zeus, 723-725
 temple of, at Olympia, 943
 Zeuxis, 944
 Ziang dynasty, 679
 Zianoff, Prince, 3455
 Ziebel, 1740
 Ziela, battle of, 1296
 Ziethen, 3498
 Zimisces, John, 1600
 Zimmermann, General, 3739
 Zimri, 401
 Zingis Khan, or Temujin, 2449
 childhood and education of, 2448, 2450
 coronation of, 2450, 2451
 conquests by, 2448-2454
 government of, 2454
 laws of, 2454
 Zinsindorf, Count Nicholas Louis, 2946, 2986
 Zion, Mt., capture of, 394, 395
 sowed with salt, 1089
 Zipporah, 361
 Ziska, John, 2190
 Zisim, 2485, 2486, 2549
 Znaym, battle of, 3741

- Truce of, 3741
- Zodiac, of the Babylonians, 378
 - of the Chaldeans, 139
 - of the Medes, 589, 590
- Zollicoffer, General Felix Kirk, 4146
- Zorilla, 3690
- Zorndorf, battle of, 3124
- Zoroaster, or Zarathustra, 581-611
 - and the Zend-Avesta, 581-611
 - great climatic changes in Northern Asia
 - during life of, 585, 586
 - life of, 584, 585
 - mentioned by Greek writers, 581-583
 - precepts of, 582, 583
 - religion of, 584, 585, 1612
 - teachings of, 585-595
- Zoroastrianism, 32, 581-611
 - corruption of, 595, 603
 - disposal of the dead, 597
 - emblems of, 600, 601
 - fusion of, with Magism, 596, 597, 601, 602
 - and Magism, 581-611
 - period of pure, 601
 - present home of, 581
 - principal feature of, 598
- Zoutman, Admiral, 3978
- Zrini, Count, 3059
- Zug, 2113
- Zuloaga, 4357
- Zulpich, or Tolbiac, battle of, 1546
- Zulus, wars of, with the Boers, 4445
 - with the British, 3793, 3794, 4448
- Zumalacarreguy, 3551
- Zurich, 2113
 - battle of, 3425
 - capture of, 3425
 - massacre of, 3425
 - Peace of, 3630, 3631
- Zutphen, battle of, 2689
 - siege of, 2741
- Zwingli, Ulrich, 2607-2609, 2626

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

VOLUME I

The Sixty-Five-Foot Portrait Statues of Rameses II Before Rock Hewn Temple of Ipsambul (Abu-Simbel), Egypt.....	FRONTISPIECE
Celtic Ornaments of the Ages of Bronze and Iron.....	Facing p. 2
An Early Walled Town.....	" 3
Colossal Memnon Statues at Thebes.....	" 5
The Most Beautiful Colonnade in Egypt, Luxor, Thebes.....	" 6
Egyptian Farming Operations	" 7
The Rosetta Stone	" 7
Egyptian Toilet Articles, Vases, Amphoræ, Etc.....	" 8
Egyptian Hair-Dressing and Headwear.....	" 8
Ruins of the Granite Temple Near the Sphinx, with the Great Pyramid of Gizeh	" 10
Procession of the Sacred Bull, Apis-Osiris.....	" 10
The Sun God Shamaah Dictating to Khammurabi the Code of Laws.....	" 12
Sargon's Palace at Khorsabad.....	" 13
Ships of Sennacherib on the Tigris.....	" 13
Front and Sides of the Stele of Esar-Haddon (680 B. C.).....	" 14
Lions of Old Assyria.....	" 22
Assyrian Inscriptions	" 23
The Palaces of Nineveh, Restored.....	" 23
Assyrian Dress and Weapons.....	" 24
Royal Assyrian Costumes and Furniture.....	" 24
Babylonian Marriage Market	" 25
Ancient Babylon	" 25
Assyrian Sculpture	" 25
Great Reservoir, Built by King Hiram at Tyre.....	" 26
The Israelites Led Into Captivity.....	" 26
Mosque Machpelah, The Burial Place of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob.....	" 32
The River Jordan	" 33
David Playing Before Saul.....	" 35
Croesus on the Funeral Pyre.....	" 45
Hamilcar Punishing the Insurgent Mercenaries.....	" 46

VOLUME II

Socrates Instructing Alcibiades.....	FRONTISPIECE
Behistun Inscription	Facing p. 50
Medic and Persian Soldiers.....	" 50
Bodyguard of a Persian King.....	" 50
Parsees of India.....	" 52
A Burning Ghat on the Ganges at Benares, India.....	" 61

Dravidian Temple Cut in Solid Rock at Ellora, India.....	<i>Facing p.</i>	620
The Car of Juggernaut, in which Krishna Rides.....	"	648
Great Bronze Statue of Buddha in Temple at Kamakura, Japan.....	"	654
Left: Procession at the Temple of Buddha's Tooth, Kandy, Ceylon.....	}	668
Right: Carvings in the Hindu Temple at Madura, India.....		
Examination Hall at Canton, China.....	"	682
Snow-Capped Fuji (12,385 Feet).....	"	694
Greek Divinities	"	701
The Norns or Fates.....	"	738
Olympia Restored	"	748
The Acropolis of Sparta.....	"	768
Greek Theatre of Dionysus.....	"	796
The School of Pythagoras.....	"	800
Greek Warriors and Statesmen.....	"	832
Athens in the Time of Pericles.....	"	846
Thebes, in Greece.....	"	886
Parthenon and Acropolis.....	"	924
Greek Writers and Thinkers.....	"	926
Sculpture of Phidias.....	"	942
Greek Sculpture	"	944
Greek Arms and Military Costumes.....	"	946
Greek Female Dress.....	"	950
The Acropolis at Athens, Restored.....	"	954
Macedonian Kings	"	982
Battle of Issus.....	"	990
Death of Demosthenes.....	"	1004

VOLUME III

Cleopatra Killing Slaves with Poison, to Determine the Manner of her Own Death..	FRONTISPIECE
Baalbek, Once the Most Magnificent City in Syria.....	<i>Facing p.</i> 1028
Greek Sarcophagus Found at Sidon.....	" 1038
Gateway of Ptolemy Euergetes and Entrance to the Temple of Khons Karnak	" 1042
Great Altar at Pergamon.....	" 1050
Christ and the Holy Women.....	" 1084
Archimedes	" 1098
The Vision and Conversion of Constantine.....	" 1106
The Sabine Women Urging Peace Between Their Roman Husbands and Their Sabine Relatives	" 1126
Tullia Driving Over the Body of Her Father.....	" 1134
Roman Divinities	" 1136
Roman Religious Ceremonies	" 1140
Ancient Gauls	" 1162
Conquered Romans Passing Under the Yoke.....	" 1178
Regulus Leaving Rome to Return to Carthage.....	" 1200
Hannibal's Entrance Into Roussillon.....	" 1206
Cornelia, The Mother of the Gracchi.....	" 1246
Roman Warriors and Statesmen.....	" 1276
Caius Julius Caesar.....	" 1284
Battlefield of Pharsalia, Looking North.....	" 1292
Pompey's Pillar at Alexandria.....	" 1294

Death of Caesar.....	Facing p. 12
Antony and Cleopatra.....	" 13
The Roman Forum, Past and Present.....	" 13
Roman Sculpture	" 14
The End of the Exhibition.....	" 14
Roman Writers and Thinkers.....	" 14
Virgil, Horace and Varius at the House of Maecenas.....	" 15
Thusnelda at the Triumph of Germanicus.....	" 15
Nero at the Circus.....	" 16
The Colosseum	" 16
Arch of Titus.....	" 16
Pompeii	" 16
Bas-Reliefs from Trajan's Column.....	" 16
Commodus in the Arena.....	" 16
Pollice Verso	" 16
St. Ambrose Refusing the Emperor Theodosius Admittance into the Church...	" 17
Huns Pillaging a Villa.....	" 18

VOLUME IV

Pilgrims Leaving Cairo for Mecca.....	FRONTISPIECE
Baptism of Clovis.....	Facing p. 124
The First Preaching of Christianity in Britain.....	" 124
Page from the Pandects of Justinian.....	" 124
Sassanian Coins	" 124
Triumph of Sapor I Over the Emperor Valerian.....	" 124
Palace of Chosroes I at Ctesiphon.....	" 124
Sculpture of the Sassanian Period.....	" 124
Mohammed Preaching the Unity of God.....	" 124
Mohammedan Attitudes in Prayer.....	" 124
A Reading from the Koran.....	" 124
The Call to Prayer.....	" 124
Musicians and Standard-Bearers of a Saracen Army.....	" 124
Charles Martel at the Battle of Tours.....	" 124
Haroun Al-Raschid	" 124
Cairo, Egypt	" 124
Cordova, Spain	" 124
Cairo	" 124
Charlemagne	" 124
Paris Besieged by the Normans.....	" 124
A Walled Town in the Mountains.....	" 124
Henry IV Doing Penance at Canossa.....	" 124
The Viking's Ship	" 124
The Dying Normans.....	" 124
An Invading Viking.....	" 124
Scandinavian Antiquities of Prehistoric Ages.....	" 124
King Alfred Inciting the Saxons.....	" 124
Canute Rebuking His Courtiers.....	" 124
Hastings Castle	" 124
William I Receiving the Crown of England.....	" 124

VOLUME V

Carton Reading His First Proof.....	FRONTISPICE
Writers and Schoolmen of the Middle Ages.....	<i>Facing p.</i> 2052
Ancient Citadel at Sidon.....	" 2066
Scene from the Crusades.....	" 2074
Barbarossa as Umpire at Bisancon.....	" 2088
Castles on the Rhine.....	" 2104
William Tell and the Bailiff.....	" 2112
Martyrdom of John Huss.....	" 2118
Emperor Maximilian After the Battle of Verona Receives a Venetian Embassy Asking for Peace.....	" 2126
Excommunication of Robert the Pious.....	" 2132
St. Louis at Jerusalem.....	" 2152
Joan of Arc Listening to the Voices.....	" 2186
Victorious Entry of Joan of Arc into Orleans.....	" 2190
Louis XI and Charles the Bold at Peronne.....	" 2216
British Castles	" 2244
Richard Coeur De Lion Forgiving His Assassin.....	" 2264
Wickliffe Refusing to Recant.....	" 2310
English Coins, from Edward The Confessor to Richard II.....	" 2316
Lord Say and Sele Before Jack Cade.....	" 2332
The Death of the Earl of Warwick.....	" 2340
The Princess in the Tower.....	" 2346
Wallace Monument and Stirling Battlefield.....	" 2370
Stirling Castle	" 2370
A Foray on the Border	" 2376
Cathedral of St. Mark, Venice.....	" 2384
Italian Coast Scenes.....	" 2388
The Alhambra, Spain.....	" 2392
Entry of Sunnanwader and Knut into Stockholm.....	" 2410
The Kremlin at Moscow.....	" 2432
Mosque of St. Sophia at Constantinople.....	" 2484
The Interior of St. Sophia.....	" 2484
Public Prayer, Court of Jumma Masjid Mosque, Delhi, India.....	" 2498
Monuments of the Mogul Empire in India.....	" 2506

VOLUME VI

Columbus	FRONTISPICE
"Santa Maria," The Flagship of Columbus.....	<i>Facing p.</i> 2528
Explorers and Discoverers.....	" 2530
Aztec Ruins	" 2534
Aztec Divinities	" 2536
Entry of Charles VIII into Naples, May 12, 1495.....	" 2548
Francis I and Charles V Visiting the Tombs of the French Kings in St. Denis	" 2590
Luther, Melancthon, Pomeranus and Cruciger.....	" 2600
Lucas Cranach Introduces Katharina Von Bora to Luther.....	" 2604
Ignatius Loyola	" 2628
Regal Magnificence of Cardinal Wolsey.....	" 2638
The Field of the Cloth of Gold, June 15, 1520.....	" 2640

Cranmer at the Traitor's Gate.....	<i>Facing p.</i> 267
Elizabeth Signing the Death Warrant of Mary Queen of Scots.....	" 268
Merchantmen and War Vessels of the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries....	" 269
Last Moments of Queen Elizabeth.....	" 272
The Death of Rizzio.....	" 273
Philip II Receiving a Deputation from the Netherlands.....	" 275
Writers of the Sixteenth Century.....	" 286
Painters of the Sixteenth Century.....	" 288
Cromwell's Visit to Milton.....	" 293
Charles I Insulted by the Soldiers of Cromwell.....	" 293
Charles I With His Children at Maidenhead.....	" 293
Battle of Solebay.....	" 299
St. Paul's Cathedral.....	" 299
Gold and Silver Coins of Charles II.....	" 299
William III Landing at Torbay.....	" 299
The Old Church at Jamestown.....	" 299
Embarkation of the Pilgrims.....	" 299
Roger Williams Landing at Providence.....	" 299
The Old Fortified Settlement at Charleston.....	" 299
Colonial Governors and Proprietors.....	" 299
Louis XIII and Richelieu.....	" 299
Louis XIV and Moliere.....	" 299
Galileo Before the Inquisition.....	" 299

VOLUME VII

Drafting the Declaration of Independence.....	<i>FRONTISPIECE</i>
The Great Elector at Fehrbellin.....	<i>Facing p.</i> 303
Military and Civil Equestrian Costumes, End of Sixteenth Century.....	" 303
Polish Costumes of the Sixteenth and Seventeenth Centuries.....	" 303
The Cossacks Defying the Czar.....	" 303
Maria Theresa.....	" 304
Battle of Fontenoy.....	" 310
Frederick The Great.....	" 311
Washington and His Mother.....	" 311
Evening after the Battle of Leuthen.....	" 312
The Four Georges.....	" 313
French Writers of the Eighteenth Century.....	" 313
German Writers of the Eighteenth Century.....	" 313
George Washington.....	" 320
Monument on the Concord Battle Field.....	" 323
Nathan Hale Monument in City Hall Park, New York.....	" 323
Independence Hall, Philadelphia.....	" 324
Faneuil Hall, Boston.....	" 324
American Officers of the Revolution.....	" 325
Marion and the British Officer.....	" 326
Washington at Yorktown.....	" 327
American Revolutionary Statesmen.....	" 328
English Public Men of the Eighteenth Century.....	" 331
Watt Discovering the Power of Steam.....	" 332

Queen Victoria as a Young Woman.....	<i>Facing p.</i>	3352
Notable French Women of the Late Eighteenth Century.....	"	3362
Bouget De L'Ile Singing the Marseillaise Hymn.....	"	3370
The Girondists on the Way to the Guillotine.....	"	3380
Marie Antoinette Leaving the Conciergerie.....	"	3384
Leaders of the French Revolution and Terror.....	"	3390
Capture of the Dutch Fleet at Texel by French Cavalry During Pichegru's Invasion	"	3400
Napoleon at Brienne.....	"	3402
Napoleon Crossing the Alps.....	"	3412
Bonaparte Dissolving the Council of Five Hundred.....	"	3426
Napoleon and His Marshals.....	"	3436
Friedland	"	3450
The Rising in the Tyrol.....	"	3470
Blucher at Laon.....	"	3492
The Return from Elba.....	"	3496
After Waterloo—"Sauve Qui Peut".....	"	3500
Scientists of the Eighteenth Century.....	"	3506
English Authors of the Eighteenth Century.....	"	3516

VOLUME VIII

Bismarck at Versailles.....	FRONTISPIECE
The Congress of Vienna.....	<i>Facing p.</i> 3519
The Battle of Navarino.....	" 3538
Popes of the Nineteenth Century.....	" 3586
The Ancient Tiber and Its Island.....	" 3606
Battle of The Alma.....	" 3612
Scenes in China.....	" 3634
Landing of the Prussian Army at Alsen—Danish War, 1864.....	" 3644
English Statesmen	" 3658
At Woerth	" 3664
Crown Prince Albert of Saxony at Gravelotte.....	" 3666
Defense of Champigny.....	" 3672
Roman Ruins	" 3678
The Royal Palace of Spain at Madrid.....	" 3690
Emperor William I and His Staff.....	" 3706
New Paris	" 3718
Bismarck Addressing the Reichstag.....	" 3768
Scenes in Ireland.....	" 3804
Great English Soldiers.....	" 3818
Edward VII	" 3832
The Bastile	" 3842
European Sovereigns	" 3868
Last Rites of the Russian Church.....	" 3884
His Holiness Pope Pius X With Papal Crown and Robes of State.....	" 3896
Nicholas II, Czar of Russia.....	" 3932
American Inventors	" 3952
Great English Authors.....	" 3958
Authors of the United States.....	" 3964

VOLUME IX

Battle of Lake Erie.....	FRONTISPIECE
Washington Delivering His First Inaugural.....	<i>Facing p. 394</i>
Capitol Buildings of the United States.....	" 406
Capt. Meriweather Lewis.....	" 406
Genl. William Clark.....	" 406
Presidents of the United States.....	" 406
Scenes in Mexico.....	" 406
American Political Leaders.....	" 406
American Indians.....	" 410
Lincoln and His Cabinet.....	" 412
Fort Sumter.....	" 412
Confederate Statesmen and Leaders.....	" 414
Confederate Commanders.....	" 415
McClellan at Antietam, September 17, 1862.....	" 415
Battle of Gettysburg.....	" 417
Thomas at Chickamauga, September 20, 1863.....	" 419
Gen. Robert E. Lee.....	" 419
Sherman's Signal to Altoona, Kenesaw Mountain, October 4, 1864.....	" 420
Farragut in the Battle of Mobile Bay.....	" 420
The Pursuit.....	" 421
Sheridan at Five Forks, April 1, 1865.....	" 421
Abraham Lincoln.....	" 423
Ulysses Simpson Grant.....	" 423
Presidents of the United States.....	" 425
United States Navy.....	" 425
Roosevelt at San Juan Hill, Cuba.....	" 429
Before a Native Store.....	" 430
Russian Priest Visiting a Military Hospital Near Manila.....	" 430
Theodore Roosevelt.....	" 432
William Howard Taft.....	" 433
Inca Civilization.....	" 434
Maya Civilization in Mexico.....	" 435
Maximilian and Carlotta.....	" 436
Leading Mexicans.....	" 436
Rio de Janeiro, Brazil.....	" 437
Buenos Ayres, Argentina.....	" 438
Havana, Cuba.....	" 440

VOLUME X

President Woodrow Wilson and His Cabinet.....	FRONTISPIECE
The Country of the Boers.....	<i>Facing p. 443</i>
Zulus.....	" 443
President Kruger, and His House at Pretoria.....	" 446
A Reconnaissance Under Difficulties During the South African War.....	" 446
Commanders in Boer War.....	" 450
Lord Robert's Advance on Pretoria.....	" 453
The Kimberley Diamond Mines.....	" 456
Scenes in Boer War.....	" 460

Old Chinese Architecture	<i>Facing p.</i>	4626
Farmers' Wives Heading Barley.....	"	4641
The Boxer Troubles.....	"	4678
His Imperial Majesty Mutsuhito.....	"	4694
Japanese Hurling a Five-Hundred-Pound Shell at Port Arthur.....	"	4702
Japanese War Balloon	"	4714
Japanese Infantry Ready to Move Into the Firing Line.....	"	4722
The Russian and Japanese Peace Commissioners.....	"	4730
Meade at Gettysburg, July 2, 1863.....	"	4804
Grant in the Wilderness.....	"	4818
Hooker at Chancellorsville, May 3, 1863.....	"	4858
Burnside at Fredericksburg, December 13, 1862.....	"	4892

LIST OF MAPS

Map of the Ancient Historical World.....	<i>Facing p.</i> 20
Map of the World according to Strabo.....	" 24
Map of the World according to Herodotus.....	" 28
Map of the World according to Eratosthenes.....	" 30
Map of the World according to Hecataeus.....	" 34
Map of the World according to Pomponius Mela.....	" 36
Map of the World according to Monysius Periegetes.....	" 36
Map of the World according to Ptolemy.....	" 36
Map of Ancient Egypt.....	" 62
Map of the First Great Empires.....	" 112
Map of the Earliest Historic Regions.....	" 122
Map of Ancient Palestine.....	" 346
Map of Canaan, Egypt and the Wilderness.....	" 360
Map of Solomon's Kingdom and Phœnicia.....	" 396
Map of Ancient Asia Minor.....	" 416
Map of the Medo-Persian Empire.....	" 446
Map of Ancient Greece.....	" 702
Map of Homeric Greece.....	" 712
Map of Ancient Greece and Her Colonies.....	" 808
Map of Ancient Athens and Its Vicinity.....	" 834
Map of the Empire of Alexander the Great.....	" 956
Map of the Kingdoms of Alexander's Successors.....	" 1018
Map of the Parthian Empire.....	" 1062
Map of Palestine in the Time of Christ.....	" 1088
Map of Jerusalem.....	" 1088
Map of Ancient Italy.....	" 1110
Map of Ancient Italy Proper.....	" 1142
Map of Mediterranean Lands in Second Punic War.....	" 1136
Map of Roman Dominions in Mithridatic Wars.....	" 1136
Map of the Roman Empire.....	" 1326

Map of the City of Ancient Rome.....	<i>Facing p.</i>	1332
Map of England under the Romans.....	"	1356
Map of Scotland in the Roman Period.....	"	1370
Map of the Roman Empire Extending in all Directions.....	"	1378
Map of the Roman Empire Extending East and West.....	"	1378
Map of the Roman Empire in Greatest Extent Westward.....	"	1378
Map of the Roman Empire at the Death of Augustus.....	"	1390
Map of the Roman Empire under Trajan.....	"	1400
Map of the Roman Empire Divided into Prefectures.....	"	1460
Map of Europe Showing the Barbarian Inroads.....	"	1500
Map of Europe in A. D. 500.....	"	1518
Map of the Anglo-Saxon and Celtic Kingdoms.....	"	1572
Map of the New Persian Empire.....	"	1760
Map of Europe in A. D. 800.....	"	1884
Map of Europe in A. D. 1000.....	"	1954
Map of Feudal France in the Time of the Plantagenets.....	"	2130
Map of Feudal France during the Hundred Years' War.....	"	2174
Map of England during the Saxon Period.....	"	2236
Map of Scotland during the Saxon Period.....	"	2382
Map of Europe in A. D. 1200.....	"	2408
Map of Europe in A. D. 1400.....	"	2448
Map of Discoveries in America.....	"	2520
Map of Indian Nations in the Present United States.....	"	2546
Map of Europe during the Reformation.....	"	2598
Map of Germany during the Reformation and Thirty Years' War.....	"	2616
Map of the British Isles.....	"	2810
Map of English and French Colonies in North America.....	"	2930
Map of Europe from the Thirty Years' War to the French Revolution.....	"	2952
Map of the Anglo-French Colonial Wars in North America.....	"	3138
Map of the War of the American Revolution.....	"	3184
Map of Modern Italy.....	"	3414
Map of Europe in Napoleon's Time, in 1810.....	"	3478
Map of Europe after the Treaty of Vienna, 1815.....	"	3520
Map of Europe since the Treaty of Berlin, 1878.....	"	3778
Map of British India since 1751.....	"	3840
Map of Prevailing Religions of the World.....	"	3946
Map of the United States, War of 1812.....	"	4032
Map of the United States, War with Mexico.....	"	4086
Map of the United States, Civil War.....	"	4228
Map of the United States since Civil War.....	"	4278
Map of the United States, Territorial Growth.....	"	4304
Map of China.....	"	4624

1429-35-10

